That Hideous Strength

by

C.S. Lewis

THE PREPARATION OF

An Annotated Critical Edition

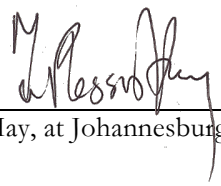
Submitted in fulfilment of all requirements for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy at the University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg.

Michèle duPlessis-Hay
86-04577/N

March 2013

I declare that:

1) this thesis is my own unaided work.
2) neither the substance nor any part of this thesis has been submitted in the past or is being or is to be submitted for a qualification at any other university.
3) the information used in this thesis has been obtained by me while employed by North-West University, Potchefstroom.



Signed by me, Michèle duPlessis-Hay, at Johannesburg on this, the 26th day of March 2013.

Abstract

This dissertation seeks to address the problems arising from the complicated textual history of C.S. Lewis's novel *That Hideous Strength*, and the sophisticated, often misunderstood, nature of the web of allusion, sources and influences on which the novel depends. One of the duties of an editor is to mediate between the text and its readers. C.S. Lewis's *That Hideous Strength* has many different kinds of readers, but the editor can facilitate their understanding of the text, and can provide an accurate text. Critical responses to *That Hideous Strength* and the Ransom trilogy have included commentary and explanation, mere description, and evaluative criticism. Some critics have displayed fundamental misunderstandings of what Lewis has written: this suggests the need for an annotated edition.

Fewer than three pages of an early manuscript survive. The novel has three first editions: British (1945), American (1946), and abridged (1946)—the abridgement was done by Lewis, who revised what he did not excise. In general, the British edition offers a better text, but the revisions in the abridged edition must be taken into account too. Later editions of the novel have been based on the 1965 paperback edition of the American edition. A number of errors in the American edition, and more introduced by the paperback edition, have been perpetuated and readers nearly 70 years after the novel's first publication are offered only editions based on faulty editions and with misleadingly documented antecedents.

Lewis was extremely widely read and borrowed enthusiastically in a number of ways from many sources and authors. Some of his Classical, Medieval and Renaissance influences have received critical attention, but the field is very wide: a case-study of the influence of Alanus ab Insulis across all Lewis's work shows that he turns to Alanus again and again in explorations of hierarchy, God and Nature, and what it is to be human. Lewis's most important literary Christian mentors were G.K. Chesterton and George MacDonald, both of whom he read from long before his conversion. Case-studies of these two authors show that Chesterton influences Lewis's thought and style as well as providing numerous sources of ideas and images, while elements of MacDonald's mythopoeia frequently appear in Lewis's fiction. A case-study of Lewis's friend Charles Williams shows that general assumptions about the nature of his influence on *That Hideous Strength* focus on the wrong things.

The cosmology that forms the background to the Ransom trilogy is syncretic, as Lewis combines elements of the Medieval cosmology he describes in *The Discarded Image* (1964) with later traditions, contemporary knowledge, and contemporary works of speculative fiction. This syncretism enables Lewis to explore human being, human relations with God, and ethical and theological truths from an imaginative standpoint while celebrating such

elements of the traditional world-view as the plenitude of creation and the planetary powers. This syncretism has attracted critical responses ranging widely from warm enthusiasm to strong disapprobation.

A set of Preliminary Notes acts as a bridge between the Introduction and the Annotations, covering a wide range of topics: questions of objective value ("Men Without Chests"); Lewis's introduction of himself and autobiographical elements into the trilogy ("Lewis as Character"); Lewis's exploration in the novel, as well as in ethical and critical works, of the moral dangers inherent in the desire to belong ("The Inner Ring"); the sources of, and the use Lewis makes of, the Arthurian material in *That Hideous Strength* ("Logres"); the way in which Lewis presents and uses blasphemy, profanity, and swearing in the trilogy ("Blasphemy and Swearing"); Lewis's rejection (following Chesterton), in the novel and in other writings, of the notion that remedial treatment can be more humane than retributive punishment ("Humane Remedial Treatment"); Lewis's fictional presentation of questions about time and possible perceptions and understandings of it ("Philosophies of Time"); Lewis's invented language and the way in which his presentation of it evolves over the trilogy ("The Language of Creation").

Although paper or electronic variorum editions have many benefits, they are in general difficult for a reader, and a collated, "eclectic", annotated edition that can serve as a critical or a reading text of *That Hideous Strength* is offered here. The edition shows what changes Lewis made for the abridged edition, and includes a full *apparatus criticus* and textual notes justifying decisions taken about substantive differences and instances where the editor has not followed the copy text.

The annotations seek to explicate the contexts of the novel. Lewis's fiction is consistent with his Christian belief, his apologetical and ethical writings, and his critical work, and draws on a wide range of influences: the annotations explicate these points, as well us providing historical information and explaining allusions that may have become unclear with the passage of time.

This edition concludes with three appendices. Appendix A provides a variorum presentation of the extant manuscript fragments and the corresponding passages in the three first editions of the novel. Appendix B explores the internal chronology of the novel, which is not always consistent. Appendix C demonstrates an unexpected example of *That Hideous Strength*'s influence, showing Peter O'Donnell's borrowings in some of his crime thrillers.

PREFACE

Approach

Why offer an annotated critical edition of a science-fiction novel nearly seventy years old? I first read Lewis's Ransom trilogy, with delight, about 30 years ago. It still delights me, and it has given me great pleasure to explore *That Hideous Strength* in some depth. I hope that the edition of the novel offered here will enable others to appreciate some of the ways it has delighted me, and also to understand the novel more fully.

Part of understanding the novel involves researching Lewis's thought and work, and the authors of all ages that he himself enjoyed, but it has also been necessary to unpack allusions to the world of the novel—the world of the 1940s. In doing so, I have made a point of using some reference works that were contemporary with Lewis—not because he could have used or did use them but because of the insight that they give into knowledge, opinions, or language use during Lewis's lifetime. Thus I use *A New English Dictionary on Historical Principles* (1888–1933) and an early edition of *Webster's Complete Dictionary of the English Language* (1884), the fourteenth edition of *Encyclopædia Britannica* (1939), and the first edition of Fowler's *Dictionary of Modern English Usage* (1926). When Lewis gave a copy of Fowler to his father as a present, he described it to his brother as "a kind of prig's dictionary",[1] but I have found it and the *New English Dictionary* useful in making some textual decisions. I have also tried, with works that Lewis had read, to use editions that he could have used, but this has not always been feasible. Ironically, it has been especially difficult with the works of Lewis's friends and Lewis himself—I think because their works have been popular enough to spawn many re-issues.

I have depended on translators for help with texts in Latin and Greek, and the translations I provide are from the translations cited, unless otherwise stated. Although Lewis did not, of course, need translators' help, I have used the older Loeb editions, as representing the translation norms of Lewis's own day. For Medieval Latin texts, I have had to use what is available.

Organisation

I offer an extensive Introduction in five chapters. In it, I move from considering the editing of *That Hideous Strength*, reflecting on the rôle of the editor, Lewis's readers and critics, and the kind of edition that should be offered (Introduction 1), to a discussion of the witnesses to the text and the publishing history of the novel (Introduction 2). These chapters together

[1] *The Collected Letters of C.S. Lewis*, ed. Walter Hooper, 3 vol. (New York: HarperSanFrancisco, 2004–07) vol. 1 752.

form the defence for this project of editing and commentary. In the next two chapters I explore some of the contexts of the novel: influences upon Lewis's thought and writing (Introduction 3), and the imaginary cosmos in which the Ransom novels are set (Introduction 4). Introduction 5 forms a transition between the Introduction and Annotations: it is made up of eight extensive annotations that pull together material relevant to the text at so many points that it would be confusing and repetitive to include it in the ordinary annotations. These notes thus serve both as annotations and as useful preliminary commentary for a reader of the novel.

My survey of scholarship is distributed across the Introduction so that discussions fall where they are relevant. I deal with general criticism of and commentary on the Ransom trilogy under "*That Hideous Strength*: Critical Responses" in Introduction 1 (p. xx–xxix). This discussion includes criticism that deals with the genre of the trilogy and concludes with a look at some examples of serious critical misunderstandings of Lewis's thoughts and words. The two most substantial additional parts of the survey come in Introduction 3 and 4. I survey criticism and exploration of the influences upon Lewis in Introduction 3, in the preliminary discussion in each of the three sections (p. lxi–lxii, lxxii, lxxxvi–lxxxviii). In the final section of Introduction 4, "Syncretism", I survey critical reactions to Lewis's syncretism (p. cviii–cx). There are a few other paragraphs concerning criticism of the trilogy scattered through the chapters of the Introduction as necessary: for example, in Introduction 5 ("D: Logres") I have a paragraph on critical reactions to the Arthurian material in *That Hideous Strength* (p. cxxv).

Acknowledgements

A project of this kind and scope is not completed without the help and support of others. My grateful thanks go firstly to Victor Houliston, who supervised this dissertation. He was and did far more than any supervisor can be expected to be or do, and has been unfailingly patient and supportive, a source of wise criticism and practical advice.

My thanks are due to my colleagues at North-West University, Potchefstroom, and especially to Attie de Lange, Lande Botha, and John Gouws for friendship and encouragement, and to Wannie Carstens, the Director of the School of Languages, for his patience in waiting for this project to be finished.

Walter Hooper has been a generous and kindly source of invaluable and much-valued information and encouragement in e-mails, meetings for tea, and telephone calls—and a gift of books.

I have been courteously and patiently assisted by many librarians at many institutions: the Wartenweiler and Cullen Libraries (University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg); the Ferdinand Postma and Jan Lion Theological Libraries (North-West University,

Potchefstroom)—especially the staff of the Inter-Library Loans Desk; the Library of the University of South Africa (Pretoria); the British Library (London); and the Bodleian Library (Oxford)—especially Colin Harris of the Special Collections Reading Room.

The organisers of an *Editorial Theory and Practice Workshop* (North-West University, 3–4 June 2009) invited me to present aspects of my work on this project, and the delegates were generous with advice and comments.

The organisers of *Afterlives—Survival and Revival: The 20th Biennial Conference of the Southern African Society for Medieval and Renaissance Studies* (Stellenbosch, 2–5 September 2010), allowed me to ask the delegates about hard-to-find references. Thanks to them and to the delegates, for bringing their expertise to bear, and reassuring me that it was indeed very likely that certain allusions were Lewis's own inventions. I am especially grateful to Dennis Danielson for his gift of a copy of his book.

Pete Rollinson of the Saracen's Head Inn in the Wye Valley in Herefordshire not only gave me permission to use an image of their old pub sign, but provided me with a specially-taken photograph.

I am blessed with friends and family who gave generously of their time to proof-read parts of the final draft of this dissertation: Donné Roberts, Barbie Gertenbach, Lesley Maluga, and my husband Angus Hay.

Angus has made everything easier as I have worked on this dissertation, with gifts of books, computer hardware and software, taking photographs and performing physics calculations at my behest (see my citations), ensuring trouble-free computer back-ups, and allowing me to monopolise the computer with the 27-inch monitor.

I am of course responsible for the faults that remain: naturally I am not aware of the specific typographical errors that no doubt exist, but I am well aware that I have not achieved all that I hoped to, nor in the manner that I planned. Without the help that I have recorded with gratitude here, I would have fallen even further short of my ideal.

Table of Contents

Abstract i
PREFACE iii
Table of Contents vii
List of Illustrations ix
List of Witnesses xi
Notes on Layout and Citation xiii

INTRODUCTION 1: EDITING *THAT HIDEOUS STRENGTH* xv
Reflections on Editorial Intentionality xvi
That Hideous Strength: Lewis's Readers xviii
That Hideous Strength: Critical Responses xx
That Hideous Strength: What Kind of Edition? xxix
Editorial Decisions xxxiii

INTRODUCTION 2: THE TEXT xxxv
The Manuscript Fragments xxxvi
The First Editions xxxviii
Later Publishing History xlii
P's Descendants xlv

INTRODUCTION 3: INFLUENCES lix
Classical, Medieval and Renaissance Influences lxi
Christian Mentors lxxii
The Inklings lxxxvi

INTRODUCTION 4: LEWIS'S SYNCRETIC COSMOLOGY xcv
God xcvii
The Plenitude of Creation xcviii
The Field of Arbol c
The Planetary Powers ciii
Human Being cvii
Syncretism cviii

INTRODUCTION 5: PRELIMINARY NOTES cxi
A: Men Without Chests cxii
B: Lewis as Character cxv
C: The Inner Ring cxix
D: Logres cxxii
E: Blasphemy and Swearing cxxviii
F: Humane Remedial Treatment cxxxii
G: Philosophies of Time cxxxviii
H: The Language of Creation cxlii

TEXT, *APPARATUS CRITICUS*, TEXTUAL NOTES, and ANNOTATIONS . 1
Title Page 2
Dedication 3
Epigraph 4
Preface 5
1 Sale of College Property 7
2 Dinner with the Sub-Warden 30
3 Belbury and St. Anne's on the Hill 50
4 The Liquidation of Anachronisms 74
5 Elasticity 96
6 Fog 123
7 The Pendragon 144
8 Moonlight at Belbury 167
9 The Saracen's Head 191
10 The Conquered City 217
11 Battle Begun 245
12 Wet and Windy Night 263
13 They have pulled down Deep Heaven on their Heads 287
14 "Real Life is Meeting" 313
15 The Descent of the Gods 340
16 Banquet at Belbury 365
17 Venus at St. Anne's 383

APPENDICES 411
A: Variorum Presentation of L, B, A, and M 413
B: The Chronology of the Novel 423
C: Borrowings in O'Donnell's Modesty Blaise Novels 431

LIST OF WORKS CITED 437
Abbreviations used 437
Works by C.S. Lewis 437
Works by others 439

List of Illustrations

This list of images and their sources does not include the tables and diagrams in the Introduction and Appendices, all of which I created and populated, or the illustration on page ci, which I created.

Page xcviii: A Medieval Depiction of the Teeming Angelic Life of the Heavens.

Detail from: Hartmann Schedel. *Liber chronicarum*. Nuremberg: 1493. 74. 14 Aug. 1913. <http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Schedel-ii.jpg>.

Facing page 2: Title Page of B.

C.S. Lewis. *That Hideous Strength: A Modern Fairy-Tale for Grown-Ups*. London: John Lane-Bodley Head, 1945. [3].

Facing page 2: Title Page of M.

C.S. Lewis. *That Hideous Strength. A Modern Fairy-Tale for Grown-Ups*. New York: Macmillan, 1946. [iii].

Facing page 2: Title Page of A.

C.S. Lewis. *The Tortured Planet*. Abridged ed. of *That Hideous Strength*. New York: Avon, [1946]. [3].

Facing page 60: Klingor's Garden.

Thomas E. Mostyn. "The Garden of Enchantment: Stage Set for *Parsifal*." 1914. 14 Aug. 1913. <http://www.wikigallery.org/wiki/painting_240109/Thomas-E.-Mostyn/The-Garden-of-Enchantment-stage-set-for-Parsifal-1914>.

Facing page 191: The Saracen's Head, Highworth, Wiltshire.

The Saracens Head Hotel. 2006. 3 Aug. 2007. <http://www.saracenshead.co.uk/>.

Facing page 191: The Saracen's Head, Ross-on-Wye, Herefordshire.

Pub Sign: The Saracen's Head. The Saracens Head Inn, Ross-on-Wye, Herefordshire. Pete Rollinson. Photograph. 15 Aug. 2013.

Facing page 290: The Sphere of the Moon.

Andres Celarius. "Celestial Map." *c.* 1708. Antique Maps of the World. Digital Vision/Picture Quest. *Antique Maps 2008*. Calendar. Kempen, Germany: teNeues, 2007.

Facing page 323: Minoan Priestesses.

Figurines of Priestesses or Goddesses. Archaeological Museum of Heraklion, Crete. A.D.S. Hay. Photograph. 1 Oct. 2009.

Facing page 333: A Mythological Picture by Titian.

Titian. *The Rape of Europa*. 1562. Oil on canvas. Isabella Stewart Gardner Museum, Boston, MA. 27 Mar. 2008. <http://www.abcgallery.com/T/titian/titian87.html>.

Facing page 345: Caryatides.

The Porch of Maidens. [Acropolis, Athens.] Thermos. Photograph. 18 Mar. 2006. 18 July 2012. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Porch_of_Maidens.jpg>.

Facing page 387: A Valkyrie by Rackham.

Rackham, Arthur. "Brünhilde Wakes Up and Greets the Day and Siegfried." *Siegfried and the Twilight of the Gods*. By Richard Wagner. Trans. Margaret Amour. London: Heinemann; New York: Doubleday, 1911. 18 June 2012. <http://en.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Ring48.jpg>.

Facing page 402: Venus with Bacchus and Ceres.

Peter Paul Rubens. "Venus, Cupid, Bacchus and Ceres." 1613. 14 Aug. 2013. <http://wikipaintings.org/en/peter-paul-rubens/venus-cupid-bacchus-and-ceres-1613>.

Facing page 402: Venus without Bacchus and Ceres.

Peter Paul Rubens. "Sine Cerere et Baccho friget Venus." *c.* 1614. 14 Aug. 2013. <http://wikipaintings.org/en/peter-paul-rubens/sine-cerere-et-baccho-friget-venus-1>.

Page 426: Death of Smaug.

J.R.R. Tolkien. *The Hobbit: or, There and Back Again*. 3rd ed. 1966. London: Unwin, 1974. Full cover.

Page 426: Note to Death of Smaug.

Detail from: J.R.R. Tolkien. *The Hobbit: or, There and Back Again*. 3rd ed. 1966. London: Unwin, 1974. Back cover.

Page 426: The Night Sky in Edgestow (17 October).

Philip's Planisphere for Latitude 51.5° North: Northern Europe, Northern USA and Canada. London: George Philip, 1991.

Page 427: The Night Sky in Edgestow (1-2 November).

Philip's Planisphere for Latitude 51.5° North: Northern Europe, Northern USA and Canada. London: George Philip, 1991.

Page 427: The Night Sky in Edgestow (6 November).

Philip's Planisphere for Latitude 51.5° North: Northern Europe, Northern USA and Canada. London: George Philip, 1991.

List of Witnesses

L1: A fragment of *That Hideous Strength*, ms. BOD 132 Dep. d. 808 (fol. 68^{v}). Bodleian Library, Oxford.

L2 & L3: Undated fragments of a draft of *That Hideous Strength* (1945), ms. BOD 132 Dep. d. 241 (fol. 2^{r} & ^{v}). Bodleian Library, Oxford.

B: *That Hideous Strength: A Modern Fairy-Tale for Grown-Ups*. London: Bodley Head-John Lane, 1945.

M: *That Hideous Strength: A Modern Fairy-Tale for Grown-Ups*. New York: Macmillan, 1946.

A: *The Tortured Planet*. Abridged ed. of *That Hideous Strength*. New York: Avon, [1946].

A^{1955}: *That Hideous Strength*. Abridged ed. London: Pan, 1955.

P: *That Hideous Strength: A Modern Fairy-Tale for Grown-Ups*. 1st paperback ed. New York: Macmillan, 1965.

P^{1983}: *That Hideous Strength: A Modern Fairy-Tale for Grown-Ups*. London: Pan, 1983.

P^{1989}: *That Hideous Strength: A Modern Fairy-Tale for Grown-Ups. The Cosmic Trilogy*. Omnibus ed. London: Pan-Macmillan & Bodley Head, 1989. 349-753.

^{e}P^{2003}: *That Hideous Strength: A Modern Fairy-Tale for Grown-Ups*. EPub ed. London: HarperCollins, 2003.

P^{2005}: *That Hideous Strength: A Modern Fairy-Tale for Grown-Ups*. London: HarperCollins, 2005.

Mentioned (Introduction 2 xliii n. 43):

That Hideous Strength: A Modern Fairy-Tale for Grown-Ups. Scribner Classics. New York: Scribner, 1996.

That Hideous Strength: A Modern Fairy-Tale for Grown-Ups. Scribner Paperback Fiction. New York: Scribner, 1996.

That Hideous Strength: A Modern Fairy-Tale for Grown-Ups. Audiobook. Read by Ralph Cosham. Blackstone Audio, 2000.

Notes on Citation and Layout

My citation style is based on the Modern Language Association style with footnotes, except in the Annotations and Textual Notes where I use in-text citations.

Unless I state otherwise in specific cases I observe the following conventions. Capital Roman numerals refer to acts of plays, numbered subdivisions larger than chapters of books, or "books" of long poems. Lower-case Roman numerals refer to scenes of plays, or pages so numbered. Arabic numerals refer to chapters of books (always indicated by "ch."), line numbers of poems and plays (indicated by "l." only when necessary for clarity), pages so numbered in texts (indicated by "p." only when necessary for clarity), and volume numbers of journals or multivolume works.[1]

Electronic editions of texts do not have page numbers, so I provide percentages (indicating how far into a text a passage is) as well as chapter numbers (for example, "ch. 1 5 %). Where it seems likely that a work exists in many editions with different paginations, I frequently provide chapter numbers as well as page numbers, with a space between the chapter number and the page number/s (for example, "ch. 1 5").

All references to *That Hideous Strength* are to this edition, unless it is stated otherwise. The chapters of *That Hideous Strength* are divided into numbered sections, indicated by Roman numerals in small capitals: references to a work by chapter and chapter section (with or without page number) are thus to *That Hideous Strength*, without any need to name the text explicitly. References to any work without an explicitly named author are to works by C.S. Lewis.

Apart from the abbreviations I use for versions of *That Hideous Strength* (see discussion in Introduction 2), I use only four abbreviations, three of which are well-known:

BCP: *Book of Common Prayer*
C&G: Walter Hooper, *C.S. Lewis: A Companion and Guide.*
NED: *A New English Dictionary*
OED: *Oxford English Dictionary*

Full details are provided in the List of Works Cited.

The Text is printed on the right-hand pages of each opening in that section, with the *Apparatus Criticus* and Textual Notes below and Annotations on the facing (left-hand) pages. These right-hand pages are numbered in increments of one, so that the page numbers of the Text form an uninterrupted series. The left-hand pages in this section are identified merely by the right-hand pages that they face. The other sections of this document are printed double-sided with pages numbered in the usual way.

[1] *The Lord of the Rings* is a special case here: the whole text is divided into six "books" plus some appendices. It has variously been published in one-, three- or seven-volume editions. Although I am using an edition that has one "book" per volume, I refer to book numbers (in capital Roman numerals) and not volume numbers (which vary with the edition) in citations.

The identifying abbreviations for the witnesses cited in the *Apparatus Criticus* are explained in Introduction 2. I use ¶ to indicate a paragraph break in a witness, and a slash (/) for a line break, shown only when they are relevant to the set of variants under discussion. A pointing hand (☛) at the beginning of a new paragraph immediately after an *Apparatus* entry indicates a textual note pertaining to that entry.

The presence of an *Apparatus* entry is indicated by a superscript letter at the appropriate point in the Text. The letters re-start on each page, and a Textual Note, or an *Apparatus* entry, or both, as appropriate, can be referred to by the page number together with the superscript letter (for example, "123[a]").

The presence of an annotation is shown by a circled number in the margin alongside the start of the relevant text. In the Annotations on the facing page, the circled number and a short lemma indicating the start and finish of the section of text under discussion precede each note. A reference to an annotation is given by the identifying circled number and the page it discusses or the page on which it appears (for example, depending on context, "note 1 to page 123", "note 1 facing page 123", or "p. 123 n. 1", amongst others).

If more than one part of a page can be addressed by one note, the same number is given to them both or all, and both or all the lemmata are shown before the annotation.

References to Preliminary Notes or Appendices may occur in the Introduction, Annotations or Appendices, but they are also indicated, where appropriate, directly from the Text, by means of a small italic note in the right-hand margin, alongside the relevant portion of the text. Preliminary Notes are indicated by their title, Appendices by "Appendix" and the relevant letter.

All elisions introduced by me, in the *Apparatus*, or any citation or quotation anywhere, are marked by square brackets.

When the headword in a dictionary or other work of reference is the same as the word under discussion, I do not necessarily re-state it. Fowler uses different font attributes for different kinds of entries—individual words, discussions of a particular problem, and so on—and I retain these peculiarities when citing his headwords.

INTRODUCTION 1: EDITING *THAT HIDEOUS STRENGTH*

That Hideous Strength, the third novel in Lewis's science-fiction trilogy about Elwin Ransom, was published in London by John Lane (The Bodley Head) in 1945 and in New York by Macmillan in 1946. There are many differences (mostly accidental but around 120 substantive) between the texts. The witness is further complicated by the publication, probably in 1946, of an abridged edition (based on the British edition but licensed by Macmillan) by the New York publishers Avon, with the abridgement done by Lewis—who also made revisions in the parts of the text he did not excise. The abridged edition was re-titled *The Tortured Planet*, but was re-published, misleadingly under the original title, by Pan Books in London in 1955. There was no new full-text publication of *That Hideous Strength* in Britain until 1983, when Pan Books published the Macmillan text of 1946 in London. All editions of *That Hideous Strength* since 1965, on both sides of the Atlantic, have been based on the 1946 Macmillan text, although the publication information provided is usually misleading. In general, Lewis's readers and critics have been, and are, unaware that the novel exists in three different versions.[1] This is information that should be made available, and questions should be asked about the versions of the novel most easily available to readers in the twenty-first century.

I begin this first chapter of my Introduction by considering the rôle and duties of editor before examining the kinds of readers Lewis's novels attract and briefly surveying some of the critical responses to the Ransom novels. I then ask what kind of edition is most appropriate for *That Hideous Strength*, which has never before received editorial attention, and conclude by outlining my decisions about the edition of *That Hideous Strength* that I offer here.

[1] For full details and extensive discussion of these three versions, see Introduction 2: "The Text".

Reflections on Editorial Intentionality

While the intentions of an author have for some decades been subject to the gravest epistemological and even ontological suspicion, the editor has endured a growing burden of responsibility for his or her decisions, actions and intentions.[2] Good intentions, though, are not enough: the editor must be pure in thought and word and deed, and above all must show no taint of preference for the author's authority, and no desire to render a text less faulty through his or her activities.[3] The poor author is merely one agent amongst many involved in the transmission of the text, which is a social construct that may not even exist except through some kind of consensual network. (At the same time, however, the rights of the author—or the author's heirs—to the intellectual property manifested in, say, a novel, are more carefully protected than ever.) The editor, like the author, is merely one collaborator amongst many, and it would be an act of bad faith for an editor to hope to make any lasting contribution to the tradition attached to a literary work.

Amidst all this the reader, it seems to me, is often ignored, or transmuted into something else: a creator of a text that does not exist until it is read; an editor in his or her own right; a consumer of a commodity. Yet every day people walk into bookshops or libraries, or log onto Amazon or Project Gutenberg or other websites, and borrow or purchase works of literature, and read them for pleasure.

An editor of a work of fiction (ignoring for the moment all other kinds of text, literary or non-literary) surely has a duty to readers who read fiction for pleasure, as much as to scholarly researchers who may be using the work for any of a number of purposes?

Since we have to acknowledge, "There is no obviously natural position for the editor to adopt: there is only choice",[4] the one choice that for me is paramount is the position that the reader matters. We can ask all kinds of questions. Why edit and annotate a novel published in 1945 that no-one has ever yet seen the need to edit? Why edit at all, since it is now taken for granted that no edition can be considered definitive or authoritative or lasting? Why bother? Because the editor can and should assist the readers of that novel in their reading: as Eggert says, an "editor mediates between the text and the envisaged audience."

---

[2] See for example: Philip Gaskell, *A New Introduction to Bibliography* (Oxford: Clarendon, 1972) 338; Jerome C. McGann, *A Critique of Modern Textual Criticism* (Chicago: U of Chicago P, 1983) 55–94; Thomas G. Tanselle, *A Rationale of Textual Criticism* (Philadelphia: U of Philadelphia P, 1989) 67–93; David Greetham, *Textual Scholarship: An Introduction*, corrected reprint (New York: Garland, 1994) 325, 370–71.

[3] See for example Wendy J. Philips-Rodriguez's condemnation of "textual eugenics": "A Discussion about Textual Eugenics: Still Searching for the Perfect *Mahābhārata*?" *Variants* 6 (2007): 166.

[4] Paul Eggert, "The Aims and Methods of the Anglo-American Tradition of Critical Editing," *Securing the Past, Rescuing the Present: A Workshop and Symposium on Cross-Disciplinary Theory and Practice*, North-West University, Potchefstroom, 24 Feb. 2011. See also David Greetham, "What is Textual Scholarship?" *A Companion to the History of the Book*, ed. Simon Eliot & Jonathan Rose (Chichester: Wiley-Blackwell, 2009) 21-23.

The quest to bring together information about the text and the many contexts of its genesis (the mind of the author, the author's other works, the novel's social and literary environments, its historical moment, publishing conditions throughout its history) might also be considered a futile quest, a waste of effort and medium (whether paper or electronic memory). But I know that I, like Ben Jonson's ideal reader, want to understand the book I take in hand (even if I am in fact viewing it on a screen).[5] And if one such reader does exist, others may exist. The editor can be a servant to such a reader: a harmless drudge who provides possible answers to questions asked and unasked, saving the reader much labour and providing illumination.[6] I think that books containing stories, and the stories they contain, should not be treated only as commodities: they are a potential communication from the mind of the creative and originating author to the mind of the reader.[7]

We complain when telephonic communication has a high ratio of noise to signal, but with "texts" my impression is that we ought to celebrate the noise of introduced errors as some kind of alternative signal that deserves to be privileged alongside the text upon which it is heterodyned. But we need to consider that it is strange that we accord such peculiar treatment not to all "texts" but only to literary texts: we implicitly exclude texts such as plane tickets and (more importantly) funding applications to go to conferences to talk about the evanescence and mutability of the text.[8] But I think there are still places where the editor of literary texts can legitimately hope to restore lost meaning and simplify confusion.

I assume that a literary text such as a novel tells a story, and that a normal reader will want at least to follow the story, and that some readers might like to know more about some points in or aspects of the story and its place amidst the author's other works and in the world, or the story of how the story came to be. And I assume that the editor's job is to facilitate this, and my editorial intention is to do so as best I can.

---

[5] Ben Jonson, "To the Reader": *Ben Jonson*, ed. C.H. Herford & Percy & Evelyn Simpson, rev. ed., vol. 8 (Oxford: Clarendon, 1954) 27.

[6] In general, it seems to be accepted that one reason for editors' activities is the benefit of at least some readers at some times. See: T.H. Howard-Hill, "Why Bibliography Matters," *A Companion to the History of the Book*, ed. Simon Eliot & Jonathan Rose (Chichester: Wiley-Blackwell, 2009) 15; Philips-Rodriguez 169.

[7] See John Gouws on agency, conduct and respect: "Why 'Text Happens' Won't Do for Fulke Greville (or Anyone Else)," *Textual Scholarship and the Material Book*, ed. Wim Van Mierlo, *Variants* 6 (2007) (25-29); also John Feather, "The British Book Market 1600–1800," *A Companion to the History of the Book*, ed. Simon Eliot & Jonathan Rose (Chichester: Wiley-Blackwell, 2009) 234.

[8] See Gouws 21.

That Hideous Strength: Lewis's Readers

Lewis attracts more than one type of reader. Some read him because he is a Christian author; some because he is a scholar; some will read works in a particular genre because they like the genre; some of course read him for more than one reason. Science-fiction enthusiasts—and it is a genre about which readers tend to be either hot or cold—may find the Christianity implicit and explicit in *That Hideous Strength* (and the entire Ransom trilogy) attractive, repellent, or something in between. Those who are not Christians, and even some Christians, may find annotations enlightening or interesting or useful. Those who read *That Hideous Strength* because it is by Lewis, and who would not ordinarily read science fiction, may find annotations concerning the work's genre of use or interest. Lewis's scholarly interests underpin the trilogy as a whole and the individual novels: any reader, whether primarily interested in Lewis's scholarship or not, may appreciate elucidation here.

Over half a century has passed since *That Hideous Strength* was published and the world has changed more with every passing decade. At the same time, ordinary readers, while enjoying access to more and more facts, have less and less integrated knowledge and historical sense. What kind of food is "junket"? How short was a short skirt in 1945? What is "composition stuff" or "rubberoid"? While I think the editor should use annotations to bridge the gap between their originals and the conventions of the target audience, as a matter of general principle I think that editions (and translations) should *not* try to elide or gloss over such differences by silently amending the original text. I am not even certain that documented emendation of a text, simply to bring it up to date, can be justified. Texts treated thus can only lead the reader into a false sense of security, and, of course, the up-to-date version instantly becomes dated. I remember my childhood Enid Blytons: I had some books (probably inherited from my parents) where references to money were to pounds, shillings and pence, and some more recent editions in which editors had converted a shilling to "10 pence", and so on. It was all equally alien to me, anyway (although I found references to half-crowns and ten-shilling notes romantic), but I imagine British children would have found prices in the modern money bizarrely low. Retaining the old money would have signposted the fact that the books were older than their readers. And to keep fiction up to date so that readers are never confronted by anything that is not part of their daily life, prices would have to track inflation, references to blue bags (as treatment for stings) would have to be replaced by references to hydrocortisone ointment, and so on… One is reminded of Orwell's *1984*. Any notion of making older texts accessible to modern readers has in the end to be a half-baked theory that can never be fully implemented, and should not be implemented—even when we achieve the appropriate Orwellian technology.

That Hideous Strength is a product of the early 1940s. If I change all the spellings and punctuations to conform with today's conventions, I change the flavour of the book so that

its accidental features no longer match its contents. And, of course, any modernised version I make will be out of date in less than a decade. A version that presents the text as it should or could have been in 1945 will be readable by all and usable by scholars for much longer—maybe until a complete manuscript witness turns up, or proper cybernetic text/reader interfaces are perfected.

The critics who write about *That Hideous Strength* have never, up to now, except for one, considered which edition of the novel they are using.[9] An edition of the text of *That Hideous Strength* seems long overdue: critics should be aware at least of how they differ. And for a long time the novel has been available only in the American edition, although "it appears that [Lewis] thought of the British editions [of his works] as the norm".[10] Now HarperCollins, a subsidiary of a world-wide conglomerate concerned not primarily with publishing novels but with marketing texts as commodities, has the publishing rights and appears to be issuing both print and electronic versions of the same faulty text, based without clear acknowledgement on the American edition and containing errors introduced over the decades since 1946.[11]

[9] The exception is David Lake, "The Variant Texts of *That Hideous Strength*," *The Ring Bearer: Journal of The Inner Ring: The Mythopoeic Literature Society of Australia* 7 (1989): 52–58.
[10] Walter Hooper, e-mail to the author, 16 Nov. 2008.
[11] I deal with this very fully in Introduction 2: "The Text".

That Hideous Strength: Critical Responses

In the survey that follows I try to limit my discussion of critical responses to *That Hideous Strength* to criticism of *That Hideous Strength* and, where appropriate, to the Ransom trilogy. Much, much more has been written about Lewis than he ever wrote, prolific though he was, and, even within the constraints of criticism relevant to *That Hideous Strength*, it is impossible for me to cover everything I have read, or to have read everything written.

Lewis writes:

> [There is] a question which I never asked myself until a few years ago. Can I say with certainty that any evaluative criticism has ever actually helped me to understand any great work of literature or any part of one?
>
> When I enquire what helps I have had in this matter I seem to discover a somewhat unexpected result. The evaluative critics come at the bottom of the list.
>
> At the top comes Dryasdust. Obviously I have owed, and must continue to owe, far more to editors, textual critics, commentators, and lexicographers than to anyone else. Find out what the author actually wrote and what the hard words meant and what the allusions were to, and you have done far more for me than a hundred new interpretations and assessments could ever do.
>
> I must put second that despised class, the literary historians; I mean the really good ones […]. These have helped me, first of all, by telling me what works exist. But still more by putting them in their setting; thus showing me what demands they were meant to satisfy, what furniture they presupposed in the minds of their readers. They have headed me off from false approaches, taught me what to look for, enabled me in some degree to put myself into the frame of mind of those to whom they were addressed. This has happened because such historians on the whole have taken Arnold's advice by getting themselves out of the way. They are concerned far more with describing books than with judging them.
>
> […]
>
> In my experience a good commentator or a good literary historian is more likely [than an evaluative critic], without a word of praise or blame, to set us right [if we are misreading]. And so is an independent rereading in a happy hour. If we have to choose, it is always better to read Chaucer again than to read a new criticism of him. [12]

Any list of literary historians and commentators must begin with Walter Hooper, whose compendious *C.S. Lewis: Companion and Guide* and three thick volumes of Lewis's collected and edited letters simplify the work of anyone working on Lewis.[13] Thorson provides a list of letters that escaped the *Collected Letters*.[14] Heck pulls together information about Lewis's papers and publications to show, with graphs, that he produced more in 1945 than any other year.[15] At a closer focus, Kirk draws on the information provided in *That Hideous Strength* to provide a delightfully-drawn map of the countryside in which Edgestow is set.[16]

There are of course many other general reference works on C.S. Lewis or aspects of his work, and many biographies, which include an element of literary history: I cite many of these in the pages and notes to come, but I shall not deal with them here. One short article

---

[12] *An Experiment in Criticism* (1961; Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1992) 121–24.
[13] Walter Hooper, *C.S.Lewis: A Companion and Guide* (London: Fount-HarperCollins, 1996) [*C&G*]; *The Collected Letters of C.S. Lewis*, ed. Walter Hooper, 3 vol. (New York: HarperSanFrancisco, 2004–07).
[14] Stephen Thorson, "The Letters of C.S. Lewis: A Bibliographic Update," *CSL: The Bulletin of the New York C.S. Lewis Society* 39.3 (2008): 1–6.
[15] Joel D. Heck, "C.S. Lewis' Most Prolific Year: 1945," *CSL: The Bulletin of the New York C.S Lewis Society* 41.2 (2010): 1-9.
[16] Tim Kirk, "The Country around Edgestow," map, *Mythlore* [2] (1970): 8.

deals with the publishing history of *That Hideous Strength* : Lake's "The Variant Texts of *That Hideous Strength*".[17] My debt to Lake is shown in Introduction 2 and many Textual Notes. I have found one critic who has provided commentary on *That Hideous Strength*: not in an edition or a book, but a short and tentative set of annotations, posted on the Internet by Arend Smilde with the comment, "Corrections, additions and proposals for new entries are welcome."[18] Smilde is sometimes wrong in the identification of a source (which I note if I can show the error of fact), more frequently correct, and there have been times that I have depended on him for a reference (in which case I acknowledge him in the annotation): for simplicity, I do not mention Smilde in my Annotations in the great number of cases where we have independently found the same thing. There are of course many critics who have provided explanation, literary history, or commentary together with evaluation. At the points where they have provided illumination, I acknowledge them in my Annotations.

As I noted in my Preface, my survey of scholarship on and relevant to *That Hideous Strength* is distributed among the chapters of this Introduction, in order to maintain clarity and avoid repetition. Accordingly, I shall continue my discussion here by surveying some of the criticism that has dealt generally with the trilogy, and discussions of the genre of the trilogy. I shall finish with a look at some examples of serious critical misunderstandings of Lewis's thoughts and words, concluding that these confirm a need for commentary rather than evaluation. Other important segments of my survey will be found in the preliminary discussions to Introduction 3: "Influences" as a whole and to the individual sections within it (especially "The Inklings"), in "Syncretism" (the final section of Introduction 4), and at the end of Preliminary Note D: "Logres" (in Introduction 5). Other works of criticism are alluded to where appropriate throughout this Introduction, or cited in Annotations.

There have been no full-length studies of *That Hideous Strength* up to now, and, in the past quarter-century, there have been only three full-length studies of the Ransom trilogy.[19] Chapters or sections on the novel or the trilogy have appeared in a number of monographs on a wider range of Lewis's fiction, but not all of these are literary criticism, as I noted above. Gibson and Kilby, although sincere admirers of Lewis, and despite Lewis's advice quoted above, implicitly encourage Lewis's readers to read about him rather than to read his works, offering explanatory summaries of plots and Christian assumptions for diffident

---

[17] David Lake, "The Variant Texts of *That Hideous Strength*," *The Ring Bearer: Journal of The Inner Ring: The Mythopoeic Literature Society of Australia* 7 (1989): 52–58.

[18] Arend Smilde, "*That Hideous Strength*: Quotations and Allusions," 12 Jan. 2006, 29 Aug. 2006 <http://www.solcon.nl/arendsmilde/cslewis/reflections/e-thsquotes.htm>. The notes are based on notes for a Dutch translation of *That Hideous Strength*, which was eventually published in 2008. I have not been able to obtain a copy.

[19] David C. Downing, *Planets in Peril: A Critical Study of C.S. Lewis's Ransom Trilogy* (Amherst: U of Massachusetts P, 1992); Jared C. Lobdell, *The Scientifiction Novels of C.S. Lewis: Space and Time in the Ransom Stories* (Jefferson, NC: McFarland, 2004); Sanford Schwartz, *C.S. Lewis on the Final Frontier: Science and the Supernatural in the Space Trilogy* (Oxford: Oxford UP, 2009).

general readers who feel they have "missed a portion of what he had to say."[20] Dickerson and O'Hara demonstrate the ecological soundness of some of Lewis's fiction.[21] Still others provide catalogues and summaries in overviews of *all* of Lewis's biography, thought, criticism and fiction.[22] Most of the readers for whom these overviews are intended would be better served by a reference work, or, better yet, annotations to a reading text that supply guidance and information when and where needed, but not discouraging the reading of the text. [23]

Amongst authors who deal with the Ransom trilogy amidst larger concerns, Adey in *C.S. Lewis: Writer, Dreamer, and Mentor* competently identifies and explores some of Lewis's sources and models, but his book is marred by a tendency to try and psycho-analyse Lewis. Much of his discussion of *That Hideous Strength* is an analysis—not always convincing—of the names Lewis gives people and places, from which he moves to discussing fog in the novel, sources for various elements, and speculating about the psychological (rather than literary, philosophical or symbolic) origin of the severed head for Lewis.[24] Two far more useful studies are by Myers and Ward. In *C.S. Lewis in Context*, Myers argues that "the period between the two world wars was marked by a growing distrust of language, an awareness that language can be used to manipulate behavior in unfair ways, and […] a growing boldness in the analysis of language."[25] She then informatively locates Lewis's fiction within this context, showing the language questions that the works address within a framework of Lewis's other work addressing those questions. Her third chapter is devoted to *That Hideous Strength* and the *Abolition of Man*, and the anxiety that the control of language by authorities can be used for the control of citizens. In *Planet Narnia*, in support of his convincing argument that one planet's traditional significance and associations predominate in each of the Narnia stories, Ward explores Lewis's treatment and presentation of each planet across all Lewis's work.[26] This involves discussions of *That Hideous Strength*, enriched by the juxtaposed discussions of all relevant works, and in turn enriching those discussions.

---

[20] Evan K. Gibson, *C.S. Lewis, Spinner of Tales: A Guide to His Fiction* (Washington, DC: Christian College Consortium; Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1980), see vii; Clyde S. Kilby, *The Christian World of C.S. Lewis* (Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1964), see 9; Clyde S. Kilby, *Images of Salvation in the Fiction of C.S. Lewis* (Wheaton, IL: Harold Shaw, 1978).
Kilby, *Christian World* 7, see also Kilby, *Images* 9.

[21] Matthew Dickerson & David O'Hara, *Narnia and the Fields of Arbol: The Environmental Vision of C.S. Lewis* (Lexington: UP of Kentucky, 2009).

[22] For example: John Peters, *C.S. Lewis: The Man and His Achievement* (Exeter: Paternoster, 1985); Margaret Patterson Hannay, *C.S. Lewis* (New York: Frederick Ungar, 1981);

[23] Examples of reference works on Lewis include: *C&G* and Robert MacSwain & Michael Ward (ed.) *The Cambridge Companion to C.S. Lewis* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 2010). I think Bruce L. Edwards (ed.), *C.S. Lewis: Life, Works, and Legacy*, 4 vol. (Westport, CT: Praeger, 2007) is also a work of encyclopædic reference rather than a collection of critical essays.

[24] Lionel Adey, *C.S. Lewis: Writer, Dreamer, and Mentor*, (Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans; Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1998) 132–41.

[25] Doris T. Myers, *C.S. Lewis in Context* (Kent, OH: Kent State UP, 1994) xii.

[26] Michael Ward, *Planet Narnia: The Seven Heavens in the Imagination of C.S. Lewis*, Kindle ed. (New York: Oxford UP, 2008).

Downing's is the earliest of the studies that deal with the Ransom trilogy only.[27] His 1992 "Critical Study" of the trilogy "is intended to provide the context for an informed reading of the trilogy and to offer a critical assessment of Lewis's literary achievement."[28] He concludes his "critical assessment" with a list of the trilogy's "excellences", concluding with "vision"—"into which Lewis could pour all his ideas, feelings and convictions."[29] In the parts "provid[ing] the context for an informed reading" Downing identifies sources and influences, but here too he implies that Lewis adds ideas— such as "Christian Vision" or "Elements of Classicism and Medievalism"—to already-formulated stories as a kind of extrinsic garnish or for personal psychotherapy. He comments, "But in the end one cannot help but admit the resourcefulness and conviction with which Lewis weaves his worldview into the fabric of his fiction."[30] This model of an author making up a story and then doggedly and resourcefully sitting down to "pour" or "weave" in extraneous personal material is extraordinary and unconvincing.[31]

Lobdell's *Scientifiction Novels of C.S. Lewis* (2004) purportedly deals with the novels as science fiction, focussing on space and time in them. This leads him continually to insist that the series was conceived from the beginning not as a trilogy but as a tetralogy including *The Dark Tower*—a needless and unconvincing multiplication of hypotheses. Apart from this, his discussion is diffuse and not very organised. He frequently argues that Lewis displays mainly eighteenth-century intellectual and literary qualities: this unexpected emphasis is probably related to the absence of *The Discarded Image* in his bibliography.[32]

In *C.S. Lewis on the Final Frontier* (2009), Schwartz deals excitingly with Lewis's engagement with the evolutionary philosophies of his time, arguing that the novels of the Ransom trilogy do not merely oppose various kinds of evolutionary philosophy, but that they provide "transfigured" or "sublimated" visions of those philosophies.[33] His work is intended to enable us

> to see his Space Trilogy less as the irreconcilable struggle between an old-fashioned Christian humanism and a new-fangled heresy and more as the effort of a modern Christian writer to sustain and enrich the former through critical engagement with the latter.[34]

Thus, he argues, in the face of the N.I.C.E.'s desire to make some humans more than human and reduce the remainder to volition-less sub-humans, *That Hideous Strength* provides "an affirmation of our organic, embodied, and finite condition", and, although he

---

[27] See n. 19.
[28] Downing 7.
[29] Downing 154–56.
[30] Downing 59.
[31] Downing also misreads some details: see the discussion under "Syncretism" (Introduction 4).
[32] Lobdell, *Scientifiction* 40–41, 53–55, 94, 136–39, 152. See also xxvi below.
[33] Schwartz 12–18, 138.
[34] Schwartz 18.

downplays human rationality here, he does so in order to highlight the fact that the novels provide positive antidotes for the ills they depict so negatively.[35]

Critics generally agree that *Out of the Silent Planet* is amongst other things a refutation of "scientism"—understood as a belief that science can solve all social and human problems—and the violently anthropocentric and materialist world-view inculcated in Wells' *First Men in the Moon*, Stapledon's *First and Last Men*, and Haldane's *Possible Worlds*.[36] In general, the criticism examining the trilogy as part of Lewis's disagreement with philosophy implicit in the fiction of Wells, Stapledon, and Haldane is competent: Neuleib, Bailey, and Peters all provide focussed, text-based discussions of Lewis and Wells; Heck provides a concise overview of the general disagreement between Lewis and Haldane.[37] Aeschliman's book tends to be somewhat vague and general, while Myers covers much the same ground—Lewis's concern with knowledge and how it can serve humanity—more convincingly.[38]

The one debt to Wells that I have not seen noted is Ransom's confusion about his own identity—a tendency to think of himself as more than one person—when first lost and alone on Mars.[39] Bedford, alone in Cavor's space-ship, with no certainty of reaching Earth, experiences exactly the same confusion.[40] Presumably Ransom experiences these delusions, otherwise not clearly explained and never explored further by character or author, because Bedford did so first.

But because the world-view Lewis inculcates is spiritual, and because he incorporates supernatural elements in his work, some critics question whether *Out of the Silent Planet* can be science fiction. On the other hand, Bailey and Schwartz both note that Lewis, to explore the philosophies where he disagrees with Wells, uses the techniques of Wells' science-fiction.[41] The question of genre becomes more pressing with *Perelandra*, and even more so with *That Hideous Strength*, where the action is set on Earth—see note 1 to page 5. Thus the

---

[35] Schwartz ch. 3; 139.

[36] Mark R. Hillegas, *The Future as Nightmare: H.G. Wells and the Anti-Utopians* (New York: Oxford UP, 1967) 140–44; H.G Wells, *The First Men in the Moon* (London: George Newnes, 1901); Olaf Stapledon, *Last and First Men: A Story of the Near and Far Future* (1930; Harmondsworth: Penguin, 1963); J.B.S. Haldane, *Possible Worlds and Other Essays* (London: Chatto & Windus, 1927).

[37] Janice Witherspoon Neuleib, "Technology and Theocracy: The Cosmic Voyages of Wells and Lewis," *Extrapolation* 16.2 (1975): 130–36; K.V. Bailey, "H.G. Wells and C.S. Lewis: Two Sides of a Visionary Coin," *H.G. Wells Under Revision: Proceedings of the International H.G. Wells Symposium London, July 1986*, ed. Patrick Parrinder & Christopher Rolfe (Selinsgrove: Susquehanna UP; London: Associated UPs, 1990) 226–36; Thomas C. Peters, "The War of the Worldviews: H.G. Wells and Scientism versus C.S. Lewis and Christianity," *The Pilgrim's Guide: C.S. Lewis and the Art of Witness*, ed. David Mills (Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1998) 203-220; Joel D. Heck, "JBS: The Life and Work of J.B.S. Haldane: Interactions with C.S. Lewis," *CSL: The Bulletin of the New York C.S. Lewis Society* 38.6 (2007): 14–16.

[38] Michael D. Aeschliman, *The Restitution of Man: C.S. Lewis and the Case against Scientism* (Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1983); Myers, *C.S. Lewis in Context*.

[39] *Out of the Silent Planet* (London: Bodley Head-John Lane, 1938) ch. 8–9.

[40] Wells, *First Men in the Moon* ch. 20.

[41] Bailey 226; Schwartz 23.

genre of *That Hideous Strength* and the genre of the trilogy as a whole have attracted a good deal of critical attention. For example: Quinn tentatively catalogues *Perelandra* as fantasy;[42] Elgin treats the whole trilogy as fantasy;[43] Hume argues that the novels are romances and Schwartz that *That Hideous Strength* is a Gothic romance;[44] Walsh assumes and Lobdell argues that the novels are science fiction;[45] Duriez defends them as fantasy, but his title is "The Romantic Writer".[46]

This anxiety is purely on the part of his critics: Lewis feels no need to conform to any one genre. So he combines three of the science-fiction modes he defines in "On Science Fiction" in various proportions in the trilogy: satire or prophecy arising from showing what current trends could lead to; speculative fiction depicting the answers to various supposals; and fantastic tales.[47] He also claims that Lindsay's *Voyage to Arcturus* taught him that other planets should be used for "*spiritual* adventures": Sellin and Adey respectively show Lindsay's influence on *Perelandra* and *Out of the Silent Planet*.[48] Lewis calls *Out of the Silent Planet* " 'science-fiction'—[…] 'future-romanz' " in one letter, the first two books a "cross" of "supernatural" and "Scientifiction" in another, and the trilogy "a Romance" in a third—while the subtitle to *That Hideous Strength* calls that novel a "fairy-tale".[49] The demand that a work should be capable of being simply pigeonholed is inexplicable but seems very strong, but surely an exact, unique generic classification should not be a pre-requisite for enjoying the novels, although it may be of practical importance to booksellers and librarians. Nardo's argument that Lewis uses appropriate and decorous traditional generic styles for the various planets of the trilogy, and Urang's differentiation between myth (or mythopoeia) and allegory and exploration of the dynamics of introducing belief into fantasy are more interesting and useful than debates about how to categorise the works.[50]

---

[42] William A. Quinn, "Science Fiction's Harrowing of the Heavens," *The Transcendent Adventure: Studies of Religion in Science Fiction/Fantasy*, ed. Robert Reilly, Contributions to the Study of Science Fiction and Fantasy XII (Westport, CT: Greenwood, 1985) 37-54.
[43] Don D. Elgin, *The Comedy of the Fantastic: Ecological Perspectives on the Fantasy Novel*, Contributions to the Study of Science Fiction and Fantasy XV (Westport, CT: Greenwood, 1985).
[44] Kathryn Hume, "C.S. Lewis' Trilogy: A Cosmic Romance," *Modern Fiction Studies* 20.4 (1974–75): 505–17; Schwartz 91–97.
[45] Chad Walsh, "The Re-Education of the Fearful Pilgrim," *The Longing for a Form: Essays on the Fiction of C.S. Lewis*, ed. Peter J. Schakel (n.p.: Kent State UP, 1977) 64-72; Lobdell, *Scientifiction*.
[46] Colin Duriez, "The Romantic Writer: C.S. Lewis's Theology of Fantasy," *The Pilgrim's Guide: C.S. Lewis and the Art of Witness*, ed. David Mills (Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1998) 98–110.
[47] "On Science Fiction" (1955), *Of This and Other Worlds*, ed. Walter Hooper (London: Collins, 1982) 80–96; see also *Collected Letters* vol. 3 199.
[48] *Collected Letters* vol. 2 753; David Lindsay, *A Voyage to Arcturus* (1920; London: Allison & Busby, 1963); Bernard Sellin, "Journeys into Fantasy: The Fiction of David Lindsay and C.S. Lewis," *A Christian for All Christians: Essays in Honour of C.S. Lewis*, ed. Andrew Walker & James Patrick (London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1990) 98–115; Lionel Adey, *C.S. Lewis: Writer, Dreamer, and Mentor* 26–28; see also Walsh, "Re-Education" 83.
[49] *Collected Letters* vol. 3 1178; vol. 2 753 (also 630); vol. 3 87.
[50] A.K. Nardo, "Decorum in the Fields of Arbol: Interplanetary Genres in C.S. Lewis's Space Trilogy," *Extrapolation* 20.2 (1979): 118-28; Gunnar Urang, *Shadows of Heaven: Religion and Fantasy in the Writing of C.S. Lewis, Charles Williams, and J.R.R. Tolkien* (Philadelphia: Pilgrim, 1971).

Although I consider that trying to pin the trilogy down to a single genre is unnecessary, the critics who do so are not actively misreading the texts. Some of the critics of the trilogy show strange errors, arising in some cases from an active dislike of his use of traditional or Christian themes, and sometimes apparently from ignorance. I shall conclude this section of my survey by discussing some of these, as their existence is a strong argument for the need for critical editions of all the novels.

There are some strange readings of Lewis's presentation of the Great Dance of Creation in *Perelandra* chapter 17 (and alluded to in *Out of the Silent Planet* chapter 19), arising, in Elgin and Lobdell, from a failure to read the works on their own terms and an apparent preference for speculation rather than the known or discoverable facts about Lewis's life and thought.[51] Thus Elgin states, "the *Great Dance* in which all creatures participate is perhaps the clearest statement in all fantasy literature of an ecological ethic and perspective" and "The interdependence of all things, particularly dependent in the climax ecosystem, suggests incredible complexity, complexity as absent from the tragic musings of a strictly 'chain of being' universe as it is in the ideals of Romantic pastoralism."[52] While obviously aware that the "chain of being" is important to Lewis, Elgin does not appreciate how Lewis's Great Dance arises from his delight in the Medieval model of the great chain of being, discussed in Introduction 4.[53] He does not elucidate why a "strictly 'chain of being' universe" should (or does) give rise to "tragic musings", nor does he explain or define "Romantic pastoralism" and its relevance to his argument. Lobdell deals with the Great Dance by speculating about Lewis's appreciation of music. No speculation would have been needed, had he read Lewis's many letters to Arthur Greeves on the subject of music, but *They Stand Together*, like *The Discarded Image*, is absent from his bibliography.[54]

The area where Lewis's critics show the most confusion is that of his supernatural characters in the Ransom novels, specifically the Oyéresu—the planetary powers—and the lesser beings called eldila. I discuss these in detail in Introduction 4 and a number of Annotations, so here I shall concentrate on critical misreadings, with minimal additional explanation.

At the climax of *That Hideous Strength*, the Oyerésu from beyond the Moon descend and possess Merlin, enabling him to become the instrument of Heaven's vengeance upon the servants of the Dark Eldils.[55] Carnell is a sympathetic critic: he organises his discussion around aspects of Lewis's search for, and explorations of, "joy", drawing on all Lewis's

---

[51] Elgin 25-27, 88; Lobdell, *Scientifiction.*
[52] Elgin 25–26; 27.
[53] Elgin 88.
[54] Lobdell 106-08; the letters of Lewis to Greeves were published as: *They Stand Together: Letters of C.S. Lewis to Arthur Greeves (1914-1963)*, ed. Walter Hooper (London: Collins, 1979)—Lewis's letters about music and musical appreciation can be found at 69–71, 75, 81, 89, 121, 146–47, 150–52, 192, 194, 222–23, 226, 233–34, 298, 355, 407, 454–55 & 475.
[55] *That Hideous Strength* ch. 15.

work, including his poetry; his discussions of the difference between myth and allegory are informed and sensible.[56] Yet he writes of the descent of the Oyéresu that "the Holy Ghost descends on St Anne's" and his ensuing description shows that he does not understand what has happened, and that he is unaware of any distinction between created beings and the Third Person of the Trinity.[57]

The organisation of heaven is hierarchical, and the Oyéresu should not be expected to be equal in status. We are told that the Oyarsa of Glundandra-Jupiter is the greatest of the Oyéresu, and that Jupiter is in some way the greatest of the planets.[58] When Lewis describes Jupiter's descent on St. Anne's, he calls him "King of Kings" and notes that his glory is such that he was "known to men in old times as Jove and under that name, by fatal but not inexplicable misprision, confused with his Maker—so little did they dream by how many degrees the stair even of created being rises above him."[59] This seems perfectly clear, if the fact of hierarchy amongst created beings is accepted. But Filmer writes:

> Lewis complains that Jupiter or Jove has been "confused with his Maker", but his own text retains this confusion and ambiguity by referring to Jove as "King of Kings, through whom the joy of creation principally blows across those fields of Arbol", although Lewis is careful to point out that the hierarchy of heaven ascends "by ... many degrees … above him" […]. But Lewis's logic here is shaky. If indeed Jove is far from the height of the heavenly hierarchy, by what right can he be called "King of Kings"? That, surely, is a term for God alone.[60]

Filmer's own preconceptions make it impossible for her to accept Lewis's plain words. There is no reason why any king pre-eminent among other kings cannot be called "King of Kings". The composite title "King of Kings and Lord of Lords" is ascribed three times to the Son of God in the New Testament, always in eschatological contexts, but "King of Kings" alone is ascribed to no Person of the Trinity in the Bible.[61] If anything, the primary association with "King of Kings" alone is probably Cyrus or Darius or the other Persian kings. Within the context of the captains or kings of the various planets, Glundandra-Jupiter can with great propriety be called "King of Kings". Filmer's objection is meaningless and radically unsympathetic: her confusion in this (to her) alien world of hierarchy is made clear when she asks, "Is Jupiter an archangel, analogous, perhaps, to Michael the archangel? If so, Lewis fails to make it clear."[62] The failure here does not, I think, lie with the writer, who has Dimble tell us, "Technically, [the Oyeresu] are

---

[56] Corbin Scott Carnell, *Bright Shadow of Reality: C.S. Lewis and the Feeling Intellect* (Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1974) 98-99, 105-10.
[57] Carnell 98; 98-99.
[58] *Out of the Silent Planet* postscript; *That Hideous Strength* ch. 15 I.
[59] *That Hideous Strength* ch. 15.
[60] Kath Filmer, *The Fiction of C.S. Lewis: Mask and Mirror* (New York: St Martin's, 1993) 127.
[61] 1 Timothy 6:15, Revelation 17:14 & 19:16.
[62] Filmer, *Fiction* 27; Lewis notes elsewhere that archangels are relatively low in the angelic hierarchies: *The Discarded Image: An Introduction to Medieval and Renaissance Literature* (1964; Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1994) 73.

Intelligences."[63] Filmer also systemically appears to conflate Christianity with morality or theism or supernaturalism, and she evidently does not understand the action of Satan or a demon in *Perelandra*.[64]

Knight makes a different error, indeed confusing the Oyarsa of Jupiter with his Maker. He states, "All [the Oyéresu] are under the rulership of the supreme Godhead, who is known as *Maleldil or Glund-Oyarsa*" [*emphasis mine*]: this equation of creator and creature is no slip of the pen, since Knight proceeds to elaborate on it.[65]

Walsh is partly wrong when he describes the Oyéresu as being not "independent gods" but "more like the highest rank of created spirits".[66] Certainly the Oyéresu are created spirits, but, as we have seen, "the stair even of created being rises above" even the greatest of them by "many degrees".[67]

It seems, then, that Lewis's readers, whether casual, admiring, diffident, hating, confident, or scholarly could benefit, not from more criticism, but from annotation and explanation, and that Lewis found such efforts useful in his own reading.

---

[63] Ch. 13 IV 302.
[64] Filmer, *Fiction* 3, 9, *etc* ; I discuss Filmer's confusion about some of the action in *Perelandra* in Introduction 4.
[65] Gareth Knight, *The Magical World of the Inklings: J.R.R.Tolkien, C.S.Lewis, Charles Williams, Owen Barfield* (Shaftesbury: Element Books, 1990) 27.
[66] Chad Walsh, *The Literary Legacy of C.S. Lewis* (London: Sheldon, 1979) 106.
[67] *That Hideous Strength* ch. 15.

That Hideous Strength: What Kind of Edition?

So, given a novel, an author who wrote many other things than the novel under consideration, readers of all kinds, there would be value in an annotated critical edition, providing information about the text itself and the story it conveys. This information should be helpful to readers of all kinds.

Many editors, I suppose, also want to protect "their" authors, to make the author's brilliances clear beyond all doubt, to enable forgiveness or comprehension or excuse for foibles. I certainly feel this. But, as the editing progressed I found myself less inclined to intervene, more respectful of the facts, more desirous of simply laying out the variants, less inclined to intrude.

Why, then, not offer a variorum edition? Give the critic and reader all three witnesses side by side? But I have said that I think readers are important, and that a story should be presented so as to be enjoyed merely as a story, even if the information is provided to enable the reader to answer questions about the genesis of the text being read. The number of accidental variants in *That Hideous Strength* vastly outnumbers the substantives, so that getting to grips with the differences in a variorum edition would be very hard work, mostly amidst dashes and dots and colons and semi-colons, in which "everyone must become an editor before proceeding".[68] This is the labour that I as editor can offer as a gift to the scholar who wants to know, while also providing the casual reader with a clear reading text. As the editor of the manuscripts of *The Hobbit* observes, "I […] slowly came to the conclusion that the edition of a manuscript should be, well, edited."[69] And the same, I think, is true of the editorial presentation of any textual witnesses. All the work should not be left to the reader. Eggert suggests that "if an edition can do useful things in helping readers to understand" texts and contexts "then its preparation must be a wise use of the editor's time" and that a final intentions edition "captures a route through a text" instance by instance rather than providing a series of "synchronic snapshots".

This then requires the despised *apparatus criticus* in its subordinate position at the bottom of the page.[70] Or should one consider an electronic edition? Computers and other electronic devices are already changing the way in which we read, and I now own several hundred works (some free, some for which I have paid—but less than I would have paid for a paper codex) that are stored electronically and that I read on one of several devices. They permit easy searching, and allow a form of electronic dog-earing; some permit the

[68] Peter L. Shillingsburg, *Scholarly Editing in the Computer Age: Theory and Practice*, 3rd ed. (Ann Arbor: U of Michigan P, 1996) 165. See also Greetham, *Textual Scholarship* 354–55.
[69] John D. Rateliff, *The History of the Hobbit*, rev. & expanded 1-vol. ed. (London: HarperCollins, 2011) xxix.
[70] David Atkinson summarises the difficulties: "Editing the Child Ballads: Agency, Intention, and the Problem of Version," *Variants* 6 (2007): 137.

insertion of notes and highlights. Naturally we think of what else an electronic text might permit. Some are very enthusiastic:

> Fortunately, now that we have the technology to make more sophisticated analysis we also have technology to help us present the text in more suitable ways. One of the major advantages of electronic textuality is the possibility to avoid privileging one version of the text over another in the textual apparatus. Technology can be used to incorporate variants in a way that is not practical in a codex edition. When the restraints posed by print layout are eliminated, the potential of digitized material and the advantages of hypertext can render the results of textual analysis in a format that is most conducive to the type of information that needs to be represented. Digital technology does not have to remain instrumental to the work of the textual scholar. Indeed, it may be able to provide a more suitable place to preserve and present literary works with multiple witnesses.[71]

Of course, the ability to bring multiple texts or variants into one environment, with all kinds of tools enabling comparison and searching would be valuable to the textual scholar, and would make the work easier. But such excitement about the notion of using computer technology to present the evidence of multiple witnesses to a reader seems short-sighted: an ordinary reader, concerned to read a story but desiring access to other information as and when it is wished for, needs a text that can be read easily, without calling too much attention to its own characteristics. The reader would need to learn to drive a complex electronic text, quite apart from the facts that electronic devices are expensive, destroyed rather than merely damaged by water and extremes of temperature, and require power. The more important of these *caveats* have been noted:

> […] an editor learns quickly that there are no ideal solutions: a book presentation has disadvantages, but an electronic solution has disadvantages too; you put in a lot of work and have to cross your fingers that others take what they want without getting it wrong.[72]

and

> In theory, the electronic environment seems suitable to escape the two-dimensional page, and to offer more layers to the user. However, even if we can find an electronic structure that accommodates all the complexities of these fluid texts, all their variants, sources, parallels and deviations, the user will still only be able to grasp small parts of the complexity at a time. Even with the use of colours, pop-up screens, multiple display-modes and the like, it will still be impossible to fashion the edition in such a way that the layers and complexities will be clear to the user of the edition. The editor will also need to provide long introductions or studies to guide the user through the material.[73]

Consider possible ways of presenting a short paragraph from *That Hideous Strength*. In the paper pages to come I shall present it as follows opposite (with the shading indicating material excised from the abridged version).

---

[71] Philips-Rodriguez 172; see also Greetham, *Textual Scholarship* 357.
[72] J.C.C. Mays, "Coleridge and Yeats: The Romantic Voice," *Variants* 6 (2007): 72.
[73] Mariken Teeuwen, "The Impossible Task of Editing a Ninth-Century Commentary: The Case of Martianus Capella," *Variants* 6 (2007): 204.

Mark gaped.[a] The discovery of how much Dimble knew had suddenly inverted his whole picture of the situation. No logic was left in him.[b] "Nevertheless," continued Dimble, "knowing all this—knowing that you may be only the bait in the trap—[c] I will take a risk. I will risk things compared with which both our lives are a triviality. If you seriously wish to leave the N.I.C.E., I will help you."

[a] gaped.] *BA*; gasped. *M*
[b] No logic […] in him.] *M only*.
[c] trap—] *BA*; trap, *M*

But one could present all the information together in a new kind of variorum format which would work on screen or page.

A	Mark	gaped.	
B			The discovery of how much Dimble knew had suddenly inverted his
M		gasped.	

A			"Nevertheless,"
B	whole picture of the situation.		
M		No logic was left in him.	

A	continued Dimble, "knowing all this—knowing that you may be only		bait in
B		the	
M			

A	the	trap—	I will take a risk. I will risk things compared with which both our lives
B			
M		trap,	

A
B are a triviality. If you seriously wish to leave the N.I.C.E., I will help you."
M

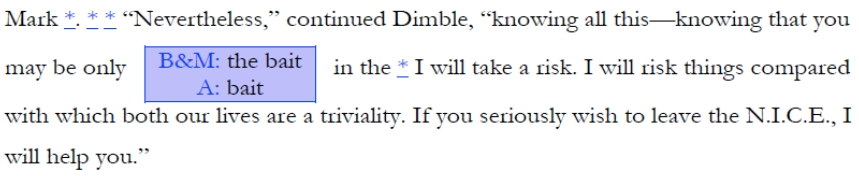
Or the use of colour could provide a "third dimension", expensive to print on paper, but workable on a suitable screen. This too would enable a new kind of variorum presentation.

B A M B+A B+M M+A B+A+M

Mark gaped. gasped. The discovery of how much Dimble knew had suddenly inverted his whole picture of the situation. No logic was left in him. "Nevertheless," continued Dimble, "knowing all this—knowing that you may be only the bait in the trap— trap, I will take a risk. I will risk things compared with which both our lives are a triviality. If you seriously wish to leave the N.I.C.E., I will help you."

Either of the two kinds of display exemplified above would be easier for the reader than the columns or facing pages of a conventional variorum edition. The information is all available, and no version is "privileged" above another. But I do not think either provides a really enjoyable reading experience.

A truly neutral, electronic method of presenting information might involve a conventional symbol for each instance of textual variation, linked to a drop-down menu that reveals the options only when asked. On the screen, it might look something like the following.



In the mock-up above, all instances of variation are dormant (shown by a blue underlined asterisk, indicating a live link), except for one, where the drop-down list is open. Ideally, the reader would be able to have any number of lists open together, and other symbols or colours could be used for links to different kinds of notes. But surely no reader could use such a format with pleasure? And no scholar seeking information about the text would find it preferable to a reading edition with an *apparatus*?

Electronic devices certainly offer exciting ways of storing information and making it accessible and visible, and (where appropriate) interactive. But it seems to me that an annotated reading edition of a novel should be capable of being printed in ordinary codex form, or delivered in some easy electronic-book format, and that the editor should not decline the editor's duty and responsibility of thinking and making decisions. Greetham writes of "the futile pretense that no critical decisions are necessary in editing critical texts, and that Lachmannian stemmatics, or new bibliography, or distributional analysis, or computer programs can protect the editor from having to think": this brings us back to my initial point, that the editor has to take responsibility.[74]

[74] Greetham, *Textual Scholarship* 355, see also 324–25.

Editorial Decisions

I offer here a collated, "eclectic" edition, with a composite copy-text: the text of the Avon abridged version where possible, but the 1945 Bodley Head text for passages excised from the abridged version. The reasons for these choices are discussed and justified in Introduction 2: "The Text". Occasionally I introduce an editorial emendation, always with due trepidation, if I am convinced that all the witnesses are at fault.

Each point where there is a textual variant, hence each entry in the *Apparatus Criticus*, is indicated by a superscript letter at that point in the text, with the *apparatus* entry as a footnote. This militates slightly against the tendency of the *apparatus* to get lost in its traditional and subordinate position at the bottom of the page, as there is always an indication that there is something to look at in the *Apparatus Criticus*. At the same time, a small superscript letter is easily ignored by a reader who is not interested in textual questions.

Textual Notes follow as a new paragraph immediately after the *apparatus* entries that they elucidate, and are marked by a pointing hand at the beginning of the first line of the note.

The only variants that I have not documented, and silently emended if they occur in the copy-text at that point, are places where italics have flowed over from a word into the ensuing punctuation, and places where words are broken and hyphenated at a line-break and this is clearly the only reason for the hyphen (where there is any doubt, I document it as usual).

I show the material excised from the abridgement by grey shading. This has several advantages: it is immediately obvious; the scope of each excision and the quantity and range of the excisions are clear; the shading does not obtrude on the text when the reader is focussed on the text.[75] Indicating excised material by any kind of bracketing always requires a special act of attentive memory in the reader, particularly where long passages have been excised.

Grey shading also indicates items in the *apparatus* that seem to me to be evidently the result of the abridgement only: such things changing an initial letter from lower to upper case when a word becomes the first word in a sentence because the first part of the sentence has been excised. Where the reason for a change is arguably not only because of the abridgement, the entry in the apparatus is not shaded.

---

[75] I had not seen this done before when I decided to use highlighting, but I learned later that other editors have used highlighting: for example, there is an on-line variorum edition of Darwin that uses both highlighting and colour: Dirk van Hulle, "The Preservation of Unfavoured Traces: the First Version of Darwin's Origin of Species," *Securing the Past, Rescuing the Present: A Workshop and Symposium on Cross-Disciplinary Theory and Practice*, North-West University, Potchefstroom, 26 Feb. 2011.

In the text I retain 1940s conventions such as full-stops in "Mr.", "St.", "N.I.C.E." and so on. I also retain in the text the usual (though not completely consistent) positioning of all punctuation within quotation marks, even in cases not of direct speech. I do not like it, but I like less the tendency of editors and translators to try to iron out differences that make it clear that a text is not contemporary. Readers with little historical sensitivity are unlikely to notice minutiae of punctuation, but for the readers who care, the information is there. The novel entered the world—a nexus of social, political and literary contexts—as a material object in the 1940s, and an edition intended to be of use to all kinds of readers and scholars should not ignore the material context any more than the historical contexts.[76] Punctuation norms are part of that. This includes a the double-m-dash, a punctuation mark that some of the witnesses use in addition to (and clearly as different from) the m-dash.

Van Hulle has suggested that genetic criticism could or should be understood in a wider sense than it usually is: as being concerned with all evidence (from a range of sources) regarding how a text comes to be. In my explanatory essays and annotations, as well as in my textual criticism, I hope to "mediate" wherever and as far as necessary "between the text and the envisaged audience", which Paul Eggert defines as the duty of an editor in the Anglo-American tradition. But I hope too that this mediation will also convey the story behind the story, something of how the novel, the creation initially of one man's mind, came to be and continues to be. And I hope that this edition will participate usefully and pleasingly in the transmission of this novel.[77]

[76] Simon Eliot & Jonathan Rose, introduction, *A Companion to the History of the Book*, ed. Simon Eliot & Jonathan Rose (Chichester: Wiley-Blackwell, 2009) 3.
[77] Rüdiger Nutt-Kofoth describes historical-critical editions as both describing and participating in the process of a work's transmission: "Editorial Scholarship and Literary Studies: Reflections on Their Relationship from a German Perspective," *Variants* 6 (2007): 45.

INTRODUCTION 2: THE TEXT

In this chapter I shall outline and discuss the textual and publication history of *That Hideous Strength*, which has up to now received very little attention—and which is more problematic than is acknowledged by the copyright information in recent editions or by the owners of the copyright in the work.

I shall also provide more detailed information about, and justification for, my editorial decisions than was appropriate in the broader overview of chapter 1, and further arguments for the existence of this edition at all.

Only three pages of a very early manuscript of *That Hideous Strength* are extant. Between these scraps and the published novel we have nothing: no later manuscripts, no typescripts, no correspondence with publishers.[1] But we have three first editions: the first British edition (1945), the first American edition (1946), and the first abridged edition (probably 1946). The abridged edition would be irrelevant, except that Lewis himself did the abridgement (working with the first British edition) excising about a third of the novel but revising the two-thirds that remained.

After a description of the manuscript and the three first editions I discuss the further publishing history of the novel briefly, and follow this with a close examination of the editions of the past three decades, showing that none of them is directly based on any first edition. I conclude that a critical edition of *That Hideous Strength* is long overdue, for the benefit of non-specialist readers and scholars alike.

[1] Walter Hooper, personal interview, 4 Nov. 2008.

The Manuscript Fragments

Despite the various clearings-out of old papers that Lewis's possessions underwent over the years, three pages of a very early (or first?) draft of *That Hideous Strength* survive. These were deposited in the Bodleian Library in Oxford by Walter Hooper at different times, and are collected and bound together with quantities of other manuscripts and typescripts.[2] I use the abbreviation "L" for these fragments and the manuscript/s from which they come.

The first fragment (L1) is a half-filled page, and covers an early draft of the opening three paragraphs of the novel.[3] In this fragment, as in the published text, we find Jane lonely and recalling the marriage-service's reference to "mutual society". In both, she has completed her housework for the day, but in the fragment she is explicitly dismissive of her mother's generation's way of doing things. However, at the stage of the fragment, her husband is Peter Ruddock, not Mark Studdock, and they have been married a fortnight, not six months. And Jane is a biochemist, not a student of English literature. Jane may, in Lewis's original scheme, have been far more involved than she is in the questions about the right use of the sciences that the novel addresses.

The second fragment (L2) is a full page of writing, numbered "157" in the top right-hand corner by Lewis.[4] The first two paragraphs of this second fragment correspond to two longer paragraphs from the beginning of chapter 9 V of the published novel, and the remainder of the page corresponds to an *earlier* passage, from chapter 9 IV—evidence of a good deal of revision between the manuscript fragments and the published novel.[5] The second fragment is skeletal compared with the more expansive passages to which it corresponds, but there was obviously a good deal of reorganising of material between L and publication, and we cannot say for certain that this fragment was expanded, or whether all the material that appears to correspond to it had an analogue elsewhere in the manuscript. The fragment we have shows the early association of "Bragdon"—it is not necessarily a wood here—and a magical tradition descended from Númenor/Atlantis. The fragment continues to show that MacPhee's frustration at what he considers the Director's inaction, and the Director's assertion that he did not call the company together and has no power to dissolve it, are part of the story at this early stage.

---

[2] A fragment of *That Hideous Strength*, ms., BOD 132 Dep. d. 808 (fol. 68^{v}), Bodleian Library, Oxford; Undated fragments of a draft of *That Hideous Strength* (1945), ms., BOD 132 Dep. d. 241 (fol. 2$^{r\ \&\ v}$), Bodleian Library, Oxford. Thank-you to Walter Hooper who, as depositor of the manuscripts, gave me permission to have copies made of them, and to Colin Harris (Reader Services Librarian and Superintendent, Modern Papers and John Johnson Reading Room, Bodleian Library) who guided me through the regulations and organised the copies for me in December 2006.

[3] BOD 132 Dep. d. 808 (fol. 68^{v}): see Appendix A 414–15; *That Hideous Strength* 7.

[4] BOD 132 Dep. d. 241 (fol. 2^{r}). This page and the page with L3 are separate leaves, each with writing on one side only: they are pasted onto either side of a single leaf in the volume in which they have been bound, and there is no reason to suppose that they were originally contiguous.

[5] See Appendix A 418–19 & 416–17; *That Hideous Strength* 209–11 & 212–13.

The third fragment (L3) consists of page empty except for "III" and one line of writing at the top, and corresponds to the opening of chapter 15 in the published novel.[6] It shows that the visitation of the Oyéresu, with Ransom's room the focus, was part of the story from an early stage.

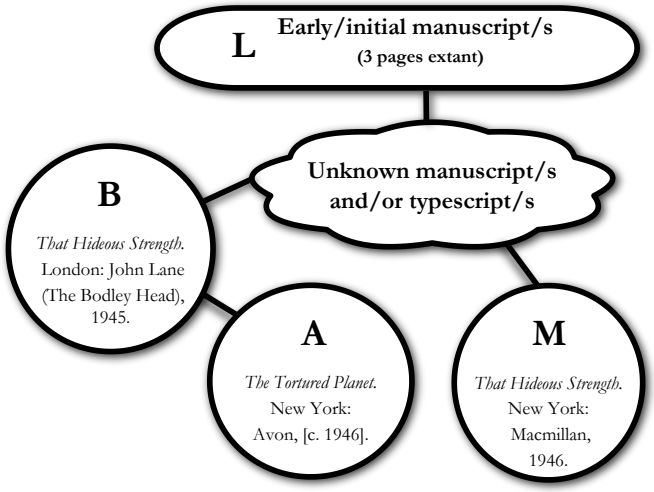
Merlin is not named in the second or the third fragment, although he appears in the corresponding published passages, but this tells us nothing about whether he was envisaged as a character with that name (and legend) from early on. If not Merlin, there must have been some practitioner of "Atlantean" magic.

[6] BOD 132 Dep. d. 241 (fol. 2^{v}): see Appendix A 420–21; *That Hideous Strength* 340.

The First Editions

In 1989, *The Ring Bearer*, the journal of the Mythopoeic Literature Society of Australia, published a seven-page article by David Lake entitled "The Variant Texts of *That Hideous Strength*". In this article, Lake identifies four important editions of *That Hideous Strength*: an edition published in London in 1945 by John Lane The Bodley Head, and an abridged version of this edition published by Pan in 1955; an edition published in New York by Macmillan in 1946, and a Macmillan paperback edition published in 1965 (which he equates with a 1983 edition published in London by Pan).[7] Lake goes on to discuss some of the differences between the 1945 Bodley Head edition and the 1946 Macmillan edition.[8] He concludes with a consideration of some of the revisions made in the abridged edition of 1955 to the parts of the Bodley Head text remaining after the abridgement.[9]

Lake was mostly right. Certainly the British and American first editions of *That Hideous Strength* (Bodley Head, 1945 and Macmillan, 1946) exist and certainly they differ—in hundreds of accidentals and around 120 substantives. And the abridgement was indeed based on the Bodley Head edition, but the text Lake knew was not the first abridged edition, which was published around 1946 by Avon Books in New York as *The Tortured Planet*. Walter Hooper lays all this out clearly in his *C.S. Lewis: A Companion and Guide*, and suggests the abbreviations B (for the Bodley Head edition), M (for the Macmillan edition), and A (for the Avon abridged edition).[10] The diagram below shows the stemma for the three first editions, including what we know (and do not know) about versions of the novel before publication.



[7] David Lake, "The Variant Texts of *That Hideous Strength*," *The Ring Bearer: Journal of The Inner Ring: The Mythopoeic Literature Society of Australia* 7 (1989): 52.
[8] Lake 53–57. In my textual notes I indicate the differences noted by Lake, both as a tribute to him for having been the first to deal with them and to show how much greater the difference was than he was aware.
[9] Lake 57–58. In my textual notes I indicate the differences noted by Lake, although he was in fact working with a derivation of the original abridged edition.
[10] *C&G* 240. I use these same abbreviations.

Both Hooper and Lake consider B a better text than M. Hooper states, "Because **B** is clearly superior to **M** it seems that either Lewis, or, more likely, a copy editor at Bodley Head, revised that edition before it was published, whereas the **M** edition seems to have been printed from Lewis's original handwritten manuscript or a typescript of it."[11] Lake writes,

> Indeed, in many variants (quite apart from the paragraphings), M seems to be the "earlier" text of the two, in spite of its 1946 date; and one can easily imagine a change from M to [B], but not vice versa.
>
> […] Several […] improvements, plus the paragraphing, lead me to conclude: both M and [B] were set up from typescripts, but [B] was more carefully sub-edited, and in some places was revised by Lewis himself."[12]

While I do not see why Lake so confidently supposes B and M to have been set from typescripts, I agree with him and with Hooper that B appears to be more sensitively copy-edited, and that Lewis may well have been involved in differences that may well be second thoughts and improvements. These are noted in the textual notes—see, for example, 87[g] and 233[a]. M's copy-editing generally seems to me to be less sympathetic, more mechanical and unimaginative, than B's. The cardinal compass points and the words "Earth" and "Moon" are consistently capitalised—but not always appropriately, as in "if all the Earths are stopped, the fox faces the hounds."[13] M's spelling is British, but occasionally an American "–ize" or "–or" slips through where Lewis must surely have had (and B has) "–ise" or "–our"—see 9[d] and 46[g] as two examples among many.

B, despite being printed under war-time constraints in England,[14] is occasionally more generous with paragraphing than M. Hooper reports, "Lewis was always frugal with paper but as *That Hideous Strength* was published during the war, he was more than usually so. For instance, […] what is one paragraph on page 384 of **M** is divided into 11 paragraphs on page 400-1 of **B**."[15] This suggests that M was set from the "frugal" copy Lewis provided, but that Lewis or an editor at B intervened in the paragraphing.

B occasionally has a gap in place of a letter or punctuation mark (for example 63[f]): this is probably the result of worn type with faulty dressing, presumably more likely under war-time conditions. These instances are dealt with in the textual notes.

Each of M's chapters begins on a new page. In some places, where a chapter would have ended on the first line of a new page, M has changed the text in order to finish the chapter at the bottom of a page, and save a mostly-blank page—see for example 17[a] and 49[e]. Each of B's chapters follows on from the preceding with only a small gap, as required

---

[11] *C&G* 241.
[12] Lake 53.
[13] M347; 312[e].
[14] See Valerie Holman, *Print for Victory: Book Publishing in England 1939–1945* (London: British Library, 2008) appendix 11.
[15] *C&G* 241.

by the war-time economy regulations.[16] There is accordingly no pressure in B to control the length of individual chapters in order to save blank pages, but there would have been a strong desire to save paper across the book as a whole.[17] B ends within three lines of the bottom of a left-hand page, on the last leaf of a short (six-leaf) signature.[18] M has seventeen one-sentence paragraphs and one sentence that is part of a longer paragraph that are not in B.[19] All but one of these sentences are unimportant, and their loss does not affect the novel greatly.[20] At the same time, there is no obvious reason, apart from the reduction in the total length of the novel by eighteen lines, why they should be deleted. I suspect that they are missing from B, with or without Lewis's active participation and/or acquiescence, purely to reduce the length of the novel to an even number of pages, with the final leaf printed on both sides. I have accordingly restored these lost sentences, attested to by M only, since they were probably removed from B for extra-textual considerations, and A's acquiescence here is merely a matter of convenience or forgetfulness.

A provides the information: "Specially abridged by the author" on the title page, and on the *verso*, "Published by The Macmillan Company under the title *That Hideous Strength*. Copyright, 1946, by Clive Staples Lewis. Published by arrangement with The Macmillan Company".[21] This makes it seem as though A is an abridgement of M, but it is not. An examination of the *apparatus* on nearly any page of this edition of the novel will show that there are very many instances, in sections of the text that A has not excised, where B and A agree with each other and disagree with M.[22]

Lewis, in his Preface to the abridged edition, writes, "In reducing the original story to a length suitable for this edition, I believe I have altered nothing but the *tempo* and the manner. I myself prefer the more leisurely pace".[23] No episode or character is lost, and a summary of the plot would be identical whether the full text or the abridgement were summarised.[24] This bears striking witness to Lewis's commitment to story—plot—over detailed authorial discussions of character or theme.[25] This is a potentially exciting

---

[16] Holman 271.
[17] See Holman 63–71.
[18] Signatures A to M are gatherings in sixteen; N plus N* and O plus O* form two more sixteens: the asterisked signatures showing that the gatherings were printed on two sheets: Ronald B. McKerrow, *An Introduction to Bibliography for Literature Students*, corrected impression (1927; Oxford: Clarendon, 1928) 80. P is a gathering of eight leaves. Q (the final signature) appears to be two single leaves followed by a gathering of four leaves: a gathering of eight with the last two leaves used elsewhere—a very economical use of paper.
[19] See 56[e], 63[g], 139[a], 193[a], 193[i], 197[c], 204[b], 208[d], 212[b], 223[b], 236[d], 238[a], 242[h], 270[g], 271[i], 305[a], 362[d], & 398[b]. Lake notes some of these (55–56).
[20] The exception is discussed at 204[c].
[21] Hooper provides details of the arrangement under which the abridgement took place (*C&G* 241–42).
[22] See also *C&G* 241 & Lake 52.
[23] A5; *C&G* 241.
[24] See Lake 52.
[25] See "On Stories" (1947), *Of This and Other Worlds*, ed. Walter Hooper (London: Collins, 1982) especially 25–26 & 44–45.

discussion that has no place here, together with the thorough study of what kind of things he excised, changed and kept that remains to be done. Frustratingly, the copy of B in which Lewis must have made his abridgement was presumably lost or destroyed soon after the type was set for A. He also prepared an abridgement of *Perelandra* which was, in the end, never used: the book is extant, but mislaid, so we have no direct evidence of exactly how Lewis went about revising and excising for abridgements.[26]

Lewis made three kinds of change to B in the preparation of A: excisions; changes to the text arising from, allowing, or replacing excisions; and revisions to the text (roughly two-thirds) not excised. These revisions need to be taken into account in establishing a text of *That Hideous Strength* that reflects authorial revisions, even if those revisions were done to only two-thirds of the work.[27] In places where A disagrees with B, the revision is usually preferable, especially when substantive.[28] A also corrects or improves B's Latin.[29] Finally and perhaps most importantly, there are three instances where A *adds* a sentence—an unusual proceeding in an abridgement—that is obviously not a replacement for a larger chunk of excised text.[30] These additions all improve the clarity of the text.

As Hooper and Lake—the only critics who have engaged with the question of the variant texts of *That Hideous Strength*—acknowledge, neither B nor M is so faulty as to be unreadable or unusable by scholars.[31] But Lake concludes, "One point is now clear: there is *no* single perfect text of *That Hideous Strength*! [B] on the whole is the best; but it needs to be corrected from M and [the abridged edition]. One day, perhaps, a Critical Edition may be needed."[32] And Hooper suggests, "when a critical edition of *That Hideous Strength* is produced, it should make use of the corrections and improvements found in the Abridged Edition [**A**]."[33]

This is, I think, enough to justify an edition—this edition—of *That Hideous Strength*. I shall use B, M, and A as witnesses. I would take A as my copy-text if it provided a witness to the whole novel. As it is, A is my copy-text where possible, and B where A's witness is lacking. It will be seen that very often A confirms (or acquiesces in) B's reading.

---

[26] *C&G* 242; Walter Hooper, telephone interview, 30 Nov. 2011.
[27] *C&G* 242; Lake 52 & 54.
[28] See for example 20[i] & 172[d].
[29] *C&G* 242; Lake 55.
[30] These additions are shown and discussed at 156[c], 212[a] & 402[b]. Hooper and Lake note the sentence about the jackdaw on 402 (*C&G* 242; Lake 58).
[31] *C&G* 242; Lake 54.
[32] Lake 54. Lake was not aware of the existence of A, so he in fact recommended the 1955 edition of A: this does not deprive his conclusion of its point.
[33] *C&G* 242.

Later Publishing History

The later publishing history of *That Hideous Strength* does not provide further witnesses, or material to be taken into account in the preparation of this edition. However, since it is a history of introduced errors and misleading information, it does, although irrelevant to the textual editing of the novel, provide further justification for an edition that uses the first editions as witnesses.

The landmark later editions are as follows. In 1955 Pan Books in London republished A (*The Tortured Planet*) under the title *That Hideous Strength* (A^{1955}, the abridged edition Lake considered).[34] This provides the information, "First published 1945 by John Lane the Bodley Head Ltd. This edition, abridged by the author, published 1955 by Pan Books Ltd." This is accurate in that it acknowledges that the abridgement is derived from B, but misleading, with nothing to tell Lake (or any other reader) that the book is derived from A, not a new abridgement of B.

In 1965, as Lake notes, Macmillan in New York published a paperback edition of M (P).[35] P is a very important edition, as it introduces a number of errors into M, and it seems that all later editions of *That Hideous Strength* are based on P, not M or B, as I discuss below.

In 1983, also noted by Lake, Pan in London replaced their edition of A^{1955} with an unabridged edition, derived from P (P^{1983});[36] this was the first unabridged new edition published in London since B. P^{1983} has the same pagination, fonts, and layout as P, except for pages 1 to 4, and follows P in omitting a section number on page 330 and a word ("trolls") on page 358.[37] However (as far as I have found) one word is spelled correctly in P and incorrectly in P^{1983}.[38] P's registration is also perfect—the forty-four lines of each normal page line up on both sides of the leaf and both pages of the opening—while in P^{1983} only counting proves that two pages have the same number of lines. So, although P^{1983} is clearly deliberate and close copy of P, I am not entirely sure that it is, as Lake asserts, "a photo-reprint of" P, nor that the two texts should be considered to "derive from a single act of composition" and so to be one edition.[39] Certainly they claim to be different editions—indeed they claim more difference than exists, since P correctly identifies itself as being derived from M, but P^{1983} gives the information, "First published 1945 by John Lane (the Bodley Head) Ltd" and, "First Pan Books edition (abridged) published 1955" but

[34] *C&G* 804-05.
[35] *C&G* 242, 804.
[36] *C&G* 242, 805.
[37] Noted by Lake (53).
[38] P 1 is a half-title and P^{1983} 1 a half-title including a short biography of Lewis; P 2 is blank and P^{1983} 2 lists the other books in the trilogy; 3 is the title-page in both, but in P it includes the epigraph; 4 in both carries the usual publication information, but also the epigraph in P^{1983}. Font and layout are not the same in the two titles and epigraphs. In the last line of 298 P has "uninitiated" while P^{1983} has a mis-spelling: "unintitiate".
[39] Lake 52; Philip Gaskell, *A New Introduction to Bibliography* (Oxford: Clarendon, 1972) 314, see discussion 313–14.

nothing else: this suggests that the book is a new edition of B, but the text is that of P (derived from M).[40]

In 1989, Pan in association with the Bodley Head included text derived from P in an omnibus edition of all three novels collectively entitled *The Cosmic Trilogy* (P^{1989}).[41] For each of the constituent novels it provides the information, "First published [year] by John Love [a strange error for the Bodley Head to make, three times rendering *John Lane* as *John Love*] (The Bodley Head) Ltd". The year given for *That Hideous Strength* is the year of B's publication, 1945. The text is not derived from B, but from P and ultimately from M (1946).

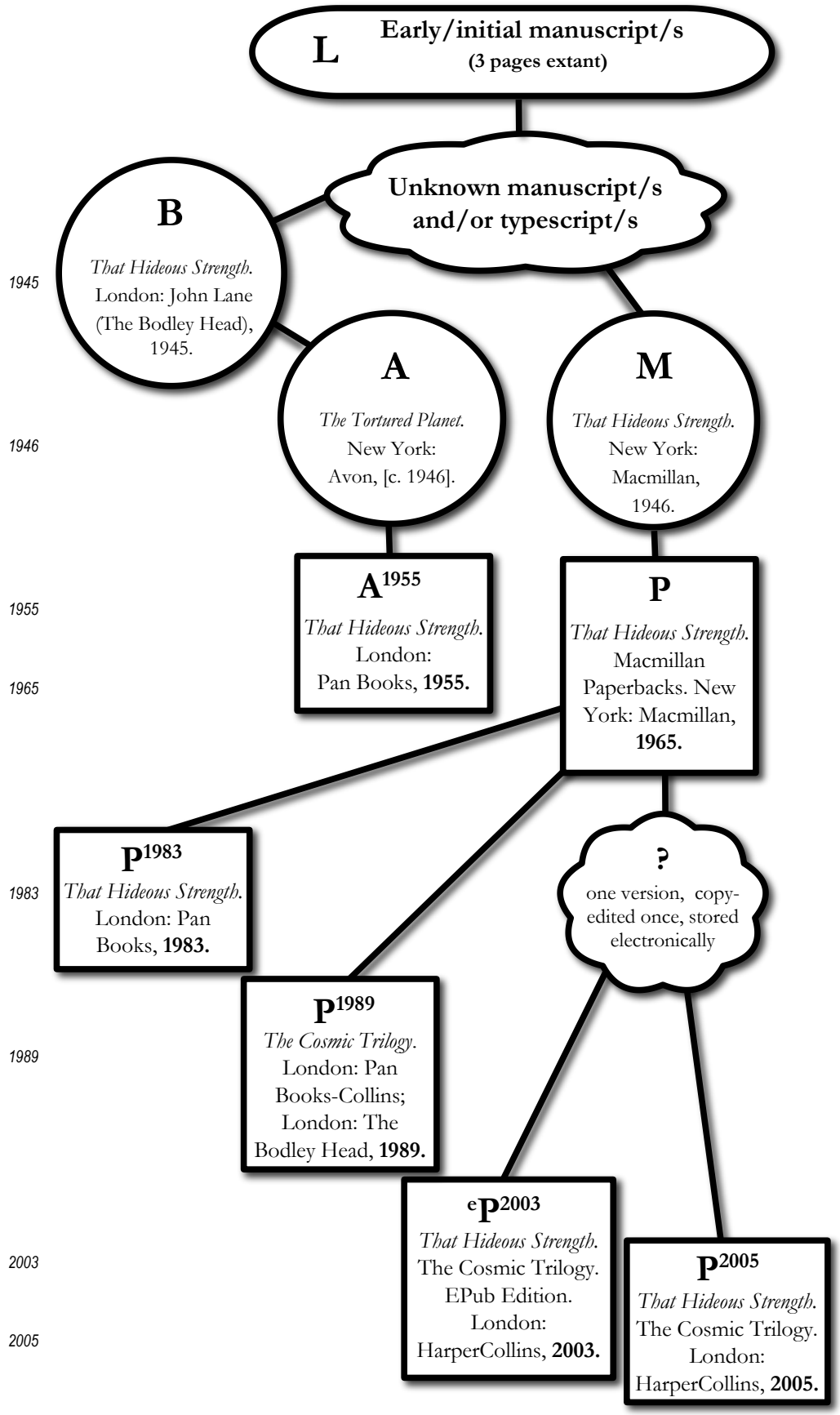
After this the novel was published as the third in a series—The Cosmic Trilogy: in 2003, HarperCollins e-books released an electronic edition of P ($^{e}P^{2003}$); and in 2005, HarperCollins published a derivation of P in a print edition (P^{2005}). These two recent HarperCollins editions are also misleading. The electronic edition ($^{e}P^{2003}$) provides minimal information: "Copyright © 1945 C.S. Lewis Pte Ltd". By giving the publication date of B as the copyright date, and providing no other information about previous editions, HarperCollins implies that the electronic text is that of B, while it is the text of P. HarperCollins' latest print edition (P^{2005}) is similarly misleading, stating "First published in Great Britain in 1945 by John Lane (The Bodley Head) Ltd" and "Copyright © 1945 C.S. Lewis Pte Ltd".

As far as I know, B has no descendants, despite Lewis's apparent assumption that the British edition of his works was the definitive edition.[42] A has only one descendent, A^{1955}. The list of descendants of P that I have given comprises only the editions that in some way are a landmark: it is not the full list of P's descendants.[43]

I offer the stemma overleaf as representing all we can know about the transmission of the versions of *That Hideous Strength*, and defend it in the discussion ("P's Descendants") that follows.

---

[40] *C&G* 242, 805.
[41] *C&G* 804.
[42] Walter Hooper, e-mail to the author, 16 Nov. 2008.
[43] Scribner, for example, brought out hardback and paperback editions of *That Hideous Strength* in 1996: these have been reissued in various formats and at various dates (at least as recently as 2003). The hardback edition gives the dates of both B and A as the original copyright dates and notes legal renewals in the 1970s, but a cursory examination of key cruces proves both editions to be derived from P. An audiobook of the novel is distributed by Blackstone Audio and available through the Apple App Store as an iPhone and iPad app. The app provides no information about the text that is read apart from author, title, and blurb, but the text read is P, and the appropriate page on Blackstone Audio's website yields the same copyright dates (expressed in identical wording) as Scribner's 1996 hardcover edition.


L
Early/initial manuscript/s
(3 pages extant)
Unknown manuscript/s and/or typescript/s
1945
B
That Hideous Strength.
London: John Lane (The Bodley Head), 1945.
1946
A
The Tortured Planet.
New York: Avon, [c. 1946].
M
That Hideous Strength.
New York: Macmillan, 1946.
1955
A1955
That Hideous Strength.
London: Pan Books, 1955.
1965
P
That Hideous Strength.
Macmillan Paperbacks. New York: Macmillan, 1965.
1983
P1983
That Hideous Strength.
London: Pan Books, 1983.
?
one version, copy-edited once, stored electronically
1989
P1989
The Cosmic Trilogy.
London: Pan Books-Collins; London: The Bodley Head, 1989.
2003
eP2003
That Hideous Strength.
The Cosmic Trilogy.
EPub Edition.
London: HarperCollins, 2003.
2005
P2005
That Hideous Strength.
The Cosmic Trilogy.
London: HarperCollins, 2005.

P's Descendants

I have suggested that the editions of *That Hideous Strength* published from 1983 onwards are derived from P and not directly from M, and have named them accordingly. This requires some defence. I shall now explore and illustrate the characteristics of and inter-relations amongst the various texts and their descendants by discussing a series of examples. This discussion will also serve to justify my contention that an edition of the novel is needed, and to justify my decision to use A as copy-text where possible, and B where A's witness is missing.

1 I	EXAMPLE 1
B (12)	The head was still the centre of the dream, but it was quite a different head now—a head with a reddish-white beard all covered with earth. It belonged to an old man whom some people were digging up in a kind of churchyard—a sort of ancient British, druidical kind of man, in a long mantle.
A (8–9) **A^{1955} (8)**	The head was still the centre of the dream, but it was a different head now—a head with a reddish-white beard all covered with earth. It belonged to an old man whom some people were digging up in a kind of churchyard—a sort of ancient British, druidical kind of man, in a long mantle.
M (4) **P (15)** **P^{1983} (15)**	The Head was still the centre of the dream but it was quite a different head now—a head with a flowing white beard all covered with earth. It belonged to an old man whom some people were digging up in a kind of churchyard—a sort of ancient British, druidical kind of man, in a long mantle.
P^{1989} (357) **P^{2005} (4)**	The Head was still the centre of the dream, but it was quite a different head now – a head with a flowing white beard all covered with earth. It belonged to an old man whom some people were digging up in a kind of churchyard – a sort of ancient British, druidical kind of man, in a long mantle.
$^{e}P^{2003}$ (1%)	The Head was still the centre of the dream but it was quite a different head now–a head with a flowing white beard all covered with earth. It belonged to an old man whom some people were digging up in a kind of churchyard–a sort of ancient British, druidical kind of man, in a long mantle.

Example 1 shows, amongst other things, a difference that separates descendants of M from descendants of B or A. These excerpts show, firstly, an accidental difference that distinguishes descendants of B and A ("head"), from those of M ("Head"). This is not an unusual kind of accidental difference between the two sets of witnesses. The use of en-dashes rather than em-dashes distinguishes editions from 1989 onwards, and is one of a set of accidental variations displaying a change in printing fashion. The en-dashes have spaces on either side of them in the print editions but not in the electronic edition, and this seems to be a usual characteristic of electronic editions.

The substantive difference in this example is the "reddish-white beard" of B, A and A^{1955}, as opposed to the "flowing white beard" of M and all its descendants. In a later

chapter (see annotations) Merlin's beard is described as "reddish-grey" in all the witnesses, so B's variant is to be preferred as being more consistent with other parts of the novel. This difference makes clear at the very beginning of the novel whether the text in the reader's hand is ultimately descended from B or from M.

5 III	**EXAMPLE 2**
B (136)	"Had we better go somewhere in town, Arthur?—
Excised from A (72), followed by A^{1955} (71)	
M (124) **P (113)** **P^{1983} (113)**	"Had we better go somewhere in town, Frank?—
P^{1989} (464) **P^{2005} (145)**	'Had we better go somewhere in town, Frank? –
$^{e}P^{2003}$ (27%)	'Had we better go somewhere in town, Frank?–

Example 2 shows an error that may be a hangover from an earlier draft (we know Mark started off as Peter): in M Arthur Denniston briefly has a different Christian name in chapter 5 III. This makes quite clear the ultimate descent of all versions from 1965 on from M. Example 2 also shows that all the editions from 1989 on use single quotation marks, like the en-dashes showing a change in printing fashion—and incidentally returning to Lewis's practice in L.

9 I	**EXAMPLE 3**
B (220) **M (207)**	I thought I saw a face floating just in front of me. A face, not a head, if you understand what I mean.
A (108) **A^{1955} (107)**	I thought I saw a face floating in front of me. A face, not a head, if you understand.
P (181) **P^{1983} (181)** **P^{1989} (536)** **$^{e}P^{2003}$ (45%)** **P^{2005} (244)**	I thought I saw a face floating in front of me. A face, not a head, if you understand what I mean.

My argument is that all the editions of *That Hideous Strength* after P (1965) have been immediately based on P, not on M, the ultimate ancestor of them all, as shown by the "flowing white beard". This is suggested firstly by an omission in P (ch. 9 I) that is found in all the editions later than P: in example 3, B and M are identical, implying an accurate representation of their common ultimate original. P accidentally and incorrectly reproduces what is a deliberate excision in A, rendering "floating just in front" as "floating in front". This error is found in all editions from 1983 onwards, and suggests that they are all direct descendants of P and not of M. The examples that follow will tend to reinforce this suggestion.

12 VI	EXAMPLE 4
B (327) **M (311)** **A (162)** **A^{1955} (161)**	possessor of the secret of secrets
P (266) **P^{1983} (266)** **P^{1989} (626)** **^{e}P^{2003} (99%)** **P^{2005} (366)**	possessor of the secrets

Lewis's translation of Wither's first Latin speech to a man he supposes is Merlin includes a translation of *secreti secretorum possessor*. The translation is provided as a footnote on the same page in all the print editions, and at the end of ^{e}P^{2003}: example 4 shows us an error introduced by P, and perpetuated in all its descendants. This error has led at least one critic (using P) into confusion, as the source of a rather tentative theory that Lewis's translation of Wither's Latin is deliberately simplified, and that rendering *secreti secretorum possessor* as "possessor of the secrets" (not "secret of secrets") is "[p]robably for the sake of concinnity" (Vail 88).

16 VI	EXAMPLE 5
B (445)	He half saw: he wholly hated. The physical torture of the burning was hardly fiecer than his hatred of that. With one supreme effort he flung himself back into his illusion. In that attitude eternity overtook him as sunrise in old tales overtakes trolls and turns them into unchangeable stone.
A (233) **A^{1955} (232)**	He half saw: he wholly hated. The torture of the burning was hardly fiercer than his hatred of that. With one supreme effort he flung himself back into his illusion. In that attitude eternity overtook him.
M (428) **P^{1989} (727)**	He half saw: he wholly hated. The physical torture of the burning was not fiercer than his hatred of that. With one supreme effort he flung himself back into his illusion. In that attitude eternity overtook him as sunrise in old tales overtakes trolls and turns them into unchangeable stone.
P (358) **P^{1983} (358)** **^{e}P^{2003} (92%)** **P^{2005} (499)**	He half saw: he wholly hated. The physical torture of the burning was not fiercer than his hatred of that. With one supreme effort he flung himself back into his illusion. In that attitude eternity overtook him as sunrise in old tales overtakes and turns them into unchangeable stone.

Example 5 shows how, alone amongst the P-texts, P^{1989} shows signs of extra care and correction in its production. Since it was published in London by Pan Books (which had already published P^{1983}, an offprint of P) in conjunction with the Bodley Head, it is tempting to speculate that a copy of B might have been used to make corrections. But the evidence is ambiguous. One example of the superiority of P^{1989} over all the other descendants of P is its restoration of a word omitted by P: in the final sentence of the

unabridged versions the key word "trolls" is omitted from P and three of the versions published from 1983 on. P^{1989} alone restores it. Example 5 also shows that B and A (followed by A^{1955}) have "hardly fiercer" (with A correcting B's misprint "fiecer"), while M and its descendants have "not fiercer". That P^{1989} retains "not" might mean that "trolls" was restored from M, or that the copy-editor was concerned only to correct an obvious error and only looked that far in B, or even that the error was corrected from general knowledge with no other witness consulted.

In many of the examples that follow, P^{1989}, $^{e}P^{2003}$ and P^{2005} are substantially the same. But the missing "trolls" makes it clear that $^{e}P^{2003}$ and P^{2005} must be descended directly from P, and not from P^{1989}.

3 1	**EXAMPLE 6**
B (60) **A (34)** **A^{1955} (34)**	"I assure you, Mr. Studdock," said the Deputy Director with an unusually far-away look in his eye, "that you needn't anticipate the slightest . . . er . . . the slightest difficulty on that point.
M (50)	"I assure you, Mr. Studdock," said the Deputy Inspector with an unusually far away look in his eye, "that you needn't anticipate the slightest—er—the slightest difficulty on that point.
P (52–53) **P^{1983} (52–53)**	"I assure you, Mr. Studdock," said the Deputy Director with an unusually far away look in his eye, "that you needn't anticipate the slightest—er—the slightest difficulty on that point.
P^{1989} (399)	'I assure you, Mr Studdock,' said the Deputy Director with an unusually far-away look in his eye, 'that you needn't anticipate the slightest – er – the slightest difficulty on that point.
$^{e}P^{2003}$ (11%)	'I assure you, Mr Studdock,' said the Deputy Director with an unusually far away look in his eye, 'that you needn't anticipate the slightest–er–the slightest difficulty on that point.
P^{2005} (59)	'I assure you, Mr Studdock,' said the Deputy Director with an unusually far away look in his eye, 'that you needn't anticipate the slightest – er – the slightest difficulty on that point.

Example 6 provides, amongst other things, further evidence of the exceptional care taken in the production of P^{1989}. P^{1989}, alone among M and its descendants, renders "far-away" with the hyphen of B and the A-texts. This is definitely a sign of more careful production, as the hyphen is appropriate to the use of "far-away" as an adjective, but, precisely because it is a better reading, it can point to careful copy-editing alone as much as to correction of the P-text from B. The correction of M's error "Deputy Inspector" in all the P-texts is further corroboration of suggestion that all the later texts are descended from P, although in isolation it would prove nothing, since the error is so blatant and the correction so obvious that it would be possible for every text to correct it individually.

The use in B and the A-texts of ellipses where M and the P-texts have dashes is a very frequent accidental difference between the two sets of texts. In example 6 the texts from

1989 on also show another example of the later editions' conformity to newer fashions: "Mr Studdock" rather than "Mr. Studdock". M occasionally and inconsistently, and presumably accidentally, uses American spelling, which seems to be corrected in editions from 1989 onwards:[44] this does not by itself, I think, suggest that that $^{e}P^{2003}$ and P^{2005} are derived from P^{1989}, but rather independent corrections of obvious errors (although I shall suggest that $^{e}P^{2003}$ and P^{2005} share one act of copy-editing).

8 III	**EXAMPLE 7**
B (206–07)	He knew by experience that there is in almost every organisation some quiet, inconspicuous person whom the small fry suppose to be of no importance but who is really one of the mainsprings of the whole machine. Even to recognise such people for what they are shows that one has made considerable progress.
A (101–02) **A^{1955} (101)**	He knew that there is in almost every organisation some quiet, inconspicuous person whom the small fry suppose to be of no importance but who is really one of the mainsprings. Even to recognise such people shows that one has made progress.
M (193)	He knew by experience that there is in almost every organization some quiet, inconspicuous person whom the small fry suppose to be of no importance but who is really one of the mainsprings of the whole machine. Even to recognize such people for what they are shows that one has made considerable progress.
P (170) **P^{1983} (170)**	He knew by experience that there is in almost every organization some quiet, inconspicuous person whom the small fry suppose to be of no importance but who is really one of the mainsprings of the whole machine. Even to recognize such people for what they are shows that one had made considerable progress.
P^{1989} (524)	He knew by experience that there is in almost every organisation some quiet, inconspicuous person whom the small fry suppose to be of no importance but who is really one of the mainsprings of the whole machine. Even to recognise such people for what they are shows that one has made considerable progress.
$^{e}P^{2003}$ (42%) **P^{2005} (227–28)**	He knew by experience that there is in almost every organisation some quiet, inconspicuous person whom the small fry suppose to be of no importance but who is really one of the mainsprings of the whole machine. Even to recognise such people for what they are shows that one had made considerable progress.

Example 7 shows two instances of American spelling by which M differs from B and the A-texts, with "organization" for "organisation" and "recognize" for "recognise". P follows M and is followed by P^{1983}. P^{1989}, $^{e}P^{2003}$ and P^{2005} have the British spellings. This example also includes a substantive difference of the kind that is probably the result of a compositor's error: some texts have "shows that one has made considerable progress" (or "has made progress" in the A-texts) and others have "shows that one had made considerable progress". B, the A-texts and M agree in using "has". P, followed by all the

[44] I have not made an exhaustive check of progress of all M's American spellings through the versions.

later versions except P[1989], introduces the erroneous "had". Again, the reading in P[1989] may be the result of comparison with B, or simply of careful copy-editing. It seems unlikely that P[1989] is corrected from M, because then, surely, it would have been simply set from M. And the reproduction of P's "floating in front" is a strong argument against P[1989]'s being set from M.

3 IV	**EXAMPLE 8**
B (80)	This was partly due to a whisky and soda taken with "Fairy" Hardcastle immediately before, and partly to the fact that by a glance at the mirror he saw that he could now remove the objectionable piece of cotton wool from his lip.
A (45) **A[1955] (45)**	This was partly due to a whisky-and-soda taken with "Fairy" Hardcastle immediately before.
M (69)	This was partly due to a whisky and soda taken with "Fairy" Hardcastle immediately before and partly to the fact that by a glance at the mirror he saw that he could now remove the objectionable piece of cotton wool from his lip.
P (68) **P[1983] (68)**	This was partly due to a whisky and soda taken with "Fairy" Hardcastle immediately before and partly to the fact that by a glance at the mirror he saw that he could not remove the objectionable piece of cotton wool from his lip.
P[1989] (415) **[e]P[2003] (15%)** **P[2005] (82–83)**	This was partly due to a whisky and soda taken with 'Fairy' Hardcastle immediately before and partly to the fact that by a glance at the mirror he saw that he could now remove the objectionable piece of cotton wool from his lip.

If P[1989] is the most satisfactory of the P-texts, P[1983] is the least so. My impression is that it both perpetuates errors inherited from M and P, and introduces new ones.[45] Example 8 shows P introducing an erroneous "not" for "now". In this it is followed by P[1983] alone. Example 8 also shows A introducing an accidental change where B and M agree: "whisky-and-soda" for "whisky and soda". This is not an uncommon occurrence in A, always followed by A[1955].

16 I	**EXAMPLE 9**
B (426) **M (409)** **P (343)** **P[1983] (343)**	But if you have gone on looking down the tables you would presently have seen a change.
A (220) **A[1955] (218)** **P[1989] (710)** **[e]P[2003] (88%)** **P[2005] (477)**	But if you had gone on looking down the tables you would presently have seen a change.

Example 9 shows a substantive error, "have gone on" for "had gone on". This error is presumably originally authorial, since it is shared by B and M. It is corrected in A (followed

[45] This impression is not based on an exhaustive comparison of P[1983] with all the other texts.

by A[1955]). P, followed by P[1983] alone, perpetuates the error. All the other P-texts make the obvious correction (see 365[k]).

14 I	EXAMPLE 10
B (369)	Long ago Mark had read somewhere of "things of that extreme evil which seems innocent to the uninitiate," and had wondered what sort of things they might be.
Excised in A (185), followed by A[1955] (183)	
M (353) **P (298–99)**	Long ago Mark had read somewhere of "things of that extreme evil which seem innocent to the uninitiate," and had wondered what sort of things they might be.
P[1983] (298–99)	Long ago Mark had read somewhere of "things of that extreme evil which seem innocent to the unintitiate," and had wondered what sort of things they might be.
P[1989] (662) **[e]P[2003] (77%)** **P[2005] (412)**	Long ago Mark had read somewhere of 'things of that extreme evil which seem innocent to the uninitiate', and had wondered what sort of things they might be.

Example 10 shows a mis-spelling peculiar to P[1983]: "unintitiate" for "uninitiate". This supports my contention that P[1983] is an unsatisfactory text, and that it is not the ancestor of any of the later P-texts.

B alone (since the sentence is excised from A) has "seems innocent" (the verb agreeing with "that extreme evil") while M and all its descendants have "seem innocent" (agreeing with "things"). Either reading is justifiable, but see textual note to 317[b].

1 IV	EXAMPLE 11
B (25–26)	But when Curry rose at five minutes to one to introduce Item 3, there was a sharp revival of interest. It was called "Rectification of an Anomaly of the Stipends in Junior Fellows."
A (15)	But when Curry rose at five minutes to one to introduce Item 2, there was a sharp revival of interest. It was called "Rectification of an Anomaly in the Stipends of Junior Fellows."
A[1955] (15)	But when Curry rose at five minutes to one to introduce Item 2, there was a sharp revival of interest. It was called "Rectification of an Anomaly in the Stipends of Junior Fellows".
M (17)	But when Curry rose at five minutes to one to introduce item three, there was a sharp revival of interest. It was called, "Rectification of an anomaly of the Stipends of Junior Fellows."
P (26) **P[1983] (26)**	But when Curry rose at five minutes to one to introduce item Three, there was a sharp revival of interest. It was called, "Rectification of an anomaly of the Stipends of Junior Fellows."
P[1989] (369)	But when Curry rose at five minutes to one to introduce Item Three, there was a sharp revival of interest. It was called, 'Rectification of an anomaly of the Stipends of Junior Fellows'.
[e]P[2003] (4%) **P[2005] (20)**	But when Curry rose at five minutes to one to introduce item Three, there was a sharp revival of interest. It was called, 'Rectification of an anomaly of the Stipends of Junior Fellows.'

Example 11 shows how A sometimes improves or restores a substantive reading. B has "an Anomaly of the Stipends in Junior Fellows", where the preposition "of" is probably wrong and "in" is clearly wrong. Whether this is a rather strange authorial error, or a compositor's accidental juxtaposition is not clear—except that M has "an anomaly of the Stipends of Junior Fellows", which still has the not-entirely-satisfactory "anomaly of", and suggests a correction of the more obvious of two authorial slips. A provides an obviously superior reading, "an Anomaly in the Stipends of Junior Fellows". A's reading "in the Stipends of" is followed by that of A^{1955}, and M's "of the Stipends of" is followed by P and all the texts derived from P.

Example 11 also shows a number of accidental variants. "Item" is capitalised in B, the two A-texts, and P^{1989} (another indication that B might have been consulted during the copy-editing of P^{1989}). The other P-texts and M all have "item". B and the A-texts use a digit for the number of the item: *3* in B and *2* in A because B's second agenda item is excised in A so that the third item becomes the second in A. The lack of a comma after "called", where a quotation or citation is introduced, is not unusual in B and A, while M is usually fairly consistent in having a comma in such places. B's reading may reflect a greater fidelity to Lewis's habits: in L there are commas missing that correspond to commas attested by all three first editions, B, M and A. However, L is a very early draft and certainly not the immediate source for B or M, so all that this proves is a habit in Lewis. The comma after "called" is shared by all M's descendants, as is "anomaly" with a lower-case first letter. The end of the citation of the agenda item shows the one way in which A^{1955} differs from A: in citations or quotations that are not direct speech, and which come at the end of a sentence or clause, A^{1955} places the punctuation outside the quotation marks. The editions from 1989 on do this too: P^{1989} does so here, and $^{e}P^{2003}$ and P^{2005} do it elsewhere although not here:[46] again here we find evidence that $^{e}P^{2003}$ and P^{2005} are closely related and probably descended from P^{1989} *via* a common version.

Example 12 (following) shows further details of the accidentals in the various texts. I have noted already that editions from 1989 replace em-dashes with en-dashes, and that M sometimes uses a dash where B and A have an ellipsis. This excerpt shows that B and A also sometimes use double em-dashes (usually at the end of a speech that tails off). M and the P-texts each consistently use one kind of dash throughout. A changes "—" to "——". $^{e}P^{2003}$ and P^{2005} display a common, modern, streamlined look with "NICE" instead of "N.I.C.E."—an earlier fashion, and one not confined to print: Lewis uses "N.I.C.E." even in his letters.[47]

[46] See "the rooms 'done'." in P^{1989} (355), $^{e}P^{2003}$ (1%) and P^{2005} (1).

[47] See for example *The Collected Letters of C.S. Lewis*, ed. Walter Hooper, 3 vol. (New York: HarperSanFrancisco, 2004–07) vol. 2 672. Lewis also pronounced the acronym letter by letter, not as the word "nice": Walter Hooper, personal interview, 4 Nov. 2008.

5 II	EXAMPLE 12
B (124)	You gave me to understand that you were offering me a position on the sociological side of the N.I.C.E. But as I was saying——"
A (66) A^{1955} (65)	You gave me to understand that you were offering me a position on the——"
M (113) **P (103)** **P^{1983} (103)**	You gave me to understand that you were offering me a position on the sociological side of the N.I.C.E. But as I was saying—"
P^{1989} (454)	You gave me to understand that you were offering me a position on the sociological side of the N.I.C.E. But as I was saying – '
^{e}P^{2003} (24%)	You gave me to understand that you were offering me a position on the sociological side of the NICE But as I was saying–'
P^{2005} (132)	You gave me to understand that you were offering me a position on the sociological side of the NICE But as I was saying – '

One of the worst errors P introduces (and which is perpetuated in all P's descendants) is shown in example 13. Replacing "frightful" with "fruitful" here causes a positively mischievous misrepresentation of Lewis's thought. Lewis would not describe any aspect of "the movement opposite to nature" as "fruitful", since he always argues that evil, though strong, is derivative—"only spoiled goodness", "a parasite, not an original thing"—and ultimately sterile—"Bad cannot succeed even in being bad as truly as good is good".[48] He has Screwtape complain to Wormwood, "I know we [devils] have won many a soul through pleasure. All the same, it is His [God's] invention, not ours. He made the pleasures: all our research so far has not enabled us to produce one".[49] Evil, for Lewis, cannot be creative or fruitful. Lewis shares this Christian assumption with Tolkien, who has Frodo tell Sam of the orcs, "The Shadow that bred them can only mock, it cannot make: not real new things of its own. I don't think it gave life to the orcs, it only ruined them and twisted them".[50]

12 VII	EXAMPLE 13
B (331)	Never before had he known the frightful strength of the movement opposite to nature which now had him in its grip
Excised in A (165), followed by A^{1955} (163)	
M (315)	Never before had he known the frightful strength of the movement opposite to Nature which now had him in its grip
P (269) **P^{1983} (269)** **P^{1989} (629)** **^{e}P^{2003} (69%)** **P^{2005} (370)**	Never before had he known the fruitful strength of the movement opposite to Nature which now had him in its grip

[48] *Mere Christianity* (1952; London: Fount-Collins, 1977) 46–47; *The Great Divorce: A Dream* (1946; London: HarperCollins, 2002) 138.
[49] *The Screwtape Letters* (1942; London: Fount-Collins, 1982) 43.
[50] J.R.R. Tolkien, *The Lord of the Rings* (1955–56; London: HarperCollins, 1999) vol. 6 ch. 1 27.

I conclude this discussion with example 14, from the opening of chapter 17, including the chapter and section headings.

17 I	**EXAMPLE 14**
B (446)	SEVENTEEN *Venus at St. Anne's* I DAYLIGHT came with no visible sunrise as Mark was climbing to the highest ground in his journey. The white road, still virgin of human traffic, showed the footprints of here and there a bird and here and there a rabbit, for the snow-shower was just then coming to its end in a flurry of larger and slower flakes. A big lorry, looking black and warm in that landscape, overtook him. The man put out his head. "Going Birmingham way, mate?" he asked. "Roughly," said Mark. "At least I'm going to St. Anne's." "Where's that, then?" said the driver. "Up on the hill behind Pennington," said Mark. "Ah," said the man, "I could take you to the corner. Save you a bit." Mark got in beside him.
A (234)	Chapter Seventeen VENUS AT ST. ANNE'S I DAYLIGHT came with no visible sunrise as Mark was climbing to the highest ground in his journey. The snowshower was just then coming to its end in a flurry of larger and slower flakes. A big lorry, looking black and warm in that landscape, overtook him. The man put out his head. "Going Birmingham way, mate?" he asked. "Roughly," said Mark. "At least I'm going to St. Anne's." "Where's that, then?" said the driver. "Up on the hill behind Pennington," said Mark. "Ah," said the man, "I could take you to the corner. Save you a bit." Mark got in beside him.
A[1955] (232)	CHAPTER SEVENTEEN VENUS AT ST. ANNE'S I DAYLIGHT came with no visible sunrise as Mark was climbing to the highest ground in his journey. The snow-shower was just then coming to its end in a flurry of larger and slower flakes. A big lorry, looking black and warm in that landscape, overtook him. The man put out his head. "Going Birmingham way, mate?" he asked. "Roughly," said Mark. "At least I'm going to St. Anne's." "Where's that, then?" said the driver. "Up on the hill behind Pennington," said Mark. "Ah," said the man, "I could take you to the corner. Save you a bit." Mark got in beside him.
M (429)	CHAPTER SEVENTEEN: *Venus at St. Anne's* [I] Daylight came with no visible sunrise as Mark was climbing to the highest ground in his journey. The white road, still virgin of human traffic, showed the footprints of here and there a bird and here and there a rabbit, for the snow-shower was just then coming to its end in a flurry of larger and slower flakes. A big lorry, looking black and warm in that landscape, overtook him. The man put out his head. "Going Birmingham way, mate?" he asked. "Roughly," said Mark. "At least I'm going to St. Anne's." "Where's that then?" said the driver. "Up on the hill behind Pennington," said Mark. "Ah," said the man, "I could take you to the corner. Save you a bit." Mark got in beside him.

P (359) **P1983 (359)**	Chapter 17 **Venus at St. Anne's** 1 DAYLIGHT CAME with no visible sunrise as Mark was climbing to the highest ground in his journey. The white road, still virgin of human traffic, showed the footprints of here and there a bird and here and there a rabbit, for the snow-shower was just then coming to its end in a flurry of larger and slower flakes. A big lorry, looking black and warm in that landscape, overtook him. The man put out his head. "Going Birmingham way, mate?" he asked. "Roughly," said Mark. "At least I'm going to St. Anne's." "Where's that then?" said the driver. "Up on the hill behind Pennington," said Mark. "Ah," said the man, "I could take you to the corner. Save you a bit." Mark got in beside him.
P1989 (728)	CHAPTER 17 Venus at St Anne's 1 Daylight came with no visible sunrise as Mark was climbing to the highest ground in his journey. The white road, still virgin of human traffic, showed the footprints of here and there a bird and here and there a rabbit, for the snow-shower was just then coming to its end in a flurry of larger and slower flakes. A big lorry, looking black and warm in that landscape, overtook him. The man put out his head. 'Going Birmingham way, mate?' he asked. 'Roughly,' said Mark. 'At least I'm going to St. Anne's.' 'Where's that then?' said the driver. 'Up on the hill behind Pennington,' said Mark. 'Ah,' said the man, 'I could take you to the corner. Save you a bit.' Mark got in beside him.
eP2003 (92%)	17 Venus at St Anne's Daylight came with no visible sunrise as Mark was climbing to the highest ground in his journey. The white road, still virgin of human traffic, showed the footprints of here and there a bird and here and there a rabbit, for the snow-shower was just then coming to its end in a flurry of larger and slower flakes. A big lorry, looking black and warm in that landscape, overtook him. The man put out his head. 'Going Birmingham way, mate?' he asked. 'Roughly,' said Mark. 'At least I'm going to St. Anne's.' 'Where's that then?' said the driver. 'Up on the hill behind Pennington,' said Mark. 'Ah,' said the man, 'I could take you to the corner. Save you a bit.' Mark got in beside him.
P2005 (500)	17 Venus at St Anne's Daylight came with no visible sunrise as Mark was climbing to the highest ground in his journey. The white road, still virgin of human traffic, showed the footprints of here and there a bird and here and there a rabbit, for the snow-shower was just then coming to its end in a flurry of larger and slower flakes. A big lorry, looking black and warm in that landscape, overtook him. The man put out his head. 'Going Birmingham way, mate?' he asked. 'Roughly,' said Mark. 'At least I'm going to St. Anne's.' 'Where's that then?' said the driver. 'Up on the hill behind Pennington,' said Mark. 'Ah,' said the man, 'I could take you to the corner. Save you a bit.' Mark got in beside him.

This provides a final example of some of the differences and affinities that have already become obvious—for example, that P1983 follows P very closely (except for the introduction of new errors), even at the level of pagination and layout. So far, we have seen P2005 and eP2003 differ only in that P2005 has spaces beside its en-dashes and eP2003 does not, a

difference ascribable to the difference between print and electronic texts. Here this is confirmed: the two texts are identical even at the level of accidentals, except in features of layout that can be expected to differ between their different media, such as the chapter number and title. More significantly, P^{2005} and $^{e}P^{2003}$ are the only two texts that do not provide section numbers, not only at the beginnings of chapters, but throughout. Section divisions are shown (by the symbols "◆ ○ ◆" between blank lines in P^{2005} and by four blank lines in $^{e}P^{2003}$), but the useful section numbers are not provided. Since these two texts are both recent HarperCollins texts, and differ only because they are intended for different media, it is reasonable to assume that they are based on "text" arising from a single act of preparation and copy-editing, based on P and presumably stored electronically for future use. We have seen no evidence of derivation from P^{1983} or P^{1989}, and strong evidence that P is the immediate ancestor rather than M. These excerpts also provide an example of M's occasional combination of multiple paragraphs into one: text presented as six paragraphs in B and the A-texts appears in one paragraph in M and the P-texts.

A^{1955} here appears to show a rare difference from A: where A has "snowshower", A^{1955} (and B, and M, and the P-texts) have "snow-shower". The word is hyphenated across the end of a line in B, as shown here.[51] A was prepared from corrections made in a copy of B, and the compositor must have interpreted the hyphen as being the result of the word's breaking across lines, and set "snowshower". Ten years later, in A^{1955}, the word again breaks across lines, and we cannot tell whether the hyphen represents the spelling "snow-shower" or is only the result of the line-break: given A^{1955}'s fidelity to A, the latter seems likely. Since M has "snow-shower", perhaps we can assume the Lewis wrote "snow-shower", and that the line-break in B was fortuitous but confusing, and not the reason for the hyphen.

Despite the huge gaps in our knowledge about the manuscripts or typescripts, or manuscripts and typescripts, upon which B and M are based, and about the conditions under which they were produced, their relationships with each other, with A, and with the later texts are made plain by comparison of the texts. However, I have also shown that *That Hideous Strength* seems to have a history of confusion when in comes to making plain which version a given edition of the novel is based on. This slipperiness goes back to A, and only B, M and P make their true antecedents clear in the publication information they provide.

This confusion reflects and is reflected in the attitude of the current holders of the copyrights for Lewis's works, C.S. Lewis Pte Ltd, who deny that there is more than one version of *That Hideous Strength*:

> […] we are aware of only one version of That Hideous Strength by C.S. Lewis. Since it was first published there have been many different editions published by several different

[51] These excerpts are not facsimiles of the texts they transcribe here, but I have faithfully reproduced the position of "snow-/shower" in B and A^{1955}.

> publishers in English Language and editions in many languages have been published by foreign language publishers throughout the world – but all these editions are of the same original C.S. Lewis work.[52]

Despite this, and given the growing interest (both scholarly and popular) in Lewis, and given that it seems likely that all future editions are going to be versions of the common source of $^{e}P^{2003}$ and P^{2005}, despite B's superiority as a text and priority in time, it seems desirable that there should be a critical edition of the text that places all the information before scholars, and which may provide the basis for a reading text in some distant future when HarperCollins's rights over the text have expired. Of course, a variorum edition would provide the raw information, but, as I discuss in Introduction 1 (see "What kind of edition?"), and given the masses of accidental variations in relation to substantives, a critical edition in which the work of comparison has already been done seems a more usable tool for scholars, and can be used as a reading text too.[53]

[52] Rachel Churchill, "RE: FOLLOW UP: Request for permission: documents regarding CS Lewis (Archives of The Bodley Head),"e-mail (for Lewis Pte Ltd) to the author, 11 Nov. 2008.
[53] See appendix A for a variorum presentation of those parts of the text that correspond with the extant manuscript fragments: it shows the burden such a presentation would impose on a reader.

INTRODUCTION 3: INFLUENCES

In this chapter I shall deal with influences, particularly literary influences, upon Lewis's thought and writing. Lewis, like the Medieval and Renaissance authors he enjoyed, implicitly and explicitly incorporated quotations from and allusions to other authors and authorities in his writing, and Lewis's reading was notoriously wide: Empson called him the best-read man of his generation, and as Schakel observed in 1977:

> we must never forget that his [Lewis's] writing was preceded by more reading, probably, than done by any other person of his time, that he had an enormously large stock of literary knowledge and literary Forms to draw upon. If Lewis was 'inventing' material, it was in the eighteenth-century sense of making 'a new combination of those images which have been previously gathered and deposited in the memory.' A detailed formal analysis of his fiction, then, is needed and should be rewarded by new and fuller insights into his works and into Lewis himself as an artist and thinker.[1]

The contemporary term "intertextuality" does not seem appropriate in a discussion of Lewis and influence, since it frequently suggests a form of subversive or aggressively competitive activity that is not appropriate to Lewis's work. Eco, for example, summarises certain understandings of intertextuality:

> There is also a way to make a second verbal text visible, or detectable, through a first one. I am speaking of the procedure called *intertextual irony*. To scatter a text with non-explicit quotations of other works of art or literature is considered a form, perhaps the *typical* form, of post-modern literature—the natural effect of its intertextuality and (to invoke Bakhtin) of its dialogism, as well as a characteristic of what Hutcheon calls *metafiction*. Texts always speak to each other: in every work it is possible to detect what Harold Bloom called *the anxiety of influence*. But I am speaking of intertextual irony in a more specific sense.
>
> Intertextual irony is a strategy by which an author makes non-explicit allusions to other works, and in doing so creates a double effect: (i) naive readers, who do not understand the reference, enjoy the text as if they were receiving its message for the first time […]; (ii) competent readers catch the quotation, and they sense that it is ironic, especially if the quoted situation or sentence changes its sense and implies a sort of debasement. This procedure has been defined as *double coding*.[2]

The expressions "*anxiety of influence*", "irony" and "a sort of debasement" do not accurately characterise Lewis's much older form of engagement with other texts. Accordingly, I shall rather use less loaded terminology to discuss Lewis's interactions with other texts and authors.

Following Lewis, I discuss intertextual relations in terms of source, model, and influence.[3] By "source" I mean the origin of a trope, *topos*, image, argument, figure, situation, name, word, or pattern of words. A source is usually fairly easily demonstrable by reference to a specific place in a specific work. Apuleius' telling of the myth of Cupid and Psyche is a source for *Till We Have Faces*: it provides the germ but the "Myth Retold" is

---

[1] James T. Como, introduction, *C.S. Lewis at the Breakfast Table and Other Reminiscences*, ed. James T. Como (1979; London: Collins, 1980) xxii; Peter J. Schakel, introduction, *The Longing for a Form: Essays on the Fiction of C.S. Lewis*, ed. Peter J. Schakel (n.p.: Kent State UP, 1977) xiv.
[2] Umberto Eco, *Mouse or Rat? Translation as Negotiation* (2003; London: Phoenix-Orion, 2004) 114.
[3] *Till We Have Faces: A Myth Retold* (1956; London: Fount-Collins, 1978) note 8.

Lewis's own.[4] A model affects form or approach, as *The Parlement of Foules* (or *The Plaint of Nature*, or *The Divine Comedy*, or any other dream vision) is a model for *The Great Divorce*. An exploration of Lewis's "models" will look for those authors and works that have shown Lewis how to do—or not to do—something. In these cases, the humanist principle of emulous rivalry frequently comes into play,[5] and Lewis strives to transcend or even to correct his models, as he does with *Paradise Lost* in *Perelandra*.[6] When a person, event or text affects the content of a work more extensively and consistently than a mere source, he or it is an influence, as Chesterton and MacDonald are on Lewis's work as a whole. "Influence" is also the term with the widest scope, since models and sources can also be kinds of influence.

I illustrate Lewis's use of sources, influences and models through case studies, of varying scope and emphasis, of Lewis's use of works by four authors. With Alanus, Chesterton and MacDonald (all authors who influenced Lewis long before and long after the writing of *That Hideous Strength*), I have not limited my exploration to influences upon *That Hideous Strength* only, as these were all writers whose influence appears across a wide range of Lewis's work and the breadth as well as depth of their influence should not be ignored. In the case-study of Charles Williams, I focus more on his influence on *That Hideous Strength*, for reasons that I explain in that study.

I look at *De Planctu Naturae* and *Anticlaudianus* by Alanus ab Insulis, which are predominantly sources rather than models in Lewis's work, under the heading of "Classical, Medieval and Renaissance Influences". I study two authors who were Christian mentors to Lewis, discussing the multitudinous works of G.K. Chesterton (which are influences in the broadest sense on Lewis's life, thought, faith and work) and five fantasy novels by George MacDonald (likewise an influence on Lewis's life, thought, faith and work). As an example of the influence of the Inklings I consider five works of Charles Williams as model and sometimes source for *That Hideous Strength* and conclude that Williams' influence on this novel is not what is generally assumed.

---

[4] *Till We Have Faces*, subtitle & note 8.

[5] See Thomas M. Greene, *The Light in Troy: Imitation and Discovery in Renaissance Poetry* (New Haven: Yale UP, 1982) ch. 3; Paul Oskar Kristeller, *Renaissance Thought and Its Sources*, ed. Michael Mooney (New York: Columbia UP, 1979) ch. 14; Ben Jonson, "Timber, or Discoveries," *Ben Jonson*, ed. C.H. Herford & Percy & Evelyn Simpson, rev. ed., vol. 8 (Oxford: Clarendon, 1954) 555–649 (l. 2469-71).

[6] See Margaret Patterson Hannay, "A Preface to *Perelandra*," *The Longing for a Form: Essays on the Fiction of C.S. Lewis*, ed. Peter J. Schakel (n.p.: Kent State UP, 1977) 73–90; *A Preface to Paradise Lost*, 1942 (London: Oxford UP, 1960) 44; John Milton, *Paradise Lost*, *The Poetical Works*, ed. H.C. Beeching (London: Henry Frowde; London: Oxford UP, 1912) III 583 and following; "Dante's Similes" (1940), *Studies in Medieval and Renaissance Literature*, ed. Walter Hooper (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1966) 68, 75.

Classical, Medieval and Renaissance Influences

Lewis's reading and appreciation of Classical and Medieval and Renaissance writers, not only in English, was extremely wide, and a full study of all the ancient and early authors that he alludes to across his *oeuvre* would be far beyond the scope of this introduction: particular debts are indicated elsewhere in this Introduction and in my Annotations.

Probably the first critic to publish on Lewis's influences and sources was Brady, who sent his two articles on *Out of the Silent Planet* and *Perelandra* to Lewis.[7] Lewis was grateful but, after saying, "The *Quellenforschung* [investigation of sources] is good", gracefully noted a few errors in Brady's gauging of the relative importance of various influences, that he had never read some of the sources ascribed to him, and he thought Brady over-rated Milton's influence, but that it was often "difficult to isolate [Milton] from Dante & St Augustine" in his work.[8]

Dante, Milton and Augustine have since been the subject of a few critical articles and monographs. Kranz explores some of Lewis's criticism of Dante, and suggests instances where Dante influenced Lewis's fiction.[9] Cuneo explores Lewis's knowledge of Milton and *Paradise Lost* and its influences upon and concerns in common with *Perelandra* and some of Lewis's apologetical works.[10] Hannay elucidates illuminatingly how "those things which disappointed Lewis in *Paradise Lost* have been altered in Lewis's own Edenic myth, *Perelandra*; those elements which he most approved in Milton he has sought to emulate."[11] Rogers and Riga both deal illuminatingly with the Augustinian understanding of evil that Lewis displays in *Perelandra*.[12] In Moorman's discussion of Lewis in *Precincts of Felicity* he notes Lewis's use of images and models of the Augustinian city in a number of his works.[13] White's study is a scholarly exploration of the theological and philosophical understandings of humanity utilised and interrogated in Lewis's work and thought, including but by no means limited to Augustinian teachings.[14] Barkman explores Augustinian and Aristotelian elements in Lewis's moral philosophy, as well the mediation of Plato through later sources

---

[7] Charles A. Brady, "Introduction to Lewis" (1944), *The Bulletin of the New York C.S Lewis Society* 3.1 (1971): 6–8; Charles A. Brady, "C.S. Lewis II" (1944), *CSL: The Bulletin of the New York C.S Lewis Society* 3.2 (1971): 6–8.

[8] *The Collected Letters of C.S. Lewis*, ed. Walter Hooper, 3 vol. (New York: HarperSanFrancisco, 2004–07) vol. 2 629–31 (29 October 1944).

[9] Gisbert Kranz, "Dante in the Work of C.S. Lewis," *CSL: The Bulletin of the New York C.S Lewis Society* 4.10 (1973): 1-8, trans. Hope Kirkpatrick from *Deutches Dante-Jahrbuch* 47 (n.d).

[10] Andrew P. Cuneo, "One Heart Amidst a Thousand Like His Own: The Impact of John Milton on C.S Lewis," diss., U of Oxford, 1997.

[11] Hannay, Preface to *Perelandra*" 73–90; 73.

[12] Katherin A. Rogers, "Augustinian Evil in C.S. Lewis's *Perelandra*," *The Transcendent Adventure: Studies of Religion in Science Fiction/Fantasy*, ed. Robert Reilly, Contributions to the Study of Science Fiction and Fantasy XII (Westport, CT: Greenwood, 1985) 83–91; Frank P. Riga, "Augustinian Pride and the Work of C.S. Lewis," *Augustinian Studies* 16 (1985): 129-36.

[13] Charles Moorman, *The Precincts of Felicity: The Augustinian City of the Oxford Christians* (Gainesville: U of Florida P, 1966).

[14] William Luther White, *The Image of Man in C.S. Lewis*, diss., Northwestern U & Garrett Theological College, 1968, (London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1970).

in Lewis's understanding of mythopoeia.[15] Barkman in particular makes it clear that Lewis's warning to Brady applies to many of his early sources: his influences are also influences upon each other, and influence may be direct or mediated.

I have chosen a much more obscure author than those, mentioned above, who have already received critical attention: Alanus ab Insulis is an example of one of the almost-forgotten contributors to the syncretic model or world-view that Lewis so enjoyed, and which he called the "Discarded Image".[16] Alanus is a particularly good example as his writings are the source of elements in Lewis's fiction, apologetics, and literary criticism and I shall explore his influence upon Lewis in detail, and not only as it pertains to *That Hideous Strength*.

[15] Adam Barkman, "Aristotelian Ethics in C.S. Lewis's Philosophy," *CSL: The Bulletin of the New York C.S. Lewis Society* 38.2 (2007): 1–9; Adam Barkman, "Some Ancient Philosophical Sources in C.S. Lewis's Practical Ethics," *Surprised by Faith: Conversion and the Academy. A Collection of Papers Celebrating the 75th Anniversary of the Conversion of C.S. Lewis*, ed. Daryl McCarthy *et al.* (Newcastle: Cambridge Scholars, 2007) 161–80; Adam Barkman, "The Uncreative Spell: St. Augustine and C.S. Lewis on Pride," *CSL: The Bulletin of the New York C.S. Lewis Society* 39.2 (2008): 1–10, 12–16;
Adam Barkman, "It's NOT 'All in Plato': C.S. Lewis's Theory of Myth," *CSL: The Bulletin of the New York C.S. Lewis Society* 40.5 (2009): 1–8.

[16] See Introduction 4: "Lewis's Syncretic Cosmology".

Alanus ab Insulis
De Planctu Naturae
Anticlaudianus

Our primary evidence for the syncretic model is the literature that was written within its tradition, and one of the literary exponents of that tradition is Alanus ab Insulis. Not only does Alanus transmit the tradition: sometimes he articulates some element of the Discarded Image in a form that influences later participants in the tradition, or in a form that Lewis particularly enjoys and uses. While many elements in Alanus are derived or developed from Bernardus Silvestris, Alanus is an overtly Christian author while Bernardus's allegiances are unclear.[17] In Lewis's work we find evidence of his critical views on Alanus's influence, and of Alanus's influence upon the fiction and thought of Lewis himself.

Alan of Lille, Alain de l'Isle, or (as Lewis always calls him) Alanus ab Insulis was born in the 1120s, and died around 1203 in the Monastery of Citeaux. He is the author of numerous theological works, including works against heresy such as *Tractatus Contra Haereticos*, works of speculative theology such as *Regulae Theologicae*, and works of practical theology such as the *Ars Praedicandi.*[18] He was known as *Doctor Universalis* for his wide learning and mastery of theology in addition to the seven liberal arts.[19] Alanus is also the author of two works of fiction: the *Anticlaudianus* and *De Planctu Naturae* (*The Plaint of Nature*). Both these works display Alanus's famed knowledge of the liberal arts and theology, and it is to these works that Lewis refers when he cites Alanus.

The title of *Anticlaudianus* refers to Claudian, the author of *In Rufinum* (described by Lewis as a lampoon), the tale of Rufinus, a completely wicked man and champion of the fury Allecto.[20] By contrast, *Anticlaudianus* is the story of Nature's raising up of "The Good and Perfect Man" of the work's subtitle as a champion against Allecto. Nature and various personified Virtues decide to create a perfect man, and realise that, while they can create the body, God must provide the soul. The bulk of the story describes the journey of Prudentia (or Phronesis—human wisdom) to the Empyrean in order to arrange this. She travels allegorically, in a chariot drawn by all five senses and accompanied by Reason as far as the boundary of the Empyrean and accompanied by Theology and riding Hearing beyond it.

---

[17] *The Discarded Image: An Introduction to Medieval and Renaissance Literature* (1964; Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1994) 60; Barbara Newman, "Nature (I): Nature and Nature's God," *God and the Goddesses: Vision, Poetry, and Belief in the Middle Ages* (Philadelphia: U of Philadelphia P, 2003) 64–66; John M. Trout, *The Voyage of Prudence: The World View of Alan of Lille* (Washington, DC: UP of America, 1979) 48; James J. Sheridan, introduction, *Anticlaudianus: or, The Good and Perfect Man*, by Alanus ab Insulis [Alan of Lille], trans. & commentary James J. Sheridan (Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies, 1973) 32.

[18] See: G.R. Evans, *Alan of Lille: The Frontiers of Theology in the Later Twelfth Century* (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1983) 14–19; James J. Sheridan, introduction, *The Plaint of Nature*, by Alanus ab Insulis [Alan of Lille], trans. & commentary James J. Sheridan, Mediaeval Sources in Translation XXVI (Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies, 1980) 11–31.

[19] *Catholic Encyclopedia* (Robert Appleton Company, 1907) 28 Aug. 2003 <http://www.newadvent.org/cathen/01244e.htm>, "Alain de l'Isle".

[20] *The Allegory of Love: A Study in Medieval Tradition* (1936; Oxford: Oxford UP, 1977) 99.

Prudentia fulfils her mission, and the story concludes with a somewhat perfunctory ψυχομαχία in which the perfect man and the Virtues vanquish Allecto and various vices, restoring the golden age to the sublunary realm.

Lewis is no admirer of the *Anticlaudianus* as literature: he describes it as "nearly worthless except from the historical point of view": the metre tedious, the rhetoric "monotonous", the style contemptibly vicious.[21] Indeed, Lewis uses Alanus as an example of stylistic vices, describing one author as engaging in "sometimes a tasteless reduplication of examples which anticipates the worst passages in Alanus" and another as having scenes "marred by some of the quaintnesses he had learned from Alanus".[22]

Nevertheless, Lewis argues that the *Anticlaudianus* is important in the history of thought because Alanus was one of those who tried to reconcile courtly or chivalric ideals with religious ideals—the virtues of the Perfect Man, and the Vices he fights, are a strange mixture of chivalric and Christian.[23] Even though Alanus did not successfully reconcile chivalry and religion, the attempt gave chivalry the status that made possible the celebrations of courtly love that followed.[24] These include Dante's *Divina Commedia* (1321), and Lewis uses Dante and Alanus as exemplars when he discusses other authors, noting that, while Gower (*c.* 1330–1408) is "not enough of a philosopher to achieve, like Dante, or even to attempt, like Alanus, any reconciliation between the claims of his two worlds", his near-contemporary Thomas Usk (d. 1388) is "[i]mmeasurably below Dante, and even below Alanus, as an artist […] yet falls into line with them in his attempt at integration".[25]

Lewis prefers *De Planctu Naturae*, a dream vision written in the alternating sections of prose and verse that Lewis calls Menippean satire.[26] In it Nature complains against various perversions of human appetite, especially forms of sexuality divorced from fertility, and she calls upon Genius to pronounce a commination upon the practitioners of such vices. Alanus's Latin is still tortuous and over-elaborate and difficult—one of his translators laments, "With the possible exception of Martianus Capella, the Latin of the *De planctu Naturae* is the most difficult I have ever encountered", and Lewis describes Alanus as bringing Natura in "stiffly robed in rhetoric, conceit, and symbol", but the less ambitious genre makes the faults less vicious.[27] The homosexual activity that provides the biggest reason for Nature's complaint is described in metaphors derived from the arts of the

[21] *Allegory of Love* 99–100.
[22] *Allegory of Love* 76, 150–51.
[23] *Allegory of Love* 102–05.
[24] *Allegory of Love* 110–11.
[25] *Allegory of Love* 218, 227.
[26] *English Literature in the Sixteenth Century, Excluding Drama*, Oxford History of English Literature (1954; London: Oxford UP, 1973) 333; *Discarded Image* 79.
[27] Sheridan, introduction, *Plaint* vii; *Discarded Image* 35–36; *Allegory of Love* 105.

trivium, full of dark allusions to inappropriate relations between subjects and predicates, and the terms of syllogisms, and rhetorical tropes.[28]

In *The Allegory of Love* Lewis translates two passages from *De Planctu*: a description of the arrival of Nature;[29] and Alanus's outline of parallel social, theological and personal hierarchies,[30] which Lewis describes as "one of [Alanus's] best scenes" and a "magnificent passage".[31] These two passages are germane to two central areas concerning which Lewis notes Alanus's influence on later writers, and which are sources for Lewis: these are the teasing out of some of the implications of a hierarchical universe, and the depiction and presentation of Nature and Genius.

One of the principles of the universe that Alanus assumes and depicts is that of hierarchy: the corollary of hierarchy is that every entity in existence, except for the highest and lowest, must have a natural superior and inferior. This lends itself to the modelling of existence in terms of triplets or triads. In prose 3 of *De Planctu* Alanus provides an overview of the triads that operate in parallel in the theological, social and individual domains. Lewis summarises:

> Alanus […] works out the theological, the social, and the individual triads in terms of castle (or citadel), city, and the lands beyond the city walls. These are literally given, of course, in the social one; a king in his citadel, the barons in the city, the peasants in the fields outside. In the individual the head is the citadel, where the empress Sapience keeps her court. In the City of the Breast lives the high baronage of Magnanimity. Outside, in the abdomen, or still more outside, in the genitals, live the common appetites. [In …] the theological triad [… t]he castle of God is the Empyrean, the region beyond the outermost sphere. In the city, in the vast ethereal spaces, dwell the cosmic nobility, the nine orders of angels. Down here on Earth there is a place permitted to us "as to aliens", he says, "outside the wall".[32]

The tripartite division of the human psyche has its origin in Plato's *Republic*, which was not known to Alanus, and the *Timaeus*, known to Alanus and his contemporaries in a translation by Chalcidius.[33] Alanus and other Medieval thinkers draw this, syncretically, into their understanding of the whole universe. Lewis explains:

> Reason and appetite must not be left facing one another across a no-man's-land. A trained sentiment of honour or chivalry must provide the "mean" that unites them and integrates the civilised man. But it is equally important for its cosmic implications. These were fully drawn out, centuries later, in the magnificent passage where Alanus ab Insulis compares the sum of things to a city. In the central castle, in the Empyrean, the Emperor sits enthroned. In the lower heavens live the angelic knighthood. We, on Earth, are "outside the city wall".[34]

---

[28] Alanus ab Insulis, *De Planctu* prose V 156–63: Alain of Lille, *The Complaint of Nature*, trans. Douglas Moffatt, Yale Studies in English XXXVI (1908) 5 Aug. 2004 <http://www.fordham.edu/halsall/basis/alain-deplanctu.html>; Alan of Lille, *The Plaint of Nature*, trans. & commentary James J. Sheridan. Mediaeval Sources in Translation XXVI (Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies, 1980). *Allegory of Love* 106.

[29] *De Planctu* prose II 108–11; *Allegory of Love* 106–08.

[30] *De Planctu* prose III 120–22; *Allegory of Love* 108–09.

[31] *Allegory of Love* 80; *Discarded Image* 58.

[32] "Imagination and Thought in the Middle Ages" (1956), *Studies in Medieval and Renaissance Literature*, ed. Walter Hooper (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1966) 59.

[33] *Allegory of Love* 88.

[34] *Discarded Image* 58.

For Lewis, Alanus provides the *locus classicus* for the Medieval understanding of the significance of the hierarchical triads, and this source informs Lewis's critical, ethical and fictional works.

Medieval depictions of Nature and Genius were of professional and critical interest to Lewis. In *Studies in Words*, citing Langland, Bernardus Silvestris, Alanus, *Romaunt of the Rose*, and Chaucer, Lewis classifies "the *kinde* or *natura* and *physis* or *nature*, the 'vicaire of the almightie Lorde', who so dominates medieval poetry" as "a personification, though a very grave and active one".[35] This extensive and expansive personification, often approaching deification, is the invention and legacy of early Medieval authors: Lewis notes that Nature was "not made much of in the *Timaeus*" of Plato, but was "personified on a large scale by Bernardus Silvestris and after him by Alanus ab Insulis" and that "[t]he medieval development [of Nature], in quantity and still more in vitality, is quite out of proportion to the hints supplied by antiquity".[36] Alanus is not merely a useful example of the Medieval treatment of personified Nature: he is an important contributor to the tradition, one of those that made Nature (and Genius) the characters that inhabited the imagination of secular poets for centuries to come.[37] For Chaucer, Alanus's presentation of Nature is so authoritative that he feels no need to elaborate upon it, and simply refers his reader back to Alanus: "And right as Aleyn, in the Pleynt of Kinde, / Devyseth Nature of aray and face, / In swich aray men mighte[n] hir ther finde."[38]

Lewis attributes Dunbar's treatment of Natura to Alanus, Chaucer and others.[39] In a discussion of Spenser he illustrates how pervasive Nature, God's Vice-Regent, has become, noting that Mutability appeals to the highest being of all, "To weet, the God of Nature",[40] but that

> when this appeal is answered it is the goddess *Natura* who appears, as in Claudian, Bernardus, Alanus, and Jean de Meun,
>
> > This great Grandmother of all creatures bred,
> > Great Nature, ever young, yet full of eld;
> > Still mooving, yet unmoved from her sted,
> > Unseene of any, yet of all beheld.
>
> The woody pavilion […] which rises up to receive her, the "flowers that voluntary grow" beneath her feet, and the homage of the river-god, are all in the same tradition.[41]

In Alanus Nature is closely allied with Genius: he is both her son and in a sense her

---

[35] *Studies in Words*, 2nd ed. (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1967) 41, citing l. 379 of Geoffrey Chaucer, "The Parlement of Foules," *The Complete Works of Geoffrey Chaucer*, ed. Walter W. Skeat (1912; London: Oxford UP, 1954) 101–10.
[36] "Dante's Statius" (1957), *Studies in Medieval and Renaissance Literature*, ed. Walter Hooper (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1966) 96; *Discarded Image* 36.
[37] *Allegory of Love* 111.
[38] Chaucer, "Parlement" 316–18; see also *Allegory of Love* 58.
[39] *English Literature* 91.
[40] Edmund Spenser, "Two cantos of Mutabilitie," *Poetical Works*, ed. J.C. Smith & E. de Selincourt (1912; Oxford: Oxford UP, 1970) 394–406: vi 35 6.
[41] *Allegory of Love* 355, citing Spenser, "Mutabilitie" vii 13 1–4.

consort, in that Truth is the daughter of their "generative kiss".[42] But Genius is not the only creature of that name. In the mid-1930s Lewis carefully untangled the two possible meanings of the word, in a letter in 1934, as an appendix to *The Allegory of Love* (1936), and as an article in *The Review of English Studies* (also 1936). Lewis distinguishes Genius *A* and Genius *B*. Genius *A* is the god or spirit of generation or procreation, while Genius *B* is the "guardian spirit of a place or person > guardian angel > higher self > 'genius' of a poet".[43] Genius *A*, with his concern for procreation, is the Genius of *De Planctu Naturae*, which Lewis cites in all his discussions of this subject.[44] This Genius, Lewis observes, "counts for much more than Genius *B* in Medieval literature" and Alanus is one of those who informs later Medieval depictions and understandings of Genius, as he does with Nature.[45]

In *De Planctu* Genius carries a pen and a scroll.[46] He inherits these attributes from a character in Bernardus Silvestris whose office, as Lewis explains, is to "inscribe the Forms, conceived in heaven, upon the phenomenal world, which is precisely what every instance of reproduction does".[47] This being is called "*Oyarses et Genius*". Lewis thanks Professor C.J.J. Webb for the suggestion that *oyarses* is a corruption of οὐσιάρχης and for pointing out a reference in another author in which the ousiarch of the fixed stars is clearly to be equated with Genius *A*.[48] Bernadus's *oyarses* is not only the precursor of Alanus's priest Genius, son of Nature, but also the source of "Oyarsa" (plural "Oyéresu") as the title of the angelic ruler of a planet in Lewis's science fiction trilogy.[49]

The offices of the Oyéresu in the Solar System of the Ransom novels—judging from what we learn from Malacandra and Perelandra, the Oyéresu of Mars and Venus—combine the duties of both Nature and Genius, which is not surprising, considering how closely linked they are in Alanus. Malacandra tells Ransom that Mars was saved by Maleldil's—God's—acting through him, and the rebellious Oyarsa of Earth conquered by the other Oyéresu's acting as they were taught by Maleldil.[50] He speaks of his duty to his world and its inhabitants, and his hopes and plans are contingent on Maleldil's will.[51] Similarly Nature tells the dreamer in *De Planctu*:

> He [God] is the creator, I was created; He is the creator of my work, I am the work of the Creator; He creates from nothing, I beg the material for my work from someone; He works by

[42] *De Planctu* prose IX 217.
[43] "Genius and Genius" (1936), *Studies in Medieval and Renaissance* Literature, ed. Walter Hooper (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1966) 169–70; *Allegory of Love* 361; *Collected Letters* vol. 2 149.
[44] "Genius and Genius" 170, *Allegory of Love* 362-3, *Collected Letters* vol. 2 149.
[45] "Genius and Genius" 170; *Allegory of Love* 111, 200.
[46] *De Planctu* prose IX 215–16.
[47] Bernardus Silvestris, *The* Cosmographia *of Bernardus Silvestris [De Mundi Universitate]*, trans., intro. & notes Winthrop Wetherbee (New York: Columbia UP, 1973) Microcosmos ch. 3 [prose]; "Genius and Genius" 170; see also *Allegory of Love* 362.
[48] "Genius and Genius" 170; *Allegory of Love* 362.
[49] See: Preliminary Note B: "Lewis as Character"; *Out of the Silent Planet* (London: Bodley Head-John Lane, 1938) ch. 22 250–51.
[50] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 18 196.
[51] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 18 199; ch. 20 230; ch. 21 234.

> His own divinity, I work in His name; He, by his will alone, bids things come into existence; my work is but a sign of the work of God.[52]

Like Nature, Malacandra is the ruler of a planet and its inhabitants, but, like her, he is a created being, entirely subordinated to God. Like Genius, Malacandra inscribes God's will on phenomena. This of course makes him the middle entity in a triad: God rules the planet Mars through him. Like Nature in Spenser's "Cantos of Mutabilitie", Oyarsa-Perelandra is "Unseene of any, yet of all beheld".[53] She tells Ransom, when the King and Lady of Venus have stood where Adam and Eve fell and are due to come into their inheritance:

> They have not seen my face till today […] except as they see it in the water and the roof of heaven, the islands, the caves, and the trees. I was not set to rule them, but while they were young I ruled all else. I rounded this ball when it first arose from Arbol. I spun the air about it and wove the roof. I built the Fixed Island and this, the holy mountain, as Maleldil taught me. The beasts that sing and the beasts that fly and all that swims on my breast and all that creeps and tunnels within me down to the centre has been mine. And today all this is taken from me. Blessed be He.[54]

Unlike in any other planet in the Solar system, the rational organic inhabitants of Venus have not fallen into sin: hence Perelandra prepares to pass her intermediate role to them: God will rule Venus through the Lord and Lady—rational animals—no longer through an angelic being. But the triadic hierarchical principle remains.

When Nature appears in Alanus, the natural world responds to her in celebration and adoration.[55] Lewis appropriates this set piece in a number of contexts. In Narnia, after the battle that makes Caspian King, humans, dwarfs, Talking Beasts, dumb beasts, spirits and the gods of plants and rivers all combine in procession and celebration.[56] Oyarsa-Malacandra's procession through his people elicits love and joy.[57] The arrival of the triumphant Lord and Lady of Perelandra is marked by a concourse of celebrating beasts and the obeisance of the Oyéresu of Malacandra and Perelandra.[58] In *The Great Divorce*, the arrival of one of the great ones of heaven is heralded by a procession of birds and animals in triumphal joy.[59] These all owe something to the arrival of Alanus's Nature.

In Alanus, Genius in *De Planctu* and the perfect man of the *Anticlaudianus* both have simultaneously the best characteristics of youth and old age.[60] At the end of the Narnia stories, the sometime monarchs of Narnia, beatified in Aslan's Country, appear both old and young, whether they were old or young before.[61] Here, however, Alanus is not the only

---

[52] *De Planctu* prose III 124.
[53] Spenser, "Mutabilitie" vii 13 4.
[54] *Perelandra* (London: Bodley Head-John Lane, 1943) ch. 16 224.
[55] *De Planctu* prose II 108–12.
[56] *Prince Caspian*, illus. Pauline Baynes (1951; London: Lions-Collins, 1980) ch. 14 168–82.
[57] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 18 193.
[58] *Perelandra* ch. 16 233–34.
[59] *The Great Divorce: A Dream* (1946; London: HarperCollins, 2002) 117–20.
[60] *De Planctu* IX 215; Alanus ab Insulis [Alan of Lille], *Anticlaudianus: or, The Good and Perfect* Man, trans. & commentary James J. Sheridan (Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies, 1973) VII 175–76.
[61] *The Last Battle*, illus. Pauline Baynes (1956; London: Lions-Collins, 1980) ch. 12 126–27.

source for this: the Princess's great-grandmother in George MacDonald's *The Princess and the Goblin* is similarly described.[62]

Lewis's cosmology in the Ransom trilogy is an artful harmonisation or syncretism of different models of the universe. Lewis deals only with the solar system, not equating it with the universe but taking little notice of anything beyond the sun, moon and the six planets known to the ancients and with rich astrological associations.[63] He uses a heliocentric model, and presents all the planets as Earth is presented in Medieval texts, as exclusions from the brightness of the heavens.[64] He is concerned to present interplanetary space as "the heavens", the realm of æther, flooded with light and packed with angelic life, and not as the cold, dark, vacuity of twentieth-century fiction: Lewis conveys this in *Out of the Silent Planet* through Ransom's initial surprise at the light and warmth, and his eventual delighted surrender to this "tyranny of heat and light".[65] Ransom's experience is similar to Prudentia's in the *Anticlaudianus*, where the brightness of the zone of the fixed stars is the source of both confusion and joy.[66]

In another debt to the *Anticlaudianus*, Oyarsa-Malacandra tells Ransom about Satan's rebellion:

> the Oyarsa of your world—he was brighter and greater than I— […] became bent. […] It was in his mind to spoil other worlds besides his own. […] There was great war, and we drove him back out of the heavens and bound him in the air of his own world as Maleldil taught us.[67]

And he tells Oyarsa-Perelandra, "I have been down into the air of Thulcandra […] which the small ones call Tellus. A thickened air as full of the Darkened as Deep Heaven is of the Light Ones".[68] This is borrowed from Prudentia's experience of the denizens of the air, fallen angels or demons "to whom the air is a prison".[69] Alanus devotes about 70 lines to the description of the demons bound in earth's air, concluding, "an Angel, barred from the hall of the heavenly kingdom, dethroned from his seat, broken by his vaunting, cast down by his pride, ruined by his envy, pays for his sin by exile and for his guilt by suffering".[70]

I have cited two of Lewis's discussions of Alanus's depictions of hierarchical triads in De Planctu prose 3. Both excerpts ended with the observation that humanity is "outside the city wall".[71] Lewis expands on this:

> *Outside the wall* — that is the point. [When we look at the night sky…] we certainly feel that we are looking *out*; out of somewhere warm and lighted into dark, cold, indifferent desolation, out of a house on to the dark waste of the sea. But the medieval man felt he was looking *in*. Here is

---

[62] George MacDonald, *The Princess and the Goblin* (1872; Ware: Wordsworth, 1995) ch. 3 16.
[63] Lewis ignores the planets outside the orbit of Saturn: Uranus (first observed in 1781), Neptune (1846), and Pluto (observed, though its existence was inferred earlier, in 1930).
[64] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 6 56–57 & ch. 18 195; see *Discarded Image* 62–63.
[65] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 4 39; ch. 5. 41–44; ch. 6 51–52; ch. 21 239–41; ch. 22 253.
[66] *Anticlaudianus* V 136–39.
[67] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 18 196.
[68] *Perelandra* ch. 16 224.
[69] *Discarded Image* 118.
[70] *Anticlaudianus* IV 127–29.
[71] "Imagination and Thought" 59; *Discarded Image* 51.

> the outside. The Moon's orbit is the city wall. Night opens the gates for a moment and we catch a glimpse of the high pomps which are going on inside; staring as animals stare at the fires of the encampment they cannot enter, as rustics stare at a city, as suburbia stares at Mayfair.[72]

and

> How, we ask, can the Empyrean be the centre when it is not only on, but outside, the circumference of the whole universe? Because, as Dante was to say more clearly than anyone else, the spatial order is the opposite of the spiritual, and the material cosmos mirrors, hence reverses, the reality, so that what is truly the rim seems to us the hub.[73]

In a piece of word painting given to Ransom, in a letter cited in the postscript to *Out of the Silent Planet*, Lewis pays homage to this double vision arising from one of his favourite passages from Alanus:

> Imagine the Milky Way magnified […], not painted across the zenith, but rising like a constellation behind the mountain tops—a dazzling necklace of lights brilliant as planets, slowly heaving itself up till it fills a fifth of the sky and now leaves a belt of blackness between itself and the horizon. […] Something else is coming. There is a glow like moonrise on the *harandra*. […] And now the true king of the night is up, and now he is threading his way through that strange western galaxy and making its lights dim by comparison with his own. […] And now I guess what it is that I have seen—Jupiter rising beyond the Asteroids and forty million miles nearer than he has ever been to earthly eyes. But the Malacandrians would say "within the Asteroids," for they have an odd habit, sometimes, of turning the solar system inside out. They call the Asteroids the "dancers before the threshold of the Great Worlds." The Great Worlds are the planets, as we should say, "beyond" or "outside" the Asteroids.[74]

Lewis gives no spatial location to the Empyrean, and is dealing with a heliocentric solar system, but here, speaking of the gas giants as both within and outside the asteroid belt,[75] he gives momentary expression to the view that the inner planets, capable of bearing life (vegetable, animal and rational) are spiritually peripheral, farthest from the values of the heavenly centre. This is an adaptation of Alanus's and Dante's presentations of earth spatially central but spiritually peripheral. Lewis re-uses the expression "turned inside out" twice in *The Discarded Image* in discussions of the Medieval superimposition of a spiritual universe upon the spatial, with resultant paradoxes.[76]

Just as rationality rules appetite through magnanimity, as the king rules commons through the barons, as God rules humanity through the angels, as Maleldil governs planets through the Oyéresu, Lewis's world of Narnia exhibits the triadic principle. Aslan rules the Talking Beasts of Narnia, but through an intermediary: Narnia can be rightfully ruled only by humans—Sons of Adam and Daughters of Eve. Thus the ancient Kings and Queens of Narnia are humans from our world and their descendants.[77] When the White Witch usurps power in Narnia she pretends she is human, but is in fact descended from Lilith and a

---

[72] "Imagination and Thought" 59.
[73] *Discarded Image* 58.
[74] *Out of the Silent Planet* postscript 262–63.
[75] The asteroids, the first of which was observed in 1801, are not part of traditional astrology, but they serve very beautifully here to introduce the irrelevant-seeming comment on the Malacandrians' inversion of the solar system.
[76] *Discarded Image* 58 & 116.
[77] *The Magician's Nephew*, illus. Pauline Baynes (1955; London: Lions-Collins, 1980) ch. 11 125–31.

Giant; she fears the Sons of Adam and Daughters of Eve as much as good Beasts welcome them because of a prophecy that when two Sons of Adam and two Daughters of Eve sit in the four thrones of Cair Paravel, her reign and life will end.[78] This comes to pass and the children are crowned by Aslan to rule the Beasts of Narnia.[79] Later in Narnia's history the Telmarine dynasty comes to power and Aslan tells Caspian, "[Y]ou could be no true king of Narnia unless, like the Kings of old, you were a Son of Adam and came from the world of Adam's sons. And so you are."[80] Thus one of the abominations of the Last Days of Narnia is the blasphemy of a Beast—an Ape—claiming to be Human and purporting to mediate between Aslan and the Beasts.[81]

Alanus's spiritual interpretation of the triadic principle (building on Plato) is central to Lewis's understanding of what it is to be fully human. In *The Abolition of Man* Lewis writes:

> We were told it all long ago by Plato. As the king governs by his executive, so Reason in man must rule the mere appetites by means of the "spirited element". The head rules the belly through the chest—the seat, as Alanus tells us, of Magnanimity, of emotions organized by trained habit into stable sentiments. The Chest—Magnanimity—Sentiment—these are the indispensable liaison officers between cerebral man and visceral man. It may even be said that it is by this middle element that man is man: for by his intellect he is mere spirit and by his appetite mere animal.[82]

That Hideous Strength is a fictional exploration of this same question of what it is to be human.[83] The evil characters deny their own humanity for the sake of power, using their rationality to side with demons against humanity or indulging their appetites at the expense of others and their own souls. Mark and Jane, the young man and woman whose development is the central concern of the novel, learn to bring their appetites and reasons into balance and so mature as human beings. After the crisis that triggers the beginning of Mark's salvation, Lewis writes of him, "his youth approached the moment at which he would begin to be a person."[84]

---

[78] *The Lion, the Witch and the Wardrobe*, illus. Pauline Baynes (1950; London: Lions-Collins, 1980) ch. 8 76; see also *Lion* ch. 4 35, ch. 7 68, ch. 8 77.
[79] *Lion* ch. 17 165.
[80] *Prince Caspian* ch. 15 184.
[81] *Last Battle* ch. 3 32–33.
[82] *The Abolition of Man: Reflections on Education with Special Reference to the Teaching of English in the Upper Forms of Schools* (1943; London: Fount-Collins, 1978) 19, citing Plato, *The Republic*, trans. Paul Shorey, vol. 1., Loeb Classical Library (London: Heinemann; Cambridge, MS: Harvard UP, 1956) IV 442 b–c and Alanus, *De Planctu* prose III.
[83] *That Hideous Strength* preface 5–6.
[84] Ch. 10 II 230.

Christian Mentors

The two most important writers whose works helped bring Lewis to the point of becoming a Christian, and whose writing inspired and informed his spiritual and ethical life are G.K. Chesterton and George MacDonald (who also influenced Chesterton).[85]

Despite their importance to Lewis their influence upon him has not been extensively studied. Some critics deal with MacDonald or MacDonald and Chesterton in far-ranging overviews of the Inklings and others.[86] Only three of the articles in *G.K. Chesterton and C.S. Lewis: The Riddle of Joy* are concerned with Chesterton's influence on Lewis, rather than with Chesterton or with Lewis. In "Some Personal Angles on Chesterton and Lewis" Derrick outlines some of the differences and similarities between Chesterton and Lewis, noting that "in each case, there was a marked continuity between what the writer put into his fiction and what he said elsewhere".[87] Burton seems to write more about himself than his subject in "G.K. Chesterton and C.S. Lewis: The Men and Their Times", and Leigh undermines his own credibility by assuming that the fictional *Man Who Was Thursday* is autobiographical in "The Psychology of Conversion in Chesterton's and Lewis's Autobiographies".[88] In "George MacDonald and C.S. Lewis", in a collection of articles on MacDonald, Durie offers a detailed examination of Lewis's writing about and use of MacDonald in support of an argument that his relationship with MacDonald is more complex than is usually assumed, apparently suggesting that even Lewis underestimated the complexity.[89]

---

[85] The spiritual influence of MacDonald on Chesterton and both on Lewis is summed up in Aidan Mackey, "The Christian Influence of G.K. Chesterton on C.S. Lewis," *A Christian for All Christians: Essays in Honour of C.S. Lewis*, ed. Andrew Walker & James Patrick (London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1990) 68–82.

[86] See the section that follows: "The Inklings".

[87] Christopher Derrick, "Some Personal Angles on Chesterton and Lewis," *G.K. Chesterton and C.S. Lewis: The Riddle of Joy*, ed. Michael H. MacDonald & Andrew A. Tadie (London: Collins, 1989) 3–19, 14.

[88] John David Burton, "G.K. Chesterton and C.S. Lewis: The Men and Their Times" & David Leigh, "The Psychology of Conversion in Chesterton's and Lewis's Autobiographies," *G.K. Chesterton and C.S. Lewis: The Riddle of Joy*, ed. Michael H. MacDonald & Andrew A. Tadie (London: Collins, 1989) 160–72 & 290–304.

[89] Catherine Durie, "George MacDonald and C.S. Lewis," *The Gold Thread: Essays on George MacDonald*, ed. William Raeper (Edinburgh: Edinburgh UP, 1990) 163-185, see 184.

G.K. Chesterton

In an interview given in May 1963, six months before he died, Lewis was asked whether there was "a key to the cultivation" of his "light touch" even with "heavy theological themes". He replied:

> I believe this is a matter of temperament. However, I was helped in achieving this attitude by my studies of the literary men of the Middle Ages, and by the writings of G.K. Chesterton. Chesterton, for example, was not afraid to combine serious Christian themes with buffoonery. In the same way, the miracle plays of the Middle Ages would deal with a sacred subject such as the nativity of Christ, yet would combine it with a farce.[90]

Lewis first became acquainted with Chesterton's work when, in hospital with trench fever in 1918, he read a book of his essays: he loved Chesterton's humour—"the humour which is not in any way separable from the argument but is rather […] the 'bloom' on dialectic itself"—and even his goodness.[91] He came to feel that Chesterton, like George MacDonald and others, was, despite his Christianity, a wise and admirable writer.[92] And, in 1925, he read Chesterton's *The Everlasting Man*, and found a Christian view of history "making sense".[93]

Thus, at the end of his life, and more than forty years after first beginning to read Chesterton, Lewis' s remarks in "Cross-Examination" acknowledge a debt to Chesterton—a debt not merely to source or model, but to a deep and wide influence upon Lewis's style and manner of writing and thinking on serious matters, even upon his personality and self-presentation.

Others certainly acknowledged something Chestertonian in Lewis's manner. Carpenter, one of Lewis's biographers, variously describes Lewis's attitudes, Christianity and manner as "Chestertonian".[94] He divides Lewis's "mind and work" into four aspects, which he labels the "Chestertonian", the "boyish", the "debater" and the "poet".[95] He suggests, however, that "the Chestertonian cap did not really fit Lewis. It was indeed more 'the kind of thing a man might say' rather than the expression of his real feelings".[96] This is confusing, since Carpenter goes on to suggest that Lewis, who was undeniably boyish, was responding to a certain boyishness in Chesterton, which does not seem to imply that Lewis's Chestertonian characteristics were some kind of disguise.[97] Lewis's first response to Chesterton, mentioned above, was not that this was a schoolboyish debater upon whom he

---

[90] "Cross-Examination" (1963), *Christian Reunion and Other Essays* (London: Fount-Collins, 1990) 82.
[91] *Surprised by Joy: The Shape of My Early Life* (1955; London: Fount-Collins, 1977) 153.
[92] *Surprised by Joy* 171.
[93] *Surprised by Joy* 178; Roger Lancelyn Green & Walter Hooper, *C.S.Lewis: A Biography*, rev. & expanded ed., paperback ed. (London: HarperCollins, 2003) 100.
[94] Humphrey Carpenter, *The Inklings: C.S.Lewis, J.R.R.Tolkien, Charles Williams, and Their Friends* (1978; London: Unwin Paperbacks, 1981) 61, 155, 181.
[95] Carpenter 217.
[96] Carpenter 218.
[97] Carpenter 218–21.

could model himself: it was a delight in one whose humour was the kind that already delighted him.[98]

Those who knew Lewis also saw Chestertonian characteristics in him. In 1929, Lewis wrote to his friend Arthur Greeves that Owen Barfield had linked him with George MacDonald and Chesterton as those who pre-eminently had "the idea of the spiritual world as *home*".[99] In 1956, in a letter to his friend and former pupil Dom Bede Griffiths, Lewis wrote, "I'm glad you found a Chestertonian quality in the book."[100] Although this sounds like a response to a comment by Griffiths on one of Lewis's books, it is of course possible that the book was simply one that Lewis had recommended. Assuming that Lewis does mean one of his own books, I think the most likely candidate is *Mere Christianity* (1952). Taking only Chesterton and Lewis's discussions of Christ's deity and purpose on earth in *The Everlasting Man* and *Mere Christianity* into account, it seems clear that Lewis's book has a Chestertonian flavour. In part II chapter 3 of *The Everlasting Man*, Chesterton argues that Jesus made claims that, if he was not God, were those of a madman, and that he was not a good humane teacher, and indeed did not come to teach but to die.[101] Chesterton makes graphic the picture of a madman—"in lunatic asylums; in padded cells; possibly in strait waistcoats", "a horrible half-witted imbecile who might be scrawling stars on the walls of a cell" and delivers an ultimatum: "we have really to put him [Jesus] there [in a madhouse cell] or else in the highest place of all".[102] At the end of book II chapter 3 of *Mere Christianity* Lewis discusses Jesus's claims to divinity and states, using graphic example and an ultimatum: "A man who was merely a man and said the sort of things Jesus said would not be a great moral teacher. He would either be a lunatic—on a level with the man who says he is a poached egg—or else he would be the Devil of Hell. You must make your choice".[103] Chesterton also states that Christ came to die: "The primary thing that he was going to do was die. He was going to do other things […] But from first to last the most definite fact is that he is going to die".[104] Lewis points out that, although Jesus did teach, "Christians […] think the main thing He came to earth to do was to suffer and be killed".[105] In both subject matter and treatment of these questions, *Mere Christianity* can be described as Chestertonian.

It is not surprising that Lewis echoed Chesterton in his Christian apologetic writing. From his first discoveries that Chesterton was admirable and made sense despite his Christianity, to his final wrestling with God before his conversion, Lewis was influenced by

---

[98] *Surprised by Joy* 153.
[99] *Collected Letters* vol. 1 836.
[100] *Collected Letters* vol. 3 703.
[101] G.K. Chesterton, *The Everlasting Man* (1925; London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1927) 234-47.
[102] Chesterton, *Everlasting Man* 235–36; 236.
[103] *Mere Christianity* (1952; London: Fount-Collins, 1977) 51–52; 52.
[104] Chesterton, *Everlasting Man* 240.
[105] *Mere Christianity* 53.

Chesterton's apologetics.[106] One of the final hurdles was his acceptance of Christianity as myth that was true,[107] and here *The Everlasting Man* played a part, as Lewis acknowledged:

> There could be no question of going back to primitive, untheologised and unmoralised, Paganism. The God whom I at last acknowledged was one, and was righteous. Paganism had been only the childhood of religion, or only a prophetic dream. Where was the thing full grown? or where was the awakening? (*The Everlasting Man* was helping me here.)[108]

The Everlasting Man continued to be a book Lewis found helpful. During World War II he advised chaplains to read it.[109] In 1940 he recommended it to a former pupil who had been having difficulty with the Gospels.[110] Twenty-one years later, he advised a correspondent, "For a good ('popular') defence of our position against modern woffle, to fall back on, I know nothing better than G.K. Chesterton's *The Everlasting Man*."[111]

Lewis argues more than once that attitudes to human rationality that made thought merely a by-product of matter or environment were themselves invalidated by that assumption.[112] In this he follows Chesterton: "The man who represents all thought as an accident of environment is simply smashing and discrediting all his own thoughts—including that one."[113]

While Chesterton influenced Lewis's conversion, religious and philosophical thought, and style and manner of writing about his faith, he also influenced Lewis's fiction—and his views on fiction. Lewis considers the making of stories—mythopoeia—a serious and spiritually significant act: here he follows both Tolkien and Chesterton. Chesterton maintains that fiction—inventing narratives—is an exercise of the same free will that allows us to choose good and bad.[114] Tolkien, in the poem *Mythopoeia*, famously addressed to Lewis, sees the inventing of fictions as a participation in God's creative acts:

> Though now long estranged,
> Man is not wholly lost nor wholly changed.
> Dis-graced he may be, yet is not dethroned,
> And keeps the rags of lordship once he owned,
> His world-dominion by creative act:
> Not his to worship the great Artefact,
> Man, Sub-creator, the refracted light
> Through whom is splintered from a single White
> To many hues, and endlessly combined
> In living shapes that move from mind to mind.
> Though all the crannies of the world we filled

---

[106] Carpenter 47 n., 51.
[107] Carpenter 44–45; "Myth Became Fact"—which also shows how Lewis continued to be excited by this understanding of the relationship between myth and Christianity.
[108] *Surprised by Joy* 188, referring to Chesterton, *Everlasting Man* ch. 5.
[109] Green & Hooper 252.
[110] *Collected Letters* vol. 2 371–76.
[111] *Collected Letters* vol. 3 1264.
[112] See for example: "*De Futilitate*," *Christian Reflections*, ed. Walter Hooper (1967; London: Fount-Collins, 1980) 84–86; "The Poison of Subjectivism" (1943), *Christian Reflections*, ed. Walter Hooper (1967; London: Fount-Collins, 1980) 98–99.
[113] G.K. Chesterton, *Tremendous Trifles* (1909), *Works of Gilbert Keith Chesterton from Mobile*Reference, electronic ed., version 12. 1 (n.p.: MobileReference-SoundTells, 2003–09) ch. 12 87%.
[114] G.K. Chesterton, *Heretics* (1905; London: Bodley Head-John Lane, 1928) 192–93.

> With Elves and Goblins, though we dared to build
> Gods and their houses out of dark and light,
> And sowed the seed of dragons, 'twas our right
> (Used or misused). The right has not decayed.
> We make still by the law in which we're made.[115]

Lewis's fiction contains many elements that can be traced back to Chesterton. At the beginning of *Orthodoxy*, for example, Chesterton jokingly abandons an idea he has had for a "romance about an English yachtsman who slightly miscalculated his course and discovered England under the impression that it was a new island in the South Seas".[116] Lewis's first biographers suggest that Lewis used this conceit in a verse narrative on joy and his conversion that he planned and began, but abandoned.[117] Also in *Orthodoxy*, Chesterton writes:

> Most of the machinery of modern language is labour-saving machinery; and it saves mental labour very much more than it ought. Scientific phrases are used like scientific wheels and piston-rods to make swifter and smoother yet the path of the comfortable. Long words go rattling by us like railway trains. We know they are carrying thousands who are too tired or too indolent to walk and think for themselves. It is a good exercise to try for once in a way to express any opinion one holds in words of one syllable. If you say, "The social utility of the indeterminate sentence is recognised by all criminologists as a part of our sociological evolution towards a more humane and scientific view of punishment," you can go on talking like that for hours with hardly a movement of the grey matter inside your skull. But if you begin "I wish Jones to go to gaol and Brown to say when he shall come out," you will discover, with a thrill of horror, that you are obliged to think.[118]

Lewis shares Chesterton's concern with the use and abuses of language. Filmer and Mills both document what Lewis and Orwell have in common here, and Myers' book is an excellent study of how Lewis's concern with the language questions of his day is manifested in his fiction.[119]

Lewis borrows from the passage quoted above in various ways. In *That Hideous Strength* he addresses the issue that Chesterton uses for his illustration: that of "indeterminate punishment" (see Preliminary Note F: "Humane Remedial Treatment"). Lewis also shares Chesterton's views on the ways in which language can be used to obscure facts and meanings.[120] In *Out of the Silent Planet*, Ransom finds himself living in a village of *hrossa*—one of the three rational (*hnau*) species on the planet. Naturally, his questions are originally

---

[115] "Mythopoeia" l. 55–70: J.R.R. Tolkien, *Tree and Leaf*, ed. Christopher Tolkien, 2nd ed. (London: Unwin, 1988) 97–101.
[116] G.K. Chesterton, *Orthodoxy* (London: Bodley Head-John Lane, 1909) 12–15.
[117] Green & Hooper 125–27.
[118] Chesterton, *Orthodoxy* 228–29.
[119] Kath Filmer, "That Hideous 1984: The Influence of C.S. Lewis' *That Hideous Strength* on Orwell's *1984*," *Extrapolation* 26.2 (1985): 160-69; David Mills, "To See Truly through a Glass Darkly: C.S. Lewis, George Orwell, and the Corruption of Language," *The Pilgrim's Guide: C.S. Lewis and the Art of Witness*, ed. David Mills (Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1998) 111–32; Doris T. Myers, *C.S. Lewis in Context* (Kent, OH: Kent State UP, 1994).
[120] Lewis also advises that the training of priests should include an exam in which they are required to express their faith in simple language: "Before We Can Communicate" (1961), *First and Second Things: Essays on Theology and Ethics*, ed. Walter Hooper (London: Fount Paperbacks-HarperCollins, 1985) 126–28.

informed by his knowledge of his own planet—but also limited by his knowledge of his hosts' language:

> He tried to ask what would happen if the *sorns* used their wisdom to make the *hrossa* do things—this was as far as he could get in his halting Malacandrian. The question did not sound so urgent in this form as it would have done if he had been able to say "used their scientific resources for the exploitation of their uncivilized neighbours."[121]

Ransom is a highly educated and intelligent philologist: however, he is forced to use simple language, not because he thinks only simple thoughts or as a Chestertonian exercise, but because he is learning a new language. And he is forced to use his grey matter, to begin to reconsider states of affairs and human interactions that he had taken for granted as the natural way of things on earth.

In chapter 20 of *Out of the Silent Planet* Lewis uses this technique much more overtly and extensively. The scientist Weston is required by Oyarsa to explain why he has come to Malacandra with plans of conquest. Weston can neither apprehend Oyarsa (whose body is light) nor manage more than pidgin-Malacandrian, so Ransom, who has learned much since his own failures of understanding and courage, translates. This gives Lewis the opportunity for a great set-piece, in which he can satirise the views expressed in the works of such writers as Olaf Stapeldon and J.B.S. Haldane by reducing them to simple language.[122] Walter Hooper notes the "irony" of this presentation, while Howard enthusiastically asserts that, after Ransom has translated "Weston's gibberings", "Weston's dronings and posturings dwindle" and "what seemed important and impressive in Weston's mouth and from his point of view emerges as silly at best and blasphemous at worst".[123]

Three things render Ransom's efforts at translating Weston's speeches "rather unsatisfactory".[124] Firstly, as Ransom has discovered, Malacandra is not like Earth: the *hnau* there neither commit nor suffer the evil that humans do, so there is no murder, no stealing, no sickness, no fear of death or bereavement, no war. Moreover, Malacandra is neither industrialised nor "developed". Ransom knows no Malacandrian word for "evil" and has to use the word "bent". Since Malacandra is free from the evils and characteristics of Earth, some of Weston's claims—that he is not "a vulgar robber" and that the armies, law and medicine of Earth make humans superior to Malacandrians—need explanation. Weston begins, "To you I may seem a vulgar robber", and Ransom translates, "Among us, Oyarsa, there is a kind of *hnau* who will take other *hnaus*' food and—and things, when they are not looking. He says he is not an ordinary one of that kind".[125] The explanation-translations of armies, law and medicine, as well as more neutral aspects of what Weston terms

---

[121] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 10 109.
[122] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 20 220–26; *C&G* 206.
[123] *C&G* 210; Thomas Howard, *The Achievement of C.S. Lewis: A Reading of His Fiction* (Wheaton, IL: Harold Shaw, 1980) 84–85.
[124] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 20 220.
[125] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 20 220.

"civilization" (science, architecture, commerce, transport systems), are similarly subversive. For example, "law" becomes, "we have many bent people and we kill them or shut them in huts and […] we have people for settling quarrels among the bent *hnau* about their huts and mates and things", and "our commerce, and our transport system which is rapidly annihilating space and time" is rendered, "we exchange many things among ourselves and can carry heavy weights very quickly a long way". [126]

Secondly, the effects of the emotive words and rhetorical set phrases upon which Weston relies are nullified, as in Chesterton's exercise. We have already noted how translation annihilates the flourish of "annihilating space and time". Weston's "Your *tribal* life with its *stone-age* weapons and *beehive* huts, its *primitive* coracles and *elementary* social structure" (*emphasis added*) appeals to the chronological snobbery that Lewis hated, and the words I have emphasised are, in context, value judgements based on chronology.[127] Ransom has to translate this as: "among you, *hnau* of one kindred all live together and the *hrossa* have spears like those we used a very long time ago and your huts are small and round and your boats small and light and like our old ones, and you have one ruler".[128] Shorn of Weston's negative connotations, this is a neutral, even positive description. Weston's emotive and scornful "tribal taboos and copy-book maxims" is similarly neutralised in "what is said to the young about bent and good action by their elders." [129] Weston hymns evolution as life's "relentless march from the amoeba to man and from man to civilization": this becomes "there were many other animals before the first men and the later ones were better than the earlier ones", which leaves "relentless" untranslated, so that Ransom has to tack on, "And he says these animals did not feel any pity."[130] Here we see not only Weston's hymn reduced to flat description, but his abstractions turned concrete.

This introduces Ransom's third difficulty: Weston's abstractions, some of which he reifies, personifies or even deifies. The two most important are Man/Humanity and Life. It becomes clear that what Weston means by "Man" is not clear—even, or especially, to him. His project is to ensure the continuation of "Man" through a programme of interplanetary, even interstellar, colonisation, "till our posterity—whatever strange form and yet unguessed mentality they have assumed—dwell in the universe wherever the universe is habitable." Ransom renders this as, "He wants the creatures born from us to be in as many places as they can. He says he does not know what kind of creatures they will be."[131] And yet, as

[126] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 20 220–21.
[127] Lewis defines chronological snobbery as "the uncritical acceptance of the intellectual climate common to our own age and the assumption that whatever has gone out of date is on that account discredited" (*Surprised by Joy* ch. 13 167).
[128] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 20 220–21.
[129] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 20 221–22.
[130] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 20 222.
[131] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 20 223–24. Lewis mocks the attitude here expressed by Weston in his poem "Evolutionary Hymn" (1957): one stanza impudently lists possible shapes of future beings as

Oyarsa questions Weston, it becomes clear that Weston cannot see anything concrete behind his abstraction: he does not care for the "shape" of men, and will kill other *hnau*, so does not care for the mind of men either. Eventually Oyarsa suggest that he cares for the seed of men—Ransom finds Weston's response untranslatable: "If he [Oyarsa] cannot understand […] anything so fundamental as man's loyalty to humanity, I can't make him understand it."[132] As Lewis—and presumably Oyarsa—understand it, any power or victory of "Man" over the natural world means the power or victory of "some men over other men with nature as its instrument".[133] We see this in Weston's abduction of Ransom as (he believes) a sacrifice to the *sorns*, and we see Lewis working out some of the nightmarish implications in *That Hideous Strength*. At one point in Weston's diatribe Ransom has to interrupt: "I'm sorry […] but I've forgotten who She is" and Weston snaps, "Life, of course".[134] Weston enacts a tendency that Lewis found disturbing and against which he warns in *Studies in Words* (1961): towards the end of his discussion of "life" as biological life he explains:

> The popular picture of evolution—which differs in some respects from that of real biologists—is one that must deeply move any generous imagination. *Life (Biological)* begins as something very weak and humble with all the odds against it. Nevertheless it wins. It becomes Man. It conquers inanimate nature. It aspires to be the ancestor of super-Man. […] So moving a tale must not be that of a mere abstraction. It invites us first to reify, then to personify, finally to deify *Life (Biological)*.[135]

Speaking in the language of Malacandra, Ransom is able to speak about living creatures, but not about Life, neither as abstract noun nor as goddess. Where Weston asserts, "She has ruthlessly broken down all obstacles and liquidated all failures", Ransom says, "these animals learned to do many difficult things, except those that could not; and those ones died and the other animals did not pity them."[136] It is one thing to speak of Life's "ruthless" and "relentless" activities: in the realm of concrete reality, this means that some creatures do not feel pity for other creatures, and Ransom's translations make this clear.[137]

In terms of characterisation, this set-piece might be said to fail: it seems unlikely that a philologist could undertake to translate from one language to another, and merely feel that the results are "unsatisfactory", without analysing and understanding why. But Lewis is concerned to subvert a dominating and popular view of human evolution and scientific development current when he wrote. Ransom the philologist is improbably linguistically naïf because it is not he but the reader that needs to be "obliged to think".[138]

"Hairy, squashy, or crustacean, / Bulbous-eyed or square of stern, / Tusked or toothless" (15–17): *The Collected Poems of C.S. Lewis*. ed. Walter Hooper (London: Fount-HarperCollins, 1994) 69–70.
[132] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 20 225–26.
[133] *Abolition of Man* 35.
[134] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 20 222.
[135] *Studies in Words* 303.
[136] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 20 222.
[137] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 20 222–23.
[138] Chesterton, *Orthodoxy* 229.

We have seen something of the influence of *Orthodoxy* and *The Everlasting Man* on Lewis's work and thought—and influence perhaps even tending towards identification in the case of Lewis's apologetics. Chesterton's novel *The Man Who Was Thursday* provides Lewis with both model and influence. *The Man Who Was Thursday* is not easy to categorise, but it is certainly a dream vision, like Dante's *Divina Commedia* and Chaucer's *Parlement of Foules*, although in prose.

Lewis wrote a more serious dream vision than Chesterton's "very melodramatic kind of moonshine" in *The Great Divorce*, with more overt similarities to his archetypes: like the dreamers in Dante and Chaucer, he is guided in his dream by one who had been a literary guide in waking—George MacDonald—and like them the dreamer awakes in a moment and realises that he has been dreaming.[139] Chesterton's dreamer, by contrast, finds himself back in his everyday life with no remembrance of waking.[140]

Both visions have subtitles, their full titles being *The Man Who Was Thursday: A Nightmare* and *The Great Divorce: A Dream*. This is not a trivial observation: both authors are concerned to inform readers in advance what kind of thing they are about to read, and so in some way to control their expectations and understanding. Chesterton found that a sub-title was not enough, and complained ruefully in 1936, in the *Illustrated London News*, "that those who endure the heavy labour of reading a book might possibly endure that of reading the title-page of a book."[141] He goes on to explain how an awareness of the sub-title should have modified a reader's expectations. Lewis either learned from Chesterton or was wiser: the sub-title of *The Great Divorce* is supported by a four-page preface.[142] Similarly, he tries to control expectations about *That Hideous Strength: A Modern Fairy-Tale for Grown-Ups* by means of a subtitle supported by a preface in which the reader is warned that this story, like an old-fashioned fairy-story, will start among the common things of ordinary life and that the supernatural will break in—that it is a particular kind of fantasy.[143]

That Hideous Strength does not only share a warning sub-title with *The Man Who Was Thursday*: the dénouements of both involve some kind of fancy-dress.[144] At the end of all the adventures, and before any explanations, the man who was Thursday is told that the master requests him to wear fancy-dress—a peacock-blue garment emblazoned with sun, moon and stars, the work of the fourth day of creation. Dressed, "he felt a curious freedom and naturalness in his movements […] he had all the swagger of a troubadour. For these disguises did not disguise, but reveal".[145] As Thursday meets the friends with whom he has

[139] G.K. Chesterton, *The Man Who Was Thursday: A Nightmare* (1908; Harmondsworth: Penguin, 1986) 185; *Great Divorce* 145–46.
[140] Chesterton, *Man Who Was Thursday* 183–84.
[141] Chesterton, *Man Who Was Thursday* 185.
[142] *Great Divorce* vii-x.
[143] Preface 5–6.
[144] Ch. 17 II; Chesterton, *Man Who Was Thursday* 174–79.
[145] Chesterton, *Man Who Was Thursday* 174–75.

suffered and adventured, he sees them robed in costumes representing the works of their days, and he and they note how appropriate these revealing disguises are. Monday, the severe philosopher, is clad in vestments representing the light out of the darkness. The sensible Wednesday is well-suited by a garment representing green and growing things. The simple Tuesday wears a dress like divided waters and the subtle Friday a dim garment covered with fantastic and doubtful birds and fish. Saturday, a virile optimist, has a golden man rampant on his chest. The master, Sunday, is in pure white. Enthroned, the seven watch the revels of a fantastic masquerade of birds and animals, windmills, lamp-posts, apple-trees.[146] In chapter 17 of *That Hideous Strength* we find four of the women of St Anne's, where the Pendragon's company has been serving and obeying, choosing garments from the Wardrobe of Logres, where there are no mirrors but where her companions must show each woman to herself.[147] Like Chesterton's Days, the women have no real choice about what they will wear, although they submit to the acclamation of their comrades rather than obey direct instructions.[148]

Two other moments in *That Hideous Strength* need attention here as well as in the relevant annotations. In chapter 14, we see Mark being trained in "objectivity" by undermining his ideas of what is normal and acceptable: however, the training gives him his first idea of "the Normal", which he determines to embrace.[149] The pictures he is shown are either surrealistic or religious, and compared with the religious pictures "the other, surrealistic, pictures were mere foolery. Long ago Mark had read somewhere of 'things of that extreme evil which seems innocent to the uninitiate,' and had wondered what sort of things they might be. Now he felt he knew."[150] The source of the sentence Mark remembers is *The Everlasting Man*: Chesterton writes that interaction with demons "produces things of which it is better not to speak. Some of them indeed might almost be named without being known; for they are of *that extreme evil which seems innocent to the innocent*. They are too inhuman even to be indecent" (*emphasis added*).[151] We cannot be sure whether the misremembering of "to the innocent" as "to the uninitiate" is Lewis's or Mark's. It would be typical of Mark, who has always been concerned, above all things, to be one of those in the know, to be in some sense initiated into the next petty mystery, so Lewis may have given him the error deliberately.[152]

The tramp whom Mark meets, also in chapter 14 of *That Hideous Strength*, must also acknowledge Chesterton as a source. He helps to confound the plans of the N.I.C.E.

---

[146] Chesterton, *Man Who Was Thursday* 176–79.
[147] Ch. 17 II.
[148] Ch. 17 II 386–88. We learn later that MacPhee (and so presumably all the men) is also dressed as his companions see fit and "against his own judgement" (ch. 17 VI 405).
[149] Ch. 14 I.
[150] Ch. 14 I 317.
[151] Chesterton, *Everlasting Man* 141.
[152] See Preliminary Note C: "The Inner Ring".

because his actions and desires are so completely unexpected. He simply accepts, incuriously, Merlin's appropriation of his clothes and his abduction and captivity by the N.I.C.E., in the same manner that he has "never passed any kind of moral judgement on the various things that had been done to him in the course of his career […]. Much that was unjust and still more that was simply unintelligible seemed to be accepted not only without resentment but with a certain satisfaction provided only that it was striking"; to "undeceive" his captors would be "an activity wholly foreign to his mind."[153] His motives are thus outside anything the pride of the N.I.C.E. can imagine, and they fool themselves. Lewis's Tramp shares this radical exclusion with the generic tramp described by Chesterton in *Eugenics and Other Evils* in a chapter entitled "The True History of a Tramp": he is denied all the fair rights of serf, slave, peasant or even animal, and hence is outside everything and incomprehensible to those inside ordinary social systems.[154]

Sources and influences for many other elements in Lewis's thought and work are also to be found in Chesterton. Both men (although untidy dressers) found contemporary dress desperately dull.[155] In *That Hideous Strength* Lewis alludes to Distributism, a social model that Chesterton endorsed: it is an attractive model of small-scale self-sufficiency and "distributed ownership", where every household subsists on three acres of land and a cow.[156] Not only does Chesterton describe Christianity as "a story and in that sense one of a hundred stories; only it is a true story", which we have seen influenced Lewis in his acceptance of Christianity as true myth, he also delights in the myth revealed as truth when Crete was excavated.[157] Lewis's imaginative response to this is suggested by his reference to the finds at "old Cnossus" on Crete in *That Hideous Strength*.[158] Chesterton celebrated the human, irrational, inefficient, traditional elements of English life, including beer-drinking and pubs, and so does Lewis in *That Hideous Strength*.[159] At a more basic level, the chapter title "The Last Battle" in *The Napoleon of Notting Hill* is possibly the source of the title of the last Narnia story.[160]

---

[153] Ch. 14 IV 332.
[154] G.K. Chesterton, *Eugenics and Other Evils* (1922; London: Cassell, 1928) II ch. 2 103, 105, 106.
[155] See n. 1 facing p. 297.
[156] G.K. Chesterton, *What's Wrong with the World* (1910), *Works of Gilbert Keith Chesterton from MobileReference*, electronic ed., version 12. 1 (n.p.: MobileReference-SoundTells, 2003–09) I ch. 9 96% & note 3 98%; see n. 1 facing p. 13.
[157] Chesterton, *Everlasting Man* 285; G.K. Chesterton, *A Short History of England* (1917), *Works of Gilbert Keith Chesterton from MobileReference*, electronic ed., version 12. 1 (n.p.: MobileReference-SoundTells, 2003–09) ch. 3 80%.
[158] Ch. 14 II 323 (& n. 1).
[159] Chesterton, *Heretics* 60; ch. 4 VI 89–90 (including 89 n. 2 & 90 n. 1).
[160] G.K. Chesterton, *The Napoleon of Notting* Hill, Lake's Indian & Colonial Library (London: Bodley Head-John Lane, 1904) V ch. 2.

George MacDonald
***Phantastes* (1858)**
***At the Back of the North Wind* (1871)**
***The Princess and the Goblin* (1872)**
***The Princess and Curdie* (1883)**
***Lilith* (1895)**

In 1946, when Lewis published the dream vision *The Great Divorce*, the figure he chose to be his guide through the otherworld of his vision was George MacDonald. When they meet, he tries to explain his debt to his mentor:

> I tried to tell how a certain frosty afternoon at Leatherhead Station [in March 1916] when I first bought a copy of *Phantastes* . . . had been to me what the first sight of Beatrice had been to Dante: *Here begins the New Life*. I started to confess how long that Life had delayed in the region of the imagination merely: how slowly and reluctantly I had come to admit that his Christendom had a more than accidental connexion with it, how hard I had tried not to see that the true name of the quality which first met me in his books is Holiness.[161]

In the same year Lewis wrote in a preface, "I have never concealed the fact that I regarded him as my master; indeed I fancy I have never written a book in which I did not quote from him."[162] Even in places where he does not quote MacDonald, his influence can be seen: MacDonald understood some miracles as being a kind of speeding-up of natural operations, and Lewis argues the same thing in *Miracles*.[163]

In addition to his affection and respect for MacDonald as a spiritual guide, Lewis considered him a master of mythopoeia—although frequently a poor teller of the great myths he invented or transmitted.[164] In Lewis's fiction MacDonald's influence is, as might be expected, pervasive in the sense that Lewis's fiction, like MacDonald's fantasies, combines Christian faith with fantasy; but it is also limited, in the sense that MacDonald is frequently a source for something small—an image or trope or archetype—rather than for lengthy passage or entire story. McInnis provides a very thorough exploration of the ways in which the two are like and unlike, always starting from and returning to the evidence of their stories.[165]

Lewis explicitly acknowledges one such small debt to MacDonald in *That Hideous Strength*, where Ransom tells Jane that his diet of bread and wine is the same as that of the King in *The Princess and Curdie*.[166] The landscape and life of Malacandra-Mars and Perelandra-Venus seem to owe similar small debts. On Malacandra hot streams are the

---

[161] *Great Divorce* 66–67. See also: *Surprised by Joy* 144–46; *Collected Letters* vol. 1 936.
[162] Preface, *George MacDonald: An Anthology*, ed. C.S. Lewis (1946; London: Fount-Collins, 1983) 33.
[163] Rolland Hein, *George MacDonald: Victorian Mythmaker* (Nashville, TN: StarSong, 1993) 231; *Miracles: A Preliminary Study*, [rev. ed.] (1960; London: Fount-Collins, 1974) 140–41.
[164] George MacDonald, *George MacDonald: An Anthology*, ed. C.S. Lewis (1946; London: Fount-Collins, 1983) ch. 73 70.
[165] Jeff McInnis, *C.S. Lewis and George MacDonald on Suffering, Evil, and Goodness*, Studies in Christian History and Thought (Milton Keynes: Paternoster-Authentic Media, 2007).
[166] Ch. 7 II 155.

source of warmth and life, as they are in part of the world of *Lilith*.[167] When Ransom arrives in Perelandra he finds it a world where the innocent inhabitants eat fruit and have no knowledge of bleeding, as Vane finds amongst the Little Ones.[168] Vane makes for Lona a cloak of feathers, and so (although with very different motives) does the Un-Man make one for the Lady of Perelandra.[169]

The archetypal beautiful woman who uses her beauty for her own ends is an important figure in MacDonald. In *Phantastes* Anodos nearly falls victim to the terrible Maid of the Alder who is a backless, heartless, hollow mask of beauty, and, "although she loves no man, she loves the love of any man; and when she finds one in her power, her desire to bewitch him and gain his love (not for the sake of his love either, but that she may be conscious anew of her own beauty, through the admiration he manifests)."[170] Lilith's cry in the romance about her is one of autonomy and independence—"I am myself"— and she uses her beauty to ensnare men.[171] Jane in *That Hideous Strength*, with her determination not to be involved and to maintain her independence and autonomy from her husband, the Pendragon and his Company, and God, needs to be redeemed from the danger of becoming like Lilith. Lewis hints at this in a book that Jane reads at the Manor, which distinguishes between the "vanity of Lilith" who desires "the desiring if her own beauty" and "the obedience of Eve" who desires "the enjoying of her own beauty", and notes that "for both it is in the lover that the beloved tastes her own delightfulness."[172] Jadis, the Enemy of Narnia, is also a beautiful woman who uses her beauty to gain power: her participation in the archetype is shown by her ancestry, as she is descended from Lilith.[173]

The Narnia stories are frequently reminiscent of elements from MacDonald's fiction. As the children who go to Narnia all learn, time flows differently in different worlds; Diamond learns the same from the North Wind.[174] King Frank the first king of Narnia is a cab-driver, which might be a recognition of Diamond's father in *At the Back of the North Wind*. At the creation of Narnia, the earth formed humps, which "moved and swelled till they burst, and the crumbled earth poured out of them, and from each hump there came out an animal"; Mr Raven describes the behaviour of the burrowing beasts of "the steppes of Uranus", where "the earth gives a heave, and out comes a beast."[175] Vane is kept on the right road in the dark by Mara's cats (even if they have to claw him); in *The Horse and His*

---

[167] George MacDonald, *Lilith: A Romance* (1985; Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 2000) 89; *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 17 196.
[168] MacDonald, *Lilith* 68–70; *Perelandra* ch. 3 46–47 & ch. 4 54–55; ch. 6 89 & ch. 17 254.
[169] MacDonald, *Lilith* 174; *Perelandra* ch. 10 153.
[170] George MacDonald, *Phantastes* (1858; London: Dent, 1983) 59.
[171] MacDonald, *Lilith* 147–49, 199–200; 127–28: see also Hein, *George MacDonald* 372.
[172] Ch. 3 III 62; see also the discussion of Jane in Preliminary Note C: "The Inner Ring".
[173] *Lion* ch. 8 76.
[174] *Lion* ch. 3 26, ch. 5 46–50; *The Silver Chair*, illus. Pauline Baynes (1953; London: Lions-Collins, 1980) ch. 3 39–40; *Last Battle* ch 5 47–48 (see also Preliminary Note G); George MacDonald, *At the Back of the North Wind* (1871; Ware: Wordsworth, 1994) 129.
[175] *Magician's Nephew* ch. 9 105; MacDonald, *Lilith* 19.

Boy Shasta and Aravis are brought together, kept safe, guided and punished by Aslan in the form of a lion or a cat, on the earlier occasions in the dark.[176] The voyagers on the *Dawn Treader* find, like Diamond, that they have no need of food as they approach the edge of the world: the water (liquid or frozen) is enough.[177] In *The Silver Chair* Aslan floats Jill down off a high cliff on his breath, while the North Wind holds Diamond on a high ledge with hers.[178] Later on, Jill and her companions learn of living gemstones: Vane sees "living stones" in his vision of Heaven.[179] The Dwarfs in *The Last Battle* refuse to be "taken in" and so exclude themselves from grace—in their determination not to be fooled, they fool themselves and cannot see the truth in front of them.[180] This trope is explored in both *Princess* books, where the evil or suspicious see things otherwise than the good and trusting.[181]

The final approach to heaven in the penultimate chapter of *Lilith* and last two chapters of *The Last Battle* is perhaps one instance where MacDonald provides Lewis with model as well as source and influence. In both, there is a joyous uphill rush from periphery to centre alongside a river to a welcome at the centre.[182] In both novels the characters find themselves in a place that is more real than the places experienced in the world or worlds they come from—the place of which the worlds and what is in them are copies.[183] Our world as a copy of reality is, as Lewis's character Digory observes, "all in Plato", but the combination of Heaven's greater reality with the rush "[f]urther up and further in" seems to be a gift from MacDonald to his pupil.[184]

---

[176] MacDonald, *Lilith* 160; *The Horse and His Boy,* illus. Pauline Baynes (1954; London: Lions-Collins, 1980) ch. 2 28–31, ch. 6 74–75, ch. 10 112–115, ch. 11 129–30.
[177] *The Voyage of the Dawn Treader*, illus. Pauline Baynes (1955; London: Lions-Collins, 1980) ch. 15 174, ch. 16 177 & 183; MacDonald, *At the Back of the North Wind* 116.
[178] *Silver Chair* ch. 2 26–28; MacDonald, *At the Back of the North Wind* 88.
[179] *Silver Chair* ch. 14 164; MacDonald, *Lilith* 250.
[180] *Last Battle* ch. 13.
[181] George MacDonald, *The Princess and Curdie* (1883; Philadelphia: Lippincott, 1883) ch. 2 9–10; MacDonald, *Princess and the Goblin* ch. 23 173;
[182] MacDonald, *Lilith* 248–50; *Last Battle* ch. 15 160 – ch. 16 69.
[183] MacDonald, *Lilith* 247, 250; *Last Battle* ch. 15 158–61.
[184] *Last Battle* ch. 15 160; ch. 16 165; see also ch. 15 title.

The Inklings

The story of the Inklings has been extensively documented. Lewis's biographers have on the whole been content to try and present the facts and evoke the atmosphere of the group of friends.[185] Reilly, who mostly provides biographical details and summaries of works, is a biographer rather than a critic here, and so is Hipolito in her documenting of Lewis and Barfield's friendship.[186] Amongst critics dealing with the Inklings, Urang offers a sensitive discussion of the genres of the fiction of Lewis, Williams and Tolkien, in which he differentiates myth (or mythopoeia) and allegory, and also explores the dynamics of introducing belief into fantasy.[187] Bratman explores external and internal influences upon and among the Inklings and does not try to prove that all the Inklings worked in the same way.[188] Myers shows the extent to which Lewis and Barfield agreed (and disagreed) on meaning and metaphor as the introduction to a more extensive discussion, while Adey usefully documents the "Great War" of the first years of their friendship but concludes with a less useful, more evaluative discussion.[189] Seddon and Hartt both consider the points of meeting and difference in Lewis and Tolkien's views on the use of the Christian imagination in fiction: Hartt's paper shows a sensitive awareness of the complexity of the question.[190] Horne discusses Lewis and Williams' friendship: I shall return to his article in the case study that follows.[191] Rogers stands out as being interested in something other than fantastic or mythopoeic writing amongst the Inklings, addressing the question of how "evil [was] understood and represented by individuals who endured personal trauma and tragedy, social and economic upheaval, and two world wars?"[192]

Other critics have unwarrantably extended the mutual influence of the group, or the extent of its informal membership. Thus Knight argues that mythopoeia leads to magic (in the occult sense) in the work of all the Inklings, which in many cases is doubtful, as when he equates "ancient wisdom" with the syncretic model and suggests that Lewis's technique

---

[185] Carpenter part III; Green & Hooper; ch. 6; George Sayer, *Jack: A Life of C.S. Lewis* (1988; London: Hodder & Stoughton, 2005) 248–53; *C&G* 16–18, 621–23, 640–43, 649–52, 657–59, 674–75, 679–81, 697–703, 707–09, 726–34, 737–39, 765–66.

[186] R.J. Reilly, *Romantic Religion: A Study of Barfield, Lewis, Williams, and Tolkien* (Athens: U of Georgia P, 1971); Jane Hipolito, "C.S. Lewis and Owen Barfield: Adversaries and Confidantes" vol. 1 219–48 of: Bruce L. Edwards (ed.), *C.S. Lewis: Life, Works, and Legacy*, 4 vol. (Westport, CT: Praeger, 2007).

[187] Gunnar Urang, *Shadows of Heaven: Religion and Fantasy in the Writing of C.S. Lewis, Charles Williams, and J.R.R. Tolkien* (Philadelphia: Pilgrim P, 1971).

[188] David Bratman, " 'Gifted Amateurs': C.S. Lewis and the Inklings" vol. 3 279–320 of Edwards.

[189] Myers 2–11; Lionel Adey, *C.S. Lewis's "Great War" with Owen Barfield*, English Literary Studies Monograph Series XIV (Victoria, BC: U of Victoria P, 1978).

[190] Eric Seddon, "*Letters to Malcolm* and the Trouble with Narnia: C.S. Lewis, J.R.R. Tolkien, and their 1949 Crisis," *Mythlore* 26 (2007): 61–81; Walter F. Hartt, "Godly Influences: The Theology of J.R.R. Tolkien and C.S. Lewis," *Studies in the Literary Imagination* 14 (1981): 21–29.

[191] Brian Horne, "A Peculiar Debt: The Influence of Charles Williams on C.S. Lewis," *A Christian for All Christians: Essays in Honour of C.S. Lewis*, ed. Andrew Walker & James Patrick (London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1990) 83–90.

[192] Ted Rogers, *Evil, Eroticism and Englishness in the Works of the British Literary Club: The Inklings C.S. Lewis, J.R.R Tolkien, and Charles Williams* (Saarbrücken: VDM Verlag Dr Müller, [2008]) 3.

of telling truth as fiction is "very close to the pedagogic technique of the Rosicrucian Brotherhood"—it is most unlikely that Lewis would consciously or deliberately have emulated Rosicrucian pedagogic techniques, considering how dangerous he found the temptations of vague occultism in his youth.[193] Moorman also tends to try and impose one way of reading on all the Inklings: Lewis mildly noted in a letter to him about *Arthurian Triptych*, "I am inclined to think your method works better for Charles Williams than for me, and better for me than for Mr. Eliot." [194] In the privacy of his diary, Warren Lewis was more outspoken about Moorman's *Precincts of Felicity*:

> It is not a stupid book, nor a dull one, but I think a silly one. To begin with he dubs the Inklings "The Oxford Christians" which strikes a wrong note at the outset by suggesting an organized group for the propagation of Christianity, whilst in fact the title is justified only in the most literal sense, i.e. that we nearly all lived in Oxford and were believers. His thesis is that in the Inklings a kind of group mind was at work which influenced the writing of every Inkling, and this he supports by assertions that seem to me very shaky. What he chiefly harps on is their common belief that there is a transitional state between death and our resurrection. Thus J "borrowed" the framework of his *Great Divorce* from Charles's *All Hallow's Eve* [*sic*] and so on. Just as if this speculation about a transitional state must not have occurred to hundreds of Christians who didn't even know of each other's existence. I smiled at the thought of Tollers being under the influence of Moorman's group mind, and think of sending him the book. He is frankly absurd when in his last chapter he brings in T.S. Eliot and Dorothy Sayers, neither of whom ever attended an Inklings in their lives […] Yes, on the whole a *silly* book.[195]

Critics have also written about members of the Inklings together with other writers of fantasy or fiction that includes the marvellous. Sturch explores "the fantastic writings" of MacDonald and the Inklings, and covers more than merely themes, plots and biographies (as the others tend to do).[196] He discusses the notion of "sub-creation", devotes a chapter to various kinds of symbolism, and finishes by considering authors such as David Lindsay and E.R. Eddison who wrote powerful fantasies but were not Christian.[197] Gray examines Lewis, MacDonald, Pullman and Stevenson in a collection of separate studies, but notes some analogues; elsewhere he considers Lewis, Tolkien, MacDonald, Pullman and Hoffmann together, again tracing some influence and analogues without asserting more similarity and influence than is likely.[198] Hein considers a number of Christian[199] writers

---

[193] Gareth Knight, *The Magical World of the Inklings: J.R.R.Tolkien, C.S.Lewis, Charles Williams, Owen Barfield* (Shaftesbury: Element Books, 1990) 14–15, 26–27; *Surprised by Joy* ch. 4 53.

[194] Charles Moorman *Arthurian Triptych: Mythic Materials in Charles Williams, C.S. Lewis, and T.S. Eliot* (Berkeley: U of California P, 1960).

[195] W.H. Lewis, *Brothers and Friends: The Diaries of Major Warren Hamilton Lewis*, ed. Clyde S. Kilby & Marjorie Lamp Mead (San Francisco: Harper & Row, 1982) 268.

This introductory discussion of the Inklings should have, but has not, taken into account Diana Pavlac Glyer, *The Company They Keep: C.S. Lewis and J.R.R. Tolkien as Writers in Community* (Kent, OH: Kent State UP, 2007): I learned of this work—an extensive, detailed and scholarly exploration of the ways in which the Inklings influenced each other as writers—too late to do more than acknowledge its existence here.

[196] Richard Sturch, *Four Christian Fantasists: A Study of the Fantastic Writings of George MacDonald, Charles Williams, C.S. Lewis and J.R.R. Tolkien*, Cormarë Series III (Zurich: Walking Tree, 2001).

[197] Sturch 28–31; ch. 4; appendix.

[198] William Gray, *Death and Fantasy: Essays on Philip Pullman, C.S. Lewis, George MacDonald and R.L. Stevenson* (2008; Newcastle: Cambridge Scholars, 2009); William Gray, *Fantasy, Myth and the Measure of Truth: Tales of Pullman, Lewis, Tolkien, MacDonald and Hoffmann* (London: Palgrave Macmillan, 2009).

including the Inklings, Dante and Bunyan, and covers the ground well, identifying points of comparison as he goes.

To return to the Inklings: Tolkien expressed his views on his and Lewis's influence on each other, and Williams' influence on Lewis in a letter written in 1965:

> C.S. Lewis was one of the only three persons who have so far read all or a considerable part of my "mythology" of the First and Second Ages, which had already in the main lines been constructed before we met. He had the peculiarity that he liked to be read to. All that he knew of my "matter" was what his capacious but not infallible memory retained from my reading to him as sole audience. […] Lewis took no part in "research into Númenor". […]
>
> Lewis was, I think, impressed by "the Silmarillion and all that", and certainly retained some vague memories of it and of its names in mind. For instance, since he had heard it, before he composed or thought of *Out of the Silent Planet*, I imagine that *Eldil* is an echo of the *Eldar*; in *Perelandra* "*Tor and Tinidril*" are certainly an echo, since *Tuor and Idril*, parents of Eärendil, are major characters in "The Fall of Gondolin", the earliest written legends of the First Age. But his own mythology (incipient and never fully realized) was quite different. It was at any rate broken to bits before it became coherent by contact with C.S. Williams and his "Arthurian" stuff—which happened between *Perelandra* and *That Hideous Strength*. A pity, I think. But then I was and remain wholly unsympathetic to Williams' mind.
>
> […]
>
> […] The unpayable debt that I owe to him was not "influence" as it is ordinarily understood, but sheer encouragement. He was for long my only audience. Only from him did I ever get the idea that my "stuff" could be more than a private hobby. But for his interest and unceasing eagerness for more I should never have brought *The L. of the R.* to a conclusion.[200]

Tolkien and Williams were the two Inklings who most influenced *That Hideous Strength*. The most evident borrowing from Tolkien is the story of Númenor-Atlantis, but there are some other resonances, documented in the Annotations.[201] Williams' influence on Lewis (which Tolkien so deplored) is more complex and has been less well understood than Tolkien's—partly because of Tolkien's comment about " 'Arthurian' stuff"—so I shall explore that in the case study that follows.

---

[199] Rolland Hein, *Christian Mythmakers: C.S. Lewis, Madeleine L'Engle, J.R.R. Tolkien, George MacDonald, G.K. Chesterton, Charles Williams, Dante Alighieri, John Bunyan, Walter Wangerin, Robert Siegel, and Hannah Hurnard*, 2nd ed. (Chicago: Cornerstone, 2002).

[200] J.R.R. Tolkien, *The Letters of J.R.R. Tolkien*, sel. & ed. Humphrey Carpenter & Christopher Tolkien (1981; London: HarperCollins, 2006) 361–62, see also 224 and 303.

[201] See: *That Hideous Strength* 6 n. 1, 181 n. 1, 213 n. 4, 237 n. 1, 246 n. 1, 280 n. 1, 288 n. 1, 289 n. 1, 295 n. 2, & 382 n. 2.

Charles Williams
***War in Heaven* (1930)**
***Many Dimensions* (1931)**
***The Place of the Lion* (1931)**
***Taliessin Through Logres* (1938)**
***All Hallows' Eve* (1945)**

Horne, exploring Lewis and Williams' friendship, concludes that "we shall look in vain for a complete exposition of the central themes of Williams' theology—or an imitation of Williams' style—in Lewis' work."[202] He goes on to argue that Lewis owed specific debts to Williams: in his depiction of Satan in *A Preface to Paradise Lost*, *The Screwtape Letters* and "Screwtape Proposes a Toast"; in his understanding of evil; in *Prayer: Letters to Malcolm*; in the notion of substitution in *Till We Have Faces*.[203] And he cites the terrestrial setting (with supernatural incursions) and Arthurian elements in *That Hideous Strength* as evidence of Williams' influence on Lewis, suggesting that in the descent of the Oyéresu Lewis "adapted" Williams' idea of "the Platonic forms entering the world of matter".[204]

As Horne acknowledges, Williams did not invent fiction in which the supernatural impinges on ordinary reality, and I would argue that Williams was one of many who provided Lewis with examples of such fiction.[205] I also wish to argue that Williams' contribution to the Arthurian matter in *That Hideous Strength* has been over-rated. I shall conclude by suggesting some others ways in which Williams' influence on *That Hideous Strength* can be seen.

Lewis argues that the novels of his friend Williams are examples of a kind of fiction that has its own characteristics and history, and not a new kind of conflation of "straight" fiction and "pure fantasy".[206] He cites E. Nesbit, Walter de la Mare, *Alice in Wonderland*, *Gulliver's Travels*, *Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde*, and F. Anstey's *Vice Versa* as examples.[207] Such fiction is based on a "supposal" that the everyday "Probable" world can be and has been invaded by the "Marvellous".[208] As with other kinds of novel, once the supposal is made and the experiment set in motion, the novel can do many things, choosing to focus on the Probable or the Marvellous or both. Williams' novels focus on both: the "illumination of the ordinary world is only one half of a Williams story. The other half is what he tells us about a different world."[209]

---

[202] Horne 83–90, 89.
[203] Horne 90–93, 95–97.
[204] Horne 93–95, 94.
[205] Horne 94.
[206] "The Novels of Charles Williams," *Of This and Other Worlds*, ed. Walter Hooper (London: Collins, 1982) 46–47. This essay was read on air in 1949, but not published in print before 1982.
[207] "Novels of Charles Williams" 47, 49.
This list does not contain obviously Gothic texts, but Sanford Schwartz argues that *That Hideous Strength* should be considered a Gothic romance: *C.S. Lewis on the Final Frontier: Science and the Supernatural in the Space Trilogy* (Oxford: Oxford UP, 2009) 92–97.
[208] "Novels of Charles Williams" 46–48.
[209] "Novels of Charles Williams" 51.

The first of Williams' novels that Lewis read was *The Place of the Lion*.[210] He wrote to Williams on 11 March 1936:

> A book sometimes crosses ones [*sic*] path which is so like the sound of ones [*sic*] native language in a strange country that it feels almost uncivil not to wave some kind of flag in answer. I have just read your *Place of the Lion* and it is to me one of the major literary events of my life—comparable to my first discovery of George MacDonald, G.K Chesterton, or Wm. Morris. There are layers and layers—first, the pleasure that any good fantasy gives me: then, what is rarely (tho' not so very rarely) combined with this, the pleasure of a real philosophical and theological stimulus: thirdly, characters: fourthly, what I neither expected or desired, substantial edification.[211]

The next day, Williams replied: "If you had delayed writing another 24 hours our letters would have crossed. It has never before happened to me to be admiring an author of a book while he at the same time was admiring me. My admiration for the staff work of the Omnipotence rises every day."[212] Williams had been reading the proofs of *The Allegory of Love* as part of his professional duties for the Oxford University Press. The two men became friends, and the story of their friendship is part of the story of the Inklings.[213]

So Lewis saw Williams' novels as the kind that combined the Marvellous and the Probable, and which combined the pleasures of fantasy, philosophy, and theology with the delights of invented characters and with edification. The same can be said of *Out of the Silent Planet*, *Perelandra*, *That Hideous Strength*, the Narnia novels, and *Till We Have Faces*, all dating from after Lewis's first reading of a novel by Williams. This bears witness to what is common to the men, that which enables Lewis to experience *The Place of the Lion* as being like hearing one's own language amidst foreigners. But it is *That Hideous Strength*, published nearly a decade after Lewis met Williams, and after two other fantasy novels, that "has been described as 'a Charles Williams novel by C.S. Lewis' ".[214] *That Hideous Strength* is probably particularly identified as "a Charles Williams novel" simply because, amongst all Lewis's novels combining the Probable and the Marvellous, it is the novel in which the Probable is the most prosaic and predominant. In the other novels of the trilogy, most of the action takes place on other planets and they can be thought of as science fiction. *Till We Have Faces* is set in the past. And the action of the Narnia stories is mostly set in Narnia: here Lewis's focus is very much on the Marvellous. So the one novel in which Lewis re-uses the cosmic, philosophical and theological supposals of two previous novels, but applies them to a young husband and wife in an English university town is labelled "a Charles Williams novel". But many other novels, some mentioned above, combine the marvellous and the probable, and there is no need to see this novel as especially modelled on those of Williams, any more than on earlier such novels by other authors.

---

[210] Charles Williams, *The Place of the Lion* (1931; London: Faber & Faber, 1952).
[211] *Collected Letters* vol. 2 183.
[212] Quoted in *Collected Letters* vol. 2 184.
[213] See Carpenter II ch. 1.
[214] *C&G* 229.

A particular characteristic of stories combining the probable and the marvellous is that they often start and finish with very ordinary action, as a frame to the story.[215] Thus, although *That Hideous Strength* opens with a young wife musing on her marriage and so (apparently) does *All Hallows' Eve*, this does not mean that *That Hideous Strength* is influenced by *All Hallows' Eve* (published in the same year): the novels both exemplify the same convention—as do *War in Heaven* (which opens in a publisher's office, one of Williams' own real-life settings) and *Out of the Silent Planet* (which opens with a don on a summer walking holiday, something Lewis did in real life).[216] *That Hideous Strength*, the ostensible ending of *Out of the Silent Planet*, *Perelandra*, and *Prince Caspian* all end with returns to normality, the probable, and domesticity: so do *War in Heaven*, *Many Dimensions*, *The Place of the Lion*, and *All Hallows' Eve*.[217] So too do Tolkien's *Hobbit* and *Lord of the Rings*.[218] In this Lewis, Williams, and Tolkien share in a tradition established by many other tellers of tales that include the marvellous and the fantastic.

I discuss the Arthurian strand in *That Hideous Strength* in Preliminary Note D: "Logres". There I show that Lewis draws mostly on Geoffrey of Monmouth, La3amon, Malory, and various twentieth-century historians and critics. Although Lewis admired and enjoyed Williams' Arthurian poetry and "The Figure of Arthur", and wrote a commentary on the poetry, he did not need to learn of Arthur and Merlin from Williams: when they met Lewis had been familiar with Malory and La3amon for twenty years and Geoffrey of Monmouth (in Latin) since his student days, while Williams' "knowledge of the earlier Arthurian documents was not that of a real scholar".[219]

Despite Lewis's delight, then, in Williams' Arthurian material, Williams does not greatly influence Lewis's Arthurian elements in *That Hideous Strength*. *Taliessin Through Logres* may have determined Lewis's spelling of Arthur's realm, and there is a direct quotation from one of the poems, "Mount Badon".[220] But the poem is a mystical celebration of the

---

[215] See "On Fairy-Stories" note H: J.R.R. Tolkien, *Tree and Leaf*, ed. Christopher Tolkien, 2nd ed. (London: Unwin, 1988) 72–73.

[216] Charles Williams, *War in Heaven* (1930; Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1999) ch. 1.

[217] Ch. 17 VII, see 409 n. 1; *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 21; *Perelandra* ch. 2 (Ransom's return is described before he tells his story); *Prince Caspian* ch. 15; Williams, *War in Heaven* ch. 18; Charles Williams, *Many Dimensions* (1931; Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 2001) ch. 18; *Place of the Lion* ch. 16; Charles Williams, *All Hallows' Eve* (1945; Vancouver: Regent College, 2003) ch. 10.

[218] J.R.R. Tolkien, *The Hobbit: or There and Back* Again, 4th ed. (1978; *The Annotated Hobbit*. Intro. & annotated Douglas A. Anderson. London: Unwin Human, 1988) ch. 18; J.R.R. Tolkien, *The Lord of the Rings*, 7 vol. (1955–56; London: HarperCollins, 1999) vol. 6 ch. 9.

[219] Charles Williams, "The Figure of Arthur" & C.S. Lewis, "Williams and the Arthuriad," *Arthurian Torso, containing the Posthumous Fragment of The Figure of Arthur by Charles Williams and a Commentary on the Arthurian Poems of Charles Williams by C.S. Lewis* (London: Oxford UP, 1948). See *Collected Letters* vol. 1 103, 162, 441; vol. 3 232.

[220] Ch. 9 III 205, see n. 2; Charles Williams, *Taliessin Through Logres* (1938), *Taliessin through Logres and The Region of the Summer Stars by Charles Williams. And Arthurian Torso by Charles Williams and C.S. Lewis*, intro. Mary McDermott Shideler (Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1974) 34–36.

triumph of "the city"—of civilisation and obedience—not a description of the battle.[221] When Lewis alludes to Badon Hill he does so very concretely, in terms of arms and armour, the sounds and sights and pains of battle, "starlight on a pool fouled with blood"—surely an image from his service in the trenches—and gathering birds.[222]

The only other debt to Williams' Arthurian poetry is Merlin's description of the Emperor as "him whose office it is to put down tyrants and give life to dying kingdoms."[223] Williams, explaining the theme of *Taliessin Through Logres*, writes, "Logres is Britain regarded as a province of the Empire with its centre at Byzantium. […] The Emperor of the poem […] is to be regarded rather as operative providence."[224] This seems closer to Merlin's ideal than the emperors of actual history.

Although *That Hideous Strength* is not necessarily modelled on Williams' novels, and the Arthurian elements are mostly not derived from him, there are allusions to and resonances with Williams' works, some of which I mention here and some of which are discussed in the Annotations.[225] *That Hideous Strength* contains references to Lilith, to Bracton the law-giver, and to Solomon as "king and lover and magician": all these can be found in Williams' novels.[226] Like Lester in *All Hallows' Eve*, Jane dreams of an ideal man, while Mark, like Lester's husband Richard, learns late the proper humility of a lover.[227] But Lewis's biggest debt to Williams' novels is to *The Place of the Lion*: when he first wrote to Williams about it he said of one of the characters, "I know Damaris very well: in fact I was in course of becoming Damaris (but you have pulled me up)."[228] In chapter 14 IV and V, Mark and Jane both share in Damaris's sins.[229] Damaris is a young woman working on a doctoral thesis entitled "Pythagorean Influences on Abelard". To her, "Theories which were interesting in Plato became silly when regarded as having anything to do with actual occurrences. Philosophy was a subject—her subject."[230] Reality is something to be studied and used for her own selfish purposes.[231] When various of the absolute, self-

[221] See "Williams and the Arthuriad," *Arthurian Torso, containing the Posthumous Fragment of The Figure of Arthur by Charles Williams and a Commentary on the Arthurian Poems of Charles Williams by C.S. Lewis* (London: Oxford UP, 1948) 110–11.
[222] Ch. 15 I 345 & n. 2.
[223] Ch. 13 V 311 & n. 2.
[224] Preface to *The Region of the Summer Stars* (1944), *Taliessin through Logres and The Region of the Summer Stars by Charles Williams. And Arthurian Torso by Charles Williams and C.S. Lewis*, intro. Mary McDermott Shideler (Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1974) 117.
[225] See for example: 244 n. 2; 395 n. 1.
[226] Lilith: Ch. 3 III 61–62; Williams, *Place of the Lion* 135; Williams, *Descent into Hell* 50–51, 57–63, 69–70, 81–90, 108–12, 179–80, 182, 187, 193–97, 202–10.
Bracton: ch. 1 II 11; Williams, *Many Dimensions* 214–15.
Solomon: ch. 7 I 148; Williams, *Many Dimensions* 44, 167–69.
[227] Jane: ch. 14 V 334; Williams, *All Hallows' Eve* 121.
Mark: ch. 17 VII; Williams, *All Hallows' Eve* 214–15.
[228] *Collected Letters* vol. 2 183.
[229] Ch. 14 IV 331 & n. 1; ch. 14 V 333 & n. 2.
[230] Williams, *Place of the Lion* 60.
[231] Williams, *Place of the Lion* 155.

existent, Platonic ideas begin acting directly in the natural, sublunary world, they are terribly true to their own logical natures and bring chaos and destruction to this part of creation. The terror they bring, however, forces Damaris to realise that "her subjects were less important than her subjects' subject, that her arrangements [in her thesis] were very tentative presentations of the experiences of great minds and souls."[232] Like Damaris, Mark and Jane begin to learn that reality cannot be dismissed to a theoretical category or to the past.

Certainly Williams influenced Lewis's life and work. I have attempted to show what that influence meant in *That Hideous Strength*, and that some frequent critical assumptions about that influence may be inadequate.

[232] Williams, *Place of the Lion* 167–68.

INTRODUCTION 4: LEWIS'S SYNCRETIC COSMOLOGY

This chapter provides important background for the reading of *That Hideous Strength*. Like the other Ransom novels, *That Hideous Strength* is richly syncretic, incorporating material that reflects Lewis's literary, theological, philosophical, intellectual, and aesthetic interests, concerns, and opinions. Here I elucidate both the syncretic cosmological system in which Lewis places the Ransom trilogy and the syncretic practice behind the novel. Cosmology deals not only with the structure of the universe, but considers it "as an ordered whole" together with the laws that contribute to that order.[1] Lewis, like Milton, combines contemporary physics, theology, and tradition in the universe that is the background to his story. The tradition is one of syncretism, and Lewis not only uses but participates in that tradition.

Any discussion of Lewis's delight in and use of syncretism needs to begin with his delight in and adumbration of the syncretistic Medieval cosmology that he called "the Discarded Image". Then it becomes possible to explore Lewis's syncretistic combination of the syncretic model of the Discarded Image with other elements in the Ransom trilogy generally and *The Hideous Strength* in particular.

A knowledge of the background of Medieval and Renaissance thought, of the world-view informing Medieval and Renaissance literature, was a basic professional requirement for Lewis as a Fellow in the English School at Oxford from 1925 and, from 1954, Professor of Medieval and Renaissance English at Cambridge. In Hilary Term of 1932 Lewis first gave lectures on "Prolegomena to Medieval Poetry" at Oxford: these continued until he left Oxford. At Cambridge, in the Lent Term of 1955, he first offered lectures on "Prolegomena to the Study of Our Earlier Poetry", and these continued until he became too ill to teach in Michaelmas 1961. In the summer of 1962 Lewis brought the material he had worked and lectured on for nearly three decades into a book: *The Discarded Image*, published in 1964, the year following his death.[2] "Imagination and Thought in the Middle Ages", the written version of a pair of lectures given to a scientific audience at Cambridge's Zoological Laboratory in July 1956, provides a brief overview of the cosmology of the Middle Ages, coherent with but simplified from the richer, literary discussion of *The Discarded Image*.[3]

For Lewis, the world view he explains in "Imagination and Thought in the Middle Ages" and *The Discarded Image*, the grand unified theory that for the Medieval imagination

---

[1] See "Cosmology" in *A New English Dictionary on Historical Principles*, 10 vol. & supplement (Oxford: Clarendon, 1888–1933).

[2] Walter Hooper, *C.S.Lewis: A Companion and Guide* (London: Fount-HarperCollins, 1996) 121–26; *The Discarded Image: An Introduction to Medieval and Renaissance Literature* (1964; Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1994) ix.

[3] Walter Hooper, preface, *Studies in Medieval and Renaissance Literature*, ed. Walter Hooper (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1966) viii.

explained as many phenomena as possible as simply as possible, is one of the most delightful exercises in imaginative harmonising syncretism. The resulting model delighted him "as I believe it delighted our ancestors. Few constructions of the imagination seem to me to have combined splendour, sobriety, and coherence in the same degree."[4]

Five elements of the syncretic model, to be discussed below, are essential to an informed reading of the Ransom trilogy. Firstly, the universe of the syncretic model is one in which everything derives from God. Secondly, the plenitude of creation in the syncretic model is such that every niche is filled with the appropriate kind of life—there may even be living creatures that fall outside the categories of angel, human or animal—and all creation is ordered and hierarchical.[5] Thirdly, the structure of the universe is based on the familiar Ptolemaic model in which the earth is the centre of concentric spheres: those of the Moon, Mercury, Venus, the Sun, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, the fixed stars (which sphere may be infinitely thick), the Primum Mobile, and the Elysium (in Christian understanding, Heaven). The movement of the spheres generates harmonious music, but Earth, as the still centre, is silent.[6] Fourthly, each sphere is guided and guarded by an Intelligence, a created æthereal being. The Intelligence of stationary Earth is obviously different from those of the moving spheres: Dante suggests that Chance or Fortune is Earth's Intelligence.[7] Each sphere influences those below it, so the planets influence events on Earth, engendering metals in the soil and characteristic moods and capacities in human psyches. Fifthly, amongst created beings, humans are characterised by having rationality (in addition to the senses and motion that differentiate animals from plants).

[4] *Discarded Image* 216. Throughout my Introduction and Annotations I use the phrase "the syncretic model" as a short-hand term for world-view and cosmology outlined in *The Discarded Image*.
[5] *Discarded Image* ch. 6.
[6] Jean Seznec, *The Survival of the Pagan Gods: The Mythological Tradition and Its Place in Renaissance Humanism and Art*, trans. Barbara F. Sessions, Bollingen Series XXXVIII (New York: Pantheon, 1953) 141, citing Gafurio's commentary of 1518.
[7] *Discarded Image* 139–40.

God

The universe of the Ransom trilogy, like that of the syncretic model, derives from God, as Lewis believed to be true of the real world. The two-sentence Preface to *Perelandra* includes the note, "All the human characters in this book are purely fictitious": accepting the King and Lady of Perelandra as human, the non-human characters are the demon that possesses Weston, Maleldil, and the Oyéresu of Malacandra and Perelandra. Lewis's Preface strongly suggests that some, at least, of these supernatural characters are not fictitious.

In the opening chapter of the novel, Lewis as character tells us, "I did not even doubt the reality of that mysterious being whom the eldila call Maleldil and to whom they appear to give a total obedience such as no Tellurian dictator can command. I knew what Ransom supposed Maleldil to be."[8] Ransom, on Malacandra, had learned "that Maleldil the Young had made and still ruled the world", and lived with "the Old One" who "is not that sort […] that he has to live anywhere", and that "Maleldil was a spirit without body, parts or passions."[9] This conversation between Ransom and the Hrossa takes place in the context of his "conscientious scruple as to whether it might not be his duty to undertake their religious instruction" only to find "himself being treated as if *he* were the savage and being given a first sketch of civilized religion—a sort of *hrossian* equivalent of the shorter catechism."[10] These hints make it sufficiently clear that Maleldil the Young is the Second Person of the Trinity—the Son—and the Old One the First Person—the Father. In *Perelandra*, the Lady refers explicitly to the Incarnation on Earth, saying to Ransom, "in your world Maleldil first took Himself this form, the form of your race and mine. […] Since our Beloved became a man, how should Reason in any world take on another form?"[11] Later, Ransom expresses dates in terms of earth's revolutions around the sun "SINCE THE TIME WHEN MALELDIL / BLESSED BE HE / WAS BORN AS A HNAU IN THULCANDRA" and "AFTER THE BIRTH OF MALELDIL".[12] This is obviously an allusion to dating in terms of "Before Christ" and "Anno Domini" and again makes it clear that Maleldil is the Second Person of the Trinity.

In *That Hideous Strength* Lewis finally makes the equation plain: Jane is brought to realise that "Maleldil might be, quite simply and crudely, God."[13] The world of the Ransom trilogy is then, the world of the syncretic model and of Lewis's Christian belief: the world that is created and sustained by the power of Christ, and in which, at a point in Earth's history, God became man.[14]

---

[8] *Perelandra: A Novel* (London: Bodley Head-John Lane, 1943) ch. 1 14.
[9] *Out of the Silent Planet* (London: Bodley Head-John Lane, 1938) ch. 11 107.
[10] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 11 107.
[11] *Perelandra* ch. 5 69.
[12] *Perelandra* ch. 15 216.
[13] Ch. 11 I 248.
[14] See: Col. 1: 16–17; John 1: 1–3, 14; Gal. 4: 4.

The Plenitude of Creation

The world of the syncretic model teems with created life, organised in hierarchies.[15] The fullness of the universe is mentioned in *That Hideous Strength*: the Earth moves "not through emptiness but through some densely inhabited and intricately structured medium".[16] In *Out of the Silent Planet* this plenitude is celebrated: in a space-ship, travelling away from Earth through interplanetary space, Ransom takes great delight in contemplating what he can see through the windows. He is especially attracted to "the regions of light", feeling uplifted by "the pure, ethereal colour": he comes to consider the modern scientific nightmare of coldly vacuous " 'Space' […] a blasphemous libel for this empyrean ocean of radiance they now swam in. He could not call it dead; he felt life pouring into him from it every moment."[17] The adjectives "ethereal" and "empyrean"—technical terms in the Medieval description of the universe—hint that Lewis is borrowing from the syncretic model. On his return to Earth, Ransom has learnt more of creation, and knows that it is likely "that the abyss was full of life in the most literal sense, full of living creatures."[18] This gives him courage, though his survival of the journey is uncertain: "His brain reeled at the thought of the true [angelic] population of the universe, the three-dimensional infinitude of their territory, and the unchronicled æons of their past; but his heart was steadier than it had ever been." [19]

A Medieval Depiction of the Teeming Angelic Life of the Heavens

[15] See Arthur O. Lovejoy, *The Great Chain of Being: A Study in the History of an Idea* (1936; New York: Harper & Row, 1960) 52, 60–61, 68–69, 190–92.
[16] Ch. 15 I 340.
[17] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 5 43–44.
[18] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 21 240.
[19] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 21 241.

If creation is full of living creatures, it might be expected that there are beings that are not animal, human or angel (good or bad). Dimble mentions them to his wife: "all the gods, elves, dwarfs, water-people, *fate*, *longaevi*."[20] In *Perelandra* too there are suggestions of beings that are not animal, human or angel and not involved in the moral struggles of rational and angelic beings.[21]

Lewis finds the hierarchical universe pleasing to contemplate, but also, in general, believes that the universe is and should be hierarchical.[22] In the Ransom trilogy, he makes this point in both *Perelandra* and *That Hideous Strength*. In the great *Benedictus* sung by the King and Lady, Perelandra and Malacandra, and Ransom at the end of *Perelandra*, they celebrate hierarchy and reciprocity: "All is righteousness and there is no equality. Not as when stones lie side by side, but as when stones support and are supported in an arch, such is His order; rule and obedience, begetting and bearing, heat glancing down, life growing up. Blessed be He!"[23] In *That Hideous Strength* the complexity of the question of equality is addressed through Jane's initial reactions at the beginning of her acquaintance with Ransom's Company. She is shocked when Ransom tells her, "we must all be guarded by equal rights from one another's greed, because we are fallen. […] Equality is not the deepest thing, you know. […] Equality guards life; it doesn't make it. It is medicine, not food", but she is also shocked and disapproving that her sometime charwoman, Ivy Maggs, is an equal member of the Company and household at St Anne's.[24] At the end of the novel, a corrective ideal picture of the hierarchy of the universe is presented: as the animals freed from Belbury invade the Manor and its garden, and before the last Oyarsa departs, Ransom says, "Man is no longer isolated. We are now as we ought to be—between the angels who are our elder brothers and the beasts who are our jesters, servants, and playfellows."[25]

---

[20] Ch. 13 IV 302.
[21] *Perelandra* ch. 13 184–85; ch. 15 211.
[22] Lewis argues that political and economic equality is a safeguard for fallen humanity, not a spiritual truth: "Equality," *The Spectator* 27 Aug 1943: 192.
[23] *Perelandra* ch. 17 247.
[24] Ch. 7 II 154; ch. 8 II 176–77.
[25] Ch. 17 VI 405.

The Field of Arbol

When we come to the third important element of the syncretic model—the structure of the universe—Lewis's syncretism becomes more complex, for he combines elements from the Ptolemaic model of the universe with a twentieth-century understanding of the solar system to create the Field of Arbol, a solar system in which aspects of the old mythology are true.

The notion that the orbit of the Moon is an important boundary between air and æther, between the mutability and contingency to which the Earth is so obviously subject and the unchanging perfection of the heavens is part of the syncretic model.[26] Aristotelian in origin, it was assimilated by Medieval Christianity to become a commonplace of the syncretic model, and is retained here although the Field of Arbol is heliocentric.[27] Satan is imprisoned with his demons in the sublunary realm of Earth (including her fallen human inhabitants).[28] Oyarsa-Malacandra tells Ransom of the rebellion of Satan:

> Once we knew the Oyarsa of your world—he was brighter and greater than I—and then we did not call it Thulcandra. […] He became bent. That was before any life came on your world. Those were the Bent Years of which we still speak in the heavens, when he was not yet bound to Thulcandra but free like us. […] He smote your moon with his left hand […] There was great war, and we drove him back out of the heavens and bound him in the air of his own world as Maleldil taught us. […] we know no more of that planet: it is silent. We think that Maleldil […] has taken strange counsel and dared terrible things, wrestling with the Bent One in Thulcandra. But of this we know less than you; it is a thing we desire to look into.[29]

Earth is thus the only planet cut off morally and spiritually from the rest of the Solar System—the "Silent Planet" of the first title in the trilogy, because the Earth (literally silent in the syncretic model because stationary) is silent in the Field of Arbol because she fails to participate in the metaphorical, moral, harmony of the heavens.

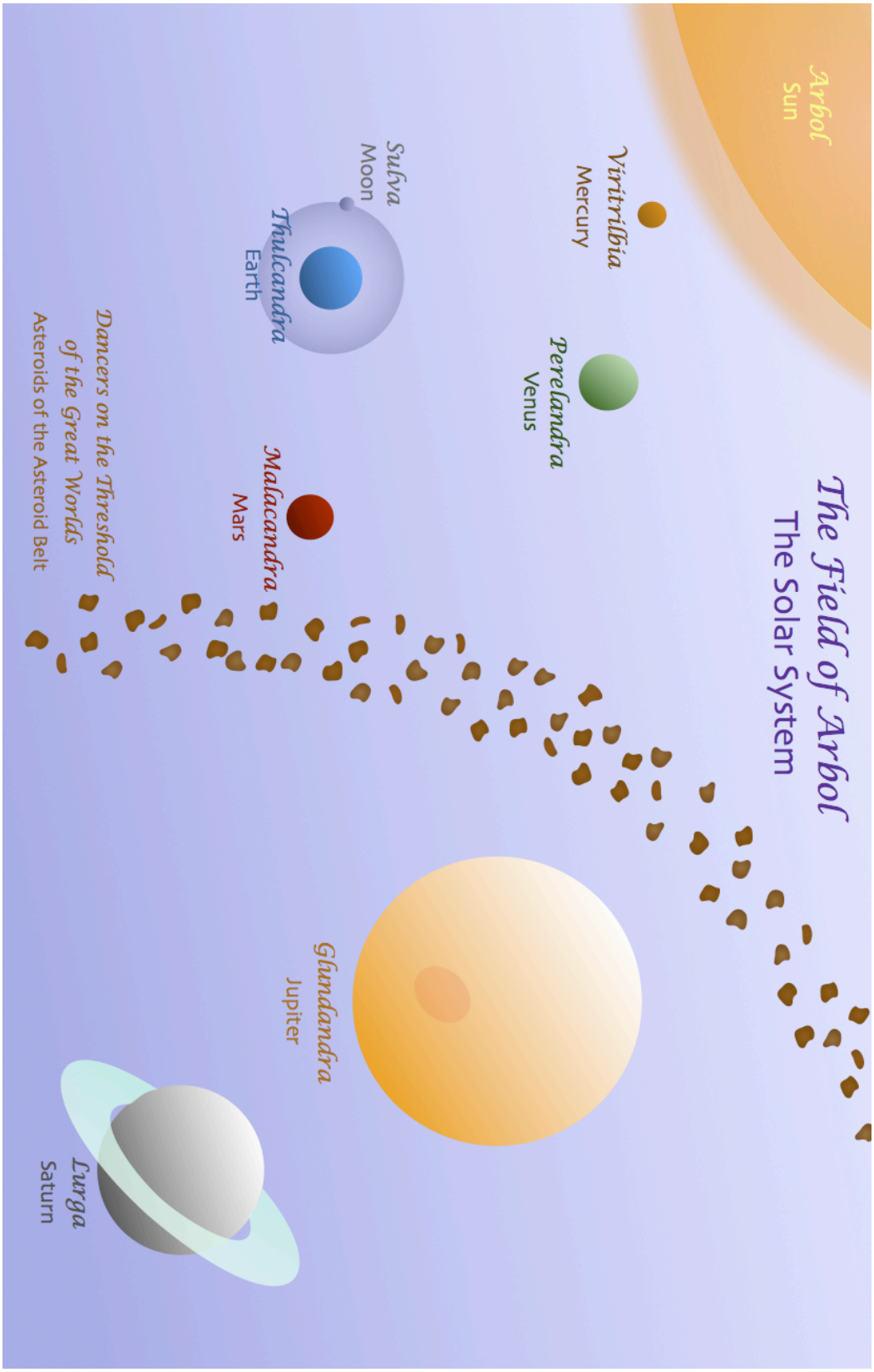
Although, physically, Lewis does not treat the Sun (or Arbol) as a planet moving around the Earth, but places it at the centre of the Solar System (or Field of Arbol), he retains for it the traditional astrological associations of the syncretic model, as I shall discuss below.[30]

We have seen that Lewis presents interplanetary space as the translunary realm of the æther, of changelessness, necessity, perfection, and light.

The planets visible to the naked eye he places correctly in relation to the Sun and the Earth. He does not deal with the fixed stars, the Primum Mobile, or the Elysium, nor does

---

[26] See ch. 8 III (especially 186 n. 1) & ch. 13 I.
[27] *Discarded Image* 3–4, 32–34.
[28] See Introduction 3 lxix.
[29] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 18 196–97; see also I Pet. 1: 12.
[30] See ch. 7 I 147–48, 149.


The Field of Arbol
The Solar System
Arbol
Sun
Viritrilbia
Mercury
Perelandra
Venus
Thulcandra
Earth
Sulva
Moon
Malacandra
Mars
Dancers on the Threshold
of the Great Worlds
Asteroids of the Asteroid Belt
Glundandra
Jupiter
Lurga
Saturn

he mention Uranus, Neptune and Pluto, the planets invisible to the naked eye and lacking traditional and mythological associations.

In the syncretic model, while Heaven in one sense encloses the cosmos, in another it is the centre, since from Heaven the life of the Universe comes: Earth is then in a sense on the periphery: the sublunary world is excluded from the higher festivities and perfections of Heaven and the æthereal realm. The universe can thus be considered in two ways, and Lewis introduces this double vision from the syncretic model by referring to the asteroid belt, the naming and general recognition of which dates from the nineteenth century.[31] He does so in passing, in the postscript to *Out of the Silent Planet*, when Ransom recalls seeing "Jupiter rising beyond the Asteroids" and muses, "But the Malacandrians would say 'within the Asteroids,' for they have an odd habit, sometimes, of turning the solar system inside out."[32]

Materially, Earth in the syncretic model is made of the dregs and offscourings of the rest of creation.[33] In the Ransom trilogy, Lewis describes all planets, not only Earth, as being in some way waste places excluded from the brightness of the surrounding Heavens: in *Out of the Silent Planet*, as the space-ship in which he has been kidnapped approaches Malacandra, Ransom feels that they are "falling out of heaven, into a world" and wonders

> how he could ever have thought of planets, even of the Earth, as islands of life and reality floating in a deadly void. Now, with a certainty that never after deserted him, he saw the planets—the "earths" he called them in his thought—as mere holes or gaps in the living heaven—excluded and rejected wastes of heavy matter and murky air, formed not by addition to, but by subtraction from, the surrounding brightness.[34]

Lewis's harmonising juxtaposition of two views of the solar system, one contemporary and scientific and one Medieval and traditional, into the Field of Arbol, is typical of the syncretic practice that he so enjoys in the syncretic model: different models are harmonised as much as possible to form a rich composite. Lewis is not the first to attempt to syncretize two models of the cosmos: he notes with approbation Milton's

> most ingenious device [in *Paradise Lost*] for retaining the glories of the old builded and finite universe yet also expressing the new consciousness of space. He enclosed his cosmos in a spherical envelope within which all could be light and order, and hung it from the floor of heaven. Outside that he had Chaos […][35]

The Field of Arbol is thus the result of Lewis's syncretic activities, but one element of the syncresis is the model, itself syncretic, so that Lewis's syncretism becomes also the emulous expression of his delight in the syncretic model—a form of participation in it.

---

[31] *NED*, "Asteroid" B. *sb.* 1.
[32] *Out of the Silent Planet* postscript 263. This is discussed in detail in Introduction 3 (lxix–lxx).
[33] *Discarded Image* 62–63.
[34] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 6 56.
[35] *Discarded Image* 100.

The Planetary Powers

The syncretic model posits Intelligences that in some way guide the planets, and planets that influence Earth. In the Ransom trilogy, the Intelligences of some of the planets are important characters in all three of the novels, and in *That Hideous Strength* they are shown as exercising the traditional mythological influence of the planets. Lewis also ensures that the Sun and Moon, though no longer understood as planets, are allowed to exercise their traditional influences. While Dante made Fortune the Intelligence of Earth, Lewis, in a stroke of genius, presents the fallen angel Satan as the Intelligence of Earth: once bright, now fallen, unrepentant and burning to extend his evil to other planets. Lewis uses the title Oyarsa (plural Oyéresu) for the Intelligence of a planet. He gets this word from Bernardus Silvestris, and incorporates his real-life research into its meaning and origin into the story of *Out of the Silent Planet*.[36]

Satan, then, is the fallen Oyarsa of Earth. According to Oyarsa-Malacandra (quoted above), after his fall and before there was life on earth, he attempted to ruin Mars, and was then bound into the sublunary realm by Maleldil's angelic hosts.[37] The story of *Perelandra* is the story of his attempt to bring about a fall on Venus as he did on Earth: he is able to be present there through the possession of Weston, who invites him: "I call that Force into me completely . . . ."[38] The possession appears to kill Weston, but in the following chapter Ransom hears another voice, which sounds like Weston, speaking to the Lady in the darkness.[39] The next day Ransom comes upon what appears to be Weston, torturing frogs, but then,

> forcing its way up into consciousness, thrusting aside every mental habit and every longing not to believe, came the conviction that this, in fact, was not a man: that Weston's body was kept, walking and undecaying, in Perelandra by some wholly different kind of life, and that Weston himself was gone.[40]

After this the narrative voice refers to "Weston's body" and "Weston's mouth" speaking and acting, until Ransom thinks of it as the "Un-man", which becomes the term used.[41] That the Un-man is animated by a demon, one of Earth's fallen eldila, is made quite clear. We are told, "Weston's body, travelling in a space-ship, had become the bridge by which something had invaded Perelandra—whether that supreme and original evil whom in Mars they called The Bent One, or one of his lesser followers, made no difference."[42] At least one critic, Filmer, does not understand Weston's demonic possession: she describes it with with some awareness that it is evil, but without understanding what is happening: "the man

---

[36] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 22 250–52 and see discussion in Introduction 3 lxvii–lxviii.
[37] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 18 196.
[38] *Perelandra* ch. 7 109.
[39] *Perelandra* ch. 8 117–21.
[40] *Perelandra* ch. 9 125.
[41] *Perelandra* ch. 9 127, 129, 131, 135, 137, 138, 139.
[42] *Perelandra* ch. 9 126.

is becoming a toad or a wolf, these traditionally being associated with witchcraft and satanism."[43] More than once Ransom challenges Weston's possessor, addressing it directly as a demon.[44] Eventually Ransom accepts that he is on Perelandra to destroy the bridge—Weston's body—which makes it impossible for the demon to remain and enables the King and Lady to stand where Adam and Eve fell.[45]

If Satan is able to extend his influence to the translunary realm through Satanic or demonic possession of Weston, in *That Hideous Strength* the Oyéresu of the other planets are able to involve themselves in Earth's affairs because of their acquaintance, even friendship, with Ransom.[46] The novel is rich in evocations of the traditional mythological planetary influences of the syncretic model. Although Ward's main focus is the Narnia stories, he thoroughly documents Lewis's use and treatment of the planetary traditions of the syncretic model across all his work.[47]

The Moon, in addition to being the boundary of the power of the fallen eldila, is described as "the huntress, the untameable virgin, the spear-head of madness", explicitly evoking Artemis the virgin huntress, goddess of the Moon, and reminding us that the Moon is associated with lunacy.[48] Although Merlin is invested with the powers only of the true planets, he is described as bringing merciful release to Belbury's victims of vivisection with powers compared to "the mild shafts of Artemis."[49]

Like the Moon, the Sun is no longer considered a planet, and Lewis likewise introduces the Sun's influence obliquely into *That Hideous Strength*. Gold, "the noblest metal", is traditionally engendered by the Sun, "the eye and mind of the whole universe", so Lewis, when describing Ransom as King and Pendragon, enriches his presentation of kingship with references to sunlight and to gold.[50]

When it comes to the planets accepted as such both by modern astronomy and the syncretic model—Mercury, Venus, Mars, Saturn and Jupiter—Lewis is able to give full play to descriptions of their influence in *That Hideous Strength*. The Oyéresu enter Earth's air and invest Merlin with their powers in chapter 15, and Lewis provides two pageant-like descriptions of their apprehension by the humans at the Manor: first, as the influence of each is felt by the members of the company in the kitchen, and secondly as they manifest themselves to Merlin and the Pendragon.

---

[43] Kath Filmer, *The Fiction of C.S. Lewis: Mask and Mirror* (New York: St Martin's P, 1993) 32.
[44] *Perelandra* ch. 9 138; ch. 12 174.
[45] *Perelandra* ch. 11 169–71; ch. 16 226.
[46] Ch. 13 V 308–09.
[47] Michael Ward, *Planet Narnia: The Seven Heavens in the Imagination of C.S. Lewis*, Kindle ed. (New York: Oxford UP, 2008).
[48] *Discarded Image* 109; see ch. 9 III 206 & n. 1.
[49] See ch. 16 II 373 & n. 4.
[50] *Discarded Image* 106; see ch. 7 I 149 & n. 1.

Mercury is associated with learning and language: Lewis lists Gower, Chaucer, Martianus and Shakespeare as writers who have depicted Mercury as involved with words, meaning, writing; he engenders the metal mercury, also called quicksilver.[51] Lewis alludes to both these attributes in combination, saying of the Old Solar language that it "sprang at Maleldil's bidding out of the molten quick-silver of the star called Mercury"[52] When Oyarsa-Viritrilbia descends, the Company in the kitchen speak and argue delightedly and skilfully; Ransom and Merlin experience the agitation and ecstasy of thoughts and meanings "that went rolling to and fro like glittering drops and reunited themselves" splitting and recombining like quicksilver.[53] At Belbury, the power of Mercury in Merlin enables him to bring down the curse of Babel upon all there, so that everything spoken or written is gibberish and chaos ensues.[54]

Venus engenders the metal copper, "beauty and amorousness" in humans, and "fortunate events" in history.[55] In the kitchen at the Manor, Jane delights in the young love of the Dennistons and the mature love of the Dimbles, and the sweet scents of Perelandra are everywhere, while Ransom and Merlin experience unmitigated the ferocious effects of heavenly love—Charity independent of natural affection.[56]

Mars is the god of war and warlike emotions, and engenders iron.[57] When he descends on the Manor those in the kitchen are filled with martial ardour and camaraderie, and lose all doubt and anxiety. Merlin and Ransom remember their past wars and feel themselves part of an ordered and obeying universe: the effect is cold and clear like touching iron.[58] When Merlin arrives at Belbury, is it likely that it is Malacandra working through him that makes Mark's fear disappear, and later makes the chaos of Babel worse by the unreasoning anger experienced by some of those doomed by gibberish.[59]

Saturn produces lead, melancholy and disasters, and is also associated with time.[60] At the Manor all think of death and the passing of time, and feel cold and sorrow: Lewis combines Lurga's association with lead and time into a single reference to "the lead-like burden of his antiquity".[61] At Belbury, after Merlin's curse of Babel has done its work, Mark feels his spirit crushed and despairing before he faints.[62]

Jupiter is the king of the planets (although the Sun engenders the king of the

---

[51] *Discarded Image* 107–08.
[52] Ch. 10 IV 243.
[53] Ch. 15 I 342.
[54] Ch. 16 IV 376 & n. 1.
[55] *Discarded Image* 107.
[56] Ch. 15 I 342–44; see too *Perelandra* ch. 16 229.
[57] *Discarded Image* 106.
[58] Ch.15 I 344–46.
[59] Ch. 15 IV 359 & n. 2; ch. 16 I 366 & n. 1; ch. 16 I 368 & n. 1.
[60] *Discarded Image* 105.
[61] Ch.15 I 346–47.
[62] Ch.16 I 372.

metals) and engenders festive, jovial, magnanimous moods.[63] Lewis keeps him to last in his pageant of the gods, and Glund-Oyarsa's advent at the Manor dispels Lurga's gloom: in the kitchen they dance, and Merlin and Ransom experience majesty and joy and glorify God together with the Oyéresu.[64]

[63] *Discarded Image* 105–06.
[64] Ch. 15 I 347–48.

Human being

The fifth and final essential element from the syncretic model is the assumption that human beings are different from animals and different from angels.[65] Humans have rationality and animals do not; angels (and demons) can use reason, but need not, because they apprehend truth directly through their own *intelligentia*.[66] Lewis notes—and celebrates—the differences between human and angelic apprehension in a poem, "On Being Human" (1946): he begins, "Angelic minds, they say, by simple intelligence / Behold" (1–2), but going on to celebrate our senses as a secret our "Maker / Shares with living men" (38–39), and not with angels.[67]

Lewis expands the solar system's population of rational beings when Ransom finds that other planets than Earth also possess *hnau*, "rational animals"— creatures possessing, as humans do, sentient, mobile, animal bodies and rationality. The hrossa, séroni and pfifltriggi of Malacandra, and the human-formed King and Lady of Perelandra, are also *hnau*.[68] Of the æthereal creatures, the Oyéresu and other eldila clearly apprehend differently from *hnau*, and the demon that possesses Weston in *Perelandra* is capable of assuming rationality "as externally and inorganically as it had assumed Weston's body" but is not dependent on it as a human is.[69]

The horror of the N.I.C.E. is that its leaders wish to become more than human and to transcend nature, to move from their place in creation. In fact, they become sub-human, even animal, and unnatural.[70] In the end, they are deprived of human language.[71] Wither dies denying knowledge, worshipping not God but a demon, killed by an animal.[72] Frost dies as a result of his own actions, denying to the end his human mind and soul. [73]

The place of human beings in the Field of Arbol is the same as the place of human beings in the syncretic model. The masters of the N.I.C.E. are power-hungry, sadistic megalomaniacs, but the horror, for Lewis, and for us if we enter the world of the novel, is that they are not satisfied to be human, and in they end they are not human.

---

[65] See ch. 17 VI 405 & p. xcix: "We are now as we ought to be—between the angels who are our elder brothers and the beasts who are our jesters, servants, and playfellows." An extensive exploration of Lewis's understanding of human being is offered by William Luther White, *The Image of Man in C.S. Lewis*, diss., Northwestern U & Garrett Theological College, 1968, (London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1970).

[66] *Discarded Image* 88–89, 157.

[67] *The Collected Poems of C.S. Lewis*. ed. Walter Hooper (London: Fount-HarperCollins, 1994) 48–49.

[68] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 11 107; *Perelandra* ch. 5 69.

[69] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 18 194 & *Perelandra* ch. 16 232; *Perelandra* ch. 10 146.

[70] See ch. 11 II 258 & n. 1; ch. 14 I 317 & n. 2.

[71] Ch. 16 II 373 & n. 3.

[72] Ch. 16 IV.

[73] Ch. 16 VI.

Syncretism

I have made the point that Lewis's cosmology in the Ransom trilogy is syncretic, participating in an established syncretic tradition, combining different elements, or elements from different traditions, into a coherent work of art. He harmonises the Medieval universe with a more modern understanding of the Solar System, and combines modern genres, (polemical) engagement with contemporary outlooks, elements from legend, mythology and astrology, Christian theology, with elements from the syncretic model. The syncretism in *That Hideous Strength* is particularly rich, because, since it is the third novel in the trilogy, Lewis is able to treat his inventions in the earlier novels—often themselves syncretic—as traditions in their own right, capable of syncresis with other traditions. Accordingly, *That Hideous Strength* brings the eldils of the first two novels to Earth, and weaves them into a story that also includes elements of Arthurian legend.[74]

Those reading or otherwise responding to a syncretic work seem to be either delighted or infuriated. It delighted Lewis, as a thinker, reader and writer, but some of his critics appear to be out of sympathy with his syncretism, failing to understand him, or assuming that syncretism is generically out of place. Others consider the works, particularly *That Hideous Strength*, to be too rich and complicated. Some critics, sympathetic and unsympathetic alike, see all or some of the older elements of the syncretic mix as mere extraneous trimmings.

Lobdell complains about the mixture of many elements in *That Hideous Strength*.[75] Glover blames the work for moving between external and internal action, and complains about the richness of the novel and Lewis's incorporation of elements from Arthurian legend.[76] Fitzpatrick argues that *That Hideous Strength* "dilute[s] its myth with too many other things".[77] Adey repeats various condemnations of the novel as containing too much, and notes without approbation that "Lewis sought to reconcile Newtonian cosmology and biological discovery with Judaeo-Christian cosmic and terrestrial hierarchy", characterising this as a "compulsion".[78]

Other critics appear to object to the richness of *That Hideous Strength* not because they object to syncretism *per se*, but because they have categorised the novel as "science fiction"

---

[74] For further discussion of Lewis's use of Arthurian legend see Preliminary Note D: "Logres" (Introduction 5).
[75] Jared Lobdell, *The Scientifiction Novels of C.S. Lewis: Space and Time in the Ransom Stories* (Jefferson, NC: McFarland, 2004) 28–29.
[76] Donald E. Glover, *C.S. Lewis: The Art of Enchantment* (Athens: Ohio UP, 1981) 105, 119. See also Chad Walsh, *The Literary Legacy of C.S. Lewis* (London: Sheldon, 1979) 118.
[77] John F. Fitzpatrick, "From Fact to Fantasy: A Study of C.S. Lewis' Use of Myth," diss. (City College of the City U of New York, 1972), summarised in Joe R. Christopher & Joan K. Ostling, *C.S. Lewis: An Annotated Checklist of Writings About Him and His Works* (Kent, OH: Kent State UP, 1974) 75.
[78] Lionel Adey *C.S. Lewis: Writer, Dreamer, and Mentor* (Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans; Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1998) 132, 134, 136, 140.

and consider that the genre requires a certain simplicity. Spraycar argues *That Hideous Strength* is science fiction because it contains both a computer and a cybernetic organism, but that it is too eclectic to be good science fiction:

> Lewis's images […] seem also deeply indebted to classical, medieval, Renaissance, and even romantic [presumably Romantic, since he refers to Wordsworth in the previous paragraph] literature. If we have further accounted for the generic difficulties that *That Hideous Strength* poses for SF critics, it is nonetheless likely that in its eclecticism it will remain a troublesome work; although shot through with the conventional SF theme of mechanization, the novel's sometimes unorthodox hybridized images will continue to pose generic problems.[79]

White, whose generally scholarly study explores the theological and ethical implications of Lewis's work, classifies *That Hideous Strength* as "science fiction" in passing, and finds the work too complex:

> Because of its several mythical systems, some of which are likely to be unfamiliar to many readers, *Hideous Strength* is a complex and difficult work. Lewis maintains a relationship with the characters and events of his earlier science-fiction stories. But to this he adds a particular stream of Arthurian tradition, a biblical contrast between Babel and Pentecost, planetary "intelligences" of Medieval tradition, a theological interpretation of the source of evil, and an imaginative account of futuristic society in England. […] The complexities and improbabilities of the material detract from the impact of the work.[80]

By contrast, Moorman enjoys the syncretism of *That Hideous Strength*, and argues that the conflict needs to be presented with gravity, and, that the Arthurian material provides an appropriate grandeur and gravity for the struggle, without abandoning the translunary elements of the trilogy. [81] Hannay too enjoys Lewis's syncretism and concludes that the novel is a surprising success.[82]

Still other critics seem to feel that core elements of Lewis's syncretic cosmos are added, perhaps even unconsciously, as some kind of irrelevant trimming. Downing writes of "Lewis weav[ing] his worldview into the fabric of his fiction", as though the fiction and the world-view are separate and unrelated things.[83] Downing's own knowledge of the mental world in which Lewis moves is inadequate: he seems unaware, for example, that the concept of religious mystery was pagan both long before Paul wrote, "Behold, I tell you a mystery," and after, in Apuleius.[84]

Even a sympathetic critic, who understands that, in his fiction, Lewis's "object was to create other worlds, for his and his reader's delight: he was engaged in a kind of imaginative

---

[79] Rudy S. Spraycar, "C.S. Lewis's Mechanical Fiends in *That Hideous Strength*," *The Mechanical God: Machines in Science Fiction*. ed. Thomas P. Dunn & Richard D. Erlich, Contributions to the Study of Science Fiction and Fantasy I (Westport, CT: Greenwood P, 1982) 19.
[80] White 131.
[81] Charles Moorman, *Arthurian Triptych: Mythic Materials in Charles Williams, C.S. Lewis, and T.S. Eliot* (Berkeley: U of California P, 1960) 126.
[82] Margaret Patterson Hannay, "Arthurian and Cosmic Myth in *That Hideous Strength*," *Mythlore* [2] (1970): 7, 9.
[83] David C. Downing, *Planets in Peril: A Critical Study of C.S. Lewis's Ransom Trilogy* (Amherst: U of Massachusetts P, 1992) 59.
[84] Downing 62–64; I Cor. 15: 51; Lucius Apuleius, *The Transformations of Lucius, Otherwise Known as The Golden Ass*, trans. Robert Graves (Harmondsworth: Penguin, 1950) ch. 18–19.

enrichment of creation", assumes that much of the Christian and moral content of the novels "stole in" unconsciously.[85]

If a reader does not enjoy syncretism, then the Ransom trilogy, and particularly *That Hideous Strength*, will not please. If the difficulty is one of comprehension, an understanding and appreciation of Lewis's cosmology—an important and (to me) delightful part of the whole trilogy—will illuminate the works.

[85] C.N. Manlove, *C.S. Lewis: His Literary Achievement* (Basingstoke: Macmillan, 1987) 1, 4–6.

INTRODUCTION 5: PRELIMINARY NOTES

As I noted in my preface, this chapter serves as a transition between the considerations of the text and context offered in chapters 1 to 4 and the specific Annotations that follow.

In order to avoid repetition, these Preliminary Notes provide commentary on points that arise again and again in the novel. Points that often arise are naturally of special interest and, usually, importance, and thus are given appropriate prominence by being discussed here. Because of this, the reader may also prefer to explore them before beginning to read the novel. However, this material is also pointed to, as appropriate, from within the ordinary Annotations, or by the placing of the title of a Preliminary Note in the right margin alongside Text that it elucidates.

This chapter comprises the following Preliminary Notes:

A: Men Without Chests
B: Lewis as Character
C: The Inner Ring
D: Logres
E: Blasphemy and Swearing
F: Humane Remedial Treatment
G: Philosophies of Time
H: The Language of Creation

These Notes are arranged in the order in which they arise in the text of the novel, not thematically. Three of them deal with matters that Lewis considered ethically important and dealt with explicitly in his Christian writing (the titles are thus taken from works by Lewis) as well as implicitly in the fictional *That Hideous Strength*: "Men Without Chests", "The Inner Ring", and "Humane Remedial Treatment". Three of them deal with elements in the novel that are, to a greater or lesser extent, features of the entire trilogy: "Lewis as Character", "Blasphemy and Swearing", and "The Language of Creation". The Arthurian elements in *That Hideous Strength* (which are not present in the earlier novels of the trilogy) are elucidated in "Logres". "Philosophies of Time" deals with an aspect of Lewis's thought relevant to *The Dark Tower*, *That Hideous Strength* and the Narnia stories.

A: Men Without Chests

In 1954 Lewis told a correspondent that he thought *That Hideous Strength* was "about a triple conflict: Grace against Nature and Nature against Anti-Nature (modern industrialism, scientism, & totalitarian politics)."[1] Two works in particular are important in understanding Lewis's thoughts on this "triple conflict": Lewis's own *The Abolition of Man* (1943) and W.H. Oldham's *Real Life Is Meeting* (1942).

The introductory section of *Abolition of Man* is titled "Men Without Chests", hence the title of this Preliminary Note.[2] Lewis begins by noting a debunking tendency in textbooks purporting to teach English: a tendency to suggest that value is a subjective thing, and statements about value reveal only facts about the speaker.[3] He defines a doctrine of objective value, largely encapsulated in the traditional moralities of most times and places, and, as a kind of shorthand, refers to this system of objective values as the *Tao*.[4] He explains that an external, objective system of values provides a bridge between the will (Platonically identified with the head) and the appetite (the belly), giving a reason for the appetite to submit to the will. To deny the Tao is to create people with no way of reconciling will and appetite—men without chests.[5]

In section II, "The Way", Lewis points out that the writing of a book warning us against subjective value must be based on some value, derived somehow.[6] He explores various ways of justifying the elevation of some values over the others, and finds that they all involve some unacknowledged and unexplored adoption and distortion of the *Tao* or part of the *Tao*.[7] He notes that the outright denial of value is the only way (apart from accepting the whole *Tao*) to avoid self-contradiction.[8]

In section III, which shares its title with the book as a whole, Lewis looks at the consequences of rejecting the *Tao* as a whole and picking and choosing values to treat as paramount.[9] He starts by arguing that "man", in the abstract, cannot have power over nature: the power of man over nature is the power of "some men over other men with nature as its instrument".[10] If the *Tao* has been cast off, those with the power can (and will) condition (not educate) all others to accept whatever values suit them—values that the conditioners will not themselves accept, since they have invented them. Those conditioned

---

[1] *The Collected Letters of C.S. Lewis,* ed. Walter Hooper, 3 vol. (New York: HarperSanFrancisco, 2004–07) vol. 3 498.
[2] *The Abolition of Man: Reflections on Education with Special Reference to the Teaching of English in the Upper Forms of Schools* (1943; London: Fount-Collins, 1978) 7–20.
[3] *Abolition of Man* 7–14.
[4] *Abolition of Man* 14–18.
[5] *Abolition of Man* 18–20.
[6] *Abolition of Man* 21–24.
[7] *Abolition of Man* 24–32.
[8] *Abolition of Man* 32–33.
[9] *Abolition of Man* 34–48.
[10] *Abolition of Man* 34–36, 35.

will be at the mercy of untrammelled human will and appetite that acknowledges no objective values.[11] "Only the *Tao*," warns Lewis, "provides a common human law of action which can over-arch rulers and ruled alike. A dogmatic belief in objective value is necessary to the very idea of rule which is not tyranny or an obedience which is not slavery." [12]

While Lewis points out in the Preface to *That Hideous Strength* that the novel makes the same "serious 'point' " that he makes in *The Abolition of Man*, he had already introduced some of its arguments in *Out of the Silent Planet* (1938, five years before *The Abolition of Man*). After Weston has given his manifesto of planetary conquest, the Oyarsa of Malacandra says to him:

> "I see now how the lord of the silent world [the fallen Oyarsa of Earth, Satan] has bent you. There are laws that all *hnau* know, of pity and straight dealing and shame and the like, and one of these is the love of kindred. He has taught you to break all of them except this one, which is not one of the greatest laws; this one he has bent till it becomes folly and has set it up, thus bent, to be a little blind Oyarsa in your brain. And now you can do nothing but obey it, though if we ask you why it is a law you can give no other reason for it than for all the other and greater laws which it drives you to disobey. […] He has left you this one [law] because a bent *hnau* can do more evil than a broken one. He has only bent you; but [Devine] he has broken, for he has left him nothing but greed. He is now only a talking animal […]"[13]

While Devine is a traditional kind of sinner, an avaricious man reduced to a mere specimen of avarice,[14] Weston represents a twentieth-century trend Lewis finds disturbing: plucking on one part of the *Tao* out of context and placing it above all other values.[15] A law so perverted—bent—is worse than an explicit sin, since the displaced law retains all the authority with which the *Tao* invests it.

Real Life Is Meeting is a collection of papers by W.H. Oldham and others addressing the question of what the Christian faith could do towards "saving and renewing" society.[16] Its title is the title of chapter 14 of *That Hideous Strength*, and two extensive passages from *Real Life Is Meeting* can be seen to inform *That Hideous Strength* generally and this chapter in particular.[17] In the first chapter ("Return to Reality") in a section entitled "Nature" Oldham writes,

> Instead of looking on the earth and the world of natural objects as gifts to man, to be understood, valued and reverently used, men have regarded them as just so much raw material for the satisfaction of their unlimited wants. Science, which is the child of humility and reverence, has been made the tool of man's pride and ambition. The reckless and ruinous exploitation of natural resources is but one manifestation of this arrogant temper. In a world that is centred on markets and exchange everything tends to be thought of as a commodity. Natural objects, and even persons, are all included in this category. A tree is seen not as a tree, but as timber.

---

[11] *Abolition of Man* 36–48.
[12] *Abolition of Man* 44.
[13] *Out of the Silent Planet* (London: Bodley Head-John Lane, 1938) ch. 20 226–27; the appendix to *Abolition of Man*, "Illustrations of the Tao" (49–59), includes examples of love of kindred (52).
[14] Devine's (Feverstone's) death in *That Hideous Strength* is appropriate for Avarice: he is buried in earth (ch. 17 III 392 & n. 1).
[15] *Abolition of Man* 21–33.
[16] Introduction: J.H. Oldham, *Real Life is Meeting* (1942). 5 Feb. 2008 <http://www.chebucto.ns.ca/Philosophy/Sui-Generis/Berdyaev/essays/rlm.htm>.
[17] See 313 n. 1.

This comments on the manipulative attitudes to nature exemplified by Filostrato and others at the N.I.C.E., including Mr. Bultitude's abductors.[18] Merlin, by contrast, shows a reverential attitude to Nature—see the Dimbles' discussion in ch. 13 IV. Ransom speaks to Merlin of men "worshipping the iron works of their own hands, cut off from Earth their mother and from the Father in Heaven".[19] The solution is suggested by Oldham: "In responding reverently to the truth of material things, men may discover that, without having known it, they are in touch with God who made them."[20]

In his second chapter ("All Real Life Is Meeting"), in a section entitled "The World of Persons", Oldham writes:

> Reality is the lived relation. Through sharing in the giving and receiving of mutual being the "I" becomes real. "Reality is an activity in which I share without being able to appropriate it for myself. Where there is no sharing there is no reality. Where there is appropriation by the self there is no reality." All real life is meeting.
>
> Every day the meeting awaits us. But whether it takes place depends on our choice. Our egoism continually tempts us to evade it. We prefer to wrap ourselves in our solitariness and pursue our solitary purposes. As a protection against the meeting we build round us a wall of ideas—a philosophy, a theology, a tradition, a point of view. Nothing can reach us that does not get through its meshes. We take refuge in an imagined world where we are safe from the disturbing challenge of the "Thou".

The use of "thou" for the other with whom one is in right relation comes from Martin Buber's *Ich und Du* (1923), translated by Ronald Gregor Smith as *I and Thou*. Lewis initially was not sure what to make of Buber's thought, but came to consider that, although its focus was limited, it was very good on the kinds of wrong relation ("I-him" and "I-it") and right relation ("I-thou") between human and human and between human and God that formed its focus.[21] Jane, who desires to avoid involvement, is challenged in chapter 14—"Real Life Is Meeting"—to meet and enter into a right relation with God and ultimately with Mark.

---

[18] Ch. 14 III.
[19] Ch. 13 V.
[20] Oldham, ch. 1.
[21] On Buber, see: *Collected Letters* vol. 2 526 & 528; vol. 3 631–32 & 979; *Prayer: Letters to Malcolm* (London: Fount-Collins, 1977), rpt. of *Letters to Malcolm Chiefly on Prayer* (London: Geoffrey Bles, 1964) 23. Apart from the obvious allusions to Oldham in *That Hideous Strength*, Lewis does not seem to mention him in his letters or other writings.

B: Lewis as Character

Lewis is a minor character in as well as the third-person narrator of all three novels in the Ransom trilogy (as well as being a more central character and first-person narrator in the extant chapters of the aborted *Dark Tower*). Thus the trilogy, with all its fantastic elements, is embedded in the real world at a specific time (shortly before and during World War II) and place (England). In the first two novels, Lewis includes autobiographical elements in his presentation of himself as character.[22]

In *Out of the Silent Planet*, in the final chapter of the story and the postscript that follows it, Lewis appears as a character known to Ransom, who has asked him to tell his story as though it were fictional.[23] He introduces himself:

> This is where I come into the story. I had known Dr Ransom slightly for several years and corresponded with him on literary and philological subjects, though we very seldom met. It was, therefore, quite in the usual order of things that I should write a letter some months ago, of which I will quote the relevant paragraph. It ran like this:
>
> "I am now working on the Platonists of the twelfth century and incidentally discovering that they wrote damnably difficult Latin. In one of them, Bernardus Silvestris, there is a word I should particularly like your views on—the word *Oyarses*. It occurs in the description of a voyage through the heavens, and an *Oyarses* seems to be the 'intelligence' or tutelary spirit of a heavenly sphere, i.e. in our language, of a planet. I asked C.J. about it and he says it ought to be *Ousiarches*. That, of course, would make sense, but I do not feel quite satisfied. Have you by any chance ever come across a word like *Oyarses*, or can you hazard a guess as to what language it may be?"
>
> The immediate result of this letter was an invitation to spend a week-end with Dr. Ransom.[24]

This history of Lewis and Ransom's acquaintance is adapted from factual elements of Lewis's life and work. In Appendix I of *The Allegory of Love*, "Genius and Genius", he quotes seven lines of prose from Bernardus Silvestris in which the term "Oyarses" appears twice, and goes on to note, "The name *Oyarses*, as Professor C.C.J. Webb has pointed out to me, must be a corruption of οὐσιάρχης."[25] Lewis did correspond with Clement Charles Julian Webb, regarding the term "Oyarses", and Webb did suggest (in a letter dated 31 October 1931) that it was a corruption of Pseudo-Apuleius's οὐσιάρχης or "ruling essence".[26]

Lewis delighted in including in the Ransom novels little acts of homage to those he admired, and this allusion to Webb is one. In *Surprised by Joy* he names Webb among "five great Magdalen men who enlarged [his] very idea of what a learned life should be" at the time when he was a new Fellow (he was elected in 1925).[27] Webb (1865-1954) was Tutor in

---

[22] Humphrey Carpenter, *The Inklings: C.S.Lewis, J.R.R.Tolkien, Charles Williams, and Their Friends* (1978; London: Unwin Paperbacks, 1981) 198.
[23] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 22 251–53.
[24] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 22 250–51.
[25] *The Allegory of Love: A Study in Medieval Tradition* (1936; Oxford: Oxford UP, 1977) 362.
[26] *C&G* 207; Roger Lancelyn Green & Walter Hooper, *C.S.Lewis: A Biography*, rev. & expanded ed., paperback ed. (London: HarperCollins, 2003) 185.
[27] *Surprised by Joy: The Shape of My Early Life* (1955; London: Fount-Collins, 1977) 172–73.

Philosophy at Magdalen from 1889 to 1922 and Oriel Professor of Philosophy of the Christian Religion and Fellow of Oriel from 1922 to 1930.[28]

Lewis uses the title "Oyarsa", adapted from a discovery in the course of his scholarly reading, in his science fiction novel, and then incorporates his correspondence with Webb (transmuted to "C.J.") as the background to a similar, fictional, correspondence with Ransom. As he writes the framing addenda (chapter 22 and postscript) that suggest that his fiction is fact, he includes facts (including his own scholarly, literary, Christian, polemical persona) that add to the verisimilitude of his frame.

The postscript to *Out of the Silent Planet* purports to be "extracts from a letter written by the original of 'Dr. Ransom' to the author."[29] The reference to "the original of 'Dr Ransom' ", together with the earlier comment "at this stage it will become obvious that this is not his real name",[30] is problematic, because an episode in *Perelandra* suggests very strongly that Ransom is his real name: Maleldil speaks to him in the dark and says, "It is not for nothing that you are named Ransom […] My name also is Ransom," and Ransom knows this cannot be a "fancy of his own" because he knows that the syllables of his name bear only a fortuitous resemblance to "the name for a payment that delivers".[31] Most probably, Lewis, who tended not to draft and re-draft his fiction, or to return to it, simply forgot that the novel published five years previously had stated that the names of some characters were pseudonyms. His original plans for the sequel, suggested by the comment at the very end of *Out of the Silent Planet*, "if there is to be any more space-travelling, it will have to be time-travelling as well…!" and by the aborted sequel *The Dark Tower*, seem to have been very different from *Perelandra* and would very likely have not needed to turn on the meaning of the sound of Ransom's name—which indeed has nothing to do with "a payment that delivers, being derived from "Ranolf's son".[32]

Lewis appears as character and narrator again in the aborted *The Dark Tower*, and in *Perelandra* (1943). In *Perelandra* the first two chapters are told by Lewis as a first-person narrator and conclude, "[…] he told us the story that follows."[33] Chapters 3 to 17 are Lewis's third-person re-telling of Ransom's story of what happened to him on Perelandra.

In the first chapter Lewis as character narrates his speculations about Oyarsa-Malacandra and the *eldila* with whom Ransom is in contact, the terrors and doubts that assail him as he walks the three miles from the station to Ransom's cottage, and his encounter with Oyarsa in the hallway of the cottage. Parallelling his reference to Bernardus Silvestris in *Out of the Silent Planet*, Lewis includes a footnote on the nature of Eldilic

[28] *C&G* 154 n.
[29] *Out of the Silent Planet*, postscript 254.
[30] *Out of the Silent Planet*, postscript 254; ch. 22 177.
[31] *Perelandra: A Novel* (London: Bodley Head-John Lane, 1943) ch. 11 168.
[32] See "Ranson, Ransom, Ransome" in *Dictionary of English Surnames*, ed. P.H. Reaney, rev. 3rd ed., corr. & add. R.M. Wilson (Oxford: Oxford UP, 1997).
[33] *Perelandra* ch. 2 34.

manifestations to human senses, citing and translating a seventeenth-century Latin passage from Natvilcius's *De Aetherei et aerio Corpore*. This time, however, the quotation, the work it purports to come from, and Natvilcius himself are pure invention. "Natvilcius" is a Latinisation of "Nat Whilk", Anglo-Saxon for "I know not whom"—a pseudonym that Lewis sometimes used, and which also provided the initials for the pseudonym under which *A Grief Observed* (1961) was first published: N.W. Clerk.[34]

In the second chapter Lewis learns that Ransom is to go to Perelandra (Venus), and that Lewis must pack him into the vessel in which Oyarsa will convey him there, and be ready for a summons if Ransom returns. Lewis duly assists Ransom, and is called back more than a year later. He and a doctor in their confidence give Ransom what help he needs, and hear his story. As in the previous novel, Ransom calls the narrator "Lewis", making clear the identification of the "I" with Lewis.[35] The doctor—"Humphrey"—had been suggested by the character Lewis to Ransom.[36] This introduces a doctor whom Lewis really knew, and is another of Lewis's acts of homage to a friend: "Humphrey" was the nickname of Dr Robert Emlyn Havard (1901-85), Lewis's doctor from 1934, as well as a friend and a member of the Inklings, and contributor of the appendix on the clinical effects of pain to *The Problem of Pain* (1940).[37]

In the first chapter of *That Hideous Strength* Lewis introduces himself as a character with the observation, "Though I am Oxford bred and very fond of Cambridge, I think that Edgestow is more beautiful than either."[38] Later he describes Bracton College and the "only time I [Lewis as character] was a guest" there, and then comments in passing on some correspondence dealt with at a college meeting.[39] After this, Lewis does not explicitly present himself as a character again until chapter 14:

> When Mrs. Dimble had told her husband how she would be engaged that morning, he had said, "Well, it can't take you very long just lighting a fire and making a bed." I share Dr. Dimble's sex and his limitation. I have no idea what the two women found to do in the Lodge for all the hours they spent there. [40]

This implies a time after the events of the novel when Lewis is told the story by the characters who have lived through it, by presenting Lewis's reaction to a minor event. When next he appears in the narrative, Lewis's involvement after the events of the novel is made explicit: he tells of the tramp's final escape from Belbury, and notes, "I have not been able to trace him further."[41] In the final chapter he uses the editorial "We", but the

---

[34] Green & Hooper 406.
[35] *Perelandra* ch. 2 25.
[36] *Perelandra* ch. 2 29.
[37] Green & Hooper 166 n; *C&G* 681; *Collected Letters* vol. 2 182 n. 15; George Sayer, *Jack: A Life of C.S.Lewis* (1988; London: Hodder & Stoughton, 2005) 251; Carpenter 130, 183.
[38] Ch. 1 II 10.
[39] Ch. 1 III 14 & IV 18.
[40] Ch. 14 II 319.
[41] Ch. 16 II 371.

impression of Lewis working with some of the other characters after the events of the novel, in order to establish the story the novel tells, is reinforced for the last time:

> We have, naturally, hardly any first-hand evidence for what happened in Edgestow that afternoon and evening. But we have plenty of stories as to how so many people came to leave it at the last moment.[42]

Although Lewis does not participate in the events of *That Hideous Strength* to as great a degree as he does in *Perelandra*, he is nevertheless sufficiently present in the first chapter and towards the end to bind the novel to its predecessors, and to suggest his narrative activities.

[42] Ch. 17 III 391.

C: The Inner Ring

In the first section of the novel in which Mark appears, he and Curry meet and walk together towards a college meeting, talking about what is to happen.[43] Lewis tells us,

> You would never have guessed from the tone of Studdock's reply what intense pleasure he derived from Curry's use of the pronoun "we". So very recently he had been an outsider, […] Now he was inside, and "Curry and his gang" had become "we" or "the Progressive Element in College."[44]

This introduces Lewis's concern in this novel with the idea of the "inner ring". Walter Hooper discusses this under "Key Ideas" in his *Companion and Guide* and describes Mark Studdock as "the 'inner ringer' *par excellence*".[45] Mark's story in this novel is the history of his desire to be part of increasingly more esoteric inner rings, at whatever cost to his personal integrity and human relationships, and his eventual rejection of this desire and the results of this rejection. The key stages in this aspect of Mark's story are tabulated below.

1 II	We learn that Mark has recently become an insider of Bracton College's "Progressive Element".	
2 I	Under Feverstone's influence, Mark begins to think members of the Progressive Element slightly risible; then Feverstone offers Mark a job with the N.I.C.E.	QUOTATION Mark was silent. The giddy sensation of being suddenly whirled up from one plane of secrecy to another […] prevented him from speaking.
3 II	During his first evening at Belbury, Mark is made to feel very much an outsider, and uncomfortable.	
5 I	Mark tries to get his status and future at Belbury clear. He contemplates returning to Bracton, but fears that, if he does, he will find that he is no longer an insider there.	QUOTATIONS Mark had no scruples about vivisection. What the noise meant to him was the greatness and grandiosity of this whole undertaking from which, apparently, he was likely to be excluded. […] He *must* get the job […] On what terms would he go back? Would he still be a member of the inner circle even at Bracton? To find himself no longer in the confidence of the Progressive Element, to be thrust down among the Telfords and Jewels, seemed to him unendurable.
5 II	It is made clear to Mark that, owing to Feverstone's machinations, he cannot leave Belbury and return to Bracton: if he does not please Belbury, he will be out of Bracton too.	QUOTATIONS Stone had the look which Mark had often seen before in unpopular boys or new boys at school, in "outsiders" at Bracton—the look which was for Mark the symbol of all his worst fears, for to be one who must wear that look was, in his scale of values, the greatest evil. It came back to him with miserable insight that what he was now calling "a chance word" was exactly what he had learned, in the Progressive Element, to describe as "settling real business in private" or "cutting out the Red Tape," but he tried to thrust this out of his mind. It came back to him that poor Conington had actually lost his job in a way very similar to this, but he explained to himself that […] Conington had been an outsider; he was inside, even more inside than Curry himself. But was he?

[43] Ch. 1 II.
[44] Ch. 1 II 11.
[45] *C&G* 574–75.

6 III	Mark begins to feel "in", and so is led into illegality.
6 IV	Mark's pleasure in belonging.
8 III	Mark feels that he is getting more deeply into the Inner Ring. He is pressured to bring Jane to Belbury, but is unwilling. He agrees to meet "the Head".
11 III	Mark, facing death, realises that he has always given up what he wanted for in order to belong. He decides that his death would be good for Jane.
12 IV	Frost offers Mark an *entrée* into the innermost of circles. He is determined to resist, although he can see the temptation.
12 VII	Mark is shaken by a fit of the temptation to belong to the ring Frost has opened to him. He resists successfully, and sleeps.
14 IV	Mark finds that he and the Tramp have an innocent inner ring of their own.
17 I	Mark decides that he must give Jane her freedom: he cannot own her.
17 VII	Mark arrives at St Anne's and enters the Lodge prepared for him and Jane.

Jane, by contrast, strongly dislikes getting involved: Lilith-like, her concern is to maintain or even demand her autonomy. She strongly resists any invitations to join the Company around the Pendragon until she meets him.[46] She remains in conflict, uncertain of her loyalties to Mark or the Pendragon, but determined to retain her integrity.[47] She becomes a Christian after a frightening vision of an unbaptized Venus, and so begins to be at peace in her relations with the members of the Company and her duties to Mark; in the final section of the novel, her story and Mark's merge as she prepares to enter the Lodge where he is waiting.[48]

The dangers of the desire to be part of the kind of inner ring that exists mainly to exclude outsiders were clearly very much part of Lewis's thinking in the 1940s. Apart from the novel, two papers, delivered in 1944 and 1948, address the same question.

In 1944 Lewis delivered a memorial oration at King's College, University of London entitled "The Inner Ring": in this he defines the culpable Ring as one in which "[t]here are no formal admissions or expulsions. People think they are in after they have in fact been pushed out of it, or before they have been allowed in: this provides great amusement for those who are really inside".[49] He clarifies the dangers inherent in the desire to belong:

> I must not assume that you have ever first neglected, and finally shaken off, friends whom you really loved and who might have lasted you a lifetime, in order to court the friendship of those who appeared to you more important, more esoteric. I must not ask whether you have ever derived actual pleasure from the loneliness and humiliation of the outsiders after you yourself were in: whether you have talked to fellow members of the Ring in the presence of outsiders simply in order that the outsiders might envy; whether the means whereby, in the days of your probation, you propitiated the Inner Ring, were always wholly admirable.[50]

[46] Ch. 3 III & V; 5 III; 7 I.
[47] Ch. 7 II & III; 8 II; 11 I.
[48] Ch. 14 II, V & VI; 17 II & VIII.
[49] "The Inner Ring" (1944), *Screwtape Proposes a Toast and Other Pieces* (1965; London. Fount-Collins, 1977) 30.
[50] "The Inner Ring" 34.

He warns, "Of all passions the passion for the Inner Ring is most skilful in making a man who is not yet a very bad man do very bad things".[51] He also argues that, if you want to enter a ring only for the sake of belonging, each ring will lose its charm once you are established in it: "The old Ring will now be only the drab background for your endeavour to enter the new one".[52] And, entry into the next Ring is always hard, because

> You, yourself, once you are in, want to make it hard for the next entrant, just as those who are already in made it hard for you. […] But your genuine Inner Ring exists for exclusion. There'd be no fun if there were no outsiders. The invisible line would have no meaning unless most people were on the wrong side of it. Exclusion is no accident: it is the essence.[53]

In 1948 Lewis delivered an address on Kipling to the English Association. In it he makes various observations about Kipling's work and in the concluding pages of the paper,[54] Lewis addresses the question of why this brilliant and unusual writer makes him uncomfortable when read in quantity, concluding:

> What he loves better than anything in the world is the intimacy within a closed circle—even if it be only a circle of shared misery […] or of shared crime […] In the last resort I do not think he loves professional brotherhood for the sake of the work; I think he loves work for the sake of professional brotherhood. Out of that passion all his apparently contradictory moods arise. But I must attempt to define the passion itself a little more closely and to show how it has such a diversified offspring.[55]

Lewis proceeds to adumbrate the dangers and desires of the inner ring described in his earlier oration, and to suggest how the formula for many Kipling stories is that of a ring against outsiders. It may be workers against administrators (or *vice versa*), officers against men (or *vice versa*), or one team of polo ponies against all others, but there is always a small, united group closing its ranks against outsiders. Lewis ends by arguing that Kipling was sufficiently enamoured of the inner ring not to care if its ends were good or bad:

> If you open him at random, the chances are you will find him enslaved to some Inner Ring. […] It is this ubiquitous presence of the Ring, this unwearied knowingness, that renders his work in the long run suffocating and unendurable. And always, ironically, that bleak misgiving—almost that Nothingness—in the background.[56]

Clearly the moral dangers of the Inner Ring were a concern to Lewis during the 1940s. He explores them in a novel, warns against them in an oration, and imports them into his criticism in order to explain an author's effect on him—perhaps to explore the dangers into which the desire can lure a writer.

---

[51] "The Inner Ring" 37.
[52] "The Inner Ring" 38.
[53] "The Inner Ring" 38–39.
[54] "Kipling's World" (1948) *Selected Literary Essays*, ed. Walter Hooper (Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1969) 85–92.
[55] "Kipling's World" 87.
[56] "Kipling's World" 91–92.

D: Logres

Logres, first used by Geoffrey of Monmouth in the form *Loegri*,[57] is one of the names for the realm ruled by King Arthur. Charles Williams uses it as such in the title of his first collection of Arthurian poetry, *Taliessin Through Logres* (1938), and Lewis uses it both as a name for the realm of the legendary Aurthur and as a kind of private shorthand for an ideal of what England could or should be. In *That Hideous Strength*, Lewis combines these senses. He told a correspondent in May 1954: "About Logres—I do think there is a 'better England' always getting lost in, but always showing through, the actual one."[58] For Lewis, then, the notion of Logres as a kind of ideal England is part of the "serious 'point' " he is making in *That Hideous Strength*.[59]

This is discussed at the end of the novel when Camilla asks, "Why Logres, sir?"[60] Ransom and Denniston answer, explaining that each nation and people has its own fulfilment, and its own characteristic sins and virtues: Logres is the good part of England and Britain the evil. Within the novel this is not merely a symbolic manner of speaking, as MacPhee suggests, but literal truth: an unbroken succession of Pendragons—rulers of Logres—has succeeded Arthur, and Logres has continued to function within England for the nation's good. [61]

However, Lewis's use of elements from the stories of Logres—such as Arthur and Merlin—is not because he believed them to be historical or wished to present them as such. He wrote to a correspondent in 1953, "No, no, I'm not committed to a real belief in Arthur, Merlin, etc: all that comes in a *story*. I haven't the faintest idea whether there was a real Grail or not."[62] He found the Arthurian elements convenient and felt free to use them as his fiction required: he wrote to "a brother 'scientifictionist' " that "the blessing about Merlin (for you and me) is that 'very little is known'—so we have a free hand!" and told the critic Charles Moorman, "The VII Bears and the Atlantean Circle […] are pure inventions of my own, filling the same purpose in the narrative that 'noises off' wd in a stage play."[63]

Lewis's sources for his Arthurian material are both literary and historical: in September 1945 he told a fellow-author, "About Merlin: I don't know much more than you do. Apart from Malory […] you will get something more in Geoffrey of Monmouth […], and

[57] Geoffrey of Monmouth, *Histories of the Kings of Britain*, trans. Sebastian Evans, intro. Lucy Allen Paton, Everyman's Library (London: Dent; New York: Dutton, 1912) XI ch. 10 203–04.
[58] *Collected Letters* vol. 3 466.
[59] *That Hideous Strength* preface 5.
[60] Ch. 17 IV 392.
[61] Ch. 17 IV.
[62] *Collected Letters* vol. 3 349.
[63] *Collected Letters* vol. 2 673 & vol. 3 232.

LAYAMON […]. For Arthur in general see 'Arthur of Britain' by E.K. Chambers, Collingwood in Vol. I of 'Oxford History of England', and Vinaver's 'Malory'."[64]

When Dimble talks about Arthurian legend over lunch with his wife and Jane,[65] he alludes to Malory's and La3amon's presentations of Merlin: Merlin's knowledge of the Grail is attested in Malory,[66] and Dimble translates lines from La3amon's *Brut* concerning the kind of being that might have fathered Merlin.[67] Dimble also speculates about the historicity of the stories of Arthur: "One can imagine a man of the old British line, but also a Christian and a fully-trained general with Roman technique, trying to pull this whole society together and almost succeeding."[68] In this he agrees with Chambers, who describes Arthur as "a Christian warrior and maintainer of the Roman tradition, engaged in repelling a barbarian invasion"[69] and Collingwood, who speculates:

> Through the mist of legend that has surrounded the name of Arthur, it is thus possible to descry something which at least may have happened: a country sinking into barbarism, where Roman ideas had almost vanished; and the emergence of a single man intelligent enough to understand them, and vigorous enough to put them into practice by gathering round him a group of friends and followers, armed according to the tradition of civilized warfare and proving their invincibility in a dozen campaigns. […] For Arthur, I have suggested, was the last of the Romans: the last to understand Roman ideas and use them for the good of the British people.[70]

This places Arthur within history rather than legend. Dimble clearly enjoys Malory and La3amon's works as literature, but also treats them as sources for historical speculation:

> It's really wonderful […] how the whole thing hangs together, even in a late version like Malory's. […] You remember that wonderful phrase, how Queen Morgan "set all the country in fire with ladies that were enchantresses." […] Doesn't it look very like a picture of Britain as it must have been on the eve of the invasion?[71]

He continues to speculate:

> Well, wouldn't there have been one section of society that was almost purely Roman? People wearing togas and talking a Celticised Latin—something that would sound to us rather like Spanish: and fully Christian. But farther up country, in the out-of-the-way places, cut off by the forests, there would have been little courts ruled by real old British under-kings, talking something like Welsh, and practising a certain amount of the Druidical religion. [72]

---

[64] *Collected Letters* vol 2 672–73. Although J.A.W. Bennet, Lewis's successor in the Chair of Medieval and Renaissance English at Cambridge, said, "The Merlin who in a very literal sense underlies the action of *That Hideous Strength* is the Merlin who was to figure in [Lewis's] selections from Layamon's *Brut*"—*The Humane Medievalist: An Inaugural Lecture* (London: Cambridge UP, 1965) 27—Malory and La3amon seem to be equally important sources for Lewis's Merlin. See also *C&G* 233–35.

[65] Ch. 1 V.

[66] Thomas Malory, *Le Morte d'Arthur*, ed. Ernest Rhys, 2 vol., Everyman's Library (London: Dent; New York: Dutton, 1906) II ch. 11, III ch 1; XIV ch. 2.

[67] La3amon, *Selections from La3amon's* Brut, ed. G.L. Brook, intro. C.S. Lewis, Clarendon Medieval and Tudor Series (Oxford: Clarendon, 1963) 158-60.

[68] Ch. 1 V 27.

[69] E.K. Chambers, *Arthur of Britain* (London: Sidgwick & Jackson, 1927) 205.

[70] R.G. Collingwood & J.N.L. Myers. *Roman Britain and the English Settlements*, Oxford History of England I (Oxford: Clarendon, 1936) 324. Collingwood was a Fellow of Magdalen College from 1935 to 1941 and hence a colleague of Lewis's.

[71] Ch. 1 IV; quotation from Malory, *Morte* X ch. 35.

[72] Ch. 1 IV.

Much later in the novel,[73] while searching in the rain and the dark for the place Jane has dreamt of, where Merlin has exited his underground chamber, Dimble considers fifth-century Britain and Druidism, and remembers the story from La3amon of how the young Merlin was nearly killed so that his blood could be mixed for the mortar of a foundation.[74] In La3amon, this is as the result of a prophecy and serves to reveal the powers of Merlin (who is a boy or adolescent, not a baby), but Dimble considers it as an anthropologist might consider an aetiological story in relation to a religious practice:

> And suddenly all that Britain which had been so long familiar to him as a scholar rose up like a solid thing. He could see it all. Little dwindling cities where the light of Rome still rested—little Christian sites, […] And then, beginning scarcely a stone's-throw beyond the gates, the wet, tangled, endless woods […] But worse than the forests, the clearings. […] Little colleges and covines of Druids. Houses whose mortar had been ritually mixed with babies' blood. They had tried to do that to Merlin. [75]

Dimble's manner of talking and thinking about the Arthurian legends emphasises their historicity, so that, within the novel, the story of Arthur can be taken as historical, with various implications for the characters involved. We are told that

> Dimble and […Ransom] and the Dennistons shared between them a knowledge of Arthurian Britain which orthodox scholarship will probably not reach for some centuries. They knew that Edgestow lay in what had been the very heart of ancient Logres, that the village of Cure Hardy preserved the name of Ozana le Cœur Hardi, and that an historical Merlin had once worked in what was now Bragdon Wood.[76]

But, outside the story, Lewis is no more committed to the literal truth of the Arthurian legend than he is to the existence of the canals on Mars that are a central "fact" in *Out of the Silent Planet*.[77] Within the novel, Ransom is the seventy-ninth Pendragon since Arthur, having received the office from "an old man then dying in Cumberland" some time after his return from Perelandra, and thus the leader of the Logres that strives against Britain in English history.[78] The "historical Merlin", it turns out, is not dead but asleep (hinted at in La3amon and Malory).[79] The Company fears that when he awakes he will join the enemy at Belbury, but he proves to be loyal to Logres and the Pendragon and God.[80] As he is depicted in Malory, Merlin rides a great horse,[81] is capable of putting people to sleep,[82] and prophesies.[83] Merlin also

---

[73] Ch. 11 I.
[74] La3amon 2 & following pages.
[75] Ch. 11 I.
[76] Ch. 9 IV.
[77] "On Science Fiction" (1955), *Of This and Other Worlds*, ed. Walter Hooper (London: Collins, 1982) 91; Dennis Richard Danielson (ed.), *The Book of the Cosmos: Imagining the Universe from Heraclitus to Hawking* (Cambridge, MA: Perseus, 2000) part V ch. 54 traces the story of the belief of the canals on Mars, together with its imaginative impact.
[78] Ch. 17 IV.
[79] Ch. 9 V 214–15; ch. 10 IV 239; Malory, *Morte* I ch. 21 & IV ch. 5.
[80] Ch. 9 V; 13 I–V; 15 I.
[81] Ch. 12 III & V; Malory, *Morte* I ch. 17.
[82] Ch. 13 I & 15 II; Malory, *Morte* I ch. 24.

acknowledges (and repudiates) the stories that he is devil-begotten.[84] Merlin's other name, Ambrosius, is from Geoffrey of Monmouth.[85]

The incorporation of Arthurian legend in *That Hideous Strength* is not arbitrary, and it is not a disconnected addition that could be excised. Unlike the other novels of the trilogy, *That Hideous Strength* is set on Earth, in a Midlands university town, and therefore potentially lacks the exotic appeal of other planets. The Arthurian material, and Lewis's particular application of the idea of Logres, add a mythic depth to the prosaic physical and metaphorical landscape of England. Moorman suggests that the Arthurian material provides an appropriate grandeur and gravity for the struggle between the N.I.C.E. and Ransom's Company, without abandoning the translunary elements of the trilogy.[86]

Lewis not only does not abandon the cosmology of the previous novels (see previous section), but he integrates the two mythologies in various ways. Merlin is vaguely aware of the Oyéresu as the power behind the magical tradition within which he works.[87] According to La3amon, Arthur is not dead but sleeps in Avalon:[88] Avalon has been set in many locations, but here is an island in Perelandra.[89] And Merlin is found to be the only person fit and fitting for the Oyéresu to use as a channel for their powers against the "Hideous Strength" of Belbury.[90]

Despite this, some critics have complained that *That Hideous Strength* is too rich, a mixture of too many elements.[91] The Arthurian material is sometimes singled out for particular complaint: Glover complains about the richness of the novel and Lewis's incorporation of elements from Arthurian legend.[92] Walsh writes:

> The fundamental question is whether Lewis tried to pack too much into it [*That Hideous Strength*], and whether the final chapters lose strength and cogency because of this. […] The book is also intellectually overstuffed. It is as though Lewis has taken a series of convictions close to his heart, and forced them between the covers of one book. […] Most of all, there is the Arthurian material and the key role of Merlin […whose] presence requires a vast amount of discussion and explanation during the course of the story.[93]

It might be more accurate to note that Merlin's presence permits or enables a good deal of discussion and explanation that would otherwise be hard to justify. One of the questions that Merlin enables Lewis to explore in the novel is the question of magic. Dimble's

---

[83] Ch. 13 IV 299; Malory, *Morte* II ch. 8 & 11.
[84] Ch. 13 V; Malory, *Morte* IV ch. 1 & 8; see also Geoffrey of Monmouth VI ch. 17–18.
[85] Geoffrey of Monmouth VI ch. 19 115 & VII ch. 3 117.
[86] Charles Moorman, *Arthurian Triptych: Mythic Materials in Charles Williams, C.S. Lewis, and T.S. Eliot* (Berkeley: U of California P, 1960) 126.
[87] Ch. 13 I & V.
[88] La3amon 67.
[89] Ch. 17 IV.
[90] Ch. 13 V; 15 I; 16 I–III, V.
[91] Jared Lobdell, *The Scientifiction Novels of C.S. Lewis: Space and Time in the Ransom Stories* (Jefferson, NC: McFarland, 2004) 28–29; Lionel Adey *C.S. Lewis: Writer, Dreamer, and Mentor* (Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans; Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1998) 132, 134, 136, 140.
[92] Donald E. Glover, *C.S. Lewis: The Art of Enchantment* (Athens: Ohio UP, 1981) 105, 119.
[93] Chad Walsh, *The Literary Legacy of C.S. Lewis* (London: Sheldon, 1979) 118.

musings once again serve to introduce the matter: "I often wonder," said Dr. Dimble, "whether Merlin doesn't represent the last trace of something the later tradition has quite forgotten about—something that became impossible when the only people in touch with the supernatural were either white or black, either priests or sorcerers."[94] As the novel progresses, it is seen that Merlin's magic, which enables him to control nature through understanding, is innocent (though questionably so even in his own day) compared with the use of supernatural power to control nature in pursuit of power.[95] Lewis makes it clear elsewhere that the object of Renaissance magic (and science and politics) was power, and that the danger of the high magic (*magia*) was its potential to descend to *goetia*, which puts the practitioner in the power of demons—as we see with Faustus.[96] The N.I.C.E., with its greed for power by any means and at any cost, displays the same ruthlessness as Bacon and Machiavelli.[97]

Clearly such judgements are equally applicable to the use of science or technology to control nature, and Lewis makes this explicit in *Miracles*: "The evil reality of lawless applied science (which is Magic's son and heir) is actually reducing large tracts of Nature to disorder and sterility at this very moment."[98] In *That Hideous Strength*, the N.I.C.E. is using both science and converse with demons in the cynical and reckless pursuit of power.[99] Lewis was not asserting that the scientific planners of his day were using diabolical means to power, but he believed that some of them would if they could: "THS paints, under wholly fictional conditions, what I really believe about a certain type of modern scientific humanist planner. I don't mean that such a man *does* obey devils and practices [*Lewis's spelling here*] magic. I do say 'Your ethics is such that *if* you cd. get diabolical aid you wd. have no scruples about using it'."

Ultimately even Merlin's kind of magic is adjudged unlawful for the twentieth century and Ransom does not permit him to use it.[100] But Merlin's presence in the novel allows the utter lawlessness of the magic (and the science) of Belbury to be presented imaginatively by contrast with an approach that is based on understanding, reverence, discipline and a desire to serve and do right.

One final Arthurian element needs to be noted. With Jane, we learn from the Dennistons that the head of the company with which they are involved

> is a Mr. Fisher-King. At least that is the name he has recently taken. You might or might not

[94] Ch. 1 V.
[95] Ch. 9 IV & 13 IV–V.
[96] *English Literature in the Sixteenth Century, Excluding Drama*, Oxford History of English Literature (1954; London: Oxford UP, 1973) 13–14; 7.
[97] *English Literature* 13–14.
[98] *Miracles: A Preliminary Study*, [rev. ed.] (1960; London: Fount-Collins, 1974) 154.
[99] *Collected Letters* vol. 3 466.
[100] Ch. 13 V.

> know his original name if I told it to you. He is a great traveller but now an invalid. He got a wound in his foot on his last journey which won't heal.[101]

The name has been taken as a condition of a bequest from his married sister upon her death: the bequest was so that he could gather a company around him to combat a great danger soon to face England. So we are provided with a natural-seeming reason for the wounded Ransom (although that it is Ransom is made explicit only later) to be called "Fisher-King", a reminder of the wounded keeper of the Grail in various Grail legends from Chrétien de Troye in the twelfth century and on.

The name is little more than an allusive pun, providing an Arthurian resonance and little more—and delaying the explicit identification of Ransom with the Pendragon the Dennistons speak of. However, this is not the first time Ransom's name has been punned on. In *Perelandra*, one of the crises of Ransom's struggle to accept that he is God's agent in Perelandra turns on his name:

> "It is not for nothing that you are named Ransom," said the Voice [of Maleldil].
>
> And he knew that this was no fancy of his own. He knew it for a very curious reason—because he had known for many years that his name was derived not from *ransom* but from *Ranulf's son*. It would never have occurred to him thus to associate the two words. To connect the name Ransom to the act of ransoming would have been for him a mere pun. But even his voluble self did not now dare suggest that the Voice was making a play upon words. All in a moment of time he perceived that what was, to human philologists, a mere accidental resemblance of two sounds, was in truth no accident. […] He knew now why the old philosophers had said that there is no such thing as chance or fortune beyond the Moon. Before his Mother had borne him, before his ancestors were called Ransoms, before *ransom* had been the name for the payment that delivers, before the world was made, all these things had so stood together in eternity that the very significance of the pattern at this point lay in their coming together in just this fashion. And he bowed his head […] [102]

The Fisher-King pun is perhaps trivial compared with Ransom's earlier experience, but in both cases the pun is indicative of a larger plan in which Ransom's participating obedience is demanded, and in both cases he submits to God's plan, and worlds are saved.

---

[101] Ch. 5 III.

[102] *Perelandra* ch. 11 167–68. Lewis as character in *Out of the Silent Planet* states that Ransom is not the protagonist's real name (ch. 22 249), but he seems to have forgotten or ignored this when he came to write *Perelandra*. See my discussion in Preliminary Note B.

E: Blasphemy and Swearing

In *That Hideous Strength* Lewis needs to present two main sets of characters—the members of the N.I.C.E. and Ransom's Company—whose behaviour and speech need to be sharply distinguished. Given the amount of dialogue in the novel, speech is a particularly important manifestation of character. We would expect the members of the N.I.C.E. to speak blasphemously (as they behave blasphemously) and we would not be surprised if they swore. We would expect neither blasphemy nor swearing from characters at St. Anne's, and we would expect Mark and Jane's speech to vary according to the influences they are under. At the same time, a Christian writer would not wish to use words that are offensive in themselves—and publishers in the 1940s had higher standards in this matter than they do now.

By blasphemy I mean the names of God used as interjections or expletive. Expletive allusions to devils, heaven, hell, blessing and damnation are offensive, but probably less so, and although they are blasphemous in that they implicitly deny Christian assumptions, they may be considered mere profanity by those that utter them.[103]

"God" is used as an expletive by Busby, Miss Hardcastle and Mark, but most frequently by Feverstone.[104] As Dick Devine too, this appears to be his favourite casual blasphemy: he uses it (twice) when he and Ransom discuss Ransom's "walking tour"; when Malacrandra-Oyarsa first addresses him and Weston on Meldilorn; and when the "movements" of the *hrossa*'s bodies are "scattered".[105] In *The Great Divorce* one of Lewis's Spirits objects to one of the Ghosts using the name of God as an interjection:

> "God" said the Ghost, glancing around the landscape.
> "God what?" asked the Spirit.
> "What do you mean, 'God what'?" asked the Ghost.
> "In our grammar God is a noun."
> "Oh—I see. I only meant 'By Gum' or something of the sort. I meant . . . well, all *this*. It's . . . it's . . . I should like to paint this.[106]

The men of the Pendragon's Company also make allusions to the names of God that are something between a prayer and an oath—"My God!" and "By God […]" but never just the bare, "God!"—and Lewis appears to consider this acceptable.[107] Ransom swears by the attributes of the Deity: "God's Glory" and "By the splendour of Christ", and in this he is in the company of Peter, High King of Narnia, who swears "By the Lion's Mane".[108] Such

---

[103] "A distinction is often made between blasphemy and profanity on the grounds that blasphemy is intentional, whereas profanity is more habitual" ("Blasphemy"): Geoffrey Hughes, *An Encyclopedia of Swearing: The Social History of Oaths, Profanity, Foul Language, and Ethnic Slurs in the English-Speaking World* (Armonk, NY: Sharpe, 2006).
[104] Ch. 2 I 34 & 37; ch. 5 II 113; ch. 15 V 360 & 361.
[105] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 2 17; ch. 19 205 & 215.
[106] *The Great Divorce: A Dream* (1946; London: HarperCollins, 2002) 82–83.
[107] Ch. 10 IV 240 & ch. 12 III 268.
[108] Ch. 13 V 306 & ch.14 V 337; *Lion* ch. 17 168.

oaths have a chivalric flavour—I think deliberately. By contrast, Sid, one of the N.I.C.E.'s employees, uses "Christ" purely as an expletive to relieve his feelings.[109]

More than once in his novels Lewis's friend and fellow Inkling Charles Williams draws attention to the differences between oath, invocation and statement. A newly-dead woman, in an imagined state between life and death, exclaims

> aloud, "Oh my God!"
>
> It was the kind of casual exclamation she and Richard had been in the habit of throwing about all over the place. It meant nothing; when they were seriously aggressive or aggrieved, they used language borrowed from bestiality or hell. She had never thought it meant anything. But in this air every word meant something, meant itself; and this curious new exactitude of speech hung there like a strange language, as if she had sworn in Spanish or Pushtu, and the oath had echoed into an invocation.[110]

A very different kind of woman irritates her self-centred and conventional brother by taking the making of statements about God seriously when she answers a trivial question:

> "Good heavens, no!" said Sybil, and, being in what her brother called one of her perverse moods, added, "I love that phrase."
>
> "What phrase?" Mr. Coningsby asked, having missed anything particular.
>
> "Good heavens," Sybil repeated, separating the words. "It says everything almost, doesn't it? I don't like to say 'Good God' too often; people so often misunderstand."
>
> "Sometimes you talk exactly in Nancy's irresponsible way, Sybil," her brother complained. "I don't see any sense in it. Why should one want to say 'Good God'?"
>
> "Well, there isn't really much else to say, is there?" Sybil asked […][111]

Lewis's characters refer to damnation casually, as a profanity: Curry, Feverstone, Cosser and Hardcastle all use "damn" or "damned" as a curse, expletive or intensifier, or refer casually to their own damnation, and so do Jane and Mark.[112] Even Denniston, in a moment of frustration, says, "Look!—damn it, it's only an old donkey!"[113] But twice, as Mark comes to the point of rejecting the N.I.C.E. and its temptations, it is not clear that he is merely being profane. When he first gains a sense of "the Normal" and decides to choose it: "If the scientific point of view led away from 'all that,' then be damned to the scientific point of view!"[114] Is he deliberately cursing "the scientific point of view", or is Lewis making ironic use of Mark's habitual profanity? Mark may be saying more than he knows. This is even more clearly the case when Mark finally tells Frost that he is no longer co-operating in his training: refusing to insult a crucifix, he says, "It's all bloody nonsense, and I'm damned if I do any such thing."[115] What Mark says is literally true, but it is not clear that he means it that way. However, he does not refer to damnation again (casually or otherwise) after this. He is perhaps

---

[109] Ch. 14 III 328.
[110] Charles Williams, *All Hallows' Eve* (1945; Vancouver: Regent College, 2003) ch. 1 19–20.
[111] Charles Williams, *The Greater Trumps* (1932; Vancouver: Regent College, 2003) ch. 3 42.
[112] In addition, as David C. Downing notes, the N.I.C.E. characters frequently refer to "hell" or the "the devil" profanely: *Planets in Peril: A Critical Study of C.S. Lewis's Ransom Trilogy* (Amherst: U of Massachusetts P, 1992) 94.
[113] Ch. 11 I 249.
[114] Ch. 14 I 318.
[115] Ch. 15 IV 359. See Hughes on "self-immolating" oaths (introduction xvii).

like one of Williams' characters, who comes to the point of recognising damnation, but does not know that he knows the word for it: "If he had known the word except as an oath, he would have felt that this was damnation. […] He saw, visibly before him, a breach of the spiritual law."[116] Feverstone, surveying the wreckage of the banquet at Belbury, says "to himself, 'Well, I'm damned!' " It seems very unlikely that the ironical Feverstone means what he says literally, but, ironically, it is literally true. [117]

An odd casual use of the language of salvation comes when Wither, made aware that his public self has made a frightening lapse, says, "God bless my soul!"[118] He cannot possibly mean it literally, nor desire it, but it is the kind of thing that his vague public persona would say when reminded of a trivial instance of forgetfulness, and the final effect is deeply ironic.

An author who wishes (out of personal conviction or because of publishing conventions) not to swear but to convey the fact (and maybe the effect) of swearing has three choices. The first is the dash (or asterisk) in the space a swear-word (or part of a one) would occupy, which always gets the reader guessing and which is really a form of "connivance", open to various kinds of authorial games.[119] The second is simply to tell the reader that a character swore, as when Lewis writes, "Devine […] flung out strange blasphemies and coprologies and cursed Weston for bringing them."[120] If direct speech is desired, the third option is for the author to replace the objectionable word with a description:

> "Look here, […] did you have the *unprintable* bloody impertinence to interfere with my private belongings?"
> […]
> "I don't care a *highly-coloured* damn if you've got a headache […] that old (*epithet*) Mrs Crump says that she saw you (*vulgar word*)-ing among my papers."
> […]
> "[…] you're an *expurgated* superannuated interfering idiot."[121]

Both dashes and descriptions tend to draw attention to themselves, and are obvious contrivances. The fourth solution, when direct speech is desired, is a minced oath, "whereby an offending term or taboo phrase is distorted or 'minced' so that it no longer offends."[122] Some minced oaths are well-established, such as "what the dickens?" for

---

[116] *All Hallows' Eve* ch. 5 116.
[117] Ch. 16 V 380; noted by Michael Ward *Planet Narnia: The Seven Heavens in the Imagination of C.S. Lewis*, Kindle ed. (New York: Oxford UP, 2008) ch. 7 35%. Ward also argues that the conventional oath "By Jove!"—usually meaningless in the twentieth century—is used literally in *Perelandra* ch. 2 21 (Ward ch. 3 11%) and *The Last Battle*, illus. Pauline Baynes (1956; London: Lions-Collins, 1980) ch. 16 162–63 (Ward ch. 9 49%).
[118] Ch. 15 III 353.
[119] Hughes, "Abbreviations"; "Sterne, Laurence".
[120] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 6 55.
[121] Dorothy L. Sayers, *Murder Must Advertise* (1933; London: Coronet-Hodder & Stoughton, 1989) ch. 8 116–17 (*emphasis mine*).
[122] Hughes, "Minced Oath".

"what the devil?" Or, as Lewis does, the author can improvise. Various members and employees of the N.I.C.E., including Miss Hardcastle, use "bucking" as an intensifier: this imitates the sound and force of extreme vulgarity without the offensiveness to the reader.[123] Interestingly, *b* and *f* are two of the most common initial letters of swear-words in English.[124] It is a mark of Lewis's instinctive linguistic sensitivity (rather than any statistical knowledge) that he replaces *f* with *b*, rather than any other possible letter.

Like Williams, then, Lewis sometimes takes profanity and makes it clear that it is a form of blasphemy, and sometimes shocks us into realising that a character, knowingly or not, is speaking a literal spiritual truth. And he also solves the problem of maintaining the effect of realistic dialogue without obvious contrivance or offence to his readers.

[123] Ch. 5 II 115; ch. 6 II 131; ch. 7 IV 163; ch. 8 I 168; ch. 14 III 328.
[124] Hughes, introduction xxiv.

F: Humane Remedial Treatment

I noted in the discussion of Chesterton's influence above that Lewis, like Chesterton, addresses the question of so-called "humanitarian" punishment, to which Chesterton alludes in *Orthodoxy*.[125] This question, whether it is truly humane to endeavour to treat or cure a criminal, rather than to punish him retributively, is one that Chesterton addresses again and again in the years before and after World War I: in 1909 and 1912 in the novels *The Ball and the Cross* and *Manalive*; in *What's Wrong with the World* (1910) and *Utopia of Usurers and Other Essays* (1917); and in 1922 in *Eugenics and Other Evils*.

In *The Ball and the Cross* (1909) two of Chesterton's characters are imprisoned in a futuristic and "scientific" prison, and one of the prisoners reflects on the horror of this:

> But in all his moods, sane or insane, intolerant or stoical, he never really doubted this: that the machine held him […] as hopelessly as he had from his birth been held by the hopeless cosmos of his own creed. He knew well the ruthless and inexhaustible resources of our scientific civilization. He no more expected rescue from a medical certificate than rescue from the solar system. [… He] tried to write his blazing scepticism on the wall, and discovered that it was all shiny tiles on which nothing could be either drawn or carved. Then for an instant there hung and broke above him like a high wave the whole horror of scientific imprisonment, which manages to deny a man not only liberty, but every accidental comfort of bondage. In the old filthy dungeons men could carve their prayers or protests in the rock. Here the white and slippery walls escaped even from bearing witness. The old prisoners could make a pet of a mouse or a beetle strayed out of a hole. Here the unpierceable walls were washed every morning by an automatic sluice.[126]

This introduces Chesterton's notion that a clean, sanitary, humane prison may in fact be inhuman. This prison may also be the ancestor of the clean, white, featureless prison Mark finds himself in after his arrest for murder:

> That ventilator and the door itself were the only objects to detain the eye. All else was white floor, white ceiling, white wall, without a chair or table or book or peg, and with one hard white light in the centre of the ceiling.
>
> Something in the look of the place now suggested to him for the first time the idea that he might be at Belbury and not in an ordinary police station.[127]

In *What's Wrong with the World* (1910) Chesterton denies the possibility of humane punishment, on the grounds that it involves some people's exercising power over others:

> But though some punishments are more inhuman than others there is no such thing as humane punishment. So long as nineteen men claim the right in any sense or shape to take hold of the twentieth man and make him even mildly uncomfortable, so long the whole proceeding must be a humiliating one for all concerned.[128]

In 1912 Chesterton extends his objection to the idea of humane punishment to include the fact the retributive imprisonment is determinate, but therapeutic imprisonment is not: "The

---

[125] See Introduction 3 lxxvi; G.K. Chesterton, *Orthodoxy* (London: Bodley Head-John Lane, 1909) 228–29.

[126] G.K. Chesterton, *The Ball and the Cross* (1909), *Works of Gilbert Keith Chesterton from Mobile*Reference, electronic ed., version 12. 1 (N.p.: MobileReference-SoundTells, 2003–09) ch. 17 14%.

[127] Ch. 11 III 258–59.

[128] G.K. Chesterton, *What's Wrong with the World* (1910), *Works of Gilbert Keith Chesterton from Mobile*Reference, electronic ed., version 12. 1 (N.p.: MobileReference-SoundTells, 2003–09) III ch. 8 97%.

old cruel codes accuse a man of theft and send him to prison for ten years. The tolerant and humane ticket accuses him of nothing and sends him to prison forever."[129] Chesterton expands on the horror of the indeterminate sentence in his later writings about humane punishment. In 1917, he quotes "the scientific criminologist" who demands that the "so-called evil-doer should not be punished for his acts, but restrained",[130] addresses the question of retributive punishment as opposed to preventive or remedial restraint:

> let us use our own brains a little, and ask ourselves what is the real difference between punishing a man and restraining him. The material difference may be any or none; for punishment may be very mild, and restraint may be very ruthless. The man, of course, must dislike one as much as the other, or it would not be necessary to restrain him at all. And I assure you he will get no great glow of comfort out of your calling him irresponsible after you have made him impotent. A man does not necessarily feel more free and easy in a straight waistcoat than in a stone cell. The moral difference is that a man can be punished for a crime because he is born a citizen; while he can be constrained because he is born a slave. But one arresting and tremendous difference towers over all these doubtful or arguable differences. There is one respect, vital to all our liberties and all our lives, in which the new restraint would be different from the old punishment. It is of this that the plutocrats will take advantage.
>
> The Plain Difference
>
> The perfectly plain difference is this. All punishment, even the most horrible, proceeds upon the assumption that the extent of the evil is known, and that a certain amount of expiation goes with it. Even if you hang the man, you cannot hang him twice. Even if you burn him, you cannot burn him for a month. And in the case of all ordinary imprisonments, the whole aim of free institutions from the beginning of the world has been to insist that a man shall be convicted of a definite crime and confined for a definite period. But the moment you admit this notion of medical restraint, you must in fairness admit that it may go on as long as the authorities choose to think (or say) that it ought to go on. The man's punishment refers to the past, which is supposed to have been investigated, and which, in some degree at least, has been investigated. But his restraint refers to the future, which his doctors, keepers, and wardens have yet to investigate. The simple result will be that […] men […] will not be put in prison because of what they have done. They will be kept in prison because of what they might do.[131]

In 1917 Chesterton alludes to "doctors, keepers, and wardens" and in 1922 he returns to the question of some people's power over others and elaborates on the dangers of having some people impose indeterminate sentences on others. He argues that under civilized conditions, particular, intelligible crimes receive particular, limited punishments. The exceptions are barbarians (who inflict indeterminate sentences) and lunatics (who may receive them).[132] He notes that "every savage, every sultan, every outlawed baron, every brigand-chief has always used this instrument of the Indeterminate Sentence, which has been recently offered us as something highly scientific and humane"[133]. As regards lunatics, he acknowledges that the indeterminate sentence "does apply to the incomprehensible creature, the lunatic" but that "it applies to nobody else" and that it is "only by the

---

[129] G.K. Chesterton, *Manalive* (1912), *Works of Gilbert Keith Chesterton from MobileReference*, electronic ed., version 12. 1 (N.p.: MobileReference-SoundTells, 2003–09) II ch. 2 54%.
[130] "A Real Danger" 92%: G.K. Chesterton, *Utopia of Usurers and Other Essays* (1917), *Works of Gilbert Keith Chesterton from MobileReference*, electronic ed., version 12. 1 (N.p.: MobileReference-SoundTells, 2003–09) 92%.
[131] Chesterton, "A Real Danger" 92%.
[132] G.K. Chesterton, *Eugenics and Other Evils* (1922; London: Cassell, 1928) I ch. 4 35-38.
[133] Chesterton, *Eugenics and Other Evils* I ch. 4 35.

unanimity of sane men that we can condemn this man as utterly separate".[134] And he warns, chillingly, that the use of the indeterminate sentence for those other than lunatics "leads to the proposal that somebody or something should criticize men with the same superiority with which men criticize madmen".[135]

For Chesterton, then, there is no such thing as humane punishment. Imprisonment on whatever grounds is shameful and horrible. But retributive, expiatory punishment is determinate and does not undermine ordinary civilised human relations. Humane, therapeutic, remedial imprisonment is indeterminate and divides people radically into those with the power to inflict such treatment, and the others who are deprived of all the rights of sane, adult citizens. Lewis follows Chesterton in this, in his satire of scientific state-control in *That Hideous Strength* (1945), in an essay entitled "The Humanitarian Theory of Punishment" (1949), and in a reply to two critiques of the essay, published in 1954.

Our first introduction to the idea of "humane remedial treatment" in *That Hideous Strength* is in chapter 3, when Miss Hardcastle introduces it to Mark. (There is no question of misguided good intentions here: Miss Hardcastle cynically uses "humane remedial treatment" as an obvious synonym for punishment or torture when members of her staff irritate her: "Some of you people want a little humane remedial treatment yourselves."[136]) She explains to Mark how the N.I.C.E. is using the appeal to pity that is inherent in the notion of humane remedial treatment in order to gain power over, ultimately, all the citizens of England:

> As regards crime in general, they had already popularised in the Press the idea that the Institute should be allowed to experiment pretty largely in the hope of discovering how far humane, remedial treatment could be substituted for the old notion of "retributive" or "vindictive" punishment. That was where a lot of legal Red Tape stood in their way. "But there are only two papers we don't control," said the Fairy. "And we'll smash them. You've got to get the ordinary man into the state in which he says 'Sadism' automatically when he hears the word Punishment." And then one would have *carte blanche*. Mark did not immediately follow this. But the Fairy pointed out that what had hampered every English police force up to date was precisely the idea of deserved punishment. For desert was always finite: you could do so much to the criminal and no more. Remedial treatment, on the other hand, need have no fixed limit; it could go on till it had effected a cure, and those who were carrying it out would decide when *that* was. And if cure were humane and desirable, how much more prevention? Soon anyone who had ever been in the hands of the police at all would come under the control of the N.I.C.E.; in the end, every citizen.[137]

In chapter 6 we are given an example of the marketing of the N.I.C.E.'s brand of remedial treatment in the press: "if [the executive of the N.I.C.E.] ever comes into relation with criminal justice, it does so in the gracious role of a rescuer—a rescuer who can remove the criminal from the harsh sphere of punishment into that of remedial treatment."[138] In these passages Lewis follows Chesterton in alluding to the indeterminate sentence, terminable

[134] Chesterton, *Eugenics and Other Evils* I ch. 4 36.
[135] Chesterton, *Eugenics and Other Evils* I ch. 4 38.
[136] Ch. 7 IV 163.
[137] Ch. 3 IV 69.
[138] Ch. 6 IV 137.

only when and if those in power decide it should be, and to the way in which such sentences, while undermining the foundations of citizenship, can be presented as a desirable thing.

By chapter 9 of *That Hideous Strength*, the N.I.C.E. has been given powers to experiment on those in lunatic asylums.[139] While Chesterton had acknowledged that the insane, under the care of the sane, were fitting candidates for indeterminate sentences, the N.I.C.E.'s increasing power is merely sinister, another step towards its achieving the power over everyone that would be fitting only in the sane relative to the insane. In chapter 10, we learn from an indignant Dimble that convicted criminals are no longer subject to definite sentences, but to indeterminate remedial treatment under the N.I.C.E.:

> criminals—honest criminals whose hands you are unfit to touch—are being taken from the jails to which British judges sent them on the conviction of British juries and packed off to Belbury to undergo for an indefinite period, out of reach of the law, whatever tortures and assaults on personal identity you call Remedial Treatment.[140]

Finally, in *That Hideous Strength*, Lewis shows the horror and false humanity of the indeterminate sentence, when we see Ivy Maggs' husband imprisoned at the N.I.C.E., transferred there on the day his punitive sentence for theft should have ended. At the same time he depicts the inhumanity of the humane system, which deprives its victim of ordinary human surroundings (like Mark and like Chesterton's prisoner, Maggs is in a blank white cell) and comforts (such as cigarettes):

> Mr. Maggs, seated in a little white cell, chewed steadily on his great sorrow as only a simple man can chew. An educated man in his circumstances would have found misery streaked with reflection; would have been thinking how this new idea of cure instead of punishment, so humane in seeming, had in fact deprived the criminal of all rights and by taking away the *name* punishment made the *thing* infinite. But Mr. Maggs thought all the time simply of one thing: that this was the day he had counted on all through his sentence, that he had expected by this time to be having his tea at home with Ivy (she'd have got something tasty for him the first night) and that it hadn't happened. He sat quite still. About once in every two minutes a single large tear trickled down his cheek. He wouldn't have minded so much if they'd let him have a packet of fags.[141]

In *That Hideous Strength* Lewis shows that he agrees with Chesterton that so-called humane remedial treatment is extremely dangerous, that it replaces straightforward, determinate punishment for a definite offence with a dubious and easily-abused idea of curing, and that, as Chesterton had shown, it treats criminals as something less than ordinary, sane citizens.

Miss Hardcastle rejoices in scrapping the notion of "deserved punishment" and "desert […] always finite".[142] This is an emphasis to which Lewis returns four years later in "The Humanitarian Theory of Punishment", as he returns to other aspects of this subject raised in *That Hideous Strength*. He makes (and reiterates) the point that the

---

[139] Ch. 9 II 197.
[140] Ch. 10 III 234.
[141] Ch. 16 II 373.
[142] Ch. 3 IV 69.

"Humanitarian theory removes from Punishment the concept of Desert. But the concept of Desert is the only connecting link between punishment and justice."[143] Lewis concludes, "Thus when we cease to consider what a criminal deserves and consider only what will cure him or deter others, we have tacitly removed him from the sphere of justice altogether; instead of a person, a subject of rights, we now have a mere object, a patient, a 'case'."[144] Dimble objects to the removal of criminals "out of reach of the law" for remedial treatment, and Lewis echoes him verbally later in the essay: Lewis has Dimble describe remedial treatment as "tortures and assaults on personal identity" and in his own voice he speaks of undergoing "all those assaults on my personality which modern psychotherapy knows how to deliver".[145]

While the N.I.C.E. presents itself as intervening "in the gracious role of a rescuer", Lewis warns that "the new Nero will approach us with the silky manners of a doctor".[146] For, although Lewis argues that even the best intentions cannot make humanitarian punishment a good thing, he does not suppose that an oppressive, viciously-intentioned state is limited to satiric fiction:

> my argument so far supposes no evil intentions on the part of the Humanitarian and considers only what is involved in the logic of his position. My contention is that good men (not bad men) consistently acting upon that position would act as cruelly and unjustly as the greatest tyrants. They might in some respects act even worse. Of all tyrannies a tyranny sincerely exercised for the good of its victims may be the most oppressive. […]
>
> In reality, however, we must face the possibility of bad rulers armed with a Humanitarian theory of punishment. […] It is not so [that the whole society is Christian or that the Christians are in control] in most contemporary States. Even if it were, our rulers would still be fallen men, and therefore, neither very wise nor very good. As it is, they will usually be unbelievers. And […] they will not often be even the best unbelievers. […] And when they are wicked the Humanitarian theory of punishment will put in their hands a finer instrument of tyranny than wickedness ever had before. For if crime and disease are to be regarded as the same thing, it follows that any state of mind which our masters choose to call "disease" can be treated as crime; and compulsorily cured. It will be vain to plead that states of mind which displease government need not always involve moral turpitude and do not therefore always deserve forfeiture of liberty. For our masters will not be using the concepts of Desert and Punishment but those of disease and cure.[147]

Lewis also echoes Chesterton in this discussion. Chesterton warns that indeterminate remedial punishment makes the relation of punisher to punished the same as that of sane to insane.[148] Lewis contends, "this doctrine, merciful though it appears, really means that each one of us, from the moment he breaks the law, is deprived of the rights of a human being."[149] Further on he expands on this:

> To be "cured" against one's will and cured of states we may not regard as disease is to be put on a level with those who have not yet reached the age of reason or those who never

[143] "The Humanitarian Theory of Punishment" (1949), *First and Second Things: Essays on Theology and Ethics*, ed. Walter Hooper (London: Fount Paperbacks-HarperCollins, 1985) 97.
[144] "Humanitarian Theory" 98.
[145] Ch. 10 III 234; "Humanitarian Theory" 101.
[146] Ch. 6 IV 137; "Humanitarian Theory" 104.
[147] "Humanitarian Theory" 102–04.
[148] Chesterton, *Eugenics and Other Evils* I ch. 4 38.
[149] "Humanitarian Theory" 97.

> will; to be classed with infants, imbeciles, and domestic animals. But to be punished, however severely, because we have deserved it, because we "ought to have known better", is to be treated as a human person made in God's image.[150]

Lewis also recalls Chesterton's comment that indeterminate punishment always used to be the tool of the wicked, including "every outlawed baron, every brigand-chief".[151] Lewis builds on this, warning of the dangers of the indeterminate sentence even in the hands of the well-intentioned, observing, "It may be better to live under robber barons than under omnipotent moral busybodies. The robber baron's cruelty may sometimes sleep, his cupidity may at some point be satiated; but those who torment us for our own good will torment us without end for they do so with the approval of their own conscience."[152]

In 1953 and 1954 two responses to "The Humanitarian Theory of Punishment" appeared in the journal *Res Judicate*, which in 1954 offered Lewis an opportunity to reply. In this reply (now included in "The Humanitarian Theory of Punishment" 107–14), Lewis reiterates that ill-desert can be the only ground for depriving a person of liberty, and that deterrence or therapy may be part of an ideal punishment, but cannot replace just retribution.[153] And he repeats his and Chesterton's anxiety that any theory of punishment that does not depend on the notion of just deserts violates all ideas of adulthood, sanity, citizenship and humanity:

> the whole question is whether […] you want us all to be simultaneously deprived of the protection and released from the responsibilities of adult citizenship and be reduced to the level of the child, the pig and the axe [referring to historical cases of trying irrational or inanimate entities for murder]. I don't want this because I don't think there are in fact any people who stand to the rest of us as adult to child, man to beast or animate to inanimate. I think the laws which laid down a "desertless" theory of punishment would in reality be made and administered by people just like the rest of us.[154]

Lewis was always aware that we are all fallen, not to be trusted with too much power over one another, as even our good intentions are fallible. In *That Hideous Strength*, he simplifies the story by supposing, not well-intentioned but mistaken people, but ill-intentioned people who, for the sake of power, can, will and do appropriate the right to treat others as adults do children, as the sane do the insane, as humans do animals. One aspect of this has been reviewed here; other elements were also discussed above in Preliminary Note A: "Men Without Chests".

---

[150] "Humanitarian Theory" 103.
[151] Chesterton, *Eugenics and Other Evils* I ch. 4 35.
[152] "Humanitarian Theory" 103.
[153] "Humanitarian Theory" 107, 107 n. 1 & 2; 111, 113.
[154] "Humanitarian Theory" 111–12, see also 113–14.

G: Philosophies of Time

Lewis originally intended the sequel to the space-travel adventure *Out of the Silent Planet* to be time-travel story. The first novel ends with with Ransom commenting, "Now that 'Weston' has shut the door, the way to the planets lies through the past; if there is to be any more space-travelling, it will have to be time-travelling as well . . . !"[155] Lewis wrote, in a letter to Sister Penelope, "The letter at the end is pure fiction and […] a way of preparing for a sequel."[156] *The Dark Tower*, the aborted sequel to *Out of the Silent Planet*, thus opens, " 'Of course,' said Orfieu, 'the sort of time-travelling you read about in books—time-travelling in the body—is absolutely impossible' ",[157] and the story, as far as it goes, involves an instrument that the characters think is merely a passive device for viewing other times (a "chronoscope"), but which turns out to be something quite different, something capable of moving persons from one time to another. The question is whether the two times are on the same timeline…

With such a plot, the characters in *The Dark Tower* naturally speculate a good deal about the nature of time and our perceptions of it. The writings of J.W. Dunne are discussed by some of the characters.[158] In the late 1920s to mid-1930s Dunne argued that a series of times existed, not one time only, and that this explained, *inter alia*, pre-cognition (especially in dreams). The characters discuss the experiment proposed in *An Experiment with Time* (first edition 1927), involving writing dreams down as soon as one is conscious enough to do so, which Dunne argues will prove his contentions.[159] Hooper provides a comprehensive and valuable note on some of Dunne's claims, and on Lewis's attitudes to Dunne, time and time-travel in the trilogy and *The Dark Tower*.[160]

Later on in *The Dark Tower* the characters come to wonder whether the "Othertime" they are viewing through their "chronoscope" is indeed the future and Ransom says, "I am extremely doubtful if it is simply the future. […] And I've been wondering for several days whether the past and the present and the future are the only times that exist."[161] Scudamour, reading in an "Othertime" library, looks at several works that discuss time in more than one dimension, with thoughts about the intersections of different times.[162] An unlabelled page amongst the Lewis manuscripts

[155] *Out of the Silent Planet* postscript 264.
[156] *Collected Letters* vol. 2 261.
[157] *The Dark Tower* (n.d.), *The Dark Tower and Other Stories*, ed. Walter Hooper (London: Collins, 1977) ch. 1 17.
[158] Introduced by Orfieu, *Dark Tower* ch. 1 22; J.W. Dunne, *An Experiment with Time*, new [4th] ed. (London: Faber & Faber, 1939); J.W. Dunne, *The Serial Universe* (London: Faber & Faber, 1934).
[159] *Dark Tower* ch. 1 22.
[160] Walter Hooper, "A Note on *The Dark Tower*," *The Dark Tower and Other Stories*, ed. Walter Hooper (London: Collins, 1977) 92–95.
[161] *Dark Tower* ch. 3 49.
[162] *Dark Tower* ch. 7: this is the final chapter before the work is abandoned.

in the Bodleian Library shows some of Lewis's attempts to work out the implications of intersecting times, considered as streams of cause and effect.[163] The page concludes, "Unless […] a single state (x) can be compatible with two sets of causes & results, the whole αγ history coincides with the whole AB history. ∴ αγ = AB and the whole supposition collapses." If Lewis could not work out how it was possible for two times to intersect without being identical, this would be a reason for abandoning *The Dark Tower*. But this is speculation: the terminology he uses in this fragment is different from that of *The Dark Tower* and they may be completely unrelated. The fragment does, however show Lewis's abiding interest in such questions.

In the event, Lewis followed *Out of the Silent Planet* with *Perelandra* (1943), which again has space-travel and no time-travel. But this does not mean that Lewis's interest in time and its philosophical implications ceased. Dunne's theories, the notion of time that is not past or present or future, the idea of multiple times, and considerations of the direction of time all reappear in his later works.

That Hideous Strength is particularly rich in allusions to time: although he has abandoned time-travel in the trilogy, Lewis sometimes allows his characters to consider time philosophically. In chapter 6 of *That Hideous Strength* Mark has occasion to remark that he does not live "in Mr. Dunne's sort of time".[164] Jane's story—her dangers and her salvation—is bound up with her gift of clairvoyant and pre-cognitive dreaming.[165] Mark implicitly dismisses Dunne's theories, and Jane's dreams are not something that all or most people experience, but Dunne's name and Jane's dreams are perhaps carried over from the "strong fascination" with time and its perception that led Lewis to attempt his time-travel story.[166]

Ransom's *Dark Tower* speculation "whether the past and the present and the future are the only times that exist" is re-explored in *That Hideous Strength*.[167] In chapter 9 Merlin's state (as Dimble says, "Buried but *not* dead") is discussed.[168] He is described as having had his life "moved out of our one-dimensioned time" and causing "a certain unique configuration [apprehensible by the Oyéresu] in that place where those things remain that are taken off time's mainroad, behind the invisible hedges, into the unimaginable fields. Not all the times that are outside the present are therefore past or

[163] Note on intersecting times, ms., BOD 132 Dep. d. 808 (fol. 69ᵛ), Bodleian Library, Oxford. This note is not only unlabelled but also not specifically described in the Bodleian's catalogue, being grouped with other "miscellaneous literary and theological notes and drafts". Thank-you to Walter Hooper, who deposited this material, for permission to copy it.
[164] Ch. 6 III 135.
[165] Ch. 3 III; ch. 5 III; ch. 8 I.
[166] Hooper, "Note" 92.
[167] *Dark Tower* ch. 3 49.
[168] Ch. 9 V 214–15; ch. I V 28.

future."[169] The "one-dimensioned time" that we experience is here conceived as corresponding to a line in space, with the point of the present separating past and future, moving from past to future and the constant rate of sixty minutes per hour (a joke MacPhee makes in *The Dark Tower*).[170] In this one-dimensioned experience of time it is only in the present that "freedom and actuality are offered" to us, as Lewis notes through Screwtape, observing that "the Future inflames hope and fear […] it is unknown […] the thing *least like* Eternity. It is the most completely temporal part of time—for the Past is frozen and no longer flows, and the Present is all lit up with eternal rays."[171] But Time, for Lewis, is a created thing and God is not subject to time but experiences everything eternally present—Lewis suggests, "If you picture time as a straight line along which we have to travel, then you must picture God as the whole page on which the line is drawn."[172] For the purposes of *That Hideous Strength*, Lewis suggests that even created time might have a second dimension, unknowable in our experience, but visible to God and the angels.

Lewis retained his interest in multiple created times and their interrelations into the 1950s. A basic assumption of the Narnia stories is that the times of our world and Narnia and Charn (and presumably all the worlds accessible from the Wood between the Worlds) flow at unpredictably different rates. The various children who visit Narnia learn that no time elapses here while they are in Narnia, but varyingly long stretches of time pass in Narnia while they are here.[173] For Digory Kirke, Lucy's story of having visited Narnia gains extra credence because her siblings say she was not out of their sight for long enough.[174]

To return to *That Hideous Strength*, perhaps the most interesting suggestion Lewis makes—but does not explore in any detail—is when Dimble muses, "Good is always getting better and bad is always getting worse: the possibilities of even apparent neutrality are always diminishing. […] Perhaps the whole time-process means just that and nothing else."[175] Ordinarily, since at least the 1920s, the time-process has been understood to be a process of increasing entropy: "If […] we find more and more of the random element in the world, then the arrow is pointing towards the future; if the

---

[169] Ch. 9 V 214 & 215.
[170] *Dark Tower* ch. 1 19.
[171] *The Screwtape Letters* (1942; London: Fount-Collins, 1982) ch. 15 67; and see all of ch. 15.
[172] *Mere Christianity* (1952; London: Fount-Collins, 1977) 144, but see the whole of IV ch. 3, and also Augustine, *St. Augustine's Confessions*, trans. William Watts [1631], 2 vol., Loeb Classical Library (1912; London: Heinemann; New York: Putnam, 1919) XI.
[173] *The Lion, the Witch and the Wardrobe*, illus. Pauline Baynes (1950; London: Lions-Collins, 1980) ch. 3 26, ch. 5 46–50; *The Silver Chair*, illus. Pauline Baynes (1953; London: Lions-Collins, 1980) ch. 3 39–40; *Last Battle* ch 5 47–48. Walter Hooper has calculated that Narnia was created in our year 1900, Narnian years 1000 to 2303 passed during 1940 to 1941, Narnian years 2303–07 passed during 1941 to 1942, and in 1949 Narnia ended in Narnian year 2555: *C&G* 419.
[174] *Lion* ch. 5 48–49.
[175] Ch. 13 IV 300–301.

random element decreases the arrow points towards the past."[176] In *Miracles*, Lewis notes of Nature as we know her,

> These laws between them—irreversible death [of the organic] and irreversible entropy [of the inorganic]—cover almost the whole of what St. Paul calls the "vanity" of Nature: her futility, her ruinousness. And the film is never reversed. The movement from more order to less almost serves to determine the direction in which time is flowing. You could almost define the future as the period in which what is now living will be dead and in which what order still remains will be diminished.[177]

In Dimble's comment, however, Lewis adds a moral and spiritual understanding of the direction of time to that of physics: decisions for or against God become clearer and more irrevocable from past to future. The importance of making the correct choices while there is time to choose is present in much of Lewis's work. Just two examples are *The Great Divorce*, which depicts the clarifying and crystallising of final choices in a prose dream vision, and *The Last Battle* (especially chapters 10 to 15), which explores different kinds of moral choice in the otherworld of Narnia.

[176] Arthur S. Eddington, *The Nature of the Physical World* (1928; Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1929) ch. 4 69. Eddington was one of the physicists involved in unravelling and explicating the implications of Einstein's theories, and here coined the expression "arrow of time".
[177] *Miracles* ch. 16 155.

H: The Language of Creation

Lewis's conception of the language Ransom learns during his stay on Malacandra changed as his story evolved into a trilogy set across the solar system. In *Out of the Silent Planet* Ransom ends up among the *Hrossa*, and learns their tongue. Later he learns that the other *hnau* (rational) inhabitants of Malacandra have their own languages. He says to a *pfifltrig*,

> "I cannot understand," he said, "how you and the *sorns* and the *hrossa* all come to speak the same speech. For your tongues and teeth and throats must be very different."
> "You are right," said the creature. "Once we all had different speeches and we still have at home. But everyone has learned the speech of the *hrossa*."
> "Why is that?" said Ransom, still thinking in terms of terrestrial history. "Did the *hrossa* once rule the others?"
> "I do not understand. They are our great speakers and singers. They have more words and better. No one learns the speech of my people, for what we have to say is said in stone and sun's blood [gold] and stars' milk [silver] and all can see them. No one learns the *sorns*' speech, for you can change their knowledge into any words and it is still the same. You cannot do that with the songs of the *hrossa*. Their tongue goes all over Malacandra. […]"[178]

By the time he came to write *Perelandra*, Lewis has Ransom say that he was mistaken about the Martian languages:

> "[…] those two blackguards who kidnapped me and took me to Malacandra […] gave a human being a chance to learn that language."
> "What language do you mean?"
> "*Hressa-Hlab*, of course. The language I learned in Malacandra."
> "But surely you don't imagine they will speak the same language on Venus?"
> "Didn't I tell you about that?" said Ransom, leaning forward. […] "I'm surprised I didn't, for I found out two or three months ago, and scientifically it is one of the most interesting things about the whole affair. It appears we were quite mistaken in thinking *Hressa-Hlab* the peculiar speech of Mars. It is really what may be called Old Solar, *Hlab-Eribol-ef-Cordi*."
> "What on earth do you mean?"
> "I mean that there was originally a common speech for all rational creatures inhabiting the planets of our system […] That original speech was lost on Thulcandra, our own world, when our whole tragedy took place. No human language now known in the world is descended from it."
> "But what about the other two languages on Mars?"
> "I admit I don't understand about them. One thing I do know, and I believe I could prove it on purely philological grounds. They are incomparably less ancient than *Hressa-Hlab*, especially *Surnibur*, the speech of the Sorns […]"[179]

Dante, amongst others, came to argue that the language that God and Adam spoke before the fall was different from the post-lapserian language, which was in turn unmade at the Tower of Babel.[180] Lewis in his fiction follows Dante, having Ransom state that *Hlab-Eribol-ef-Cordi* was spoken before the fall—"our whole tragedy"—but that no human language is derived from it. Thus in *Perelandra* the language Ransom learned on Malacandra becomes much more important: not

---

[178] *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 17 185–86.
[179] *Perelandra* ch. 2 25–26.
[180] Umberto Eco, *The Search for the Perfect Language*, trans. James Fentress (London: Fontana-HarperCollins, 1997) 46–52.

merely the language of the race most gifted in poetry on one planet, but the language of all rational creatures of all the planets in the solar system.

In *That Hideous Strength*, Jane hears "great syllables of words that sounded like castles" and has the feeling that the language is related to reality by something more than convention, something like the relationship between a footprint and the foot that made it, or the refraction of the sun's light in a drop of water and the sun itself. The form of Lewis's description of Jane's experience of Old Solar—"the meanings were not given to the syllables by chance, or skill, or long tradition, but truly inherent in them as the shape of the great Sun is inherent in the little waterdrop"[181]—with its negations followed by the adversative "but", parallels the pattern of "which were born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God" (John 1: 13)—an affirmation about Christ as the begotten Word of God, as opposed to the creative, uttered words of God in Genesis 1.

In *That Hideous Strength*, then, the Old Solar language is presented as something far more important than in the earlier novels. Where Jane hears "words that sounded like castles", Lewis as character in *Perelandra* merely hears "a strange polysyllabic language", and Ransom on Malacandra is thrilled because the creature he meets "was *talking*. It had language", but his excitement is caused by the fact of the creature's using language, not by the language itself.[182]

The idea of perfect, Edenic language is a beguiling and widespread fantasy with a long history.[183] The notion fits well into Lewis's syncretic fantasy. But, although Lewis uses the idea only as a fiction,[184] the more prosaic descriptions of Old Solar in the earlier novels spoil the reader's acceptance of the fiction. It is hard to see why the *séroni* and *pfifltriggi* would develop new languages if they could speak the perfect language of creation with its unique, non-conventional relation to reality. And it is hard to see how Ransom, "as a philologist," could "find it rather disappointing" that the same language is spoken on Perelandra and Mars,[185] if that language is the pre-lapsarian language of Adam… It is a pity that Lewis never saw fit to revise the eventual trilogy as a trilogy, and to eliminate this kind of inconsistency.

[181] Ch. 10 IV 243.
[182] Ch. 10 IV 243; *Perelandra* ch. 1 20; *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 9 83.
[183] Eco, *Search for the Perfect Language* 1.
[184] See *Collected Letters* vol. 2 667.
[185] *Perelandra* ch. 2 27.

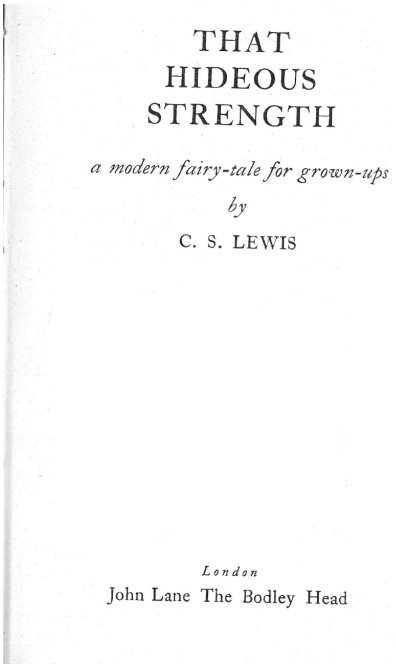
TEXT, *APPARATUS CRITICUS*, TEXTUAL NOTES, and ANNOTATIONS

TEXT: right-hand pages, numbered in increments of one. Grey shading indicates matter not in the abridged edition (A). Circled numbers in the right margins indicate Annotations; small italic references in the right margins direct the reader to Preliminary Notes (indicated by their titles) or Appendices (indicated by "Appendix" and the appropriate letter).

APPARATUS CRITICUS: bottom of right-hand pages, entries indicated and identified by superscript letters; " ¶ " and "/" indicate paragraph breaks and line breaks where relevant. Grey shading indicates entries for changes in the abridged edition required by the abridgement.

TEXTUAL NOTES: immediately following the *Apparatus* entries to which they pertain, indicated by "☛" at the start of the note.

ANNOTATIONS: left-hand pages (which are identified by the page of the text they face), identified by circled numbers. The exact words, phrases or passages annotated are indicated by lemmata.



THAT
HIDEOUS
STRENGTH

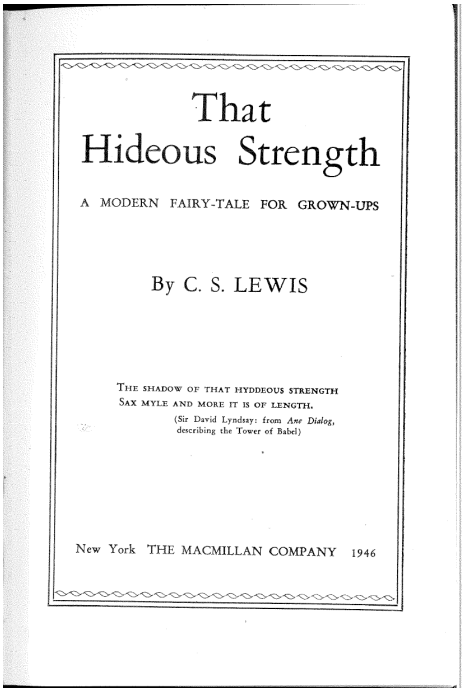
a modern fairy-tale for grown-ups

by

C. S. LEWIS

London
John Lane The Bodley Head

Title Page of B



That
Hideous Strength

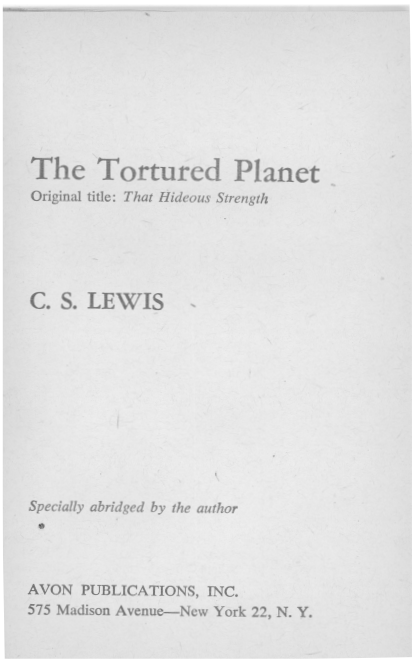
A MODERN FAIRY-TALE FOR GROWN-UPS

By C. S. LEWIS

THE SHADOW OF THAT HYDDEOUS STRENGTH
SAX MYLE AND MORE IT IS OF LENGTH.
(Sir David Lyndsay: from *Ane Dialog*, describing the Tower of Babel)

New York THE MACMILLAN COMPANY 1946

Title Page of M



The Tortured Planet
Original title: *That Hideous Strength*

C. S. LEWIS

Specially abridged by the author

AVON PUBLICATIONS, INC.
575 Madison Avenue—New York 22, N. Y.

Title Page of A

THAT HIDEOUS STRENGTH

a modern fairy-tale for grown-ups

by

C. S. LEWIS

Dedication

In B, constrained by wartime economies (Holman, appendix 11), the dedication is placed below a list of other works by Lewis on the page facing the title page. In M, it stands alone on the right-hand page of the opening after the title page. A does not include the dedication.

Jane Agnes McNeill and her mother were Belfast friends of both Lewis and Arthur Greeves. None of Lewis's letters to Jane seem to have survived, but, although he sometimes mocks her gently (see letter cited in 6[d]), he admired her and wrote in an obituary,

> Few have come nearer to obeying Dunbar's magnificent recipe (and she knew her Dunbar):
> Man, please thy Maker and be merry
> And give not for this world a cherry.
> (Cited in *C&G* 707)

Sadly, "Janie" McNeill did not like *That Hideous Strength*: a friend, Mary Rogers, remembers her saying, "I hate it! I wish he'd dedicated any book other than this to me!" ("Jane McNeill and C.S. Lewis" (1979), cited in *C&G* 706).

To

J. McNEILL

Epigraph

In B, the epigraph is on the verso of the table of contents, facing the first page of the Preface. In M, it appears below the author's name on the title page. A does not include the epigraph.

The epigraph is a quotation from book II (lines 1751–52) of "Ane Dialog betuix Experience and ane Courteour of the Miserabyll Estait of the World" (1552) by Sir David Lyndsay (*c.* 1486–1555). Immediately after this description of the great size of Babel, the next section of the poem (1755–806) is headed "HOW GOD MAID THE DYVERSITIE OF LANGUAGIS AND MAID IMPEDIEMENT TO THE BEILDARIS OF BABILONE"—which is also what happens in the novel to thwart the N.I.C.E., the new Hideous Strength.

The Shadow of that hyddeous strength
Sax myle and more it is of length.

SIR DAVID LINDSAY: from
Ane Dialog (describing the
Tower of Babel)

① *a fairy-tale*

The genre of *That Hideous Strength* is a question that has greatly exercised critics who think that a work should fit into a neat generic category. It is sometimes called science fiction, since it is the third in a trilogy the first two books of which involve visits to other planets. Spraycar (19) and White (131), for example, categorise the novel as "science fiction" and then stigmatize it as bad science fiction because it is not simple enough. In general, critics would perhaps be happier if the incursion into the life of this planet in *That Hideous Strength* took the form of little green men, bulbous brains carried in metal tripods, or villages of mysteriously impregnated women, rather than magicians from the past and angels from beyond the moon (see Myers 56). So Lewis is perhaps wise to label this a "fairy-tale" in which he commits himself only to something supernatural breaking into ordinary reality. See Introduction 1: "*That Hideous Strength*: The Critical Response".

② *the cottages, […] to which it proceeds*

Except for an ogre, "Snow White", for example, has all these elements.

③ *Durham*

The occasion of Lewis's "entirely pleasant" visit to the University of Durham was when he delivered the Riddell Lectures (later published as *The Abolition of Man*) there on 23, 24 and 25 February 1943 (Carpenter, *Inklings* 221; *C&G* 330–31).

In 1943 the University of Durham had colleges in Newcastle as well as in Durham. In Durham there were five men's colleges and one women's, plus a men's and a women's teacher training college, and a society for non-residential students: small compared with Oxford or Cambridge, but not at tiny as Edgestow.

④ *one of the central ideas […] Mr. Olaf Stapledon.*

It is not immediately obvious which of the central ideas of *That Hideous Strength* is also to be found in "the works of Mr. Olaf Stapledon", although his influence on the earlier novels of the trilogy is well known. Weston's determination to extend humanity at the cost of the lives of the inhabitants of other planets in *Out of the Silent Planet* is a deliberate pillory of Stapledon's attitude in *Last and First Men*, in which the descendants of earthly humanity begin colonisation of Venus by exterminating the indigenous inhabitants (*C&G* 206; Green & Hooper 204; Sayer 257). Even the floating islands of *Perelandra* may owe something to *Last and First Men* (*C&G* 221).

I think the concept of a ruling brain, both created and served by ordinary humans, detached from ordinary human experience and emotion, and capable of working good or evil and moulding ordinary humans, is the "central idea" Lewis refers to here. This too comes from *Last and First Men*:

> Therefore we must breed strictly for brain, for the intelligent co-ordination of behaviour. All the organic functions which can be performed by machinery, must be relegated to machinery, so that the whole vitality of the organism may be devoted to brain-building and brain-working. […] We must produce a man who is nothing but man. When we have done this we can, if we like, ask him to find out the truth about immortality. And also, we can safely surrender to him the control of all human affairs.
>
> (ch. 10 208)

PREFACE

I HAVE called this a fairy-tale in the hope that no one who dislikes fantasy may be misled by the first two chapters into reading further, and then complain of his disappointment. If you ask why—intending to write about magicians, devils, pantomime animals, and planetary angels—I nevertheless begin with such humdrum[a] scenes and persons, I reply that I am following the traditional fairy-tale. We do not always notice its method, because the cottages, castles, woodcutters, and petty kings with which a fairy-tale opens have become for us as remote as the witches and ogres to which it proceeds. But they were not remote at all to the men who made and first enjoyed the stories. They were, indeed, more realistic and commonplace than Bracton College is to me: for many German peasants had actually met cruel stepmothers, whereas I have never, in any university, come across a college like Bracton.[b]

This is a "tall story"[c] about devilry, though it has behind it a serious "point"[d] which I have tried to make in my *Abolition of Man*. In the story the outer rim of that devilry had to be shown touching the life of some ordinary and respectable profession. I selected my own profession, not, of course, because I think Fellows of Colleges[e] more likely to be thus corrupted than anyone else, but because my own profession is naturally that which I know best.[f] A very small university is imagined because that has certain conveniences for fiction. Edgestow has no resemblance, save for its smallness, to Durham—a university with which the only connection I have ever had[g] was entirely pleasant.[h]

Men Without Chests

I believe that one of the central ideas of this tale came into my head from conversations I had with a scientific colleague, some time before I met a rather similar suggestion in the works of Mr. Olaf Stapledon. If I am mistaken in this, Mr. Stapledon is

① ② ③ ④

---

[a] humdrum] *B*; hum-drum *M*
[b] Bracton.¶] *B*; Bracton. *M*
[c] "tall story"] *BM*; 'tall story' *A*
☛A's single quotation marks are inconsistent with its usage in the text of the novel.
[d] "point"] *BM*; 'point' *A*
☛ See previous note.
[e] Fellows of Colleges] *A*; fellows of colleges *BM*
[f] naturally that which I know best.] *BA*; is the only profession I know well enough to write about. *M*
[g] ever had] *BA*; had *M*
[h] pleasant.¶] *BM*; pleasant.¶ In reducing the original story to a length suitable for this edition, I believe I have altered nothing but the *tempo* and the manner. I myself prefer the more leisurely pace—I would not wish even *War and Peace* or *The Faerie Queene* any shorter—but some critics may well think this abridgement is also an improvement. *A*

① *Those who would like […] Professor J. R. R. Tolkien.*

Tolkien began work on "The New Hobbit" in 1937, following the success of *The Hobbit*, but readers "await[ing] the publication of much that still exists only in the MSS." had to wait until July 1954 for books I and II of *The Lord of the Rings* (in one volume, *The Fellowship of the Ring*), until November 1954 for books III and IV (*The Two Towers*), and until October 1955 for V and VI and the appendices (*The Return of the King*). (Readers on the other side of the Atlantic had to wait slightly longer.) Even so, "Númenor and the True West" are merely alluded to in *The Lord of the Rings*, as the fall of Númenor is ancient history to the mortal characters. Readers had to wait until the posthumous publication of *The Silmarillion* in 1977 before they could read about "Númenor and the True West" for themselves in "Akallabêth" (*Silmarillion* 257–82).

But Lewis had heard "The New Hobbit" and other parts of Tolkien's private mythology, and here pays tribute to his friend by alluding to it in this novel. He honours other friends too: he quotes twice from Charles Williams (see 205 n. 2 & 395 n. 1) and from a book by Owen Barfield (see 276 n. 2)—see also "The Inklings" in Introduction 3.

so rich in invention that he can well afford to lend;[a] and I admire his invention (though not his philosophy) so much that I should feel no shame to borrow.

Those who would like to learn further about Númenor[b] and the True West must ① (alas!) await the publication of much that still exists only in the MSS. of my friend, Professor J. R. R. Tolkien.

The period of this story is vaguely "after the war." It concludes the Trilogy of which *Out of the Silent Planet* was the first part, and *Perelandra* the second, but can be read on its own.

C. S. LEWIS[c]

Magdalen College, Oxford.[d]

---

[a] lend;] *B*; lend, *M*

[b] Númenor] *ed.*; Numinor *BM*

☛ Lewis and Tolkien both say in letters that Lewis's spelling is a mistake, due to his having heard the name and not read it (Tolkien, *Letters of J.R.R. Tolkien* 151, 303, 361; Lewis, *Collected Letters* vol. 3 139 & 232). Tolkien considered the error "Unfortunate, since the name has no […] connexions ['with the Latin *nūmen*, *nūmina*, and the adjective 'numinous' "], and has no reference to 'divinity' or a sense of its presence" (*Letters of J.R.R. Tolkien* 361). Accordingly, I correct "Numinor" to "Númenor" throughout.

[c] C. S. LEWIS] *B*; C. S. LEWIS *M C.S.L. A*

[d] *Magdalen College, Oxford.*] *B*; *Magdalen College,*¶ *Oxford.*¶ *Christmas Eve, 1943. M*

☛ Noted by Lake (54). He suggests that the year "shows that in portraying the N.I.C.E., Lewis must have been thinking partly of the Nazis" (57). But the setting of the novel "after the war" and Mrs. Dimble's comment on some of the N.I.C.E.'s activities—"it's almost as if we'd lost the war" (77)—keep readers in mind of the war more directly. On 20 December 1943 Lewis wrote to Arthur Greeves that he had "finished another story which I think of dedicating to Tchanie. Do you think it matters that the heroine's name is also Jane?" (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 596)—obviously *That Hideous Strength*, which he did dedicate to Jane McNeill, whose name he often spelled to reflect the Irish pronunciation of it (*C&G* 706–07). So "Christmas Eve, 1943" may well have been the actual date when Lewis wrote the Preface, and Macmillan then retained it despite the lapse of three years before publication. If Lewis considered the date especially meaningful, he would presumably have ensured that it was retained by the Bodley Head.

① *"Matrimony was ordained, thirdly […] of the other."*

Lewis (or Jane) adapts the "Form for the Solemnization of Matrimony" in the 1662 *Book of Common Prayer* slightly: "Thirdly, [Matrimony] was ordained for the mutual society, help, and comfort, that the one ought to have of the other."

The adaptation of the *Book of Common Prayer* makes "Matrimony" the first word of the novel (which can be seen even in the earliest extant draft: see Appendix A 414). This suggests strongly matrimony's thematic importance in the novel (see for example Ward ch. 3 12%).

② *By work she meant […] Donne's "triumphant vindication of the body."*

In a letter to Daphne and Cecil Harwood dated 11 September 1945, Lewis wrote:

> Rê Jane, she wasn't meant to illustrate the problem of the married woman and her own career in general: rather the problem of everyone who follows an *imagined* vocation at the expense of the real one. Perhaps I shd have emphasised more the fact that her thesis on Donne was all derivative bilge. If I'd been tackling the problem wh. Cecil thinks I had in mind, of course I'd have taken a woman capable of making a real contribution to literature. (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 669–70)

In the 1940s, Donne criticism was still engaged in the reassessment of Donne triggered by Grierson's anthology of Metaphysical poetry published in 1921. Presumably Lewis dismisses Jane as incapable "of making a real contribution to literature", not merely because she is working on the fashionable and, for Lewis, over-rated Donne, but because of her "plan to lay great stress on Donne's 'triumphant vindication of the body' "—evidence that she is "not perhaps a very original thinker". In addition, he was generally dismissive of research degrees (Woodruff Tait 6, also 9 n. f).

Lewis was himself a contributor to the debate about Donne, with an essay on Donne's love poetry in *Seventeenth Century Studies Presented to Sir Herbert Grierson* (1938). This was published alongside Joan Bennett's essay, "The Love Poetry of John Donne—A Reply to Mr. C.S. Lewis", and the two essays demarcate the extremes of response to the poems, and both are notoriously unbalanced (Lovelock 28, Sayer 325). The extreme and opposing responses were to a certain extent deliberate: while the *Studies Presented to Sir Herbert Grierson* were in progress in 1937, Lewis sent a copy of his paper to Bennett, saying in the accompanying letter,

> pray make whatever use you please of it … It is a question (for your sake and the sake of the *Festschrift*, not mine) whether a general pro-Donne paper […] wouldn't be better than a direct answer. […] Also, if you really refute me, you raise for the editor the awkward question, "Then why print the other article?" However, do just as you like … and good luck with it whatever you do. (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 210)

This interchange between Lewis and Bennett should serve to refute any suggestion that Lewis considered no woman capable of literary scholarship. Joan Bennett, like Jane Studdock, was a woman married to an academic: unlike Jane, however, she was "a woman capable of making a real contribution to literature", a Fellow of Girton and a Lecturer in the English Faculty at Cambridge. Lewis was friends with both her and her husband Stanley (a Fellow of Emmanuel), and in 1960 dedicated *Studies in Words* to them. Lewis and Bennett, opposed though they are, both make it clear that there is more than one attitude to physical love in Donne's love poetry, and that Donne addresses more than merely physical love.

Lewis's short discussion of Donne towards the end of *English Literature in the Sixteenth Century* (1954) is much more balanced and approbatory (see Sayer 325–26). He writes that the lyrics "reveal Donne's greatness" and admits "the astonishing novelty of the *Songs and Sonnets*" in their combining

ONE

Sale of College Property

I

"MATRIMONY was ordained, thirdly," said Jane Studdock to herself, "for the mutual society, help, and comfort that the one ought to have of the other." She had not been to church since her schooldays until she went there six months ago to be married, and the words of the service had stuck in her mind. ①

Through the open door she could see the tiny kitchen of the flat and hear the loud, ungentle tick-tick of the clock. She had just left the kitchen and knew how tidy it was. The breakfast things were washed up, the tea towels were hanging above the stove, and the floor was mopped. The beds were made and the rooms "done." She had just returned from the only shopping she need do that day, and it was still a minute before eleven. Except for getting her own lunch and tea, there[a] was nothing that had to be done till six o'clock, even supposing that Mark was really coming home for dinner. But there was a College meeting[b] to-day. Almost certainly Mark would ring up about tea-time[c] to say that the meeting was taking longer than he had expected and that he would have to dine in College. The hours before her were as empty as the flat. The sun shone and the clock ticked.

"Mutual society, help, and comfort," said Jane bitterly. In reality marriage had proved to be the door out of a world of work and comradeship and laughter and innumerable things to do, into something like solitary confinement. For some years before their marriage she had never seen so little of Mark as she had done in the last six months. Even when he was at home he hardly ever talked. He was always either sleepy or intellectually preoccupied. While they had been friends, and later when they were lovers, life itself had seemed too short for all they had to say to each other. But now . . . why had he married her? Was he still in love? If so, "being in love" must mean totally different things to men and women. Was it the crude truth that all the endless talks which had seemed to her, before they were married, the very medium of love itself, had never been to him more than a preliminary.

"Here I am, starting to waste another morning, mooning," said Jane to herself sharply. "I *must* do some work." By work she meant her Doctorate thesis on Donne. She ②

---

[a] there] *BM*; There *A*
[b] meeting] *B*; Meeting *M*
[c] tea-time] *BA*; teatime *M*

dramatic immediacy with far-fetched comparisons (*English Literature* 548). He concludes, "It is remarkable that in such a short space so many modes of love—frivolous, petulant, embittered, tragic, 'Platonic', rapturous, or tranquil—have found such striking expression" (549). Although his views changed, his appreciation of the range of Donne's approaches to love did not.

As Jane sits down to think about Donne, then, she does so in a critical climate where Donne's range of love poetry, including its interest in all aspects of love, has been discussed for over twenty years. That she should plan "to lay great stress on Donne's 'triumphant vindication of the body' " does seem to be unoriginal and very limited.

---

① *Tiens . . . ah . . . ça marche*

French: "Now then . . . ah . . . it progresses" (*French and English Dictionary*, "Tiens!" & "Marcher" *v.n.*)

had always intended to continue her own career as a scholar after she was married: that was one of the reasons why they were to have no children, at any rate for a long time yet. Jane was not perhaps a very original thinker, and her plan had been to lay great stress on Donne's "triumphant vindication of the body." She still believed that if she got out all her note-books[a] and editions, and really sat down to the job she could force herself back into her lost enthusiasm for the subject. But before she did so—perhaps in order to put off the moment of beginning—she turned over a newspaper which was lying on the table and glanced at a picture on the back page.

The moment she saw the picture, she remembered her dream.[b] She remembered not only the dream but the measureless time after she had crept out of bed and sat waiting for the first hint of morning, afraid to put on the light for fear Mark should wake up and fuss, yet feeling offended by the sound of his regular breathing. He was an excellent sleeper. Only one thing ever seemed able to keep him awake after he had gone to bed, and even that did not keep him awake for long.

The terror of this dream, like the terror of most dreams, evaporates in the telling, but it must be set down for the sake of what came afterwards.

She had begun by dreaming simply of a face. It was a foreign-looking face, bearded and rather yellow, with a hooked nose. Its expression was frightening because it[c] was frightened. The mouth sagged open and the eyes stared as she had seen other men's eyes stare for a second or two when some sudden shock had occurred. But this face seemed to be meeting a shock that lasted for hours. Then gradually she became aware of more. The face belonged to a man who was sitting hunched up in one corner of a little square room with white-washed walls—waiting, she thought, for those who had him in their power, to come in and do something horrible to him. At last the door was opened and a rather good-looking man with a pointed grey beard came in. The prisoner seemed to recognise[d] him as an old acquaintance and they sat down together and began to talk. In all the dreams which Jane had hitherto dreamed, one either understood what the dream-people were saying or else one did not hear it. But in this dream—and that helped to make its extraordinary realism—the conversation was in French and Jane understood bits of it, but by no means all, just as she would have done in real life. The visitor was telling the prisoner something which he apparently intended him to regard as good news. And the prisoner at first looked up with a gleam of hope in his eye and said "*Tiens . . . ah . . . ça marche*":[e] but then he wavered and changed his mind. The visitor continued in a low, ①

[a] note-books] *BA*; notebooks *M*
[b] dream.] *BM*; dream; *A*
[c] it] *BM*; It *A*
[d] recognise] *B*; recognize *MA*
☛ Inadvertent use of American spelling by the American compositors of M & A (see *Webster's*).
[e] *marche*":] *BA*; *marche"; M*

fluent voice to press his point. He was a good-looking man in his rather cold way, but he wore pince-nez,[a] and these kept on catching the light so as to make his eyes invisible. This, combined with the almost unnatural perfection of his teeth, somehow gave Jane a disagreeable impression. And this was increased by the growing distress, and finally the terror, of the prisoner. She could not make out what it was that the visitor was proposing to him, but she did discover that the prisoner was under sentence of death. Whatever the visitor was offering him was something that frightened him more than that. At this point the dream abandoned all pretence to realism and became ordinary nightmare. The visitor, adjusting his pince-nez[b] and still smiling his cold smile, seized the prisoner's head between his two hands. He gave it a sharp turn—just as Jane had last summer seen men give a sharp turn to the helmet on a diver's head. The visitor unscrewed the prisoner's head and took it away. Then all became confused. The head[c] was still the centre of the dream,[d] but it was quite a different head now—a head with a reddish-white[e] beard all covered with earth. It belonged to an old man whom some people were digging up in a kind of churchyard—a sort of ancient British, druidical kind of man, in a long mantle. Jane didn't mind this much at first because she thought it was a corpse. Then suddenly she noticed that this[f] ancient thing was coming to life. "Look out!" she cried in her dream. "He's alive. Stop! stop! You're waking him." But they did not stop. The old, buried man sat up and began talking in something that sounded vaguely like Spanish. And this, for some reason,[g] frightened Jane so badly that she woke up.

That was the dream—no worse, if also no better, than many another nightmare. But it was not the mere memory of a nightmare that made the sitting-room[h] of the flat swim before Jane's eyes and caused her to sit down quickly for fear she should fall. The trouble was elsewhere. There, on the back page of the newspaper, was the head she had seen in the nightmare: the first head (if there had been two of them)—the head of the prisoner.[i] With extreme reluctance she[j] took up the paper. EXECUTION OF ALCASAN[k]

---

[a] pince-nez,] *BA*; *pince-nez M*
☛ B & A always have "pince-nez" while M usually has "*pince-nez*" but three times has "pince-nez" (p. 132, 257, 381).
[b] pince-nez] *B*; *pince-nez M*
☛ See note to 9[a].
[c] head] *BA*; Head *M*
[d] dream,] *BA*; dream *M*
[e] reddish-white] *BA*; flowing white *M*
☛ B & A's reading is more consistent with the description of Merlin's beard and hair as "reddish-grey" in all three witnesses in ch. 12 v 278.
[f] this] *BM*; This *A*
[g] this, for some reason,] *B*; this for some reason *M*
[h] sitting-room] *B*; sitting room *M*
[i] prisoner.] *BA*; Prisoner. *M*
[j] she] *BM*; She *A*
[k] EXECUTION OF ALCASAN] *BA*; EXECUTION OF ALCASAN *M*

① *Hope not for minde […]* Mummy *possest.*

John Donne, "Love's Alchymie" (1633), lines 23–24.

② *Though I am Oxford bred and very fond of Cambridge*

These lines, together with section III in this chapter, introduce Lewis as a character in, as well as the narrator of, the novel. These are his only appearances as a character in *That Hideous Strength*, but he also appears (at greater length) in the earlier novels in the trilogy. See Preliminary Note B: "Lewis as Character".

③ *Edgestow is more beautiful […] Duke's opposite the Abbey.*

Lewis has modelled Edgestow on Oxford and Cambridge, and here he explicitly compares it with them. Like Oxford and Cambridge Universities, Edgestow University comprises a number of colleges going back to Medieval times; like them, too, it has a nineteenth-century women's college.

By the twentieth century Oxford had begun to be industrialised and was a centre for the manufacture of marmalade and other preserves, and in the early twentieth century the Morris motor works and their associated industries were established at nearby Cowley and incorporated into the city boundaries. Cambridge is less obtrusively industrialised. It is not clear whether Lewis has any specific "maker of […] sausages" in mind as he rehearses Edgestow's advantages.

was the headline, and beneath it, SCIENTIST BLUEBEARD GOES TO GUILLOTINE.[a] She remembered having vaguely followed the case. Alcasan was a distinguished radiologist in a neighbouring, country—an Arab by descent, they said—who had cut short an otherwise brilliant career by poisoning his wife. So that was the origin of her dream. She must have looked at this photo in the paper—the man certainly had a very unpleasant face—before going to bed. But no: that couldn't be it. It was this morning's paper. But of course there must have been some earlier picture which she had seen and forgotten—probably weeks ago when the trial began. It was silly to have let it give her such a turn. And now for Donne. Let's see, where were we? The ambiguous passage at the end of *Love's Alchymie*,

> Hope not for minde in women; at their best
> Sweetnesse and wit, they are but *Mummy* possest. ①

"Hope not for mind in women." Did any men really *want* mind in women? But that wasn't the point. "I *must* get back my power of concentrating," said Jane:[b] and then, "Was[c] there a previous picture of Alcasan? Supposing . . ."

Five minutes later she swept all her books away, went to the mirror, put on her hat, and went out. She was not quite sure where she was going. Anywhere, to be out of that room, that flat, that whole house.

II

Mark himself, meanwhile, was walking down to Bracton College, and thinking of a very different matter. He did not notice at all the morning beauty of the little street that led him from the sandy hillside suburb where he and Jane lived down into the central and academic part of Edgestow.

Though I am Oxford bred[d] and very fond of Cambridge, I think that Edgestow is ② more beautiful than either. For one thing it is so small. No maker of cars or sausages or ③ marmalades has yet come to industrialise the country town which is the setting of the university, and the university[e] itself is tiny.[f] Apart from Bracton and from the nineteenth-century[g] women's college beyond the railway, there are only two colleges;[h]

---

[a] SCIENTIST [. . .] GUILLOTINE.] *BA*; SCIENTIST [. . .] GUILLOTINE. *M*
[b] Jane:] *BA*; Jane; *M*
[c] "Was] *BA*; "was *M*
[d] Oxford bred] *B*; Oxford-bred *M*
[e] university, and the university] *B*; University, and the University *M*
[f] Apart] *BM*; Edgestow is the smallest of universities. Apart *A*
[g] women's] *BM*; new women's *A*
[h] colleges;] *BA*; colleges: *M*

① *Henry de Bracton*

Henry de Bracton (d. 1268) was an ecclesiastic, lawyer and judge, also author of *De Legibus et Consuetudinibus Angliae* and a commentary on around two thousand legal cases.

Myers explores the interesting significance that Bracton may have had for Lewis, and the thematic implications of Bracton College's connection with him in *That Hideous Strength* (88–91).

Northumberland[a] which stands below Bracton on the river Wynd, and Duke's opposite the Abbey. Bracton takes no undergraduates. It was founded in 1300 for the support of ten learned men whose duties were to pray for the soul of Henry de Bracton and to study ① the laws of England. The number of Fellows[b] has gradually increased to forty, of whom only six (apart from the Bacon Professor) now study Law and of whom none, perhaps, prays for the soul of Bracton. Mark Studdock was himself a Sociologist and had been elected to a fellowship in that subject five years ago. He was beginning to find his feet. If he had felt any doubt on that point (which he did not) it would have been laid to rest when he found himself meeting Curry just outside the post office,[c] and seen how natural Curry found it that they should walk to College together and discuss the agenda for the meeting. Curry was the sub-warden of Bracton.

"Yes," said Curry. "It will take the hell of a time. Probably go on after dinner. We shall have all the obstructionists wasting time as hard as they can. But luckily[d] that's the worst they can do."

The Inner Ring

You would never have guessed from the tone of Studdock's reply what intense pleasure he derived from Curry's use of the pronoun "we." So very recently he had been an outsider, watching the proceedings of what he then called "Curry and his gang" with awe and with little understanding, and making at College meetings short, nervous speeches which never influenced the course of events. Now he was inside, and "Curry and his gang" had become[e] "we" or "the progressive element[f] in College." It had all happened quite suddenly and was still sweet in the mouth.

"You think it'll go through, then?" said Studdock.

"Sure to," said Curry. "We've got the Warden, and the Bursar, and all the chemical and biochemical[g] people for a start. I've tackled Pelham and Ted and they're sound. I've made Sancho believe that he sees the point and that he's in favour of it. Bill the Blizzard will probably do something pretty devastating,[h] but he's bound to side with us if it comes to a vote. Besides:[i] I haven't yet told you. Dick's going to be there. He came up in time for dinner last night and got busy at once."

Studdock's mind darted hither and thither in search of some safe way to conceal

---

[a] Northumberland] *BM*; Northumberland, *A*
[b] Fellows] *BA*; fellows *M*
[c] post office,] *BA*; Post Office *M*
[d] luckily] *BM*; Luckily *A*
[e] gang" had become] *BM*; the gang" was *A*
[f] progressive element] *BA*; Progressive Element *M*
[g] biochemical] *A*; bio-chemical *BM*
☛ In ch. 2 I all three witnesses have "biochemical". This inconsistency in B & M may point to an inconsistency in Lewis's lost original manuscript and/or typescript and retained in the lost documents from which B & M were set.
[h] devastating,] *BA*; devastating *M*
[i] Besides:] *BA*; Besides, *M*

① *I mean Lord Feverstone—Dick Devine as he used to be.*

Dick Devine is a character in *Out of the Silent Planet* but does not appear in *Perelandra*. He is working with Weston and tells Ransom (with whom he had been at school and who had disliked him there) when they meet by accident, "I am putting a little money into some experiments he has on hand. It's all straight stuff—the march of progress and the good of humanity and all that, but it has an industrial side" (*Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 2 19). It is the potential profits of the "industrial side" that interest him (*Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 5 41; ch. 20 219). In both *Out of the Silent Planet* and *That Hideous Strength* this avarice, and a tendency to engage in ironic use of clichés (see *Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 2 16; ch. 5 41; ch. 6 53), are seen to be typical of the man. Adey (134) suggests that the title he has adopted, "Feverstone", is indicative of his lust for wealth or treasure—his fever for (precious) stones.

Devine's most admirable trait is his courage and coolness in moments of extreme danger. This is also shown in both *Out of the Silent Planet* (ch. 21 245–46) and *That Hideous Strength* (ch. 16 V).

② *Watson would call imponderables*

Smilde glosses Watson as the "Friend and adviser to Sherlock Holmes in the detecetive [*sic*] stories by Sir Arthur Conan Doyle (1859–1930)", but this does not seem a likely allusion for Mark in conversation with someone he is trying to impress.

Similarly, a member of Bracton College called Watson, who speaks once in a meeting (ch. 1 IV 20) and is never heard of again, seems unlikely to be mentioned when Mark is trying to impress Curry.

A more likely candidate may be John B. Watson (1878-1958). He was the founder of behaviourism, which attempts to explore and control human behaviour through experimentation and observation, and which dismisses notions of consciousness or intention. He provides the *NED*'s Supplement with its first quotation in illustration of "Behaviourism": "1913 […] in *Psychol*[*ogical*] *Rev*[*iew*] XX. 158 Psychology as the behaviorist views it is a purely objective experimental branch of natural science. Its theoretical goal is the prediction and control of behavior."

On examining some of his key behaviourist texts (see: Watson; Watson & Raynor), I was not able to find any example of his using the term, but I have no difficulty in imagining that he would call the ordinary, human behaviours and concepts not explicable in the terms of behaviourism "imponderables" (*NED*, "Imponderable" B. *sb.*).

It would not be surprising to find Mark alluding to Watson, since he is a sociologist whom Lewis describes as having "a great reluctance, in his work, ever to use such words as 'man' or 'woman'. He preferred to write about 'vocational group', 'elements', 'classes' and 'populations': for, in his own way, he believed as firmly as any mystic in the superior reality of the things that are not seen" (ch. 4 VI 89). By contrast, William Hingest, "the only really eminent scientist" at Bracton (ch. 3 II) tells Mark, "I happen to believe that you can't study men, you can only get to know them, which is quite a different thing" (ch. 3 IV 70–71).

Frost, above all other characters in the novel, is influenced by behaviourism. See also Preliminary Note A: "Men Without Chests".

the fact that he did not know who Dick was. In the nick of time he remembered a very obscure colleague whose Christian name was Richard.

"Telford?" said Studdock in a puzzled voice. He knew very well that Telford could not be the Dick that Curry meant,[a] and therefore threw a slightly whimsical and ironical tone into his question.

"Good Lord! Telford!" said Curry with a laugh. "No. I mean Lord Feverstone— ① Dick Devine as he used to be."

"I *was* a little baffled by the idea of Telford," said Studdock, joining in the laugh. "I'm glad Feverstone is coming. I've never met him you know."

"Oh, but you must," said Curry. "Look here, come and dine in my rooms to-night. I've asked him."

"I should like to very much," said Studdock quite truly. And then, after a pause, "By the way, I suppose Feverstone's own position is quite secure?"

"How do you mean?" asked Curry.

"Well, there was some talk, if you remember, as to whether someone who was away quite so much could go on holding a Fellowship."[b]

"Oh, you mean Glossop and all that ramp. Nothing will come of that. Didn't you think it absolute blah?"

"As between ourselves, yes. But I confess if I were put up to explain *in public* exactly why a man who is nearly always in London should go on being a Fellow[c] of Bracton, I shouldn't find it altogether easy. The real reasons are the sort that Watson ② would call imponderables."

"I don't agree. I shouldn't have the least objection to explaining the real reasons in public. Isn't it important for a college like this to have influential connections with the outer world? It's not in the least impossible that Dick will be in the next Cabinet. Even already Dick in London has been a damn sight more use to the College than Glossop and half a dozen others of that sort have been by sitting here all their lives."

"Yes. Of course[d] that's the real point. It would be a little difficult to put in that form at a College meeting, though!"

"There's one thing," said Curry in a slightly less intimate tone, "that perhaps you ought to know about Dick."

"What's that?"

"He got you your Fellowship."[e]

Mark was silent. He did not like things which reminded him that he had once been

---

[a] meant,] *B*; meant *M*
[b] Fellowship."] *A*; fellowship." *BM*
[c] Fellow] *BA*; fellow *M*
[d] course] *BA*; course, *M*
[e] Fellowship."] *BA*; fellowship." *M*

① *Distributivism*

The Supplement to the *NED* explains "Distributism" as "Short for Distributivism" and defines it as "The Theory of the 'distributive state' (Hilaire Belloc)", citing Chesterton in two of the four quotations.

Lobdell cites Chesterton's *The Outline of Sanity* (1926, 2nd ed. 1928), which outlines Chesterton's tenets of distributism as a counter-industrial preference for small farms, shops and factories as opposed to large, with the ideal being small, self-sufficient landholdings; and argues that the Company at St. Anne's to a certain extent fulfils this ideal (Lobdell, "Distributist"—substantially reprinted in *Scientifiction* 117–22).

The Outline of Sanity is a reprint of various essays originally published "in a weekly paper" (3), "being a general controversy with those who dispute the ideals behind such a programme" (vii). Readers wanting to know more about Distributism are referred to the Secretary of the Distributist League (vii). Chesterton ends with an eighteen-page summary (213–30). In it he contends that both collectivist and capitalist systems reduce ordinary people to ciphers (213–19), while distributism can only be done by (not to) people (219). He recommends that big shops be boycotted (219–21) and writes, "Everything seems to point to a simpler life of one man one field, free as far as possible from the complications of rent and labour" (221). He recommends that the change to a Distributist system be done by stages (221–24), but that Distributists will hold themselves "free not only to cease worshipping machines, but to cease using them" (224). He ends by asserting that the values of the Christian, specifically the Catholic, Church are necessary for Distributism to work, since the Church treats men as men but the contemporary State wants to make them something other and less (226-30). Certainly Lewis shared with Chesterton this suspicion of a State that attempted to know best and to control every aspect of a person's life (see Lewis, "Willing Slaves"), and this is an important concern in *That Hideous Strength* (see Preliminary Note A: "Men Without Chests").

The central vision of Distributism is the self-sufficient, non-industrial, agrarian life. This suggests that the model for Arthur Denniston is Lewis's pupil and friend, Dom Bede Griffiths, who lived in this way for a while, before becoming a Christian and eventually a monk.

Lewis tutored Griffiths (then Alan Griffiths) at Magdalen from 1925, and they became friends. When Griffiths went down from Oxford he and two friends, predicting that Communism could lead only to mechanism and inhumanity and desiring to escape from industrialisation, moved into a cottage in a remote Cotswold village (Griffiths 65). Griffiths describes this time in his biography, and continually emphasises that the simple life they led was not only dignified, ascetic and self-sufficient, but beautiful (ch. 4 65-80). They kept cows for milk and ducks for eggs, grew their own vegetables, used an earth closet, went to the village tap for water, and used tallow dips for light. When they needed things made, they found local craftsmen. They began by cycling, but then acquired a horse; when they did not ride, they walked: they utterly refused to use trains. (It will be seen that Denniston is not purely a portrait of Griffiths.) Griffiths read the Bible, Aristotle, and sixteenth- and seventeenth-century authors, preferably in early editions.

During this time Griffiths had also drawn closer to Christianity, and in 1931 was received into the Catholic Church. By the time Lewis came to write the Ransom novels, Griffiths had indeed become a Benedictine monk, and in 1940 he was also ordained as a priest.

not only outside the progressive element[a] but even outside the College. He did not always like Curry either. His pleasure in being with him was not that sort of pleasure.

"Yes," said Curry. "Denniston was your chief rival. Between ourselves, a good many people liked his papers better than yours. It was Dick who insisted all through that you were the sort of man we really wanted. He went round to Duke's and ferreted out all about you. He took the line that the one thing to consider is the type of man we need, and be damned to paper qualifications. And I must say he turned out to be right."

"Very kind of you," said Studdock with a little mock bow. He was surprised at the turn the conversation had taken. It was an old rule at Bracton, as presumably in most colleges, that one never mentioned in the presence of a man the circumstances of his own election, and Studdock had not realised till now that this also was one of the traditions the Progressive Element was prepared to scrap. It had also never occurred to him that his own election had depended on anything but the excellence of his work in the fellowship examination: still less that it had been so narrow a thing. He was so accustomed to his position by now that this thought gave him the same curious sensation which a man has when he discovers that his father once very nearly married a different woman.

"Yes," continued Curry, pursuing another train of thought. "One[b] sees now that Denniston would never have done. Most emphatically not. A brilliant man at that time, of course, but he seems to have gone quite off the rails since then with all his Distributivism and what not. They tell me he's likely to end up in a monastery." ①

"He's no fool, all the same," said Studdock.

"I'm glad you're going to meet Dick," said Curry. "We haven't time now, but there's one thing about him I wanted to discuss with you."

Studdock looked enquiringly at him.

"James and I and one or two others," said Curry in a somewhat lower voice, "have been thinking he ought to be the new warden.[c] But here we are."

"It's not yet twelve," said Studdock. "What about popping into the Bristol for a drink?"

Into the Bristol they accordingly went. It would not have been easy to preserve the atmosphere in which the Progressive Element operated without a good many of these little courtesies. This weighed harder on Studdock than on Curry,[d] who was unmarried

[a] progressive element] *BA*; Progressive Element *M*
[b] "One] *B*; "one *M*
[c] warden.] *BA*; Warden. *M*
[d] Curry,] *A*; Curry *BM*

Griffiths and Lewis continued to correspond, although Lewis was always insistent that they concentrate on what their churches had in common, refusing to debate the differences. Lewis asked Griffith's advice when he was preparing the radio broadcasts that were eventually published as *Mere Christianity*. In the late 1940s, Griffiths became increasingly interested in the aspects of Hinduism that he thought could be of value to Christianity, and in 1955 he was sent to India, where he spent the rest of his life and continued his attempts to incorporate Hindu elements into Catholic Christianity.

---

① *Inigo Jones*

Inigo Jones (1573–1652) travelled in Italy and admired Palladio, and introduced classical Roman architecture into England. He was Surveyor of the King's Works from 1615 to 1642, and so undertook relatively little private work: Bracton College was fortunate in having a gate "by Inigo Jones".

② *Newton quadrangle […] Georgian buildings look down upon it.*

Like many colleges of Oxford and Cambridge, Bracton's buildings comprise juxtaposed quadrangles (the Oxford and Edgestow term) or courts (Cambridge) from different eras from the fourteenth century on. Bracton appears to have quadrangles dating from the fourteenth century (Republic), seventeenth century (Lady Alice), and eighteenth or early nineteenth century (Newton)—"Georgian" describing the symmetrical, Palladian architecture of the reigns of the first four Georges of England (1714–1830).

③ *thinking of Bunyan or of Walton's* Lives

John Bunyan (1628-88) was a non-conformist preacher imprisoned more than once for preaching without a licence; author of *The Life and Death of Mr Badman* (1680), *The Holy War* (1682), and *The Pilgrim's Progress* (1st part in 1678 & 2nd part in 1684). This last was the inspiration for the title and allegorical method of Lewis's first apologetical work, *The Pilgrim's Regress* (1933).

Izaak Walton (1593-1683) wrote "gentle and admiring" "*Lives*" of his friends Donne (1640), Wotton (1651) and Bishop Sanderson (1678), and also of Hooker (1665) and George Herbert (1675) (*Oxford Companion to English Literature*, "Walton, Izaak"). All of these except Wotton were Anglican clergymen.

Lewis read both Walton and Bunyan when he professed atheism. Much later, in 1944, he wrote:

> Measured against the ages, "mere Christianity" turns out to be no insipid interdenominational transparency, but something positive, self-consistent, and inexhaustible. […] In the days when I still hated Christianity, I learned to recognise, like some all too familiar smell, that almost unvarying *something* that met me, now in Puritan Bunyan, now in Anglican Hooker, now in Thomist Dante. […] it was there (grave and homely) in Spenser and Walton […] recognizable, not to be evaded, the odour which is death to us until we allow it to become life […] ("On the Reading of Old Books" 29)

and had a sub-warden's[a] stipend. But the Bristol was a very pleasant place. Studdock bought a double whisky[b] for his companion and half a pint of beer for himself.

III

Lewis as Character

The only time I was a guest at Bracton I persuaded my host to let me into the Wood and leave me there alone for an hour. He apologised for locking me in.

Very few people were[c] allowed into Bragdon Wood. The gate was by Inigo Jones and was the only entry: a high wall enclosed the Wood, which was perhaps a quarter of a mile broad and a mile from east to west. If you came in from the street and went through the College to reach it, the sense of gradual penetration into a holy of holies was very strong. First you went through the Newton quadrangle which is dry and gravelly; florid, but beautiful, Georgian[d] buildings look down upon it. Next you must enter a cool tunnel-like passage, nearly dark at midday unless either the door into Hall should be open on your right or the buttery hatch on your left, giving you a glimpse of indoor daylight falling on panels[e] and a whiff of the smell of fresh bread. When you emerged from this tunnel you would find yourself in the medieval college:[f] in the cloister of the much smaller quadrangle called Republic. The grass here looks very green after the aridity of Newton and the very stone of the buttresses that rise from it gives the impression of being soft and alive. Chapel is not far off: the hoarse, heavy noise of the works of a great and old clock comes to you from somewhere overhead. You went along this cloister, past slabs and urns and busts that commemorate dead Bractonians, and then down shallow steps into the full daylight of the quadrangle called Lady Alice. The buildings to your left and right were seventeenth-century work: humble, almost domestic in character, with dormer windows, mossy and grey-tiled. You were in a sweet, Protestant world. You found yourself, perhaps, thinking of Bunyan or of Walton's *Lives*. There were no buildings straight ahead on the fourth side of Lady Alice: only a row of elms and a wall;[g] and here first one became aware of the sound of running water and the cooing of wood pigeons.

① ② ③

---

[a] sub-warden's] *BA*; Sub-Warden's *M*

[b] whisky] *B*; whiskey *M*

☛ An inadvertent American preference by the compositor of M: *Webster's* gives both spellings, but the *NED* puts "whisky" first (describing it as the trade spelling for the Scotch drink and "whiskey" for the Irish). Later dictionaries describe an established custom: "whisky" the normal British, and "whiskey" the normal U.S., spelling (*OED*).

[c] were] *BM*; where *A*

☛ An obvious error in A.

[d] Georgian] *B*; Gregorian *M*

☛ Noted by Lake (54). An obvious error in M. "Gregorian" is likely to qualify musical terms, or terms relating to calendars, but not "buildings" (*NED*, "Gregorian" A. 1–2).

[e] panels] *A*; panels, *BM*

[f] college:] *B*; College: *M*

[g] wall;] *BA*; wall: *M*

The street was so far off by now that there were no other noises. In the wall there was a door. It led you into a covered gallery pierced with narrow windows on either side. Looking out through these,[a] you discovered that you were crossing a bridge and the dark-brown[b] dimpled Wynd was flowing under you. Now you were very near your goal. A wicket at the far end of the bridge brought you out on the Fellows' bowling-green, and across that you saw the high wall of the wood and through the Inigo Jones gate you caught a glimpse of sunlit green and deep shadows.

I suppose the mere fact of being walled in gave the Wood part of its peculiar quality, for when a thing is enclosed[c] the mind does not willingly regard it as common. As I went forward over the quiet turf I had the sense of being received. The trees were just so wide apart that one saw uninterrupted foliage in the distance,[d] but the place where one stood seemed always to be a clearing:[e] surrounded by a world of shadows, one walked in mild sunshine. Except for the sheep whose nibbling kept the grass so short and who sometimes raised their long, foolish faces to stare at me, I was quite alone; and it felt more like the loneliness of a very large room in a deserted house than like any ordinary solitude out of doors. I remember thinking, "This is the sort of place which, as a child, one would have been rather afraid of or else would have liked very much indeed." A moment later I thought, "But when alone—really alone—everyone is a child: or no one?" Youth and age touch only the surface of our lives.

Half a mile is a short walk. Yet it seemed a long time before I came to the centre of the Wood. I knew it was the centre, for there was the thing I had chiefly come to see. It was a well: a well with steps going down to it and the remains of an ancient pavement about it. It was very imperfect now. I did not step on it, but I lay down in the grass and touched it with my fingers. For this[f] was the heart of Bracton or Bragdon Wood: out of this all the legends had come and on this, I suspected, the very existence of the College had originally depended. The archaeologists were agreed that the masonry was very late British-Roman work, done on the very eve[g] of the Anglo-Saxon invasion. How Bragdon the wood was connected with Bracton the lawyer was a mystery, but I fancy myself that the Bracton family had availed themselves of an accidental similarity in the names to believe, or make believe, that they had something to do with it. Certainly, if all that was told were true, or even half of it, the Wood was older than the Bractons. I suppose no

---

[a] these,] *MA*; these *B*
[b] dark-brown] *A*; dark brown *BM*
[c] enclosed] *B*; enclosed, *M*
[d] distance,] *B*; distance *M*
[e] clearing:] *B*; clearing; *M*
[f] this] *BM*; This *A*
[g] very eve] *BA*; eve *M*
☛ Presumably an inadvertent omission by M, maybe influenced by the repetition of "very" in "very late British-Roman work, done on the very eve".

① *Strabo's* Balachthon

Strabo (64/3 BC – at least 21 AD) was an historian and geographer from Amasea, Pontus. He does include a book on the geography of Gaul, Britain and Ireland in his Γεωγραφία (book IV), but this contains no reference to Βάλαχθον (*Balachthon*) (Jones 266; Strabo 163–298), which is Lewis's invention of a Greek word that appears to be a possible (but debatable) transposition into Greek of the sounds of *Bracton* or *Bragdon*.

② *In Bragdon […] welawai.*

This verse was apparently written by Lewis.

Lewis enjoyed writing in archaic styles, as can be seen in the supposed quotation from the Elizabethan Warden Shovel in the paragraph following the verse: the "gallimaufrey" or hodge-podge of unconnected abominations is delightfully Elizabethan, and the word "gallimaufrey" is an Elizabethan coinage (*NED*). However, "Morgan's bread", which sounds like the kind of Pagan practice, never satisfactorily Christianised, that an Elizabethan divine would have objected to, appears to be Lewis's invention.

Lewis also wrote in sixteenth-century English in *English Literature in the Sixteenth Century, Excluding Drama*: when quoting from "neo-Latin authors" he

> tried to translate them into sixteenth-century English, not simply for the fun of it, but also to guard the reader from a false impression […] that the Latinists are somehow more enlightened, less remote, less limited by their age, than those who wrote English. (*English Literature* vi)

The Narnia chronicles also contain pastiches of archaic styles—always tactfully highlighted as something out of the ordinary, presumably for the benefit of Lewis's child readers. Thus we find:

> Then said King Peter (for they talked in quite a different style now, having been Kings and Queens for so long), "Fair Consorts, let us now alight from our horses and follow this beast into the thicket; for in all my days I have never hunted a nobler quarry." (*Lion* ch. 17 167)

Elsewhere Peter deliberately recalls "to his mind the language in which he had written such things [as a challenge to personal combat] long ago in Narnia's golden age" (*Prince Caspian* ch. 13 151) before dictating a letter, the body of which begins, "For to prevent the effusion of blood, and for the avoiding all other inconveniences likely from the wars now levied in our realm of Narnia […]" (*Prince Caspian* ch. 13 151). Later on he reminds his scribe to spell "abhominable" with the archaic H (ch. 13 152). And when Aravis tells Shasta and Bree her and Hwin's story, she begins "sitting quite still and using a rather different tone and style from her usual one" (*Horse and His Boy* ch. 2 35). Part of the story runs:

> After that I shut my eyes and my teeth and prepared to drive the dagger into my heart. But before I had done so, this mare spoke with the voice of one of the daughters of men and said, "O my mistress, do not by any means destroy yourself, for if you live you may yet have good fortune, but all the dead are dead alike."
>
> "I didn't say it half so well as that," muttered the mare.
>
> "Hush, Ma'am, hush," said Bree, who was thoroughly enjoying the story. "She's telling it in the grand Calormene manner […]" (*Horse and His Boy* ch. 3 37)

③ *one of Cromwell's major-generals, conceiving it his business to destroy "the groves and the high places,"*

In 1655 Cromwell (1599-1658), as Lord Protector of the Commonwealth, appointed eleven "major-generals" with extensive and vaguely-defined powers to police public order and "to suppress vice

one now would attach much importance to Strabo's *Balachthon*, though it had led a ① sixteenth-century warden[a] of the College to say that "we[b] know not by ancientest report of any Britain without Bragdon." But the medieval song takes us back to the fourteenth century,

② *In Bragdon bricht this ende dai*
Herde ich Merlin ther he lai
Singende woo and welawai.

It[c] is good enough evidence that the well with the British-Roman pavement was already "Merlin's Well,"[d] though the name is not found till Queen Elizabeth's reign,[e] when good Warden Shovel surrounded the Wood with a wall "for the taking away of all profane and heathenish superstitions and the deterring of the vulgar sort from all wakes, May[f] games, dancings, mummings, and baking of Morgan's bread, heretofore used about the fountain called in vanity Merlin's Well, and utterly to be renounced and abominated as a gallimaufrey of papistry, gentilism, lewdness and dunsicall folly." Not that the College had by this action renounced its own interest in the place. Old Dr. Shovel, who lived to be nearly a hundred, can scarcely have been cold in his grave when one of Cromwell's ③ major-generals,[g] conceiving it his business to destroy "the groves and the high places," sent a few troopers with power to impress the country people for this pious work. The scheme came to nothing in the end:[h] but there had been a bicker between the College and the troopers in the heart of Bragdon, and the fabulously learned and saintly Richard Crowe had been killed by a musket ball[i] on the very steps of the Well. He would be a brave man who would accuse Crowe either of popery or "gentilism":[j] yet the story is that his last words had been[k] "Marry, sirs, if Merlin who was the Devil's son was a true King's man as ever ate bread, is it not a shame that you, being but the sons of bitches, must be rebels and regicides?" And always, through all changes, every warden[l] of Bracton, on the day of his election, had drunk a ceremonial draught of water from Merlin's Well in the great cup which,[m] both for its antiquity and for its beauty,[a] was the greatest of the Bracton treasures.

---

[a] warden] *B*; Warden *M*
[b] that "we] *B*; that, "We *M*
[c] It] *BM*; ¶There *A*
[d] Well,"] *BM*; Well" in the fourteenth century, *A*
[e] reign,] *B*; reign *M*
[f] May] *B*; may *M*
[g] major-generals,] *B*; Major Generals, *M*
[h] end:] *B*; end; *M*
[i] musket ball] *B*; musket-ball *M*
[j] "gentilism":] *B*; "gentilism"; *M*
[k] been] *B*; been, *M*
[l] warden] *B*; Warden *M*
[m] which,] *M*; which *B*

and encourage virtue" through force of arms, and with wide discretionary powers. They were generally viewed with fear and disapprobation (Buchan 460).

The expression "groves and high places" suggests various Old Testament texts referring to places associated with the worship of Ashtoreth, Baal and others, and hence is a metaphor for any places where idolatry is considered to be committed. The closest to Lewis's formulation is that of II Chronicles 17: 6—"the high places and groves". Also in II Chronicles, we find "the high places, and the groves, and the carved images, and the molten images" (34: 3) and "brake the images in pieces, and cut down the groves, and threw down the high places and the altars" (31: 1). "High places" are also mentioned together with (although not adjacent to) "groves", in combination with "images", "altars" or both, in: I Kings 14: 23, II Kings 18: 4 & 23: 15, II Chronicles 14: 3 and 33: 3.

---

① *where Sir Kenelm Digby […] killed in France*

Lewis mingles fact and fiction in this list of romantic and tragic figures.

Sir Kenelm Digby (1603-65) was a colourful character. At various times, he served James I in Scanderoon, was exiled from France for killing a man in a duel, was imprisoned in Southwark as a Roman Catholic during the civil war, and visited Rome to plead for more Bishops for England. He was Ben Jonson's literary executor, a friend of van Dyck's and a correspondent of Descartes', donated books to the Bodleian and to Harvard, and (in prison) wrote a commentary on the *Religio Medici* and treatises on the body and soul. He performed chemical and embryological research, was one of the second group of Fellows elected to the Royal Society (to which he read a paper on botany), and a noted exponent of the efficacy of the powder of sympathy to cure a wound when applied to the weapon that inflicted it. The way in which he combined the ability to make close observation with imaginative interpretation of those observations make him a fitting candidate to see "a certain strange appearance" in Bragdon Wood, but there is no evidence that he ever visited the Midlands (*Oxford Dictionary of National Biography* vol.16 "Digby, Sir Kenelm").

William Collins (1721-59) was well read, linguistically gifted, and "eminently delighted with those flights of imagination which pass the bounds of nature" (Johnson, "Collins" 399) but wrote relatively little poetry. In his early life he was poor, and his receipt of a bequest upon which he could live coincided with the onset of the depression that plagued him until his early death. The *Dictionary of National Biography* notes bemusedly that "reports of his genius, his neglect, his poverty, and his madness have attracted readers since his own day" (*Oxford Dictionary of National Biography* vol.12 "Collins, William"). He is known to have lived in Oxford, Chichester, and various parts of London, and to have travelled to Bath and France but, as with Digby, there is no evidence of his ever having visited the Midlands (*Oxford Dictionary of National Biography* vol.12 "Collins, William"; Johnson).

George III (1738-1820), perhaps one of England's unhappiest monarchs, lived to endure England's losing her American colonies, the erosion of much of the monarchy's political importance, and his own waning health and sanity, culminating in the Regency of his unsatisfactory son the Prince of Wales: he may well have wept in many places, but he was not a great traveller, and seems never to have visited the Midlands (*Oxford Dictionary of National Biography* vol. 21 "George III").

Nathaniel Fox is Lewis's invention, but he is clearly kin to Wilfred Owen and all the other "doomed youth" of Lewis's own generation who died in World War I.

All this I thought of, lying beside Merlin's Well, beside the Well[b] which must certainly date from Merlin's time if there had ever been a real Merlin: lying where Sir Kenelm Digby had lain all one summer night and seen a certain strange appearance: where Collins the poet had lain, and where George the Third had cried: where the brilliant and much-loved Nathaniel Fox had composed the famous poem three weeks before he was killed in France. The air was so still and the billows of foliage so heavy above me, that I fell asleep. I was wakened by my friend hallowing to me from a long way off. ①

IV

The most controversial business before the College meeting[c] was the question of selling Bragdon Wood. The purchaser was the N.I.C.E., the National Institute of Co-ordinated Experiments. They wanted a site for the building which would worthily house this remarkable organisation. The N.I.C.E. was the first-fruit[d] of that constructive fusion between the state and the laboratory on which so many thoughtful people base their hopes of a better world. It was to be free from almost all the tiresome restraints—"red tape" was the word its supporters used—which have hitherto hampered research in this country. It was also largely free from the restraints of economy, for, as it was argued, a nation which can spend so many millions a day on a war can surely afford a few millions a month on productive research in peace-time.[e] The building proposed for it was one which would make a quite noticeable addition to the skyline of New York, the staff was to be enormous, and their salaries princely. Persistent pressure and endless diplomacy on the part of the Senate of Edgestow had lured the new Institute away from Oxford, from Cambridge, from London. It had thought of all these in turn as possible scenes for its labours. At times the Progressive Element in Edgestow had almost despaired. But success was now practically certain. If the N.I.C.E. could get the necessary land, it would come to Edgestow. And once it came, then, as everyone felt, things would at last begin to

---

☛ It seems preferable for the explanatory phrase "both for its antiquity and for its beauty" (B)—or "both for its antiquity and beauty" (M)—which could go at the end of the sentence but is interpolated here, to be marked off by commas both before and after, as M has it. A second-best choice would be to have no commas at all, while B's single comma, after the interpolated clause with nothing to mark its beginning, is the least satisfactory option.

[a] for its beauty,] *B*; beauty, *M*

☛ The omission of "for its" by M prevents the final paragraph on M's page 12 from running onto the following page (probably by one word only, certainly by no more than a line). Ultimately, it saves the chapter from ending with one line at the top of a page (M27), with the rest of the page blank, as the chapters in M all begin on a new page.

[b] Well] *B*; well *M*

[c] meeting] *BA*; Meeting *M*

[d] first-fruit] *BA*; first-fruits *M*

[e] peace-time.] *B*; peacetime. *M*

move. Curry had even expressed a doubt whether, eventually, Oxford and Cambridge could survive as major universities at all.

Three years ago, if Mark Studdock had come to a College meeting[a] at which such a question was to be decided, he would have expected to hear the claims of sentiment against progress and beauty against utility openly debated. To-day, as he took his seat in the Soler, the long upper room on the south of Lady Alice, he expected no such matter. He knew now that that was not the way things are done.

The Progressive Element managed its business really very well. Most of the Fellows did not know when they came into the Soler that there was any question of selling the Wood. They saw, of course, from their agenda paper that Item 15 was[b] "Sale of College Land,"[c] but as that appeared at almost every College meeting,[d] they were not very interested. On the other hand they did see[e] that Item 1 was[f] "Questions about Bragdon Wood." These were not concerned with the proposed sale. Curry, who rose as sub-warden[g] to introduce them, had a few[h] letters to read to the College. The first was from a society concerned for the preservation of ancient monuments. I think myself that this society had been ill-advised to make two complaints in one letter. It would have been wiser if they had confined themselves to drawing the College's attention to the dis-repair[i] of the wall round the Wood. When they went on to urge the desirability of building some protection over the Well itself[j] and even to point out that they had urged this before, the College began to be restive. And when, as a kind of afterthought, they expressed a wish that the College could be a little more accommodating to serious antiquaries who wanted to examine the Well, the College became definitely ill-tempered. I would not like to accuse a man in Curry's position of misreading a letter:[k] but his reading of this letter was certainly not such as to gloss over any defects in the tone of the original composition. Before he[l] sat down, nearly everyone in the room desired strongly to make the outer world understand that Bragdon Wood was the private property of Bracton College and that the outer world had better mind its own business. Then he rose again to read another letter. This was from a society of Spiritualists who wanted leave to investigate the

---

[a] meeting] *BA*; Meeting *M*
[b] Item 15 was] *BA*; item Fifteen was, *M*
[c] Land,"] *A*; land," *BM*
[d] meeting,] *BA*; Meeting, *M*
[e] they did see] *BM*; They also saw *A*
[f] Item 1 was] *BA*; item One was, *M*
[g] sub-warden] *BA*; Sub-Warden *M*
[h] a few] *BM*; some *A*
[i] dis-repair] *A*; disrepair *BM*
[j] itself] *B*; itself, *M*
[k] letter:] *B*; letter; *M*
[l] he] *BM*; Curry *A*

"reported phenomena" in the Wood—a letter "connected," as Curry said, "with[a] the next which, with the Warden's permission, I will now read to you." This was from a firm who had heard of the Spiritualists' proposal and wanted permission to make a film, not exactly of the phenomena, but of the Spiritualists looking for the phenomena. Curry was directed to write short refusals to all three letters.

Then came a new voice from quite a different part of the Soler. Lord Feverstone had risen. He fully agreed with the action which the College had taken about these impertinent letters from various busybodies outside. But was it not, after all, a fact, that the wall of the Wood *was* in a very unsatisfactory condition? A good many Fellows—Studdock was not one of them—imagined they were watching a revolt on Feverstone's part against "Curry and his gang" and became intensely interested. Almost at[b] once the Bursar, James Busby, was on his feet. He welcomed Lord Feverstone's question. In his Bursarial capacity he[c] had recently taken expert advice about the wall of the Wood. "Unsatisfactory" was, he feared, much too mild a word to describe its condition. Nothing but a complete new wall would really meet the situation. With great difficulty the probable cost of this was elicited from him:[d] and when the College heard the figure it gasped. Lord Feverstone enquired icily whether the Bursar was seriously proposing that the College should undertake such an expense. Busby (a very large ex-clergyman with a bushy black beard) replied with some temper that he had proposed nothing: if he *were* to make a suggestion it would be that the question could not be treated in isolation from some important financial considerations which it would become his duty to lay before them later in the day. There was a pause at this ominous statement, until gradually, one by one, the "outsiders" and "obstructionists," the men not included in the Progressive Element, began coming into the debate. Most of these found it hard to believe that nothing short of a complete new wall would be any use. The Progressive Element let them talk for nearly ten minutes. Then it looked once again as if Lord Feverstone were actually leading the outsiders. He wanted to know whether it was possible that the Bursar and the Preservation Committee could really find no alternative between building a new wall and allowing Bragdon Wood to degenerate into a common. He pressed for an answer. Some of the outsiders even began to feel that he was being too rude to the Bursar. At last the[e] Bursar answered in a low voice that he *had* in a purely theoretical way got some facts about possible alternatives. A barbed-wire[f] fence—but the rest was drowned in a roar of disapproval, during which old Canon Jewel was heard to say that he

[a] "connected," as Curry said, "with] *MA*; "connected" as Curry said, "With *B*
[b] at] *BM*; At *A*
[c] he] *BM*; He *A*
[d] him:] *BA*; him; *M*
[e] the] *BM*; The *A*
[f] barbed-wire] *A*; barbed wire *BM*

would sooner have every tree in the Wood felled to the ground than see it caged in barbed wire. Finally,[a] the matter was postponed for consideration at the next meeting.

The next item was one of those which the majority of the Fellows could not understand. It involved the recapitulation (by Curry) of a long correspondence between the College and the Senate of the University about the proposed incorporation of the N.I.C.E. in the University of Edgestow. The words "committed to"[b] kept recurring in the debate that followed. "We appear," said Watson, "to have pledged ourselves as a college to the fullest possible support of the new Institute." "We appear," said Feverstone, "to have tied ourselves up hand and foot and given the University *carte blanche*." What all this actually amounted to never became clear to any of the outsiders. They remembered fighting hard at a previous meeting against the N.I.C.E. and all its works, and being defeated:[c] but every effort to find out what their defeat had meant, though answered with great lucidity by Curry, served only to entangle them further in the impenetrable mazes of the university constitution and the still darker mystery of the relations between university and college.[d] The result of the discussion was to leave them under the impression that the honour of the College was now involved in the establishment of the N.I.C.E. at Edgestow.

During this item the thoughts of more than one Fellow had turned to lunch,[e] and attention had wandered. But when Curry rose at five minutes to one to introduce Item 3,[f] there was a sharp revival of interest. It was called "Rectification[g] of an Anomaly[h] in the Stipends of[i] Junior Fellows." I would not like to say what the most junior Fellows of Bracton were getting at this time, but I believe it hardly covered the expenses of their residence in College[j], which was compulsory. Studdock, who had only recently emerged from this class,[k] felt great sympathy with them. He understood the look in their faces. The Rectification, if it went through, would mean to them clothes and holidays and meat for lunch and a chance to buy a half, instead of a fifth, of the books they needed. All their eyes were fixed on the Bursar when he rose to reply to

---

[a] Finally,] *MA*; Finally *B*
[b] words "committed to"] *B*; words, "committed to," *M*
[c] defeated:] *B*; defeated; *M*
[d] university and college.] *B*; University and College. *M*
[e] lunch,] *MA*; lunch *B*
[f] Item 3,] *B*; item three, *M*, Item 2, *A*
[g] called "Rectification] *BA*; called, "Rectification *M*
[h] Anomaly] *BA*; anomaly *M*
[i] in the Stipends of] *A*; of the Stipends in *B* of the Stipends of *M*
☛ While "the Anomaly of the Stipends" would be correct, meaning that the stipends as a whole were anomalous, the meaning of "an Anomaly of the Stipends" (B & M) is dubious. The expression "an Anomaly in the Stipends" (A) is clear, showing that something about the stipends is anomalous. Clearly, B's "the Stipends in Junior Fellows" is wrong. B's transposition of "of" and "in" looks like a compositor's error.
[j] College] *MA*; college *B*
[k] Studdock, who […] class,] *A;* Studdock who […] class *BM*

Curry's proposal.[a] He hoped that no one would imagine he approved the anomaly which had, in 1910, excluded the lowest class of the Fellows from the new clauses in the eighteenth paragraph of Statute 17. He felt sure that everyone present would *wish* it to be rectified; but[b] it was his duty, as Bursar, to point out that this was the second proposal involving very heavy expenditure which had come before them that morning. He could only say of this, as he had said of the previous proposal, that it[c] could not be isolated from the whole problem of the present financial position of the College[d] which he hoped to lay before them during the course of the afternoon. A great deal more was said, but the Bursar remained unanswered, the matter was postponed, and when, at quarter to two, the Fellows came surging out of the Soler for lunch,[e] hungry and headachy and ravenous for tobacco, every junior had it fixed in his mind that a new wall for the Wood and a rise in his own stipend were strictly exclusive alternatives. "That darn Wood has been in our way all morning," said one. "We're not out of it yet," answered another.

In this frame of mind the College returned to the Soler after lunch to consider its finances. Busby, the Bursar, was naturally the principal speaker. It is very hot in the Soler on[f] a sunny afternoon; and the smooth flow of the Bursar's exposition, and even the flashing of his level, white teeth above his beard (he had remarkably fine teeth) had a sort of hypnotic power. Fellows of colleges do not always find money matters easy to understand: if they did[g] they would probably not have been the sort of men who become Fellows of colleges. They gathered that the situation was bad; very bad indeed.[h] Some of the youngest and most inexperienced members ceased to wonder whether they would get a new wall or a rise of stipend and began to wonder instead whether the College could continue to function at all. The times, as the Bursar so truly said, were extraordinarily difficult. Older members had heard of such times very often before from dozens of previous Bursars and were less disturbed. I am not suggesting for a moment that the Bursar of Bracton was in any way misrepresenting the position. It is very seldom that the affairs of a large corporation, indefinitely committed to the advancement of learning, can be described as being, in a quite unambiguous sense, satisfactory. His delivery was excellent. Each sentence was a model of lucidity:[i] and if his hearers found the gist of his whole statement less

---

[a] proposal.] *BA*; proposals. *M*
[b] ; but] *MA*; : but *B*
[c] it] *BM*; It *A*
[d] College] *BA*; College, *M*
[e] for lunch,] *BM*; meeting adjourned for lunch, *A*
[f] is] *BM*; was *A*
[g] did] *B*; did, *M*
[h] bad; very bad indeed.] *BA*; bad, very bad, indeed. *M*
[i] lucidity:] *B*; lucidity; *M*

clear than the parts, that may have been their own fault. Some minor retrenchments and re-investments which he suggested were unanimously approved,[a] and the College adjourned for tea in a chastened mood. Studdock rang up Jane and told her he would not be home for dinner.

It was not till six o'clock that all the converging lines of thought and feeling aroused by the earlier business came together upon the question of selling Bragdon Wood. It was not called[b] the "sale[c] of Bragdon Wood."[d] The Bursar called it the "sale of the area coloured pink on the plan which, with the Warden's permission, I will now pass round the table." He pointed out quite frankly[e] that this involved the loss of *part* of the Wood. In fact, the proposed N.I.C.E. site still left to the College a strip about sixteen feet broad along the far half of the south side,[f] but there was no deception for the Fellows had the plan to look at with their own eyes. It was a small-scale plan and not perhaps perfectly accurate—only meant to give one a general idea. In answer to questions he admitted that unfortunately—or perhaps fortunately—the Well itself was in the area which the N.I.C.E. wanted. The rights of the College to access would, of course, be guaranteed:[g] and the Well and its pavement would be preserved by the Institute in a manner to satisfy all the archaeologists in the world. He refrained from offering any advice and merely mentioned the quite astonishing figure which the N.I.C.E. was offering. After that, the meeting became lively. The advantages of the sale discovered themselves one by one like ripe fruit dropping into the hand. It solved the problem of the wall:[h] it solved the problem of protecting ancient monuments:[i] it solved the financial problem:[j] it looked like solving the problem of the junior Fellows' stipends. It appeared further that the N.I.C.E. regarded this as the only possible site in Edgestow:[k] if by any chance Bracton would not sell, the whole scheme miscarried and the Institute would undoubtedly go to Cambridge. It was even drawn out of the Bursar by much questioning that he knew of a Cambridge college very anxious to sell.

---

[a] approved,] *A*; approved *BM*
[b] called] *BA*; called, *M*
[c] the "sale] *A*; "the sale *BM*
[d] Wood."] *BM*; Wood," but *A*
[e] He pointed out quite frankly] *BM*; Curry admitted *A*
☛ "He" in B & M refers to the Bursar, not to Curry. There seems to be no obvious reason why this speech should be given to Curry in A.
[f] side,] *B*; side *M*
[g] guaranteed:] *BA*; guaranteed; *M*
[h] wall:] *BA*; wall; *M*
[i] monuments:] *BA*; monuments; *M*
[j] problem:] *BA*; problem; *M*
[k] Edgestow:] *B*; Edgestow; *M*

The few real "Die-hards" present, to whom Bragdon Wood was almost a basic assumption of life, could hardly bring themselves to realise what was happening. When they found their voices, they struck a discordant note amid the general buzz of cheerful comment. They were manœuvred[a] into the position of appearing as the party who passionately desired to see Bragdon surrounded with barbed wire. When at last old Jewel, blind and shaky and almost weeping, rose to his feet, his voice was hardly audible. Men turned round to gaze at, and some to admire, the clear-cut, half-childish face and the white hair which had become more conspicuous as the long room grew darker. But only those close to him could hear what he said. At this moment Lord Feverstone sprang to his feet, folded his arms, and looking straight at the old man said in a very loud, clear voice:

"If Canon Jewel wishes us *not* to hear his views, I suggest that his end could be better attained by silence."

Jewel had been already an old man in the days before the first war when old men were treated with kindness, and he had never succeeded in getting used to the modern world. He stared with puzzled eyes in the direction of Feverstone.[b] For a moment as he stood with his head thrust forward, people thought he was going to reply. Then quite suddenly he spread out his hands with a gesture of helplessness, shrunk back, and began laboriously to resume his chair.

The motion was carried.

V

After leaving the flat that morning Jane also had gone down to Edgestow and bought a hat.[c] She had before now expressed some contempt for the kind of woman who buys hats, as a man buys drinks, for a stimulant and a consolation. It did not occur to her that she was doing so herself on this occasion. She liked her clothes to be rather severe and in colours that were really good on serious aesthetic grounds—clothes which would make it plain to everyone that she was an

---

[a] manœuvred] *B*; manoeuvred *M*

[b] He stared with puzzled eyes in the direction of Feverstone.] *B*; He stared with puzzled eyes. *A* *Not in M.*

☛ Lake describes M's excision of this sentence as "a sub-editor's brainwave" (Lake 55), because Jewel has been described, two paragraphs previously, as "blind": Lake suggests that "the sub-editor for M did not like the idea of a blind man 'staring with puzzled eyes' at anyone" (Lake 56, see also *C&G* 241). However, "blind" need not mean "completely blind"; moreover, Lewis does not have Jewel staring *at* anyone, only "*in the direction of* Feverstone" (*italics mine*), so that there is no assertion that Jewel (whether partly or wholly blind) is actually seeing Feverstone.

[c] bought a hat.] *MB*; had bought a hat, *A*

☛ The perfect tense prepares for the simple past tense of meeting Mrs. Dimble, which happens in the following clause in *A*, but three sentences on in the unabridged witnesses.

intelligent adult and not a woman of the chocolate-box variety—and because of this preference[a] she did not know that she was interested in clothes at all. She was therefore a little annoyed when Mrs. Dimble met her coming out of Sparrow's and said:[b] "Hullo, dear! Been buying a hat? Come home to lunch and let's see it. Cecil has the car just round the corner."

Cecil Dimble, a Fellow of Northumberland, had been Jane's tutor for her last years[c] as a student, and Mrs. Dimble (one tended to call her "Mother Dimble")[d] had been a kind of universal[e] aunt to all the girls of her year. A liking for the female pupils of one's husband is not, perhaps, so common as might be wished among dons' wives:[f] but Mrs. Dimble appeared to like all Dr. Dimble's pupils of both sexes and the Dimble's house, away on the far side of the river, was a kind of noisy *salon* all the term. She had been particularly fond of Jane with that kind of affection which a humorous, easy natured and childless woman sometimes feels for a girl whom she thinks pretty and slightly[g] absurd. For the last year or so Jane had been somewhat losing sight of the Dimbles and felt rather guilty about it. She accepted the invitation to lunch.

They drove over the bridge to the north of Bracton and then south along the bank of the Wynd, past the cottages, then left and eastward at the Norman church and down the straight road with the poplars on one side and the wall of Bragdon Wood on the other, and so finally to the Dimbles' front door.

"How lovely it's looking!"[h] said Jane quite sincerely as she got out of the car. The Dimbles' garden was famous.

"You'd better take a good look at it then," said Dr. Dimble.

"What do you mean?" asked Jane.

"Haven't you told her?" said Dr. Dimble to his wife.

"I haven't screwed myself up to it yet," said Mrs. Dimble. "Besides, poor dear, her husband is one of the villains of the piece. Anyway, I expect she knows."

---

[a] preference] *B*; preference, *M*
[b] said:] *BA*; said, *M*
[c] years] *BA*; year *M*
☛ M's reading may be to agree with "girls of her year" in the following line. Assuming that Jane read for a three-year BA, B & A's reading implies Dimble tutored her for two years, and M's reading, one year.
[d] "Mother Dimble") *BA*; Mother Dimble) *M*
[e] universal] *BA*; unofficial *M*
☛ Universal Aunts was a London-based company (founded in 1922) that provided various domestic services, and "universal aunt" came to refer to anyone doing things that an aunt might be expected to do (*OED* "universal" A.9.b; "aunt" 1.b: the usage is not in the *NED*). The term might have been considered opaque by an American publisher in the 1940s, and "unofficial" substituted for "universal".
[f] wives:] *BA*; wives; *M*
[g] slightly] *B*; rather *M*
[h] looking!"] *BA*; looking," *M*

"I've no idea what you're talking about," said Jane.

"Your own college[a] is being so tiresome, dear. They're turning us out. They won't renew the lease."

"Oh, Mrs. Dimble!" exclaimed Jane. "And I didn't even know this was Bracton property."

"There you are!" said Mrs. Dimble," One half of the world doesn't know how the other half lives. Here have I been imagining that you were using all your influence with Mr. Studdock to try to save us, whereas in reality——"[b]

"Mark never talks to me about College business."

"Good husbands never do," said Dr. Dimble. "At least only about the business of other people's colleges. That's why Margaret knows all about Bracton and nothing about Northumberland. Is no one coming in to have lunch?"

Dimble guessed that Bracton was going to sell the Wood and everything else it owned on that side of the river. The whole region seemed to him now even more of a paradise than when he first came to live there twenty-five years ago, and he felt much too strongly on the subject to wish to talk about it before the wife of one of the Bracton men.

"You'll have to wait for your lunch till I've seen Jane's new hat," said Mother Dimble, and forthwith hurried Jane upstairs.

Then[c] followed some minutes of conversation which was strictly feminine in the old-fashioned sense. Jane, while preserving a certain sense of superiority, found it indefinably comforting;[d] and though Mrs. Dimble had really the wrong point of view about such things, there was no denying that the one small alteration which she suggested did go to the root of the matter. When the hat was being put away again Mrs. Dimble suddenly said:[e]

"There's nothing wrong, is there?"

"Wrong,"[f] said Jane. "Why? What should there be?"

"You're not looking yourself."

"Oh, I'm all right," said Jane, aloud. Mentally she added:[g] "She's dying to know whether I'm going to have a baby. That sort of woman always is."

"Do you hate being kissed?" said Mrs. Dimble unexpectedly.

---

[a] college] *BA*; College *M*
[b] reality——"] *B*; reality—" *M*
[c] ¶Then] *A*; Then *BM*
[d] comforting:] *B*; comforting; *M*
[e] said:] *BA*; said, *M*
[f] "Wrong,"] *BA*; "Wrong?" *M*
[g] added:] *BA*; added, *M*

① *Guinevere and Lancelot*

Arthur's Queen and one of the bravest of Arthur's knights. However, their adultery ultimately led to Arthur's death.

② *Morgan and Morgawse*

Arthur's half-sisters. Morgan was an enchantress. Morgawse was the mother of Gawain and his brothers, who were champions of the Round Table, but also the mother of Mordred, Arthur's destroyer (see 394 n. 1).

③ *Queen Morgan 'set all the country in fire with ladies that were enchantresses.'*

"Then he sent unto Queen Morgan le Fay, and to the Queen of Northgalis, praying them in his letters that they two sorceresses would set all the country in fire with ladies that were enchantresses" (Malory, *Morte* X ch. 35).

Dimble's liking for this quotation reflects that of Lewis, who makes it clear in a review of Vinaver's 1947 edition of the Winchester text (see 27 n.1) in the *Times Literary Supplement* of 7 July 1947:

> Elsewhere a Caxton reading which is not "better" in a textual sense is so much better imaginatively that we wish it to be correct. […] Caxton prints "that they sorceresses wold sette alle the countrey in fyre with ladyes that were enchantresses", where Winchester for *in fyre* has merely *envyrone*.
>
> (" 'Morte Darthur' " 106)

"Do I hate being kissed?" thought Jane to herself. "That indeed is the question. Do I hate being kissed? Hope not for mind in women——"[a] She had intended to reply[b] "Of course not," but inexplicably, and to her great annoyance, found herself crying instead. And then, for a moment, Mrs. Dimble became simply a grown-up as grown-ups had been when one was a very small child: large, warm, soft objects to whom one ran with bruised knees or broken toys. When she thought of her childhood[c] Jane usually remembered those occasions on which the voluminous embrace of nurse or mother[d] had been unwelcome and resisted as an insult to one's maturity:[e] now, for the moment, she was back in those forgotten, yet not infrequent, times when fear or misery induced a willing surrender and surrender brought comfort. Not to detest being petted and pawed was contrary to her whole theory of life:[f] yet[g] before they went downstairs[h] she had told Mrs. Dimble that she was not going to have a baby[i] but was a bit depressed from being very much alone[j] and from a nightmare.

During lunch Dr. Dimble talked about the Arthurian legend. "It's really wonderful," he said, "how the whole thing hangs together, even in a late version like Malory's. You've noticed how there are two sets of characters? There's Guinevere and Launcelot and all those people in the centre: all[k] very courtly and nothing particularly British about them. But then in the background—on the other side of Arthur, so to speak—there are all those *dark* people like Morgan and Morgawse, who are very British indeed and usually more or less hostile though they are his own relatives. Mixed up with magic. You remember that wonderful phrase, how Queen Morgan 'set all the country in fire with ladies that were enchantresses.' Merlin too, of course, is British, though not hostile. Doesn't it look very like a picture of Britain as it must have been on the eve of the invasion?"

Logres

① ② ③

"How do you mean, Dr. Dimble?" said Jane.

"Well, wouldn't[l] there have been one section of society that was almost purely Roman? People wearing togas and talking a Celticised Latin—something that

---

[a] women——"] *BA*; women—" *M*
[b] reply] *BA*; reply, *M*
[c] childhood] *B*; childhood, *M*
[d] nurse or mother] *B*; Nurse or Mother *M*
[e] maturity:] *B*; maturity; *M*
[f] life:] *BA*; life; *M*
[g] yet] *BA*; yet, *M*
[h] downstairs] *BA*; downstairs, *M*
[i] baby] *BA*; baby, *M*
[j] alone] *BA*; alone, *M*
[k] : all] *BM*; , all *A*
[l] wouldn't] *BM*; would *A*
☛ A's reading appears to be a mistake: Dimble is asserting that there *was* an "amost purely Roman" section of society, which is conveyed by the negative form of the rhetorical question: the

① *a man of the old British line, […] almost succeeding.*

In a letter of 1945, Lewis writes, "For Arthur in general see 'Arthur of Britain' by E.K. Chambers, Collingwood in Vol. I of Oxford History of England, and Vinaver's 'Malory' " (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 673; see Preliminary Note D: "Logres").

"Vinaver's 'Malory' " is Vinaver's study of Malory as translator—*Malory* (1929)—not Vinaver's edition of the different version of Malory discovered at Winchester College—*The Works of Sir Thomas Malory* (1947).

② *Kay*

Arthur's foster-brother, son of Sir Ector. He served as Arthur's seneschal.

③ *'the devil's son'*

Merlin is so called in Malory (IV ch. 1).

④ *'There dwell in the sky many kinds of wights. Some of them are good, and some work evil.'*

The lines Dimble translates are from Laȝamon's *Brut*: "Þer wunieð in þan lufte feole cunne wihte, […] Summe heo beoð aðele, and summe heo uuel wurcheð" (158-60).

⑤ *"I often wonder […] either priests or sorcerers."*

Dimble's speculation proves justified within the novel: it is expanded and explicated in discussions between Ransom and Merlin in ch. 13 IV–V.

would sound to us rather like Spanish: and fully Christian. But farther[a] up country, in the out-of-the-way places, cut off by the forests, there would have been little courts ruled by real old British under-kings, talking something like Welsh, and practising a certain amount of the Druidical religion."

"And which would Arthur himself have been?" said Jane. It was silly that her heart should have missed a beat at the words "rather like Spanish."

"That's just the point," said Dr. Dimble. "One can imagine a man of the old ① British line, but also a Christian and a fully-trained general with Roman technique, trying to pull this whole society together and almost succeeding. There'd be jealousy from his own British family, and the Romanised section—the Lancelots and Lionels—would look down on the Britons. That'd be why Kay is always ② represented as a boor: he is part of the native strain. And always that under-tow, that tug back to Druidism." *Logres*

"And where would Merlin be?"

"Yes. . . . He's the really interesting figure. Did the whole thing fail because he died so soon? Has it ever struck you what an odd creation Merlin is? He's not evil:[b] yet he's a magician. He is obviously a druid:[c] yet he knows all about the Grail. He's 'the devil's son':[d] but then Layamon goes out of his way to tell you that the ③ kind of being who fathered Merlin needn't have been bad after all. You remember:[e] 'There dwell in the sky many kinds of wights. Some of them are good, and some ④ work evil.' "[f]

"It *is* rather puzzling. I hadn't thought of it before."

"I often wonder," said Dr. Dimble, "whether Merlin doesn't represent the ⑤ last trace of something the later tradition has quite forgotten about—something that became impossible when the only people in touch with the supernatural were either white or black, either priests or sorcerers."

"What a horrid idea," said Mrs. Dimble, who had noticed that Jane seemed to be preoccupied. "Anyway, Merlin happened a long time ago if he happened at all,[g] and he's safely dead and buried under Bragdon Wood as we all know."[h]

---

positive question in *A* conveys a negative assertion (see Quirk *et al* 11.23). See Dimble's rhetorical question two lines previously, before Jane's interruption: it also asks a negative question in order to make a positive assertion.

[a] farther] *BA*; further *M*

☛ Noted by Lake (54).

[b] evil:] *BA*; evil; *M*

[c] druid:] *BA*; druid; *M*

[d] son':] *B*; son'; *M*

[e] remember:] *B*; remember, *M*

[f] evil.' "] *B*; evil'." *M*

[g] all,] *BA*; all *M*

[h] as we all know."] *BA*; as every one of us knows. *M*

"Buried but *not* dead, according to the story," corrected Dr. Dimble.

"Ugh!" said Jane involuntarily, but Dr. Dimble was musing aloud.

"I wonder what they *will* find if they start digging up that place for the foundations of their N.I.C.E.," he said.[a]

"First mud and then water," said Mrs. Dimble. "That's why they can't really build it there."

"So you'd think," said her husband. "And if so, why should they want to come here at all? A little cockney like Jules is not[b] likely to be influenced by any poetic fancy about Merlin's mantle having fallen on him!"[c]

"Merlin's mantle indeed!" said Mrs. Dimble.

"Yes," said the Doctor. "It's[d] a rum idea. I dare say some of his set would like to recover the mantle well enough. Whether they'll be big enough to fill it is another matter! I don't think they'd like it if the old man himself came back to life along with it."

"That child's going to faint," said Mrs. Dimble[e] suddenly jumping up.

"Hullo! What's the matter?" said Dr. Dimble, looking with amazement at Jane's face. "Is the room too hot for you?"

"Oh, it's too ridiculous," said Jane.

"Let's come into the drawing-room,"[f] said Dr. Dimble. "Here. Lean on my arm."

A little later, in[g] the drawing-room,[h] seated beside a window that opened onto the lawn, now strewn with bright yellow leaves, Jane attempted to excuse her absurd behaviour by telling the story of her dream. "I suppose I've given myself away dreadfully," she said. "You can both start psycho-analysing me now."

From Dr. Dimble's face Jane might have indeed conjectured that her dream had shocked him exceedingly. "Extraordinary thing . . . most extraordinary," he kept muttering. "*Two* heads. And one of them Alcasan's. Now is that a false scent?"[i]

☛ The two phrases here mean much the same thing. B's variant is shorter, but it occupies a line on its own in B (B34), so it was not shortened to save space in B. With no further evidence, B & A's witness is preferred over that of M.

[a] said.] *BM*; said Dr. Dimble. *A*

[b] not] *BM*; They're not *A*

[c] him!"] *BM*; them!" *A*

☛ Since the reference to Jules has been excised, A requires a plural pronoun to refer back to "they" and "their". The words "his set" later should for the same reason also be "their set" or "them" in A, but Lewis appears to have missed correcting this anaphoric reference.

[d] Doctor. "It's] *BA*; Doctor, "it's *M*

[e] Dimble] *BA*; Dimble, *M*

[f] drawing-room,"] *BA*; drawing room," *M*

[g] in] *BM*; In *A*

[h] drawing-room,] *BA*; drawing room *M*

[i] scent?"] *BA*; scent . . . ?" *M*

① *Margery*

Mrs. Dimble's first name is Margaret, but her husband calls her by the variant "Margery". He is the only person who does so in the novel, and he does so twice, here and in ch. 13 IV 301.

"Don't, Cecil," said Mrs. Dimble.

"Do you think I ought to be analysed?" said Jane.

"Analysed?" said Dr. Dimble, glancing at her as if he had not quite understood. "Oh, I see. You mean going to Brizeacre or someone of that sort?"

Jane[a] realised that her question had recalled him from some quite different train of thought and even—disconcertingly—that the problem of her own health had been shouldered aside. The telling of her dream had raised some other problem, though what this was she could not even imagine.

Dr. Dimble looked out of the window. "There is my dullest pupil just ringing the bell," he said. "I must go to the study[b] and listen to an essay on Swift beginning[c] 'Swift was born.' Must try to keep my mind on it, too, which won't be easy." He rose and stood for a moment with his hand on Jane's shoulder. "Look here," he said, "I'm not going to give any advice. But if you do decide to go to anyone about that dream, I wish you would *first* consider going to someone whose address Margery or I will give you." ①

"You don't believe in Mr. Brizeacre?" said Jane.

"I can't explain," said Dr. Dimble. "Not now. It's all so complicated. Try not to bother about it. But if you *do*, just let us know first. Good-bye."

Almost immediately after his departure some other visitors arrived, so that there was no opportunity of further private conversation between Jane and her hostess. She left the Dimbles about half an hour later and walked home, not along the road with the poplars but by the footpath across the common, past the donkeys and the geese, with the towers and spires of Edgestow to her left and the old windmill on the horizon to her right.

---

[a] ¶Jane] *A*; Jane *BM*
[b] study] *B*; study, *M*
[c] beginning] *B*; beginning, *M*

① *Non Olet*

"It does not smell" from *Pecunia non olet* ("Money does not smell"), the established summary of an episode from the life of Vespasian, recorded by Suetonius:

> *Reprehendenti filio Tito, quod etiam urinae vectigal commentus esset, pecuniam ex prima pensione admovit ad nares, sciscitans num odore offenderetur; et illo negante: "Atqui," inquit, "e lotio est."*
>
> When Titus found fault with him for contriving a tax on the public conveniences, he held a piece of money to his son's nose, asking whether its odour was offensive to him. When Titus said "No," he replied, "Yet it comes from urine."
>
> (Suetonius, "Vespasian" XXIII 3)

Charles Place had presumably gained wealth, or perhaps reputation, from his work on "National Sanitation" (ch. 2 I 30).

TWO

Dinner with the Sub-Warden

I

"THIS is a blow!" said Curry,[a] standing in front of the fireplace in his magnificent rooms which overlooked Newton. They were the best set in College.

"Something from N.O.?" said James Busby. He and Lord Feverstone and Mark were all drinking sherry before dining with Curry. N.O., which stood for *Non Olet*,[b] was the nickname of Charles Place, the Warden of Bracton. His election to this post, some fifteen years before, had been one of the earliest triumphs of the Progressive Element. By dint of saying that the College needed "new blood" and must be shaken out of its "academic grooves"[c] they had succeeded in bringing in an elderly civil servant who had certainly never been contaminated by academic weaknesses since he left his rather obscure Cambridge college in the previous century, but who had written a monumental report on National Sanitation. The subject had, if anything, rather recommended him to the Progressive Element. They regarded it as a slap in the face for the *dilettanti* and Die-hards, who replied by christening their new warden *Non Olet*.[d] But gradually even Place's supporters had adopted the name. For Place had not answered their expectations, having turned out to be a dyspeptic with a taste for philately, whose voice was so seldom heard that some of the junior Fellows did not know what it sounded like. ①

"Yes, blast him," said Curry. "Wishes[e] to see me on a most important matter as soon as I can conveniently call on him after dinner."

"That means," said the Bursar, "that Jewel and Co. have been getting at him and want to find some way of going back on the whole business."

"I don't give a damn for that," said Curry. "How can you go back on a resolution?[f] It isn't that. But it's enough to muck up the whole evening."

"Only your[g] evening," said Feverstone. "Don't forget to leave out that very special brandy of yours before you go."

"Jewel! Good God!" said Busby, burying his left hand in his beard.

---

[a] Curry,] *B*; Curry *M*
[b] *Non Olet*,] *BA*; Non-Olet, *M*
[c] grooves" *B*; grooves," *M*
[d] *Non Olet*.] *B*; Non-Olet. *M*
[e] Curry. "Wishes] *BA*; Curry, "wishes
[f] resolution?] *B*; Resolution? *M*
[g] your] *B*; *your M*

① *the Clausewitz view*

Karl von Clausewitz (1780-1831) collected notes on war, published posthumously as *Vom Kriege*. An English translation, *On War*, was published in 1873, and American translations were being produced during World War II.

Clausewitz describes war as "a mere continuation of policy by other means" (16), and insists that the violence of war cannot be moderated by non-political means, and that the force of war is, of itself, theoretically limitless:

> Now philanthropic souls might easily imagine that there was an artistic way of disarming or overthrowing our adversary without too much blood-shed and that this was what the art of war should seek to achieve. However agreeable this may sound, it is a false idea which must be demolished. In affairs so dangerous as war, false ideas proceeding from kindness of heart are precisely the worst. As the most extensive use of physical force by no means excludes the co-operation of intelligence, he who uses this force ruthlessly, shrinking from no amount of bloodshed, must gain an advantage if his adversary does not do the same. Thereby he forces his adversary's hand, and thus each pushes the other to extremities to which the only limitation is the strength of the resistance on the other side.
>
> This is how the matter must be regarded, and it is a waste—and worse than a waste—of effort to ignore the element of brutality because of the repugnance it excites.
>
> If the wars of civilized nations are far less cruel and destructive than those of the uncivilized, the reason lies in the social condition of the states, both in themselves and in their relations to one another. From this condition, and its attendant circumstances, war arises and is shaped, limited and modified. But these things do not themselves belong to war; they already exist. Never in the philosophy of war itself can we introduce a modifying principle without committing an absurdity. (Clausewitz 3-4)

② *Othello's occupation would be gone.*

Shakespeare, *Othello* III iii 363: "Othello's occupation's gone!"

Feverstone's tendency to engage in the ironic or reductive use of clichés and quotations was mentioned in 12 n. 1. When Ransom first gets involved with Feverstone (Devine) and Weston,

> Ransom fell to thinking of Devine. He felt for him the sort of distaste we feel for someone whom we have admired in boyhood for a very brief period and then outgrown. Devine had learnt just half a term earlier than anyone else that kind of humour which consists in a perpetual parody of the sentimental or idealistic clichés of one's elders. For a few weeks his references to the Dear Old Place and to Playing the Game, to the White Man's Burden and a Straight Bat, had swept everyone, including Ransom, off their feet. But before he left Wedenshaw Ransom had already come to find Devine a bore, and at Cambridge he had avoided him, wondering from afar how anyone so flashy, and, as it were, ready-made, could be so successful. (*Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 2 15–16)

In this chapter of *That Hideous Strength*, this characteristic of Feverstone's continually recurs. Here, he quotes Othello's anguished cry—where he bids farewell to the successful life he has built among the Venetians—with subversive frivolity. Despite his exaggeration, however, he is well aware that Curry's academic "occupation" has largely been reduced to managing the conspiracies of the Progressive Element (see 32 n. 1).

③ *"Shooter"*

As Oxford, Cambridge, and Trinity College (Dublin) have traditional nicknames for the college servants—"Scouts", "Gyps", and "Skips" respectively ("Scout, gyp, skip," Fowler)—so Edgestow University and Bracton within it call their college servants "Shooters".

"I was rather sorry for old Jewel," said Mark. His motives for saying this were very mixed. To do him justice, it must be said that the quite unexpected and apparently unnecessary brutality of Feverstone's behaviour to the old man had disgusted him. And then, too, the whole idea of his debt to Feverstone in the matter of his own Fellowship had been rankling all day. Who was this man Feverstone? But paradoxically, even while he felt that the time had come for asserting his own independence and showing that his agreement with all the methods of the Progressive Element must not be taken for granted, he also felt that a little independence would raise him to a higher position within that Element itself. If the idea "Feverstone will think all the more of you for showing your teeth"[a] had occurred to him in so many words, he would have probably have rejected it as servile; but it didn't.

"Sorry for Jewel?" said Curry, wheeling round. "You wouldn't say that if you knew what he was like in his prime."

"I agree with you," said Feverstone to Mark, "but then I take the Clausewitz ① view. Total war is the most humane in the long run. I shut him up instantaneously. Now that he's got over the shock he's quite enjoying[b] himself, because I've fully confirmed everything he's been saying about the younger generation[c] for the last forty years. What was the alternative? To let him drivel on until he'd worked himself into a coughing fit or a heart attack, and give him in addition the disappointment of finding that he was treated civilly."

"That's a point of view, certainly," said Mark.

"Damn it all," continued Feverstone, "no man likes to have his stock-in-trade[d] taken away. What would poor Curry, here, do if the Die-hards one day all refused to do any die-harding?[e] Othello's occupation would be gone." ②

"Dinner is served, sir,"[f] said Curry's "Shooter"—for that is what they call a ③ college[g] servant at Bracton.

"That's all rot, Dick," said Curry as they sat down. "There's[h] nothing I should like better than to see the end of all these Die-hards and obstructionists and be able to get on with the job. You don't suppose I *like* having to spend all my time merely getting the road clear?" Mark noticed that his host was a little nettled at

---

[a] idea "Feverstone […] teeth"] *B*; idea, "Feverstone […] teeth," *M*
[b] enjoying] *BM*; He'll be enjoying *A*
[c] younger generation] *BA*; Younger Generation *M*
[d] stock-in-trade] *BA*; stock in trade *M*
[e] die-harding?] *BA*; Die-harding? *M*
[f] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*
[g] college] *BA*; College *M*
[h] "There's] *BM*; There's *A*
☛ An obvious error in A: "There's" falls at the beginning of a line so it would be easy to drop the opening quotation mark.

① *the difficulty […] elected to pursue.*

This comment reinforces what the reader learns from the conversation into which it is inserted, making it clear that it is not only for Busby, and not only on this occasion, that Curry's political scheming and manipulating have quite superseded his academic career both in practice and in the minds of his colleagues (see 31 n. 2).

Lord Feverstone's banter. The latter had an extremely virile and infectious laugh. Mark felt he was beginning to like him.

"The job being . . . ?" said Feverstone, not exactly glancing, much less winking, at Mark, but making him feel that he was somehow being included in the fun.

"Well, some of us have got work of our own to do," replied Curry, dropping his voice to give it a more serious tone, almost as some people drop their voices to speak of medical or religious matters.

"I never knew you were *that* sort of person," said Feverstone.

"That's the worst of the whole system," said Curry. "In a place like this you've either got to be content to see everything go to pieces—I mean, become stagnant—or else to sacrifice your own career as a scholar to all these infernal College politics. One of these days I *shall* chuck that side of it and get down to my book. The stuff's all there, you know, Feverstone. One long vacation clear and I really believe I could put it into shape."

Mark, who had never seen Curry baited before, was beginning to enjoy himself.

"I see," said Feverstone. "In order to keep the place going as a learned society, all the best brains in it have to give up doing anything about learning."

"Exactly!" said Curry. "That's just——"[a] and then stopped, uncertain whether he was being taken quite seriously. Feverstone burst into laughter. The Bursar,[b] who had up till now been busily engaged in eating, wiped his beard carefully and spoke.

"All that's very well in theory," he said,[c] "but I think Curry's quite right. Supposing he resigned his office as sub-warden[d] and retired into his cave. He might give us a thundering good book on economics——"[e]

"Economics?" said Feverstone,[f] lifting his eyebrows.

"I happen to be a military historian, James," said Curry. He was often somewhat annoyed at the difficulty which his colleagues seemed to find in ① remembering what particular branch of learning he had been elected to pursue.

"I mean military[g] history, of course," said Busby. "As I say, he might give us a thundering good book on military history. But it would be superseded in twenty

---

[a] just——"] *A*; just—" *BM*
[b] Bursar,] *B*; Bursar *M*
[c] said,] *BM*; Busby, *A*
[d] sub-warden] *BA*; Sub-Warden *M*
[e] economics——"] *BA*; economics—" *M*
[f] Feverstone,] *BA*; lifting *M*
[g] military] *BM*; Military *A*

years. Whereas the work he is actually doing for the College will benefit it for centuries. This whole business, now, of bringing the N.I.C.E. to Edgestow. What about a thing like that, Feverstone? I'm not speaking merely of the financial side of it, though as Bursar I naturally rate that pretty high. But think[a] of the new life, the awakening of new vision, the stirring of dormant impulses. What would any book on economics—?"[b]

"Military history," said Feverstone gently, but this time Busby did not hear him.

"What would any book on economics be, compared with a thing like that?" he continued. "I look upon it as the greatest triumph of practical idealism that this century has yet seen."

The good wine was beginning to do its good office. We have all known the kind of clergyman who tends to forget his clerical collar after the third glass:[c] but Busby's habit was the reverse. It was after the third glass that he began to remember his collar. As the wine[d] and candlelight loosened his tongue, the parson, still latent within him after thirty years' apostasy,[e] began to wake into a strange galvanic life.

"As you chaps know," he said, "I make no claim to orthodoxy. But[f] if religion is understood in the deepest sense, I have no hesitation in saying that Curry, by bringing the N.I.C.E. to Edgestow, has done more for it in one year than Jewel has done in his whole life."

"Well," said Curry modestly, "that's rather the sort of thing one had hoped. I mightn't put it exactly as you do, James——"[g]

"No, no," said the Bursar. "Of course not. We all have our different languages; but we all really mean the same thing."

"Has anyone discovered," asked Feverstone, "what, precisely, the N.I.C.E. is, or what it intends to do?"

Curry looked at him with a slightly startled expression. "That comes oddly from you, Dick," he said.[h] "I thought you were in on it[i] yourself."

---

[a] think] *BM*; Think *A*
[b] economics—?"] *A*; economics——" *B* economics—" *M*
[c] glass:] *BA*; glass; *M*
[d] the wine] *A*; wine *BM*
☛ It is unusual for A to add a word unless it enables an excision. This "the" does not seem necessary for the deletion of "and candlelight", and so appears to be Lewis's deliberate stylistic choice.
[e] parson, still […] apostasy,] *A*; parson still […] apostasy *BM*
[f] orthodoxy. But] *BM*; orthodoxy," he said. "But *A*
[g] James——"] *B*; James—" *M*
[h] said.] *BM*; said Curry. *A*
[i] it] *BA*; it, *M*

① *Careers for our sons*

Here Feverstone quotes the title of a book ironically. *Careers for our Sons* went through six editions between 1904 and 1928; it was initially compiled by G.H. Williams and, from the fifth edition, Dorothy Winifred Hughes, when it received the subtitle *A Practical Handbook to the Professions and Commercial Life*.

"Isn't it a little naïf,"[a] said Feverstone, "to suppose that being in on a thing involves any distinct knowledge of its official programme?"

"Oh well, if you mean *details*," said Curry, and then stopped.

"Surely, Feverstone," said Busby, "you're making a great mystery about nothing. I should have thought the objects of the N.I.C.E. were pretty clear. It's the first attempt to take applied science seriously from the national point of view. The difference in scale between it and anything we've had before amounts to a difference in kind. The buildings alone, the apparatus alone!—think[b] what it has done already for industry. Think how it is going to mobilise all the talent of the country:[c] and not only scientific talent in the narrower sense. Fifteen departmental directors at fifteen thousand a year each! Its own legal staff! Its own police, I'm told! Its own permanent staff of architects, surveyors, engineers! The thing's stupendous!"[d]

"Careers for our sons," said Feverstone. "I see."

"What do you mean by that, Lord Feverstone?" said Busby,[e] putting down his glass.

Blasphemy and Swearing

"God!"[f] said Feverstone, his eyes laughing. "What[g] a brick to drop. I'd quite forgotten you had a family, James."

"I agree with James," said Curry, who had been waiting somewhat impatiently to speak. "The N.I.C.E. marks the beginning of a new era—the *really* scientific era. Up to now everything has been haphazard. This is going to put science itself on a scientific basis. There are to be forty interlocking committees sitting every day and they've got a wonderful gadget—I was shown the model last time I was in town—by which the findings of each committee print themselves off in their own little compartment on the Analytical Notice-Board every half-hour. Then that report slides itself into the right position where it's connected up by little arrows with all

---

[a] naïf,"] *M*; naïve," *BA*

☛ I use the spelling of M against the witness of B & A because this was the spelling that Lewis himself favoured. This is attested in other writings where the house style, presumably, allowed for it (*Screwtape Letters* 10), and in his letters: "I mean, of course he wouldn't be *naïf* if he returned from *my* world any more than if he returned from yours" (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 669).

[b] alone!—think] *B*; alone—! Think *M*

[c] country:] *BA*; country; *M*

[d] stupendous!"] *M*; stupendous! *B*

☛ B's missing closing quotation mark is either a compositing error or a printing error resulting from worn type. A blank space where the mark should be would prove the latter, but the remainder of the line is blank so we cannot tell.

[e] Busby,] *B*; Busby *M*

[f] God!"] *B*; Lord!" *M*

☛ B's reading is more consistent with Feverstone's practice elsewhere than M's: Feverstone uses "God!" as an ejaculation later in *That Hideous Strength* (again in this section & twice in ch. 15 V) and, as Devine, in *Out of the Silent Planet* (ch. 2 17; ch. 19 205, 215), but nowhere else does he use "Lord!" alone.

[g] "What] *B*; "what *M*

the relevant parts of the other reports. A glance at the board[a] shows you the policy of the whole Institute actually taking shape under your own eyes. There'll be a staff of at least twenty experts at the top of the building working this notice-board[b] in a room rather like the Tube control rooms. It's a marvellous gadget. The different kinds of business all come out in the board[a] in different coloured lights. It must have cost half a million. They call it a Pragmatometer."

"And there," said Busby, "you see again what the Institute is already doing for the country. Pragmatometry is going to be a big thing. Hundreds of people are going in for it. Why, this Analytical Notice-Board will probably be out of date before the building is finished!"

"Yes, by Jove," said Feverstone, "and N.O. himself told me this morning that the sanitation of the Institute was going to be something quite out of the ordinary."

"So it is," said Busby sturdily. "I don't see why one should think that unimportant."

"And what do you think about it, Studdock?" said Feverstone.

"I think," said Mark, "that James touched on the most important point when he said that it would have its own legal staff and its own police. I don't give a fig for Pragmatometers and sanitation *de luxe*. The real thing is that this time we're going to get science applied to social problems and backed by the whole force of the state, just as war has been backed by the whole force of the state in the past. One hopes, of course, that it'll find out more than the old free-lance science did:[c] but what's certain is that it can *do* more."

"Damn," said Curry, looking at his watch. "I'll have to go and talk to N.O. now. If you people would like any brandy when you've finished your wine, it's in that cupboard. You'll find balloon glasses on the shelf above. I'll be back as soon as I can. You're not going, James, are you?"

"Yes," said the Bursar. "I'm going to bed early. Don't let me break up the party for you two. I've been on my legs nearly all day, you know. A man's a fool to hold any office in this College. Continual anxiety. Crushing responsibility. And then you get people suggesting that all the little research-beetles who never poke their noses outside their libraries and laboratories are the real workers! I'd like to see Glossop or any of that lot face the sort of day's work I've had to-day. Curry, my lad, you'd have had an easier life if you'd stuck to economics."

---

[a] board] *B*; Board *M*
[b] notice-board] *B*; Notice-Board *M*
[c] did:] *B*; did; *M*

"I've told you before—"[a] began Curry, but the Bursar, now risen, was bending over Lord Feverstone and telling him a funny story.

As soon as the two men had got out of the room Lord Feverstone looked steadily at Mark for some seconds with an enigmatic expression. Then he chuckled. Then the chuckle developed into a laugh. He[b] threw his lean, muscular body well back into his chair and laughed louder and louder. He was very infectious in his laughter and Mark found himself laughing too—quite sincerely and even helplessly, like a child. "Pragmatometers—palatial lavatories—practical idealism," gasped Feverstone. It was a moment of extraordinary liberation for Mark. All sorts of things about Curry and Busby which he had not previously noticed, or else, noticing, had slurred over in his reverence for the Progressive Element, came back to his mind. He wondered how he could have been so blind to the funny side of them.

"It really is rather devastating," said Feverstone when he had partially recovered, "that the people one has to use for getting things done should talk such drivel the moment you ask them about the things themselves."

"And yet they *are*, in a sense, the brains of Bracton," said Mark.

"Good Lord,[c] no! Glossop and Bill the Blizzard and even old Jewel[d] have ten times their intelligence."

"I didn't know you took that view."

"I think Glossop etc.[e] are quite mistaken. I think their idea of culture and knowledge and what not is unrealistic. I don't think it fits the world we're living in. It's a mere fantasy. But it is quite a clear idea and they follow it out consistently. They know what they want. But our two poor friends, though they can be persuaded to take the right train, or even to drive it, haven't a ghost of a notion where it's[f] going to, or why. They'll sweat blood to bring the N.I.C.E. to Edgestow: that's why they're indispensable. But what the point of the N.I.C.E. is, what the point of anything is—ask them another. Pragmatometry! Fifteen sub-directors!"

"Well, perhaps I'm in the same boat myself."

"Not at all. You saw the point at once. I knew you would. I've read everything you've written since you were in for your Fellowship. That's what I wanted to talk to you about."

---

[a] before—"] *B*; before," *M*
[b] He] *BM*; he *A*
[c] Lord,] *BA*; Lord *M*
[d] Blizzard and even old Jewel] *BA*; Blizzard, and even old Jewel,
[e] Glossop etc.] *BA*; Glossop, etc., *M*
[f] it's] *BM*; they're *A*

① *The home side, and all that, you know!*

See 12 n. 1 and 31 n. 2.

Mark was silent. The giddy sensation of being suddenly whirled up from one plane of secrecy to another, coupled with the growing effect of Curry's excellent port, prevented him from speaking.

"I want you to come into the Institute," said Feverstone.

"You mean—to leave Bracton?"

"That makes no odds. Anyway, I don't suppose there's anything you want here. We'd make Curry warden[a] when N.O. retires and——"[b]

"They were talking of making you warden."[c]

"God!" said Feverstone,[d] and stared.

Mark[e] realised that from Feverstone's point of view this was like the suggestion that he should become Headmaster of a small idiots' school, and thanked his stars that his own remark had not been uttered in a tone that made it obviously serious. Then they both laughed again.

"You," said Feverstone, "would be absolutely wasted as warden.[f] That's the job for Curry. He'll do it very well. You want a man who loves business and wire-pulling for their own sake and doesn't really ask what it's all about. If he did, he'd start bringing in his own—well, I suppose he'd call them 'ideas.' As it is, we've[g] only got to tell him that he thinks so-and-so is a man the College[h] wants, and he *will* think it. And then he'll never rest till so-and-so gets a Fellowship.[i] That's what we want the College for: a drag net, a recruiting office."

"A recruiting office for the N.I.C.E., you mean?"

"Yes, in the first instance. But it's only one part of the general show."

"I'm not sure that I know what you mean."

"You soon will. The home side,[j] and all that, you know! It sounds rather in Busby's style to say that humanity[k] is at the cross-roads. But it is the main question at the moment: which side one's on—obscurantism or order.[l] It does really look as if we now had the power to dig ourselves in as a species for a pretty staggering period;[m] to take control of our own destiny. If Science is really given a free hand it

[a] warden] *BA*; Warden *M*
[b] and——" *BA*; and *M*
[c] warden."] *BA*; Warden." *M*
[d] Feverstone,] *BA*; Feverstone *M*
[e] ¶Mark] *A*; Mark *BM*
[f] warden.] *BA*; Warden. *M*
[g] we've] *MB*; We've *A*
[h] College] *BA*; college *M*
[i] Fellowship.] *MA*; fellowship. *B*
[j] home side,] *B*; Home Side, *M*
[k] humanity] *BA*; Humanity *M*
[l] order.] *BA*; Order. *M*
[m] period; *B*; period, *M*

① *First, the interplanetary problem.*

This refers to Ransom's previous adventures on Mars (Malacandra) and Venus (Perelandra), told in *Out of the Silent Planet* and *Perelandra.* Since Feverstone, as Dick Devine, was involved with Weston in abducting Ransom to Malacandra, he is aware that it is inhabited both by planetary creatures (*hrossa*, *sèroni*, and *pfifiltriggi*) and *eldila.* Since he shows here that he knows that Ransom and Weston were on Perelandra at the same time, and that Weston died there, he may also know that Venus is inhabited.

He does not know that the "interplanetary problem" is, from his point of view and that of the N.I.C.E., more urgent than he thinks: they (together with the Tellurian dark eldils or "macrobes") believe that the eldils from beyond the moon cannot interfere in the affairs of Earth, but Weston's interferences in Malacandra and Perelandra have changed that (see ch. 14 V & ch. 16 IV).

② *the persecution of Galileo*

Galileo Galilei (1564-1642) was an early exponent of experimental methods in scientific studies. His studies and observations led him increasingly to espouse Copernican theories, which ran counter to received Aristotelian views. In 1615 he was instructed not to hold or defend Copernican views. In 1624 he received Papal permission to write on theories of the universe, but to treat the Copernican theory hypothetically only. He published his *Dialogi sopra i due massimi systemi del mondo, tolemaico e copernicano* in Florence in 1632 (see *Discarded Image* ch. 2 16). In 1633 he was formally investigated in Rome by the inquisition, admitted that he had not treated the Copernican system hypothetically only, and condemned to life imprisonment (mostly a form of house-arrest in a villa in the Florentine hills) for being suspect of heresy and made to abjure his Copernican teachings. Sobel shows his persecution to be as much a matter of political expediency as religious conviction.

can now take over the human race and recondition[a] it:[b] make man a really efficient animal. If it doesn't—well, we're done."

"Go on."

"There are three main problems. First, the interplanetary problem."[c] ①

"What on earth do you mean?"

"Well, that doesn't really matter. We can't do anything about that at present. The only man who could help was Weston."

"He was killed in a blitz, wasn't he?"

"He was murdered."

"Murdered?"

"I'm pretty sure of it, and I've a shrewd idea who the murderer was."

"Good God! Can nothing be done?"

"There's no evidence. The murderer is a respectable Cambridge don with weak eyes, a game leg,[d] and a fair beard. He's dined in this College."

"What was Weston murdered for?"

"For being on our side. The murderer is one of the enemy."

"You don't mean to say he murdered him for that?"

"Yes," said Feverstone, bringing his hand down smartly on the table. "That's just the point. You'll hear people[e] like Curry or James burbling away about the 'war' against reaction. It never enters their heads that it might be a real war with real casualties. They think the violent resistance of the other side ended with the persecution of Galileo and all that. But don't believe it. It is just seriously ② beginning. They know now that we have at last got *real* powers: that the question of what humanity is to be is going to be decided in the next sixty years. They're going to fight every inch. They'll stop at nothing."

"They can't win," said Mark.

"We'll hope not," said Lord Feverstone. "I think they can't. That is why it is of such immense importance to each of us to choose the right side. If you try to be neutral you become simply a pawn."

"Oh, I haven't any doubt which is *my* side," said Mark. "Hang it all—the preservation of the human race—it's a pretty rock-bottom obligation."

"Well, personally," said Feverstone, "I'm not indulging in any Busbyisms about that. It's a little fantastic to base one's actions on a supposed concern for what's going to happen millions of years hence; and you must remember that the

---

[a] recondition] *A*; re-/condition *B* re-condition *M*
[b] it:] *MA*; it; *B*
[c] problem."] *BA*; problem—" *M*
[d] leg,] *BM*; leg *A*
[e] people] *BM*; People *A*

① *The second problem is our rivals on this planet.*

See Filostrato's disquisition in ch. 8 III.

② *Man has got to take charge of man. […] direct manipulation of the brain.*

Lewis discusses this in *The Abolition of Man* (37):

> The final stage [of Man's conquest of Nature] is come when Man by eugenics, by pre-natal conditioning, and by an education and propaganda based on perfect applied psychology, has obtained full control of himself. […] The battle will indeed be won. But who, precisely, will have won it?
>
> For the power of Man to make himself what he pleases means […] the power of some men to make other men what *they* please. In all ages, no doubt, nurture and instruction have, in some sense, exercised this power. But […] the power will be enormously increased. Hitherto the plans of educationalists have achieved very little of what they attempted […] But the man-moulders of the new age will be armed with the powers of an omnicompetent state and an irresistible scientific technique: we shall get at last a race of conditioners who really can cut out all posterity in what shape they please.

other side would claim to be preserving humanity too. Both can be explained psycho-analytically if they take that line. The practical point is that you and I don't like being pawns, and we do rather like fighting—specially on the winning side."

"And what is the first practical step?"

"Yes, that's the real question. As I said, the interplanetary problem must be left on one side for the moment. The second problem is our rivals on this planet. I ① don't mean only insects and bacteria. There's far too much life of every kind about, animal and vegetable. We haven't really cleared the place yet. First we couldn't; and then we had aesthetic and humanitarian scruples:[a] and we still haven't short-circuited the question of the balance of Nature.[b] All that is to be gone into. The third problem is man[c] himself."

"Go on. This interests me very much."

"Man has got to take charge of man.[d] That means, remember, that some ② men have got to take charge of the rest—which is another reason for cashing in on it as soon as one can. You and I want to be the people who do the taking charge, not the ones who are taken charge of. Quite."

"What sort of thing have you in mind?"

"Quite simple and obvious things, at first—sterilisation[e] of the unfit, liquidation of backward races (we don't want any dead weights), selective breeding. Then real education, including pre-natal education. By real education I mean one that has no 'take-it-or-leave-it' nonsense. A real education makes the patient what it wants infallibly: whatever he or his parents try to do about it. Of course, it'll have to be mainly psychological at first. But we'll get on to biochemical conditioning in the end and direct manipulation of the brain."[f]

"But this is stupendous, Feverstone."

"It's the real thing at last. A new type of man: and it's people like you who've got to begin to make him."

"That's my trouble. Don't think it's false modesty:[g] but I haven't yet seen how I can contribute."

"No, but *we* have. You are what we need;[h] a trained sociologist with a radically realistic outlook, not afraid of responsibility. Also, a sociologist who can write."

---

[a] scruples:] *B*; scruples; *M*
[b] Nature.] *B*; nature. *M*
[c] man] *BA*; Man *M*
[d] man.] *BA*; Man. *M*
[e] sterilisation] *BA*; sterilization *M*
☛ Inadvertent use of American spelling by M (see *Webster's*, "Sterilize").
[f] brain."] *B*; brain. . . . " *M*
[g] modesty:] *BA*; modesty, *M*
[h] need;] *BA*; need: *M*

① *But in the meantime it* does *make a difference how things are put.*

Feverstone's cynical manipulation of language highlights a concern that Lewis shared with Chesterton: that language can be used to conceal and mislead rather than to communicate. See "Christian Mentors" in Introduction 3 (lxxvi–lxxix).

② *Jules was a distinguished novelist and scientific populariser*

Wikipedia states as fact that Horace Jules is a satirical caricature of H.G. Wells, citing Bailey (Wikipedia contributors, "H.G. Wells"); Bailey only mentions "[t]he surmised lampooning of H.G. Wells in […] *That Hideous Strength*" (226), citing no authority. The source of this apparently wide-spread idea appears to be Hillegas, who baldly asserts, almost in passing, that Jules is an "alias" for and a "caricature" of Wells (138, 140), but provides no argument or evidence. Green and Hooper consider any such caricature unlikely: they cite correspondence in which Lewis expresses his enthusiastic enjoyment of Wells's science fiction, and state, "Lewis never met Wells, nor corresponded with him, nor knew him in any way except by his [science-fiction] books" (187, see 185–87).

"You don't mean you want me to write up all this?"

"No. We want you to write it *down*—to camouflage it. Only for the present, of course. Once the thing gets going we shan't have to bother about the great heart of the British public. We'll make the great heart what we want it to be. ① But in the meantime[a] it *does* make a difference how things are put. For instance, if it were even whispered that the N.I.C.E. wanted powers to experiment on criminals, you'd have all the old women of both sexes up in arms and yapping about humanity: call[b] it re-education of the mal-adjusted[c] and you have them all slobbering with delight that the brutal era of retributive punishment has at last come to an end. Odd thing it is—the word 'experiment' is unpopular, but not the word 'experimental.'[d] You mustn't experiment on children:[e] but offer the dear little kiddies free education in an experimental school attached to the N.I.C.E. and it's all correct!"

Humane Remedial Treatment

"You don't mean that this—er—journalistic side would be my main job?"

"It's nothing to do with journalism. Your readers in the first instance would be committees[f] of the House of Commons, not the public. But that would only be a sideline.[g] As for the job itself—why, it's impossible to say how it might develop. Talking to a man like you, I don't stress the financial side. You'd start at something quite modest: say about fifteen hundred a year."

"I wasn't thinking about that," said Mark, flushing with pure excitement.

"Of course," said Feverstone, "I ought to warn you, there is the danger. Not yet, perhaps. But when things really begin to hum[h] it's quite on the cards they may try to bump you off, like poor old Weston."

"I don't think I was thinking about that either," said Mark.

"Look here," said Feverstone. "Let me run you across to-morrow to see John Wither. He told me to bring you for the week-end if you were interested. You'll meet all the important people there,[i] and it'll give you a chance to make up your mind."

"How does Wither come into it? I thought Jules was the head of the N.I.C.E." Jules was a distinguished novelist and scientific populariser whose name ② always appeared before the public in connection with the new Institute.

"Jules! Hell's bells!" said Feverstone. "You don't imagine that little mascot

---

[a] meantime] *BA*; meantime, *M*
[b] humanity: call] *BA*; humanity. Call *M*
[c] mal-adjusted] *BA*; maladjusted, *M*
[d] 'experimental.'] *BM*; 'experimental." *A*
☛ A erroneously uses a double closing quotation mark.
[e] children:] *BA*; children; *M*
[f] committees] *BA*; Committees *M*
[g] sideline.] *A*; side line. *MB*
[h] hum] *B*; hum, *M*
[i] there,] *BA*; there *M*

① *Darwin*

Charles Darwin (1809-82), the British naturalist, published his well-known and controversial book *On the Origin of Species by Means of Natural Selection, or the Preservation of Favoured Races in the Struggle for Life* in 1859. His later works include *The Descent of Man and Selection in Relation to Sex* (1871) and *The Expression of the Emotions in Man and Animals* (1872).

② *in brilliant moonlight*

Given the internal chronology of the novel, it is not possible for Mark to walk home "up the hill in brilliant moonlight" here and for the moon to be full in ch. 8 (see Appendix B: "The Chronology of the Novel"). Since it is thematically necessary for the moon to be full in ch. 8, the reader has regretfully to wish that Lewis had revised the novel with sufficient care to remove the reference to "brilliant moonlight" here.

This is not the only place in Lewis's work where the fickle moon causes him trouble. John Masefield, writing to Lewis about "The Queen of Drum" (probably in 1938), apologetically observed, "Then, on Page 55, the Crescent moon would not have risen; it would have become visible. It would have been in the sky at sunset, and the sky's darkening would have let it appear" (*Narrative Poems* 176 n. 3). Lewis accepted Masefield's correction and altered the last line of "she saw the meadow / Darkened before her with her shadow, / Because the moon had risen" to "Because the moon grew bright" and finally "Because the moon grew strong" (V 120–23, *Narrative Poems* 167 & 167 n.).

has anything to say to what really goes on? He's all right for selling the Institute to the great British public in the Sunday papers and he draws a whacking salary. He's no use for work. There's nothing inside his head except some nineteenth-century socialist stuff, and blah about the rights of man. He's just about got as far as Darwin!" ①

"Oh quite," said Mark. "I was always rather puzzled at his being in the show at all. Do you know, since you're so kind, I think I'd better accept your offer and go over to Wither's[a] for the week-end. What time would you be starting?"

"About quarter to eleven. They tell me you live out Sandown way. I could call and pick you up."

"Thanks very much. Now tell me about Wither."

"John Wither," began Feverstone, but suddenly broke off. "Damn!" he said. "Here comes Curry. Now we shall have to hear everything N.O. said and how wonderfully the arch-politician has managed him. Don't run away. I shall need your moral support."

II

The last bus had gone long before Mark left College,[b] and he walked home up the hill in brilliant moonlight. Something happened to him the moment he had let ② himself into the flat which was very unusual. He found himself, on the door-mat,[c] embracing a frightened, half-sobbing Jane—even a humble Jane, who was saying, "Oh, Mark, I've been so frightened."

There was a quality in the very muscles of his wife's body which took him by surprise. A certain indefinable defensiveness had momentarily deserted her. He had known such occasions before, but they were rare. They were already becoming rarer. And they tended, in his experience, to be followed next day by inexplicable quarrels. This puzzled him greatly, but he had never put his bewilderment into words.

It is doubtful whether he could have understood her feelings even if they had been explained to him; and Jane, in any case, could not have explained them. She was in extreme confusion. But the reasons for her unusual behaviour on this

---

[a] Wither's] *M*; Withers *B* Wither *A*

☛ The so-called "local genitive" can be realised in all three of the ways offered by M, B & A (Quirk *et al* 5.125), but only the "-'s" form is grammatically and logically justifiable. Fowler does not mention this problem, which suggests that the not-conventionally-grammatical forms were rare enough not to attract his attention.

[b] College,] *B*; College *M*

[c] door-mat,] *BA*; doormat, *M*

① *St. Anne's on the Hill*

In 1954 Lewis wrote to William Kinter (an American academic who wrote to him occasionally with questions about his books and, during the lean years of the 1950s in England, sent gifts of food), "I'm afraid the name St. Anne's was chosen merely as a plausible & euphonious name, and for no such deep reasons as you suggest" (*Collected Letters* vol. 3 497).

particular evening were simple enough. She had got back from the Dimbles at about half-past four, feeling much exhilarated by her walk[a] and hungry, and quite sure that her experiences on the previous night and at lunch were over and done with. She had had to light up and draw the curtains before she had finished tea, for the days were getting short. While doing so[b] the[c] thought had come into her mind that her fright at the dream[d] and at the mere mention of a mantle, an old man, an old man buried but not dead, and a language like Spanish, had really been as irrational as a child's fear of the dark. This had led her to remember moments when she had feared the dark as a child. Perhaps[e] she[f] allowed herself to remember them too long. At any rate, when she sat down to drink her last cup of tea, the[g] evening had somehow deteriorated. It never recovered. First[h] she found it rather difficult to keep her mind on her book. Then, when she had acknowledged this difficulty, she found it difficult to fix on any book. Then she realised that she[i] was restless. From being restless[j] she became nervous. Then followed a long time when she was not frightened, but knew that she would be very frightened indeed if she did not keep herself in hand. Then came a curious reluctance to go into the kitchen to get herself some supper, and a difficulty—indeed an impossibility—of eating anything when she had got it. And now[k] there was no disguising the fact that she was frightened. In desperation she rang up the Dimbles. "I think I might go and see the person you suggested, after all," she said. Mrs. Dimble's voice came back, after a curious little pause, giving her the address. Ironwood was the name,[l] Miss Ironwood, apparently. Jane had assumed it would be a man and was rather repelled. Miss Ironwood lived[m] out at St. Anne's on the Hill. Jane asked if she should make an appointment. "No," ① said Mrs. Dimble, "they'll be—you needn't make an appointment." Jane kept the conversation going as long as she could. She had rung up not chiefly to get the address but to hear Mother Dimble's voice. Secretly she had had a wild hope that Mother Dimble would recognise her distress and say at once, "I'll come straight up to you by car." Instead, she got the mere information and a hurried "Good night."[n]

---

[a] walk] *B*; walk, *M*
[b] so] *B*; so, *M*
[c] the] *BM*; The *A*
[d] dream] *BM*; dream, *A*
[e] Perhaps] *B*; Perhaps, *M*
[f] she] *BM*; She *A*
[g] the] *BM*; The *A*
[h] First] *B*; First, *M*
[i] she] *BM*; She *A*
[j] restless] *BA*; restless, *M*
[k] now] *BA*; now, *M*
[l] name,] *BA*; name— *BM*
[m] lived] *BM*; who lived *A*
[n] Good night."] *BA*; Good-night." *M*

① *our race's incurable habit […] which she excited in him.*

Lewis opens *The Abolition of Man* with a discussion of how humans sometimes treat statements of objective value as statements about subjective feelings projected onto the objects in which the value resides (7–9). This leads to an argument concluding that objective values exist and that to deny this leads to "men without chests"—humans lacking the magnanimous spirited element that Plato described and which mediates between intellect and appetite and makes us human (18-20). (See also Preliminary Note A: "Men Without Chests".)

Here, Lewis describes another manifestation of confusion between subjective and objective—the elevation of subjective feelings to the status of objective descriptions of value through projecting feelings onto objects. This shows that Mark is prone to such confusion, and potentially an apt pupil for Frost, who wants to train him to reject all value as mere subjectivity and to embrace the denial of all value as "Objectivity" (see: ch. 14 I & IV; 15 IV; 16 VI).

It seemed to Jane that there was something queer about Mrs. Dimble's voice. She felt that by ringing up she had interrupted a conversation about herself:[a] or no—not about herself but about something else more important, with which she was somehow connected. And what had Mrs. Dimble meant by "They'll be——"[b] "They'll be expecting you?" Horrible, childish night-nursery visions of *They* "expecting her" passed before her mind. She saw Miss Ironwood, dressed all in black, sitting with her hands folded on her knees and then someone leading her into Miss Ironwood's presence and saying "She's come"[c] and leaving her there.

"Damn the Dimbles!" said Jane to herself, and then unsaid it, more in fear than in remorse. And now that the life-line had been used and brought no comfort, the terror, as if insulted by her futile attempt to escape it, rushed back on her with no possibility of disguise, and she could never afterwards remember whether the horrible old man and the mantle had actually appeared to her in a dream or whether she had merely sat there, huddled and wild-eyed, hoping, hoping, hoping (even praying, though she believed in no one to pray to) that they would not.

And that is why Mark found such an unexpected Jane on the door-mat.[d] It was a pity, he thought, that this should have happened on a night when he was so late and so tired and, to tell the truth, not perfectly sober.

III

"Do you feel quite all right this morning?" said Mark.

"Yes, thank you," said Jane shortly.

Mark was lying in bed and drinking a cup of tea. Jane was seated at the dressing-table,[e] partially dressed, and doing her hair. Mark's eyes rested on her with indolent, early-morning[f] pleasure. If he guessed very little of the mal-adjustment between them this was partly due to our race's incurable habit of "projection." We think the lamb gentle because its wool is soft to our hands: men call a woman voluptuous when she arouses voluptuous feelings in them. Jane's body, soft though firm and slim though rounded, was so exactly to Mark's mind that it was all but impossible for him not to attribute to her the same sensations which she excited in him.

①

[a] herself:] *BA*; herself— *M*
[b] be——"] *A*; be—" *M* be." *B*
[c] saying "She's come"] *B*; saying, "She's come," *M*
[d] door-mat.] *BA*; door mat. *M*
[e] dressing-table,] *BA*; dressing table *M*
[f] early-morning] *M*; early morning *B*
☛ The adjective-noun phrase "early morning" is functioning as an adjective modifying "pleasure", and therefore should be hyphenated (Fowler, "HYPHENS" B).

"You're quite sure you're all right?" he asked again.

"Quite," said Jane, more shortly still.

Jane thought she was annoyed because her hair was not going up to her liking and because Mark was fussing. She also knew, of course, that she was deeply angry with herself for the collapse which had betrayed her last night[a] into being what she most detested—the fluttering, tearful "little woman" of sentimental fiction running for comfort to male arms. But she thought this anger was only in the back of her mind, and had no suspicion that it was pulsing through every vein and producing at that very moment the clumsiness in her fingers which made her hair seem intractable.

"Because," continued Mark, "if you felt the least bit uncomfortable, I *could* put off going to see this man Wither."

Jane said nothing.

"If I did go," said Mark, "I'd certainly have to be away for the night;[b] perhaps two."

Jane closed her lips a little more firmly and still said nothing.

"Supposing I did," said Mark, "you wouldn't think of asking Myrtle over to stay?"

"No thank you," said Jane emphatically;[c] and then, "I'm quite accustomed to being alone."

"I know," said Mark in a rather defensive voice. "That's the devil of the way things are in College at present. That's one of the chief reasons I'm thinking of another job."

Jane was still silent.

"Look here, old thing," said Mark, suddenly sitting up and throwing his legs out of bed. "There's no good beating about the bush. I don't feel comfortable about going away while you're in your present state——"[d]

"What state?" said Jane, turning round and facing him for the first time.

"Well—I mean—just a bit nervy—as anyone may be temporarily."

"Because I happened to be having a nightmare when you came home last night—or rather this morning—there's no need to talk as if I was a neurasthenic." This was not in the least what Jane had intended or expected to say.

"Now there's no good going on like that . . . " began Mark.

---

[a] night] *A*; night, *BM*
[b] night;] *B*; night, *M*
[c] emphatically;] *BA*; emphatically, *M*
[d] state——"] *BA*; state—" *M*

"Like what?" said Jane loudly,[a] and then, before he had time to reply, "If you've decided that I'm going mad you'd better get Brizeacre to come down and certify me. It would be convenient to do it while you're away. They could get me packed off while you are at Mr. Wither's without any fuss. I'm going to see about the breakfast now. If you don't shave and dress pretty quickly, you'll not be ready when Lord Feverstone calls."

The upshot of it was that Mark gave himself a very bad cut while shaving (and saw, at once, a picture of himself talking to the all-important Wither with a great blob of cotton wool[b] on his upper lip),[c] while Jane decided, from a mixture of motives, to cook Mark an unusually elaborate breakfast—of which she would rather die than eat any herself—and did so with the swift efficiency of an angry woman, only to upset[d] it all over the new stove at the last moment. They were still at the table and both pretending to read newspapers when Lord Feverstone arrived. Most unfortunately[e] Mrs. Maggs arrived at the same moment. Mrs. Maggs was that element in Jane's economy represented by the phrase "I have a woman who comes in twice a week." Twenty years earlier Jane's mother would have addressed such a functionary as "Maggs" and been addressed by her as "Mum." But Jane and her "woman who came in" called one another Mrs. Maggs and Mrs. Studdock. They were about the same age and to a bachelor's eye there was no very noticeable difference in the[f] clothes they wore. It was therefore perhaps not inexcusable that when Mark attempted to introduce Feverstone to his wife Feverstone should have shaken Mrs. Maggs by the hand:[g] but it did not sweeten the last few minutes before the two men departed.

Jane left the flat under pretence of shopping almost at once. "I really couldn't stand Mrs. Maggs to-day," she said to herself. "She's a terrible talker." So that was Lord Feverstone—that man with the loud, unnatural laugh and the mouth like a shark, and no manners. Apparently a perfect fool,[h] too! What good could it do Mark to go about with a man like that? Jane had distrusted his face. She could always

---

[a] loudly,] *BA*; icily, *M*

☛ Jane's anger here is because she feels she has lost control of of herself and her responses. Although "icily" suggests anger, it also suggests control: "loudly" both suggests anger and shows a further loss of control.

[b] cotton wool] *B*; cotton-wool *MA*

☛ This word is used four time in the novel (here and p. 50, 68 & 79) and is inconsistently spelled by M & A, which sometimes have a hyphen and sometimes not. B consistently has "cotton wool" and the last two instances in the novel show all three witnesses agreeing on "cotton wool".

[c] lip),] *BA*; lip) *M*

[d] upset] *BM*; and upset *A*

[e] unfortunately] *BM*; Unfortunately *A*

[f] the] *BM*; their *A*

[g] hand:] *BA*; hand; *M*

[h] fool,] *BA*; fool *M*

tell—there was something shifty about him. Probably he was making a fool of Mark. Mark was so easily taken in. If only he wasn't at Bracton! It was a horrible college. What did Mark see in people like Mr. Curry and the odious old clergyman with the beard? And meanwhile, what of the day that awaited her, and the night, and the next night,[a] and beyond that—for when men say they may be away for two nights it means that two nights is the minimum[b] and they hope to be away for a week. A telegram (never a trunk call) puts it all right[c] as far as they are concerned.

She must do something. She even thought of following Mark's advice and getting Myrtle to come and stay. But Myrtle was her sister-in-law, Mark's twin sister, with much too much of the adoring sister's attitude to the brilliant brother. She would talk about Mark's health and his shirts and socks with a continual undercurrent of unexpressed yet unmistakable astonishment at Jane's good luck in marrying him. No, certainly not Myrtle. Then she thought of going to see Dr. Brizeacre as a patient. He was a Bracton man and would therefore probably charge her nothing. But when she came to think of answering, to Brizeacre of all people, the sort of questions which Brizeacre would certainly ask, this turned out to be impossible. She must do something. In the end, somewhat to her own surprise, she found that she had decided to go out to St. Anne's and see Miss Ironwood. She thought herself a fool for doing so.

IV

An observer placed at the right altitude above Edgestow that day might have seen far to the south a moving spot on a main road,[d] and later, to the east, much nearer the silver thread of the Wynd, and much more slowly moving, the smoke of a train. The spot would have been the car which was carrying Mark Studdock[e] towards the Blood Transfusion Office at Belbury, where the nucleus of the N.I.C.E. had taken up its temporary abode. The very size and style of the[f] car had made a favourable[g] impression on him the moment he saw it. The upholstery was of such quality that one felt it ought to be good to eat. And what fine, male energy (Mark felt sick of women at the moment) revealed itself in the very gestures with which Feverstone settled himself at the wheel and put his elbow on the horn, and clasped his pipe

[a] night,] *BM*; night? *A*
[b] minimum] *B*; minimum, *M*
[c] right] *B*; right, *M*
[d] road,] *B*; road *M*
[e] Studdock] *BM*; Studdock was being driven *A*
[f] the] *BM*; Feverstone's *A*
[g] favourable] *BA*; favorable *M*
☛ Inadvertent use of American spelling by M (see *Webster's*).

firmly between his teeth! The speed of the car, even in the narrow streets of Edgestow, was impressive, and so were the laconic criticisms of Feverstone on other drivers and pedestrians. Once over the level crossing and beyond Jane's old college (St. Elizabeth's),[a] he began to show what his car could do. Their speed became so great that even on a rather empty road the inexcusably bad drivers, the manifestly half-witted pedestrians and men with horses, the hen that they actually ran over and the dogs and hens that Feverstone pronounced "damned lucky," seemed to follow one another almost without intermission. Telegraph posts raced by, bridges rushed overhead with a roar, villages streamed backward to join the country already devoured, and Mark, drunk with air and at once fascinated and repelled by the insolence of Feverstone's driving, sat saying "Yes"[b] and "Quite"[c] and "It was *their* fault," and stealing sidelong[d] glances at his companion. Certainly, he was a change from the fussy importance of Curry and the Bursar! The long, straight nose and the clenched teeth, the hard bony outlines beneath the face, the very way he wore his clothes, all spoke of a big man driving a big car to somewhere where they would find big stuff going on. And he, Mark, was to be in it all. At one or two moments when his heart came into his mouth he wondered whether the quality of Lord Feverstone's driving quite justified its speed.[e]

"You need never take a cross-road like that seriously," yelled Feverstone,[f] as they plunged on after the narrowest of these escapes.[g]

"Quite," bawled Mark. "No good making a fetish of them!"[h]

"Drive much yourself?" said Feverstone.[i]

"Used to a good deal," said Mark.

The smoke which our imaginary observer might have seen to the east[j] of Edgestow would have indicated the train in which Jane Studdock[k] was progressing slowly towards the village of St. Anne's. Edgestow itself, for those who had reached it from

---

[a] Elizabeth's),] *MA*; Elizabeth's) *B*
[b] saying "Yes"] *BA*; saying, "Yes," *M*
[c] and "Quite"] *BA*; and, "Quite," *M*
[d] sidelong] *BA*; side-long *M*
[e] speed.¶] *B*; speed. *M*
☛ Here (M46), M might have removed the paragraph breaks at this point and in the interchange that follows (see 47[g-i]) in order to force the chapter to end within the next two pages (on M48): as it is, chapter 2 ends about two characters from the end of the last line on page M48. Since M begins each new chapter on a new page, this saves a page mostly blank with only a few lines of text. Lake notes this set of differences (54).
[f] Feverstone,] *B*; Feverstone *M*
[g] escapes.¶] *B*; escapes. *M*
☛ See note to 47[e].
[h] them!"¶] *B*; them!" *M*
☛ See note to 47[e].
[i] Feverstone.¶] *B*; Feverstone. *M*
☛ See note to 47[e].
[j] east] *B*; East *M*
[k] Studdock] *BM*; Studdock meanwhile *A*

① *women with […] imitation fruit on their hats*

Lewis seems to have associated imitation fruit on hats with working-class women (and disliked such hats). When the woman who is to be the first queen of Narnia is brought to join her husband there Lewis tells us, "If she had had time to put on her good clothes (her best hat had imitation cherries on it) she would have looked dreadful" (*Magician's Nephew* ch. 11 127–28).

② *Jane hardly noticed them*

Compare Jane's interactions with her fellow-passenger in the train when she returns from her second visit to St. Anne's, during which she meets the Pendragon (ch. 7 III).

London, had all the appearances of a terminus:[a] but if you looked about you, you might see presently, in a bay, a little train of two or three coaches and a tank engine—a train that sizzled and exuded steam from beneath the footboards and in which most of the passengers seemed to know one another. On some days, instead of the third coach, there might be a horse-box, and on the platform there would be hampers containing dead rabbits or live poultry, and men in brown bowler hats and gaiters, and perhaps a terrier or a sheep-dog[b] that seemed to be used to travelling. In this train,[c] which started at half-past one, Jane jerked and rattled along an embankment whence she looked down through some bare branches and some branches freckled with red and yellow leaves into Bragdon Wood itself and thence through the cutting and over the level-crossing[d] at Bragdon Camp and along the edge of Brawl Park (the great house was just visible at one point) and so to the first stop at Duke's Eaton. Here, as at Woolham and Cure Hardy and Fourstones, the train settled back, when it stopped, with a little jerk and something like a sigh. And then there would be a noise of milk cans rolling and coarse boots treading on the platform and after that a pause which seemed to last long, during which the[e] autumn sunlight grew warm on the window-pane[f] and smells of wood and field from beyond the tiny station floated in and seemed to claim the railway as part of the land. Passengers got in and out of her carriage at every stop; apple-faced men, and women with elastic-side boots and ① imitation fruit on their hats, and schoolboys. Jane hardly noticed them;[g] for though she ② was theoretically an extreme democrat, no social class save her own had yet become a reality to her in any place except the printed page. And in between the stations things flitted past, so isolated from their context that each seemed to promise some unearthly happiness if one could but have descended from the train at that very moment to seize it: a house backed with a group of haystacks and wide brown fields about it, two aged horses standing head to tail, a little orchard with washing hanging on a line, and a rabbit staring at the train, whose two eyes looked like the dots, and his ears like the uprights, of a double exclamation mark. At quarter-past two she came to St. Anne's, which was the real terminus of the branch, and the end of everything. The air struck her as cold and tonic when she left the station.

Although the train had been chugging and wheezing uphill[h] for the latter half of her journey[i] there[a] was still a climb to be done on foot, for St. Anne's is one of

---

[a] terminus:] *B*; terminus; *M*
[b] sheep-dog] *B*; sheepdog *M*
[c] train,] *BM*; The train *A*
[d] level-crossing] *B*; level crossing *M*
[e] the] *BM*; while the *A*
[f] window-pane] *BA*; window pane *M*
[g] them;] *B*; them: *M*
[h] uphill] *B*; up-hill *M*
[i] journey] *B*; journey, *M*

① *a florid Edwardian mansion which had been built for a millionaire who admired Versailles*

British architecture during the reign of Edward VII (1901-10) often revived the Baroque elements of the seventeenth century but a mansion modelled on the opulent Baroque style of the Palace of Versailles may be expected to be extremely florid.

Lewis's brother Warren (W.H.) Lewis published several books on French history during the reign of Louis XIV: *The Splendid Century* includes discussion of Versailles and the life of the court there (ch. 2).

those villages perched on a hilltop which are commoner in Ireland than in England, and the station is some way from the village. A winding road between high banks led her up to it. As soon as she had passed the church she turned left, as she had been instructed, at the Saxon Cross. There were no houses on her left—only a row of beech trees and unfenced ploughland falling steeply away, and beyond that the timbered midland plain spreading as far as she could see and blue in the distance. She was on the highest ground in all that region. Presently[b] she came to a high wall on her right that seemed to run on for a great way. There was a door in it and beside the door an old iron bell-pull. A kind of flatness of spirit was on her. She felt sure she had come on a fool's errand:[c] nevertheless she rang. When the jangling noise had ceased there followed a silence so long, and in that upland place so chilly, that Jane began to wonder whether the house were inhabited. Then, just as she was debating whether to ring again or to turn away, she heard the noise of someone's feet approaching briskly on the inside of the wall.

Meanwhile Lord Feverstone's car had long since arrived at Belbury—a florid ① Edwardian mansion which had been built for a millionaire who admired Versailles. At the sides[d] it seemed to have sprouted into a widespread outgrowth of newer and lower buildings in cement,[e] which housed the Blood Transfusion Office.

---

[a] there] *MB*; There *A*
[b] Presently] *BA*; Presently, *M*
[c] errand:] *BA*; errand; *M*
[d] sides] *B*; sides, *M*
[e] and lower buldings in cement,] *BA*; cement buildings, *M*
☛ The saving of three words here prevents the chapter in M from ending with two or three words at the top of an otherwise blank page (M begins each new chapter on a new page).

THREE

Belbury and St. Anne's on the Hill [a]

I

ON his way up the wide staircase Mark caught sight of himself and his companion in a mirror. Feverstone looked, as always, master of his clothes, his face, and of the whole situation. The blob of cotton wool[b] on Mark's upper lip[c] had been blown awry during the journey, so that it looked like one half[d] of a fiercely upturned[e] false moustache and revealed a patch of blackened blood beneath it. A moment later he found himself in a big-windowed room with a blazing fire, being introduced to Mr. John Wither, Deputy Director of the N.I.C.E.

Wither was a white-haired old man with a courtly manner. His face was clean-shaven[f] and very large indeed, with watery blue eyes and something rather vague and chaotic about it. He did not appear to be giving them his whole attention,[g] and this impression must, I think, have been due to the eyes, for[h] his actual words and gestures were polite to the point of effusiveness. He said it was a great, a very great pleasure, to welcome Mr. Studdock among them. It added to the deep obligations under which Lord Feverstone had already laid him. He hoped they had had an agreeable journey. Mr. Wither appeared to be under the impression that they had come by air and, when this was corrected, that they had come from London by train. Then he began enquiring whether Mr. Studdock found his quarters perfectly comfortable and had to be reminded that they had only that moment arrived. "I suppose," thought Mark, "the old chap is trying to put me at my ease." In fact, Mr. Wither's conversation was having precisely the opposite effect. Mark wished he would offer him a cigarette. His growing conviction that this man really knew nothing about him,[i] and even that all the well-knit schemes and promises of Feverstone were at this moment dissolving into some sort of mist, was extremely

---

[a] *Anne's on the Hill*] *M*; *Anne's-on-the-Hill BA*
☛ Although B & A have hyphens here, and B & M have hyphens in their tables of contents (A lacks one), the name of the village is never hyphenated in the text in any witness (42 & 375).
[b] cotton wool] *BM*; cotton-wool *A*
☛ See note to 45[a].
[c] lip] *BM*; his lip *A*
[d] one half] *B*; one-half *M*
[e] upturned] *B*; up-turned *M*
[f] clean-shaven] *A*; clean shaven *BM*
[g] attention,] *BA*; attention *M*
[h] for] *BM*; though *A*
[i] him,] *BA*; him *M*

uncomfortable. At last he took his courage in both hands and endeavoured to bring Mr. Wither to the point by saying that he was still not quite clear in what capacity he would be able to assist the Institute.

"I assure you, Mr. Studdock," said the Deputy Director[a] with an unusually far-away[b] look in his eye, "that you needn't anticipate the slightest . . . er . . . the[c] slightest difficulty on that point. There was never any idea of circumscribing your activities and your general influence on policy, much less your relations with your colleagues and what I might call in general the terms of reference under which you would be collaborating with us, without the fullest possible consideration of your own views and, indeed, your own advice. You will find us, Mr. Studdock, if I might express myself in that way, a very happy family."

"Oh, don't misunderstand me, sir,"[d] said Mark. "I didn't mean that at all. I only meant that I felt I should like some sort of idea of what exactly I should be doing if I came to you."

"Well now, when you speak of coming to us," said the Deputy Director, "that raises a point on which I hope there is no misunderstanding. I think we all agreed that no question of residence need be raised—I mean, at this stage. We thought, we all thought, that you should be left entirely free to carry on your work wherever you pleased. If[e] you cared to live in London or Cambridge——"[f]

"Edgestow," prompted Lord Feverstone.

"Ah yes, Edgestow," here the Deputy Director turned round and addressed Feverstone. "I was just explaining to Mr. . . . er . . . Studdock,[g] and I feel sure you will fully agree with me, that nothing was further from the mind of the committee[h] than to dictate in any way, or even to advise, where Mr.——,[i] where your friend should live. Of course, wherever he lives we should naturally place air transport and road transport at his disposal. I dare say, Lord Feverstone, you have already explained to him that he will find that all questions of that sort will adjust themselves without the smallest difficulty."

"Really, sir,"[j] said Mark, "I wasn't thinking about that at all. I haven't—I

---

[a] Director] *BA*; Inspector *M*
☛ Noted by Lake (54). An obvious error in M.
[b] far-away] *BA*; far away *M*
[c] slightest . . . er . . . the] *BA*; slightest—er—the *M*
[d] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*
[e] If] *BM*; if *A*
[f] Cambridge——"] *BA*; Cambridge—" *M*
[g] Mr. . . . er . . . Studdock,] *BA*; Mr.—er—Studdock, *M*
[h] committee] *BA*; Committee *M*
[i] Mr.——,] *A*; Mr.—— *B* Mr.— *M*
[j] sir,"] *A*; Sir," *BM*

mean I shouldn't have the smallest objection to living anywhere;[a] I only——"[b]

The Deputy Director interrupted him, if anything so gentle as Wither's voice can be called an interruption. "But I assure you, Mr. . . . er . . . I[c] assure you, sir,[d] that there is not the smallest objection to your residing wherever you may find[e] convenient. There was never, at any stage, the slightest suggestion——"[f] but here Mark, almost in desperation, ventured to interrupt himself.

"It is the exact nature of the work," he said, "and of my qualifications for it that I wanted to get clear."

"My dear friend," said the Deputy Director, "you need not have the slightest uneasiness in that direction. As I said before, you will find us a very happy family, and may feel perfectly satisfied that no questions as to your entire suitability have been agitating anyone's mind in the least. I should not be offering you a position among us if there were the slightest danger of your not being completely welcome to all, or the least suspicion that your very valuable qualities were not fully appreciated. You are—you are among *friends* here, Mr. Studdock. I should be the last person to advise you to connect yourself with any organisation where you ran the risk of being exposed . . . er . . . to[g] disagreeable personal contacts."

Mark did not ask again in so many words what the N.I.C.E. wanted him to do; partly because he began to be afraid that he was supposed to know this already, and partly because a perfectly direct question would have sounded a crudity in that room—a crudity which might suddenly exclude him from the warm and almost drugged atmosphere of vague, yet heavily important, confidence in which he was gradually being enfolded. *The Inner Ring*

"You are very kind," he said. "The only thing I should like to get just a little clearer is the exact—well, the exact scope of the appointment."

"Well," said Mr. Wither in a voice so low and rich that it was almost a sigh.[h] "I am very glad you have raised that issue now in a quite informal way. Obviously neither you nor I would wish to commit ourselves, in this room, in any sense which was at all injurious to the powers of the committee. I quite understand your motives and . . . er . . . respect[i] them. We are not, of course, speaking of an

[a] anywhere;] *BA*; anywhere: *M*
[b] only——"] *BA*; only—" *M*
[c] Mr. . . . er . . . I] *BA*; Mr.—er—I *M*
[d] sir,] *A*; Sir, *BM*
[e] find] *BA*; find it *M*
[f] suggestion——"] *BA*; suggestion—" *M*
[g] exposed . . . er . . . to] *BA*; exposed—er—to *M*
[h] sigh.] *BA*; sigh, *M*
[i] and . . . er . . . respect] *B*; and—er—respect *M*

① *bed of Procrustes*

In Greek myth, Procrustes was a bandit preying on the road across the Corinthian Isthmus. He racked short men and sawed off parts of the legs of tall men in order to make them the right size for the bed he gave them. He was punished and killed by Theseus (Graves 96*k*). Hence, since the mid-nineteenth century, English has used "Procrustean" to describe any situation to which a person can be adapted only by "violent and arbitrary methods" (*NED*).

② *elasticity*

The concept of "elasticity" that Mark introduces here is the title of ch. 5, in which he finds it impossible to be sure about anything at the N.I.C.E., except that it seems unlikely that he will be able to leave it. In chapter 6 I 124 & 125 it is used by Wither to threaten Mark and by Hardcastle to mock him.

appointment[a] in the quasi-technical sense of the term; it would be improper for both of us (though, you may well remind me, in different ways) to do so—or at least it might lead to certain inconveniences. But I think I can most definitely assure you that nobody wants to force you into any kind of strait-waistcoat[b] or bed ① of Procrustes. We do not really think, among ourselves, in terms of strictly demarcated functions, of course. I take it that men like you and me are—well, to put it frankly, hardly in the habit of using concepts of that type. Everyone in the Institute feels that his own work is not so much a departmental contribution to an end already defined as a moment or grade in the progressive self-definition of an organic whole."

And Mark said—God forgive him, for he was young and shy and vain and timid[c] all in one—"I do think that is so important. The elasticity of your ② organisation is one of the things that attracts me." After that, he had no further chance of bringing the Director to the point,[d] and whenever the slow, gentle voice ceased he found himself answering it in its own style, and apparently helpless to do otherwise despite the torturing recurrence of the question, "What are we both talking *about* ?"

At[e] the very end of the interview there came one moment of clarity. Mr. Wither supposed that he, Mark, would find it convenient to join the N.I.C.E. club: even for the next few days he would be freer as a member than as someone's guest. Mark agreed and then flushed crimson like a small boy on learning that the easiest course was to become a life member at the cost of £200. He had not that amount in the bank. Of course, if he had got the new job with its fifteen hundred a year, all would be well. But had he got it? Was there a job at all?

"How silly," he said aloud, "I haven't got my cheque-book[f] with me."

A moment later he found himself on the stairs with Feverstone.

"Well?" asked Mark eagerly.

Feverstone[g] did not seem to hear him.

"Well?" repeated Mark. "When shall I know my fate? I mean, have I got the job?"

---

[a] appointment] *B*; Appointment *M*

[b] strait-waistcoat] *B*; straight waistcoat *M*

☛ An obvious error in M. The *NED*, *Webster's* and Fowler all have "strait" in this context.

[c] timid] *BA*; timid, *M*

[d] point,] *BA*; point *M*

[e] ¶At] *A*; At *BM*

[f] cheque-/book] *B*; cheque book *M* chequebook *A*

☛ It looks as though A's compositor interpreted the hyphen, which falls at the line-break in B, as being only because of the line-break, and so set "chequebook".

[g] ¶Feverstone] *A*; Feverstone *BM*

"Hullo, Guy!" bawled Feverstone suddenly to a man in the hall beneath. Next moment he had trotted down to the foot of the stairs, grasped his friend warmly by the hand, and disappeared. Mark, following him more slowly, found himself in the hall, silent, alone, and self-conscious, among the groups and pairs of chattering men, who were all crossing it towards the big folding doors on his left.

II

It seemed to last long, this standing, this wondering what to do, this effort to look natural and not to catch the eyes of strangers. The noise and the agreeable smells which came from the folding doors made it obvious that people were going to lunch. Mark hesitated, uncertain of his own status. In the end he decided that he couldn't stand there looking like a fool any longer, and went in.

He had hoped that there would be several small tables at one of which he could have sat alone. But there[a] was only a single long table, already so nearly filled that, after looking in vain for Feverstone, he had to sit down beside a stranger. "I suppose one sits where one likes?" he murmured as he did so; but the stranger apparently did not hear. He was a bustling sort of man who was eating very quickly and talking at the same time to his neighbour on the other side.

"That's just it," he was saying. "As I told him, it makes no difference to me which way they settle it. I've no objection to the I.J.P. people taking over the whole thing if that's what the D.D. wants,[b] but what I dislike is one man being responsible for it when half the work is being done by someone else. As I said to him, you've now got three H.D.s[c] all tumbling over one another about some job that could really be done by a clerk. It's becoming ridiculous. Look at what happened this morning." Conversation on these lines continued throughout the meal.

Although the food and the drinks were excellent, it[d] was a relief to Mark when people began getting up from table. Following the general movement, he recrossed the hall and came into a large room furnished as a lounge where coffee was being served. Here at last he saw Feverstone. Indeed[e] it would have been difficult not to notice him,[f] for he was the centre of a group and laughing prodigiously. Mark wished to approach him, if only to find out whether he were expected to stay the night and, if so, whether a room had been assigned to him.

[a] there] *BM*; There *A*
[b] wants,] *BA*; wants *M*
[c] H.D.s] *BA*; H.D.'s *M*
[d] it] *BM*; It *A*
[e] Indeed] *B*; Indeed, *M*
[f] him,] *B*; him *M*

① *It was certainly not […] "You can't have everything."*

This comment can be contrasted with lines from Lewis's peroration in the address "The Inner Ring" (39):

> If in your working hours you make the work your end, you will presently find yourself all unawares inside the only circle in your profession that really matters. You will be one of the sound craftsmen, and other sound craftsmen will know it. This group of craftsmen will by no means coincide with the Inner Ring or the Important People or the People in the Know. It will not shape that professional policy or work up that professional influence which fights for the profession as a whole against the public: nor will it lead to those periodic scandals and crises which the Inner Ring produces. But it will do those things which that profession exists to do and will in the long run be responsible for all the respect which that profession in fact enjoys and which the speeches and advertisements cannot maintain.

See also Preliminary Note C: "The Inner Ring".

② *Hingest: the family was of almost almost mythical antiquity*

Hingest's name suggests an ultimate descent from Hengist, the leader (with his brother Horsa) of the Anglo-Saxon invasion (see Geoffrey of Monmouth VI ch. 10–13 & VIII ch. 1, 4–7). This does not necessarily make him an enemy of Logres in his generation, and he is a courageous man who lives and dies for truth as he sees it (see also Myers 106–07).

③ *traitor, placeman, or baronetcy*

The aloofness of the Hingest family throughout its long history from both criminal activity and common considerations and aspirations is neatly indicated here: not only have Hingests never been traitors, they have never been given positions (regardless of their fitness) for political reasons (*NED*), and they have either never accepted or never been offered a patent as baronet. Their pride in having avoided this last is perhaps understandable when one remembers that James I introduced this lowest of hereditary titles in 1611 in order to raise funds by the sale of patents, or when one thinks of the puffed-up Sir Walter Elliot in Jane Austen's *Persuasion* (1818).

But[a] the knot of men round Feverstone was of that confidential kind which it is difficult to join. He moved towards one of the many tables and began turning over the glossy pages of an illustrated weekly. Every few seconds he[b] looked up to see if there were any chance of getting a word with Feverstone alone. The fifth time he did so, he found himself looking into the face of[c] one of his own colleagues, a Fellow of Bracton,[d] called William Hingest. The Progressive Element called him, though not to his face, Bill the Blizzard.

Hingest had not, as Curry anticipated, been present at the College meeting,[e] and was hardly on speaking terms with Lord Feverstone. Mark realised with a certain awe that here was a man *directly* in touch with the N.I.C.E.—one who started, so to speak, at a point beyond Feverstone. Hingest, who was a physical chemist, was one of the two scientists at Bracton who had a reputation outside England. I hope the reader has not been misled into supposing that the Fellows of Bracton were a specially distinguished body. It was certainly not the intention of the ① Progressive Element to elect mediocrities to fellowships, but their determination to elect "sound men" cruelly limited their field of choice and, as Busby had once said, "You can't have everything." Bill the Blizzard had an old-fashioned curly moustache in which white had almost, but not completely, triumphed over yellow, a large beak-like nose, and a bald head.

"This is an unexpected pleasure," said Mark with a hint of formality. He was always a little afraid of Hingest.

"Huh?" grunted Bill. "Eh? Oh, it's you, Studdock? Didn't know they'd secured your services here."

"I was sorry not to see you at the College meeting[f] yesterday," said Mark.

This was a lie. The Progressive Element always found Hingest's presence an embarrassment. As a scientist—and the only really eminent scientist they had—he was their rightful property; but he was that hateful anomaly, the wrong sort of scientist. Glossop, who was a classic, was his chief friend in College. He had the air (the "affectation" Curry called it) of not attaching much importance to his own revolutionary discoveries in chemistry and of valuing himself much more on being a Hingest: the family was of almost mythical antiquity, "never contaminated"[g] as its ② nineteenth[h]-[a]century[b] historian had said, "by traitor, placeman, or baronetcy." He ③

---

[a] But] *BM*; but *A*
[b] he] *BM*; When he *A*
[c] of] *BM*; to face with *A*
[d] Bracton,] *BA*; Bracton *M*
[e] meeting,] *BA*; Meeting *M*
[f] meeting] *BA*; Meeting *M*
[g] contaminated"] *B*; contaminated," *M*
[h] nineteenth] *B*; Nineteenth *M*

① *de Broglie*

Louis de Broglie (1892-1987), winner of the Nobel Prize for Physics in 1929 for his work on the wave characteristics of particles.

② *Almanach de Gotha*

A reference book on the nobility and high government officials of Europe, published annually. It was founded in 1763, suppressed by Hitler, then Stalin, then Adenauer between 1945 and 1959, when its publication was resumed.

had given particular offence on the occasion of de Broglie's visit to Edgestow. The Frenchman had spent his spare time exclusively in Bill the Blizzard's society, but when an enthusiastic junior Fellow had thrown out a feeler about the rich feast of science which the two *savants* must have shared, Bill the Blizzard had appeared to search his memory for a moment and then replied that he didn't think they had got on to[c] that subject. "Gassing Almanach[d] de Gotha nonsense, I suppose," was Curry's comment, though not in Hingest's presence. ① ②

"Eh? What's that? College meeting?" said the Blizzard. "What were they talking about?"

"About the sale of Bragdon Wood."

"All nonsense," muttered the Blizzard.

"I hope you would have agreed with the decision we came to."

"It made no difference what decision they came to."

"Oh!" said Mark with some surprise.

"It was all nonsense. The N.I.C.E. would have had the Wood in any case. They had powers to compel a sale."

"What an extraordinary thing! I was given to understand they were going to Cambridge if we didn't sell."

Hingest sniffed loudly.[e]

"Not a word of truth in it. As to its being an extraordinary thing, that depends on what you mean. There's nothing extraordinary in the Fellows of Bracton talking all afternoon about an unreal issue. And there's nothing extraordinary in the fact that the N.I.C.E. should wish, if possible, to hand over to Bracton the odium of turning the heart of England into a cross between an abortive American hotel and a glorified gas-works.[f] The only real puzzle is why the N.I.C.E. should want that bit of land."

"I suppose we shall find out as things go on."

"You may. I shan't."

"Oh?" said Mark interrogatively.

"I've had enough of it," said Hingest, lowering his voice, "I'm leaving to-

---

[a] teenth-] *M*; teenth *B*
☛ The ordinal number and the noun are functioning together as a compound adjective modifying "historian", so M's hyphen is preferable (see Fowler, "HYPHENS" B).
[b] century] *B*; Century *M*
[c] on to] *B*; onto *M*
[d] Almanach] *ed.*; Almanac *MB*
☛ Thus in *Brewer's*, "Almanac".
[e] ¶Hingest sniffed loudly.] *M only.*
☛ See Introduction 2 xl.
[f] gas-works] *BA*; gas works *M*

night.[a] I don't know what you were doing at Bracton, but if it was any good I'd advise you to go back and stick to it."

"Really!" said Mark. "Why do you say that?"

"Doesn't matter for an old fellow like me," said Hingest, "but they could play the devil with *you*. Of course it all depends on what a man likes."

"As a matter of fact," said Mark, "I haven't fully made up my mind." He had been taught to regard Hingest as a warped reactionary. "I don't even know yet what my job would be if I stayed."

"What's your subject?"

"Sociology."

"Huh!" said Hingest. "In that case I can soon point you out the man you'd be under. A fellow called Steele. Over there by the window, do you see?"

"Perhaps you could introduce me."

"You're determined to stay then?"

"Well, I suppose I ought at least to see him."

"All right," said Hingest. "No business of mine." Then he added in a louder voice, "Steele!"[b]

Steele turned round. He was a tall, unsmiling man with that kind of face which, though long and horse-like, has nevertheless rather thick and pouting lips.

"This is Studdock," said Hingest. "The[c] new man for your department." Then he turned away.

"Oh," said Steele. Then after a pause, "Did he say *my* department?"

"That's what he *said*," replied Mark with an attempt at a smile. "But[d] perhaps he's got it wrong. I'm supposed to be a sociologist—if that throws any light on it."

" I'm H.D. for sociology all right," said Steele. "But[e] this is the first I've heard about you. Who told you you were to be there?"

"Well, as a matter of fact," said Mark, "the whole thing is rather vague. I've just had a talk with the Deputy Director,[f] but we didn't actually go into any details."

"How did you manage to see *him*?"

---

[a] to-night] *BA*; tonight *M*
[b] Steele!"] *BA*; Steele." *M*
[c] Hingest. "The] *BA*; Hingest, "the *M*
[d] smile. "But] *B*; smile, "but *M*
[e] Steele. "But] *BA*; Steele, "but *M*
[f] Director,] *A*; Director *BM*
☛ In the discussion that follows, Feverstone's introducing Mark to the Deputy Director is excised from A, but Steele still alludes to Feverstone when he speaks to Cosser. Given the text as it stands in A, there is no way he can know this—a rare oversight on Lewis's part in his abridgement.

"Lord Feverstone introduced me."

Steele whistled. "I say, Cosser," he called out to a freckle-faced man who was passing by, "listen to this. Feverstone has just unloaded this chap on our department. Taken him straight to the D.D. without saying a word to me about it. What do you think of that?"

"Well I'm damned!" said Cosser, hardly glancing at Mark but looking very hard at Steele.

"I'm sorry," said Mark, a little more loudly and a little more stiffly than he had yet spoken. "Don't be alarmed. I seem to have been put in rather a false position. There must have been some misunderstanding. As a matter of fact I am, at the moment, merely having a look round. I'm not at all certain that I intend to stay in any case."

Neither of the other two took any notice of this last suggestion.

"That's Feverstone all over," said Cosser to Steele. Steele turned to Mark. "I shouldn't advise you to take much notice of what Lord Feverstone says here," he remarked. "This isn't his business at all."

"All I object to," said Mark, wishing that he could prevent his face from turning so red, "is being put in a false position. I only came over as an experiment. It is a matter of indifference to me whether I take a job in the N.I.C.E. or not."

"You see," said Steele to Cosser, "there isn't really any room for a man in our show—specially for someone who doesn't know the work. Unless they put him on the U.L."

"That's right," said Cosser.

"Mr. Studdock, I think," said a new voice at Mark's elbow, a treble voice which seemed disproportionate to the huge hill of a man whom he saw when he turned his head. He recognised the speaker at once. His dark, smooth face and black hair were unmistakable, and so was the foreign accent. This was Professor Filostrato, the great physiologist, whom Mark had sat next to at a dinner about two years before. He was fat to that degree which is comic on the stage, but the effect was not funny in real life. Mark was charmed that such a man should have remembered him.

"I am very glad you have come to join us," said Filostrato, taking hold of Mark's arm and gently piloting him away from Steele and Cosser.

"To tell you the truth," said Mark, "I'm not sure that I have. I was brought over by Feverstone but he has disappeared, and Steele—I'd have been in his department I suppose—doesn't seem to know anything about me."

"Bah! Steele!" said the Professor. "That is all a bagatelle. He get too big for his boots. He will be put in his place one of these days. It may be you who will

① *canaglia*

Lewis tactfully allows Filostrato to gloss his own language here: "this *canaglia*, this rabble" (*Cambridge Italian Dictionary*).

In a letter to Arthur Greeves dated 14 March 1917, Lewis said that he had begun learning Italian and described it as "the easiest language in the world" (*Collected Letters* vol. 1 294). About a month later, Kirkpatrick, Lewis's private tutor, wrote to Lewis's father: "I conceived, with the enthusiastic assent of the pupil, of course, the bold conception of mastering the Italian language in half a term. And we did it" (quoted in *Collected Letters* vol. 1 294 n.).

② *Inglesaccia*

Italian: "terrible Englishwoman" (*Cambridge Italian Dictionary*, "Inglese"; McIntosh 21). Filostrato provides a partial gloss: "a terrible *Inglesaccia!*"

③ *ecco*

Italian: "there" or "look" (*Cambridge Italian Dictionary*, "Ecco" *excl.*).

put him. I have read all your work, *si si*. Do not consider him."

"I have a strong objection to being put in a false position——"[a] began Mark.

"Listen, my friend," interrupted Filostrato. You must put all such ideas out of your head. The first thing to realise is that the N.I.C.E. is serious. It is nothing less than the existence of the human race that depends on our work: our *real* work, you comprehend? You will find frictions and impertinences among this *canaglia*, this rabble. They are no more to be regarded than your dislike of a brother officer when the battle is at his crisis." ①

"As long as I'm given something to do that is worth doing," said Mark, "I shouldn't allow anything of that sort to interfere with it."

"Yes, yes, that is right. The work is more important than you can yet understand. You will see. These Steeles and Feverstones—they are of no consequence. As long as you have the good will of the Deputy Director you snap your fingers at them. You need listen to no one but him, you comprehend? Ah—and there is one other. Do not have the Fairy for your enemy. For the rest—you laugh at them."

"The Fairy?"

"Yes. Her they call the Fairy. Oh, my God, a terrible *Inglesaccia!* She is the head of our police, the Institutional Police. *Ecco*, she come. I will present you. Miss Hardcastle, permit that I present to you Mr. Studdock." ②③

Mark found himself writhing from the stoker's or carter's hand-grip of a big woman in a black, short-skirted uniform. Despite a bust that would have done credit to a Victorian barmaid, she was rather thickly built than fat and her iron-grey hair was cropped short. Her face was square, stern, and pale, and her voice deep. A smudge of lip-stick[b] laid on with violent inattention to the real shape of her mouth was her only concession to fashion,[c] and she rolled or chewed a long black cheroot, unlit, between her teeth. As she talked she had a habit of removing this, staring intently at the mixture of lip-stick[b] and saliva on its mangled end, and then replacing it more firmly than before. She sat down immediately in a chair close to where Mark was standing, flung her right leg over one of the arms, and fixed him with a gaze of cold intimacy.

---

[a] position——"] *BA*; position—" *M*
[b] lip-stick] *BA;* lipstick *M*
[c] fashion,] *BA*; fashion *M*

① *the garden in* Peter Rabbit. *[…] the whole legend of Paradise?*

Jane considers a variety of gardens from a range of sources: *The Tale of Peter Rabbit* (1901) by Beatrix Potter (1866-1943); *The Romance of the Rose* (14th century), the Middle English translation (the first part possibly by Chaucer) of about one-third of *Roman de la Rose* by Guillaume de Lorris and Jean de Meun; the opera *Parsifal* II ii (1882) by Richard Wagner (1813-1883); ch. 2 of *Through the Looking Glass and What Alice Found There* (1871) by Lewis Carroll (1832-98). The Mesopotamian ziggurat may allude to the Hanging Gardens of Babylon.

Much (or all) of this list perhaps reflects Lewis's interests rather than Jane's. Around the age of six or seven, he "loved all the Beatrix Potter books" (*Surprised by Joy* 19, see also 18). He described *The Romance of the Rose*, together with Dante's *Divine Comedy*, the classics and the Bible as providing the essential background for the material of his *Prolegomena to Medieval Studies* lectures at Oxford (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 142)—material that was ultimately published as *The Discarded Image*. As a schoolboy, Lewis had already been seduced by Northern myth when he first discovered Wagner: he records, "From that moment Wagnerian records (principally from the *Ring*, but also from *Lohengrin* and *Parsifal*) became the chief drain on my pocket money and the presents I invariably asked for" (*Surprised by Joy* 64). Wagner was one of the enthusiasms Lewis and his friend Arthur Greeves shared all their lives, and Lewis wrote about his music in many of his letters to Arthur (*Collected Letters* vol. 1 116, 117, 119, 127, 129–30, 138–39, 164, 211–12, 281, 320–21, 381–82, 390, 898–99; vol. 2 112, 114, 170–71).

Klingor's Garden

III

Click—clack, distinct in the silence, where Jane stood waiting, came the tread of the person on the other side of the wall. Then the door opened and Jane found herself facing a tall woman of about her own age. This person looked at her with keen, non-committal eyes.

"Does a Miss Ironwood live here?" said Jane.

"Yes," said the other girl, neither opening the door any further nor standing aside.

"I want to see her, please," said Jane.

"Have you an appointment?" said the tall woman.

"Well, not exactly," said Jane. "I was directed here by Dr. Dimble who knows Miss Ironwood. He said I shouldn't need an appointment."

"Oh, if you're from Dr. Dimble that is another matter," said the woman. "Come[a] in. Now wait a moment while I attend to this lock. That's better. Now we're all right. There's not room for two on this path so you must excuse me if I go first."

The woman led her along a brick path beside a wall on which fruit trees were growing, and then to the left along a mossy path with gooseberry bushes on each side. Then came a little lawn with a see-saw in the middle of it, and beyond that a greenhouse. Here they found themselves in the sort of hamlet that sometimes occurs in the purlieus of a large garden—walking in fact down a little street which had a barn and a stable on one side and, on the other, a second greenhouse, and a potting shed and a pigstye[b]—inhabited, as the grunts and the not wholly disagreeable[c] smell informed her. After that were narrow paths across a vegetable garden that seemed to be on a fairly steep hillside and then[d] rose bushes, all stiff and prickly in their winter garb. At one place they were going along a path made of single planks. This reminded Jane of something. It was a very large garden. It was like . . . like . . . yes,[e] now she had it: it was like the garden in *Peter Rabbit*. Or was it ① like the garden in the *Romance of the Rose*? No, not in the least like really. Or like Klingsor's garden? Or the garden in *Alice*? Or like the garden on the top of some

---

[a] woman. "Come] *BM*; woman, "come *A*

[b] pigsty] *ed.*; pigstye *BM*

☛ Fowler maintains that "stye" is only possible (although unnecessary) in the sense of a pimple on the eyelid ("sty"). Unfortunately we lack A's witness here.

[c] disagreeable] *B*; agreeable *M*

☛ Pigs are associated with unpleasant smells, so "not wholly disagreeable" is to be preferred as the *lectio difficilior*.

[d] hillside and then] *B*; hillside, and then, *M*

[e] like . . . like . . . yes,] *B*; like—like—yes, *M*

① *Freud said we liked gardens because they were symbols of the female body.*

In "The Symbolism of Dreams" (1916) Freud states, "*Gardens* are common symbols of the female genitals" (158).

② *The beauty of the female is the root of joy to the female as well as to the male*

This passage is Lewis's own invention (*Collected Letters* vol. 3 1360). For more concerning Lilith, see the case studies of MacDonald and Williams in Introduction 3 ("Christian Mentors" lxxxiii–lxxxv and "The Inklings" lxxxix–xciii).

Mesopotamian ziggurat which had probably given rise to the whole legend of Paradise? Or simply like all walled gardens? Freud said we liked gardens because ① they were symbols of the female body. But that must be a man's point of view. Presumably gardens meant something different in women's dreams. Or did they? Did men and women both feel interested in the female body and even, though it sounded ridiculous, in almost the same way. A sentence rose to her memory. "The ② beauty of the female is the root of joy to the female as well as to the male, and it is no accident that the goddess of Love is older and stronger than the god." Where on earth had she read that? And, incidentally, what frightful nonsense she had been thinking for the last minute or so! She shook off all these ideas about gardens and determined to pull herself together. A curious feeling that she was now on hostile, or at least alien, ground warned her to keep all her wits about her. At that moment[a] they suddenly emerged from between plantations of rhododendron and laurel[b] and found[c] themselves at a small side door, flanked by a water butt, in the long wall of a large house. Just as they did so a window clapped shut upstairs.

A minute or two later Jane was sitting waiting in a large sparely furnished room with a shut stove to warm it. Most of the floor was bare, and the walls, above the waist-high wainscotting, were of greyish-white[d] plaster, so that the whole effect was faintly austere and conventual. The tall woman's tread died away in the passages and the room became very quiet when it had done so. Occasionally the cawing of rooks could be heard.[e] "I've let myself in for it now," thought Jane, "I shall have to tell this woman that dream and she'll ask all sorts of questions." She considered herself, in general, a modern person who could talk without embarrassment of anything:[f] but it began to look quite different as she sat in that room. All sorts of secret reservations in her programme of frankness—things which, she now realised, she had set apart as never to be told—came creeping back into consciousness. It was surprising that very few of them were connected with sex. "In dentists',"[g] said Jane, "they at least leave illustrated papers in the waiting-room."[h] She got up and opened the one book that lay on the table in the middle of the room. Instantly her eyes lit on the following words: "The beauty of the female ② is the root of joy to the female as well as to the male, and it is no accident that the

---

[a] moment] *B*; moment, *M*
[b] laurel] *B*; laurel, *M*
[c] found] *BM*; Presently they found *A*
[d] greyish-white] *B*; greyish white *M*
[e] heard.] *BM*; heard. A long time passed. *A*
[f] anything:] *B*; anything, *M*
[g] dentists',"] *M*; dentists," *B*
☛ M's reading is a more logical and grammatical realisation of the "local genitive" (see Quirk *et al* 5.125).
[h] waiting-room."] *B*; waiting room." *M*

① *divinely tall*

Tennyson describes Helen as "A daughter of the gods, divinely tall" ("A Dream of Fair Women" 87).

② *Camilla*

Lewis uses this name for a character in *The Dark Tower*, the aborted sequel to *Out of the Silent Planet*. The *Dark Tower* Camilla is a very different kind of character from the Camilla in *That Hideous Strength*: "Camilla Bembridge was what is called 'modern'. She was so free to talk about the things her grandmother could not mention that Ransom once said he wondered if she were free to talk about anything else" (ch. 6 76).

③ *just as Jane had seen her when dreaming—if she were dreaming—last night in the flat.*

See ch. 2 II.

goddess of Love is older and stronger than the god. To desire the desiring of her own beauty is the vanity of Lilith, but to desire the enjoying of her own beauty the obedience of Eve, and to both it is in the lover that the beloved tastes her own delightfulness. As obedience is the stairway of pleasure, so humility is the . . ."[a]

At that moment the door was suddenly opened. Jane turned crimson as she shut the book and looked up. The same girl who had first let her in had apparently just opened the door and was still standing in the doorway. Jane[b] now conceived for her that almost passionate admiration which women, more often than is supposed, feel for other women whose beauty is not of their own type. It would be nice, Jane thought, to be like that—so straight, so forthright, so valiant, so fit to be mounted on a horse, and so divinely tall. ①

"Is . . . is[c] Miss Ironwood in?" said Jane.

"Are you Mrs. Studdock?" said the girl.

"Yes," said Jane.

"I will bring you to her at once," said the other. "We have been expecting you. My name is Camilla—Camilla Denniston."

Jane followed her. From the narrowness and plainness of the passages Jane judged that they were still in the back parts of the house, and that, if so, it must be a very large house indeed. They went a long way before Camilla knocked at a door and stood aside for Jane to enter, after saying in a low, clear voice ("like a servant," Jane thought),[d] "She has come." And Jane went in; and there was Miss Ironwood ② dressed all in black and sitting with her hands folded on her knees, just as Jane had ③ seen her when dreaming—if she were dreaming—last night in the flat.

"Sit down, young lady," said Miss Ironwood.

The hands which were folded on her knees were very big and boney,[e] though they did not suggest coarseness, and even when seated Miss Ironwood was extremely tall. Everything about her was big—the nose, the unsmiling lips, and the grey eyes. She was perhaps nearer sixty than fifty. There was an atmosphere in the room which Jane found uncongenial.

"What is your name, young lady?" said Miss Ironwood, taking up a pencil and a note-book.[f]

---

[a] the . . ."] *B*; the—" *M*
[b] Jane] *BM*; When at length the other girl returned Jane *A*
[c] Is . . . is] *BA*; Is—is *M*
[d] thought),] *B*; thought) *M*
[e] boney,] *A*; boney *BM*
[f] note-book.] *BA*; notebook. *M*
☛ While B & A consistently use "note-book", M has variously "note-book" (63 & 204), "notebook" (8, here, 128), and "note book" (329). This might suggest a compositor working with

"Jane Studdock."

"Are you married?"

"Yes."

"Does your husband know you have come to us?"

"No."

"And your age, if you please?"

"Twenty-three."

"And now," said Miss Ironwood, "what have you to tell me?"

Jane took a deep breath. "I've been having bad dreams and—and feeling depressed lately,"[a] she said.

"What were the dreams?" asked Miss Ironwood.

Jane's narrative—she did not do it very well—took some time. While she was speaking she kept her eyes fixed on Miss Ironwood's large hands and her black skirt and the pencil and the note-book. And that was why she suddenly stopped. For as[b] she proceeded she saw Miss Ironwood's hand cease to write and the fingers wrap themselves round the pencil: immensely strong fingers they seemed. And every moment they tightened, till the knuckles grew white and the veins stood out on the backs of the hands, and at last, as if under the influence of some stifled emotion, they[c] broke the pencil in two. It was then that Jane stopped in astonishment and looked up at Miss Ironwood's face. The wide grey eyes were still looking at her with no change of expression.

"Pray continue, young lady," said Miss Ironwood.

Jane resumed her story. When she had finished, Miss Ironwood put a number of questions. After that she became silent for so long that Jane said:[d]

"Is there, do you think, anything very serious[e] wrong[f] with me?"

"There is nothing wrong with you," said Miss Ironwood.

"You mean it will go away?"

"I have no means of telling. I should say probably not."

Disappointment shadowed Jane's face.[g]

---

a house style demanding "notebook" from a manuscript or typescript using "note-book", but this can be no more than speculation.

[a] lately,"] *BM*; lately." *A*

[b] as] *BM*; As *A*

[c] they] *BM*; and *A*

[d] said:] *BA*; said, *M*

[e] serious] *BA*; seriously *M*

☛ Either reading is acceptable ("serious" modifying "anything" or "seriously" modifying "wrong") so I accept A's reading.

[f] wrong] *MA*; wron *B*

☛ An obvious printing error in B: the missing letter and blank gap suggest worn type.

[g] ¶Disappointment shadowed Jane's face.] *M only.*

☛ See Introduction 2 xl.

① *"Tudor," […] her ancient ancestry.*

The Tudor family can be traced back to thirteenth-century Wales. Its non-royal members seem always to have remained settled in Wales. Henry VII (1457-1509) was the grandson of Owen Tudor (*c.*1400-1461) and Catherine de Valois, the widow of Henry V; he founded the Tudor royal dynasty in 1485, and it endured until 1603.

Citing a letter Lewis wrote in 1954, Ward argues that Lewis also ascribed a mythical significance to the Tudors:

> He believed that the mythical British or Celtic line (the heritage of Logres) was the one "that goes back through the Tudors to Cadwallader and thence to Arthur, Uther, Cassibelan, Lear, Lud, Brut, Aeneas, Jupiter."
>
> (Ward ch. 3 12%, citing *Collected Letters* vol. 3 420)

② *Warwickshire branch of the family*

A "Warwickshire branch" of the Tudor family is presumably Lewis's invention (Carr).

③ *Battle of Worcester*

The final battle of the English Civil Wars (1651), after which Charles II fled to France, his army destroyed.

"Then—can't anything be done about it? They were horrible dreams—horribly vivid, not like dreams at all."

"I can quite understand that."

"Is it something that can't be cured?"

"The reason you cannot be cured is that you are not ill."

"But there must be something wrong. It's surely not natural to have dreams like that."

There was a pause. "I think," said Miss Ironwood, "I had better tell you the whole truth."

"Yes, do," said Jane in a strained voice. The other's words had frightened her.

"And I will begin by saying this," continued Miss Ironwood. "You are a more important person than you imagine."

Jane said nothing, but thought inwardly, "She is humouring me. She thinks I am mad."

"What was your maiden name?" asked Miss Ironwood.

"Tudor," said Jane. At any other moment she would have said it rather self-consciously, for she was very anxious not to be supposed vain of her ancient ancestry. ①

"The Warwickshire branch of the family?" ②

"Yes."

"Did you ever read a little book—it is only forty pages long—written by an ancestor of yours about the Battle[a] of Worcester?" ③

"No. Father had a copy—the only copy, I think he said. But I never read it. It was lost when the house was broken up after his death."

"Your father was mistaken in thinking it the only copy. There are at least two others: one is in America, and the other is in this house."

"Well?"

"Your ancestor gave a full and, on the whole, correct account of the battle, which he says he completed on the same day on which it was fought. But he was not at it. He was in York at the time."

Jane, who had not really been following this, looked at Miss Ironwood.

"If he was speaking the truth," said Miss Ironwood, "and we believe that he was, he dreamed it. Do you understand?"

"Dreamed about the battle?"

"Yes. But dreamed it right. He saw the real battle in his dream."

---

[a] Battle] *A*; battle *BM*

"I don't see the connection."

"Vision—the power of dreaming realities—is sometimes hereditary," said Miss Ironwood.

Something seemed to be interfering with Jane's breathing. She felt a sense of injury—this was just the sort of thing she hated: something out of the past, something irrational and utterly uncalled for, coming up from its den and interfering with her.

"Can it be proved?" she asked. "I mean;[a] we have only his word for it."

"We have your dreams,"[b] said Miss Ironwood. Her voice, always grave, had become stern. A fantastic thought crossed Jane's mind. Could this old woman have some idea that one ought not to call even one's remote ancestors liars?

"My dreams?" she said a little sharply.

"Yes," said Miss Ironwood.

"What do you mean?"

"My opinion is that you have seen real things in your dreams. You have seen Alcasan as he really sat in the condemned cell:[c] and you have seen a visitor whom he really had."

"But—but—oh, this is ridiculous," said Jane. "*That* part was a mere coincidence. The rest was just nightmare. It was all impossible. He screwed off his head, I tell you. And they . . . dug[d] up the horrible old man. They made him come to life."

"There are some confusions there, no doubt. But in my opinion there are realities behind even those episodes."

"I am afraid I don't believe in that sort of thing," said Jane coldly.

"Your upbringing makes it natural that you should not," replied Miss Ironwood. "Unless, of course, you have discovered for yourself that you have a tendency to dream real things."

Jane thought of the book on the table which she had apparently remembered before she saw it:[e] and then there was Miss Ironwood's own appearance—that, too,[f] she had seen before she saw it. But it must be nonsense.

"Can you, then,[g] do nothing for me?"

"I can tell you the truth," said Miss Ironwood. "I have tried to do so."

---

[a] mean;] *BA*; mean, *M*
[b] dreams,"] *BM*; dreams." *A*
[c] cell:] *BA*; cell, *M*
[d] they . . . dug] *BA*; they—dug *M*
[e] it:] *B*; it, *M*
[f] that, too,] *B*; that too *M*
[g] you, then,] *BA*; you then *M*

"I mean, can you not stop it—cure it?"

"Vision is not a disease."

"But I don't *want* it," said Jane passionately. "I must stop it. I hate this sort of thing." Miss Ironwood said nothing.

"Don't you even know of anyone who could stop it?" said Jane. "Can't you recommend anyone?"

"If you go to an ordinary psychotherapist," said Miss Ironwood, "he will proceed on the assumption that the dreams merely reflect your own subconscious.[a] He would try to treat you. I do not know what would be the results of treatment based on that assumption. I am afraid they might be very serious. And—it[b] would certainly not remove the dreams."

"But what is this all about?" said Jane. "I want to lead an ordinary life. I want to do my own work. It's unbearable! Why should I be selected for this horrible thing?"

"The answer to that is known only to authorities much higher than myself."

There was a short silence. Jane made a vague movement and said, rather sulkily, "Well, if you can do nothing for me, perhaps I'd better be going . . ."[c] Then suddenly she added, "But how can you *know* all this? I mean . . . what[d] realities are you talking about?"

"I think," said Miss Ironwood, "that you yourself have probably more reason to suspect the truth of your dreams than you have yet told me. If not, you soon will have. In the meantime I will answer your question. We know your dreams to be partly true because they fit in with information we already possess. It was because he saw their importance that Dr. Dimble sent you to us."

"Do you mean he sent me here not to be cured but to give information?" said Jane. The idea fitted in with things she had observed in his manner when she first told him.

"Exactly."

"I wish I had known that a little earlier," said Jane coldly, and now definitely getting up to go. "I'm afraid it has been a misunderstanding. I had imagined Dr. Dimble was trying to help me."

"He was. But he was also trying to do something more important at the same time."

---

[a] subconscious.] *BA*; sub-conscious. *M*
[b] it] *BM*; It *A*
[c] going . . ."] *BA*; going—" *M*
[d] mean . . . what] *B*; mean—what *M*

"I suppose I should be grateful for being considered at all," said Jane dryly.[a] "And[b] how, exactly, was I to be helped by—by all this sort of thing?" The attempt at icy irony collapsed as she said these last words and red, undisguised anger rushed back into her face. In some ways she was very young.

"Young lady," said Miss Ironwood. "You do not at all realise the seriousness of this matter. The things you have seen concern something compared with which the happiness, or even the life, of you and me[c] *is* of no importance. I must beg you to face the situation. You cannot get rid of your gift. You can try to suppress it, but you will fail, and you will be very badly frightened. On the other hand, you can put it at our disposal. If you do so, you will be much less frightened in the long run and you will be helping to save the human race from a very great disaster. Or thirdly, you may tell someone else about it. If you do that, I warn you that you will almost certainly fall into the hands of other people who are at least as anxious as we to make use of your faculty and who will care no more about your life and happiness than about those of a fly. The people you have seen in your dreams are real people. It is not at all unlikely that they know you have, involuntarily, been spying on them. And, if so, they will not rest till they have got hold of you. I would advise you, even for your own sake, to join our side."

"You keep on talking of *we* and *us*.[d] Are you some kind of company?" *The Inner Ring*

"Yes. You may call it a company."

Jane had been standing for the last few minutes:[e] and she had almost been believing what she heard. Then suddenly[f] all her repugnance came over her again—all her wounded vanity, her resentment of the meaningless complication in which she seemed to be caught, and her general dislike of the mysterious and the unfamiliar. At that moment nothing seemed to matter but to get out of that room and away from the grave, patient voice of Miss Ironwood. "She's made me worse already," thought Jane, still regarding herself as a patient. Aloud, she said:[g]

"I must go home now. I don't know what you are talking about. I don't want to have anything to do with it."

---

[a] dryly.] *BA*; drily, *M*
[b] "And] *B*; "and *M*
[c] me] *BA*; me, *M*
[d] *we* and *us*.] *BA*; *We* and *Us*. *M*
[e] minutes:] *BA*; minutes; *M*
[f] suddenly] *BA*; suddenly, *M*
[g] said:] *BA*; said, *M*

① *a suffragette, a pacifist, and a British Fascist*

Miss Hardcastle may have been a suffragette prior to 1918, when women over 30 received the vote, or prior to 1928, when women between 21 and 30 received the vote, or during both periods. She may have been a pacifist during World War I or World War II or both (the novel is set "vaguely 'after the war' " (5): it seems unlikely that an excitement-loving person like Miss Hardcastle would bother to be a pacifist in a time of peace. The British Fascists were formed in 1924 from the British Fascisti founded the previous year; their history is one of continual splintering as they struggled to define their political focus and in 1934 they faded out.

IV

Mark discovered in the end that he was expected to stay, at least for the night, and when he went up to dress for dinner he was feeling more cheerful. This was partly due to a whisky-and-soda[a] taken with "Fairy" Hardcastle immediately before,[b] and partly to the fact that by a glance at the mirror he saw that he could now remove the objectionable piece of cotton wool from his lip. The bedroom with its bright fire and its private bathroom attached had also something to do with it. Thank goodness[c] he had allowed Jane to talk him into buying that new dress-suit![d] It looked very well, laid out on the bed; and he saw now that the old one really would not have done. But what had reassured him most of all was his conversation with the Fairy.

It would be misleading to say that he liked her. She had indeed excited in him all the distaste which a young man feels at the proximity of something rankly, even insolently, sexed[e] and at the same time wholly unattractive. And something in her cold eye had told him that she was well aware of this reaction and found it amusing. She had told him a good many smoking-room stories. Often before now Mark had shuddered at the clumsy efforts of the emancipated female to indulge in this kind of humour, but his shudders had always been consoled by a sense of superiority. This time he had the feeling that he was the butt; this woman was exasperating male prudery for her diversion. Later on[f] she drifted into police reminiscences. In spite of some initial scepticism, Mark was gradually horrified by her assumption that about thirty per cent of our murder trials ended by the hanging of an innocent man. There were details, too, about the execution shed which had not occurred to him before.

All this was disagreeable. But it was made up for by the deliciously esoteric character of the conversation. Several times that day he had been made to feel himself an outsider:[g] that feeling completely disappeared while Miss Hardcastle was talking to him. He had the sense of getting *in*. Miss Hardcastle had[h] apparently lived an exciting life. She had been, at different times, a suffragette, a pacifist, and a British Fascist. She had been manhandled by the police and imprisoned. On the

The Inner Ring ①

[a] whisky-and-soda] *A*; whisky and soda *BM*
[b] before,] *B*; before *M*
[c] goodness] *BA*; goodness, *M*
[d] dress-suit!] *BA*; dress suit *M*
[e] insolently, sexed] *BA*; insolently sexed, *M*
[f] on] *B*; on, *M*
[g] outsider:] *BA*; outsider; *M*
[h] had] *MB*; She had *A*

other hand, she had met Prime Ministers,[a] Dictators, and famous film stars; all her history was secret history. She knew from both ends what a police force could do and what it could not, and there were in her opinion very few things it could not do. "Specially now," she said. "Here in the Institute, we're backing the crusade against Red Tape."

Mark gathered that, for[b] the Fairy, the police side of the Institute was the really important side. It existed to relieve the ordinary executive of what might be called all sanitary cases—a category which ranged from vaccination to charges of unnatural vice—from which, as she pointed out, it was only a step to bringing in all cases of blackmail. As regards crime in general, they had already popularised in the Press[c] the idea that the Institute should be allowed to experiment pretty largely in the hope of discovering how far humane, remedial treatment could be substituted for the old notion of "retributive" or "vindictive" punishment. That was where a lot of legal Red Tape stood in their way. "But there are only two papers we don't control," said the Fairy. "And we'll smash them. You've got to get the ordinary man into the state in which he says 'Sadism' automatically when he hears the word Punishment." And then one would have *carte blanche*. Mark did not immediately follow this. But the Fairy pointed out that what had hampered every English police force up to date was precisely the idea of deserved punishment. For desert was always finite: you could do so much to the criminal and no more. Remedial treatment, on the other hand, need have no fixed limit; it could go on till it had effected a cure, and those who were carrying it out would decide when *that* was. And if cure were humane and desirable, how much more prevention? Soon anyone who had ever been in the hands of the police at all would come under the control of the N.I.C.E.; in the end, every citizen. "And that's where you and I come in, sonny,"[d] added the Fairy, tapping Mark's chest with her forefinger. "There's no distinction in the long run between police work and sociology. You and I've got to work hand in hand."

Humane Remedial Treatment

This had brought Mark back to his doubts as to whether he were really being given a job and, if so, what it was. The Fairy had warned him that Steele was a dangerous man. "There are two people you want to be very cautious about," she said. "One is Frost and the other is old Wither." But she had laughed at his fears in general. "You're in all right, sonny,"[e] she said. "Only don't be too particular about

[a] Ministers,] *BM*; Ministers and *A*
[b] for] *BM*; For *A*
[c] Press] *A*; press *BM*
[d] sonny,"] *ed.*; Sonny," *BM*
☛ Following A's usage (see next note).
[e] sonny,"] *A*; Sonny," *BM*

① *There* are *no sciences like sociology. […] from every Englishman*

The term "sociology" was coined by Auguste Comte (1798–1857). What precisely the discipline entails was not settled for many decades, and in the years when Lewis was planning and writing *That Hideous Strength* sociology was by no means an established subject. The entry on "Sociology" in *The Encyclopædia Britannica* of 1939 concludes:

> It may well be that effective progress towards that establishment and maintenance of sociology as the culminating synthetic member in the hierarchy of the sciences awaits the coming of a generation of students and investigators, observers and interpreters all of whom shall have been trained […in various underlying theories and techniques and a number of observational, descriptive and interpretive skills, after which …] the coming sociologist will work towards the long-delayed synthetics of the new specialisms and of these specialisms with the older studies and knowledges.

Clearly, one of sociology's aims by the beginning of the 1940s was its acceptance among the sciences—Hingest would not have been the only one to snap, "There *are* no sciences like sociology." Lewis shares his creation's views: in *The Screwtape Letters* (1942) the demon Screwtape advises the inexperienced tempter Wormwood: "Do not attempt to use science (I mean, the real sciences) as a defence against Christianity. They will positively encourage him to think about realities he can't touch and see. […] If he must dabble in science, keep him on economics and sociology" (13).

The article quoted above also shows that sociology's purpose was thought to be to describe or model society: there is no suggestion that the sociologist should aim to manipulate society or that "social planning" should be part of sociology. But it is easy to see how sociology could be made to "fit in" with the social planning the N.I.C.E. intends to institute.

The idea of authorities interfering in society for its own good was something that made Lewis very uneasy: in this he follows Chesterton, who objects to any scheme of social improvement (real or purported) in which the authorities

> cannot trust the normal man to rule in the home, and most certainly do not want him to rule in the State. The do not really want to give him any political power. They are willing to give him a vote, because they have long discovered that it need not give him any power. They are not willing to give him a house, or a wife, or a child, or a dog, or a cow, or a piece of land, because these things really do give him power.
> (*Outline of Sanity* 229)

Lewis concludes the essay "Willing Slaves of the Welfare State" thus (123–24):

> We have on the one hand a desperate need: hunger, sickness and the dread of war. We have, on the other, the conception of something that might meet it: omnicompetent global technocracy. Are not these the ideal opportunity for enslavement? This is how it has entered before: a desperate need (real or apparent) in the one party, a power (real or apparent) to relieve it, in the other. In the ancient world individuals sold themselves as slaves, in order to eat. So in society. […] Perhaps the terrible bargain will be made again. We cannot blame men for making it. We can hardly wish them not to. Yet we can hardly bear that they should.
>
> The question about progress has become the question whether we can discover any way of submitting to the world-wide paternalism of a technocracy without losing all the personal privacy and independence. […]
>
> […] To live life in his own way, to call his house his castle, enjoy the fruits of his own labour, to educate his children as his conscience directs, to save for their prosperity after his death—these are wishes deeply ingrained […]. Their realization is almost as necessary to our virtues as to our happiness. From their total frustration disastrous results, both moral and psychological, might follow.
>
> All this threatens us even if the form of society which our needs point to should prove an unparalleled success. But is that certain? What assurance have we that our masters will or can keep the promise which induced us to sell ourselves? Let us not be deceived by phrases about "Man taking charge of his own destiny". All that can really happen is that some men will take charge of the destiny of the others. […] The more completely we are planned the more powerful they will be. Have we discovered some new reason why, this time, power should not corrupt as it has done before?

In *That Hideous Strength*, the authorities attempting to take control are already corrupt. The high officials of the N.I.C.E. cynically have no intention other than abusing the power they can gain

what exactly you've got to do. You'll find out as it comes along. Wither doesn't like people who try to pin him down. There's no good saying you've come here to do *this* and you won't do *that*. The game's too fast just at present for that sort of thing. You've got to make yourself useful. And don't believe everything you're told."

At dinner Mark found himself seated next to Hingest.

"Well," said Hingest, "have they finally roped you into it, eh?"

"I rather believe they have," said Mark.

"Because," said Hingest, "if you thought the better of it I'm motoring back to-night[a] and I could give you a lift."

"You haven't yet told me why you are leaving us yourself," said Mark.

"Oh,[b] well, it all depends what a man likes. If you enjoy the society of that Italian eunuch and the mad parson and that Hardcastle girl—her grandmother would have boxed her ears if she were alive—of course[c] there's nothing more to be said."

"I suppose it's hardly to be judged on purely social grounds—I mean, it's something more than a club."

"Eh? Judged? Never judged anything in my life, to the best of my knowledge, except at a flower show. It's all a question of taste. I came here because I thought it had something to do with science. Now that I find it's something more like a political conspiracy, I shall go home. I'm too old for that kind of thing, and if I wanted to join a conspiracy, this one wouldn't be my choice."

"You mean, I suppose, that the element of social planning doesn't appeal to you? I can quite understand that it doesn't fit in with your work as it does with sciences like sociology,[d] but——"[e]

"There *are* no sciences like sociology.[f] And if I found chemistry beginning to ① fit in with a secret police run by a middle-aged virago who doesn't wear corsets and a scheme for taking away his farm and his shop and his children from every Englishman, I'd let chemistry go to the devil and take up gardening again."

"I think I *do* understand that sentiment that still attaches to the small man, but when you come to study the reality as I have had to do——"[g]

"I should want to pull it to bits and put something else in its place. Of course. That's what happens when you study men: you find mare's nests. I happen

---

[a] to-night] *BA*; tonight *M*
[b] "Oh,] *BA*; "Oh *M*
[c] course] *BA*; course, *M*
[d] sociology,] *BA*; Sociology, *M*
[e] but——"] *BA*; but—" *M*
[f] sociology.] *BA*; Sociology. *M*
[g] do——"] *B*; do—" *M*

through a promise to use science to improve society—see Lewis's introduction of the N.I.C.E. (ch. 1 IV and Feverstone's comments to Mark about preferring "the winning side" (ch. 2 I). But even if their N.I.C.E.'s intentions were entirely honourable and philanthropic, Lewis, like Chesterton before him, would have had very grave doubts about the cost, in human freedom, of their social planning.

to believe that you can't study men,[a] you can only get to know them, which is quite a different thing. Because you study them, you want to make the lower orders govern the country and listen to classical music, which is balderdash. You also want to take away from them everything which makes life worth living,[b] and not only from them but from everyone except a parcel of prigs and professors."

"Bill!" said Fairy Hardcastle suddenly, from the far side of the table, in a voice so loud that even he could not ignore it.

Hingest[c] fixed his eyes upon her and his face grew a dark red.

"Is it true," bawled the Fairy, "that you're going off by car immediately after dinner?"

"Yes, Miss Hardcastle, it is."

"I was wondering if you could give me a lift."

"I should be happy to do so," said Hingest in a voice not intended to deceive, "if we are going in the same direction."

"Where are you going?"

"I am going to Edgestow."

"Will you be passing Brenstock?"

"No, I leave the by-pass at the cross-roads[d] just beyond Lord Holywood's front gate and go down what they used to call Potter's Lane."

"Oh, damn! No good to me. I may as well wait till the morning."

After this Mark found himself engaged by his left-hand[e] neighbour and did not see Bill the Blizzard again until he met him in the hall after dinner. He was in his overcoat and just ready to step into[f] his car.

He began talking as he opened the door,[g] and thus Mark was drawn into accompanying him across the gravel sweep to where his car was parked.

"Take my advice, Studdock," he said,[h] "or[a] at least think it over. I don't

---

[a] men,] *B*; men; *M*
[b] living,] *B*; living *M*
[c] ¶Hingest] *A*; Hingest *MB*
[d] cross-roads] *B*; crossroads *M*
☛ The first two instances of "cross-road(s)" in the text (37 & 47) are hyphenated in all witnesses. In this instance and for the remainder of the text, M always has "crossroad(s)" (here, 77, 165 & 227). All three witnesses have "crossroads" on p. 77, after which A reverts to the hyphenated form while B has a hyphen once and two separate words once (227 & 165). Following A's usual preference, I use the hyphenated form throughout.
[e] left-hand] *BA*; left hand *M*
[f] step into] *BA*; go to *M*
☛ B & A's reading is a long-attested use of "step into", denoting moving into something like a vehicle involving a step up or down (*NED*, "Step" *v.* II 14. b). Possibly M's American editor found the phrase opaque and changed it—it is not a meaning given under "*To step in* or *into*" in *Webster's*.
[g] door,] *A*; door *BM*
[h] said,] *B*; said. *MA*

believe in sociology[b] myself, but you've got quite a decent career before you if you stay at Bracton. You'll do yourself no good by getting mixed up with the N.I.C.E.—and, by God, you'll do nobody else any good either."

"I suppose there are two views about everything," said Mark.

" Eh? Two views? There are a dozen views about everything until you know the answer. Then there's never more than one. But it's no affair of mine. Good night."

"Good night, Hingest," said Mark. The other started[c] up the car and drove off.

Appendix B

There was a touch of frost in the air. The shoulder of Orion, though Mark did not know even that earnest constellation, flamed at him above the treetops.[d] He felt a hesitation about going back into the house. It might mean further talk with interesting and influential people:[e] but it might also mean feeling once more an outsider, hanging about and watching conversations which he could not join. Anyway, he was tired. Strolling along the front of the house he came presently to another and smaller door by which, he judged, one could enter without passing through the hall or the public rooms. He did so, and went upstairs for the night immediately.

V

Camilla Denniston showed Jane out—not by the little door in the wall at which she had come in, but by the main gate which opened on the same road about a hundred yards farther on. Yellow light from a westward gap in the grey sky was pouring a short-lived and chilly brightness over the whole landscape. Jane had been ashamed to show either temper or anxiety before Camilla:[f] as a result both had in reality been diminished when she said good-bye.[g] But a settled distaste for what she called "all this nonsense"[h] remained. She was not indeed sure that it was nonsense:[i] but she had already resolved to treat it as if it were. She would not get "mixed up in it," would not be drawn in. One had to live one's own life. To avoid entanglements and interferences had long been one of her first principles. Even

---

[a] "or] *B*; "Or *M*
[b] sociology] *B*; Sociology *M*
[c] started] *MB*; He started *A*
[d] treetops.] *B*; tree-tops. *M*
[e] people:] *B*; people; *M*
[f] Camilla:] *B*; Camilla; *M*
[g] good-bye.] *B*; goodbye. *M*
[h] called "all this nonsense"] *B*; called, "all this nonsense," *M*
[i] nonsense:] *B*; nonsense; *M*

when she had discovered that she was going to marry Mark if he asked her, the thought "But I must still keep up my own life"[a] had arisen at once and had never for more than a few minutes at a stretch been absent from her mind. Some resentment against love itself, and therefore against Mark, for thus invading her life, remained. She was at least very vividly aware how much a woman gives up in getting married. Mark seemed to her insufficiently aware of this. Though she did not formulate it, this fear of being invaded and entangled was the deepest ground of her determination not to have a child—or not for a long time yet. One had one's own life to live.

Almost as soon as she got back[b] to the[c] flat the[d] telephone went. "Is that you, Jane?" came a voice. "It's me, Margaret Dimble. Such a dreadful thing's happened. I'll tell you when I come. I'm too angry to speak at the moment. Have you a spare bed by any chance? What? Mr. Studdock's away? Not a bit, if *you* don't mind. I've sent Cecil to sleep in College. You're sure it won't be a nuisance? Thanks most awfully. I'll be round in half an hour."

[a] thought "But […] life"] *B*; thought, "But […] life," *M*
[b] back] *BM*; Jane came back *A*
[c] the] *BM*; from St. Anne's very little pleased with her interview, and had no sooner reached the *A*
[d] the] *BM*; than the *A*

FOUR

The Liquidation of Anachronisms

I

ALMOST before Jane had finished putting clean sheets on Mark's bed, Mrs. Dimble, with a great many parcels, arrived. "You're an angel to have me for the night," she said. "We'd tried every hotel in Edgestow[a] I believe. This place is going to become unendurable. The same answer everywhere! All full up with the hangers-on and camp followers[b] of this detestable N.I.C.E. Secretaries here—typists there—commissioners of works—the thing's outrageous. If Cecil hadn't had a room in College I really believe he'd have had to sleep in the waiting-room[c] at the station. I only hope that man in College has aired the bed."

"But what on earth's happened?" asked Jane.

"Turned out, my dear!"

"But it isn't possible, Mrs. Dimble. I mean, it can't be legal."

"That's what Cecil said. . . .[d] Just think of it, Jane. The first thing we saw when we poked our heads out of the window this morning was a lorry on the drive with its back wheels in the middle of the rose bed, unloading a[e] small army of what looked like criminals with picks and spades. Right in our own garden! There was an odious little man in a peaked cap who talked to Cecil with a cigarette in his mouth, at least it wasn't in his mouth but seccotined onto his upper lip—you know—and guess what he said? He said they'd have no objection to our remaining in possession (of the *house*, mind you, not the garden) till eight[f] o'clock to-morrow[g] morning. No objection!"

"But surely—surely—it must be some mistake."

"Of course[h] Cecil rang up your Bursar. And of course[i] your Bursar was out.

---

[a] Edgestow] *BA*; Edgestow, *M*
[b] camp followers] *BA*; camp-followers *M*
[c] waiting-room] *BA*; waiting room *M*
[d] said. . . .] *BA*; said . . . *M*
[e] a] *BM*; and a *A*
[f] eight] *BA*; 8 *M*
☛ Although M uses "8 o'clock" here, it uses "eleven o'clock" on the next page. B & A are more consistent.
[g] to-morrow] *BA*; tomorrow *M*
[h] course] *BA*; course, *M*
[i] And of course] *BA*; And, of course, *M*

That took nearly all morning, ringing up again and again, and by that time[a] the big beech that you used to be so fond of had been cut down, and all the plum trees. If I hadn't been so angry[b] I'd have sat down and cried my eyes out. That's what I felt like. At last Cecil did get on to[c] your Mr. Busby, who was perfectly useless. Said[d] there must be some misunderstanding,[e] but it was out of his hands now,[f] and we'd better get on to the N.I.C.E. at Belbury. Of course it turned out to be quite impossible to get *them*. But by lunch-time we saw that one simply *couldn't* stay there for the night, whatever happened."

"Why not?"

"My dear, you've no conception what it was like. Great lorries and traction engines roaring past all the time, and a crane on a thing like a railway truck. Why, our own tradesmen couldn't get through it. The milk didn't arrive till eleven o'clock. The meat never arrived at all; they rang up in the afternoon to say their people hadn't been able to reach us by either road. We'd the greatest difficulty in getting into town ourselves. It took us half an hour from our house to the bridge. It was like a nightmare. Flares and noise everywhere and the road practically ruined and a sort of great tin camp already going up on the Common. And the people! Such horrid men. I didn't know we *had* workpeople like that in England. Oh, horrible, horrible!" Mrs. Dimble fanned herself with the hat she had just taken off.

"And what are you going to do?" asked Jane.

"Heaven knows!" said Mrs. Dimble. "For the moment we have shut up the house and Cecil has been at Rumbold[g] the solicitor's[h] to[i] see if we can at least have it sealed and left alone until we've got our things out of it. Rumbold doesn't seem to know where he is. He keeps on saying the N.I.C.E. are in a very peculiar position legally. After that, I'm sure I don't know. As far as I can see there won't *be* any[j] houses in Edgestow. There's no question of trying to live on the far side of the river any longer, even if they'd let us. What did you say? Oh, indescribable. All the poplars are going down. All those nice little cottages by the church are going down. I found poor Ivy—that's your Mrs. Maggs, you know—in tears. Poor

---

[a] time] *BA*; time, *M*
[b] angry] *B* ; angry, *M*
[c] on to] *B*; onto *M*
[d] Said] *BM*; said *A*
[e] misunderstanding,] *BA*; misunderstanding *M*
[f] now,] *A*; now *BM*
[g] Rumbold] *BA*; Rumbold, *M*
[h] solicitor's] *MA*; solicitors *B*
☛ M & A's reading is a more logical and grammatical realisation of the "local genitive" (see Quirk *et al* 5.125).
[i] to] *B*; , to *M*
[j] *be* any] *B*; be *any M*

① *as if we'd lost the war*

B was published on 17 August 1945 (*C&G* 124), three months after the official end of the war against Germany (8 May) and three days after the surrender of Japan, although World War II officially ended only on 2 September. Lewis had begun writing the novel and planned the ending by December 1942 (see *Collected Letters* vol. 2 543–44), so this line is presumably a late interpolation.

That Hideous Strength is one of relatively few novels published in 1945, as the wartime shortage of paper (exacerbated by bombs that fell on publishers' warehouses) had dramatically reduced the number of books published. From a pre-War high of 17 000 new books per year (including, in 1939, 4 222 novels), production dropped to 6 747 new books (including 1 179 novels) in 1945 (Bergonzi 27; Marcus & Nicholls 441).

② *the sword of Siegfried*

Mrs. Dimble is pleased that she will not need to separate lovers (or apparent lovers), as the sword of Siegfried did: when Siegfried (Sigurd), magically disguised as Gunnar, had won Brynhild, "that night as they slept in the shield-hall the sharp sword Gram lay between them as a token that the wedding was not yet" (Green 189). In a letter to Arthur Greeves (*Collected Letters* vol. 1 935), Lewis alludes to this story as a kind of archetype in fantasy.

things! They do look dreadful when they cry on top of powder. She's being turned out too. Poor little woman; she's had enough troubles in her life without this. I was glad to get away. The men were so horrible. Three big brutes came to the back door asking for hot water and went on so that they frightened Martha out of her wits and Cecil had to go and speak to them. I thought they were going to strike Cecil, really I did. It was most horribly unpleasant. But a[a] sort of special constable sent them away. What? Oh yes, there are dozens of what look like policemen all over the place, and I didn't like the look of *them* either. Swinging some kind of truncheon things, like what you'd see in an American film. Do you know,[b] Jane, Cecil and I both thought the same thing: we thought, it's almost as if we'd lost the ① war. Oh, good girl, tea![c] That's just what I wanted."

"You must stay here as long as you like, Mrs. Dimble," said Jane. "Mark'll just have to sleep in College."

"Well, really," said Mother Dimble, "I feel at the moment that no Fellow of Bracton ought to be allowed to sleep anywhere! But I'd make an exception in favour of Mr. Studdock. As a matter of fact, I shan't have to behave like the sword ② of Siegfried—and, incidentally, a nasty fat stodgy sword I should be! But that side of it is all fixed up. Cecil and I are to go out to the Manor at St. Anne's. We have to be there so much at present, you see."

"Oh," said Jane, involuntarily prolonging the exclamation as[d] the whole of her own story flowed back on her mind.

"Why, what a selfish pig I've been," said Mother Dimble. "Here have I been chattering away about my own troubles and quite forgetting that you've been out there and are full of things to tell me. Did you see Grace? And did you like her?"

"Is 'Grace' Miss Ironwood?" asked Jane.

"Yes."

"I saw her. I don't know if I liked her or not. But I don't want to talk about all that. I can't think about anything except this outrageous business of yours. It's you who are the real martyr, not me."

"No, my dear," said Mrs. Dimble, "I'm not a martyr. I'm only an angry old woman with sore feet and a splitting head (but that's beginning to be better) who's trying to talk herself into a good temper. After all, Cecil and I haven't lost our livelihood as poor Ivy Maggs has. It doesn't *really* matter leaving the old house. Do you know, the pleasure of living there was in a way a melancholy pleasure. (I

---

[a] a] *BM*; A *A*
[b] know,] *B*; know *M*
[c] girl, tea!] *BA*; girl—tea! *M*
[d] as] *BM*; , as *A*

① *that frightful woman in Ibsen who was always maundering about dolls*

Aline Solness in *Bygmester Solness* [*The Master Builder*] (1892) by Henrik Ibsen (1828–1906), not (as Smilde suggests) *Dukkehjem* [*Doll's House*] (1879). Aline Solness is the wife of the eponymous master builder: they live in a house with three empty nurseries, and her husband says that her sorrow and joyless insistence on duty are the result of the death of their twin sons after she was rendered unable to nurse them in consequence of the shock, Solness believes, of the fire that destroyed their previous home, inherited from her father. However, when Aline Solness comes to tell the story (act III, p. 323–25) she says that her dead sons are happy and the thought of them should be joyful, but that "it is the small losses in life that cut one to the heart—the loss of all that other people look upon as almost nothing" (324). She lists examples of her "small losses" and concludes (324–35):

> [*Sadly.*] And then all the dolls.
> HILDA. The dolls?
> MRS. SOLNESS. [*choking with tears.*] I had nine lovely dolls.
> HILDA. And they were burnt too?
> MRS. SOLNESS. All of them. Oh, it was hard—so hard for me.
> HILDA. Had you put by all these dolls, then? Ever since you were little?
> MRS. SOLNESS. I had not put them by. The dolls and I had gone on living together.
> HILDA. After you were grown up?
> MRS. SOLNESS. Yes, long after that?
> HILDA. After you were married, too?
> MRS. SOLNESS. Oh, yes, indeed. So long as he did not see it——. But they were all burnt up, poor things. No one thought of saving them. Oh, it is so miserable to think of. You mustn't laugh at me, Miss Wangel.
> HILDA. I am not laughing in the least.
> MRS. SOLNESS. For you see, in a certain sense, there was life in them, too. I carried them under my heart—like little unborn children.

Lewis told Arthur Greeves in a letter dated 6 October 1914 that he was reading Ibsen's plays (*Collected Letters* vol. 1 78)—presumably for the first time.

② *risen from her knees*

Lewis considered that one should, ideally, pray kneeling: "The body ought to pray as well as the soul. Body and soul are both the better for it. […] kneeling does matter, but other things matter even more. A concentrated mind and a sitting body make for a better prayer than a kneeling body half asleep" (*Prayer* 19).

He also has Screwtape advise Wormwood, in a letter on preventing his "patient" praying effectively, "At the very least, they can be persuaded that the bodily position makes no difference to their prayers; for they constantly forget […] that they are animals and whatever their bodies do affects their souls" (*Screwtape Letters* 23).

wonder, by the bye, do human beings really *like* being happy?) A little melancholy, yes. All[a] those big upper rooms which we thought we should want because we thought we were going to have lots of children, and then we never had. Perhaps I was getting too fond of mooning about them on long afternoons when Cecil was away. Pitying oneself. I shall be better away from it, I dare say.[b] I might have got like that frightful woman in Ibsen who was always maundering about dolls. It's really worse for Cecil. He did so love having all his pupils about the place. Jane, that's the third time you've yawned. You're dropping asleep and I've talked your head off. It comes of being married for thirty years. Husbands were made to be talked to. It helps them to concentrate their minds on what they're reading—like the sound of a weir. There!—you're yawning again."

Jane found Mother Dimble an embarrassing person to share a room with because she said prayers. It was quite extraordinary, Jane thought, how this put one out. One didn't know where to look, and it was so difficult to talk naturally again for several minutes after Mrs. Dimble had risen from her knees.

II

"Are you awake now?" said Mrs. Dimble's voice, quietly, in the middle of the night.

"Yes," said Jane. "I'm so sorry. Did I wake you up? Was I shouting?"

"Yes. You were shouting out about someone being hit on the head."

"I saw them killing a man . . . a[c] man in a big car driving along a country road. Then he came to a cross-roads[d] and turned off to the right past some trees, and there was someone standing in the middle of the road waving a light to stop him. I couldn't hear what they said; I was too far away. They must have persuaded him to get out of the car somehow, and there he was talking to one of them. The light fell full on his face. He wasn't the same old man I saw in my other dream. He hadn't a beard, only a moustache. And he had a very quick, kind of proud, way. He didn't like what the man said to him and presently he put up his fists and knocked him down. Another man behind him tried to hit him on the head with something,[e] but the old man was too quick and turned round in time. Then it was rather horrible, but rather fine. There were three of them at him and he was fighting them

[a] All] *BM*; all *A*
[b] dare say.] *B*; daresay. *M*
[c] man . . . a] *BA*; man—a *M*
[d] cross-roads] *ed.*; crossroads *BMA*
☛ See note to 71[d].
[e] something,] *BA*; something *M*

① *The light from the lantern […] sort of rods—all round the place.*

This may mean that Hingest's murder is being observed by visiting, non-terrestrial, good *eldila* (see MacPhee's briefing of Jane in ch. 9 III) and that Jane in her vision sees them watching. If so, this is not alluded to later in the story. But there seems no other explanation of these strange lights, and their appearance is consistent with that of Malacandra-Oyarsa when Lewis as character first meets him in *Perelandra* (ch. 1 18): "What I saw was simply a very faint rod or pillar of light."

all. I've read about that kind of thing in books, but I never realised how one would feel about it. Of course[a] they got him in the end. They beat his head about terribly with the things in their hands. They were quite cool about it and stooped down to examine him and make sure he was really dead. The light from the lantern seemed ① all funny. It looked as if it made long uprights of light—sort of rods—all round the place. But perhaps I was waking up by then. No thanks, I'm all right. It was horrid, of course, but I'm not really frightened . . . not[b] the way I would have been before. I'm more sorry for the old man."

"You feel you can go to sleep again?"

"Oh rather! Is your headache better, Mrs. Dimble?"

"Quite gone, thank you. Good night."

III

"Without a doubt," thought Mark, "this must be the Mad Parson that Bill the Blizzard was talking of." The committee at Belbury did not meet till 10.30,[c] and ever since breakfast he had been walking with the Reverend Straik in the garden, despite the raw and misty weather of the morning. At the very moment when the man had first buttonholed him, the threadbare clothes and clumsy boots, the frayed clerical collar, the dark, lean, tragic face, gashed and ill-shaved and seamed, and the bitter sincerity of his manner, had struck a discordant note. It was not a type Mark had expected to meet in the N.I.C.E.

"Do not imagine," said Mr. Straik, "that I indulge in any dreams of carrying out our programme without violence. There will be resistance. They will gnaw their tongues and not repent. We are not to be deterred. We face these disorders with a firmness which will lead traducers to say that we have desired them. Let them say so. In a sense we have. It is no part of our witness to preserve that organisation of ordered sin which is called Society. To that organisation the message which we have to deliver is a message of absolute despair."

"Now that is what I meant," said Mark, "when I said that your point of view and mine must, in the long run, be incompatible. The preservation, which involves the thorough planning, of society[d] is just precisely the end I have in view. I do not think there is or can be any other end. The problem is quite different for you because you look forward to something else, something better than human society,

[a] course] *BA*; course, *M*
[b] frightened . . . not] *B*; frightened—not *M*
[c] 10.30,] *BA*; ten-thirty, *M*
[d] society] *BA*; Society *M*

① *body of Death*
Kingdom of God
At the name of Jesus every knee shall bow.
the great and terrible day
filthy rags

In these speeches and those that follow, Straik quotes, echoes, misquotes and misapplies scripture. Paul, referring to his own human nature, asks, "who shall deliver me from the body of this death?" (Rom. 7: 24).

The phrase "Kingdom of God" is used frequently throughout the New Testament and especially in the gospels to designate the spiritual realm that cannot be entered "Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit" (John 3: 7) and which "flesh and blood cannot inherit" (I Cor. 15: 50). See also for example Matt. 6: 33, Mark 1: 15, Luke 13: 18, John 3: 5, Acts 28: 13, Rom. 14: 17, I Cor. 4: 20 and Col. 4: 11. This novel is part of Lewis's opposition to the belief, expressed by some science fiction writers, that unregenerate human beings were capable of achieving God-like properties by their own effort. See Introduction 1 (xxiv–xxv).

In Philippians 2: 10 we read, "at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth". Mark's embarrassed response to the name of Jesus contrasts ironically with the response ordained in this verse.

Joel warns, "the day of the LORD is great and very terrible: who can abide it?" (2: 11) and "The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before the great and the terrible day of the LORD come" (2: 31)

Isaiah 64: 6 states, "But we are all as an unclean thing, and all our righteousnesses are as filthy rags".

in some other world."

"With every thought and vibration of my heart, with every drop of my blood," said Mr. Straik, "I repudiate that damnable doctrine. That is precisely the subterfuge by which the World, the organisation[a] and body of Death, has sidetracked and emasculated the teaching of Jesus, and turned into priestcraft and mysticism the plain demand of the Lord for righteousness and judgement[b] here and now. The Kingdom of God is to be realised here—in this world. And it will be. At the name of Jesus every knee shall bow. In that name I dissociate myself completely from all the organised religion that has yet been seen in the world."

And at the name of Jesus, Mark, who would have lectured on abortion or perversion to an audience of young women without a qualm, felt himself so embarrassed that he knew his cheeks were slightly reddening; and he became so angry with himself and Mr. Straik at this discovery that they then proceeded to redden very much indeed. This was exactly the kind of conversation he could not endure; and never since the well-remembered[c] misery of scripture lessons at school had he felt so uncomfortable. He muttered something about his ignorance of theology.

"Theology!" said Mr. Straik with profound contempt. "It's not theology I'm talking about, young man, but the Lord Jesus. Theology is talk—eyewash—a smoke screen—a game for rich men. It wasn't in lecture rooms I found the Lord Jesus. It was in the coal pits, and beside the coffin of my daughter. If they think that theology[d] is a sort of cotton wool which will keep them safe in the great and terrible day, they'll find their mistake. For, mark my words, this thing is going to happen. The Kingdom is going to arrive: in this world;[e] in this country. The powers of science are an instrument. An irresistible instrument, as all of us in the N.I.C.E. know. And why are they an irresistible instrument?"

"Because science is based on observation," suggested Mark.

"They are an irresistible instrument," shouted Straik, "because they are an instrument in His hand. An instrument of judgement[f] as well as of healing. That is what I couldn't get any of the churches[g] to see. They are blinded. Blinded by their filthy rags of humanism, their culture and humanitarianism and liberalism, as well as by their sins, or what they think their sins, though they are really the least sinful

---

[a] organisation] *B*; organization *M*
☛ Inadvertent American spelling by M's compositor (see *Webster's*).
[b] judgement] *B*; judgment *M*
[c] well-remembered] *B*; well remembered *M*
[d] theology] *B*; Theology *M*
[e] world;] *B*; world: *M*
[f] judgement] *B*; judgment *M*
[g] churches] *B*; Churches *M*

① *the only prophet left […] coming in power*
Does clay co-operate *with the potter? Did Cyrus* co-operate *with the Lord?*
once you have set your hand to the plough
perish in the wilderness
having executed judgement on others, is reserved for judgement itself
the saints who are going to inherit the earth

The "only prophet left" is an allusion to Elijah: after his victory over the prophets of Baal, he complained to God, "the children of Israel have […] slain thy prophets with the sword, and I, even I only, am left" (I Kings 19: 10). All three of the synoptic gospels speak of the Son of man coming in clouds with power and glory (Matt. 24: 30; Mark 13: 26; Luke 21: 27). Mark also speaks of the kingdom of God coming with power (9: 1).

In Isaiah (29: 16, 45: 9, 64: 8) and Jeremiah (18: 2–6) the relation between God and His people is compared with that between the potter and the clay, which is entirely at the disposal of the potter. Isaiah asks sarcastically, "Shall the clay say to him that fashioneth it, What makest thou?" (Isa. 45: 9).

Cyrus, King of Persia, is represented as God's chosen instrument: his spirit is stirred to action by the Lord (Ezra 1: 1), Who says of him, "my shepherd, and shall perform all my pleasure" (Isa. 44: 28); he is the anointed of God, Who has held his right hand (Isa 45: 1).

In Luke 9: 62 Jesus says, "No man, having put his hand to the plough, and looking back, is fit for the kingdom of God."

In Exodus 14: 11 and 12 the Israelites complain to Moses, "hast thou taken us away to die in the wilderness? […] For it had been better for us to serve the Egyptians, than that we should die in the wilderness."

Straik conflates two separate Biblical expressions: "executed judgement", used mostly in the Old Testament (for example II Sam. 8: 15, Jer. 7: 5 & Ezek. 45: 9), but also in John 5: 27 and Jude 15, and "reserved for judgement", used twice in II Peter (2: 4, 9).

In the Authorised Version of the Bible it is not said of the saints that they shall inherit the earth: it is said of the meek (Matt. 5: 5; Ps. 37: 11), the seed of the man "that feareth the LORD" (Ps. 25: 12–13), "those that wait upon the LORD" (Ps. 37: 9), and "such as be blessed of him" (Ps. 37: 22).

thing about them. That is why I have come to stand alone;[a] a poor, weak, unworthy old man, but the only prophet left. I knew that He was coming in power. And ① therefore, where we see power, we see the sign of His coming. And that is why I find myself joining with profligates[b] and materialists and anyone else who is really ready to expedite the coming. The feeblest of these people here has the tragic sense of life, the ruthlessness, the total commitment, the readiness to sacrifice all merely human values, which I could not find amid all the nauseating cant of the organised religions."

"You mean, do you," said Mark,[c] "that as far as immediate practice is concerned, there are no limits to your co-operation with the programme?"

"Sweep away all idea of co-operation!" said the other. "Does clay *co-operate* ① with the potter? Did Cyrus *co-operate* with the Lord? These people will be used. I shall be used too. Instruments. Vehicles. But here comes the point that concerns you, young man. You have no choice whether you will be used or not. There is no turning back once you have set your hand to the plough. No one goes *out* of the ① *N.I.C.E.*[d] Those who try to turn back will perish in the wilderness. ① But the question is[e] whether you are content to be one of the instruments which is thrown aside when it has served His turn—one which,[f] having executed judgement[g] on ① others, is reserved for judgement[g] itself—or will you be among those who enter on the inheritance? For it's all true, you know. It is the saints[h] who are going to ① inherit the earth[i]—here in England, perhaps within the next twelve months—the

---

[a] alone;] *B*; alone: *M*

[b] profligates] *B*; communists *M*

☛ Is "communists" an American substitution (the anti-communist hysteria later associated with McCarthyism began long before 1946, with the House Un-American Activities Committee active from 1938)? Or is "profligates" an authorial second thought that was never transmitted across the Atlantic? It is impossible to know, and A gives us no help here. Lewis would probably have regarded communists as more dangerous than profligates because of communism's overt appeal to some kind of good: "Fascism and Communism, like all other evils, are potent because of the good they contain or imitate. […]. And, of course, their occasion is the failure of those who left humanity starved of that particular good. This does not for me alter the conviction that they are very bad indeed" (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 327). But "communists and materialists" is somewhat redundant (since materialism is part of communism), while "profligates and materialists" covers a wider range of anti-Christian activity, so I consider the reading of the copy-text preferable.

[c] Mark,] *BM*; he, *A*

[d] *N.I.C.E.*] *A*; N.I.C.E. *BM*

☛ A's added emphasis makes Straik's comment even more chilling, emphasising that it is the N.I.C.E. that is uniquely dangerous. We have already seen (through Jane's dream in the previous section) what has happened to Hingest, who did try to leave, although it is only the next section that Wither confirms Hingest's death.

[e] is] *B*; is, *M*

[f] which,] *B*; which *M*

[g] judgement] *B*; judgment *M*

[h] saints] *BA*; Saints *M*

[i] earth] *BA*; Earth *M*

① *Know you not that we shall judge angels?*
resurrection […] life everlasting

In I Corinthians 6: 3 Paul asks, "Know ye not that we shall judge angels?" but continues, "how much more things that pertain to this life?"

The New Testament (see especially I Corinthians 15) and the Nicene Creed (*BCP*, "Order for the Administration of […] Holy Communion") and Apostles' Creed (*BCP*, "Order for Morning Prayer" & "Order for Evening Prayer") acknowledge two bodily resurrections: that of Christ on the third day after the crucifixion, and that of believers at the end of time. In ch. 8 III it becomes clear that Straik is even more heretical than he appears here, and that he conflates the historical and prophetic parts of the Bible into a prophecy that he asserts is being fulfilled at the N.I.C.E. The resurrection that he hints at here turns out to be such a conflation: the past resurrection of Christ and the future resurrection of the saints are both understood by him to be prophecies of the experiment with Alcasan's head that Jane saw at the very beginning of the novel.

The inverted phrase "life everlasting" echoes a number of verses from the Authorised Version (Luke 18: 30; John 12: 50; Gal. 6: 8; I Tim. 1: 16) and also the final clause of the Apostles' Creed.

② *the Inner Ring or whatever at Belbury corresponded to the Progressive Element at Bracton*

Here Lewis overtly correlates the Inner Ring (see Preliminary Note C) with Mark's experiences, and makes clear the importance of this concept in understanding the temptations that Mark undergoes.

saints[a] and no one else. Know you not that we shall judge angels?" Then, suddenly ①
lowering his voice, Straik added,[b] "The *real* resurrection is even now taking place. ①
The real life everlasting. Here in this world. You will see it."

"I say," said Mark, "it's nearly twenty past. Oughtn't we to be going to the committee?"[c]

Straik turned with him in silence. Partly to avoid further conversation along the same lines, and partly because he really wanted to know the answer, Mark said presently:[d]

"A rather annoying thing has happened. I've lost my wallet. There wasn't much money in it: only about three pounds. But there were letters and things, and[e] it's a nuisance. Ought I to tell someone about it?"

"You could tell the steward,"[f] said Straik.

IV

The committee[g] sat for about two hours and the Deputy Director was in the chair. His method of conducting business was slow and involved,[h] and to Mark, with his Bracton experience to guide him, it soon became obvious that the real work of the N.I.C.E. must go on somewhere else. This, indeed, was what he had expected, and he was too reasonable to suppose that he should find himself, at this early stage, in the Inner Ring or whatever at Belbury corresponded to the Progressive Element at ②
Bracton. But he hoped he would not be kept marking time on phantom committees for too long. This morning the business mainly concerned the details of the work which had already been begun at Edgestow. The N.I.C.E. had apparently won some sort of victory which gave it the right to pull down the little Norman Church at the corner. "The usual objections were, of course, tabled," said Wither. Mark,[i] who was not interested in architecture and who did not know the other side of the Wynd nearly so well as his wife, allowed his attention to wander. It was only at the end of the meeting that Wither opened a much more sensational subject. He believed that

---

[a] saints] *B*; Saints *M*
[b] added,] *BA*; added: *M*
[c] committee] *BA*; Committee *M*
[d] presently:¶] *A*; presently, *BM*
[e] and] *BM*; but *A*
[f] steward,"] *BA*; Steward," *M*
[g] committee] *BA*; Committee *M*
[h] involved,] *BA*; involved *M*
[i] Mark,] *M*; Mark *B*
☛ The relative clause "who was not […] as his wife", interpolated as it is between subject and verb, should either be enclosed by commas or not marked off at all: having no comma before it but a comma afterwards is stylistically unsatisfying and rhetorically illogical.

① *Raleigh's fine phrase*

Sir Walter Alexander Raleigh (1861–1922), who became holder of the first Chair of English Literature at Oxford in 1904, and Merton Professor in 1914. Lewis's letters show that he had read (though not always agreed with) Raleigh's criticism and his posthumously published letters (see: *Collected Letters* vol. 1 665–67, 817; vol. 2 224, 621). In a letter to Edmund Gosse, Raleigh wrote, "I do find the obituary a difficult instrument to play" (Raleigh vol. 2 376).

most of those present had already heard ("Why do chairmen always begin that way?" thought Mark) the very distressing piece of news which it was, nevertheless, his duty now to communicate to them in a semi-official manner. He was referring, of course, to the murder of Mr. William Hingest. As far as Mark could discover from the chairman's tortuous and allusive narrative, Bill the Blizzard had been discovered with his head beaten in by some blunt instrument, lying near his car in Potter's Lane at about four o'clock that morning. He had been dead for several hours. Mr. Wither ventured to suppose that it would be a melancholy pleasure to the committee to know that N.I.C.E. police had been on the scene of the crime before five,[a] and that neither the local authorities nor Scotland Yard were making any objections to the fullest collaboration. He felt that if the occasion were more appropriate he would have welcomed a motion for some expression of the gratitude they must all feel to Miss Hardcastle and possibly of congratulations to her on the smooth interaction between her own forces and those of the state. This was a most gratifying feature in the sad story and, he suggested, a good omen for the future. Some decently subdued applause went round the table at this. Mr. Wither then proceeded to speak at some length about the dead man. They had all much regretted Mr. Hingest's resolution to withdraw from the N.I.C.E., while fully appreciating his motives; they had all felt that this official severance would not in the least alter the cordial relations which existed between the deceased and almost all—he thought he could even say all without exception—of his former colleagues in the Institute. The obituary (in Raleigh's fine phrase) was an instrument which the ① Deputy Director's talents well fitted him to play, and he spoke at great length. He concluded by suggesting that they should all stand in silence for one minute as a token of respect for the memory of William Hingest.

And they did—a world-without-end minute in which odd creakings and breathings became audible, and behind the mask of each glazed and tight-lipped face, shy, irrelevant thoughts of this and that came creeping out as birds and mice creep out again in the clearing of a wood when the picnickers have gone, and everyone silently assured himself that he, at least, was not being morbid and not thinking about death.

Then there was a stir and a bustle and the committee[b] broke up.

[a] five,] *BA*; five *M*
[b] committee] *BA*; Committee *M*

V

The whole process of getting up and doing the "morning jobs" was more cheerful, Jane found, because she had Mrs. Dimble with her. Mark often helped:[a] but as he always took the view—and Jane could feel it even if he did not express it in words—that "anything would do" and that Jane made a lot of unnecessary work and that men could keep house with a tithe of the fuss and trouble which women made about it, Mark's help was one of the commonest causes of quarrels between them. Mrs. Dimble, on the other hand, fell in with her ways. It was a bright sunny morning,[b] and as they sat down to breakfast in the kitchen Jane was feeling bright herself. During the night her mind had evolved a comfortable theory that the mere fact of having seen Miss Ironwood and "had it all out" would probably stop the dreams altogether. The episode would be closed. And now—there was all the exciting possibility of Mark's new job to look forward to. She began to see pictures in her mind.

Mrs. Dimble was anxious to know what had happened to Jane at St. Anne's and when she was going there again. Jane answered evasively on the first question and Mrs. Dimble was too polite to press it. As to the second, Jane thought she wouldn't "bother" Miss Ironwood again, or wouldn't "bother" any further about the dreams. She said she had been "silly" but felt sure she'd be all right now. And she[c] glanced at the clock and wondered why Mrs. Maggs hadn't yet turned up.

"My dear, I'm afraid you've lost Ivy Maggs," said Mrs. Dimble. "Didn't I tell you they'd taken her house too? I thought you'd understand she wouldn't be coming to you in future. You see there's[d] nowhere for her to live in Edgestow."

"Bother!" said Jane:[e] and added, without much interest in the reply, "What is she doing, do you know?"

"She's gone out to St. Anne's."

"Has she got friends there?"

"She's gone to the Manor, along with Cecil and me."

"Do you mean she's got a job there?"

"Well, yes. I suppose it is a job."

Mrs. Dimble left at about eleven. She also, it appeared, was going to St. Anne's, but was first to meet her husband and lunch with him at Northumberland. Jane walked down to the town with her to do a little shopping and they parted at

[a] helped:] *B*; helped; *M*
[b] morning,] *BA*; morning *M*
[c] she] *BM*; She *A*
[d] there's] *BM*; There's *A*
[e] Jane:] *BA*; Jane, *M*

① *Windows into huge, dark landscapes*

Portals into another world are not rare in Lewis's work. The most famous is probably the Wardrobe through which the children enter Narnia in *The Lion, the Witch and the Wardrobe*, the first-written of the series. In *The Voyage of the Dawn Treader*, children enter Narnia through falling into a painting (ch. 1). In *Till We Have Faces* the narrator, in one of the final chapters (part II ch. 2) receives the first part of the Gods' answer to her complaint in a vision in which she descends through hole after hole into various iterations of a room in her palace, in the last of which she sees her true self in a mirror. In *The Dark Tower*, a piece of science-fiction gadgetry is a window into an "Otherworld" with analogues to our own world (ch. 1 24).

All these fantasy portals, and especially Jane's metaphorical, psychological windows here, may have their seed in George MacDonald's fiction (see McInnis 273–79). One example is from *Lilith* (11):

> I had been looking at rather than into the mirror, when suddenly I became aware that it reflected neither the chamber nor my own person. […]
>
> I saw before me a wild country, broken and heathy. Desolate hills of no great height, but somehow of strange appearance, occupied the middle distance; nearest me lay a tract of moorland, flat and melancholy.
>
> Being short-sighted, I stepped closer […] I took another step forward […], stumbled over something—doubtless the frame of the mirror—and […] I was in the open air, on a houseless heath!

the bottom of Market Street. It was just after this that Jane met Mr. Curry.

"Have you heard the news, Mrs. Studdock?" said Curry. His manner was always important and his tone always vaguely confidential, but this morning they seemed more so than usual.

"No. What's wrong?" said Jane. She thought Mr. Curry a pompous fool and Mark a fool for being impressed by him. But as soon as Curry began speaking[a] her face showed all the wonder and consternation he could have wished. Nor were they, this time, feigned. He told her that Mr. Hingest had been murdered, some time[b] during the night[c] or in the small hours of that morning. The body had been found lying beside his car, in Potter's Lane, badly beaten about the head. He had been driving from Belbury to Edgestow. Curry was at the moment hastening back to College[d] to talk to the warden[e] about it:[f] he had just been at the police station. One saw that the murder[g] had already become Curry's property. The "matter" was, in some indefinable sense, "in his hands," and he was heavy with responsibility. At another time Jane would have found this amusing. She escaped from him as soon as possible and went into Blackie's for a cup of coffee. She felt she must sit down.

The death of Hingest in itself meant nothing to her. She had met him only once and she had accepted from Mark the view that he was a disagreeable old man and rather a snob. But the certainty that she herself in her dream had witnessed a real murder shattered at one blow all the consoling pretences with which she had begun the morning. It came over her with sickening clarity that the affair of her dreams, far from being ended, was only beginning. The bright, narrow little life which she had proposed to live was being irremediably broken into. Windows into ① huge, dark landscapes were opening on every side and she was powerless to shut them. It would drive her mad, she thought, to face it alone. The other alternative was to go back to Miss Ironwood. But that seemed to be only a way of going deeper into all this darkness. This Manor at St. Anne's—this "kind of company"—was "mixed up in it." She didn't want to get drawn in. It was unfair. It wasn't as if she had asked much of life. All she wanted was to be left alone. And the thing was so preposterous! The sort of thing which, according to all the authorities she had hitherto accepted, could not really happen.

The Inner Ring

---

[a] speaking] *BA*; speaking, *M*
[b] some time] *B*; sometime *M*
[c] night] *B*; night, *M*
[d] College] *B*; college *M*
[e] warden] *B*; Warden *M*
[f] it:] *B*; it; *M*
[g] the murder] *BM*; The murder of Hingest *A*

VI

Cosser—the freckle-faced[a] man with the little wisp of black moustache—approached Mark as he was coming away from the committee.[b]

"You and I have a job to do," he said. "Got to get out a report about Cure Hardy."

Mark was very relieved to hear of a job. But he was a little on his dignity,[c] not having liked Cosser much when he had met him yesterday, and he answered:

"Does that mean I *am* to be in Steele's department after all?"

"That's right," said Cosser.

"The reason I ask," said Mark, "is that neither he nor you seemed particularly keen on having me. I don't want to push myself in, you know. I don't need to stay at the N.I.C.E. at all if it comes to that."

"Well, don't start talking about it here," said Cosser. "Come upstairs."

They were talking in the hall and Mark noticed Wither pacing thoughtfully towards them. "Wouldn't it be as well to speak to *him* and get the whole thing thrashed out?" he suggested. But the Deputy Director, after coming within ten feet of them, had turned in another direction. He was humming to himself under his breath and seemed so deep in thought that Mark felt the moment unsuitable for an interview. Cosser, though he said nothing, apparently thought the same, and so Mark followed him up to an office on the third floor.

"It's about the village of Cure Hardy," said Cosser, when they were seated. "You see, all that land at Bragdon Wood is going to be little better than a swamp once they get to work. Why the hell we wanted to go there I don't know. Anyway, the latest plan is to divert the Wynd: block up the old channel through Edgestow altogether. Look. Here's Shillingbridge, ten miles north of the town. It's to be diverted there and brought down an artificial channel—here, to the east,[d] where the blue line is—and rejoin the old bed down here."

"The university will hardly agree to that," said Mark. "What would Edgestow be without the river?"

"We've got the university by the short hairs," said Cosser. "You needn't worry about that. Anyway it's not our job. The point is that the new Wynd must come right through Cure Hardy. Now look at your contours. Cure Hardy is in this narrow little valley. Eh? Oh, you've been there, have you? That makes it all the

[a] freckle-faced] *BA*; frecklefaced *M*
[b] committee.] *BA*; Committee. *M*
[c] dignity,] *BM*; dignity. *A*
[d] east,] *BA*; East, *M*

① *sixteenth-century alms-houses, and a Norman church*

Institutions supporting the poor—"founded by private charity" (*NED*), which shows the level to which the N.I.C.E. is interfering. The Norman church, dating from the eleventh or twelfth century, is even older than the alms-houses.

② *rentiers*

People with income derived from property or investments.

easier. I don't know these parts myself. Well, the[a] idea is to dam the valley at the southern[b] end and make a big reservoir. You'll need a new water supply for Edgestow now that it's to be the second city in the country."

"But what happens to Cure Hardy?"

"That's another advantage. We build a new model village (it's to be called Jules Hardy or Wither Hardy) four miles away. Over here, on the railway."

"I say, you know, there'll be the devil of a stink about this. Cure Hardy is famous. It's a beauty spot. There are the sixteenth-century alms-houses,[c] and a Norman church, and all that." ①

"Exactly. That's where you and I come in. We've got to make a report on Cure Hardy. We'll run out and have a look round to-morrow,[d] but we can write most of the report to-day.[e] It ought to be pretty easy. If it's a beauty spot, you can bet it's insanitary. That's the first point to stress. Then we've got to get out some facts about the population. I think you'll find it consists almost entirely[f] of the two most undesirable elements—small *rentiers* and agricultural labourers." ②

"The small *rentier* is a bad element, I agree," said Mark. "I suppose the agricultural labourer is more controversial."

"The Institute doesn't approve of him. He's a very recalcitrant element in a planned community, and he's always backward. We're not going in for English agriculture. So, you see, all we have to do is to verify a few facts. Otherwise the report writes itself."

Mark was silent for a moment or two.

"That's easy enough," he said. "But[g] before I get down to it I'd just like to be a bit clearer about my own position. Oughtn't I to go and see Steele? I don't fancy settling down to work in this department if he doesn't want to have me."

"I wouldn't do that," said Cosser.

"Why not?"

"Well, for one thing, Steele can't prevent you if the D.D. backs you up, as he seems to be doing for the moment. For another, Steele is rather a dangerous man. If you just go quietly on with the job, he may get used to you in the end:[h] but

---

[a] the] *MB*; The. *A*
[b] southern] *BA*; Southern *M*
[c] alms-houses] *ed.*; almshouses *BM*
☛ See note 88[g].
[d] to-morrow,] *BA*; tomorrow, *M*
[e] to-day.] *B*; today. *MA*
☛ It is an aberration for A to have "today" here, as it follows B with "to-day" everywhere else.
[f] entirely] *BM*; chiefly *A*
[g] he said. "But] *BM*; said Mark, "but *A*
[h] end:] *B*; end; *M*

if you go and see him it might lead to a bust up.[a] There's another thing,[b] too." Cosser paused, picked his nose thoughtfully, and proceeded. "Between ourselves, I don't think things can go on indefinitely in this department in the way they are at present."

The excellent training which Mark had had at Bracton enabled him to understand[c] this. Cosser was hoping to get Steele out of the department altogether. He thought he saw the whole situation. Steele was dangerous while he lasted, but he might not last.

"I got the impression yesterday," said Mark, "that you and Steele hit it off together rather well."

"The great thing here," said Cosser, "is never to quarrel with anyone. I hate quarrels myself. I can get on with anybody—as long as the work gets done."

"Of course," said Mark. "By the way, if we go to Cure Hardy to-morrow[d] I might as well run in to Edgestow and spend the night at home."

For Mark a good deal hung on the answer to this. He might find out whether he were actually under orders from Cosser. If Cosser said "You can't do that"[e] he would at least know where he stood. If Cosser said that Mark couldn't be spared, that would be better still. Or Cosser might reply that he'd better consult the D.D. That also would have made Mark feel surer of his position. But Cosser merely said "Oh," leaving Mark in doubt whether no one needed leave of absence or whether Mark was not sufficiently established as a member of the Institute for his absence to be of any consequence. Then they went to work on their report.

It took them the rest of the day, so that Cosser and he came in to dinner late and without dressing. This gave Mark a most agreeable sensation. And he enjoyed the meal,[f] too. Although he was among men he had not met before, he seemed to know everyone within the first five minutes and to be joining naturally in the conversation. He was learning how to talk their shop.

"How lovely[g] it is!" said Mark to himself next morning as the car left the main road at Duke's Eaton and began descending the bumpy little lane into the long valley where Cure Hardy lay. Mark was not as a rule very sensitive to beauty:[h]

---

[a] bust up] *B*; bust-up *M*
[b] thing,] *BA*; thing *M*
[c] understand] *BM*; understood *A*
[d] to-morrow] *BA*; tomorrow *M*
[e] said "you can't do that"] *B*; said, "you can't do that," *M*
[f] meal,] *B*; meal *M*
[g] lovely] *B*; nice *M*
☛ Noted by Lake (54). Perhaps B's reading is a second thought, a change made in order to avoid "nice" suggesting "N.I.C.E.". B's reading is preferable in any case, as it makes it clearer that Mark is responding primarily to the beauty of his surroundings, as the rest of the paragraph indicates.
[h] beauty:] *B*; beauty, *M*

but Jane, and his love for Jane,[a] had already awakened him a little in this respect. Perhaps the winter morning sunlight affected him all the more because he had never been taught to regard it as specially beautiful and it therefore worked on his senses without interference. The earth and sky had the look of things recently washed. The brown fields looked as if they would be good to eat, and those in grass set off the curves of the little hills as close-clipped[b] hair sets off the body of a horse. The sky looked farther[c] away than usual, but also clearer, so that the long,[d] slender streaks of cloud (dark slate colour against the pale blue) had edges as clear as if they were cut out of cardboard. Every little copse was black and bristling as a hairbrush, and when the car stopped in Cure Hardy itself the silence that followed the turning-off of the engine was filled with the noise of rooks that seemed to be calling "Wake! Wake!"

"Bloody awful noise those birds make," said Cosser. "Got your map? Now . . ." He plunged at once into business.

They walked[e] about that[f] village for two hours and saw with their own eyes all the abuses and anachronisms they came to destroy. They saw the recalcitrant and backward labourer and heard his views on the weather. They met the wastefully supported pauper in the person of an old man shuffling across the courtyard of the alms-houses[g] to fill a kettle, and the elderly *rentier* (to make matters worse she had a fat old dog with her) in earnest conversation with the postman. It made Mark feel as if he were on a holiday, for it was only on holidays that he had ever wandered about an English village. For that reason he felt pleasure in it. It did not quite escape him[h] that the face of the backward labourer was rather more interesting than Cosser's and his voice a great deal more pleasing to the ear. The resemblance between the elderly *rentier* and Aunt Gilly (when[i] had he last thought of *her*? Good Lord, that took one back . . .)[j] did make him understand how it was possible to like that kind of person. All[k] this did not in the least influence his sociological convictions. Even if he had been free from Belbury and wholly unambitious, it could not have done so, for his education had had the curious

[a] Jane, and his love for Jane,] *B*; Jane and his love for Jane *M*
[b] close-clipped] *B*; close clipped *M*
[c] farther] *B*; further *M*
☛ Noted by Lake (54).
[d] long,] *B*; long *M*
[e] walked] *BM*; Next day they drove to Cure Hardy, and walked *A*
[f] that] *BM*; the *A*
[g] alms-houses] *BA*; almshouses *M*
☛ The *NED* has only the spelling used by B & A.
[h] him] *BM*; Mark *A*
[i] (when] *B*; (When *M*
[j] back . . .)] *B*; back.) *M*
[k] All] *BM*; But all *A*

① *things that he read and wrote more real […] things that are not seen.*

The epistle to the Hebrews describes Jewish ritual and sacrifice as the temporal "figure", "patterns" and "shadow" of eternal and heavenly realities (Heb. 9: 9, 23–24; 10:1). And one of the central tenets of Plato's thought is that of the forms—εἶδοι: the philosopher is able "to recognize […them] in all the combinations that contain and convey them, and to apprehend them and their images wherever found"—"πανταχοῦ περιφερόμενα γνωρίζωμεν καὶ ἐνόντα ἐν οἷς ἔνεστιν αἰσθανώμεθα καὶ αὐτὰ καὶ εἰκόνας αὐτῶν" (Plato, *Republic* III 402c).

See also Lewis's comment on Jane's reaction to her fellow passengers in the train to St. Anne's (ch. 2 IV 48 & n. 2).

② *their stimulants, I'd like to see them administered in a more hygienic way*

Chesterton contrasts the behaviour of ordinary humanity with "hygiene", in favour of the former ("Christmas", *All Things Considered* 6%).

effect of making things that he read and wrote more real to him than things he saw. Statistics about agricultural labourers were the substance:[a] any real ditcher, ploughman, or farmer's boy, was the shadow. Though he had never noticed it himself, he had a great reluctance, in his work, ever to use such words as "man" or "woman." He preferred to write about "vocational group,"[b] "elements," "classes," and "populations": for, in[c] his own way, he believed as firmly as any mystic in the superior reality of the things that are not seen. ①

And yet he could not help rather liking this village. When, at one o'clock, he persuaded Cosser to turn into the Two Bells, he even said so. They had both brought sandwiches with them, but Mark felt he would like a pint of beer. In the Two Bells it was very warm and dark, for the window was small. Two labourers (no doubt recalcitrant and backward) were sitting with earthenware mugs at their elbows, munching very thick sandwiches, and a third was standing up at the counter conducting a conversation with the landlord.

"No beer for me, thanks," said Cosser, "and we don't want to muck about here too long. What were you saying?"

"I was saying that on a fine morning there is something rather attractive about a place like this, in spite of all its obvious absurdities."

"Yes, it *is* a fine morning. Makes a real difference to one's health, a bit of sunlight."

"I was thinking of the place."

"You mean *this*?" said Cosser, glancing round the room. "I should have thought it was just the sort of thing we wanted to get rid of. No sunlight, no ventilation. Haven't much use for alcohol myself (read the Miller Report),[d] but if people have got to have their stimulants, I'd like to see them administered in a more hygienic way." ②

"I don't know that the stimulant is quite the whole point," said Mark, looking at his beer. The whole scene was reminding him of drinks and talks long ago—of laughter and arguments in undergraduate days. Somehow one had made friends more easily then. He wondered what had become of all that set—of Carey and Wadsden and Denniston, who had so nearly got his[e] own Fellowship.[f]

"Don't know, I'm sure," said Cosser, in answer to his last remark. "Nutrition

---

[a] substance:] *BA*; substance; *M*
[b] group,"] *B*; groups," *M*
☛ *Lectio difficilior.*
[c] in] *BM*; In *A*
[d] Report),] *B*; Report) *M*
[e] got his] *M*; go this *B*
☛ An obvious compositor's error in B.
[f] Fellowship.] *B*; fellowship. *M*

① *not merely in efficiency*

Chesterton presents a satirical picture of English inns being destroyed as "inefficient" (*A Short History of England* ch. 11 81%).

isn't my subject. You'd want to ask Stock about that."

"What I'm really thinking about," said Mark, "is not this pub, but the whole village. Of course you're quite right: that sort of thing has got to go. But it had its pleasant side. We'll have to be careful that whatever we're building up in its place will really be able to beat it on all levels—not merely in efficiency."

"Oh, architecture and all that," said Cosser. "Well, that's hardly my line, you know. That's more for someone like Wither. Have you nearly finished?"

All at once it came over Mark what a terrible bore this little man was, and in the same moment he felt utterly sick of the N.I.C.E. But he reminded himself that one could not expect to be in the interesting set at once; there would be better things later on. Anyway, he had not burnt his boats. Perhaps he would chuck up the whole thing and go back to Bracton in a day or two. But not at once. It would be only sensible to hang on for a bit and see how things shaped.

On their way back Cosser dropped him near Edgestow station, and as he walked home Mark began to think of what he would say to Jane about Belbury. You will quite misunderstand him if you think he was consciously inventing a lie. Almost involuntarily, as the picture of himself entering the flat, and of Jane's questioning face, arose in his mind, there arose also the imagination of his own voice answering her, hitting off the salient features of Belbury in amusing, confident phrases. This imaginary speech of his own gradually drove out of his[a] mind the real experiences he had undergone. Those real experiences of misgiving and of uneasiness, indeed, quickened his desire to cut a good figure in the eyes of his wife. Almost without noticing it, he had decided not to mention the affair of Cure Hardy; Jane cared for old buildings and all that sort of thing. As a result, when[b] Jane, who was at that moment drawing the curtains, heard the door opening and looked round and saw Mark, she saw a rather breezy and buoyant Mark. Yes, he was almost sure he'd got the job. The salary wasn't absolutely fixed, but he'd be going into that to-morrow.[c] It was a very funny place: he'd explain all that later. But he had already got on to[d] the real people there. Wither and Miss Hardcastle were the ones that mattered. "I *must* tell you about the Hardcastle woman," he said, "she's quite incredible."

Jane had to decide what she would say to Mark much more quickly than he had decided what he would say to her. And she decided to tell him nothing about the dreams or St. Anne's. Men hated women who had things wrong with them,

[a] his] *BM*; ; his *A*
[b] when] *BM*; When *A*
[c] to-morrow.] *BA*; tomorrow. *M*
[d] on to] *BA*; onto *M*

① *she had no idea how he disliked that voice*

Lewis noted this sad fact of human relationships in *The Screwtape Letters* (19):

> When two humans have lived together for many years it usually happens that each has tones of voice and expressions of face which are almost unendurably irritating to the other. Work on this. […] Let him assume she knows how annoying it is and that she does it to annoy […]

Mark and Jane have lived together for only six months, but the effect is visible between them: it is, in a way, encouraging, despite their difficulties, for they could not irritate each other thus unless they mattered to each other so much that their relations were like people who had been together for a long time. By contrast, Mrs. Dimble, as a Christian, subordinates such irritated responses to her will (ch. 12 V 275).

② *dressing for dinner*

Not merely putting on clothes, but "*spec*[*ifically*] to put on the more elaborate costume proper for a dinner" (*NED*, "Dress" *v.* I. 7. b). In ch. 3 IV 68 Mark is pleased that he has a new dress-suit when he dresses for his first dinner at the N.I.C.E., and when he and Cosser arrive back late after visiting Cure Hardy, they go "in to dinner late and without dressing" (ch. 4 VI 87).

③ *Jacobean panels*

Dating from the reign of King James I (1603–25).

specially queer, unusual things. Her resolution was easily kept,[a] for Mark,[b] full of his own story, asked her no questions. She was not, perhaps, entirely convinced by what he said. There was a vagueness about all the details. Very early in the conversation she said in a sharp,[c] frightened voice (she had no idea how he disliked ① that voice),[d] "Mark, you haven't given up your Fellowship[e] at Bracton?" He said[f] No, of course not, and went on. She listened only with half her mind. She knew he often had rather grandiose ideas, and from something in his face she divined that during his absence he had been drinking much more than he usually did. And so, all evening, the male bird displayed his plumage and the female played her part and asked questions and laughed and feigned more interest than she felt. Both were young, and if neither loved very much[g] each was still anxious to be admired.

VII

That evening the Fellows[h] of Bracton sat in Common Room over their wine and dessert. They had given up dressing for dinner, as an economy during the war[i] and ② not yet resumed the practice, so that their sports coats and cardigans struck a somewhat discordant note against the dark Jacobean panels, the candle-light,[j] and ③ the silver of many different periods. Feverstone and Curry were sitting together. Until that night for about three hundred years this Common Room had been one of the pleasant quiet places of England. It was in Lady Alice, on the ground floor beneath the soler, and the windows at its eastern end looked out on the river and on Bragdon Wood, across a little terrace where the Fellows were in the habit of taking their dessert on summer evenings. At[k] this hour and season these windows were, of course,[l] shut and curtained. But[m] from beyond them came such noises as had never been heard in that room before—shouts and curses and the sound of lorries heavily drumming past or harshly changing gear, rattling of chains,

---

[a] kept,] *BA*; kept *M*
[b] Mark,] *BM*; Mark *A*
[c] sharp,] *BA*; sharp *M*
[d] voice),]*BA*; voice) *M*
[e] Fellowship] *BA*; fellowship *M*
[f] said] *BA*; said, *M*
[g] much] *B*; much, *M*
[h] Fellows] *BA*; fellows *M*
[i] war] *B*; war, *M*
[j] candle-light,] *B*; candle light, *M*
[k] At] *BM*; at *A*
[l] were, of course,] *A*; were of course *BM*
[m] But] *A*; And *BM*
☛ The adversative "But" is stronger than the neutral conjunction "And", and so emphasises the way in which the noise inappropriately invades the quiet, civilised enclosure of the Common Room—"one of the pleasant quiet places of England".

① *Saeva sonare verbera, tum stridor ferri tractaeque catenae*

This is part of the description of what Aeneas hears as he approaches the entrance of the underworld (Virgil, *Aeneid* VI 557–58): "Cruel blows resound, and then there is the rattle of iron and dragged chains" (Vail 85).

drumming of mechanical drills, clanging of iron, whistles, thuddings, and an all-pervasive[a] vibration. *Saeva sonare verbera, tum stridor ferri tractaeque catenae,* as Glossop, sitting on the far side of the fire, had observed to Jewel. For beyond[b] those windows, scarcely thirty yards away on the other side of the Wynd, the conversion of an ancient woodland into an inferno of mud and noise and steel and concrete was already going on apace. Several members even of the Progressive Element—those who had rooms on this side of College—had already been grumbling about it. Curry himself had been a little surprised by the form which his dream had taken now that it was a reality, but he was doing his best to brazen it out, and though his conversation with Feverstone had to be conducted at the top of their voices, he made no allusion to this inconvenience. ①

"It's quite definite, then," he bawled, "that young Studdock is not coming back?"

"Oh,[c] quite," shouted Feverstone. "He sent me a message through a high official to tell me to let the College know."

"When will he send a formal resignation?"

"Haven't an earthly! Like all these youngsters he's very casual about these things. As a matter of fact, the longer he delays the better."

"You mean it gives us a chance to look about us?"

"Quite. You see, nothing need come before the College till he writes. One wants to have the whole question of his successor taped *before* that."

"Obviously. That is most important. Once you present an open question to all these people who don't understand the field and don't know their own minds[d] you may get anything happening."

"Exactly. That's what we want to avoid. The only way to manage a place like this is to produce your candidate—bring the rabbit out of the hat—two minutes after you've announced the vacancy."

"We must begin thinking about it[e] at once."

"Does his successor have to be a sociologist? I mean is the Fellowship[f] tied to the subject?"

"Oh, not in the least. It's one of those Paston Fellowships.[g] Why? Had you any subject in mind?"

---

[a] all-pervasive] *BA*; all pervasive *M*
[b] beyond] *BM*; Beyond *A*
[c] Oh,] *BA*; Oh *M*
[d] minds] *B*; minds, *M*
[e] it] *BM*; the vacancy *A*
[f] Fellowship] *BA*; fellowship *M*
[g] Fellowships.] *B*; fellowships. *M*

① *president of the Sphinxes and used to edit* The Adult

A presumably fictional club and journal at Cambridge: we can assume that the Sphinxes would have been prestigious and exclusive—in the sense of "existing to exclude"—and that the journal would have published the kind of political views that Feverstone can persuade Curry to approve of.

"It's a long time since we had anyone in politics."[a]

"Um . . . yes.[b] There's still a considerable prejudice against politics[c] as an academic subject. I say, Feverstone, oughtn't we to give this new subject a leg up?"

"What new subject?"

"Pragmatometry."

"Well, now,[d] it's funny you should say that, because the man I was beginning to think of is a politician[e] who has also been going in a good deal for pragmatometry.[f] One could call it a fellowship in social pragmatometry,[g] or something like that."

"Who is the man?"

"Laird—from Leicester, Cambridge."

It was automatic for Curry to look very thoughtful, though he had never heard of Laird, and to say[h] "Ah, Laird. Just remind me of the details of his academic career."

"Well," said Feverstone, "as you remember, he was in bad health at the time of his finals, and came rather a cropper. The Cambridge examining is so bad nowadays that one hardly counts that. Everyone knew he was one of the most brilliant men of his year. He was president of the Sphinxes and used to edit *The Adult*. David Laird, you know." ①

"Yes, to be sure. David[i] Laird. But I say, Dick . . ."

"Yes?"

"I'm not quite happy about his bad degree. Of course I don't attach a superstitious value to examination results any more than you do. Still . . . we[j] have made one or two unfortunate elections lately." Almost involuntarily as he said this, Curry glanced across the room to where Pelham sat—Pelham with his little button-like mouth and his pudding face. Pelham was a sound man:[k] but even Curry found it difficult to remember anything that Pelham had ever done or said.

"Yes, I know," said Feverstone, "but even our worst elections aren't quite so dim as those the College makes when we leave it to itself."

Perhaps because the intolerable noise had frayed his nerves, Curry felt a

---

[a] politics."] *B*; Politics." *M*
[b] Um . . . yes.] *B*; Um—yes. *M*
[c] politics] *B*; Politics *M*
[d] Well, now,] *BA*; Well now, *M*
[e] politician] *B*; Politician *M*
[f] pragmatometry.] *BA*; Pragmatometry. *M*
[g] pragmatometry,] *BA*; Pragmatometry, *M*
[h] say] *BA*; say, *M*
[i] David] *BM*; That *A*
[j] we] *BA*; We *M*
[k] man:] *B*; man; *M*

momentary doubt about the "dimness" of these outsiders. He had dined recently at Northumberland and found Telford dining there the same night. The contrast between the alert and witty Telford whom everyone at Northumberland seemed to know, whom everyone listened to, and the "dim" Telford in Bracton Common Room had perplexed him. Could it be that the silences of all these "outsiders" in his own college,[a] their monosyllabic replies when he condescended and their blank faces when he assumed his confidential manner, had an explanation which had never occurred to him? The fantastic suggestion that he, Curry, might be a bore, passed through his mind so swiftly that a second later he had forgotten it forever. The much less painful suggestion that these traditionalists and research beetles affected to look down on him was retained. But Feverstone was shouting at him again.

"I'm going to be at Cambridge next week," he[b] said, "in[c] fact I'm giving a dinner. I'd as soon it wasn't mentioned here, because, as a matter of fact, the P.M. may be coming, and one or two big newspaper people and Tony Dew. What? Oh, of course you know Tony. That little dark man from the Bank. Laird is going to be there. He's some kind of cousin of the P.M.'s. I was wondering if you could join us. I know David's very anxious to meet you. He's heard a lot about you from some chap who used to go to your lectures. I can't remember the name."

"Well, it would be very difficult. It rather depends on when old Bill's funeral is to be. I should have to be here for that of course. Was there anything about the inquest on the six-o'clock[d] news?"

"I didn't hear. But, of course,[e] that raises a second question. Now that the Blizzard has gone to blow in a better world, we have *two* vacancies."

"I can't hear," yelled Curry.[f] "Is this noise getting worse? Or am I getting deaf?"

"I say, Sub-Warden," shouted Ted Raynor[g] from beyond Feverstone, "what the devil are your friends outside doing?"

"Can't they work without shouting?" asked someone else.

"It doesn't sound like work at all to me," said a third.

---

[a] college,] *B*; College *M*
[b] he] *BM*; Feverstone *A*
[c] said, "in] *BA*; said. "In *M*
[d] six-o'clock] *A*; six o'clock *BM*
☛ A hyphenates the compound adjective (see Fowler "HYPHENS").
[e] But, of course,] *B*; But of course *M*
[f] Curry.] *BM*; Feverstone *A*
[g] Ted Raynor] *BA*; Brizeacre *M*
☛ Ted Raynor appears only in this section of the novel, while Brizeacre is referred to in ch. 1 V and ch. 2 III. Raynor speaks a few lines later in B & M (A excises the speech), but not in such a way that it has to be him that speaks here.

① *rugger*

Rugby football (*NED*).

② *Henrietta Maria*

Henrietta Maria (1609–69) of France was the consort of Charles I from 1625. In 1634 she and Charles embarked on a progress as far as Derbyshire (Hibbard), which could have included Edgestow *en route*.

"Listen!" said Glossop suddenly, "that's not work. Listen to the feet. It's more like a game of rugger." ①

"It's getting worse every minute," said Raynor.

Next moment nearly everyone in the room was on his feet. "What was that?" shouted one. "They're murdering someone," said Glossop. "There's only one way of getting a noise like that out of a man's throat." "Where are you going?" asked Curry. "I'm going to see what's happening," said Glossop. "Curry, go and collect all the shooters in College. Someone ring up the police." "I shouldn't go out if I were you," said Feverstone, who had remained seated and was pouring himself out another glass of wine, "it sounds as if the police, or something, was there already."

"What do you mean?"

"Listen. There!"

"I thought that was their infernal drill."

"Listen!"

"My God . . . you really think it's a machine-gun?"[a]

" Look out! Look out!" said a dozen voices[b] at once as a splintering of glass became audible and a shower of stones fell on to[c] the Common Room floor. A moment later several of the Fellows had made a rush for the windows and put up the shutters: and then they were all standing staring at one another, and silent but for the noise of their heavy breathing. Glossop had a cut on the forehead, and on the floor lay the fragments of that famous east window on which Henrietta Maria had once cut her name with a diamond. ②

[a] machine-gun?"] *BA*; machine gun?" *M*
[b] voices] *BM*; voices, *A*
[c] on to] *A*; onto *BM*

FIVE

Elasticity

I

NEXT morning Mark went back to Belbury by train. He had promised his wife to clear up a number of points about his salary and place of residence, and the memory of all these promises made a little cloud of uneasiness in his mind, but on the whole he was in good spirits. This return to Belbury—just sauntering in and hanging up his hat and ordering a drink—was a pleasant contrast to his first arrival. The servant who brought the drink knew him. Filostrato nodded to him. Women *would* fuss, but this was clearly the real world. After the drink he strolled upstairs to Cosser's office. He was there for only five minutes, and when he came out[a] his state of mind had been completely altered.

Steele and Cosser were both there and both looked up with the air of men who have been interrupted by a total stranger. Neither spoke.

"Ah—good morning," said Mark awkwardly.

Steele finished making a pencil note on some large document which was spread out before him.

"What is it, Mr. Studdock?" he said without looking up.

"I came to see Cosser," said Mark, and then, addressing Cosser, "I've just been thinking over the last section but one in that report——"[b]

"What report's this?" said Steele to Cosser.

"Oh, I thought," replied Cosser,[c] with a little twisty smile at one corner of his mouth," that it would be a good thing to put together a report on Cure Hardy in my spare time, and as there was nothing particular to do yesterday I drew it up. Mr. Studdock helped me."

"Well, never mind about that now," said Steele. "You can talk to Mr. Cosser about it some other time, Mr. Studdock. I'm afraid he's busy at present."

"Look here," said Mark, "I think we'd better understand one another. Am I to take it that this report was simply a private hobby of Cosser's? And if so, I should like to have known that before I spent eight hours' work on it. And whose orders am I under?"

---

[a] out] *B*; out, *M*
[b] report——"] BA; report—" *M*
[c] Cosser,] *BA*; Cosser *M*

Steele, playing with his pencil, looked at Cosser.

"I asked you a question about my position, Mr. Steele," said Mark.

"I haven't time for this sort of thing," said Steele. "If you haven't any work to do, I have. I know nothing about your position."

Mark thought, for a moment, of turning to Cosser; but Cosser's smooth, freckled face and non-committal eyes suddenly filled him with such contempt that he turned on his heel and left the room, slamming the door behind him. He was going to see the Deputy Director.

At the door of Wither's room he hesitated for a moment because he heard voices from within. But he was too angry to wait. He knocked and entered without noticing whether the knock had been answered.

"My dear boy," said the Deputy Director, looking up but not quite fixing his eyes on Mark's face, "I am[a] delighted to see you."[b]

As he heard these words Mark noticed that there was a third person in the room.[c] It was a man called Stone whom he had met at dinner the day before yesterday. Stone was standing in front of Wither's table rolling and unrolling a piece of blotting-paper[d] with his fingers. His mouth was open, his eyes fixed on the Deputy Director.

"Delighted to see you,"[e] repeated Wither. "All the more so because you—er—interrupted me in what I am afraid I must call a rather painful interview. As I was just saying to poor Mr. Stone when you came in, nothing is nearer to my heart than the wish that this great Institute should all work together like one family . . . the greatest unity of will and purpose, Mr. Stone, the freest mutual confidence . . . that is what I expect of my colleagues. But then as you may remind me, Mr.—ah—Studdock, even in family life there are occasionally strains and frictions and misunderstandings. And that is why, my dear boy, I am not at the moment quite at leisure—don't go, Mr. Stone. I have a great deal more to say to you."

"Perhaps I'd better come back later?" said Mark.

"Well, perhaps in all the circumstances . . . it is *your* feelings that I am considering, Mr. Stone . . . perhaps . . . the usual method of seeing me, Mr. Studdock, is to apply to my secretary and make an appointment. Not, you will

---

[a] I am] *BA*; I'm *M*
☛ M's abbreviation seems less in keeping with Wither's ceremonious style than "I am".
[b] you."¶] *A*; you." *BM*
[c] room.] *BM*; room, *A*
[d] blotting-paper] *BA*; blotting paper *M*
[e] you,"] *BM*; you." *A*
☛ The full-stop is a mistake in A, because the sentence continued after the closing of the quotation.

① *Waips, the girls of the Women's Auxiliary Institutional Police*

This reflects the actual linguistic practice in England in respect of the various Women's Auxiliaries to the Services that came into being during World War I and II. Their acronyms (adapted for pronunciation) were used for the members of the services: "Wrens" were members of the Women's Royal Naval Service (founded in 1917); a "Waac" was a member of the Women's Auxiliary Army Corps (1917); and a "Waaf" a member of the Women's Auxiliary Air Force (1939). It is, however, sinister that they are named in conformity with military, not police, tradition.

understand, that I have the least wish to insist on any formalities or would be other than pleased to see you whenever you looked in. It is the waste of *your* time that I am anxious to avoid."

"Thank you, sir,"[a] said Mark. "I'll go and see your secretary."

The secretary's office was next door. When one went in one found not the secretary himself[b] but a number of subordinates who were cut off from their visitors behind a sort of counter. Mark made an appointment for ten o'clock to-morrow[c] which was the[d] earliest hour they could offer him. As he came out he ran into Fairy Hardcastle.

"Hullo, Studdock," said the Fairy. "Hanging round the D.D.'s office? That won't do, you know."

"I have decided," said Mark, "that I must either get my position definitely fixed once and for all or else leave the Institute."

She looked at him with an ambiguous expression in which amusement seemed to predominate. Then she suddenly[e] slipped her arm through his.

"Look, sonny,"[f] she said, "you drop all that, see? It isn't going to do you any good. You come[g] along and have a talk with me."

"There's really nothing to talk about, Miss Hardcastle," said Mark. "I'm quite clear in my mind. Either I get a real job here, or I go back to Bracton. That's simple enough: I don't even particularly mind which, so long as I know."

To this the Fairy made no answer, and the steady pressure of her arm compelled Mark, unless he was prepared to struggle, to go with her along the passage. The intimacy and authority of her grip was ludicrously ambiguous, and would have fitted almost equally well the relations of policeman and prisoner, mistress and lover, nurse and child. Mark felt that he would look a fool if they met anyone.

She brought him to her own offices which were on the second floor. The outer office was full of what he had already learned to call Waips, the girls of the Women's Auxiliary Institutional Police. The men of the force, though very much more numerous, were not so often met with indoors, but Waips were constantly seen flitting to and fro wherever Miss Hardcastle appeared. Far from sharing the masculine characteristics of their chief they were (as Feverstone once said)

[a] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*
[b] himself] *B*; himself, *M*
[c] to-morrow] *BA*; tomorrow *M*
[d] the] *BM*; , the *A*
[e] suddenly] *BM*; and suddenly *A*
[f] sonny,"] *BA*; Sonny," *M*
[g] come] *BM*; Come *A*

"feminine to the point of imbecility"—small and slight and fluffy and full of giggles. Miss Hardcastle behaved to them as if she were a man, and addressed them in tones of half-breezy, half-ferocious[ab] gallantry. "Cocktails, Dolly," she bawled as they entered the outer office. When they reached the inner office she made Mark sit down but remained standing herself with her back to the fire and her legs wide apart. The drinks were brought and Dolly retired,[c] closing the door behind her. Mark had grumblingly told his grievance on the way.

"Cut it all out, Studdock," said Miss Hardcastle "And whatever you do, don't go bothering the D.D. I told you before that you needn't worry about all those little third-floor[d] people provided you've got him on your side. Which you have at present. But you won't have if you keep on going to him with complaints."

"That might be very good advice, Miss Hardcastle," said Mark, "if I were committed to staying here at all. But I'm not. And from what I've seen I don't like the place. I've very nearly made up my mind to go home. Only I thought I'd just have a talk with him first, to make everything clear."

"Making things clear is the one thing the D.D. can't stand," replied Miss Hardcastle. "That's not how he runs the place. And mind you, he knows what he's about. It works, sonny.[e] You've no idea yet how well it works. As for leaving . . . you're not superstitious, are you? I am. I don't think it's lucky to leave the N.I.C.E. You needn't bother your head about all the Steeles and Cossers. That's part of your apprenticeship. You're being put through it at the moment, but if you hold on you'll come out above them. All you've got to do is to sit tight. Not one of them is going to be left when we get going."

"That's just the sort of line Cosser took about Steele," said Mark, "and it didn't seem to do me much good when it came to the point."

"Do you know, Studdock," said Miss Hardcastle, "I've taken a fancy to you. And it's just as well I have. Because if I hadn't, I'd be disposed to resent that last remark."

"I don't mean to be offensive," said Mark. "But—damn it all—look at it from my point of view."

"No good, sonny,"[f] said Miss Hardcastle, shaking her head. "You don't know enough facts yet for your point of view to be worth sixpence. You haven't yet realised what you're in on. You're being offered a chance of something far

---

[a] half-breezy, half-ferocious] *MA*; half breezy, half ferocious *B*
[b] ferocious] *BA*; ferocious, *M*
[c] retired,] *B*; retired *M*
[d] third-floor] *B*; third floor *M*
[e] sonny.] *BA*; Sonny. *M*
[f] sonny,"] *B*; Sonny," *M*

① *quisling government*

A puppet government, traitorously ruling for a hostile power (in this case Hitler's Germany); named after the Norwegian Vidkun Quisling (1887–1945), who was first a fifth columnist and then a puppet ruler for Hitler.

bigger than a seat in the cabinet. And there are only two alternatives, you know.[a] Either to be in the N.I.C.E. or to be out of it. And I know better than you which is going to be most fun."

"I *do* understand that," said Mark. "But anything is better than being nominally in and having nothing to do. Give me a real place in the Sociological Department and I'll . . ."

"Rats! That whole Department is going to be scrapped. It had to be there at the beginning for propaganda purposes. But they're all going to be weeded out."

"But what assurance have I that I'm going to be one of their successors?"

"You aren't. They're not going to have any successors. The real work has nothing to do with all these departments. The kind of sociology we're interested in will be done by my people—the police."

"Then where do I come in?"

"If you'll trust me," said the Fairy, putting down her empty glass and producing a cheroot, "I can put you on to[b] a bit of your real work—what you were really brought here to do—straight away."

"What's that?"

"Alcasan,"[c] said Miss Hardcastle between her teeth. She had started one of her interminable dry smokes. Then, glancing at Mark with a hint of contempt, "You know who I'm talking about, don't you?"

"You mean the radiologist—the man who was guillotined?" asked Mark,[d] who was completely bewildered.[e]

The Fairy nodded.

"He's to be rehabilitated," she said. "Gradually. I've got all the facts in the dossier. You begin with a quiet little article—not questioning his guilt, not at first, but just hinting that of course he *was* a member of their quisling[f] government,[g] and there was a prejudice against him. Say you don't doubt the verdict was just, but it's disquieting to realise that it would almost certainly have been the same even if he'd been innocent. Then you follow it up in a day or two with an article of quite a different kind. Popular account of the value of his work. You can mug up the facts—enough for *that* kind of article—in an afternoon. Then a letter, rather indignant, to the paper that printed the first article, and going much further. The

[a] know.] *BM*; know; *A*
[b] on to] *BA*; onto *M*
[c] "Alcasan,"] *BM*; "Alcasan." *A*
[d] Mark,] *BA*; Mark *M*
[e] bewildered.¶] *BA*; bewildered. *M*
[f] quisling] *BA*; Quisling *M*
[g] government,] *BA*; government *M*

execution *was* a miscarriage of justice. By that time——"[a]

"What on earth is the point of all this?"

"I'm telling you, Studdock. Alcasan is to be rehabilitated. Made into a martyr. An irreparable loss to the human race."

"But what for?"

"There you go again! You grumble about being given nothing to do, and as soon as I suggest a bit of real work you expect to have the whole plan of campaign told you before you do it. It doesn't make sense. That's not the way to get on here. The great thing is to do what you're told. If you turn out to be any good you'll soon understand what's going on. But you've got to begin by doing the work. You don't seem to realise[b] what we are. We're an army."

"Anyway," said Mark, "I'm not a journalist. I didn't come here to write newspaper articles. I tried to make that clear to Feverstone at the very beginning."

"The sooner you drop all that talk about what you came here to do, the better you'll get on. I'm speaking for your own good, Studdock. You *can* write. That's one of the things you're wanted for."

"Then I've come here under a misunderstanding," said Mark. The sop to his literary vanity, at that period of his career, by no means compensated for the implication that his sociology[c] was of no importance. "I've no notion of spending my life writing newspaper articles," he said. "And if I had, I'd want to know a good deal more about the politics of the N.I.C.E. before I went in for that sort of thing."

"Haven't you been told that it's strictly non-political?"

"I've been told so many things that I don't know whether I'm on my head or my heels," said Mark. "But I don't see how one's going to start a newspaper stunt (which is about what this comes to) without being political. Is it Left or Right papers that are going to print all this rot about Alcasan?"

"Both, honey, both," said Miss Hardcastle. "Don't you understand *anything*? Isn't it absolutely essential to keep a fierce Left and a fierce Right[d] both on their toes and each terrified of the other? That's how we get things done. Any opposition to the N.I.C.E. is represented as a Left racket in the Right papers and a Right racket in the Left papers. If it's properly done[e] you get each side outbidding the other in support of us—to refute the enemy slanders. *Of course* we're non-political. The real power always is."

---

[a] time——"] *BA*; time—" *M*
[b] realise] *BA*; realize *M*
☛ Inadvertent American spelling by M's compositor (see *Webster's*).
[c] sociology] *B*; Sociology *M*
[d] Right] *BA*; Right, *M*
[e] done] *B*; done, *M*

① *Weekly Question*

An invented weekly journal.

② *Basic English*

British American Scientific International Commercial (Basic) English was invented by C.K. Ogden, who published *Basic English: A General Introduction with Rules and Grammar* in 1930. It is based on a vocabulary of 850 words, and simplifies English so much as to produce an artificial language rather than a simplified natural language (see *Oxford Dictionary of English Grammar*). Ogden had earlier collaborated with I.A. Richards on *The Meaning of Meaning* (1923): this is a book that "*The Green Book*" (with which Lewis disagrees at the beginning of *The Abolition of Man*) acknowledges with approbation (Myers 72–73).

The only Tory (Conservative) Prime Ministers who could have "taken up" Basic English between 1930 and the writing of *That Hideous Strength* are Stanley Baldwin, Neville Chamberlain and Winston Churchill. All of them had extremely troubled terms, and, if any of them did take up Basic English, the fact has not loomed large in their biographies.

③ *when the Duke of Windsor abdicated*

Edward VIII acceded to the throne on 20 January 1936, and abdicated on 11 December the same year in order to marry the twice-divorced American Wallis Simpson. He was succeeded by his younger brother, George VI, who created him Duke of Windsor.

"I don't believe you can do that," said Mark. "Not with the papers that are read by educated people."

"That shows you're still in the nursery, lovey," said Miss Hardcastle. "Haven't you yet realised that it's the other way round?"

"How do you mean?"

"Why,[a] you fool, it's the educated readers[b] who *can* be gulled. All our difficulty comes with the others. When did you meet a workman who believes the papers? He takes it for granted that they're all propaganda and skips the leading articles. He buys his paper for the football results and the little paragraphs about girls falling out of windows and corpses found in Mayfair flats. He is our problem: we[c] have to recondition him. But the educated public, the people who read the highbrow weeklies, don't need reconditioning. They're all right already. They'll believe anything."

"As one of the class you mention," said Mark with a smile, "I just don't believe it."

"Good Lord!" said the Fairy, "where are your eyes? Look at what the weeklies have got away with! Look at the *Weekly Question*. There's a paper for you. ① When Basic English came in simply as the invention of a free-thinking Cambridge ② don, nothing was too good for it; as soon as it was taken up by a Tory Prime Minister it became a menace to the purity of our language. And wasn't the Monarchy an expensive absurdity for ten years? And then, when the Duke of ③ Windsor abdicated, didn't the *Question* go all monarchist and legitimist for about a fortnight? Did they drop a single reader? Don't you see that the educated reader *can't* stop reading the highbrow[d] weeklies whatever they do? He can't. He's been conditioned."

"Well," said Mark, "this is all very interesting, Miss Hardcastle, but it has nothing to do with me. In the first place, I don't want to become a journalist at all:[e] and if I did[f] I should like to be an honest journalist."

"Very well," said Miss Hardcastle. "All you'll do is to help to ruin this country, and perhaps the whole human race. Besides dishing your own career."

The confidential tone in which she had been speaking up till now had

---

[a] "Why,] *B*; "Why *M*

[b] readers] *B*; reader *M*

☛ B's plural agrees more obviously with "the others" that follows, although M's implied comparison between "the educated reader" and "the others" is also possible.

[c] problem: we] *B*; problem. We *M*

[d] highbrow] *ed.*; high-/brow *B*; high-brow *M*

☛ In line 12 both B & M have "highbrow". I assume that B's hyphen here is only because the word breaks across two lines, since B is usually more consistent in its use of hyphens than M.

[e] all:] *BA*; all, *M*

[f] did] *BA*; did, *M*

disappeared and there was a threatening finality in her voice. The citizen and the honest man which had been awaked in Mark by the conversation, quailed a little:[a] his other and far stronger self, the self that was anxious at all costs not to be placed among the outsiders, leaped up, fully alarmed.

"I don't mean," he said, "that I don't see your point. I was only wondering . . ."

"It's all one to me,[b] Studdock," said Miss Hardcastle, seating herself at last at her table. "If you don't like the job, of course, that's your affair. Go and settle it with the D.D. He doesn't *like* people resigning, but, of course,[c] you can. He'll have something to say to Feverstone for bringing you here. We'd assumed you understood."

The mention of Feverstone brought sharply before Mark as a reality the plan, which had up till now been slightly unreal, of going back to Edgestow and satisfying himself with the career of a Fellow of Bracton. On what terms would he go back? Would he still be a member of the inner circle[d] even at Bracton? To find himself no longer in the confidence of the Progressive Element, to be thrust down among the Telfords and Jewels, seemed to him unendurable. And the salary of a mere don looked a poor thing after the dreams he had been dreaming for the last few days. Married life was already turning out more expensive than he had reckoned. Then came a sharp doubt about that two hundred pounds for membership of the N.I.C.E. club. But no—that was absurd. They couldn't possibly dun him for that.

"Well, obviously," he said in a vague voice, "the first thing is to see the D.D."

"Now that you're leaving," said the Fairy, "there's one thing I've got to say. I've laid all the cards on the table. If it should ever enter your head that it would be fun to repeat any of this conversation in the outer world, take my advice and don't. It wouldn't be at all healthy for your future career."

"Oh,[e] but of course," began Mark.

"You'd better run along now," said Miss Hardcastle. "Have a nice talk with the D.D. Be careful not to annoy the old man. He does so hate resignations."

Mark made an attempt to prolong the interview, but the Fairy did not permit this and in a few seconds he was outside the door.

---

[a] little:] *BA*; little; *M*
[b] me,] *BA*; me. *M*
☛ An obvious error in M.
[c] but, of course,] *BA*; but of course *M*
[d] inner circle] *B*; Inner Circle *M*
[e] "Oh,] *B*; "Oh *M*

① *Mark had no scruples about vivisection.*

Ransom, on the other hand, has always disagreed with vivisection, even before he met other rational creatures in Malacandra and enjoyed the company of the beasts of Perelandra. When he awakes in Weston's spaceship to find that Weston and Devine have kidnapped him and are taking him to a planet called Malacandra, Weston pontificates, "You cannot be so small-minded as to think that the rights or the life of an individual or of a million individuals are of the slightest importance in comparison with this" (*Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 4 34–35); Ransom responds, " I happen to disagree, […] and I always have disagreed, even about vivisection" (35).

In a 1947 essay Lewis rationally sets out the arguments for and against vivisection. He begins by pointing out that the emotional pictures of "pretty little dogs" or "suffering women and children" are equally irrelevant to the question "whether it [vivisection] is right or wrong" ("Vivisection" 78). If pain is an evil and the infliction of pain wrong, then "vivisection can only be defended by showing that it is right that one species should suffer in order that another species should be happier" (79). He concludes that a Christian may argue honestly that God has made humans higher than the animals and that animals may be made to suffer (with due care and even awe) in order that human suffering may be alleviated (79–81). The Naturalist, Darwinian vivisector, however, sees a human as just another animal, so kills other animals merely out of sentiment for his own species (81–82)—which opens the way for killing other races out of sentiment for one's own race (82). He finishes by warning that the vivisectionists already have public opinion on their side, and that it is ethically dangerous for human beings to take for granted the act of killing for utilitarian reasons (82–84).

The rest of that day he passed miserably enough, keeping out of people's way as much as possible lest his lack of occupation should be noticed. He went out before lunch for one of those short, unsatisfactory walks which a man takes in a strange neighbourhood[a] when he has brought with him neither old clothes nor a walking-stick.[b] After lunch he explored the grounds. But they were not the sort of grounds that anyone could walk in for pleasure. The Edwardian millionaire who had built Belbury had enclosed about twenty acres with a low brick wall surmounted by an iron railing, and laid it all out in what his contractor called Ornamental Pleasure Grounds. There were trees dotted about and winding paths covered so thickly with round white pebbles that you could hardly walk on them. There were immense flower-beds,[c] some oblong, some lozenge-shaped, and some crescents. There were plantations—slabs would be almost a better word—of that kind of laurel which looks as if it were made of cleverly painted and varnished metal. Massive summer seats of bright green stood at regular intervals along the paths. The whole effect was like that of a municipal cemetery. Yet, unattractive as it was, he sought it again after tea, smoking incessantly,[d] though the wind blew the lit part down the side of his cigarette,[e] and his tongue was already burning. This time he wandered round to the back parts of the house,[f] where the newer and lower buildings joined it. Here he was surprised by a stable-like smell and a medley of growls, grunts, and whimpers—all the signs, in fact, of a considerable zoo. At first he did not understand, but presently he remembered that an immense programme of vivisection, freed at last from Red Tape and from niggling economy, was one of the plans of the N.I.C.E. He had not been particularly interested and had thought vaguely of rats, rabbits, and an occasional dog. The confused noises from within suggested something very different. As he stood there one great yawn-like[g] howl arose, and then, as if it had set the key, all manner of trumpetings, bayings, screams, laughter even, which shuddered and protested for a moment and then died away into mutterings and whines. Mark had no scruples about vivisection. What the noise meant to him was the greatness and grandiosity of this whole undertaking from which, apparently, he was likely to be excluded.

[a] neighbourhood] *B*; neighborhood *M*
☛ Anadvertent American spelling by M's compositor (see *Webster's*).
[b] walking-stick.] *B*; walking stick. *M*
[c] flower-beds,] *B*; flower beds, *M*
[d] incessantly,] *B*; incessantly *M*
[e] cigarette,] *B*; cigarette *M*
[f] house,] *A*; house *BM*
[g] one great, yawn-like] *BA*; a loud melancholy *M*
☛ B & A's reading would be preferred as the *lectio difficilior* even if they were not the copy texts.

There were all sorts of things in there: hundreds[a] of pounds' worth of living animality, which the Institute could afford to cut up like paper on the mere off-chance[b] of some interesting discovery. He *must* get the job: he must somehow solve the problem of Steele. But the noise was disagreeable and he moved away.

II

Mark woke next morning with the feeling that there would certainly be one fence and perhaps two fences for him to get over during the day. The first was his interview with the Deputy Director. Unless he could get a very definite assurance about a post and a salary, he would cut his connection with the Institute. And then, when he reached home, the second fence would be his explanation to Jane of how the whole dream had faded away.

The first real fog of the autumn had descended on Belbury that morning. Mark ate his breakfast by artificial light, and neither post nor newspaper had arrived. It was a Friday,[c] and a servant handed him his bill for the portion of a week[d] which he had already spent in the Institute. He put it in his pocket after a hasty glance with a resolution that this, at any rate, should never be mentioned to Jane. Neither the total nor the items were of the sort that wives easily understand. He himself doubted whether there were not some mistake, but he was still at that age when a man would rather be fleeced to his last penny than dispute a bill. Then he finished his second cup of tea, felt for cigarettes, found none, and ordered a new packet.

The odd half-hour[e] which he had to wait[f] before keeping his appointment with the Deputy Director passed slowly. No one spoke to him. Everyone else seemed to be hasting away on some important and well-defined purpose. For part of the time he was alone in the lounge and felt that the servants looked at him as if he ought not to be there. He was glad when he was able to go upstairs and knock

---

[a] hundreds] *B*; thousands *M*

☛ In 1946 the Pound-Dollar exchange rate was pegged at £1 to $4.03 (Todd). Possibly an American editor felt that "hundreds" of currency units would not seem like very much to readers accustomed to a unit worth a quarter of the Sterling unit, and so inflated it to "thousands".

[b] off-chance] *B*; chance *M*

☛ B's reading, alluding to "a remote chance" (*NED*, "Off" C. *adj.* 3. b), is even more dismissive of likelihood of the vivisection actually enabling a useful discovery than M's.

[c] Friday,] *A*; Friday *BM*

[d] week] *BA*; week, *M*

[e] half-hour] *BA*; half hour *M*

[f] had to wait] *BA*; had waited *M*

☛ M's past perfect "had waited" would require the past perfect "had passed slowly" in the next line, since the actions happen together. B's simple past "had to wait" agrees with the simple past "passed slowly".

on Wither's door.

He was admitted at once, but the[a] conversation was not easy to begin because Wither said nothing, and though he looked up as soon as Mark entered, with an expression of dreamy courtesy, he did not look exactly at Mark, nor did he ask him to sit down. The room, as usual, was extremely hot, and Mark, divided between his desire to make it clear that he had fully resolved to be left hanging about no longer and his equally keen desire not to lose the job if there were any real job going, did not perhaps speak very well. At all events[b] the Deputy Director left him to run down—to pass into disjointed repetitions and thence into complete silence. That silence lasted for some time. Wither sat with his lips pouted and slightly open as though he were humming a tune.

"So I think, sir,[c] I'd better go," said Mark at last,[d] with vague reference to what he had been saying.

"You are Mr. Studdock[e] I think?" said Wither tentatively after another prolonged silence.

"Yes," said Mark impatiently. "I called on you with Lord Feverstone a few days ago. You gave me to understand that you were offering me a position on the sociological side of the N.I.C.E. But as I was saying——"[f]

"One moment, Mr. Studdock," interrupted the Deputy Director. "It is so important to be perfectly clear what we are doing. You are no doubt aware that in certain senses of the words it would be most unfortunate to speak of my offering anyone a post in the Institute. You must not imagine for a moment that I hold any kind of autocratic position, nor, on the other hand, that the relation between my own sphere of influence and the powers—I am speaking of their temporary powers, you understand—of the permanent committee[g] or those of the Director himself are defined by any hard-and-fast[h] system of what—er—one might call a constitutional, or even a constitutive, character. For example——"[i]

"Then, sir,[j] can you tell me whether anyone has offered me a post, and, if so, who?"

"Oh," said Wither suddenly, changing both his position and his tone[k] as if a

---

[a] the] *BM*; The *A*
[b] events] *BA*; events, *M*
[c] sir,] *BA*; Sir, *M*
[d] last,] *B*; last *M*
[e] Studdock] *BA*; Studdock, *M*
[f] ——"] *BA*; —" *M*
[g] permanent committee] *BA*; Permanent Committee *M*
[h] hard-and-fast] *A*; hard and fast *BM*
[i] example——"] *BA*; example—" *M*
[j] sir,] *BA*; Sir, *M*
[k] tone] *BA*; tone, *M*

new idea had struck him. "There has never been the least question of that sort. It was always understood that your co-operation with the Institute would be entirely acceptable—would be of the greatest value."

"Well, can I—I mean, oughtn't we to discuss the details? I mean the salary for example and—who should I be working under?"

"My dear friend," said Wither with a smile, "I do not anticipate that there will be any difficulty about the—er—the financial side of the matter. As for——"[a]

"What would the salary be, sir?"[b] said Mark.

"Well, there you touch on a point which it is hardly for me to decide. I believe that members in the position which we had envisaged you as occupying usually draw some sum like fifteen hundred a year, allowing for fluctuations calculated on a very liberal basis. You will find that all[c] questions of that sort will adjust themselves with the greatest ease."

"But when should I know, sir?[d] Who ought I to go to about it?"

"You mustn't suppose, Mr. Studdock, that when I mention fifteen hundred I am at all excluding the possibility of some higher figure. I don't think any of us here would allow a disagreement on that point to[e] . . ."[f]

"I should be perfectly satisfied with fifteen hundred," said Mark. "I wasn't thinking of that at all. But—but——"[g] The[h] Deputy Director's expression became more and more courtly and confidential as Mark stammered, so that when he[i] finally blurted[j] out, "I suppose there'd be a contract or something of the kind," he felt he had committed an unutterable vulgarity.

"Well," said the Deputy Director,[k] fixing his eyes on the ceiling and sinking his voice to a whisper as though he too were profoundly embarrassed, "that is not exactly the sort of procedure . . . it would, no doubt, be possible . . ."

"And that isn't the main point, sir,"[l] said Mark reddening. "There's the question of my status. Am I to work under Mr. Steele?"

---

[a] for——"] *BA*; for—"*M*
[b] sir?"] *BA*; Sir?" *M*
[c] all] *BM*; All *A*
[d] sir?] *BA*; Sir? *M*
[e] point to] *B*; point *M*
☛ B gives Wither one more word before he trails off than M does, but neither reading is obviously better than the other.
[f] . . ."] *BA*; —" *M*
[g] but——"] *A*; but—" *BM*
[h] The] *MA*; the *B*
[i] he] *BM*; Mark *A*
[j] blurted] *MA*; blurred *B*
☛ An obvious compositor's error in B.
[k] Director,] *BA*; Director *M*
[l] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*

"I have here a form," said Wither,[a] opening a drawer, "which has not, I believe, been ever actually used but which was designed for such agreements. You might care to study it at your leisure and if you are satisfied we could sign it at any time."

"But about Mr. Steele?"

At that moment a secretary entered and placed some letters on the Deputy Director's table.

"Ah! The post at last!" said Wither. "Perhaps, Mr. Studdock, er—you will have letters of your own to attend to. You are, I believe, married?" A smile of fatherly indulgence overspread his face as he said these words.

"I'm sorry to delay you, sir,"[b] said Mark, "but about Mr. Steele? There is no good my looking at the form of agreement until that question is settled. I should feel compelled to refuse any position which involved working under Mr. Steele."

"That opens up a very interesting question about which I should like to have a quite informal and confidential chat with you on some future occasion," said Wither. "For the moment, Mr. Studdock, I shall not regard anything you have said as final. If you care to call on me to-morrow[c] . . ."[d] He became absorbed in the letter he had opened, and Mark, feeling that he had achieved enough for one interview, left the room. Apparently they did really want him at the N.I.C.E. and were prepared to pay a high price for him. He would fight it out about Steele later; meanwhile he would study the form of agreement.

He came downstairs again and found the following letter waiting for him.

Bracton College,
Edgestow,
Oct. 20th, 19—

My dear Mark.[e]

---

[a] Wither,] *BA*; Wither *M*
[b] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*
[c] to-morrow] *B*; tomorrow *M*
[d] . . ."] *MA*; . " *B*
☛ An obvious printing error in B: the missing marks and blank gap indicate worn type.
[e] Bracton College,¶ Edgestow¶ Oct. 20th, 19—¶ My dear Mark.] *M* BRACTON COLLEGE,¶ EDGESTOW,¶ *Oct. 20th, 19*—.¶ "MY DEAR MARK, *BA*
☛ Four letters and two newspaper articles are given in full in the novel (this section, ch. 6 IV, ch. 16 II & III). These extensive quotations are treated inconsistently and illogically by B (followed by A). The last letter, from Denniston to Mark (ch. 16 III), is only two to three lines long and is incorporated into the text as a direct quotation by all the witnesses. M does the same with a letter from Ivy to Tom Maggs (ch. 16 II), although this yields a quotation seven lines long. In B & A, the letter from Ivy to Tom, the much longer letters in this section, and the articles, are treated as block quotations: this is indicated by a smaller font and smaller line-spacing, but no indentation. This is all that M does, and the result is clear and uncluttered. B and A use quotation marks as well as the smaller font and spacing, but inconsistently. B (followed by A) gives the address and date of the letter here, from Curry to Mark, *then* opens the quotation marks; the letter is laid out as one paragraph, and the quotation marks are closed. Mark's reply to Curry two pages later has quotation marks before the address and after the final salutation in B, but A opens the quotation marks after

We[a] were all sorry to hear from Dick that you are resigning your Fellowship,[b] but feel quite certain you've made the right decision as far as your own career is concerned. Once the N.I.C.E. is settled in here I shall expect to see almost as much of you as before. If you have not yet sent a formal resignation to N.O., I shouldn't be in any hurry to do so. If you wrote early next term the vacancy would come up at the February meeting[c] and we should have time to get ready a suitable candidate as your successor. Have you any ideas on the subject yourself? I was talking to James and Dick the other night about David Laird (James hadn't heard of him before). No doubt[d] you know his work: could you let me have a line about it, and about his more general qualifications? I may see him next week when I'm running over to Cambridge to dine with the Prime Minister and one or two others, and I think Dick might be induced to ask Laird as well. You'll have heard that we had rather a shindy here the other night. There was apparently some sort of *fracas* between the new workmen and the local inhabitants. The N.I.C.E. police, who seem to be a nervy lot, made the mistake of firing a few rounds over the head of the crowd. We had the Henrietta Maria window smashed and several stones came into Common Room. Glossop lost his head and wanted to go out and harangue the mob, but I managed to quiet him down. This is in strict confidence. There are lots of people ready to make capital out of it here and to get up a hue and cry against us for selling the Wood.[e] In haste—I must run off and make arrangements about Hingest's funeral.

Yours,

G. C. CURRY.[f]

At the first words of this letter a stab of fear ran through Mark. He tried to reassure himself. An explanation of the misunderstanding—which he would write and post immediately—would be bound to put everything right. They couldn't shove a man out of his Fellowship[g] simply on a chance word spoken by Lord Feverstone in Common Room. It came back to him with miserable insight that what he was now calling "a chance word"[h] was exactly what he had learned, in the Progressive Element, to describe as "settling real business in private"[i] or "cutting out the Red Tape," but he tried to thrust this out of his mind. It came back to him that poor Conington had actually lost his job in a way very similar to this, but he

The Inner Ring

---

the address and date—this is consistent with the previous letter, but hardly logical. Although the letter from Mark to Curry is laid out as two paragraphs in B, there is only one opening quotation mark in B, while A introduces one at the beginning of the second paragraph. B is more conventional in the newspaper articles, re-opening the quotation marks at the beginning of each new paragraph, with one closing quotation mark at the end of final paragraph. The second article is not quoted in A, but A follows B for the first one.

I follow M in dispensing with quotation marks in the four very extensive quotations, choosing a consistent witness to apply throughout. I also follow M in the lay-out, font attributes and punctuation of the address, date, and opening and closing salutations of the long letters in ch. 5 II, as their cramped presentation in B (followed by A) is almost certainly due solely to war-time constraints. I follow M in treating both the short letters in ch. 16 as ordinary quotations.

[a] ¶We] *M*; —We *BA*;
[b] Fellowship,] *BA*; fellowship, *M*
[c] meeting] *BA*; meeting, *M*
[d] doubt] *BA*; doubt, *M*
[e] Wood.] *B*; wood. *M*
[f] ¶Yours, ¶ G. C. Curry.] *M*; —Yours, G.C. CURRY." *BA*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[g] Fellowship] *BA*; fellowship *M*
[h] calling "a chance word"] *BA*; calling, "a chance word," *M*
[i] as "settling real business in private"] *BA*; as, "settling real business in private," *M*

① *with not a* sou

With no financial resources.

② *At home he would not have drunk till twelve and even then would have drunk only beer.*

Compare Mark's diffident meeting with Curry in ch. 1 II 14, where he buys half a pint of beer for himself and a double whisky (both more alcoholic and much more expensive) for Curry.

explained to himself that the circumstances had been quite different. Conington had been an outsider; he was inside, even more inside than Curry himself. But was he? If he were not "inside" at Belbury (and it began to look as if he were not)[a] was he still in Feverstone's confidence? If he had to go back to Bracton[b] would he find that he retained even his old status there? *Could* he go to Bracton? Yes, of course. He must write a letter at once explaining that he had not resigned, and would not resign, his Fellowship.[c] He sat down at a table in the writing-room[d] and took out his pen. Then another thought struck him. A letter to Curry, saying plainly that he meant to stay at Bracton, would be shown to Feverstone. Feverstone would tell Wither. Such a letter could be regarded as a refusal of any post at Belbury. Well—let it be! He would give up this short-lived dream and fall back on his Fellowship.[e] But how if that were impossible? The whole thing might have been arranged simply to let him fall between the two stools—kicked out of Belbury because he was retaining the Bracton Fellowship and kicked out of Bracton because he was supposed to be taking a job at Belbury . . . then[f] he and Jane left to sink or swim with not a *sou* ① between them. . . .[g] perhaps[h] with Feverstone's influence against him when he tried to get another job. And where *was* Feverstone?

Obviously, he must play his cards very carefully. He rang the bell and ordered a large whisky. At home he would not have drunk till twelve and even then would ② have drunk only beer. But now . . . and[i] anyway, he felt curiously chilly. There was no point in catching a cold on top of all his other troubles.

He[j] decided that he must write a very careful and rather elusive letter. His first draft[k] was, he thought, not vague enough: it could be used as a proof that he had abandoned all idea of a job at Belbury. He must make it vaguer. But then, if it were too vague, it would do no good. Oh damn, damn, damn the whole thing. The two hundred pounds entrance fee, the bill for his first week, and snatches of imagined attempts to make Jane see the whole episode in the proper light, kept coming between him and his task. In the end, with the aid of the whisky and of a great many cigarettes, he produced the following letter:

---

[a] not)] *B*; not), *M*
[b] Bracton] *B*; Bracton, *M*
[c] Fellowship.] *B*; fellowship. *M*
[d] writing-room] *B*; writing room *M*
[e] Fellowship.] *BA*; fellowship. *M*
[f] . . . then] *BA*; —then *M*
[g] them. . . .] *A*; them . . . *B* them— *M*
[h] perhaps] *B*; perhaps, *M*
[i] . . . and] *B*; —and *M*
[j] ¶He] *BM*; He *A*
[k] draft] *A*; draught *BM*

The National Institute for Co-ordinated Experiments, Belbury. [a]
Oct. 21st, 19—[b]

My dear Curry,[c]

Feverstone must have got me wrong. I never made the slightest suggestion of resigning my Fellowship[d] and don't in the least wish to do so. As a matter of fact, I have almost made up my mind not to take a full-time[e] job with the N.I.C.E. and hope to be back in College[f] in a day or two. For one thing, I am rather worried about my wife's health,[g] and don't like to commit myself to being much away at present. In the second place, though everyone here has been extremely flattering and all press me to stay, the kind of job they want me for is more on the administrative and publicity side and less scientific than I had expected. So be sure and contradict it if you hear anyone saying I am thinking of leaving Edgestow. I hope you'll enjoy your jaunt to Cambridge: what circles you do move in!

Yours,

Mark G. Studdock[h]

P.S. [i]Laird wouldn't have done in any case. He got a third, and the[j] only published work he's ventured on has been treated as a joke by serious reviewers. In particular, he has no *critical* faculty at all. You can always depend on him for admiring anything that is thoroughly bogus.[k]

The relief of having finished the letter was only momentary, for almost as soon as he had sealed it the problem of how to pass the rest of this day returned to him. He decided to go and sit in his own room:[l] but when he went up there he found the bed stripped and a vacuum cleaner in the middle of the floor. Apparently[m] members were not expected to be in their bedrooms at this time of day. He came down and tried the lounge; the servants were tidying it. He looked into the library. It was empty but for two men who were talking with their heads close together. They stopped and looked up as soon as he entered, obviously waiting for him to go. He pretended that he had come to get a book and retired. In the hall he saw Steele himself standing by the notice-board[n] and talking to a man with a pointed beard. Neither looked at

---

[a] The National Institute for Co-ordinated Experiments, Belbury.] *M*; "THE NATIONAL INSTITUTE¶ FOR CO-ORDINATED EXPERIMENTS,¶ BELBURY. *B* THE NATIONAL INSTITUTE¶ FOR CO-ORDINATED EXPERIMENTS,¶ BELBURY. *A*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[b] Oct. 21st, 19—] *M*; *Oct. 21st, 19—. BA*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[c] My dear Curry,¶] *M*; MY DEAR CURRY,— *B* "MY DEAR CURRY,— *A*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[d] Fellowship] *BA*; fellowship *M*
[e] full-time] *BA*; full time *M*
[f] College] *BA*; college *M*
[g] health,] *B*; health *M*
[h] ¶Yours, ¶Mark G. Studdock¶] *M*; —Yours, MARK G. STUDDOCK. *BA*.
☛ See note to 108[e].
[i] P.S.] *M*; *P.S.— B* "*P.S.— A*
☛ See note to 108[e]..
[j] the] *BM*; his *A*
[k] .] *M*; ." *BA*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[l] room:] *BA*; room; *M*
[m] Apparently] *BA*; Apparently, *M*
[n] notice-board] *BA*; notice board *M*

Mark,[a] but as he passed them they became silent. He dawdled across the hall and pretended to examine the barometer. Wherever he went he heard doors opening and shutting, the tread of rapid feet, occasional ringing of telephones; all the signs of a busy institution carrying on a vigorous life from which he was excluded. He opened the front door and looked out:[b] the fog was thick, wet, and cold.

There is one sense in which every narrative is false; it dare not attempt, even if it could, to express the actual movement of time. This day was so long to Mark that a faithful account of it would be unreadable. Sometimes he sat upstairs—for at last they finished "doing" his bedroom—sometimes he went out into the fog, sometimes he hung about the public rooms. Every now and then these would be unaccountably filled up by crowds of talking people,[c] and for a few minutes the strain of trying not to look unoccupied, not to seem miserable and embarrassed, would be imposed on him:[d] then suddenly, as if summoned by their next engagement, all these people would hurry away.

Some time after lunch he met Stone in one of the passages. Mark had not thought of him since yesterday morning, but now, looking at the expression on his face and something furtive in his whole manner, he realised that here, at any rate, was someone who felt as uncomfortable as himself. Stone had the look which Mark had often seen before in unpopular boys or new boys at school, in "outsiders" at Bracton—the look which was for Mark the symbol of all his worst fears, for to be one who must wear that look was, in his scale of values, the greatest evil. His instinct was not to speak to this man Stone. He knew by experience how dangerous it is to be friends with a sinking man or even to be seen with him: you cannot keep him afloat and he may pull you under. But his own craving for companionship was now acute,[e] so that against his better judgement[f] he smiled a sickly smile and said,[g] "Hullo!"

The Inner Ring

Stone gave a start as if to be spoken to were almost a frightening experience. "Good afternoon," he said nervously and made to pass on.

"Let's come and talk somewhere, if you're not busy," said Mark.

"I am—that is to say—I'm not quite sure how long I shall be free," said Stone.

"Tell me about this place," said Mark. "It seems to me perfectly bloody, but I haven't yet made up my mind. Come to my room."

"I don't think that at all. Not at all. Who said I thought that?" answered Stone

---

[a] Mark,] *BA*; Mark *M*
[b] out:] *BA*; out; *M*
[c] people,] *BA*; people *M*
[d] him:] *BA*; him; *M*
[e] acute,] *BM*; acute; *A*
[f] judgement] *BA*; judgment *M*
[g] said,] *A*; said *BM*

very quickly. And Mark did not answer because at that moment he saw the Deputy Director approaching them. He was to discover during the next few weeks that no passage and no public room at Belbury was ever safe from the prolonged indoor walks of the Deputy Director. They could not be regarded as a form of espionage,[a] for the creak of Wither's boots and the dreary little tune which he was nearly always humming would have defeated any such purpose. One heard him quite a long way off. Often one saw him a long way off as well, for he was a tall man—without his stoop he would have been very tall indeed—[b]and often, even in a crowd, one saw that face at a distance staring vaguely towards one. But this was Mark's first experience of that ubiquity,[c] and he felt that the D.D. could not have appeared at a more unfortunate moment. Very slowly he came towards them, looked in their direction though it was not plain from his face whether he recognised them or not, and passed on. Neither of the young men attempted to resume their conversation.

At tea Mark saw Feverstone and went at once to sit beside him. He knew that the worst thing a man in his position could do was to try to force himself on anyone, but he was now feeling desperate.

"I say, Feverstone," he began gaily, "I'm in search of information"—and was relieved to see Feverstone smile in reply.

"Yes," said Mark. "I haven't had exactly what you'd[d] call a glowing reception from Steele. But the D.D. won't hear of my leaving. And the Fairy seems to want me to write newspaper articles. What the hell *am* I supposed to be doing?"

Feverstone laughed long and loud.

"Because," concluded Mark, "I'm damned if I can find out. I've tried to tackle the old boy direct . . ."[e]

"God!" said Feverstone, laughing even louder.

"Can one *never* get anything out of him?"

"Not what *you* want," said Feverstone with a chuckle.

"Well, how the devil is one to find out what's wanted if nobody offers any information?"

"Quite."

"Oh, and by the way, that reminds me of something else. How[f] on earth did Curry get hold of the idea that I'm resigning my Fellowship?"[g]

---

[a] espionage,] *A*; espionage *BM*
[b] —without […] indeed—] *B*; (without […] indeed) *M*
[c] ubiquity,] *B*; ubiquity *M*
[d] you'd] *BM*; you'd *A*
☛ Obvious compositor's error in A.
[e] direct . . ."] *BA*; direct—" *M*
[f] How] *BM*; how *A*
[g] Fellowship?"] *BA*; fellowship?" *M*

"Aren't you?"

"I never had the faintest notion of resigning it."

"Really! I was told distinctly by the Fairy that you weren't coming back."

"You don't suppose I'd do it through her if I *was* going to resign?"

Feverstone's smile brightened and widened. "It doesn't make any odds, you know," he said. "If the N.I.C.E. want you to have a nominal job somewhere outside Belbury, you'll have one:[a] and if they don't, you won't. Just like that."

"Damn the N.I.C.E. I'm merely trying to retain the Fellowship[b] I already had, which is no concern of theirs. One doesn't want to fall between two stools."

"One doesn't *want* to."

"You mean?"

"Take my advice and get into Wither's good books again as soon as you can. I gave you a good start but you seem to have rubbed him up the wrong way. His attitude has changed since this morning. You need to humour him, you know. And just between ourselves, I wouldn't be too thick with the Fairy: it won't do you any good higher up. There are wheels within wheels."

"In the meantime," said Mark, "I've written to Curry to explain that it's all rot about my resignation."

"No harm if it amuses you," said Feverstone, still smiling.

"Well, I don't suppose College wants to kick me out simply because Curry misunderstood something Miss Hardcastle said to[c] you."

"You *can't* be deprived of a Fellowship[d] under any statute I know, except for gross immorality."

"No, of[e] course not. I didn't mean that. I meant not being re-elected when I come up for re-election next term."

"Oh. I see."

"And that's why I must rely on you to get that idea out of Curry's head."

Feverstone said nothing.

"You will be sure," urged Mark against his own better judgement,[f] "to make it quite clear to him that the whole thing was a misunderstanding."

"Don't you know Curry? He will have got his whole wangling-machine going on the problem of your successor long ago."

"That's why I am relying on you to stop him."

---

[a] one:] *BA*; one; *M*
[b] Fellowship] *BA*; fellowship *M*
[c] to] *BM*; by *A*
[d] Fellowship] *A*; fellowship *BM*
[e] of] *BM*; Of *A*
[f] judgement,] *B*; judgment, *M*

① *nasty, poor, brutish, and short*

Hobbes, *Leviathan* 1.13: "And the life of man, solitary, poore, nasty, brutish, and short."

② *Incurable romantic!*

In 1928, Lewis wrote to Barfield that Magdalen College was "a cesspool" inhabited by self-serving, dishonest back-stabbers (*Collected Letters* vol. 1 762–63). He continues (763):

> I forgot. We have *one* honest man. He preaches what he practices: tells you openly that anyone who believes another is a fool, and holds that Hobbs [*Lewis's spelling here*] alone saw the truth: tells me I am an incurable romantic and is insolent by rule to old men and servants. He is very pale, this man, good-looking, and drinks a great deal without getting drunk. I think he is best of our younger fellows and I would sign his death warrant to-morrow, or he mine, without turning a hair.

Lewis's biographers agree that this is T.D. Weldon, Fellow and Tutor of Philosophy at Magdalen from 1923 to 1958 (*Collected Letters* vol. 1 763 n. 44; Carpenter 18, 198). Although he is not an acknowledged portrait, Feverstone clearly reflects some of Weldon's characteristics: he cites Hobbes (see n. 1 above), uses the expression "incurable romantic", and is rude to old men (see ch. 1 IV & ch. 2 I).

Describing how finally he moved from atheism to Theism, Lewis recalls in *Surprised by Joy* (178–79), that, in 1926, "the hardest boiled of all the atheists I ever knew", "the cynic of cynics", said in conversation with him, "All that stuff of Frazer's about the Dying God […] almost looks as if it had really happened once." Lewis's biographers agree that this too refers to Weldon (*Collected Letters* vol. 1 763 n. 44; Green & Hooper 100; Sayer 222).

Lewis's dislike of Weldon and his philosophies seems to have been long-enduring: not only did he use him as a model for Feverstone in the early 1940s, he described Magdalen College to his brother as "pleasanter and pleasanter" after Weldon and another left to serve in the armed forces in 1940 (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 336 & 336 n. 57). It is interesting to note Weldon was one of the seven individuals—the others all friends—to whom Lewis had a printed copy of his inaugural lecture at Cambridge sent in 1955 (*Collected Letters* vol.3 556).

"Me?"

"Yes."

"Why me?"

"Well—damn it all, Feverstone, it was you who first put the idea into his head."

"Do you know," said Feverstone, helping himself to a muffin, "I find your style of conversation rather difficult. You will come up for re-election in a few months. The College may decide to re-elect you; or, of course, it may not. As far as I can make out, you are at present attempting to canvass my vote in advance. To which the proper answer is the one I now give—go to hell!"[a]

"You know perfectly well that there was no doubt about my re-election until you spoke a word in Curry's ear."

Feverstone eyed the muffin critically. "You make me rather tired," he said. "If you don't know how to steer your own course in a place like Bracton, why come and pester me? I'm not a bucking nurse. And for your own good[b] I would advise you[c] in talking to people here[d] to adopt a more agreeable manner than you are using now. Otherwise your life may be, in the famous words, 'nasty, poor, brutish, and short'!"[e]

Blasphemy and Swearing ①

"Short?" said Mark. "Is that a threat? Do you mean my life at Bracton or at the N.I.C.E.?"

"I shouldn't stress the distinction too much if I were you," said Feverstone.

"I shall remember that," said Mark, rising from his chair. As he made to move away[f] he could not help turning to this smiling man once again and saying, "It was you who brought me here. I thought you at least were my friend."

"Incurable romantic!" said Lord Feverstone, deftly extending his mouth to an even wider grin and popping the muffin into it entire. ②

And so[g] Mark knew that if he lost the Belbury job he would lose his Fellowship[h] at Bracton as well.

---

[a] hell!"] *B*; Hell!" *M*
[b] good] *B*; good, *M*
[c] you] *BA*; you, *M*
[d] here] *BA*; here, *M*
[e] short'!"] A; short!' " *BM*
[f] away] *B*; away, *M*
[g] so] *BA*; thus *M*
☛ Either reading indicates the logical inference Mark draws from Feverstone's words and actions.
[h] Fellowship] *BA*; fellowship *M*

III

During these days Jane spent as little time as possible in the flat and kept herself awake reading in bed, as long as she could, each night. Sleep had become her enemy. In the daytime she kept on going into[a] Edgestow—nominally in the attempt to find another "woman who would come in twice a week" instead of Mrs. Maggs. On one of these occasions she was delighted to find herself suddenly addressed by Camilla Denniston. Camilla had just stepped out of a car and next moment she introduced a tall,[b] dark man as her husband. Jane saw at once that both the Dennistons were the sort of people she liked. She knew that Mr. Denniston had once been a friend of Mark's but she had never met him; and her first thought was to wonder, as she had wondered before, why Mark's present friends were so inferior to those he once had. Carey and Wadsden and the Taylors, who had all been members of the set in which she first got to know him, had been nicer than Curry and Busby, not to mention the Feverstone man—and this Mr. Denniston was obviously very much nicer indeed.

"We were just coming to see you," said Camilla. "Look here, we have lunch with us. Let's drive you up to the woods beyond Sandown and all feed together in the car. There's lots to talk about."

"Or what about your coming to the flat and lunching with me?" said Jane,[c] inwardly wondering how she could manage this. "It's hardly a day for picnicking."

"That only means extra washing-up[d] for you," said Camilla. "Had we better go somewhere in town, Arthur?[e]—if Mrs. Studdock thinks it's too cold and foggy."

"A restaurant would hardly do, Mrs. Studdock," said Denniston, "we[f] want to be private." The "we" obviously meant "we three" and established at once a pleasant, business-like unity between them. "As well," he continued,[g] "don't[a] you

---

[a] into] *A*; to *BM*

☛ A's reading denotes movement to within a defined space—the town of Edgestow (see *NED*, "Into" I 1. a), which is more precise than the movement conveyed by "to". But I would not call B & M's reading wrong.

[b] tall,] *A*; tall *BM*

[c] Jane,] *B*; Jane *M*

[d] washing-up] *B*; washing up *M*

[e] Arthur?] *B*; Frank? *M*

☛ "Frank" is most likely a hangover from an earlier draft: we know Mark started off as Peter Ruddock (see L in Appendix A). But the ghostly Frank is very enduring: he still appears in the descendents of M (see Introduction 2 xlvi).

[f] Denniston, "we] *B*; Denniston. "We *M*

[g] continued,] *ed.*; continued. *BM*

☛ The words "he continued" interrupt a sentence that is barely begun, merely introduced by a kind of conjunction—"As well". The continuity of the interrupted speech is better conveyed by a comma, followed by a lower case when the speech is resumed, than by a full stop and a capital letter (see following note).

like a rather foggy day in a wood in autumn? You'll find we shall be perfectly warm sitting in the car."

Jane said she'd never heard of anyone liking fogs before but she didn't mind trying. All three got in.

"That's why Camilla and I got married," said Denniston as they drove off. "We both like Weather. Not this or that kind of weather, but just Weather. It's a useful taste if one lives in England."

"However did you learn to do that, Mr. Denniston?" said Jane. "I don't think I should ever learn to like rain and snow."

"It's the other way round," said Denniston. "Everyone begins as a child by liking weather.[b] You learn the art of disliking it as you grow up. Haven't you ever noticed it on a snowy day? The grown-ups are all going about with long faces, but look at the children—and the dogs! *They* know what snow's made for."

"I'm sure I hated wet days as a child," said Jane.

"That's because the grown-ups kept you in," said Camilla. "Any child loves rain if it's allowed to go out and paddle about in it."

Presently they[c] left the unfenced road beyond Sandown and went bumping across grass and among trees and finally came to rest in a sort of little grassy bay with a fir thicket on one side and a group of beeches on the other. There were wet cobwebs and a rich autumnal smell all round them. Then all three sat together in the back of the car,[d] and there was some unstrapping of baskets, and then sandwiches and a little flask of sherry and finally hot coffee and cigarettes. Jane was beginning to enjoy herself.

"Now!" said Camilla.

"Well," said Denniston,[e] "I[f] suppose I'd better begin. You know, of course,[g] where we've come from, Mrs. Studdock?"

"From Miss Ironwood's," said Jane.

"Well, from the same house. But we don't belong to Grace Ironwood. She and we both belong to someone else."

"Yes?" said Jane.

"Our little household, or company, or society, or whatever you like to call it,[h]

---

[a] "don't] *M*; "Don't *B*
☛ See previous note.
[b] weather.] *B*; weather. *M*
[c] they] *BM*; Jane thought this foggy day an odd choice for a picnic, but agreed. ¶They *A*
[d] car,] *B*; car *M*
[e] Denniston,] *BM*; Denniston at last, *A*
[f] "I] *BM*; "I must tell you. *A*
[g] know, of course,] *B*; know of course *M*
[h] it,] *A*; it *BM*

① *Fisher-King. […] a wound in his foot on his last journey which won't heal.*

In some stories of the Holy Grail, the Fisher-King is the keeper of the Grail, and suffers from a wound that will not heal. Here Lewis provides a naturalistic explanation for Ransom's adoption of this title from (or ultimately attached to) Arthurian legend. See also Preliminary Note D: "Logres".

It is here that Lewis makes plain to the alert reader that the leader behind the company at St. Anne's is Ransom, whose journeys to Malacandra-Mars and Perelandra-Venus are referred to here. In Ransom's final conversation with the King and Lady of Perelandra (*Perelandra* ch. 17 254) the King washes the foot injured by the Un-man:

> "So this is *hrū*," he said at last. I have never seen such a fluid before. And this is the substance with which Maleldil remade the worlds before any world was made."
> He washed the foot for a long time but the bleeding did not stop.

Ransom, in Perelandra, re-enacts the part of Christ to the King and Lady, in that he (Ransom) fights on their behalf with the Evil One and (literally) fulfils the prophecy in Genesis 3: 15: "And I will put enmity between thee [Satan] and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel."

Lewis's extension of theology from earth to the solar system—which follows logically from his belief that Christianity is more than some kind of local cult—is the background to this novel, and to Ransom's glamour and authority within it. By presenting Ransom first as another wounded Fisher-King, Lewis establishes Ransom's new stature; by mentioning the origin of his wound without providing details, he hints to those who have read the earlier novels the identity of the Dennistons' leader.

② *the Sura*

"In Hindu demonology, a good angel or genie", ultimately from a Sanskrit word for a god (*NED*, "Sura[3]"). Presumably Lewis considered that the word, with the definite article, made a convincing title for an Indian Christian mystic.

Lewis does not use the title actually used in India for holy men of any faith: "Sadhu" or "holy man" (*NED*). A well-known Christian Sadhu, Sundar Singh, attracted great attention in Europe and the United States as well as in India in the 1920s; he visited Oxford in early 1920 (Heiler 73), but Lewis does not allude to him in any of his extant letters, either at the time or in later decades.

is run by a Mr. Fisher-King. At least that is the name he has recently taken. You ①
might or might not know his original name if I told it to you. He is a great traveller but now an invalid. He got a wound in his foot on his last journey[a] which won't heal."

"How did he come to change his name?"

"He had a married sister in India, a Mrs. Fisher-King. She has just died and left him a large fortune on condition that he took the name. She was a remarkable woman in her way; a friend of the great native Christian mystic whom you may have heard of—the Sura. And that's the point. The Sura had reason to believe, or ②
thought he had reason to believe, that a great danger was hanging over the human race. And just before the end—just before he disappeared—he became convinced that it would actually come to a head in this island. And after he'd gone——"[b]

"Is he dead?" asked Jane.

"That we don't know," answered Denniston. "Some people think he's alive, others not. At any rate he disappeared. And Mrs. Fisher-King more or less handed over the problem to her brother, to our chief. That, in fact,[c] was why she gave him the money. He was to collect a company round him to watch for this danger, and to strike when it came."

"That's not quite right, Arthur," said Camilla. "He was told that a company would in fact collect round him and he was to be its head."[d]

"I don't[e] think we need go into that," said Arthur. "But I agree. And now, Mrs. Studdock, this is where you come in."

Jane waited.

"The Sura said that when the time came we should find what he called a seer: a person with second sight."

"Not that we'd *get* a seer, Arthur," said Camilla, "that a seer would turn up. Either we or the other side would get her."

"And it looks," said Denniston to Jane, "as if you were the seer."

"But[f] please," said Jane,[g] smiling, "I don't want to be anything so exciting."

"No," said Denniston. "It's rough luck on you." There was just the right amount of sympathy in his tone.

---

[a] foot on his last journey] *B*; foot, on his last journey, *M*
[b] gone——"] *B*; gone—" *M*
[c] That, in fact,] *B*; That in fact *M*
[d] head."] *B*; Head." *M*
[e] don't] *M*; didn't *B*
☛ B's "didn't" would require "we'd need" or "we needed" after "think", while "we need" agrees with M's reading.
[f] "But] *BA*; "But, *M*
[g] Jane,] *BA*; Jane *M*

① *I saw the murder—Mr. Hingest's murder.*

See ch. 4 II (where Jane dreams the dream) and 4 V (where she realises that it was true).

② *It's all been arranged long before we were born.*

The prophet Jeremiah was also called by such a reminder: "Before I formed thee in the belly I knew thee; before thou camest forth out of the womb I sanctified thee, and I ordained thee a prophet unto the nations" (Jer. 1: 3).

③ *The Pendragon*

A war title conferring supreme power (see: p. 144 n. 1; Preliminary Note D: "Logres"). Jane now learns that the man Camilla and Arthur Denniston follow is both Fisher-King and Pendragon.

Camilla turned to Jane and said, "I gathered from Grace Ironwood that you weren't quite convinced you *were* a seer. I mean you thought it might be just ordinary dreams. Do you still think that?"

"It's all so strange and—*beastly*!" said Jane. She liked these people, but her[a] habitual inner prompter was whispering, "Take care. Don't get drawn in. Don't commit yourself to anything. You've got your own life to live." Then an impulse of honesty forced her to add:[b] "As a matter of fact[c] I've had another dream since then. And it turns out to have been true. I saw the murder—Mr. Hingest's murder." ①

"There you are," said Camilla. "Oh, Mrs. Studdock, you *must* come in. You must, you must. That means we're right on top of it now. Don't you see? We've been wondering all this time exactly where the trouble is going to begin:[d] and now your dream gives us a clue. You've[e] seen something within a few miles of Edgestow. In fact, we are apparently in the thick of it already—whatever it is. And we can't move an inch without your help. You are our secret service, our eyes. It's all been arranged long before we were born. Don't spoil everything. Do join us." ②

"No, Cam, don't," said Denniston. "The Pendragon—the Head, I mean, wouldn't like us to do that. Mrs. Studdock must come in freely." ③

"But," said Jane, "I don't know anything about all this. Do I? I don't want to take sides in something I don't understand."

"But don't you see," broke in Camilla, "that you can't be neutral? If you don't give yourself to us, the enemy will use you."

The Inner Ring

The words "give yourself to us" were ill chosen.[f] The very muscles of Jane's body stiffened a little: if the speaker had been anyone who attracted her less than Camilla she would have become like stone to any further appeal. Denniston laid a hand on his wife's arm.

"You must see it from Mrs. Studdock's point of view, dear," he said. "You forget she knows practically nothing at all about us. And that is the real difficulty. We[g] can't tell her much until she has joined. We are, in fact,[h] asking her to take a leap in the dark." He turned to Jane with a slightly quizzical smile on his face which was, nevertheless, grave. "It *is* like that," he said, "like getting married, or going into the Navy as a boy, or becoming a monk, or trying a new thing to eat.

---

[a] her] *BM*; Her *A*
[b] add:] *BA*; add:¶ *M*
[c] fact] *BA*; fact, *M*
[d] begin:] *BA*; begin, *M*
[e] You've] *BM*; you've *A*
[f] ill chosen] *B*; ill-chosen *M*
[g] We] *BM*; we *A*
[h] are, in fact,] *BA*; are in fact *M*

You can't know what it's like until you take the plunge." He did not perhaps know, or again perhaps he did,[a] the complicated resentments and resistances which his choice of illustrations awoke in Jane, nor could she herself analyse them. She merely replied in a colder voice than she had yet used:

"In that case it is rather difficult to see why one should take it at all."

"I admit frankly," said Denniston, "that you can only take it on trust. It all depends really, I suppose, what impression the Dimbles and Grace and we two have made on you: and, of course, the Head himself, when you meet *him*."

Jane softened again.

"What exactly are you asking me to do?" she said.

"To come and see our chief, first of all. And then—well, to join. It would involve making certain promises to him. He is really a Head, you see. We have all agreed to take his orders. Oh—there's one other thing. What[b] view would Mark take about it?—he and I are old friends, you know."

"I wonder," said Camilla. "Need we go into that for the moment?"

"It's bound to come up sooner or later," said her husband.

There was a little pause.

"Mark?" said Jane. "How does he come into it? I can't imagine what he'd say about all this. He'd probably think we were all off our heads."

"Would he object, though?" said Denniston. "I mean, would he object to your joining us?"

"If he were at home, I suppose he'd be rather surprised if I announced I was going to stay indefinitely at St. Anne's. Does 'joining you' mean that?"

"Isn't Mark at home?" asked Denniston with some surprise.

"No," said Jane. "He's at Belbury. I think he's going to have a job in the N.I.C.E." She was rather pleased to be able to say this for she was well aware of the distinction it implied. If Denniston was impressed he did not show it.

"I don't think," he said, "that 'joining us' would mean, at the moment, coming to live at St. Anne's:[c] specially in the case of a married woman. Unless old Mark got really interested and came himself——"[d]

"That is quite out of the question," said Jane.[e] ("He doesn't know Mark," she thought.)

"Anyway," continued Denniston, "that is hardly the real point at the moment. Would he object to your joining—putting yourself under the Head's

---

[a] , or […] did,] *B*; (or […] did) *M*
[b] What] *BM*; By the way, what *A*
[c] Anne's:] *B*; Anne's, *M*
[d] himself——"] *B*; himself—" *M*
[e] Jane.] *B*; Jane.¶ *M*

① *leavy*

The *NED* describes this as an "Earlier and more normal form of LEAFY."

orders and making the promises and all that?"

"Would he object?" asked Jane. "What on earth would it have to do with him?"

"Well," said Denniston, hesitating a little, "the Head—or the authorities he obeys—have rather old-fashioned notions. He wouldn't like a married woman to come in, if it could be avoided, without her husband's—without consulting——"[a]

"Do you mean I'm to ask Mark's *permission*?" said Jane with a strained little laugh. The resentment which had been rising and ebbing, but rising each time a little more than it ebbed, for several minutes, had now overflowed. All this talk of promises and obedience to an unknown Mr. Fisher-King had already repelled her. But the idea of this same person sending her back to get Mark's permission—as if she were a child asking leave to go to a party—was the climax. For a moment she looked on Mr. Denniston with real dislike. She saw him, and Mark, and the Fisher-King man and this preposterous Indian fakir simply as men—complacent, patriarchal figures making arrangements for women as if women were children or bartering them like cattle. ("And so the king promised that if anyone killed the dragon he would *give* him his daughter in marriage.") She was very angry.

"Arthur," said Camilla, "I see a light over there. Do you think it's a bonfire?"

"Yes, I should say it was."

"My feet are getting cold. Let's go for a little walk and look at the fire. I wish we had some chestnuts."

"Oh, do let's," said Jane.

They got out. It was warmer in the open than it had by now become in the car—warm and full of leavy smells, and dampness, and the small noise of dripping branches. The fire was big and in its middle life—a smoking hillside of leaves on one side and great caves and cliffs of glowing red on the other. They stood round it and chatted of indifferent matters for a time.

"I'll tell you what I'll do," said Jane presently. "I won't join your—your—whatever it is. But I'll promise to let you know if I have any more dreams of that sort."

"That is splendid," said Denniston. "And I think it is as much as we had a right to expect. I quite see your point of view. May I ask for one more promise?"

"What is that?"

"Not to mention us to anyone."

"Oh, certainly."

Later, when they had returned to the car and were driving back, Mr.

[a] consulting——"] *BA*; consulting—" *M*

Denniston said, "I hope the dreams will not *worry* you much, now, Mrs. Studdock. No: I don't mean I hope they'll stop: and I don't think they will either. But now that you know they are not something in yourself but only things going on in the outer world, nasty things, no doubt, but no worse than lots you read in the papers,[a] I believe you'll find them quite bearable. The less you think of them as *your dreams* and the more you think of them—well, as news[b]—the better you'll feel about them."

[a] world, nasty […] papers,] *B*; world (nasty […] papers), *M*
[b] news] *B*; News *M*

SIX

Fog

I

A NIGHT (with little sleep) and half another[a] day dragged past before Mark was able to see the Deputy Director again. He went to him in a chastened frame of mind, anxious to get the job on almost any terms.

"I have brought back the Form, sir,"[b] he said.

"What Form?" asked the Deputy Director.[c]

Mark found he was talking to a new and different Wither. The absent-mindedness was still there, but the courtliness was gone. The man looked at him as if out of a dream, as if divided from him by an immense distance, but with a sort of dreamy distaste which might turn into active hatred if ever that distance were diminished. He still smiled, but there was something cat-like in the smile; an occasional alteration of the lines about the mouth which even hinted at a snarl. Mark in his hands was as a mouse. At Bracton the Progressive Element, having to face only scholars, had passed for very knowing fellows, but here at Belbury, one felt quite different. Wither[d] said he had understood that Mark had already refused the job. He could not, in any event, renew the offer. He spoke vaguely and alarmingly of strains and frictions, of injudicious behaviour, of the danger of making enemies, of the impossibility that the N.I.C.E could harbour a person who appeared to have quarrelled[e] with all its members in the first week. He spoke even more vaguely and alarmingly of conversations he had had with "your colleagues at Bracton" which entirely confirmed this view. He doubted if Mark were really suited to a learned career, but disclaimed any intention of giving advice. Only after[f] he had hinted and murmured Mark into a sufficient state of dejection did he throw[g] him, like a bone to a dog, the suggestion of an appointment for a probationary period at (roughly—he could not commit the Institute) six hundred a year. And Mark took it. He attempted to get answers even then to some of his questions. From whom was

---

[a] another] *BM*; Another *A*
[b] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*
[c] Director.¶] *A*; Director. *BM*
[d] Wither] *BM*; He *A*
[e] quarrelled] *BA*; quarreled *M*
☛ M's compositor uses an American form of the past participle (see *Webster's*, "Quarrel").
[f] after] *BM*; After *A*
[g] throw] *BM*; threw *A*

he to take orders? Was he to reside at Belbury?

Wither replied, "I think, Mr. Studdock, we have already mentioned elasticity as the keynote of the Institute. Unless you are prepared to treat membership as . . . er . . . a[a] vocation rather than a mere appointment, I could not conscientiously advise you to come to us. There are no watertight[b] compartments. I fear I could not persuade the committee[c] to invent for your benefit some cut-and-dried[d] position in which you would discharge artificially limited duties and, apart from those, regard your time as your own. Pray allow me to finish, Mr. Studdock. We are, as I have said before, more like a family, or even, perhaps, like a single personality. There must be no question of 'taking your orders,' as you, rather unfortunately,[e] suggest, from some specified official and considering yourself free to adopt an intransigent attitude to your other colleagues. (I must ask you not to interrupt me, please.) That is not the spirit in which I would wish you to approach your duties. You must make yourself useful, Mr. Studdock—generally useful. I do not think the Institute could allow anyone to remain in it who showed a disposition to stand on his rights . . . who[f] grudged this or that piece of service because it fell outside some function which he had chosen to circumscribe by a rigid definition. On the other hand, it would be quite equally disastrous . . . I[g] mean for yourself, Mr. Studdock: I am thinking throughout of your own interests . . . quite[h] equally disastrous if you allowed yourself ever to be distracted from your real work by unauthorised collaboration . . . or,[i] worse still, interference . . . with[j] the work of other members. Do not let casual suggestions distract you or dissipate your energies. Concentration, Mr. Studdock, concentration. And the free spirit of give and take. If you avoid both the errors I have mentioned then . . . ah,[k] I do not think I need despair of correcting on your behalf certain unfortunate impressions which, we must admit,[l] your behaviour has already produced. No, Mr. Studdock, I can allow no further discussion. My time is already fully occupied. I cannot be continually harassed by conversations of this sort. You must find your own level, Mr. Studdock. Good morning, Mr. Studdock, good morning. Remember what I have said. I am trying to do all I can for you. Good

---

[a] as . . . er . . . a] *BA*; as—er—a *M*
[b] watertight] *BA*; water-tight *M*
[c] committee] *BA*; Committee *M*
[d] cut-and-dried] *BA*; cut and dried *M*
[e] you, rather unfortunately] *B*; you (rather unfortunately) *M*
[f] . . . who] *B*; —who *M*
[g] . . . I] *BA*; —I *M*
[h] . . . quite] *BA*; —quite *M*
[i] . . . or,] *BA*; —or, *M*
[j] . . . with] *BA*; —with *M*
[k] . . . ah,] *BA*; —ah, *M*
[l] which, we must admit,] *BA*; which (we must admit) *M*

morning."

Mark reimbursed himself for the humiliation of this interview by reflecting that if he were not a married man he would not have borne it for a moment. This seemed to him (though he did not put it into words) to throw the burden upon Jane. It also set him free to think of all the things he would have said to Wither if he hadn't had Jane to bother about—and would still say if ever he got a chance. This kept him in a sort of twilight happiness for several minutes; and when[a] he went to tea he found that the reward for his submission had already begun. The Fairy signed to him to come and sit beside her.

"You haven't done anything about Alcasan yet?" she asked.

"No," said Mark, "because I hadn't really decided to stay, not until this morning. I could come up and look at your materials this afternoon . . . at[b] least as far as I know, for I haven't yet really found out what I'm supposed to be doing."

"Elasticity, sonny,[c] elasticity," said Miss Hardcastle. "You never will. Your line is to do whatever you're told and above all not to bother the old man."

II

During the next few days several processes, which afterwards came to seem important, were steadily going on.

The[d] fog, which covered Edgestow as well as Belbury, continued[e] and grew denser. At Edgestow one regarded it as "coming up from the river," but in reality it lay all over the heart of England. It blanketed the whole town so that walls dripped and you could write your name in the dampness on tables and men worked by artificial light at midday. The workings, where Bragdon Wood had been, ceased to offend conservative eyes and became mere clangings, thuddings, hootings, shouts, curses, and metallic screams in an invisible world.

Some felt glad that the obscenity should thus be covered, for all beyond the Wynd was now an abomination. The[f] grip of the N.I.C.E. on Edgestow was tightening. The river itself, which had once been brownish-green and amber and smooth-skinned silver, tugging at the reeds and playing with the red roots, now flowed opaque, thick with mud, sailed on by endless fleets of empty tins, sheets of

[a] when] *BM*; When *A*
[b] . . . at] *BA*; —at *M*
[c] sonny,] *BA*; Sonny, *M*
[d] ¶The] *BM*; the *A*
[e] continued] *BM*; continued, *A*
[f] The] *BM*; the *A*

paper, cigarette ends,[a] and fragments of wood, sometimes varied by rainbow patches of oil. Then the invasion actually crossed it. The Institute had bought the land up to the left or eastern[b] bank. But now Busby was summoned to meet Feverstone and a Professor Frost as the representatives of the N.I.C.E., and learned for the first time that the Wynd itself was to be diverted: there was to be no river in Edgestow. This was still strictly confidential, but the Institute had already powers to force it. This being so, a new adjustment of boundaries between it and the College was clearly needed. Busby's jaw fell when he realised that the Institute wanted to come right up to the College walls. He refused,[c] of course. And it was then that he first heard a hint of requisitioning. The College could sell to-day[d] and the Institute offered a good price: if they did not, compulsion and a merely nominal compensation awaited them. Relations between Feverstone and the Bursar deteriorated during this interview. An extraordinary College meeting[e] had to be summoned, and Busby had to put the best face he could on things to his colleagues. He was almost physically shocked by the storm of hatred which met him. In vain did he point out that those who were now abusing him had themselves voted for the sale of the Wood:[f] but equally in vain did they abuse him. The College was caught in the net of necessity. They sold the little strip on their side of the Wynd which meant so much. It was no more than a terrace between the Eastern walls and the water. Twenty-four hours later the N.I.C.E. boarded over the doomed Wynd and converted the terrace into a dump. All day long workmen were trampling across the planks with heavy loads which they flung down against the very walls of Bracton till the pile had covered the boarded blindness which had once been the Henrietta Maria window and reached almost to the east[g] window of chapel.

In these days many members of the Progressive Element dropped off and joined the opposition. Those who were left were hammered closer together by the unpopularity they had to face. And though the College was thus sharply divided within, yet for the very same reason it also took on a new unity perforce in its relations to the outer world. Bracton as a whole bore the blame for bringing the N.I.C.E. to Edgestow at all. This was unfair, for many high authorities in the University had thoroughly approved Bracton's action in doing so, but now that the result was becoming apparent people refused to remember this. Busby, though he

[a] ends,] *B*; ends *M*
[b] eastern] *B*; Eastern *M*
[c] refused,] *B*; refused *M*
[d] to-day] *B*; today *M*
[e] meeting] *B*; Meeting *M*
[f] Wood:] *B*; wood; *M*
[g] east] *B*; East *M*

had heard the hint of requisitioning in confidence, lost no time in spreading it through Edgestow common rooms—"It would have done no good if we *had* refused to sell," he said. But nobody believed that this was why Bracton had sold, and the unpopularity of that College steadily increased. The undergraduates got wind of it, and stopped attending the lectures of Bracton dons. Busby, and even the wholly innocent warden,[a] were mobbed in the streets.

The Town, which did not usually share the opinions of the University, was also in an unsettled condition. The disturbance in which the Bracton windows had been broken was taken little notice of in the London papers or even in the *Edgestow Telegraph*. But it was followed by other episodes. There was an indecent assault in one of the mean streets down by the station. There were two "beatings up" in a public-house.[b] There were increasing complaints of threatening and disorderly behaviour on the part of the N.I.C.E. workmen. But these complaints never appeared in the papers. Those who had actually seen ugly incidents were surprised to read in the *Telegraph* that the new Institute was settling down very comfortably in Edgestow and the most cordial relations developing between it and the natives. Those who had not seen them but only heard of them, finding nothing in the *Telegraph,* dismissed the stories as rumours or exaggerations. Those who had seen them wrote letters to it, but it did not print their letters.

But if episodes could be doubted, no one could doubt that nearly all the hotels of the town had passed into the hands of the Institute, so that a man could no longer drink with a friend in his accustomed bar; that familiar shops were crowded with strangers who seemed to have plenty of money, and that prices were higher; that there was a queue for every omnibus and a difficulty in getting into every cinema. Quiet houses that had looked out on quiet streets were shaken all day long by heavy and unaccustomed traffic: wherever[c] one went one was jostled by crowds of strangers. To a little midland market town like Edgestow even visitors from the other side of the[d] county had hitherto ranked as aliens: the day-long clamour of Northern, Welsh, and even Irish voices, the shouts, the cat-calls, the songs, the wild faces passing in the fog, were utterly detestable. "There's going to be trouble here"[e] was the comment of many a citizen:[f] and in a few days, "You'd think they *wanted* trouble." It is not recorded who first said, "We need more police." And then at last the *Edgestow Telegraph* took notice. A shy little

[a] warden,] *B*; Warden, *M*
[b] public-house.] *BA*; public house. *M*
[c] wherever] *BM*; Wherever *A*
[d] other side of the] *BM*; next *A*
[e] here"] *BA*; here," *M*
[f] citizen:] *BA*; citizen; *M*

① *a cloud no bigger than a man's hand*

This is an allusion to I Kings 18: 44, where Elijah sees "a little cloud […] like a man's hand" which presages "a great rain" (verse 45) that breaks a three-year-long drought. The allusion suggests the first small sign of a coming event of great importance and significance: the N.I.C.E's press campaign, ultimately intended to deceive and mislead on a large scale.

The exact wording "a cloud no bigger than a man's hand" is found in the New English Bible, but Lewis cannot be quoting this version, as the New English Bible Old Testament was published in 1970. Lewis told a correspondent in May 1962 that he had seen only the New English Bible New Testament (published in 1961), so it is unlikely that he had seen Old Testament passages prior to publication. The translators of the New English Bible were "free to employ a contemporary idiom" ("Preface to the New English Bible"), so it seems likely that both Lewis and the New English Bible translators were expressing the idea in the simplest and most obvious words.

article—a cloud no bigger than a man's hand—appeared suggesting that the local police were quite incapable of dealing with the new population. ①

Of all these things Jane took little notice. She was, during these days, merely "hanging on." Perhaps Mark would summon her to Belbury. Perhaps he would give up the whole Belbury scheme and come home—his letters were vague and unsatisfactory. Perhaps she would go out to St. Anne's and see the Dennistons. The dreams continued. But Mr. Denniston had been right;[a] it was better when one had given in to regarding them as "news." If it had not been[b] she could hardly have endured her nights. There was one recurrent dream in which nothing exactly happened. She seemed indeed to be lying in her own bed. But there was someone beside the bed—someone who had apparently drawn a chair up to the bedside and then sat down to watch. He had a note-book[c] in which he occasionally made an entry. Otherwise he sat perfectly still and patiently attentive—like a doctor. She knew his face already, and came to know it[d] infinitely well: the pince-nez,[e] the well-chiselled,[f] rather white features, and the little pointed beard. And presumably—if he could see her—he must by now know hers equally well: it was certainly herself whom he appeared to be studying. Jane did not write about this to the Dennistons the first time it occurred. Even after the second she delayed until it was too late to post the letter that day. She had a sort of hope that the longer she kept silent the more likely they would be to come in and see her again. She wanted comfort,[g] but she wanted it, if possible, without going out to St. Anne's, without meeting this Fisher-King man and getting drawn into his[h] orbit.

The Inner Ring

Mark meanwhile was working at the rehabilitation of Alcasan. He had never seen a police dossier before and found it difficult to understand. In spite of his efforts to conceal his ignorance the Fairy soon discovered it. "I'll put you on to[i] the Captain," she said.[j] "He'll show you the ropes." That was how Mark came to spend most of his working hours with her second-in-command,[k] Captain O'Hara, a big white-haired man with a handsome face, talking in what English people called a

---

[a] right;] *B*; right: *M*
[b] been] *B*; been, *M*
[c] note-book] *BA*; notebook *M*
[d] it] *BM*; his face *A*
[e] pince-nez,] *BA*; *pince-nez*, *M*
☛ See note to 9[a].
[f] well-chiselled] *BA*; well chiselled *M*
[g] comfort,] *BA*; comfort *M*
[h] his] *BM*; its *A*
[i] on to] *A*; onto *BM*
☛ The phrasal verb "put on" ("introduce") takes the preposition "to": *OED*, "put" 47. l (c). Hence A's reading is preferable here. Not in the *NED*.
[j] she said.] *BM*; said the Fairy. *A*
[k] second-in-command,] *A*; second in command, *BM*

① *Castlemortle*

This does not seem to be a real place, and is probably an allusion to the Arthurian story. In *The High History of the Holy Graal*, "the King of Castle Mortal" is the wicked and deadly enemy of the "King Fisherman" (III viii), as O'Hara ("of ancient family, with a seat at Castlemortle") is one of the enemies of "Mr. Fisher-King" introduced in the previous chapter.

When he first read *The High History* (a translation of an anonymous thirteenth-century French work) in 1916, Lewis described it as "more mystic and eerie than the 'Morte' " (*Collected Letters* vol. 1 249). Charles William partially summarises it in "The Figure of Arthur" (1948) and seems to find it unsatisfactory (74–78).

② *the Q Register, the Sliding File system*

Possibly suitably abstruse-sounding terms invented by Lewis: I have not been able to find any convincing explanations. The thriller writer Peter O'Donnell uses the term "Q-List" as something maintained by the Secret Service (*Night of Morningstar* ch. 3 55), but other evidence suggests that he had read *That Hideous Strength* and been influenced by it (see Appendix C), so this may be another instance of that rather than proof that he and Lewis are referring to the same real-life things.

Southern brogue and Irish people[a] "a Dublin accent you could cut with a knife." He claimed to be of ancient family and had a seat at Castlemortle. Mark did not really understand his explanations of the dossier, the Q Register, the Sliding File system, and what the Captain called "weeding." But he was ashamed to confess this and so it came about that the[b] whole selection of facts really remained in O'Hara's hands,[c] and Mark found himself working merely as a writer. He did his best to conceal this from O'Hara and to make it appear that they were really working together:[d] this naturally made it impossible for him to repeat his original protests against being treated as a mere journalist. He had, indeed, a taking style (which had helped his academic career much more than he would have liked to acknowledge) and his[e] journalism was a success. His articles and letters about Alcasan appeared in papers where he would never have had the *entrée*[f] over his own signature: papers read by millions. He could not help feeling a little thrill of pleasurable excitement.

He also confided to Captain O'Hara his minor financial anxieties. When was one paid? And in the meantime[g] he was short of petty cash. He had lost his wallet on his very first night at Belbury and it had never been recovered. O'Hara roared with laughter. "Sure you can have any money you like by asking the Steward."

"You mean it's then deducted from one's next cheque?" asked Mark.

"Man," said the Captain, "once you're in the Institute, God bless it, you needn't bother your head about that. Aren't we going to take over the whole currency question? It's we that *make* money."

"Do you mean?" gasped Mark and then paused and added, "But they'd come down on you for the lot if you left?"

"What do you want to be talking about leaving for at all?" said O'Hara. "No one leaves the Institute. At least the only one that ever I heard of was old Hingest."

About this time, Hingest's inquest came to an end with a verdict of murder by a person or persons unknown. The funeral service was held in the College[h] chapel at Bracton.

It was the third and thickest day of the fog, which was now so dense and white that men's eyes smarted from looking at it and all distant sounds were annihilated; only the drip from eaves and trees and the shouts of the workmen

[a] people] *B*; people, *M*
[b] the] *BM*; The *A*
[c] hands,] *A*; hands *BM*
[d] together:] *B*; together; *M*
[e] his] *BM*; His *A*
[f] *entrée*] *BA*; *entree M*
[g] meantime] *B*; meantime, *M*
[h] College] *B*; college *M*

① *spoils of mutability*

Perhaps an allusion to or misquotation of Thomas Gray's phrase "the spoils of time" ("Elegy Written in a Country Church-Yard" 50).

② *maces and beadles and censors*

Titles of various university officials with ceremonial functions.

outside the chapel[a] were audible within the College. Inside the chapel the candles burned with straight flames, each flame the centre of a globe of greasy luminosity, and cast almost no light on the building as a whole:[b] but for the coughing and shuffling of feet[c] one would not have known that the stalls were quite full. Curry, black-suited and black-gowned and looming unnaturally large, went to and fro at the western[d] end of the chapel, whispering and peering, anxious lest the fog might delay the arrival of what he called the Remains, and not unpleasingly conscious of the weight wherewith his responsibility for the whole ceremony pressed upon his shoulders. Curry was very great at College funerals. There was no taint of the undertaker about him; he was the restrained, manly friend, stricken by a heavy blow but still mindful that he was (in some undefined sense) the father of the College and that amid all the spoils of mutability he, at any rate, must not give way. ① Strangers who had been present on such occasions often said to one another as they drove off, "You could see that sub-warden[e] chap felt it, though he wasn't going to show it." There was no hypocrisy in this. Curry was so used to superintending the lives of his colleagues that it came naturally to him to superintend their deaths; and possibly, if he had possessed an analytic mind, he might have discovered in himself a vague feeling that his influence, his power of smoothing paths and pulling suitable wires, could not really quite cease once the breath was out of the body.

The organ began to play and drowned both the coughing within and the harsher noises without—the monotonously ill-tempered voices, the rattle of iron, and the vibrating shocks with which loads were flung from time to time against the chapel wall. But the fog had, as Curry feared, delayed the coffin, and the organist had been playing for half an hour before there came a stir about the door and the family mourners, the black-clad Hingests of both sexes with their ram-rod backs and county faces, began to be ushered into the stalls reserved for them. Then came maces and beadles and censors and the Grand Rector of Edgestow,[f] then, singing, ② the choir, and finally the coffin—an island of appalling flowers drifting indistinctly through the fog, which seemed to have poured in, thicker, colder, and wetter, with the opening of the door. The service began.

Canon Storey took it. His voice was still beautiful, and there was beauty,

[a] the chapel] *B*; chapel *M*
[b] whole:] *B*; whole; *M*
[c] feet] *B*; feet, *M*
[d] western] *B*; Western *M*
[e] sub-warden] *B*; Sub-Warden *M*
[f] Edgestow,] *B*; Edgestow; *M*

① *Thou fool, that which thou sowest is not quickened unless it die.*
It is sown a natural body; it is raised a spiritual body

From the lesson from I Corinthians 15 that forms part of "The Order for the Burial of the Dead" (*BCP*).

② *bloods*

In ch. 6 of *Surprised by Joy*, entitled "Bloodery", Lewis describes his going to "Wyvern" (Malvern) College, and writes (70–71):

> you may ask what a *Blood* is. He is a member of the school aristocracy. […] this aristocracy has nothing whatever to do with the social position of the boys in the outer world. […] The qualifying condition for Bloodery is that one should have been at the school for a considerable time. This by itself will not get you in, but newness will certainly exclude you. The most important qualification is athletic prowess. Indeed if this is sufficiently brilliant it makes you a Blood automatically. If it is a little less brilliant, then good looks and personality will help. So, of course, will fashion, as fashion is understood at your school. A wise candidate for Bloodery will wear the right clothes, use the right slang, admire the right things, laugh at the right jokes.
>
> […] at the Coll […] prefects were nearly all Bloods and they did not have to be in any particular form. […] We thus had only a single governing class, in whom every kind of power, privilege, and prestige were united.

too,[a] in his isolation from all that company. He was isolated both by his faith and by his deafness. He felt no qualm about the appropriateness of the words which he read over the corpse of the proud old unbeliever, for he had never suspected his unbelief; and he was wholly unconscious of the strange antiphony between his own voice reading and the other voices from without. Glossop might wince when one of those voices, impossible to ignore in the silence of the chapel, was heard shouting, "Take your bucking great foot out of the light or I'll let you have the whole lot on top of it"; but Storey, unmoved and unaware, replied, "Thou fool, that which thou sowest is not quickened unless it die." *Blasphemy and Swearing* ①

"I'll give you one across your ugly face in a moment, see if I don't," said the voice again.

"It is sown a natural body; it is raised a spiritual body," said Storey. ①

"Disgraceful, disgraceful," muttered Curry to the Bursar who sat next to him. But some of the junior Fellows saw, as they said, the funny side of it and thought how Feverstone, who had been unable to be present,[b] would enjoy the story.

III

The pleasantest of the rewards which fell to Mark for his obedience was admission to the library. Shortly after his brief intrusion into it on that miserable morning he had discovered that this[c] room, though nominally public, was in practice reserved for what one had learned, at school, to call "bloods" and, at Bracton, "the Progressive Element."[d] It was on the library hearthrug and during the hours between ten and midnight that the important and confidential talks took place; and that was why, when Feverstone one evening sidled up to Mark in the lounge and said, "What about a drink in the library?" Mark smiled and agreed and harboured no resentment for the last conversation he had had with Feverstone. If he felt a little contempt of himself for doing so, he repressed and forgot it: that sort of thing was childish and unrealistic. ②

The circle in the library usually consisted of Feverstone, the Fairy, Filostrato, and—more surprising—Straik. It was balm to Mark's wounds to find that Steele never appeared there. He had apparently got in beyond, or behind, Steele, as they had promised him he would; all was working according to programme. One

[a] beauty, too,] *B*; beauty too *M*
[b] , who […] present,] *B*; (who […] present) *M*
[c] this] *BM*; This *A*
[d] Element."] *BM*; Element," *A*

① *resurrection*
shadows of things to come
heal the sick, cast out devils, raise the dead […] The Son of Man
power to judge the world

The resurrection of Christ is presented as historical fact in Matthew 28: 1–6, Mark 16: 1–6, Luke, 24: 1–8, and John 20: 1–17, and preached as such throughout Acts and the epistles.

Colossians 2: 17 refers to ceremonial observances as "a shadow of things to come" Hebrews 10: 1 describes the law of Moses as "having a shadow of good things to come".

In Matthew 10: 8 Christ sends the disciples out, saying, "Heal the sick, cleanse the lepers, raise the dead, cast out devils: freely ye have received, freely give." The title "Son of Man" is taken by Christ throughout the Gospels.

Paul calls the Corinthians to duty and responsibility when he writes, "Do you not know that the saints shall judge the world? and if the world shall be judged by you, are ye unworthy to judge the smallest matters? Know ye not that we shall judge angels? how much more things that pertain to this life?" (I Cor. 6: 2–3).

Here (as in ch. 4 III 78–80), Straik subverts and perverts Biblical phrases and concepts for his own purposes. He appropriates promises and prophecies to do with Heaven and applies them to this world, which he calls "the only world there is"; he equates Christ who was called "the Son of Man" with any son of any man.

person whose frequent appearance in the library he did not understand was the silent man with the pince-nez and the pointed beard, Professor Frost. The Deputy Director—or, as Mark now called him, the D.D.[a] or Old Man—was often there, but in a peculiar mode. He had a habit of drifting in and sauntering about the room, creaking and humming as usual. Sometimes he came up to the circle by the fire and listened and looked on with a vaguely parental expression on his face: but[b] he seldom said anything and he never joined the party. He drifted away again, and then, perhaps, would return about an hour later and once more potter about the empty parts of the room and once more go away. He had never spoken to Mark since the humiliating interview in his study, and Mark learned from the Fairy that he was still out of favour. "The Old Man will thaw in time," she said. "But I told you he didn't like people to talk about leaving."

The least satisfactory member of the circle in Mark's eyes was Straik. Straik made no effort to adapt himself to the ribald and realistic tone in which his colleagues spoke. He never drank nor smoked. He would sit silent, nursing a threadbare knee with a lean hand and turning his large unhappy eyes from one speaker to another, without attempting to combat them or to join in the joke when they laughed. Then—perhaps once in the whole evening—something said would start him off;[c] usually something about the opposition of reactionaries in the outer world and the measures which the N.I.C.E. would take to deal with it. At such moments he would burst into loud and prolonged speech, threatening, denouncing, prophesying. The strange thing was that the others neither interrupted him nor laughed. There was some deeper unity between this uncouth man and them which apparently held in check the obvious lack of sympathy, but what it was Mark did not discover. Sometimes Straik addressed him in particular, talking, to Mark's great discomfort and bewilderment, about resurrection. "Neither an[d] historical fact nor a fable, young man," he said, "but a prophecy. All the miracles . . . shadows[e] of things to come. Get rid of false spirituality. It is all going to happen, here in this world, in the only world there is. What did the Master tell us? Heal the sick, cast out devils, raise the dead. We shall. The Son of Man—that is, Man himself, full grown—has power to judge the world—to distribute life without end, and punishment without end. You shall see. Here and now." It was all very unpleasant.

[a] D.D.] *B*; D.D., *M*
[b] : but] *BA*; ; but *M*
[c] off;] *A*; off: *BM*
[d] an] *A*; a *BM*
[e] . . . shadows] *BA*; —shadows *M*

① *Ecco*

Italian: "here" or "look".

② *Ovid.* Ad metam properate simul.

From the *Ars Amatoria* II: the sentence continues, "*tum plena voluptas,/ Cum pariter victi femina virque iacent*" (727–28). It is unlikely that even Feverstone would adduce such a quotation in English, whether in part or in full—"speed to the goal together: then pleasure is full, when both woman and man lie vanquished alike." But Feverstone's remembering one of the most indelicate parts of Ovid is typical (Vail 85–86).

It was on the day after Hingest's funeral that Mark[a] first ventured to walk into the library on his own; hitherto he had always been supported by Feverstone or Filostrato. He was a little uncertain of his reception, and yet also afraid that if he did not soon assert his right to the *entrée*[b] this modesty might damage him. He knew that in such matters the error in either direction is equally fatal; one has to guess and take the risk.

The Inner Ring

It was a brilliant success. The circle were all there and before[c] he had closed the door behind him all had turned with welcoming faces[d] and Filostrato had said "*Ecco*"[e] and the Fairy, "Here's the very man." A glow of sheer pleasure passed over ① Mark's whole body. Never had the fire seemed to burn more brightly nor the smell of the drinks to be more attractive. He was actually being waited for. He was wanted.

"How quick can you write two leading articles, Mark?" said Feverstone.

"Can you work all night?" asked Miss Hardcastle.

"I *have* done," said Mark. "What's it all about?"

"All[f] are satisfied?" asked Filostrato. "That it—the disturbance—must go forward at once, yes?"

"That's the joke of it," said Feverstone. "She's done her work too well. She hasn't read her Ovid. *Ad metam properate simul.*" ②

"We cannot delay it if we wished," said Straik.

"What are we talking about?" said Mark.

"The disturbances at Edgestow," answered Feverstone.

"Oh.[g] . . . I haven't been following them very much. Are they becoming serious?"

"They're going to become serious, sonny,"[h] said the Fairy. "And that's the point. The real riot was timed for next week. All this little stuff was only meant to prepare the ground. But it's been going on too well, damn it. The balloon will have to go up to-morrow,[i] or the day after[j] at latest."

Mark glanced in bewilderment from her face to Feverstone's. The latter

---

[a] Mark] *BM*; After a few evenings Mark *A*
[b] *entrée*] *BA*; *entree*, *M*
[c] before] *BM*; Before *A*
[d] faces] *BA*; faces, *M*
[e] said "*Ecco*"] *BA*; said, "*Ecco*," *M*
[f] "All] *A*; "You *BM*
☛ A's reading makes it clear that Filostrato is canvassing the opinion of all the conspirators: B & M's "You" initially makes it look as though addressing Mark, who has just asked a question.
[g] "Oh.] *BA*; "Oh *M*
[h] sonny,"] *BA*; Sonny," *M*
[i] to-morrow,] *BA*; tomorrow, *M*
[j] after] *BA*; after, *M*

① *Nor was he aware […] the tone of his colleagues.*

In "The Inner Ring" Lewis writes, "And you will be drawn in, if you are drawn in, not by desire for gain or ease, but simply because at that moment, when the cup was so near your lips, you cannot bear to be thrust back again into the cold outer world" (37). See also Preliminary Note C: "The Inner Ring".

doubled himself up with laughter and Mark, almost automatically, gave a jocular turn to his own bewilderment.

"I think the penny hasn't dropped, Fairy," he said.

"You surely didn't imagine," grinned Feverstone, "that the Fairy left the initiative with the natives?"

"You mean she herself is the Disturbance?" said Mark.

"Yes, yes," said Filostrato, his little eyes glistening above his fat cheeks.

"It's all fair and square," said Miss Hardcastle. "You can't put a few hundred thousand imported workmen——"[a]

"Not the sort you enrolled!" interjected Feverstone.

"Into a sleepy little hole like Edgestow," Miss Hardcastle continued, "without having trouble. I mean there'd have been trouble anyway. As it turns out, I don't believe my boys needed to do anything. But, since the trouble was bound to come, there was no harm in seeing it came at the right moment."

"You mean you've *engineered* the disturbances?" said Mark. To do him justice, his mind was reeling from this new revelation. Nor was he aware of any decision to ① conceal his state of mind: in the snugness and intimacy of that circle he found his facial muscles and his voice, without any conscious volition, taking on the tone of his colleagues.

"That's a crude way of putting it," said Feverstone.

"It makes no difference," said Filostrato. "This is how things have to be managed."

"Quite," said Miss Hardcastle. "It's always done. Anyone who knows police work will tell you. And as I say, the real thing—the big riot—must take place within the next forty-eight hours."

"It's nice to get the tip straight from the horse's mouth!" said Mark. "I wish I'd got my wife out of the town, though."

"Where does she live?" said the Fairy.

"Up at Sandown."

"Ah. It'll hardly affect her. In the meantime, you and I have got to get busy about the account of the riot."

" But—what's it all for?"

"Emergency regulations," said Feverstone. "You'll never get the powers we want at Edgestow until the Government declares that a state of emergency exists there."

"Exactly," said Filostrato. "It is folly to talk of peaceful revolutions. Not that

[a] workmen——"] *B*; workmen—" *M*

① *canaglia*

Italian: "rabble".

② *Mr. Dunne's sort of time nor in looking-glass land*

See Preliminary Note G: "Philosophies of Time" for details of "Dunne's sort of time".

In Lewis Carroll's *Through the Looking Glass and What Alice Found There* (1872) writing is the mirror-image of writing in our world (ch. 1 131 & 138), and may perhaps be expected to have other peculiar relations with ordinary reality.

③ *with witches prophesying on a blasted heath or visible Rubicons to be crossed*

The "heath" is an allusion to the opening of Shakespeare's *Macbeth*, where three witches await Macbeth and Banquo on "A desert Heath".

Julius Caesar initiated the Roman Civil Wars in 49 BC when he led his legions across the Rubicon, from Cisalpine Gaul (where he had legal military authority) into Italy (where he did not): this episode is recounted in Plutarch's "Caesar" XXXII, Suetonius' "The Deified Julius" XXXI, and elsewhere.

④ *that intimate laughter[…] very bad men.*

In "The Inner Ring" Lewis writes, "Of all passions the passion for the Inner Ring is most skilful in making a man who is not yet a very bad man do very bad things." (37). See also Preliminary Note C: "The Inner Ring".

the *canaglia* would always resist—often they have to be prodded into it—but until there is the disturbance, the firing, the barricades—no one get[a] powers to act effectively. There is not enough what you call weigh on the boat to steer him." ①

"And the stuff must be all ready to appear in the papers the very day after the riot," said Miss Hardcastle. "That means it must be handed in to the D.D. by six to-morrow[b] morning at latest."

"But how are we to write it to-night[c] if the thing doesn't even happen till to-morrow[b] at the earliest?"

Everyone burst out laughing.

"You'll never manage publicity that way, Mark," said Feverstone. "You surely don't need to wait for a thing to happen before you tell the story of it!"

"Well, I admit," said Mark, and his face also was full of laughter, "I had a faint prejudice for doing so, not living in Mr. Dunne's sort of time nor in looking-glass land." ②

"No good, sonny,"[d] said Miss Hardcastle. "We've got to get on with it at once. Time for one more drink and you and I'd better go upstairs and begin. We'll get them to give us devilled bones and coffee at two."[e]

This was the first thing Mark had been asked to do which he himself, before he did it, clearly knew to be criminal. But the moment of his consent almost escaped his notice; certainly, there was no struggle, no sense of turning a corner. There may have been a time in the world's history when such moments fully revealed their gravity, with witches prophesying on a blasted heath or visible ③ Rubicons to be crossed. But, for him, it all slipped past in a chatter of laughter, of that intimate laughter between fellow professionals, which of all earthly powers is ④ strongest to make men do very bad things before they are yet, individually, very bad men. A few moments later he was trotting upstairs with the Fairy. They passed Cosser on the way and Mark, talking busily to his companion, saw out of the corner of his eye that Cosser was watching them. To think that he had once been afraid of Cosser!

"Who has the job of waking the D.D. up at six?" asked Mark.

---

[a] get] *M*; gets *BA*

☛ B & A's reading is correct English, but Filostrato does not speak correct English: he frequently omits the "-s" from third-person singular present-tense verbs, as in his first conversation with Mark in the novel: "He get too big for his boots" (58).

[b] to-morrow] *BA*; tomorrow *M*

[c] to-night] *BA*; tonight *M*

[d] sonny,"] *BA*; Sonny," *M*

[e] two."] *BA*; three." *M*

☛ There is no obvious reason for the difference here.

① *as the Stagyrite said long ago, disorders which have trivial occasions have deeper causes*

Aristotle was born in Stagirus in Chalcidice. The reference is to his *Politics* (V iii 1):

> Γίγνονται μέν οὖν αἱ στάσεις οὐ περί μικρῶν ἀλλ᾽ ἐκ μικρῶν, σταζιάζουσι δὲ περί μεγαλῶν.
>
> Therefore factions/seditions originate, not concerning but out of small things, while forming factions/sedition continues concerning great things.
>
> (translation expanded, see Liddell & Scott, "στάσις" III [1])

Lewis had a generally low opinion of journalism (see 310 n. 4), so the pretentiousness of the reference to Aristotle's birthplace and the slight misinterpretation of the source may be satirical; nevertheless, Lewis attributes to Mark a better classical knowledge than one would expect from a young man whose "education had been neither scientific nor classical—merely 'Modern' " (ch. 9 II 195). But nearly all Lewis's characters occasionally seem remarkably well read and classically educated, and in this presumably reflect their creator's assumptions about reading rather than a concern for careful characterisation.

"Probably not necessary," said the Fairy. "I suppose the old man must sleep sometime. But I've never discovered when he does it."

IV

At four o'clock Mark sat in the Fairy's office re-reading the last two articles he had written—one for the most respectable of our papers, the other for a more popular organ. This was the only part of the night's work which had anything in it to flatter literary vanity. The earlier hours had been spent in the sterner labour of concocting the news itself. These two Leaders had been kept for the end, and the ink was still wet. The first was as follows:

While[a] it would be premature to make any final comment on last night's riot at Edgestow, two conclusions seem to emerge from the first accounts, which we publish elsewhere,[b] with a clarity which is not likely to be shaken by subsequent developments. In the first place, the whole episode will administer a rude shock to any complacency which may still lurk among us as to the enlightenment of our own civilisation. It must, of course, be admitted that the transformation of a small university town into a centre of national research cannot be carried out without some friction and some cases of hardship to the local inhabitants. But the Englishman has always had his own quiet and humorous way of dealing with frictions and has never showed himself unwilling, when the issue is properly put before him, to make sacrifices much greater than those small alterations of habit and sentiment which progress demands of the people of Edgestow. It is gratifying to note that there[c] is no suggestion in any authoritative quarter that the N.I.C.E. has in any way exceeded its powers or failed in that consideration and courtesy which was expected of it; and there is little doubt that the actual starting-point of the disturbances was some quarrel, probably in a public-house,[d] between one of the N.I.C.E. workmen and some local Sir Oracle. But as the Stagyrite said long ago, disorders which have trivial occasions have deeper causes, and there seems little doubt that this petty *fracas* must have been[e] inflamed, if not exploited, by sectional interests or widespread prejudice. ①

It[f] is disquieting to be forced to suspect that the old distrust of planned efficiency and the old jealousy of what is ambiguously called "Bureaucracy"[g] can be so easily, though, we hope, temporarily,[h] revived; though at the same time, this very suspicion, by revealing the

---

[a] While] *M*; "While *BA*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[b] , which […] elsewhere,] *B*; (which […] elsewhere) *M*
[c] there] *BM*; There *A*
[d] public-house,] *BA*; public house, *M*
[e] been] *BM*; was *A*
[f] It] *M*; "It *BA*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[g] "Bureaucracy"] *M*; 'Bureaucracy' *BA*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[h] , though, we hope, temporarily,] *B*; (though, we hope, temporarily) *M*

① *imperium in imperio*

The *NED* defines this as "an independent or supreme authority exercised or claimed within the jurisdiction of another authority" ("Imperium" b).

② *Sanitary Executive*

Neither the *NED* nor the *OED* records any such euphemistic use of "Sanitary", either before or after Lewis's use here. Clearly he is satirically inflating the euphemistic way in which journalism hides ugly truths from the public, here representing a programme of systematic brainwashing and Orwellian methods of crime-prevention as simply another means for preserving health and preventing disease.

gaps and weaknesses in our national level of education, emphasises one of the very diseases which the National Institute exists to cure. That it will cure it we need have no doubt. The[a] will of the nation is behind this magnificent "peace-effort,"[b] as Mr. Jules so happily described the Institute, and any ill-informed opposition which ventures to try conclusions with it will be, we hope gently, but certainly firmly, resisted.

The[c] second moral to be drawn from last night's events is a more cheering one. The original proposal to provide the N.I.C.E. with what is misleadingly called its own "police force"[d] was viewed with distrust in many quarters. Our readers will remember that while not sharing that distrust, we extended to it a certain sympathy. Even the false fears of those who love liberty should be respected as we respect even the ill-grounded anxieties of a mother. At the same time we insisted[e] that the complexity of modern society rendered it an anachronism to confine the actual execution of the will of society to a body of men whose real function was the prevention and detection of crime: that the police, in fact, must be relieved sooner or later of that growing body of coercive functions which do not properly fall within their sphere. That this problem has been solved by other countries in a manner which proved fatal to liberty and justice, by creating a real *imperium in imperio*, is a fact which ① no one is likely to forget. The so-called[f] "Police" of the N.I.C.E.—who should rather be called its "Sanitary Executive"[g]—is the characteristically English solution. Its relation to the ② National Police cannot, perhaps, be defined with perfect logical accuracy; but, as a nation, we have never been much enamoured of logic. The executive of the N.I.C.E. has no connection with politics:[h] and if it ever comes into relation with criminal justice, it does so in the gracious role of a rescuer—a rescuer who can remove the criminal from the harsh sphere of punishment into that of remedial treatment. If any doubt as to the value of such a force existed, it has been amply set at rest by the episodes at Edgestow. The happiest relations seem to have been maintained throughout between the officers of the Institute and the National Police, who, but for the assistance of the Institute, would have found themselves faced with an impossible situation. As an eminent police officer observed to one of our representatives this morning, "But for the N.I.C.E. Police, things would have taken quite a different turn."[i] If in the light of these events it is found convenient to place the whole Edgestow area under the exclusive control of the Institutional "police"[j] for some

Humane Remedial Treatment

[a] The] *BM*; but the *A*
[b] "peace-effort,"] *M*; 'peace-effort,' *BA*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[c] The] *M*; "The *BA*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[d] "police force"] *M*; 'police force' *BA*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[e] insisted] *BM*; , but also insisted *A*
[f] so-called] *BA*; socalled *M*
[g] "Police" of […] its "Sanitary Executive"] *M*; 'Police' of […] its 'Sanitary Executive' *BA*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[h] politics:] *B*; politics; *M*
[i] "But […] turn."] *M*; 'But […] turn.' *BA*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[j] "police"] *M*; 'police' *BA*

① *in the words of a recent Prime Minister, that "when blood flowed, it was generally from the nose."*

I have not been able to trace this allusion, if indeed it refers to an actual utterance by an historical Prime Minister.

limited period, we do not believe that the British people—always realists at heart—will have the slightest objection. A special tribute is due to the female members of the force, who appear to have acted throughout with that mixture of courage and common sense which the last few years have taught us to expect of Englishwomen[a] almost as a matter of course. The wild rumours, current in London this morning, of machine-gun fire in the streets and casualties by the hundred, remain to be sifted. Probably, when accurate details are available, it will be found, in the words of a recent Prime Minister,[b] that "when blood flowed, it was generally from the nose."[c]

The second ran thus:[d]

What[e] is happening at Edgestow?

That[f] is the question which John Citizen wants to have answered. The Institute which has settled at Edgestow is a *National* Institute. That means it is yours and mine. We are not scientists and we do not pretend to know what the master-brains of the Institute are thinking. We do know what each man or woman expects of it. We expect a solution of the unemployment problem;[g] the cancer problem;[i] the housing problem;[i] the problems of currency, of war, of education. We expect from it a brighter, cleaner,[h] and fuller life for our children[i] in which we and they can march ever onward and onward and develop to the full the urge of life which God has given each one of us. The N.I.C.E. is the people's instrument for bringing about all the things we fought for.

Meanwhile[j]—what is happening at Edgestow?

Do[k] you believe this riot arose simply because Mrs. Snooks or Mr. Buggins found that the landlords had sold their shop or their allotment to the N.I.C.E.? Mrs. Snooks and Mr. Buggins know better. They know that the Institute means more trade in Edgestow, more public amenities, a larger population, a burst of undreamed-of prosperity. I say these disturbances have been ENGINEERED.[l]

☛ See note to 108[e].

[a] Englishwomen] *B*; English women *M*

☛ Fowler ("England, English(man)") takes "Englishman", and hence presumably "Englishwoman", for granted.

[b] found, in […] Minister,] *B*; found (in […] Minister) *M*

[c] "when […] nose."] *M*; 'when […] nose.' " *B*

☛ See note to 108[e].

[d] ran thus:] *BM*; said much the same with shorter words, more exclamation marks, and in a more truculent manner. *A*

[e] What] *M*; "What *B*

☛ See note to 108[e].

[f] That] *M*; "That *B*

☛ See note to 108[e].

[g] problem;] *B*; problem, *M*

[h] cleaner,] *B*; cleaner *M*

[i] children] *B*; children, *M*

[j] Meanwhile] *M*; "Meanwhile *B*

☛ See note to 108[e].

[k] Do] *M*; "Do *B*

☛ See note to 108[e].

[l] ENGINEERED.] *B*; ENGINEERED. *M*

① *the Gestapo or the Ogpu*

"Gestapo", short for the German *GEheime STAatsPOlizei* [Secret State Police] was in use from 1933 onwards; "Ogpu", an acronym for the Russian *Obyedinyonnoye Gosudarstvennoye Politicheskoye Upravleniye* [United State Political Administration], was current from 1923 to 1934.

② *the Mrs. Grundies*

Characters in Thomas Morton's *Speed the Plough* (1798) continually wonder what Mrs Grundy will think or say. Consequently, "more famous, sadly, than the play in which she fails to appear, Mrs Grundy has entered the English literary tradition as a stock motif for the personification of disapproval" (Sutcliffe 213 n.).

This charge may sound strange, but it is true.[a]

Therefore[b] I ask yet again: What is happening at Edgestow?

There[c] are traitors in the camp. I am not afraid to say so, whoever they may be. They may be so-called religious people. They may be financial interests. They may be the old cobweb-spinning professors and philosophers of Edgestow University itself. They may be Jews. They may be lawyers. I don't care who they are, but I have one thing to tell them. Take care. The people of England are not going to stand this. We are not going to have the Institute sabotaged.

What[d] is to be done at Edgestow?

I[e] say, put the whole place under the Institutional Police. Some of you may have been to Edgestow for a holiday. If so, you'll know as well as I do what it is like—a little, sleepy, country town with half a dozen policemen who have had nothing to do for ten years but stop cyclists because their lamps have[f] gone out. It doesn't make sense to expect these poor old bobbies[g] to deal with an ENGINEERED RIOT.[h] Last night the N.I.C.E. police showed that they could. What I say is—hats off to Miss Hardcastle and her brave boys, yes, and her brave girls too. Give them a free hand and let them get on with the job. Cut out the red tape.[i]

I've[j] one bit of advice. If you hear anyone backbiting the N.I.C.E. police, tell him where he gets off. If you hear anyone comparing them to the Gestapo or the Ogpu, tell him ① you've heard that one before. If you hear anyone talking about the liberties of England, by[k] which he means the liberties of the obscurantists, the Mrs. Grundies, the Bishops, and the ② capitalists,[l] watch that man. He's the enemy. Tell him from me that the N.I.C.E. is the boxing-glove[m] on the democracy's fist, and if he doesn't like it[n] he'd best get out of the way.

Meanwhile[o]—WATCH EDGESTOW[p].[a]

---

[a] ¶This charge may sound strange, but it is true.] *M only*
☛ See Introduction 2 xl.
[b] Therefore] *M*; "Therefore *B*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[c] There] *M*; "There *B*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[d] What] *M*; "What *B*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[e] I] *M*; "I *B*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[f] have] *M*; had *B*
☛ The lamps' going out precedes the cyclists' being stopped because of it. M's present perfect "have gone out" indicates that the lights went out before the stopping and are still out at the stopping, which is sufficient. B's past perfect goes too far into the past.
[g] bobbies] *B*; Bobbies *M*
[h] ENGINEERED RIOT.] *B*; ENGINEERED RIOT. *M*
[i] red tape.] *B*; Red Tape. *M*
[j] I've] *M*; "I've *B*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[k] England, by] *B*; England (by *M*
[l] capitalists,] *B*; capitalists), *M*
[m] boxing-glove] *B*; boxing glove *M*
[n] it] *B*; it, *M*
[o] Meanwhile] *M*; "Meanwhile *B*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[p] WATCH EDGESTOW] *B*; WATCH EDGESTOW *M*

① *"with the printer's devil at the door"*

A slight misquotation from Thomas Gent (1780–1857): "But hark, *my* printer's devil's at the door" ("Poems" 62). A "printer's devil" is a messenger or runner of errands in a printing office (*NED*, "Devil" *sb.* 5. a).

In this poem, the first in the collection entitled *Poems*, Gent tracks the diminishing aspirations and ambitions of a young poet as "that soul-thrilling wish—to live hereafter—/ Gives way to one as hopeless quite, I fear,/ And far more needful—how to *live while here*" (53–55). Mark's use of this quotation here may be read as an ironic comment on Mark's loss of innocence and pure ambition, but I suspect this is unlikely and the thematic similarity fortuitous. Lewis (like many of his contemporaries and hence his characters) frequently seems to have used literary quotations out of context, simply for the sake of their apt expression. For example, see: 133 n. 2; 136 n. 1; 374 n. 1; 387 n. 2; 402 n. 3.

It might be supposed that after enjoying these articles in the heat of composition, Mark would awake to reason, and with it to disgust, when reading through the finished product. Unfortunately the process had been almost the reverse. He had become more and more reconciled to the job the longer he worked at it.

The complete reconciliation came when he fair-copied both articles. When a man has crossed the Ts[b] and dotted the Is,[c] and likes the look of his work, he does not wish it to be committed to the waste-paper[d] basket. The more often he re-read the articles the better he liked them. And[e] anyway, the thing was a kind of joke. He had in his mind a picture of himself, old and rich, probably with a peerage, certainly very distinguished,[f] when all this—all the unpleasant side of the N.I.C.E.—was over, regaling his juniors with wild, unbelievable tales of this present time. ("Ah . . . it was a rum show in those early days. I remember once . . .") And then, too, for a man whose writings had hitherto appeared only in learned periodicals or at best in books which only other dons would read, there was an all but irresistible lure in the thought of the daily press-editors waiting for copy—readers all over Europe—something really depending on his words. The idea of the immense dynamo which had been placed for the moment at his disposal, thrilled through his whole being. It was, after all, not so long ago that he had been excited by admission to the Progressive Element at Bracton. But what was the Progressive Element to this? It wasn't as if he were taken in by the articles[g] himself. He was writing with his tongue in his cheek—a phrase that somehow comforted him by making the whole thing appear like a practical joke. And anyway, if he didn't do it, someone else would. And all the while the child inside him whispered how splendid and how triumphantly grown up it was to be sitting like this, so full of alcohol and yet not drunk, writing with his tongue in his cheek[h] articles for great newspapers, against time, "with the printer's devil at the door" and all the inner ring of the N.I.C.E. depending on him, and nobody ever again having the least right to consider him a nonentity or cipher. ①

---

[a] .] *M*; ." *B*
☛ See note to 108[e].
[b] Ts] *B*; T's *M*
[c] Is,] *B*; I's, *M*
[d] waste-paper] *B*; wastepaper *M*
[e] And] *B*; And, *M*
[f] , probably […] distinguished,] *B*; (probably […] distinguished) *M*
[g] the articles] *BM*; them *A*
[h] writing with […] cheek] *A*; writing, with […] cheek, *B* writing (with […] cheek) *M*

V

Jane stretched out her hand in the darkness, but did not feel the table which ought to have been there at her bed's head. Then with a shock of surprise she[a] discovered that she was not in bed at all, but standing. There was utter darkness all about her and it was intensely cold. Groping, she touched what appeared to be uneven surfaces of stone. The air, also, had some odd quality about it—dead air, imprisoned air, it seemed. Somewhere far away, possibly overhead, there were noises which came to her muffled and shuddering as if through earth. So the worst had happened . . . a[b] bomb had fallen on the house and she was buried alive. But before she had time to feel the full impact of this idea she remembered that the war was over . . . oh, and all sorts of things had happened since then . . . she had married Mark . . . she had seen Alcasan in his cell . . . she had met Camilla. Then, with great and swift relief she thought, "It is one of my dreams. It is a piece of news. It'll stop presently. There's nothing to be frightened of."

The[c] place, whatever it was, did not seem to be very large. She groped all along one of the rough walls and then, turning at the corner, struck her foot against something hard. She stooped down and felt. There was a sort of raised platform or table of stone, about three feet high. And on it? Did she dare to explore? But it would be worse not to. She began trying the surface of the stone table with her hand, and next moment[d] bit her lip to save herself from screaming, for she had touched a human foot.[e] It was a naked foot, and dead to judge by its coldness. To go on groping seemed the hardest thing she had ever done,[f] but somehow she was impelled to do it. The corpse was clothed in some very coarse stuff which was also uneven, as though it were heavily embroidered, and very voluminous. It must be a very large man, she thought, still groping upwards towards his head. On his chest the texture suddenly changed—as if the skin of some hairy animal had been laid over the coarse robe. So she thought at first; then she realised that the hair really belonged to a beard. She hesitated about feeling the face; she had a fear lest the man should stir or wake or speak if she did so. She therefore became still for a moment. It was only a dream; she could bear it:[g] but it was so dreary and it all seemed to be happening so long ago, as if she had slipped through a cleft in the present, down into some cold, sunless pit

[a] she] *BM*; She *A*
[b] . . . a] *B*; —a *M*
[c] ¶The] *BM*; The *A*
[d] next moment] *BM*; Next moment she *A*
[e] foot.] *BM*; foot; *A*
[f] done,] *BA*; done *M*
[g] it:] *BA*; it; *M*

of the remote past. She hoped they wouldn't leave her here long. If only someone would come quickly and let her out. And immediately she had a picture of someone, someone bearded but also (it was odd) divinely young, someone all golden and strong and warm coming with a mighty earth-shaking tread down into that black place. The dream became chaotic at this point. Jane had an impression that she ought to courtesy[a] to this person (who never actually arrived though the impression of him lay bright and heavy on her mind)[b] and felt great consternation on realising that some dim memories of dancing lessons at school were not sufficient to show her how to do so. At this point she woke.

She went into Edgestow immediately after breakfast to hunt, as she now hunted every day, for someone who would replace Mrs. Maggs. At the top of Market Street something happened which finally determined her to go to St. Anne's that very day and by the 10.23[c] train. She came to a place where a big car was standing beside the pavement, an N.I.C.E. car. Just as she reached it a man came out of a shop, cut across her path to speak to the chauffeur of the car, and then got in. He was so close to her that, despite the fog, she saw him very clearly, in isolation from all other objects: the background was all grey fog and passing feet and the harsh sounds of that unaccustomed traffic which now never ceased in Edgestow. She would have known him, anywhere: not Mark's face, not her own face in a mirror, was by now more familiar. She saw the pointed beard, the pince-nez,[d] the face which somehow reminded her of a waxworks face. She had no need to think what she would do. Her body, walking quickly past, seemed of itself to have decided that it was heading for the station and thence for St. Anne's. It was something different from fear (though she was frightened,[e] too, almost to the point of nausea) that drove her so unerringly forward. It was a total rejection of, or revulsion from, this man on all levels of her being at once. Dreams sank into insignificance compared with the blinding reality of the man's presence. She shuddered to think that their hands might have touched as she passed him.

The train was blessedly warm, her compartment empty, the fact of sitting down delightful. The slow journey through the fog almost sent her to sleep. She

---

[a] courtesy] *M*; curtsey *B*
☛ Apart from M's being the *lectio difficilior*, it seems likely that Lewis would prefer a spelling that makes the relationship between the visible sign (or its performance) and the inward intention clear. It is true that he uses "curtsey" (as a noun) in *The Magician's Nephew* (ch. 11 128), but the spelling there would be constrained by its being a children's book. Tolkien uses "courtesy" (as a noun) in *Lord of the Rings* (XI ch. 5 91).
[b] mind)] *B*; mind), *M*
[c] 10.23] *B*; ten-twenty-three *M*
[d] pince-nez,] *BA*; *pince-nez*, *M*
☛ See note to 9[a].
[e] frightened,] *B*; frightened *M*

hardly thought about St. Anne's until she found herself there: even as she walked up the steep hill she made no plans, rehearsed nothing that she meant to say, but only thought of Camilla and Mrs. Dimble. The childish levels, the undersoil of the mind, had been turned up. She wanted to be with Nice people, away from Nasty people—that nursery distinction seeming at the moment more important than any later categories of Good and Bad or Friend and Enemy.

She was roused from this state by noticing that it was lighter. She looked ahead: surely that bend in the road was more visible than it ought to be in such a fog? Or was it only that a country fog was different from a town one? Certainly what had been grey was becoming white, almost dazzlingly white. A few yards farther and luminous blue was showing overhead, and trees cast shadows (she had not seen a shadow for days), and then all of a sudden the enormous spaces of the sky had become visible and the pale golden sun, and looking back, as she took the turn to the Manor, Jane saw that she was standing on the shore of a little green sunlit[a] island looking down on a sea of white fog, furrowed and ridged yet level on the whole, which spread as far as she could see. There were other islands too. That dark one to the West was the wooded hills above Sandown where she had picnicked with the Dennistons; and the far bigger and brighter one to the North was the many-caverned[b] hills—mountains one could nearly call them—in which the Wynd had its source. She took a deep breath. It was the *size* of this world above the fog which impressed her. Down in Edgestow all these days one had lived, even when out of doors,[c] as if in a room, for only objects close at hand were visible. She felt she had come near to forgetting how big the sky is, how remote the horizon.

[a] sunlit] *B*; sun-lit *M*
[b] many-caverned] *B*; many caverned *M*
[c] out of doors,] *B*; out-of-doors, *M*

① *The Pendragon*

Historically and in Arthurian legend, a title given to British chiefs granting them supreme power in times of danger: Arthur's father Uther bore it (*Brewer's Dictionary*, "Pendragon"). Lewis uses it to denote Ransom's inheritance of Arthur's mantle and lordship over Logres. See also Preliminary Note D: "Logres".

SEVEN

The Pendragon ①

I

BEFORE she reached the door[a] in the wall Jane met Mr. Denniston and he guided her into the Manor, not by that door but by the main gate which opened on the same road a few hundred yards farther on. She told him her story as they walked. In his company she had that curious sensation which most married people know of being with someone whom (for the final but wholly mysterious reason) one could never have married but who is nevertheless more of one's own world than the person one has married in fact. As they entered the house they met Mrs. Maggs.

"What? Mrs. Studdock! Fancy!" said Mrs. Maggs.

"Yes, Ivy," said Denniston, "and bringing great news. Things are beginning to move. We must see Grace at once. And is MacPhee about?"

"He's out gardening hours ago," said Mrs. Maggs. "And Dr. Dimble's gone into[b] College. And Camilla's in the kitchen. Shall I send her along?"

"Yes, do. And if you can prevent Mr. Bultitude from butting in——"[c]

"That's right. I'll keep him out of mischief all right. You'd like a cup of tea, Mrs. Studdock, wouldn't you? Coming by train and all that."

A few minutes later Jane found herself once more in Grace Ironwood's room. Miss Ironwood and the Dennistons all sat facing her so that she felt as if she were the candidate in a *viva voce* examination. And[d] when Ivy Maggs brought in the[e] tea she did not go away again, but sat down[f] as if she also were one of the examiners.

"Now!" said Camilla, her eyes and nostrils widened with a sort of fresh mental hunger—it was too concentrated to be called excitement.

Jane glanced round the room.

"You need not mind Ivy, young lady," said Miss Ironwood. "She is one of our company."

---

[a] door] *BM*; Manor *A*
[b] into] *B*; in to *M*
[c] in——"] *B*; in—" *M*
[d] . And] *BM*; , and *A*
[e] the] *BM*; some *A*
[f] down] *BM*; down too *A*

① *your letter of the 10th*

This date seems too early, taking into account the other action of the novel. See Appendix B.

There was a pause.[a]

"We have your letter of the 10th," continued Miss Ironwood, "describing your dream of the man with the pointed beard sitting making notes in your bedroom. Perhaps I ought to tell you that he wasn't really there: at least, the Director does not think it possible. But he was really studying *you*. He was getting information about you from some other source which, unfortunately, was not visible to you in the dream."

"Will you tell us, if you don't mind," said Mr. Denniston, "what you were telling me as we came along?"[b]

Jane told them about the dream of the corpse (if it was a corpse) in the dark place and how she had met the bearded man that morning in Market Street:[c] and at once she was aware of having created intense interest.

"Fancy!" said Ivy Maggs. "So we were right about Bragdon Wood!" said Camilla. "It *is* really Belbury,"[d] said her husband. "But in that case, where does Alcasan come in?"

"Excuse me," said Miss Ironwood in her level voice, and the others became instantly silent. "We must not discuss the matter here. Mrs. Studdock has not yet joined us."

"Am I to be told nothing?" asked Jane.

"Young lady," said Miss Ironwood, "you[e] must excuse me. It would not be wise at the moment: indeed, we are not at liberty to do so. Will you allow me to ask you two more questions?"

"If you like," said Jane, a little sulkily[f] but only a very little. The presence of Camilla and Camilla's husband somehow put her on her best behaviour.

Miss Ironwood had opened a drawer and for a few moments there was silence while she hunted in it. Then she handed a photograph across to Jane and asked,[g] "Do you recognise that person?"

"Yes," said Jane in a low voice; "that[h] is the man I dreamed of and the man I saw this morning in Edgestow."

It was a good photograph,[i] and beneath it was the name Augustus Frost, with a few other details which Jane did not at the moment take in.

---

[a] pause.¶] *A*; pause. *BM*
[b] along?"] *MA*; along." *B*
[c] Street:] *BA*; Street; *M*
[d] Belbury," *M*; Belbury" *B*
[e] Ironwood, "you] *B*; Ironwood. "You *M*
[f] sulkily] *B*; sulkily, *M*
[g] asked,] *BA*; asked,¶ *M*
[h] voice; "that] *BA*; voice. "That *M*
[i] photograph,] *A*; photograph *BM*

① *a very young man […] you and I have no conception.*

Ransom's appearance of youth is a result of his time (slightly more than a year) spent in the unfallen world of Perelandra-Venus, in which he met the first rational (human) man and woman of that planet, described in *Perelandra*. When Ransom returns to Earth, Lewis (who is both narrator of the novel and a character in its first chapters) is "astonished" to see "almost a new Ransom, glowing with health and rounded with muscle and seemingly ten years younger. In the old days he had been beginning to show a few grey hairs; but now the beard which swept his chest was pure gold" (*Perelandra* ch. 2 32).

The other "society of which you and I have no conception" is that of Malacandra-Mars, where he met the three rational ("*hnau*") species of that planet, living amongst the *hrossa* (*Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 10–13), travelling and speaking with *séroni* (ch. 15–17), and speaking with the *pfifltriggi* (ch. 17).

As a result of both his extra-terrestrial journeys, Ransom has also made the acquaintance of the Oyéresu of Malacandra and Perelandra—the tutelary spirits of Mars and Venus: we learn in this novel that they now visit him on Earth.

"In the second place," continued Miss Ironwood, holding out her hand for Jane to return the photograph, "are you prepared to see the Director . . . *now*?"[a]

"Well—yes, if you like."

"In that case, Camilla,"[b] said Miss Ironwood to Mrs. Denniston,[c] "you had better go and tell him what we have just heard and find out if he is well enough to meet Mrs. Studdock."

Camilla[d] at once rose.

"In the meantime," said Miss Ironwood, "I would like a word with Mrs. Studdock alone." At this the[e] others rose also and preceded[f] Camilla[d] out of the room. A very large cat which Jane had not noticed before jumped up and occupied the chair which Ivy Maggs had just vacated.

"I have very little doubt," said Miss Ironwood, "that the Director will see you."

Jane said nothing.

"And at that interview," continued the other, "you will, I presume, be called upon to make a final decision."

Jane gave a little cough which had no other purpose than to dispel a certain air of unwelcome solemnity which seemed to have settled on the room as soon as she and Miss Ironwood were left alone.

"There are also certain things," said Miss Ironwood, "which you ought to know about the Director before you see him. He will appear to you, Mrs. Studdock, to be a very young man: younger than yourself. You will please understand that this is not the case. He is nearer fifty than forty. He is a man of very great experience, who has travelled where no other human being ever travelled before and mixed in societies of which you and I have no conception."

"That is very interesting," said Jane, though displaying no interest.

"And thirdly,"[g] said Miss Ironwood, "I must ask you to remember that he is often in great pain. Whatever decision you come to, I trust you will not say or do anything that may put an unnecessary strain upon him."

---

[a] . . . *now*?"] *BA*; —*now*?" *M*

[b] Camilla,"] *A*; Arthur," *BM*

☛ A few paragraphs later, it is Camilla who meets Jane and Miss Ironwood at the Director's door with the news that he will see Jane. A's change therefore corrects an inconsistency. Following A in this entails the editor adding further corrections in the sections of the text excised from A.

[c] Mrs. Denniston,] *A*; Denniston, *BM*

☛ See note to 146[b].

[d] Camilla] *ed.*; Denniston *BM*

☛ See note to146[b]. I change "Denniston" to "Camilla" as this is what she is usually called in this episode: the "Mrs. Denniston" of 146[c] is almost certainly to avoid the repetition of "Camilla".

[e] the] *BM*; The *A*

[f] preceded] *BM*; left *A*

[g] thirdly,"] *BM*; secondly," *A*

① *Georgian*

See 14 n 2.

② *The house, […] bright and golden.*

This house is reminiscent of the house built by Lewis's father, in which he lived from the age of seven: he wrote, "I am a product of long corridors, empty sunlit rooms, upstair indoor silences, attics explored in solitude, distant noises of gurgling cisterns and pipes, and the noise of wind under the tiles" (*Surprised by Joy* 14).

The reference to sunlight here prepares us for the solar imagery that is part of Jane's first impression of Ransom (149 n. 1).

③ *this man's female adorers*

As a spiritual leader, Ransom is at times reminiscent of Charles Williams, here in his tendency to have admiring female followers. In 1944, the year before *That Hideous Strength* was published, Lewis wrote to Arthur Grieves that women found Charles Williams "so attractive that if he were a bad man he cd. do what he liked either as a Don Juan or a charlatan" (*Collected Letters* vol. 3 1549); see also Carpenter 101–07). Jane's dismissive description of Camilla and the others as "adorers" should not be taken as accurate, since she is defensively trying to find reasons to dismiss Ransom and his Company.

④ *one foot bandaged as if he had a wound*

In *Perelandra*, when most of the wounds from Ransom's fight with the body of Weston possessed and animated by a demon (possibly Satan himself) have healed, he notices "his most serious injury. It was a wound in his heel" (ch. 15 215). It does not "look unhealthy" but it continues to bleed slowly (ch. 15 215 & 221; ch. 17 254) and is still bleeding when he returns to Earth (ch. 2 33–34). Here we learn the wound remains unhealed, and we learn in ch. 13 V that it pains him.

See n. 1 facing p. 295 on the wound of the King Pellam the Fisher King and n. 1 facing p. 118 on Ransom's similarly unhealing wound (*C&G* 234).

Dorothy L. Sayers felt very strongly that Lewis's syncretism went too far in linking Ransom's bruised heel with the wound of the Fisher King: in 1947 she told a correspondent:

> I cannot forgive C.S. Lewis for equating his Ransom with the Fisher King through that very artificial link of the wound in the heel. There is a kind of silliness about it, which is particularly irritating when one remembers that the Fisher King Legend is probably a fertility-myth, and the wound certainly not in the heel. It is a violent forcing-together of things which belong to two different frames of discourse.
>
> (*1944–1950* 309, see also 264–65)

"If Mr. Fisher-King is not well enough to see visitors . . . ,"[a] said Jane vaguely.

"You must excuse me," said Miss Ironwood, "for impressing these points upon you. I am a doctor, and I am the only doctor in our company.[b] I am therefore responsible for protecting him as far as I can. If you will now come with me I will show you to the Blue Room."

She rose and held the door open for Jane. They passed out into the plain, narrow passage and thence up shallow steps into a large entrance hall whence a fine Georgian staircase led to the upper floors. The house, larger than Jane had at ① first supposed, was warm and very silent, and after so many days spent in fog[c] the autumn sunlight, falling on soft carpets and on walls, seemed to her bright and ② golden. On the first floor, but raised above it by six steps, they found a little square place with white pillars where Camilla, quiet and alert, sat waiting for them. There was a door behind her.

"He will see her," she said to Miss Ironwood, getting up.

"Is he in much pain this morning?"

"It is not continuous. It is one of his good days."

As Miss Ironwood raised her hand to knock on the door, Jane thought to herself, "Be careful. Don't get let in for anything. All these long passages and low voices will make a fool of you[d] if you don't look out. You'll become another of this ③ man's female adorers." Next moment she found herself going in. It was light—it seemed all windows. And it was warm—a fire blazed on the hearth. And blue was the prevailing colour. Before her eyes had taken it in she[e] was annoyed, and in a way ashamed, to see that Miss Ironwood was courtesying.[f] "I won't,"[g] contended in Jane's mind with "I can't": for it had been true in her dream, she couldn't.

"This is the young lady, sir,"[h] said Miss Ironwood.

Jane looked; and instantly her world was unmade.

On a sofa before her, with one foot bandaged as if he had a wound, lay what ④ appeared to be a boy, twenty years old.

On one of the long window-sills[i] a tame jackdaw was walking up and down. The light of the fire with its weak reflection, and the light of the sun with its

---

[a] visitors . . . ,"] *BA*; visitors . . ." *M*
[b] company.] *BM* company, and *A*
[c] fog] *B*; fog, *M*
[d] you] *BA*; you, *M*
[e] she] *BM*; She *A*
[f] courtesying.] *M*; curtseying.
☛ See note to 142[a].
[g] won't,"] *MA*; won't" *B*
[h] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*
[i] window-sills] *BA*; window sills *M*

① *Solomon . . . for the first time […] battle, marriage, priesthood, mercy, and power.*
According to the Bible (I Kings 1–11, II Chron. 1–9), Solomon was the last and greatest king of a united Israel, builder of the Temple in Jerusalem, husband and lover to 700 wives and 300 concubines, and ally of the Queen of Sheba. In his poem "Solomon" (1946) Lewis richly evokes the court of the gold-bearded king, lover and magician that was Solomon—although he concludes that such Adamic monarchical state as Solomon strove for was impossible for a fallen man (*Collected Poems* 60–61).

From these stories Lewis draws Jane's "blend of king and lover and magician": Ransom is a king—the Pendragon of Logres—and a magician insofar as he has dealings with the supernatural, but it is only Jane that also thinks of him as a lover, until, by the end of the novel, she learns to love appropriately—both God and her husband (see ch. 10 IV; 14 II, V, VI; 17 VI, VIII). Here again, Ransom displays characteristics of Charles Williams, who taught that human loves could lead to divine loves, and who sought to turn the affections of his female followers into appropriate channels (Carpenter 101–07).

The "blend of king and lover and magician" is "solar" because, traditionally, in the syncretic model "Sol produces the noblest metal, gold, and is the eye and mind of the whole universe. He makes men wise and liberal . . . Sol produces fortunate events" (*Discarded Image* 106, see Introduction 4). The solar imagery attached to Ransom allows Lewis to present the traditional aspects of the Sun while heightening his description of Ransom's effect on Jane.

Here, Jane, "modern" and democratic, suddenly gains a sense of the richness behind the word "king" as a result of her encounter with the Pendragon and her thoughts of Solomon. In Jane's case her changed outlook is a return to a more innocent, less consciously sophisticated, attitude: she thinks of Solomon "for the first time in many years" and of the associations of "king" "for the first time in all those years".

Both Chesterton and Charles Williams have passages that may inform this moment. One of the matters explored in Williams' *Shadows of Ecstasy* is that of kingship, which is celebrated as "the concentration of political energy in a person, […] the making visible of hierarchic freedom, a presented moment of obedience and rule" (109–10). And throughout *The Napoleon of Notting Hill* Chesterton takes delight in the power and absurdity of kingship (and patriotism and pageantry) taken and lived seriously (see especially book II ch. 2 102–21).

Jane (here and p. 153) and Mark (ch. 17 VII 408) both undergo crises where they feel that they have suddenly fully appreciated the meaning of a word that would previously have held little meaning for them.

stronger reflection, contended on the ceiling. But all[a] the light in the room seemed to run towards the gold hair and the gold beard of the wounded man.

Of course he was not a boy—how could she have thought so? The fresh skin on his forehead and cheeks and, above all, on his hands, had suggested the idea. But no boy could have so full a beard. And no boy could be so strong. She had expected to see an invalid. Now, it[b] was manifest that the grip of those hands would be inescapable, and imagination suggested that those arms and shoulders could support the whole house. Miss Ironwood at her side struck her as a little old woman, shrivelled and pale—a thing you could have blown away.

The sofa was placed on a kind of dais divided from the rest of the room by a step. She had an impression of massed hangings of blue—later, she saw that it was only a screen—behind the man, so that the effect was that of a throne room. She would have called it silly if, instead of seeing it, she had been told of it by another. Through the window she saw no trees nor hills nor shapes of other houses: only the level floor of mist, as if this man and she were perched in a blue tower overlooking the world.

Pain came and went in his face: sudden jabs of sickening and burning pain. But as lightening goes through the darkness and the darkness closes up again and shows no trace, so the tranquillity of his countenance swallowed up each shock of torture. How could she have thought him young? Or old either? It came over her, with a sensation of quick fear, that this face was of no age at all. She had, or so she had believed,[c] disliked bearded faces except for old men with white hair. But that was because she had long since forgotten the imagined Arthur of her childhood—and the imagined Solomon too. Solomon . . . for[d] the first time in many years the ① bright solar blend of king and lover and magician which hangs about that name stole back upon her mind. For the first time in all those years she tasted the word *King* itself with all its linked associations of battle, marriage, priesthood, mercy, and power. At that moment, as her eyes first rested on his face, Jane forgot who she was, and where, and her faint grudge against Grace Ironwood, and her more obscure grudge against Mark, and her childhood and her father's house. It was, of course, only for a flash. Next moment she was once more the ordinary social Jane, flushed and confused to find that she had been staring rudely (at least she hoped

---

[a] all] *BM*; Winter sunlight poured through the glass; apparently one was above the fog here. All *A*
☛ A's expansion here provides the information that the top of the hill is above the fog and brightly lit: this information is provided in B & M in the final paragraph of the previous chapter and the next paragraph but one after this—both excised from A.

[b] it] *BM*; It *A*

[c] , or […] believed,] *BA*; (or so she had believed) *M*

[d] . . . for] *BA*; —for *M*

① *like sunlight and gold. […] to engender life or destroy it.*

Again, Lewis surrounds Ransom with images of the Sun and of gold, the solar metal. See "Planetary Powers" in Introduction 4.

Jane's tendency to keep herself private and uncommitted is under attack now that she finally confronts the Pendragon: she is aware of this as she realises that some of the qualities of gold and sunlight may be dangerous. See also Preliminary Note C: "The Inner Ring".

Ransom is not the main protagonist in this novel, unlike in the previous two novels of the trilogy, and so is more difficult to relate to: Dorothy L. Sayers told Lewis, "I'm afraid I don't like Ransom quite so well since he took to being golden haired and interesting on a sofa" (*1944–1950* 177).

that rudeness would be the main impression produced) at a total stranger. But her world was unmade; she knew that. Anything might happen now.

"Thank you, Grace," the man was saying. "Is this Mrs. Studdock?"

And[a] the voice also seemed to be like sunlight and gold. Like gold not only as gold is beautiful but as it is heavy: like sunlight not only as it falls gently on English walls in autumn but as it beats down on the jungle or the desert to engender life or destroy it. And now it was addressing her. ①

"You[b] must forgive me for not getting up, Mrs. Studdock," it said. "My foot is hurt."

And Jane heard her own voice saying "Yes, sir," soft and chastened like Miss Ironwood's voice. She had meant to say, "Good morning, Mr. Fisher-King," in an easy tone that would have counteracted the absurdity of her behaviour on first entering the room. But the other was what actually came out of her mouth. Shortly after this she found herself seated before the Director. She was shaken: she was even shaking. She hoped intensely that she was not going to cry, or be unable to speak, or do anything silly. For her world was unmade: anything might happen now. If only the conversation were over[c] so that she could get out of that room without disgrace, and go away, not for good, but for a long time.

"Do you wish me to remain, sir?"[d] said Miss Ironwood.

"No, Grace," said the Director, "I don't think you need stay. Thank you."

"And now," thought Jane, "it's coming—it's coming—it's coming now." All the most intolerable questions he might ask, all the most extravagant things he might make her do, flashed through her mind in a fatuous medley. For all power of resistance seemed to have been drained away from her and she was left without protection.

II

For the[e] first few minutes after Grace Ironwood had left them alone, Jane hardly took in what the Director was saying. It was not that her attention wandered:[f] on the contrary, her attention was so fixed on him that it defeated itself. Every tone, every look (how could they have supposed she would think him *young*?),[g] every

[a] ¶And] *BM*; And *A*
[b] ¶"You] *BM*; "You *A*
[c] over] *B*; over!— *M*
[d] sir?"] *BA*; Sir?" *M*
[e] the] *BM*; a *A*
[f] wandered:] *BA*; wandered; *M*
[g] *young*?),] *B*; young?), *M*

gesture, was printing itself upon her memory:[a] and it was not until she found that he had ceased speaking and was apparently awaiting an answer[b] that she realised[c] she had taken in so little of what he had been saying.

"I—I beg your pardon," she said, wishing that she did not keep on turning red like a schoolgirl.

"I was saying," he answered, "that you have already done us the greatest possible service. We knew that one of the most dangerous attacks ever made upon the human race was coming very soon and in this island. We had an idea that Belbury might be connected with it. But we were not certain. We certainly did not know that Belbury was so important. That is why your information is so valuable. But in another way, it presents us with a difficulty. I mean a difficulty as far as you are concerned. We had hoped you would be able to join us—to become one of our army."

"Can I not, sir?"[d] said Jane.

"It is difficult," said the Director after a pause, "you[e] see, your husband is in Belbury."

Jane glanced up. It had been on the tip of her tongue to say[f] "Do you mean that Mark is in any danger?" But she had realised that anxiety about Mark did not, in fact, make any part of the complex emotions she was feeling, and that to reply thus would be hypocrisy. It was a sort of scruple she had not often felt before. Finally[g] she said, "What do you mean?"[h]

"Why," said the Director, "it would be hard for the same person to be the wife of an official in the N.I.C.E. and also a member of my company."

"You mean you couldn't trust me?"

"I mean nothing we need be afraid to speak of. I mean that, in the circumstances, you and I and your husband could not all be trusting one another."

Jane bit her lip in anger, not at the Director but at Mark. Why should he[i] and his affairs with the Feverstone man intrude themselves at such a moment as this?

"I must do what I think right, mustn't I?" she said softly. "I mean—if Mark—if my husband—is on the wrong side, I can't let that make any difference to what *I* do. Can I?"

---

[a] memory:] *B*; memory; *M*
[b] answer] *B*; answer, *M*
[c] realised] *B*; realized *M*
☛ An inadvertent American spelling by M's compositor (see *Webster's*, "Realize").
[d] sir?"] *BA*; Sir?" *M*
[e] , "you] *A*; . "You *BM*
[f] say] *BA*; say, *M*
[g] Finally] *B*; Finally, *M*
[h] mean?"] *BM*; mean?" she said. *A*
[i] he] *BM*; Mark *A*

"You are thinking about what is *right*?" said the Director. Jane started, and flushed. She had not, she realised, been thinking about that.

"Of course," said the Director, "things might come to such a point that you would be justified in coming here, even wholly against his will, even secretly. It depends on how close the danger is—the danger to us all, and to you personally."

"I thought the danger was right on top of us now . . .[a] from the way Mrs. Denniston talked."

"That is just the question," said the Director, with a smile. "I am not allowed to be *too* prudent. I am not allowed to use desperate remedies until desperate diseases are really apparent. Otherwise we become just like our enemies—breaking all the rules whenever we imagine that it might possibly do some vague good to humanity in the remote future."

"But will it do anyone any harm if I come here?" asked Jane.

He did not directly answer this. Presently he spoke again.

"It looks as if you will have to go back; at least for the present. You will, no doubt, be seeing your husband again fairly soon. I think you must make at least one effort to detach him from the N.I.C.E."

"But how can I, sir?"[b] said Jane. "What have I to say to him. He'd think it all nonsense. He wouldn't believe all that about an attack on the human race." As soon as she had said it she wondered, "Did that sound cunning?" then, more disconcertingly, "*Was* it cunning?"

"No," said the Director. "And you must not tell him. You must not mention me nor the company at all. We have put our lives in your hands. You must simply ask him to leave Belbury. You must put it on your own wishes. You are his wife."

"Mark never takes any notice of what I say," answered Jane. She and Mark each thought that of the other.

"Perhaps," said the Director, "you have never asked anything as you will be able to ask this. Do you not *want* to save him as well as yourself?"

Jane ignored this question. Now that the threat of expulsion from the house was imminent, she felt a kind of desperation. Heedless of that inner commentator[c] who had more than once during this conversation shown her her own words and wishes in such a novel light, she[d] began speaking rapidly.

"Don't send me back," she said. "I am all alone at home, with terrible dreams. It isn't as if Mark and I saw much of one another at the best of times. I am

---

[a] now . . .] *BA*; now— *M*
[b] sir?"] *BA*; Sir?" *M*
[c] commentator] *B*; commentator, *M*
[d] she] *BM*; She *A*

so unhappy. He won't care whether I come here or not. He'd only laugh at it all if he knew. Is it fair that my whole life should be spoiled just because he's got mixed up with some horrible people? You don't think a woman is to have no life of her own just because she's married?"

"Are you unhappy *now*?" said the Director.[a]

A dozen affirmatives died on Jane's lips as she looked up in answer to his question. Then suddenly[b], in a kind of deep calm, like the stillness at the centre of a whirlpool, she saw the truth, and ceased at last to think how her words might make him think of her, and answered, "No. But,"[c] she added after a short pause, "it will be worse now, if I go back."

"Will it?"

"I don't know. No. I suppose not." And for a little time Jane was hardly conscious of anything but peace and well-being, the comfort of her own body in the chair where she sat, and a sort of clear beauty in the colours and proportions of the room. But soon she began thinking to herself, "This is the end. In a moment he will send for the Ironwood woman to take you away." It seemed to her that her fate depended on what she said in the next minute.

"But is it really necessary?" she began. "I don't think I look on marriage quite as you do.[d] It seems to me extraordinary that everything should hang on what Mark says . . . about something he doesn't understand."

"Child," said the Director, "it is not a question of how you or I look on marriage but how my Masters look on it."

"Someone said they were very old fashioned. But——"[e]

"That was a joke. They are not old fashioned:[f] but they are very[g] very old."

"They would never think of finding out first whether Mark and I believed in their ideas of marriage?"

"Well—no," said the Director with a curious smile. "No. Quite definitely they[h] wouldn't think of doing that."

"And would it make no difference to them what a marriage was actually like . . . whether[i] it was a success? Whether the woman loved her husband?"

---

[a] Director. ¶] *A*; Director *BM*
[b] suddenly] *BM*; Suddenly *A*
[c] No. But,"] *A*; "No." ¶"But," *BM*
[d] do.] *BM*; do—— *A*
[e] But——"] *B*; But—" *M*
[f] fashioned:] *B*; fashioned; *M*
[g] very] *B*; very, *M*
[h] they] *BM*; They *A*
[i] . . . whether] *BA*; —whether *M*

① *you do not fail in obedience through lack of love, but have lost love because you never attempted obedience*

This does not mean that Jane should always have obeyed Mark, but that she has never obeyed Mark, nor attempted to, even when it would have been appropriate for her to submit to him. See following note.

② *the word obedience […] perilous, seductive, and ambiguous . . .*
exotic fragrance

While Jane's re-apprehension of the richness of the word "king" above (148 & n. 1) is presented as a return to innocence and receptivity, this experience suggests forbidden desires and an inappropriate receptivity, although it is hard to know what is happening until later events have clarified this one.

Jane's temptation is described as a sensory (olfactory) pleasure: Ransom's initial experience on Perelandra includes a "strange sense of excessive pleasure which seemed somehow to be communicated to him though all his senses at once" (ch. 3 40). Both the terrestrial and the celestial Perelandras begin by offering pleasure. But the pleasures Ransom experiences on Perelandra are innocent beyond any Earthly experience:

> for his first few days on Perelandra he was haunted, not by a feeling of guilt, but by surprise that he had no such feeling. There was an exuberance or prodigality of sweetness about the mere act of living which our race finds it difficult not to associate with forbidden and extravagant actions. (ch. 3 40)

By contrast, the adjectives "strange", "perilous", "seductive", "ambiguous" and "exotic" suggest danger and that the pleasure Jane is offered can be offered only by a perversion of the true Venus; this is confirmed by Ransom's command to stop.

In ch. 14 II Jane in a vision sees a giant, sensual woman attended by dwarfs who dishevel a marriage bed that she has been preparing. Ransom tells her that the woman is a kind of unbaptised Venus, a Tellurian analogue of the heavenly Perelandra (ch. 14 V). It is already clear that Jane is in danger of giving to Ransom the love she owes Mark, so it seems likely that it is this "unbaptised Venus" that tries to pervert Jane's understanding of "obedience" when Ransom is talking of obedience within marriage—obedience to Mark.

Jane[a] had not exactly intended to say this: much less to say it in the cheaply pathetic tone which, it now seemed to her, she had used. Hating herself, and fearing the Director's silence, she added, "But I suppose you will say I oughtn't to have told you that."[b]

"My dear child," said the Director, "you have been telling me that ever since your husband was mentioned."

"Does it make no difference?"

"I suppose," said the Director, "it would depend on how he lost your love."

Jane was silent. Though she could not tell the Director the truth, and indeed did not know it herself, yet when she tried to explore her inarticulate grievance against Mark, a novel sense of her own injustice and even of pity for her husband, arose in her mind. And her heart sank, for now it seemed to her that this conversation, to which she had vaguely looked for some sort of deliverance from all problems,[c] was in fact involving her in new ones.

"It was not his fault,"[d] she said at last. "I suppose our marriage was just a mistake."

The Director said nothing.

"What would you—what would the people you are talking of—say about a case like that?"

"I will tell you if you really want to know," said the Director.

"Please," said Jane reluctantly.

"They would say," he answered, "that you do not fail in obedience through lack of love, but have lost love because you never attempted obedience." ①

Something in Jane that would normally have reacted to such a remark with anger or laughter was banished to a remote distance (where she could still, but only just, hear its voice) by the fact that the word obedience[e]—but certainly not obedience to Mark—came over her, in that room and in that presence, like a strange oriental perfume, perilous, seductive, and ambiguous. . . .[f] ②

"Stop it!" said the Director[g] sharply.

Jane stared at him, open-mouthed.[h] There were a few moments of silence during which the exotic fragrance faded away. ②

---

[a] ¶Jane] *BM*; Jane *A*
[b] that."] *BM*; that," she added. *A*
[c] problems,] *B*; problems *M*
[d] "It was not his fault,"] *BM*; "I don't know," *A*
☛ A's reading summarises the preceding excised paragraph.
[e] obedience] *BA*; Obedience *M*
[f] . . . .] *BA*; . . . *M*
[g] Director] *BA*; Director, *M*
[h] open-mouthed.] *BM*; open-mouthed: *A*

① *I thought love meant equality*

Lewis seems to assume that the relationship of lovers is asymmetrical in most, probably all, aspects of a marriage. He argues that, sexually, a couple enacts a kind of pagan sacrament, inherently asymmetrical, where they put on the roles of Masculinity and Femininity (*Four Loves* 95), but that it does not follow from this asymmetry that "the husband is most likely to be dominant in the married life as a whole; the reverse is perhaps more probable" (*Four Loves* 96).

Lewis argues that the danger of the desire for social (rather than merely legal) equality was that it leads to the resentful suppression of excellence and superiority rather than a frank striving after achievement and fulfilment ("Screwtape Proposes a Toast" 18–25). Jane has been so intent on preserving her own life and identity that she has been in a competition rather than a marriage relationship with Mark.

② *blue-book*

Blue-bound Parliamentary or Privy Council reports (*NED*), which may be presumed sometimes to deal with questions of equality.

③ *Those who are […] Friendship would be ashamed. . . .*

In *The Four Loves* (1960), Lewis writes,

> in some ways nothing is less like a Friendship than a love-affair. Lovers are always talking to one another about their love; Friends hardly ever about their friendship. Lovers are normally face to face, absorbed in each other; Friends, side by side, absorbed in some common interest. (58)

"You were saying, my dear?" resumed the Director.

"I thought love meant equality," she said, "and free companionship." ①

"Ah, equality!" said the Director. "We must talk of that some other time. Yes;[a] we must all be guarded by equal rights from one another's greed, because we are fallen. Just as we must all wear clothes for the same reason. But the naked body should be there underneath the clothes, ripening for the day when we shall need them no longer. Equality is not the deepest thing, you know."

"I always thought that was just what it was. I thought it was in their souls that people were equal."

"You were mistaken," said he gravely; "that[b] is the last place where they are equal. Equality before the law, equality of incomes—that is very well. Equality guards life; it doesn't make it. It is medicine, not food. You might as well try to warm yourself with a blue-book." ②

"But surely in marriage . . . ?"

"Worse and worse," said the Director. "Courtship knows nothing of it; nor does fruition. What has free companionship to do with that? Those who are ③ enjoying something, or suffering something together, are companions. Those who enjoy or suffer one another, are not. Do you not know how bashful friendship is? Friends . . . comrades . . . do[c] not look *at* each other. Friendship would be ashamed. . . ."[d]

"I thought," said Jane and then stopped.

"I see," said the Director. "It is not your fault. They never warned you. No one has ever told you that obedience—humility—is an erotic necessity. You are putting equality just where it ought not to be. As to your coming here, that may admit of some doubt. For the present, I must send you back. You can come out and see us. In the meantime, talk to your husband and I will talk to my authorities."

"When will you be seeing them?"

"They come to me when they please. But we've been talking too solemnly about obedience all this time. I'd like to show you some of its drolleries. You are not[e] afraid of mice[f] are you?"

"Afraid of what?" said Jane in astonishment.

"Mice," said the Director.

"No," said Jane in a puzzled voice.

---

[a] Yes;] *BA*; Yes, *M*
[b] gravely; "that] B; gravely. "That *M* ; that *A*
[c] . . . comrades . . . do] *B*; —comrades—do *M*
[d] ashamed. . . ."] *B*; ashamed . . ." *M*
[e] not] *BM*; not—— *A*
[f] mice] *B*; mice, *M*

① *Curdie*

The Princess and Curdie (1883) by George MacDonald, sequel to *The Princess and the Goblin* (1872). Lewis much admired the holiness that he found in the fantasy writings of George MacDonald (1824–1905): see "Christian Mentors" in Introduction 3 (lxxxiii–lxxxv).

The King in *The Princess and Curdie* is being poisoned by his false counsellors until his daughter and Curdie manage to smuggle wholesome bread and wine to him. Ransom's simple diet thus has resonances of physical healthfulness; since bread and wine are also the food and drink of the Eucharist, it has resonances of spiritual healthfulness too.

② *Humans want crumbs removed; mice are anxious to remove them.*

In *Perelandra* Ransom finds that the animals in an unfallen world delight to serve humans, and the Lady is careful to give all an equal chance to serve (ch. 6 86–87). This is light-heartedly echoed by Ransom's arrangement with the mice.

The Director struck a little bell beside his sofa which was almost immediately answered by Mrs. Maggs.

"I think," said the Director, "I should like my lunch now, if you please. They will give you lunch downstairs, Mrs. Studdock—something more substantial than mine. But if you will sit with me while I eat and drink, I will show you some of the amenities of our house."

Mrs. Maggs presently returned with a tray, bearing a glass, a small flagon of red wine, and a roll of bread. She set it down on a table at the Director's side and left the room.

"You see," said the Director, "I live like the King in *Curdie*. It is a surprisingly ① pleasant diet." With these words he broke the bread and poured himself out a glass of wine.

"I never read the book you are speaking of," said Jane.

They talked of the book a little while the Director ate and drank; but presently he took up the plate and tipped the crumbs off onto[a] the floor. "Now, Mrs. Studdock," he said, "you shall see a diversion. But you must be perfectly still." With these words he took from his pocket a little silver whistle and blew a note on it. And Jane sat still till the room became filled with silence like a solid thing and there was first a scratching and then a rustling and presently she saw three plump mice working their passage across what was to them the thick undergrowth of the carpet, nosing this way and that so that if their course had been drawn it would have resembled that of a winding river, until they were so close that she could see the twinkling of their eyes and even the palpitation of their noses. In spite of what she had said she did not really care for mice in the neighbourhood of her feet and it was with an effort that she sat still. Thanks to this effort she saw mice for the first time as they really are—not as creeping things but as dainty quadrupeds, almost, when they sat up, like tiny kangaroos, with sensitive kid-gloved forepaws and transparent ears. With quick, inaudible movements they ranged to and fro till not a crumb was left on the floor. Then he blew a second time on his whistle and with a sudden whisk of tails all three of them were racing for home and in a few seconds had disappeared behind the coal box. The Director looked at her with laughter in his eyes. "It is impossible," thought Jane, "to regard him as old."[b] "There," he said, "a very simple adjustment. Humans want crumbs removed; mice are anxious to ② remove them. It ought never to have been a cause of war. But you see that

[a] onto] *M*; on to *B*
☛ M's "onto" conveys the movement and direction of tipping the crumbs: B's "on to" requires us to consider "tipping […] off on" as a meaningful phrasal verb (see Fowler "On to, onto, on").
[b] "It […] old."] *B*; ("It […] old"). *M*

① *The whole room was a tiny place, a mouse's hole, and it seemed to her to be tilted aslant*

As Ransom tells Jane, his Masters, the Oyéresu, are arriving. The effect of eldils when they appear on planets is something that Lewis unfolds throughout the trilogy.

In *Out of the Silent Planet*, Ransom says to Oyarsa-Malacandra, "But you, Oyarsa, are here on Malacandra, as I am"; he receives the reply, "But Malacandra, like all worlds, floats in heaven. And I am not 'here' altogether as you are, Ransom of Thulcandra. Creatures of your kind must drop out of heaven into a world; for us the worlds are places in heaven" (ch. 18 195). In the opening of *Perelandra*, Lewis, as both narrator of and character in the novel, explains:

> The eldila are very different from any planetary creatures. . . . Though they appear on planets and may even seem to our senses to be sometimes resident in them, the precise spatial location of an eldil at any moment presents great problems. They themselves regard space (or "Deep Heaven") as their true habitat, and the planets are to them not closed worlds but merely moving points—perhaps even interruptions—in what we know as the Solar System and they as the Field of Arbol. (ch. 1 7)

Then Lewis actually apprehends an eldil for the first time, in a dark house, and sees it as a rod of light, of no colour that he can remember, and notices

> its angle. It was not at right angles to the floor. . . . What one actually felt at the moment was that the column of light was vertical but the floor was not horizontal . . . The impression . . . was that this creature had reference to some horizontal, to some whole system of directions, based outside the Earth, and that its mere presence imposed some alien system on me and abolished the terrestrial horizontal. (ch. 1 18)

When Ransom meets Malacandra-Oyarsa and Perelandra-Oyarsa on Perelandra, they ask his advice about how they should appear in order to do honour to the King and the Lady of Perelandra. After some false starts, they adopt the appearance of giant human figures, which Ransom approves, but he finds that

> They were not standing quite vertically in relation to the floor of the valley: but to Ransom it appeared (as it had appeared to me on Earth when I saw one) that the eldils were vertical. It was the valley—it was the whole world of Perelandra—which was aslant. He remembered the words of Oyarsa long ago in Mars, "I am not *here* in the same way that you are *here*." It was borne in upon him that the creatures were really moving, though not moving in relation to him. This planet which inevitably seemed to him while he was in it an unmoving world—*the* world, in fact—was to them a thing moving through the heavens. In relation to their own celestial frame of reference they were rushing forward to keep abreast of the mountain valley. Had they stood still, they would have flashed past too quickly for him to see, doubly dropped behind by the planet's spin on its own axis and by its onward march around the Sun. (ch. 16 228)

In view of what is learnt in the earlier novels in the trilogy, Jane's sense here that the Earth underneath her is small and slanted should make it clear to the alert reader that Ransom's visitors are eldils. Later in the novel (ch. 22 I) Lewis describes this effect of the eldila one last time.

In *Miracles* (1947), in a discussion of the Ascension, Lewis again reminds readers that any point on the Earth's surface is always moving through space at great speed, noting, "Movement (in any direction but one) away from the position momentarily occupied by our moving Earth will certainly be to us movement 'upwards.' " (160).

② *these are my Masters*

"These" prove to be some or all of the Oyéresu, the tutelary spirits of the planets. When Ransom tells Merlin, "My Masters are the Oyéresu," (ch. 13 I) Merlin takes it for a password, and is shocked when he finds it simply and literally true (ch. 13 V).

obedience and rule are more like a dance than a drill—specially between man and woman where the roles are always changing."

"How huge we must seem to them," said Jane.

This inconsequent remark had a very curious cause. Hugeness was what she was thinking of and for one moment it had seemed she was thinking of her own hugeness in comparison with the mice. But almost at once this identification collapsed. She[a] was really thinking simply of hugeness. Or rather, she was not thinking of it. She was, in some strange fashion, experiencing it. Something intolerably big, something from Brobdingnag,[b] was pressing on her, was approaching, was almost in the room. She felt herself shrinking, suffocated, emptied of all power and virtue. She darted a glance at the Director which was really a cry for help, and that glance, in some inexplicable way, revealed him as being, like herself, a very small object. The whole room was a tiny place, a mouse's ① hole, and it seemed to her to be tilted aslant—as though the insupportable mass and splendour of this formless hugeness, in approaching, had knocked it askew. She heard the Director's voice.

"Quick," he said gently, "these are my Masters. You[c] must leave me now. ② This is no place for us small ones, but I am inured. Go!"

III

When Jane left the hilltop[d] village of St. Anne's and came down to the station she found that, even down there, the fog had begun to lift. Great windows had opened in it, and as the train carried her on it passed repeatedly through pools of afternoon sunlight.

During this[e] journey she[f] was so divided against herself that one might say there were three, if not four, Janes in the compartment.

The first was a Jane simply receptive of the Director, recalling every word and every look, and delighting in them—a Jane taken utterly off her guard, shaken out of the modest little outfit of contemporary ideas which had hitherto made her

---

[a] She] *BM*; ¶ He broke off sharply and a new look came into his eyes. At the same moment a new thought came into Jane's mind; an odd one. She *A*

[b] Brobdingnag,] *BA*; Brobdingnag *M*

[c] "these are my Masters. You] *A*; "you *BM*

☛ A's interpolation clarifies the situation, since the clues of hugeness and slantedness are unravelled only later in the novel (ch. 9 III & ch. 15 I). See also 212[a] & 402[b].

[d] hilltop] *B*; hill-top *M*

[e] this] *BM*; her homeward *A*

[f] she] *BM*; Jane *A*

① *in the sphere of Jove, […] clothed in shining garments.*

It might be thought that this is some residual effect on Jane because the Oyarsa of Jupiter-Glundandra is one of those visiting Ransom, but Ransom tells Merlin much later (ch. 13 V) that he has not yet seen the greater spirits. Presumably, then, Jane's being "in the sphere of Jove" (Jupiter) is the result of her encounter with the Pendragon, the King, just as she earlier felt the Solar attributes of wisdom, power and nobility when she approached Ransom. For Jupiter is the planet of Kingship, and Jupiter is the King, the best and greatest, of the planets (*Discarded Image* 105–06; see "Planetary Powers" in Introduction 4).

portion of wisdom, and swept away on the flood-tide[a] of an experience which she did not understand and could not control. For she was trying to control it; that was the function of the second Jane. This second Jane regarded the first with disgust, as the kind of woman, in fact, whom she had always particularly despised. Once, coming out of a cinema, she had heard a little shop girl say to her friend[b] "Oh, wasn't he lovely! If he'd looked at me the way he looked at her, I'd have followed him to the end of the world." A little, tawdry, made-up girl, sucking a peppermint. Whether the second Jane was right in equating the first Jane with that girl, may be questioned, but she did. And she found her intolerable. To have surrendered without terms at the mere voice and look of this stranger, to have abandoned (without noticing it) that prim little grasp on her own destiny, that perpetual reservation, which she thought essential to her status as a grown-up, integrated, intelligent person . . . the thing was utterly degrading, vulgar, uncivilised.

The third Jane was a new and unexpected visitant. Of the first there had been traces in girlhood, and the second was what Jane took to be her "real" or normal self. But the third one, this moral Jane, was one whose existence she had never suspected. Risen from some unknown region of grace or heredity, it uttered all sorts of things which Jane had often heard before but which had never, till that moment, seemed to be connected with real life. If it had simply told her that her feelings about the Director were wrong, she would not have been very surprised, and would have discounted it as the voice of tradition. But it did not. It kept on blaming[c] her for not having similar feelings about Mark. It kept on pressing into her mind those new feelings about Mark, feelings of guilt and pity, which she had first experienced in the Director's room. It was Mark who had made the fatal mistake; she must, must, must be "nice" to Mark. The Director obviously insisted on it. At the very moment when her mind was most filled with another man there arose, clouded with some undefined emotion, a resolution to give Mark much more than she had ever given him before, and a feeling that in so doing she would be really giving it to the Director. And this produced in her such a confusion of sensations that the whole inner debate became indistinct and flowed over into the larger experience of the fourth Jane, who was Jane herself and dominated all the rest at every moment without effort and even without choice.

This fourth and supreme Jane was simply in the state of joy. The other three had no power upon her, for she was in the sphere of Jove, amid light and music ① and festal pomp, brimmed with life and radiant in health, jocund and clothed in

[a] flood-tide] *BA*; flood tide *M*
[b] friend] *B*; friend, *M*
[c] blaming] *BM*; blamed *A*

① *She delighted in the occasional speech of the one wizened old man who shared her compartment*

Compare Jane's attitude here with that when she makes her first journey to St. Anne's (ch. 2 IV).

② *For beauty was made for others.*

Compare this with the words that Jane reads on her first visit to St. Anne's: "To desire the desiring of her own beauty is the vanity of Lilith, but to desire the enjoying of her own beauty the obedience of Eve" (ch. 3 III 62). Despite the temptation that assails her when Ransom speaks to her of erotic obedience, Jane has taken a step towards generosity and away from selfishness in her marriage to Mark.

In Spenserian terms, too, Jane has moved towards virtuous love, from beauty used for titillation—as in Acrasia's Bower (*Faerie Queene* II v 26–38, xii 50–87: *Poetical Works* 93–94, 136–39)—to beauty enjoyed by beloved and lover together—as in the Garden of Adonis (*Faerie Queene* III vi 29–51: *Poetical Works* 174–76). This is an important opposition in Lewis's *Allegory of Love* ch. 7 § 3; see also *Spenser's Images of Life* 45–52.

shining garments. She thought scarcely at all of the curious sensations which had immediately preceded the Director's dismissal of her and made that dismissal almost a relief. When she tried to, it immediately led her thoughts back to the Director himself. Whatever she tried to think of led back to the Director himself and, in him, to joy. She saw from the windows of the train the outlined beams of sunlight pouring over stubble or burnished woods and felt that they were like the notes of a trumpet. Her eyes rested on the rabbits and cows as they flitted by and she embraced them in heart with merry, holiday love. She delighted in the ① occasional speech of the one wizened old man who shared her compartment and saw, as never before, the beauty of his shrewd and sunny old mind, sweet as a nut and English as a chalk down. She reflected with surprise how long it was since music had played any part in her life, and resolved to listen to many chorales by Bach on the gramophone that evening. Or else—perhaps—she would read a great many Shakespeare sonnets. She rejoiced also in her hunger and thirst and decided that she would make herself buttered toast for tea—a great deal of buttered toast. And she rejoiced also in the consciousness of her own beauty; for she had the sensation—it may have been false in fact;[a] but it had nothing to do with vanity—that it was growing and expanding like a magic flower with every minute that passed. In such a mood it was only natural, after the old countryman had got out at Cure Hardy, to stand up and look at herself in the mirror which confronted her on the wall of the compartment. Certainly she was looking well: she was looking unusually well. And, once more, there was little vanity in this. For beauty was made ② for others. Her beauty belonged to the Director. It belonged to him so completely that he could even decide not to keep it for himself but to order that it be[b] given to another, by an act of obedience lower, and therefore higher, more unconditional and therefore more delighting, than if he had demanded it for himself.

As the train came into Edgestow Station Jane was just deciding that she would not try to get a 'bus. She would enjoy the walk up to Sandown. And then—what on earth was all this? The platform, usually almost deserted at this hour, was like a London platform on a bank holiday. "Here you are, mate!" cried a voice as she opened the door, and half a dozen men crowded into her carriage so roughly that for a moment she could not get out. She found difficulty in crossing the platform. People seemed to be going in all directions at once—angry, rough, and excited people. "Get back into the train, quick!" shouted someone. "Get out of the station, if you're not travelling," bawled another voice. "What the devil?" asked a

[a] fact;] *A*; fact, *BM*
[b] be] *BM*; to be *A*

third just beside her, and then a woman's voice said "Oh[a] dear, oh dear! Why don't they *stop* it!"[b] And from outside, beyond the station,[c] came a great roaring noise like the noise of a football crowd. There seemed to be a lot of unfamiliar lights about.

IV

Hours later, bruised, frightened, and tired to death, Jane found herself in a street she did not even know, surrounded by N.I.C.E. policemen and a few of their females, the Waips. Her course had been like that of a man trying to get home along the beach when the tide is coming in. She had been driven out of her natural route along Warwick Street—they were looting shops and making bonfires there—and forced to take a much wider circle, up by the Asylum, which would have brought her home in the end. Then even that wider circle had proved impracticable, for the same reason. She had been forced to try a still longer way round:[d] and each time the tide had got there before her. Finally she had seen Bone Lane, straight and empty and still, and apparently her last chance of getting home that night at all. A couple of N.I.C.E. police[e]—one seemed to meet them everywhere except where the rioting was most violent—had shouted out, "You can't go down there, miss."[f] But as they then turned their backs on her, and it was poorly lit, and because she was now desperate, Jane had made a bolt for it. They caught her. And that was how she found herself being taken into a lighted room and questioned by a uniformed woman with short grey hair, a square face, and an unlighted cheroot. The room was in disorder—as if a private house had been suddenly and roughly converted into a temporary police station. The woman with the cheroot took no particular interest until Jane had given her name. Then Miss Hardcastle looked her in the face for the first time, and[g] Jane felt quite a new sensation. She was already tired and frightened, but this was different. The face of the other woman affected her as the face of some men—fat men with small,[h] greedy eyes and strange,[i] disquieting smiles—had affected her when she was in her 'teens. It was dreadfully quiet and yet dreadfully interested in her. And Jane saw that

[a] said "Oh] *B*; said, "Oh *M*
[b] it!"] *M*; it! *B*
☛ Accidental omission of closing quotation mark by B's compositor.
[c] station,] A; station *BM*
[d] round:] *B*; round; *M*
[e] N.I.C.E. police] *BM*; the men *A*
[f] miss."] *BA*; Miss." *M*
[g] time, and] *BA*; time. And *M*
[h] small,] *A*; small *BM*
[i] strange,] *A*; strange *BM*

some quite new idea was dawning on the woman as she stared at her: some idea that the woman found attractive, and then tried to put aside, and then returned to dally with, and then finally, with a little sigh of contentment, accepted. Miss Hardcastle lit her cheroot and blew a cloud of smoke towards her. If Jane had known how seldom Miss Hardcastle actually smoked she would have been even more alarmed. The policemen and policewomen who surrounded her probably did. The whole atmosphere of the room became a little different.

"Jane Studdock," said the Fairy. "I know all about you, honey. You'll be the wife of my friend Mark." While she spoke she was writing something on a green form.[a] "*That's* all right," said Miss Hardcastle. "You'll be able to see Hubby again now. We'll take you out to Belbury to-night.[b] Now, just one question, dear. What were you doing down here at this time of night?"

"I had just come off a train."

"And where had you been, honey?"

Jane said nothing.

"You hadn't been getting up to mischief while Hubby was away, had you?"

"Will you please let me go," said Jane. "I want to get home. I am very tired and it's very late."

"But you're not going home," said Miss Hardcastle. "You're coming out to Belbury."

"My husband has said nothing about my joining him there."

Miss Hardcastle nodded. "That was one of his mistakes. But you're coming with *us*."

"What do you mean?"

"It's an arrest, honey," said Miss Hardcastle, holding out the piece of green paper on which she had been writing. It appeared to Jane as all official forms always appeared—a mass of compartments, some empty, some full of small print, some scrawled with signatures in pencil, and one bearing her own name; all meaningless.

"O-oh!"[c] screamed Jane suddenly, overcome with a sensation of nightmare, and made a dash for the door. Of course she never reached it. A moment later she came to her senses and found herself held by the two policewomen.

"What a naughty temper!" said Miss Hardcastle playfully. "But we'll put the nasty men outside, shall we?" She said something and the policemen removed themselves and shut the door behind them.[d]

---

[a] form.] *A*; form. ¶ *BM*
[b] to-night.] *B*; tonight. *M*
[c] "O-oh!"] *BA*; "Oh!" *M*
[d] . ¶] *A*; . *BM*

① *her short skirt*

During World War II women's clothing came to feature short straight skirts and padded shoulders, suitable for work or military service, and using less fabric than longer skirts and pleated or gathered designs. Most women would have been wearing skirts with hemlines about 40 centimetres from the ground (Phillips 129), which is short compared to fashions before the War, but still somewhere between the knee and mid-calf on most women. If Lewis means that Miss Hardcastle's skirt is short compared to these, it probably falls to the knee. In the early 1940s, this would be exceptionally short, and the effect exaggeratedly military, especially if she is wearing a military-style tunic and long boots.

As soon as they were gone Jane felt that a protection had been withdrawn from her.

"Well," said Miss Hardcastle, addressing the two uniformed girls. "Let's see. Quarter to one . . . and all going nicely. I think, Daisy, we can afford ourselves a little stand-easy. Be careful, Kitty,[a] make your top grip under her shoulder just a little tighter. That's right." While she was speaking Miss Hardcastle was undoing her belt, and when she had finished she removed her tunic and flung it on the sofa, revealing a huge torso, uncorseted (as Bill the Blizzard had complained), rank, floppy,[b] and thinly clad; such things as Rubens might have painted in delirium. Then she[c] resumed her seat, removed the cheroot from her mouth,[d] blew another cloud of smoke in Jane's direction, and addressed her.[e] "Where had you been by that train?" she said.

And Jane said nothing;[f] partly because she could not speak, and partly because she now knew beyond all doubt that these were the enemies of the human race whom the Director was fighting against,[g] and one must tell them nothing. She did not feel heroic in making this decision. The whole scene was becoming unreal to her:[h] and it was as if between sleeping and waking that she heard Miss Hardcastle say, "I think, Kitty dear, you and Daisy had better bring her round here." And it was still only half real when the[i] two women forced her round to the other side of the table, and she saw Miss Hardcastle sitting with her legs wide apart and settling herself in the chair as if in the saddle; long leather-clad legs projecting from beneath her short skirt. The women forced her on, with a skilled, quiet increase of pressure whenever she resisted, until she stood between Miss Hardcastle's feet:[j] whereupon Miss Hardcastle brought her feet together so that she had Jane's ankles pinioned between her own. This proximity to the ogress affected Jane with such horror that she had no fears left for what they might be going to do with her. And for what seemed an endless time Miss Hardcastle stared at her, smiling a little and blowing smoke in her face.

"Do you know," said Miss Hardcastle at last, "you're rather a pretty little

---

☛ Although the words on either side of this paragraph break are excised from A, the major parts of both paragraphs are retained, and I think the paragraph break should also be retained.

[a] Kitty,] *BA*; Kittie *M*

☛ This is the only instance of "Kittie" so spelled in M (or anywhere else).

[b] floppy,] *B*; floppy *M*

[c] she] *BM*; She *A*

[d] mouth,] *BM*; mouth, lit it, *A*

[e] her.] *A*; her. ¶ *BM*

[f] nothing;] *BA*; nothing, *M*

[g] against,] *A*; against *BM*

[h] her:] *B*; her; *M*

[i] the] *BM*; The *A*

[j] feet:] *BA*; feet, *M*

thing in your way."

There was another silence.

"Where had you been by that train?" said Miss Hardcastle.

And Jane stared as if her eyes would start out of her head and said nothing. Then suddenly Miss Hardcastle[a] leant forward and, after very carefully turning down the edge of Jane's dress, thrust the lighted end of the cheroot against her shoulder. After that there was another pause and another silence.

"Where had you been by that train?" said Miss Hardcastle.

How many times this happened Jane could never remember. But somehow or other there came a time when Miss Hardcastle was talking not to her but to one of the women.[b]

"What *are* you fussing about, Daisy?" she was saying.

"I was only saying, ma'am,[c] it was five past one."

"How time flies, doesn't it, Daisy? But what if it is? Aren't you comfortable, Daisy? You're not getting tired, holding a little bit of a thing like her?"

"No ma'am,[c] thank you. But you did say, ma'am,[c] you'd meet Captain O'Hara at one sharp."

"Captain O'Hara?" said Miss Hardcastle dreamily at first, and then louder, like one waking from a dream. Next moment she had jumped up and was putting on her tunic.[d] "Bless the girl!" she said,[e] "what a pair of blockheads you are! Why didn't you remind me before?"

"Well, ma'am,[f] I didn't exactly like to."

"Like to! What do you think you're there for?"

"You don't like us to interrupt, ma'am,[c] sometimes, when you're examining," said the girl sulkily.

"Don't argue!" shouted Miss Hardcastle, wheeling round and hitting her cheek a resounding blow with the palm of her hand. "Look sharp. Get the prisoner into the car. Don't wait to button up her dress, idiots. I'll be after you the moment I've dipped my face in cold water."

A few seconds later, pinioned between Daisy and Kitty, but still close to Miss Hardcastle (there seemed to be room for five in the back of the car), Jane found herself gliding through the darkness.[g]

---

[a] suddenly Miss Hardcastle] *BM*; Suddenly she *A*
[b] women.¶] *A*; women. *BM*
[c] ma'am,] *BA*; Ma'am, *M*
[d] tunic.] *B*; belt. *A*
[e] said,] *BM*; said. *A*
[f] ma'am,] *B*; Ma'am, *M*
[g] darkness. ¶] *A*; darkness. *BM*

① *Some of you people want a little humane remedial treatment yourselves.*

This threat shows and emphasises the cynical manipulation of language and perceptions in which Miss Hardcastle and the N.I.C.E. in general engage. See also Preliminary Note F: "Humane Remedial Treatment".

② *I've been in the Black and Tans and I've been in the B.U.F.*

The "Black and Tans" were an auxiliary force reinforcing the Royal Irish Constabulary against the I.R.A. in the 1920s. The British Union of Fascists (B.U.F) was founded in 1932, and was succeeded by the Union Movement in 1948.

"Better go through the town as little as possible, Joe," said Miss Hardcastle's voice. "It'll be pretty lively by now. Go on to the Asylum and work down those little streets at the back of the close." There seemed to be all sorts of strange noises and lights about. At places, too, there seemed to be a great many people. Then there came a moment when Jane found that the car had drawn up. "What the hell are you stopping for?" said Miss Hardcastle. For a second or two there was no answer from the driver except grunts and the noise of unsuccessful attempts to start up the engine. "What's the matter?"[a] repeated Miss Hardcastle sharply. "Don't know, ma'am,"[b] said the driver, still working away. "God!" said Miss Hardcastle, "can't you even look after a car? Some of you people want a little humane remedial treatment yourselves." The street in which they were was empty but, to judge by the noise, it was near some other street which was very full and very angry. The man got out, swearing under his breath, and opened the bonnet of the car. "Here," said Miss Hardcastle. "You two hop out. Look round for another car—anywhere within five minutes' walk—commandeer it. If you don't find one, be back here in ten minutes, whatever happens. Sharp." The two other policemen alighted, and disappeared at the double. Miss Hardcastle continued pouring abuse on the driver[c] and the driver continued working at the engine. The noise grew louder. Suddenly the driver straightened himself and turned his face (Jane saw the sweat shining on it in the lamplight) towards Miss Hardcastle. ①

"Look[d] here, miss,"[e] he said, "that's about enough, see? You keep a civil tongue in your head, or else come and mend the bloody car yourself if you're so bloody clever."

"Don't[f] you try taking that line with me, Joe," said Miss Hardcastle, "or you'll find me saying a little word about you to the ordinary police."

Blasphemy and Swearing

"Well,[g] suppose you do?" said Joe. "I'm beginning to think I might as well be in clink as in your bucking tea-party. 'Struth! I've been in the military police and I've been in the Black and Tans and I've been in the B.U.F., but they were all ruddy picnics to this lot. A man got some decent treatment there. And he had men over him, not a bloody lot of old women." ②

---

[a] matter?"] *M*; matter" *B*
☛ Accidental omission of closing punctuation by B's compositor.
[b] ma'am,"] *B*; Ma'am." *M*
[c] the driver] *BM*; him *A*
[d] ¶"Look] *A*; "Look *BM*
[e] miss,"] *BA*; Miss," *M*
[f] ¶"Don't] *A*; "Don't *BM*
☛ Continuing A's practice from the dialogue immediately preceding.
[g] ¶"Well,] *ed.*; "Well, *BM*
☛ See preceeding note.

"Yes,[a] Joe," said Miss Hardcastle, "but it wouldn't be clink for you this time if I passed the word to the ordinary cops."

"Oh, it wouldn't, wouldn't it? I might have a story or two to tell about yourself if it came to that."

"For the lord's sake[b] speak to him nicely, ma'am,"[c] wailed Kitty. "They're coming. We'll catch it proper." And in fact men were running,[d] by twos and threes, had begun to trickle into the street.

"Foot it, girls," said Miss Hardcastle. "Sharp's the word. This way."

Jane found herself hustled out of the car and hurried along between Daisy and Kitty. Miss Hardcastle walked[e] in front. The little party darted across the street and up an alley on the far side.

"Any of you know the way here?" asked Miss Hardcastle when they had walked a few steps.

"Don't know, I'm sure, ma'am,"[f] said Daisy.

"I'm a stranger here myself, ma'am,"[f] said Kitty.

"Nice useful lot I've got," said Miss Hardcastle. "Is there anything you do know?"

"It doesn't seem to go no farther, ma'am,"[f] said Kitty.

The alley had indeed turned out to be a dead end. Miss Hardcastle stood still for a moment. Unlike her subordinates, she did not seem to be frightened, but only pleasantly excited, and rather amused at the white faces and shaky voices of the girls.

"Well," she said, "this is what I call a night out. You're seeing life, Daisy, aren't you? I wonder are any of these houses empty? All locked anyway. Perhaps we'd best stay where we are."

The shouting in the street they had left had grown louder and they could see a confused mass of humanity surging vaguely in a westward[g] direction. Suddenly it became much louder still and angrier.

"They've caught Joe," said Miss Hardcastle. "If he can make himself heard

---

[a] ¶"Yes,] *ed.*; "Yes, *BM*
☛ See preceeding notes.
[b] sake] *BA*; sake, *M*
[c] ma'am,"] *BA*; Ma'am," *M*
[d] were running,] *A*; running, *BM*
☛ *Lectio difficilior.* A's reading gives a paratactic sentence which mimics the gradual increase in people present.
[e] walked] *BA*; moved *M*
☛ M's reading suggests that Miss Hardcastle started walking with Jane and her captors and then changed position to go in front of them: this is not impossible, but nothing requires it.
[f] ma'am,"] *B*; Ma'am," *M*
[g] westward] *B*; Westward *M*

he'll send them up here. Blast! This means losing the prisoner. Stop blubbering,[a] Daisy, you little fool. Quick. We must go down into the crowd separately. We've a very good chance of getting through. Keep your heads. Don't shoot, whatever you do. Try to get to Billingham at the cross-roads.[b] Ta-ta,[c] Babs! The quieter you keep,[d] the less likely we are to meet again."

Miss Hardcastle set off at once. Jane saw her stand for a few seconds on the fringes of the crowd and then disappear into it. The two girls hesitated and then followed. Jane sat down on a doorstep. The burns were painful where her dress had rubbed against them, but what chiefly troubled her was extreme weariness. She was also deadly cold and a little sick. But, above all,[e] tired; so tired she could drop asleep almost. . . .[f]

She shook herself. There was complete silence all about her: she was colder than she had ever been before,[g] and her limbs ached. "I believe I *have* been asleep," she thought. She rose, stretched herself, and walked down the desolate lamp-lit[h] alley into the larger street. It was quite empty except for one man in a railway uniform who said[i] "Good morning, miss"[j] as he walked smartly past. She stood for a moment, undecided,[k] and then began to walk slowly to her right. She put her hand in the pocket of the coat which Daisy and Kitty had flung round her before leaving the flat and found three-quarters[l] of a large slab of chocolate. She was ravenous and began munching it. Just as she finished she was overtaken by a car which drew up shortly after it had passed her.

"Are[m] you all right?" said a man, poking his head out.

"Were you hurt in the riot?" said a woman's voice from within.

"No . . . not much . . . I don't know," said Jane stupidly.

The man stared at her and then got out. "I say," he said, "You[n] don't look too good. Are you sure you're quite well?" Then he turned and spoke to the woman inside. It seemed so long to Jane since she had heard kind, or even sane, voices that she felt like crying. The unknown couple made her sit in the car and

---

[a] blubbering,] *B*; blubbering *M*
[b] cross-roads.] *A*; cross roads. *B* crossroads. *M*
☛ See note to 71[d].
[c] Ta-ta,] *MA*; Ta-ta *B*
[d] keep,] *A*; keep *BM*
[e] But, above all,] *BA*; But above all *M*
[f] almost. . . .] *BA*; almost . . . *M*
[g] before,] *A*; before *BM*
[h] lamp-lit] *B*; lamp lit *M*
[i] said] *B* said, *M*
[j] miss"] *B*; Miss," *M*
[k] , undecided,] *B*; undecided *M*
[l] three-quarters,] B; three quarters *M*
[m] ¶"Are] *A*; "Are *BM*
[n] "You] *BA*; "you *M*

gave her brandy and, after that,[a] sandwiches. Finally they asked if they could give her a lift home. Where was her home?

And[b] Jane, somewhat to her surprise, heard her own voice very sleepily answering, "The Manor, at St. Anne's."

"That's[c] fine," said the man.[d] "We[e]'re making for Birmingham and we have to pass it."

Then[f] Jane fell asleep at once again, and awoke only to find herself entering a lighted doorway and being received by a woman in pyjamas and an overcoat who turned out to be Mrs. Maggs. But she was too tired to remember how or where she got to bed.

---

[a] and, after that,] *B*; and after that *M*
[b] ¶And] *A*; And *BM*
[c] ¶"That's] *A* "That's *BM*
[d] man.] *A*; man, *BM*
[e] "We] *BA*; "we *M*
[f] ¶Then] *A*; Then

EIGHT

Moonlight at Belbury

I

"I AM the last person, Miss Hardcastle," said the Deputy Director, "to wish to interfere with your—er—private pleasures. But, really! . . ."[a] It was some hours before breakfast-time[b] and the old gentleman was fully dressed and unshaven.[c] But if he had been up all night, it was odd that he had let his fire out. He[d] and the Fairy were standing by a cold and blackened grate in his study.

"She can't be far away," said Fairy Hardcastle. "We'll pick her up some other time. It was well worth trying. If I'd got out of her where she'd been—and I should have got it if I'd had a few minutes longer—why, it might have turned out to be enemy headquarters. We might have rounded up the whole gang."

"It was hardly a suitable occasion——"[e] began Wither, but she interrupted him.

"We haven't so much time to waste, you know. You tell me Frost is already complaining that the woman's mind is less accessible. And according to your own metapsychology, or whatever you call the damned jargon, that[f] means she's falling under the influence of the other side. You told me that yourself! Where'll we be if you lose touch with her mind before I've got her body locked up here?"

"I am always, of course," said Wither, "most ready and—er—interested to hear expressions of your own opinions and would not for a moment deny that they are, in certain respects, of course, if not in all,[g] of a very real value. On the other hand, there are matters on which your—ah—necessarily specialised experience does not entirely qualify you.[h] . . . An arrest was not contemplated at this stage. The Head will, I fear, take the view that you have exceeded your authority. Trespassed beyond your proper sphere, Miss Hardcastle. I do not say that I necessarily agree

---

[a] really! . . ."] *BA*; really . . . !" *M*
[b] breakfast-time] *BA*; breakfast time *M*
[c] unshaven] *B*; unshaved *M*
☛ Either reading appears to be acceptable: although "shave" was originally a strong verb, the weak form has also been in use for a long time (*NED*, "Shave" *v.*). But all three witnesses have "clean-shaven" on page 50, so B's reading is preferable for the sake of consistency.
[d] He] *BM*; he *A*
[e] ——"] *A*; . . ." *BM*
[f] that] *BM*; That *A*
[g] , in […] all,] *BA*; (in […] all) *M*
[h] you.] *B*; you *M*

with him. But we must *all* agree that unauthorised[a] action——"[b]

"Oh, cut it out, Wither!" said the Fairy, seating herself on the side of the table. "Try that game on the Steeles and Stones. I know too much about it. It's no bloody good trying the elasticity stunt on me. It was a golden opportunity, running into that girl. If I hadn't taken it[c] you'd have talked about lack of initiative:[d] as I did, you talk about exceeding my authority. You can't frighten me. I know bloody well we're all for it if the N.I.C.E. fails:[e] and in the meantime[f] I'd like to see you do without me. We've got to get the girl, haven't we?"

"But not by an arrest. We have always deprecated anything like violence. If a mere arrest could have secured the—er—goodwill[g] and collaboration of Mrs. Studdock, we should hardly have embarrassed ourselves with the presence of her husband. And even supposing, merely, of course, for the purpose of argument,[h] that your action in arresting her could be justified, I am afraid your conduct of the affair after that is open to serious criticism."

Blasphemy and Swearing

"I couldn't tell that the bucking car was going to break down, could I?"

"I do not think," said Wither, "the Head could be induced to regard that as the only miscarriage. Once the slightest resistance on this woman's part developed, it was not, in my opinion, reasonable to expect success by the method you employed. As you are aware, I always deplore anything that is not perfectly humane:[i] but that is quite consistent with the position that if more drastic expedients have to be used then they must be used thoroughly. *Moderate* pain, such as any ordinary degree of endurance can resist, is always a mistake. It is no true kindness to the prisoner. The more scientific and, may I add, more civilised facilities for coercive examination which we have placed at your disposal here, might have been successful. I am not speaking officially, Miss Hardcastle, and I would not in any sense attempt to anticipate the reactions of our Head. But I should not be doing my duty if I failed to remind you that complaints from that quarter have already been made, though not, of course, minuted,[j] as to your tendency to allow a certain—er—emotional excitement in the disciplinary or remedial side of your work to distract you from the demands of policy."

---

[a] unauthorised] *B*; unauthorized *M*
☛ Inadvertent use of American spelling by M's compositor (see *Webster's*, "Authorize").
[b] ——"] *BA*; —" *M*
[c] it] *BA*; it, *M*
[d] initiative:] *B*; initiative; *M*
[e] fails:] *B*; fails; *M*
[f] meantime] *B*; meantime, *M*
[g] goodwill] *BA*; good will *M*
[h] , merely […] argument,] *B*; (merely […] argument) *M*
[i] humane:] *BA*; humane; *M*
[j] , though […] minuted,] *BA*; (though […] minuted) *M*

① *rubberoid*

A trade-name for some kind of rubber-substitute (*NED*, "Rubber" III 11).

"You won't find anyone can do a job like mine well unless they get some kick out of it," said the Fairy sulkily.[a]

The Deputy Director looked at his watch.

"Anyway," said the Fairy, "what does the Head want to see me *now* for? I've been on my feet the whole bloody night. I might be allowed a bath and some breakfast."

"The path of duty, Miss Hardcastle," said Wither, "can never be an easy one. You will not forget that punctuality is one of the points on which emphasis has sometimes been laid."

Miss Hardcastle got up and rubbed her face with her hands. "Well, I must have something to drink before I go in,"[b] she said.

Wither[c] held out his hands in deprecation.

"Come on, Wither. I *must*," said Miss Hardcastle.

"You don't think he'll smell it?" said Wither.

"I'm not going in without it, anyway," said she.

The old man unlocked his cupboard and gave her whisky.[d] Then the two left the study and went a long way, right over to the other side of the house where it joined on to[e] the actual Blood Transfusion Offices. It was all dark at this hour in the morning, and they went by the light of Miss Hardcastle's torch—on through carpeted and pictured passages into blank passages with rubberoid floors and distempered walls and then through a door they had to unlock, and then through another. All the way Miss Hardcastle's booted feet made a noise[f] but the slippered feet of the Deputy Director made no noise at all. At last they came to a place where the lights were on and there was a mixture of animal and chemical smells, and then to a door which was opened to them after they had parleyed through a speaking-tube.[g] Filostrato, wearing a white coat, confronted them in the doorway. ①

"Enter," said Filostrato. "He expect you for some time."

"Is it in a bad temper?" said Miss Hardcastle.

"Sh!" said Wither. "And in any case, my dear lady, I don't think that is quite the way in which one should speak of our Head. His sufferings—in his peculiar condition, you know——"[h]

---

[a] sulkily. ¶] *BM*; sulkily. *A*
[b] in,"] *BM*; in." *A*
[c] ¶Wither] *A*; Wither *BM*
[d] whisky.] *BA*; whiskey. *M*
☛ Inadvertent use of American spelling by M's compositor (see note 14[b]).
[e] on to] *BA*; onto *M*
[f] noise] *B*; noise, *M*
[g] speaking-tube.] *A*; speaking tube *BM*
[h] know——"] *B*; know—" *M*

① *"Be glad thou sleeper and thy sorrow offcast. I am the gate to all good adventure."*

Jane adapts lines from Chaucer's *Parlement of Foules* (131–32):

> This is the wey to al good adventure;
> Be glad, thou reder, and thy sorwe of-caste […]

"You are to go in at once," said Filostrato, "as soon as you have made yourselves ready."

"Stop! Half a moment," said Miss Hardcastle suddenly.

"What is it? Be quick, please," said Filostrato.

"I'm going to be sick."

"You cannot be sick here. Go back. I will give you some X54 at once."

"It's all right now," said Miss Hardcastle. "It was only momentary. It'd take more than this to upset me."

"Silence, please," said the Italian. "Do not attempt to open the second door until my assistant has shut the first one behind you. Do not speak more than you can help. Do not even say yes when you are given an order. The Head will assume your obedience. Do not make sudden movements, do not get too close, do not shout, and, above all, do not argue. Now!"[a]

II

Long after sunrise there came into Jane's sleeping mind a sensation which, had she put it into words, would have sung, "Be glad thou sleeper and thy sorrow offcast. I am the gate to all good adventure." And after she had waked[b] and found herself lying in pleasant languor[c] with winter morning sunlight falling across her bed, the mood continued. "He *must* let me stay here now," she thought. Sometime after this Mrs. Maggs came in and lit the fire and brought her[d] breakfast. Jane winced as she sat up in bed for some of the burns had stuck to the strange nightdress (rather too large for her) in which she found herself clad. There was an indefinable difference in Mrs. Maggs' behaviour. ①

"It's[e] ever so nice,[f] us both being here, isn't it, Mrs. Studdock?" she said, and somehow the tone seemed to imply a closer relation than Jane had envisaged between them. But she was too lazy to wonder much about it.

---

[a] Now!"] *BA*; Now." *M*

[b] waked] *B*; wakened *M*

☛ According to Fowler ("Awake, awaken, wake, waken"), "wake" is the least marked of the four possible verbs.

[c] languor] *B*; langour *M*

☛ Compositor's error in M.

[d] her] *B*; the *M*

☛ Maybe a compositor's error in M, influenced by "the fire": there is no justification for the definite article in respect of a breakfast that has not previously been mentioned.

[e] ¶"It's] *BA*; "It's *M*

☛ This group of paragraph breaks missing from M (here and for five of the next six paragraphs) is noted by Lake (54). It is not clear why they are missing.

[f] nice,] *BA*; nice *M*

① *the* Curdie *books […] Shakespeare's* Sonnets

We know Lewis's opinion of all the items on Jane's reading list. See the case study of George MacDonald in "Christian Mentors" (Introduction 3 lxxxiii–lxxxv) for more on Lewis's admiration for George MacDonald (1824–1905), author of *The Princess and the Goblin* (1872) and *The Princess and Curdie* (1883). Lewis enjoyed all Jane Austen's novels, but considered *Mansfield Park* (1814) "in places the best, yet as a whole the least satisfactory, of Jane Austen's works" and Fanny Price "insipid" ("Note on Jane Austen" 31). He describes Shakespeare's sonnets as "the very heart of the Golden Age, the highest and purest achievement of the Golden way of writing" (*English Literature* 502, cited in *C&G* 505).

Shortly[a] after breakfast came Miss Ironwood. She examined and dressed the burns, which were not serious.

"You[b] can get up in the afternoon,[c] if you like, Mrs. Studdock," she said. "I should just take a quiet day till then. What would you like to read? There's a pretty large library."

"I'd[d] like the *Curdie* books,[e] please," said Jane, "and *Mansfield Park* and Shakespeare's *Sonnets*." ①

Having[f] thus been provided with reading matter for several hours, she very comfortably went to sleep again.

When Mrs. Maggs looked in at about four o'clock to see if Jane was awake, Jane said she would like to get up.

"All[g] right, Mrs. Studdock," said Mrs. Maggs, "just as you like. I'll bring you along a nice cup of tea in a minute and then I'll get the bathroom ready for you. There's a bathroom next door almost, only I'll have to get that Mr. Bultitude out of it. He's that lazy,[h] and he *will* go in and sit there all day when it's cold weather."

As soon as Mrs. Maggs had gone,[i] however, Jane decided to get up. She felt that her social abilities were quite equal to dealing with the eccentric Mr. Bultitude,[j] and she did not want to waste any more time in bed. She had an idea that if once she were "up and about" all sorts of pleasant and interesting things might happen. Accordingly,[k] she put on her coat, took her towel, and proceeded to explore; and that was why Mrs. Maggs, coming upstairs with the tea[l] a moment later, heard a suppressed shriek and saw Jane emerge from the bathroom with a white face and slam the door behind her.

"Oh dear!" said Mrs. Maggs,[m] bursting into laughter. "I ought to have told you. Never mind. I'll soon have him out of that." She set the tea-tray[n] down on the

---

[a] ¶Shortly] *BA*; Shortly *M*
☛ See note to 170[e].
[b] ¶"You] *BA*; "You *M*
☛ See note to 170[e].
[c] afternoon,] *BA*; afternoon *M*
[d] ¶"I'd] *BA*; "I'd *M*
☛ See note to 170[e].
[e] the *Curdie* books,] *BM*; *Mansfield Park*, *A*
[f] ¶Having] *BA*; Having *M*
☛ See note to 170[e].
[g] ¶"All] *BA*; "All *M*
☛ See note to 170[e].
[h] lazy,] *BA*; lazy *M*
[i] gone,] *BA*; gone *M*
[j] Bultitude,] *B*; Bultitude *M*
[k] Accordingly,] *A*; Accordingly *BM*
[l] the tea] *BA*; tea *M*
[m] Maggs,] *BA*; Maggs *M*
[n] tea-tray] *BA*; tea tray *M*

① *Mr. Bultitude*

The bear is named for the father in F. Anstey's comic-fantasy school story *Vice Versa, or, A Lesson for Fathers* (1882). In *Surprised by Joy*, in the chapter on his first boarding school (tellingly titled "Concentration Camp"), Lewis writes of *Vice Versa*: "It is the only truthful school story in existence. The [magical] machinery […] really serves to bring out in their true colours […] the sensations which every boy had on passing from the warmth and softness and dignity of his home life to the privations, the raw and sordid ugliness, of school" (38–39).

He is not the first bear to be so named: Lewis and his brother used the name for a bear at Whipsnade Zoo at least as early as 1931 (W.H. Lewis, *Brothers and Friends* 88.)

② *if the Director wanted […] talk with them.*

According to ch. 4 III, this is a legacy of Ransom's time in Perelandra, the unfallen world where the humans are served and loved by the beasts, and where the humans hope "to make the nobler of the beasts so wise that they will become *hnau* [rational] and speak" (*Perelandra* ch. 17 243).

passage floor and turned to the bathroom.

"Is it safe?" asked Jane.

"Oh yes, he's *safe* alright,"[a] said Mrs. Maggs. "But he's not that easy to shift. Not for you or me, Mrs. Studdock. Of course if it was Miss Ironwood or the Director it would be another matter." With that she opened the bathroom door. Inside, sitting up on its hunkers beside the bath and occupying most of the room, was[b] a great, snuffly, wheezy, beady-eyed, loose-skinned, gor-bellied brown bear, which, after a great many reproaches, appeals, exhortations, pushes, and blows from Mrs. Maggs, heaved up its enormous bulk and came very slowly out into the passage.

"Why[c] don't you go out and take some exercise this[d] lovely afternoon, you great lazy thing?" said Mrs. Maggs. "You ought to be ashamed of yourself, sitting there getting in everyone's way. Don't be frightened, Mrs. Studdock. He's as tame as tame. He'll let you stroke him. Go on, Mr. Bultitude. Go and say how do you do to ① the lady."[e]

Jane extended a hesitant and unconvincing hand to touch the animal's back, but Mr. Bultitude was sulking,[f] and without a glance at Jane continued his slow walk along the passage to a point about ten yards away where he quite suddenly sat down. The tea things rattled at Jane's feet, and everyone[g] on the floor below must have known that Mr. Bultitude had sat down.

"Is it really safe to have a creature like that loose about the house?" said Jane.

"Mrs. Studdock," said Ivy Maggs with some solemnity, "if the Director ② wanted to have a tiger about the house it would be safe. That's the way he has with animals. There isn't a creature in the place that would go for another or for us once he's had his little talk with them. Just the same as he does with us. You'll see."

---

[a] alright,"] *BA*; all right," *M*

☛ Fowler is adamant that "all right" is the only admissible form and that "alright" is "seldom allowed by the compositors to appear in print" ("All right"). However, here the compositors of both copy-texts have used "alright" and there seems no good reason not to follow them.

[b] , was] *BA*; was *M*

[c] ¶"Why] *BM*; Why *A*

[d] this] *A*; that *BM*

☛ Correction by A of an error in B & M; noted by Lake (57). It is the kind of error that could conceivably remain after a sentence in indirect speech was recast as direct speech. That it is shared by B & M unfortunately proves nothing about what kind of documents they were composited from: it is the kind of error that typescript and carbon copy would share, but it is also the kind of error that would be perpetuated by a typist transcribing a manuscript or copying another typescript.

[e] lady."] *B*; lady!" *M*

[f] sulking,] *BA*; sulking *M*

[g] everyone] *BM*; Everyone *A*

① Mother *Dimble we all call her here*

In ch. 1 v we learnt that Mrs. Dimble had been "a kind of universal aunt" to Jane and all Dr. Dimble's female pupils, and that "one tended to call her Mother Dimble". Jane's attempt to prevent the charwoman Ivy Maggs from calling Mrs. Dimble "*Mother* Dimble" is simply snobbishness (see p. 186): ironically, although Jane objects to Ransom's headship of the community and his assumptions that she should defer to Mark as her husband, she finds the lack of hierarchy amongst all the others strange (see 177 n. 1).

"If you would put the tea in my room . . ." said Jane rather coldly,[a] and went into[b] the bathroom.[c]

"Yes," said Mrs. Maggs, standing in the open doorway, "you might have had your bath with Mr. Bultitude sitting there beside you—though he's that big and that human I don't somehow feel it would be Nice myself."

Jane made to shut the door.

"Well, I'll leave you *to* it, then," said Mrs. Maggs without moving.

"Thank you," said Jane.

"Sure you got everything you want?" said Mrs. Maggs.

"Quite sure," said Jane.

"Well, I'll be getting along, then," said Mrs. Maggs, turning as if to go, but almost instantly turning back again to say, "You'll[d] find us in the kitchen, I expect, Mother Dimble and me and the rest."

"Is Mrs. Dimble staying in the house?" asked Jane,[e] with a slight emphasis on the *Mrs.*

"*Mother* Dimble[f] we all call her here," said Mrs. Maggs. "And I'm sure she won't mind you doing the same. You'll get used to our ways in a day or two, *I'm* sure. It's a funny house really, when you come to think of it. Well, I'll be getting along, then. Don't take too long or your tea won't be worth drinking. But I dare say you'd better not have a bath, not with those nasty places on your chest. Got all you want?"

When Jane had washed and had tea and dressed herself with as much care as strange hairbrushes and a strange mirror allowed, she set out to look for the inhabited rooms. She passed down one long passage, through that silence which is not quite like any other in the world—the silence upstairs, in a big house, on a winter afternoon. Presently she came to a place where two passages met, and here the silence was broken by a faint irregular noise . . . *pob* . . . *pob* . . . *pob-pob.*[g] Looking to her right she saw the explanation, for where the passage ended in a bay window stood Mr. Bultitude, this time on his hind legs, meditatively boxing a punch-ball. Jane chose the way to her left and came to a gallery whence she looked down the staircase into a large hall where daylight mixed with firelight. On the same level with herself, but only to be reached by descending to a landing and ascending again,

---

[a] coldly,] *BA*; coldly *M*
[b] into] *BM*; towards *A*
[c] bathroom. ¶] *BA*; bathroom. *M*
[d] "You'll] *B*; "you'll *M* "you'll *A*
[e] Jane,] *BM*; Jane. *A*
☛ An obviously misplaced full-stop in A.
[f] Dimble] *BA*; Dimble, *M*
[g] . . . *pob* . . . *pob* . . . *pob-pob.*] *B*; —*pob-pob-pob-pob. M*

were shadowy regions which she recognised as leading to the Director's room. A sort of solemnity seemed to her to emanate from them and she went down into the hall almost on tiptoes, and now, for the first time, her memory of that last and curious experience in the blue room came back to her with a weight which even the thought of the Director himself could not counteract. When she reached the hall she saw at once where the back premises of the house must lie—down two steps and along a paved passage, past a stuffed pike in a glass case and then past a grandfather clock, and then, guided by voices and other sounds, to the kitchen itself.

A wide, open hearth glowing with burning wood lit up the comfortable form of Mrs. Dimble,[a] who was seated in a kitchen chair at one side of it, apparently, from the basin in her lap and other indications on a table beside her, engaged in preparing vegetables. Mrs. Maggs and Camilla were doing something at a stove—the hearth was apparently not used for cooking—and in a doorway,[b] which doubtless led to the scullery,[c] a tall grizzle-headed man,[d] who wore gum-boots and seemed to have just come from the garden, was drying his hands.

"Come in, Jane," said Mother Dimble, cordially.[e] "We're not expecting you to do any work to-day.[f] Come and sit on the other side of the fire and talk to me. This is Mr. MacPhee—who has no right to be here, but he'd better be introduced to you."

Mr. MacPhee, having finished the drying process and carefully hung the towel behind the door, advanced rather ceremoniously and shook hands with Jane. His own hand was very large and coarse in texture,[g] and he had a shrewd hard-featured face.

"I am very glad to see you, Mrs. Studdock," he said,[h] in what Jane took to be a Scotch accent, though it was really that of an Ulsterman.

"Don't believe a word he says, Jane," said Mother Dimble. "He's your prime enemy in this house.[i] He doesn't believe in your dreams."

---

[a] Dimble,] *A*; Dimble *BM*
[b] doorway,] *BA*; doorway *M*
[c] scullery,] *BA*; scullery *M*
[d] man,] *BA*; man *M*
[e] Dimble, cordially.] *M*; Dimble. *BA*
☛ There seems no good reason why "cordially" should have been deliberately excised from B (or added by M), so I assume it may have been accidentally dropped from B.
[f] to-day.] *BA*; today. *M*
[g] texture,] *BA*; texture *M*
[h] said,] *A*; said *BM*
[i] house.] *B*; House. *M*

① *I have* no *opinions—on any subject in the world. I state the facts and exhibit the implications.*
Lewis admitted to only two real-life originals for any of his fictional characters (Green & Hooper 326): his gardener was the model for the Marsh-wiggle Puddleglum in *The Silver Chair*, and his private tutor William T. Kirkpatrick was the model for MacPhee, from whom MacPhee gets his fondness for gardening and his logical outlook (*Surprised by Joy* 110–13). Lewis gives "I have no *opinions* on any subject whatsoever" (112) as one of Kirkpatrick's typical utterances.

Like Camilla, MacPhee appears in the abortive *The Dark Tower*, but, unlike Camilla, who is very much nicer than her *Dark Tower* counterpart, MacPhee appears in both works as the "sceptic" (ch. 9 I; *Dark Tower* ch. 1 17) who can be relied on to counter enthusiasm and emotion with logic and scepticism.

"Mrs. Dimble,"[a] said MacPhee, "I have repeatedly explained to you the distinction between a personal feeling of confidence and a logical satisfaction of the claims of evidence. The one is a psychological event——[b]"

"And the other a perpetual nuisance," said Mrs. Dimble.

"Never heed[c] her, Mrs. Studdock," said MacPhee. "I am, as I was saying, very glad to welcome you among us. The fact that I have found it my duty on several occasions to point out that no *experimentum crucis* has yet confirmed the hypothesis that your dreams are veridical, has no connection in the world with my personal attitude."

"Of course," said Jane vaguely, and a little confused. "I'm sure you have a right to your own opinions."

All the women laughed as MacPhee in a somewhat louder tone replied, "Mrs. Studdock, I have *no* opinions—on any subject in the world. I state the facts and ① exhibit the implications. If everyone indulged in fewer opinions" (he pronounced the word with emphatic disgust)[d] "there'd be less silly talking and printing in the world."

"I know who talks most in this house," said Mrs. Maggs, somewhat to Jane's surprise.[e]

The Ulsterman eyed the last speaker with an unaltered face while producing a small pewter box from his pocket and helping himself to a pinch of snuff.

"What are you waiting for, anyway?" said Mrs. Maggs. "Women's day in the kitchen to-day."[f]

"I was wondering," said MacPhee, "whether you had a cup of tea saved for me."

"And why didn't you come in at the right time, then?" said Mrs. Maggs. Jane noticed that she talked to him much as she had talked to the bear.

"I was busy," said the other,[g] seating himself at one end of the table; and added after a pause, "trenching celery. The wee woman does the best she can, but she has a poor notion of what needs doing in a garden."

"What is 'women's day' in the kitchen?" asked Jane of Mother Dimble.

"There are no servants here," said Mother Dimble, "and we all do the work. The women do it one day and the men the next. . . . What? . . . No,[h] it's a very

---

[a] Dimble,"] *BA*; Dimble!" *M*
[b] event——] *B*; event— *M*
[c] heed] *B*; mind *M*
[d] disgust)] *BA*; disgust), *M*
[e] surprise.¶] *BA*; surprise. *M*
[f] to-day."] *BA*; today." *M*
[g] other,] *BA*; other *M*
[h] . . . What? . . . No,] *BA*; What? No, *M*

sensible arrangement. The Director's idea is that men and women can't do housework together without quarrelling. There's something in it. Of course it doesn't do to look at the cups too closely on the men's day, but on the whole we get along pretty well."

"But why should they quarrel?" asked Jane.

"Different methods, my dear. Men can't *help* in a job, you know. They can be induced to do it: not to help while you're doing it. At least[a] it makes them grumpy."

"The cardinal difficulty," said MacPhee, "in collaboration between the sexes is that women speak a language without nouns. If two men are doing a bit of work[b] one will say to the other, 'Put this bowl inside the bigger bowl which you'll find on the top shelf of the green cupboard.' The female for this is,[c] 'Put that in the other one in there.' And then if you ask them[d] 'in where?' they say[e] 'in *there*[f] of course.' There is consequently[g] a phatic hiatus." He pronounced this so as to rhyme with "get *at* us."

"There's your tea now," said Ivy Maggs, "and I'll go and get you a piece of cake, which is more than you deserve. And when you've had it you can go upstairs and talk about nouns for the rest of the evening."

"Not *about* nouns: *by means of* nouns," said MacPhee; but Mrs. Maggs[h] had already left the room.

Jane[i] took advantage of this to say to Mother Dimble in a lower voice, "Mrs. Maggs seems to make herself very much at home here."

"My dear, she *is* at home here."

"As a maid, you mean?"

"Well, no more than anyone else. She's here chiefly because her house has been taken from her. She had nowhere else to go."

"You mean she is . . . one[j] of the Director's[k] charities."

"Certainly that. Why do you ask?"

---

[a] least] *B*; least, *M*
[b] work] *BA*; work, *M*
[c] is,] *MA*; is *B*
[d] them] *B*; them, *M*
[e] say] *B*; say, *M*
[f] *there*] *B*; *there*, *M*
[g] consequently] *MA*; consequent y *B*
☛ A printing error in B: the missing letter and blank gap indicate worn type with faulty dressing.
[h] Maggs] *BM*; Ivy Maggs, and *A*
[i] ¶Jane] *A*; Jane *BM*
[j] . . . one] *BA*; —one *M*
[k] Director's] *BM*; director's *A*
☛ A's lower case here is anomalous: A has "Director" with a capital everywhere else, as do the other witnesses.

① *equality […] democratic lines*

In a short article entitled "Equality" Lewis begins, "I am a democrat because I believe in the Fall of Man." He continues that equality is a necessary safeguard amongst fallen creatures but irrelevant to the unfallen, just as medicine is necessary for the sick but not the healthy. He affirms that hierarchy is a spiritual truth and that human nature requires it: "Where men are forbidden to honour a king they honour millionaires, athletes, or film-stars instead: even famous prostitutes or gangsters. For spiritual nature, like bodily nature, will be served; deny it food and it will gobble poison." Lewis concludes that legal and economic equality should not render us personally and spiritually unfit for hierarchy.

"Well . . . I[a] don't know. It *did* seem a little odd that she should call you Mother Dimble. I hope I'm not being snobbish . . ."

"You're forgetting that Cecil and I are another of the Director's charities."

"Isn't that rather playing on words?"

"Not a bit. Ivy and Cecil and I are all here because we were turned out of our homes. At least Ivy and I are. It may be rather different for Cecil."

"And does the Director know that Mrs. Maggs talks to everyone like that?"

"My dear child, don't ask me what the Director knows."

"I think what's puzzling me is that when I saw him he said something about equality not being the important thing. But his own house seems to be run on . . . well[b] on very democratic lines indeed."

"I never attempt to understand what he says on that subject," said Mother Dimble. "He's usually talking either about spiritual ranks—and you were never goose enough to think yourself *spiritually* superior to Ivy—or else about marriage."

"Did you understand his views on marriage?"

"My dear, the Director is a very wise man. But he *is* a man, after all, and an unmarried man at that. Some of what he says, or what the Masters say, about marriage does seem to me to be a lot of fuss about something so simple and natural that it oughtn't to need saying at all. But I suppose there are young women nowadays[c] who need to be told it."

"You haven't got much use for young women who do, I see."

"Well, perhaps I'm unfair. Things were easier for us. We were brought up on stories with happy endings and on the Prayer Book. We always intended to love, honour,[d] and obey, and we had figures and we wore petticoats and we liked waltzes . . ."

"Waltzes are ever so nice," said Mrs. Maggs—who[e] had just returned and given MacPhee his slab of cake—[f]"so old-fashioned."[g]

At that moment the door opened and a voice from behind it said, "Well, go in then, if you're going." Thus admonished, a very fine jackdaw hopped into the room, followed, firstly,[h] by Mr. Bultitude and, secondly,[i] by Arthur Denniston.

---

[a] . . . I] *B*; —I *M*
[b] . . . well] *B*; —well, *M*
[c] nowadays] *B*; now-a-days *M*
[d] honour,] *B*; honour *M*
[e] —who] *B*; who *M*
[f] cake—] *B*; cake, *M*
[g] old-fashioned."] *B*; old fashioned." *M*
[h] , firstly,] *A*; firstly *BM*
[i] , secondly,] *A*; secondly *BM*

"I've told you before, Arthur," said Ivy Maggs, "not to bring that bear in here when we're cooking the dinner." While she was speaking Mr. Bultitude, who was apparently himself uncertain of his welcome, walked across the room in what he believed (erroneously) to be an unobtrusive manner and sat down behind Mrs. Dimble's chair.

"Dr. Dimble's just come back, Mother Dimble," said Denniston. "But he's had to go straight to the Blue Room. And the Director wants you to go to him,[a] too, MacPhee."

III

Mark sat down to lunch that day in good spirits. Everyone reported that the riot had gone off most satisfactorily,[b] and he had enjoyed reading his own accounts of it in the morning papers. He enjoyed it even more when he heard Steele and Cosser talking about it in a way which showed that they did not even know how it had been engineered, much less who had written it up in the newspapers. And he had enjoyed his[c] morning,[d] too.[e] It had involved a conversation with Frost, the Fairy, and Wither himself, about the future of Edgestow. All were agreed that the Government[f] would follow the almost unanimous opinion of the Nation[g] (as expressed in the newspapers) and put it temporarily under the control of the Institutional Police. An emergency governor of Edgestow must be appointed. Feverstone was the obvious man. As a member of Parliament he represented the Nation, as a Fellow of Bracton he represented the University, as a member of the Institute he represented the Institute. All the competing claims that might otherwise have come into collision were reconciled in the person of Lord Feverstone; the articles on this subject which Mark was to write that afternoon would almost write themselves.[h] But that had not been all. As the conversation proceeded it had become clear that there was really a double object in getting this invidious post for Feverstone. When the time came, and the local unpopularity of the N.I.C.E. rose to its height, he could be sacrificed. This, of course,[i] was not said in so many words, but Mark realised perfectly clearly, that even Feverstone was no longer quite in the

[a] him,] *BA*; him *M*
[b] satisfactorily,] *BA*; satisfactorily *M*
[c] his] *BM*; His *A*
[d] morning,] *BA*; morning *M*
[e] too.] *BM*; too, *A*
[f] Government] *A*; government *BM*
[g] Nation] *A*; nation *BM*
[h] themselves.] *A*; themselves! *BM*
[i] this, of course,] *B*; this of course *M*

Inner Ring. The Fairy said that old Dick was a mere politician at heart and always would be. Wither, deeply sighing, confessed that his talents had been perhaps more useful at an earlier stage of the movement than they were likely to be in the period on which they were now entering. There was in Mark's mind no plan for undermining Feverstone nor even a fully formed wish that he should be undermined:[a] but the whole atmosphere of the discussion became somehow more agreeable to him as he began to understand the real situation. He was also pleased that he had[b] (as he would have put it) "got to know" Frost. He knew by experience that there is in almost every organisation[c] some quiet, inconspicuous person whom the small fry suppose to be of no importance but who is really one of the mainsprings of the whole machine. Even to recognise[d] such people for what they are shows that one has made considerable progress. There was, to be sure, a cold fish-like quality about Frost which Mark did not like and something even repulsive about the regularity of his features. But every word he spoke (he did not speak many) went to the root of what was being discussed, and Mark found it delightful to speak to him. The[e] pleasures of conversation were coming, for Mark, to have less and less connection with his spontaneous liking or disliking of the people he talked to. He was aware of this change[f]—which had begun when he joined the Progressive Element in College—and welcomed it as a sign of maturity.

The Inner Ring

Wither had thawed in a most encouraging manner. At the end of the conversation he had taken Mark aside, spoken vaguely but paternally of the great work he was doing, and finally asked for[g] his wife. The D.D. hoped there was no truth in the rumour which had reached him that she was suffering from—er—some nervous disorder. "Who the devil has been telling him that?" thought Mark. "Because," said Wither, "it had occurred to me, in view of the great pressure of work which rests on you at present and the difficulty, therefore, of your being at home as much as we should all (for your sake) wish, that in *your* case the Institute might be induced . . . I am speaking in a quite informal way . . . that we should all be delighted to welcome Mrs. Studdock here."

Until the D.D. had said this Mark had not realised that there was nothing he would dislike so much as having Jane at Belbury. There were so many things that

---

[a] undermined:] *B*; undermined; *M*
[b] had] *BM*; And Mark had *A*
[c] organisation] *BA*; organization *M*
☛ Inadvertent American spelling by M's compositor (see *Webster's*).
[d] recognise] *BA*; recognize *M*
☛ Inadvertent American spelling by M's compositor (see *Webster's*).
[e] The] *BM*; the *A*
[f] change] *BM*; change, *A*
[g] for] *A*; after *BM*
☛ A's change makes it clearer that Wither is *demanding* Jane, while pretending concern.

Jane would not understand: not only the pretty heavy drinking which was becoming his habit but—oh, everything from morning to night. For it is only justice both to Mark and to Jane to record that he would have found it impossible to conduct in her hearing any one of the hundred conversations which his life at Belbury involved. Her mere presence would have made all the laughter of the Inner Ring sound metallic, unreal; and what he now regarded as common prudence would seem to her, and through her to himself, mere flattery, back-biting, and toad eating.[a] Jane in the middle of Belbury would turn the whole of Belbury into a vast vulgarity, flashy and yet furtive. His mind sickened at the thought of trying to teach Jane that she must help to keep Wither in a good temper and must play up to Fairy Hardcastle. He excused himself vaguely to the D.D., with profuse thanks, and got away as quickly as he could.

That afternoon, while he was having tea, Fairy Hardcastle came and leaned over the back of his chair and said in his ear:[b]

"*You've* torn it, Studdock."

"What's the matter now, Fairy?" said he.

"I can't make out what's the matter with *you*, young Studdock, and that's a fact. Have you made up your mind to annoy the Old Man? Because it's a dangerous game, you know."

"What on earth are you talking about?"

"Well, here we've all been working on your behalf and soothing him down, and[c] this morning we thought we'd finally succeeded. He was talking about giving you the appointment originally intended for you and waiving the probationary period. Not a cloud in the sky: and then you have five minutes' chat with him—barely five minutes, in fact—and in that time you've managed to undo it all. I begin to think you're mental."

"What the devil's wrong with him this time?"

"Well *you* ought to know! Didn't he say something about bringing your wife here?"

"Yes he did. What about it?"

"And what did you say?"

"I said not to bother about it . . . and,[d] of course, thanked him very much and all that."

---

[a] toad eating] *BA*; toad-eating *M*
[b] ear:] *BA*; ear, *M*
[c] , and] *A*; and *BM*
[d] it . . . and,] *BA*; it—and, *M*

① *The Italian […] fine beech trees in the grounds.*

In the work of both Lewis and Tolkien the felling of living trees is done only by evil characters. In Lewis's *The Last Battle* the first act of the false Aslan is the felling of trees (ch. 2 20–21). In Tolkien's *Lord of the Rings* living trees are felled by Orcs (III 85, 98, 101) and those under the malicious influence of Saruman the renegade wizard (VI 147, 157, 162, 171). Conversely, a love of, even reverence for, trees is characteristic of the Elves, especially those of Lothlòrien who live in and among trees (II ch. 6–7); the endorsement of Aragorn's rightful kingship is that he finds the living scion of the White Tree of Gondor, and when it is planted, the dead tree it replaces is "uprooted, but with reverence; and […] laid […] to rest" (VI 105–06); Sam's work in re-building the Shire includes planting saplings to replace "specially beautiful or beloved trees" (VI 171).

② *the civilised tree in Persia. […] it would even deceive.*

The perfected "civilised tree" Filostrato hopes to introduce is reminiscent of the fake ivy around the fountain in Acrasia's Bower of Bliss in Spenser's *Faerie Queene* II xii 53–87 (*Poetical Works* 1–413):

> And ouer all, of purest gold was spred,
> A trayle of yuie in his natiue hew:
> For the rich mettall was so coloured,
> That wight, who did not well auis'd it vew,
> Would surely deeme it to be yuie trew
> (II xii 61 1–5)

Fake vegetation masquerading as real is a danger sign for Lewis (and in his writings): he interprets the fake ivy as indicative of the artificial and deceitful nature of the pleasurable temptations Acrasia offers (*Allegory of Love* ch. 3 324–29; *Spenser's Images of Life* 45–46).

The Fairy whistled.[a] "Don't you see, honey," she said, gently rapping Mark's scalp with her knuckles, "that you could hardly have made a worse bloomer? It was a most terrific concession for him to make. He's never done it to anyone else. You might have known he'd be offended if you cold-shouldered him. He's burbling away now about lack of confidence. Says he's 'hurt':[b] which means that somebody else soon will be! He takes your refusal as a sign that you are not really 'settled' here."

"But that is sheer madness. I mean . . ."

"Why the blazes couldn't you tell him you'd have your wife here?"

"Isn't that my own business?"

"Don't you want to have her? You're not very polite to little wifie, Studdock. And they tell me she's a damned pretty girl."

At that moment the form of Wither, slowly sauntering in their direction, became apparent to both,[c] and the conversation ended.

At dinner he sat next to Filostrato. There were no other members of the inner circle within earshot. The Italian was in good spirits and talkative. He had just ① given orders for the cutting down of some fine beech trees in the grounds.

"Why have you done that, Professor?" said a Mr. Winter who sat opposite. "I shouldn't have thought they did much harm at that distance from the house. I'm rather fond of trees myself."

"Oh yes, yes," replied Filostrato. "The pretty trees, the garden trees. But not the savages. I put the rose in my garden, but not the briar.[d] The forest tree is a weed. But I tell you I have seen the civilised tree in Persia. It was a French *attaché* [e] ② who had it,[f] because he was in a place where trees do not grow. It was made of metal. A poor, crude thing. But how if it were perfected? Light, made of aluminium. So natural, it would even deceive."

"It would hardly be the same as a real tree," said Winter.

"But consider the advantages! You get tired of him in one place: two workmen carry him somewhere else: wherever you please. It never dies. No leaves to fall, no twigs, no birds building nests, no muck and mess."

"I suppose one or two, as curiosities, might be rather amusing."

---

[a] ¶The Fairy whistled.] *A*; The Fairy whistled. ¶ *BM*
☛ A's change keeps all that the Fairy says and does in this turn of the dialogue in one paragraph.
[b] 'hurt':] *MB*; 'hurt'; *A*
[c] both,] *A*; both *BM*
[d] briar.] *B*; brier. *M*
[e] *attaché*] *B*; *attachè M*
☛ Mis-spelling by M's compositor.
[f] it,] *B*; it *M*

"Why one or two? At present, I allow, we must have forest[a] for the atmosphere. Presently we find a chemical substitute. And then, why *any* natural trees? I foresee nothing but the *art* tree all over the earth. In fact, we *clean* the planet."

"Do you mean," put in a man called Gould, "that we are to have no vegetation at all?"

"Exactly. You shave your face: even, in the English fashion, you shave him every day. One day we shave the planet."

"I wonder what the birds will make of it?"

"I would not have any birds either. On the art tree I would have the art birds all singing when you press a switch inside the house. When you are tired of the singing you switch them off. Consider again the improvement. No feathers dropped about, no nests, no eggs, no dirt."

"It sounds," said Mark, "like abolishing pretty well all organic life."

"And why not? It is simple hygiene. Listen, my friends. If you pick up some rotten thing and find this organic life crawling over it, do you not say, 'Oh, the horrid thing. It is alive,' and then drop it?"

"Go on," said Winter.

"And you, especially you English, are you not hostile to any organic life except your own on your own body? Rather than permit it you have invented the daily bath."

"That's true."

"And what do you call dirty dirt? Is it not precisely the organic? Minerals are clean dirt. But the real filth is what comes from organisms—sweat, spittles, excretions. Is not your whole idea of purity one huge example? The impure and the organic are interchangeable conceptions."

"What are you driving at, Professor?" said Gould. "After all we are organisms ourselves."

"I grant it. That is the point. In us organic life has produced Mind. It has done its work. After that we want no more of it. We do not want the world any longer furred over with organic life, like what you call the blue mould—all sprouting and budding and breeding and decaying. We must get rid of it. By little and little, of course; slowly[b] we learn how. Learn to make our brains live with less and less body: learn to build our bodies directly with chemicals, no longer have to stuff them full of dead brutes and weeds. Learn how to reproduce ourselves

[a] forest] *B*; forests, *M*
☛ M mistakenly corrects Filostrato's faulty English.
[b] course; slowly] *B*; course. Slowly *M*

without copulation."

"I don't think that would be much fun," said Winter.

"My friend, you have already separated the Fun, as you call it, from the fertility.[a] The Fun itself begins to pass away. Bah! I know that is not what you think. But look at your English women. Six out of ten are frigid[b] are they not? You see? Nature herself begins to throw away the anachronism. When she has quite thrown it away, then real civilisation becomes possible. You would understand if you were peasants. Who would try to work with stallions and bulls? No, no; we want geldings and oxen. There will never be peace and order and discipline so long as there is sex. When man has thrown it away, then he will become finally governable."

This brought them to the end of dinner, and[c] as they rose from the table Filostrato whispered in Mark's ear, "I would not advise the Library for you to-night.[d] You understand? You are not in favour. Come and have a little conversation with me in my room."

Mark rose and followed him, glad and surprised that in this new crisis with the D.D. Filostrato was apparently still his friend. They went up to the Italian's sitting-room on the first floor. There Mark sat down before the fire, but his host continued to walk up and down the room.

"I am very sorry, my young friend," said Filostrato, "to hear of this new trouble between you and the Deputy Director. It must be stopped, you understand? If he invite[e] you to bring your wife here[f] why do you not bring her?"

"Well, really," said Mark, "I never knew he attached so much importance to it. I thought he was merely being polite." His[g] objection to having Jane at Belbury had been, if not removed, at least temporarily deadened by the wine he had drunk at dinner and by the sharp pang he had felt at the threat of expulsion from the library circle.

"It is of no importance in itself," said Filostrato. "But I have reason to believe it came not from Wither but from the Head himself."

"The Head? You mean Jules?" said Mark in some surprise. "I thought he was

---

[a] the fertility.] *B* fertility. *M*
☛ M mistakenly changes Filostrato's faulty (or unidiomatic) English.
[b] frigid] *B*; frigid, *M*
[c] , and] *BA*; and *M*
[d] to-night.] BA; tonight. *M*
[e] invite] *BA*; invites *M*
☛ M mistakenly corrects Filostrato's faulty English.
[f] here] *BA*; here, *M*
[g] His] *BA*; ¶His *M*

① *He will have all of you, and all that is yours—or else nothing.*

Compare p. 244 (& n. 3), where Ransom tells Jane that God does not allow divided loyalties.

a mere figure head.[a] And why should *he* care whether I bring my wife here or not?"

"You were mistaken," said Filostrato. "Our Head is no figure head."[b] There was something odd about his manner, Mark thought. For some time neither man spoke.

"It is all true," said Filostrato at last, "what I said at dinner."

"But about Jules," said Mark. "What business is it of his?"

"Jules?" said Filostrato, "why do you speak of him? I say it was all true. The world I look forward to is the world of perfect purity. The clean mind and the clean minerals. What are the things that most offend the dignity of man? Birth and breeding and death. How if we are about to discover that Mind can live without any of the three?"

Mark stared. Filostrato's conversation appeared so disjointed and his manner so unusual that he began to wonder if he were quite sane or quite sober.

"As for your wife," resumed Filostrato, "I attach no importance to it. What have I to do with men's wives? The whole subject disgusts me. But if they make a point of it . . . Look, my friend, the real question is whether you mean to be truly at one with us or no."

"I don't quite follow," said Mark.

"Do you want to be a mere hireling? But you have already come too far in for that. You are at the turning-point[c] of your career, Mr. Studdock. If you try to go back you will be as unfortunate as the fool Hingest. If you come really in—the world . . . bah, what do I say? . . . the universe is at your feet."

"But of course I want to come in," said Mark. A certain excitement was stealing over him.

"The Head thinks that you cannot be really one of us if you will not bring your wife here. He will have all of you, and all that is yours—or else nothing. You must bring the woman in too. She also must be one of us." ①

This remark was like a shock[d] of cold water in Mark's face. And yet . . . and yet . . . in that room and at that moment, fixed with the little, bright eyes of the Professor, he could hardly make the thought of Jane quite real to himself.

"You shall hear it from the lips of the Head himself," said Filostrato suddenly.

"Is Jules *here*?" said Mark.

---

[a] figure head.] *B*; figurehead. *M*
[b] figure head."] *B*; figurehead." *M*
[c] turning-point] *B*; turning point *M*
[d] shock] *BM*; shock, *A*

Instead of answering Filostrato turned sharply from him and with a great scraping movement flung back the window curtains.[a] Then he switched off the light. The fog had all gone, the wind had risen. Small clouds were scudding across the stars and the full moon[b]—Mark had never seen her so bright—stared down upon them. As the clouds passed her she looked like a ball that was rolling through them. Her bloodless light filled the room.

"There is a world for you, no?" said Filostrato. "There is cleanness, purity. Thousands of square miles of polished rock with not one blade of grass, not one fibre of lichen, not one grain of dust. Not even air. Have you thought what it would be like, my friend, if you could walk on that land? No crumbling, no erosion. The peaks of those mountains are real peaks: sharp as needles, they would go through your hand. Cliffs as high as Everest and as straight as the wall of a house. And cast by those cliffs, acres of shadow black as ebony, and in the shadow hundreds of degrees of frost. And then, one step beyond the shadow, light that would pierce your eyeballs like steel and rock that would burn your feet. The temperature is at boiling-point.[c] You would die, yes?[d] But even then you would not become filth. In a few moments you are a little heap of ash; clean, white powder. And mark, no wind to blow that powder about. Every grain in the little heap remain[e] in its place, just where you died, till the end of the world . . . but that is nonsense. The universe will have no end."

"Yes. A dead world," said Mark,[f] gazing at the moon.[g]

"No!" said Filostrato. He had come close to Mark and spoke almost in a whisper, the bat-like whisper of a voice that is naturally high-pitched. "No. There is life there."

"Do we *know* that?" asked Mark.

"Oh, *si*. Intelligent life. Under the surface. A great race, further advanced than we. An inspiration. A *pure* race. They have cleaned their world, broken free (almost) from the organic."

"But how——?"[h]

---

[a] curtains.] *BM*; curtains; *A*
[b] moon] *BA*; Moon *M*
[c] boiling-point] *B*; boiling point *M*
[d] yes?] *B*; no? *M*
☛ A positive assertion would usually be followed and reinforced by a negative question, but Filostrato's incorrect or unidiomatic English is part of his characterisation. Again, M mistakenly corrects it.
[e] remain] *B*; would remain *M*
☛ M mistakenly corrects Filostrato's faulty English.
[f] Mark,] *BA*; Mark *M*
[g] moon.] *BA*; Moon. *M*
[h] how——?"] *BA*; how—?" *M*

① *"They do not need […] the thinnest, finest cord."*

See ch. 13 I, where Ransom and Merlin speak of the same facts, but interpret them differently.

"They do not need to be born and breed and die; only their common people, their *canaglia* do that. The Masters live on. They retain their intelligence: they can keep it artificially alive after the organic body has been dispensed with—a miracle of applied biochemistry. They do not need organic food. You understand? They are almost free of Nature, attached to her only by the thinnest, finest cord." ①

"Do you mean that all *that*," Mark pointed to the mottled white globe[a] of the moon,[b] "is their own doing?"

"Why not? If you remove all the vegetation,[c] presently you have no atmosphere, no water."

"But what was the purpose?"

"Hygiene. Why should they have their world all crawling with organisms? And specially, they would banish one organism. Her surface is not all as you see. There are still surface-dwellers—savages. One great dirty patch on the far side of her where there is still water and air and forests—yes, and germs and death. They are slowly spreading their hygiene over their whole globe. Disinfecting her. The savages fight against them. There are frontiers, and fierce wars, in the caves and galleries down below. But the great race press[d] on. If you could see the other side you would see year by year the clean rock—like this side of the moon[e]—encroaching: the organic stain, all the green and blue and mist, growing smaller. Like cleaning tarnished silver."

"But how do we know all this?"

"I will tell you all that another time. The Head has many sources of information. For the moment, I speak only to inspire you. I speak that you may know what can be done: what shall be done here. This Institute—*Dio mio*,[f] it is for something better than housing and vaccinations and faster trains and curing the people of cancer. It is for the conquest of death: or for the conquest of organic life, if you prefer. They are the same thing. It is to bring out of that cocoon of organic life which sheltered the babyhood of mind,[g] the New Man, the man who will not die, the artificial man, free from Nature. Nature is the ladder we have climbed up by, now we kick her away."

---

[a] white globe] *BA*; globe *M*
☛ Presumably an inadvertent omission, unless M's editors objectd to something being both mottled and white.
[b] moon,] *BA*; Moon *M*
[c] vegetation,] *MA*; vegatation, *B*
☛ A compositing error in B.
[d] press] *B*; presses *M*
[e] moon] *B*; Moon *M*
[f] *mio*,] *BA*; *meo*, *M*
☛ Mis-spelling of the Italian "mio" in M.
[g] mind,] *A*; mind *BM*

① *There is no turning back once you have set your hand to the plough.*

Characteristically, Straik alters the import of a Biblical allusion, and, in the Bible, "No man, having put his hand to the plough, and looking back, is fit for the Kingdom of God" (Luke 9: 62) is a warning. Straik uses it as a threat. This is the second time Straik uses this allusion when speaking to Mark (see p. 80).

"And you think that some day we shall really find a means of keeping the brain alive indefinitely?"

"We have begun already. The Head himself . . ."

"Go on," said Mark. His heart was beating wildly and he had forgotten both Jane and Wither. This at last was the real thing.

"The Head himself has already survived death, and you shall speak to him this night."

"Do you mean that Jules has died?"

"Bah! Jules is nothing. He is not the Head."

"Then who is?"

At this moment there was a knock on the door. Someone, without waiting for an answer,[a] came in.

"Is the young man ready?" asked the voice of Straik.

"Oh yes. You are ready, are you not, Mr. Studdock?"

"You have explained it to him, then?" said Straik. He turned to Mark and the moonlight in the room was so bright that Mark could now partially recognise his face—its harsh furrows emphasised by that cold light and shade.

"Do you mean really to join us, young man?" said Straik. "There is no ① turning back once you have set your hand to the plough. And there are no reservations. The Head has sent for you. Do you understand—*the Head*? You will look upon one who was killed and is still alive. The resurrection of Jesus in the Bible was a symbol: to-night[b] you shall see what it symbolised. This is real Man at last, and it claims all our allegiance."

"What the devil are you talking about?" said Mark. The tension of his nerves distorted his voice into a hoarse blustering cry.

"My friend is quite right," said Filostrato. "Our Head is the first of the New Men—the first that lives beyond animal life. As far as Nature is concerned he is already dead: if[c] Nature had her way his brain would now be mouldering in the grave. But he will speak to you within this hour, and—a word in your ear, my friend—you will obey his orders."

"But who is it?" said Mark.

"It is François Alcasan," said Filostrato.

"You mean the man who was guillotined?" gasped Mark. Both the heads nodded. Both faces were close to him: in that disastrous light they looked like masks hanging in the air.

---

[a] answer,] *B*; answer *M*
[b] to-night] *BA*; tonight *M*
[c] if] *BM*; If *A*

① *One of our company has already travelled in space.*

This is a reference to Weston, the scientist who invented and built two space ships. He, Feverstone and Ransom travelled to Malacandra and back in the first, which was then dematerialised by Malacandra-Oyarsa (*Out of the Silent Planet*). Weston travelled to Perelandra in the second: it sank in the oceans of Perelandra, and Weston died there (*Perelandra*).

② *Man's power over Nature […] There are only men.*

In his preface (5) Lewis notes that the serious point of this "tall story" is also made in *The Abolition of Man* (1943), and here the similarity is very marked. Some of the wording here is almost identical to that which Lewis uses in *The Abolition of Man*, where he writes, "Man's power over Nature turns out to be a power exercised by some men over other men with Nature as its instrument" (35). He elaborates on the implications of this (35–44), then states that "the abstraction Man" is no longer appropriate, since "what is now common to all men is simply an abstract universal, […] and Man's conquest of himself means simply the rule of the Conditioners over the conditioned human material, the world of post-humanity which, some knowingly and some unknowingly, nearly all men in all nations are now labouring to produce" (44).

In *That Hideous Strength* Lewis invents the N.I.C.E. as a fictional exploration, or perhaps extrapolation, of a problem he believes to be real: Filostrato and the others, standing outside all systems of morality, intend to be the "Conditioners", and they know exactly what they are doing. Lewis thanked one correspondent for recognising "the N.I.C.E. as not being quite the fantastic absurdity some readers think" (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 672), which suggests the various responses his fictionalisation received. He told another correspondent, "One can hardly satirise these people—the reality is always more incredible than what one invents" (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 717).

③ *A king cometh […] who shall rule the universe with righteousness and the heavens with judgement.*

Here Straik adapts and expands Isaiah 32: 1: "Behold, a king shall reign in righteousness and princes shall rule with judgement", or strings together prophetic words and phrases with the un-Biblical "universe" into something that sounds like prophecy.

④ *You thought […] a son who will wield all power.*

See p. 80 n. 1 and p. 132. n. 1.

"You are frightened?" said Filostrato. "You will get over that. We are offering to make you one of us. *Ahi*—if you were outside, if you were mere *canaglia* you would have reason to be frightened. It is the beginning of all power. He live forever. The giant time is conquered. And the giant space—he was already conquered too. One of our company has already travelled in space. True, he was ① betrayed and murdered and his manuscripts are imperfect: we have not yet been able to reconstruct his space ship. But that will come."

"It is the beginning of Man Immortal and Man Ubiquitous," said Straik. "Man on the throne of the universe. It is what all the prophecies really meant."

"At first, of course," said Filostrato, "the power will be confined to a number—a small number—of individual men. Those who are selected for eternal life."

"And you mean," said Mark, "it will then be extended to all men?"

"No," said Filostrato. "I mean it will then be reduced to one man. You are not a fool, are you, my young friend? All that talk about the power of Man over Nature—Man in the abstract—is only for the *canaglia*. You know as well as I do[a] that Man's power over Nature means the power of some men over other men,[b] ② with Nature as the instrument. There is no such thing as Man—it is a word. There are only men. No! It is not Man who will be omnipotent, it is some one man, some immortal man. Alcasan, our Head, is the first sketch of it. The completed product may be someone else. It may be you. It may be me."

"A king cometh," said Straik, "who shall rule the universe with righteousness ③ and the heavens with judgement. You thought all that was mythology, no doubt. You thought because fables had clustered about the phrase 'Son of Man'[c] that Man ④ would never really have a son who will wield all power. But he will."

"I don't understand, I don't understand," said Mark.

"But it is very easy," said Filostrato. "We have found how to make a dead man live. He was a wise man even in his natural life. He live now forever:[d] he get wiser. Later, we make them live better—for at present, one must concede, this second life is probably not very agreeable to him who has it. You see? Later we make it pleasant for some—perhaps not so pleasant for others. For we can make the dead live whether they wish it or not. He who shall be finally king of the universe can give this life to whom he pleases. They cannot refuse the little present."

---

[a] as I do] *BM*; , as I do, *A*
[b] men,] *A*; men *BM*
[c] phrase 'Son of Man'] *B*; phrase, 'Son of Man,' *M*
[d] forever:] *BA*; forever; *M*

① *the unspeakable glory of being present at the creation of God Almighty*

This is self-evidently blasphemous, and made worse by the Christian resonances of "glory", "creation" and "Almighty". The positive use of "unspeakable" is also reminiscent of the New Testament, where is it is twice so used—to modify "gift" (II Cor. 9: 15) and in "with joy unspeakable and full of glory" (I Pet. 1: 8).

"And so," said Straik, "the lessons you learned at your mother's knee return. God will have power to give eternal reward and eternal punishment."

"God?" said Mark. "How does He come into it? I don't believe in God."

"But, my friend," said Filostrato, "does it follow that because there was no God in the past that there will be no God also in the future?"

"Don't you see," said Straik, "that we are offering you the unspeakable glory of being present at the creation of God Almighty? Here, in this house, you shall meet the first draft[a] of the real God. It is a man—or a being made by man—who will finally ascend the throne of the universe. And rule forever." ①

"You will come with us?" said Filostrato. "He has sent for you."[b]

"Of course[c] he will come," said Straik. "Does he think he could hold back and live?"

"And that little affair of the wife," added Filostrato. "You will not mention a triviality like that. You will do as you are told. One does not argue with the Head."

Mark had nothing now to help him but the rapidly ebbing exhilaration of the alcohol taken at dinner-time[d] and some faint gleams of memory from hours with Jane and with friends made before he went to Bracton, during which the world had had a different taste from this exciting horror which now pressed upon him. These, and a merely instinctive dislike for both the moonlit faces which so held his attention. On the other side was fear. What would they do to him if he refused now?[e] And aiding fear was his[f] young man's belief that if one gave in for the present things would somehow right themselves "in the morning." And, aiding the fear and the hope, there was still, even then, a not wholly disagreeable thrill at the thought of sharing so stupendous a secret.

"Yes," he said,[g] halting in his speech as if he were out of breath, "Yes—of course—I'll come."

They led him out. The passages were already still and the sound of talk and

---

[a] draft] *ed.*; draught *B* sketch *M*
☛ The editorial change follows A's amendment of B and M earlier (110[k]); Fowler considers A's spelling "usual" in the sense used here ("Draft, draught, &c"). As so often is the case, M's variant "sketch", while not obviously explicable, seems neither more nor less prefereable in terms of the meaning of the passage.
[b] you."] *B*; you!" *M*
[c] course] *B*; course, *M*
[d] dinner-time] *BA*; dinner time *M*
[e] refused now?] *BA*; refused? *M*
☛ Mark is entirely concerned with his immediate situation, and B's "now" emphasises this, in agreement with the next sentence's "for the present".
[f] his] *M*; this *B*
☛ Apparently a compositor's error in B, where the word comes at the beginning of a line.
[g] said,] *BM*; said. *A*

laughter from the public rooms on the ground floor had ceased. He stumbled, and they linked arms with him. The journey seemed long: passage after passage, passages he had never seen before, doors to unlock, and then into a place where all the lights were on, and there were strange smells. Then Filostrato spoke through a speaking-tube[a] and a door was opened to them.[b]

Mark found himself in a surgical-looking room with glaring lights, and sinks, and bottles, and glittering instruments. A young man whom he hardly knew, dressed in a white coat, received them.

"Strip to your underclothes," said Filostrato. While Mark was obeying he noticed that the[c] opposite wall of the room was covered with dials. Numbers of flexible tubes came out of the floor and went into the wall just beneath the dials. The staring dial faces and the bunches of tubes beneath them, which seemed to be faintly pulsating, gave one the impression of looking at some creature with many eyes and many tentacles. The young man kept his eyes fixed on the vibrating needles of the dials. When the three newcomers had removed their outer clothes, they washed their hands and faces, and after that Filostrato plucked white clothes for them out of a glass container with a pair of forceps. When they had put these on he[d] gave them also gloves and masks such as surgeons wear. There followed a moment's silence while Filostrato[e] studied the dials. "Yes, yes," he said. "A little more air. Not much: point nought three. Turn on the chamber air . . . slowly . . . to Full.[f] Now the lights. Now air in the lock. A little less of the solution. And now"[g] (here he turned to Straik and Studdock) "are you ready to go in?"

He led them to a door in the same wall as the dials.

---

[a] speaking-tube] *BA*; speaking tube *M*
[b] them. ¶] *BM*; them. *A*
[c] the] *BM*; The *A*
[d] he] *BM*; He *A*
[e] Filostrato] *BM*; He *A*
[f] . . . slowly . . . to Full.] *BA*; —slowly—to full. *M*
[g] now"] *BM*; Now." *A*

① *The Saracen's Head*

A common pub name in England, with the sign usually depicting the head of a bearded man wearing a combination of helmet and turban. This corresponds roughly to what Jane sees, but the allusion behind the pub signs—to the enemies of Christendom during the Crusades—is also relevant to the concerns of this chapter, in which the powers and plans of the authorities at Belbury— the enemies of Christendom and of humanity— become clearer to Ransom and his company.

http://www.saracenshead.co.uk/

The Saracen's Head, Highworth, Wiltshire

The Saracen's Head, Ross-on-Wye, Herefordshire

② *composition stuff*

A kind of waterproof fabric (see *NED*, "composition-cloth" under "Composition" 26).

NINE

The Saracen's Head ①

I

"IT was the worst dream I've had yet," said Jane next morning. She was seated in the Blue Room with the Director and Grace Ironwood.[a]

"Yes," said the Director." Yours is perhaps the hardest post: until the real struggle begins."

"I dreamed I was in a dark room," said Jane, "with queer smells in it and a sort of low humming noise. Then the light came on—but not very much light, and for a long time I didn't realise what I was looking at. And when I made it out . . . I should have waked up if I hadn't made a great effort not to. I thought I saw a face floating just in front of me. A face, not a head, if you understand what I mean. That is, there was a beard and nose and eyes—at least, you couldn't see the eyes because it had coloured glasses on, but there didn't seem to be anything above the eyes. Not at first. But as I got used to the light, I got a horrible shock. I thought the face was a mask tied on to a kind of balloon thing. But it wasn't, exactly. Perhaps it looked a bit like a man wearing a sort of turban . . . I'm telling this dreadfully badly. What it really was, was a head (the rest of a head) which had had the top part of the skull taken off and then . . . then . . . as if something inside had boiled over. A great big mass which bulged out from inside what was left of the skull. Wrapped in some kind of composition stuff, but very thin stuff. You ②
could see it twitch. Even in my fright I remember thinking, 'Oh,[b] kill it, kill it. Put it out of its pain.' But only for a second,[c] because I thought the thing was dead, really. It was green looking and the mouth was wide open and quite dry. You realise I was a long time, looking at it, before anything else happened. And soon I saw that it wasn't exactly floating. It was fixed up on some kind of bracket, or shelf, or pedestal—I don't know quite what, and there were things hanging from it. From the neck, I mean. Yes, it had a neck and a sort of collar thing round it, but nothing below the collar: no shoulders or body. Only these hanging things. In the dream I thought it was some kind of new man that had only head and entrails: I thought all those tubes were its insides. But presently—I don't quite know how,

[a] Ironwood. ¶] *BM*; Ironwood. *A*
[b] 'Oh,] *BA*; 'Oh *M*
[c] second,] *BA*; second *M*

I saw that they were artificial. Little rubber tubes and bulbs and little metal things too. I couldn't understand them. All the tubes went into the wall. Then at last something happened."

"You're all right, Jane, are you?" said Miss Ironwood.

"Oh yes," said Jane, "as far as that goes. Only one somehow doesn't *want* to tell it. Well, quite suddenly, like when an engine is started, there came a puff of air out of its mouth, with a hard, dry,[a] rasping sound. And then there came another, and it settled down into a sort of rhythm—*huff, huff, huff*—like an imitation of breathing. Then came a most horrible thing: the mouth began to dribble. I know it sounds silly but in a way I felt sorry for it,[b] because it had no hands and couldn't wipe its mouth. It seems a small thing compared with all the rest but that is how I felt. Then it began working its mouth about and even licking its lips. It was like someone getting a machine into working order. To see it doing that just as if it was alive, and at the same time dribbling over the beard which was all stiff and dead looking. . . .[c] Then three people came into the room, all dressed up in white, with masks on, walking as carefully as cats on the top of a wall. One was a great fat man, and another was lanky and boney.[d] The third . . ."[e] here Jane paused involuntarily. "The third . . . I think it was Mark . . . I mean my husband."

"You are uncertain?" said the Director.

"No," said Jane. "It was Mark. I knew his walk. And I knew the shoes he was wearing. And his voice. It *was* Mark."

"I am sorry," said the Director.

"And then," said Jane, "all three of them came round and stood in front of the Head. They bowed to it. You couldn't tell if it was looking at them because of its dark glasses. It kept on with that rhythmical huffing noise. Then it spoke."

"In English?" said Grace Ironwood.

"No, in French."

"What did it say?"

"Well, my French wasn't quite good enough to follow it. It spoke in a queer way. In starts—like a man who's out of breath. With no proper expression. And of course it couldn't turn itself this way or that, the way a—a real person—does."

---

[a] hard, dry,] *A*; hard dry *BM*
[b] it,] *B*; it *M*
[c] looking. . . .] *B*; looking . . . *M*
[d] boney.] *BM*; bony. *A*
☛ All the witnesses, including A, use "boney" in the description of Grace Ironwood when Jane first meets her (62).
[e] third . . ."] *M*; third . . .' *B*
☛ B's single closing quotation mark is clearly a compositing error.

The Director spoke again.[a]

"Did you understand any of what was said?"

"Not very much. The fat man seemed to be introducing Mark to it. It said something to him. Then Mark tried to answer. I could follow him all right,[b] his French isn't much better than mine."

"What did he say?"

"He said something about 'doing it in a few days if it was possible'."[c]

"Was that all?"

"Very nearly. You see Mark couldn't stand it. I knew he wouldn't be able to: I remember, idiotically, in the dream, I wanted to tell him. I saw he was going to fall. I think I tried to shout out to the other two,[d] 'He's going to fall.' But, of course,[e] I couldn't. He was sick too. Then they got him out of the room."

All three were silent for a few seconds.

"Was that all?" said Miss Ironwood.

"Yes," said Jane. "That's all I remember. I think I woke up then."

The Director took a deep breath. "Well!" he said, glancing at Miss Ironwood, "it becomes plainer and plainer. We must hold a council at once. Is everyone here?"

"No. Dr. Dimble has had to go into Edgestow, into College, to take pupils. He won't be back till evening."

"Then we must hold the council this evening. Make all arrangements." He paused for a moment and then turned to Jane.[f] "I am afraid this is very bad for you, my dear," he said;[g] "and worse for him."

"You mean for Mark, sir?"[h]

The Director nodded.[i]

"Yes. Don't think hardly of him. He is suffering. If we are defeated we shall all go down with him. If we win we will rescue him; he cannot be far gone yet." He paused, smiled, and added, "We are quite used to trouble about husbands here, you know. Poor Ivy's is in jail."

"In jail?"

"Oh yes—for ordinary theft. But quite a good fellow. He'll be all right again."

---

[a] The Director spoke again. ¶] *M only*
☛ See Introduction 2 xl.
[b] right,] *BA*; right: *M*
[c] possible'."] *A*; possible.' " *BM*
[d] two,] *B*; two *M*
[e] But, of course,] *B*; But of course *M*
[f] Jane.] *A*; Jane. ¶ *BM*
[g] said;] *BA*; said— *M*
[h] sir?"] *BA*; Sir?" *M*
[i] The Director nodded. ¶] *M only.*
☛ See Introduction 2 xl.

① *our sceptic*

In the abortive *Dark Tower* MacPhee is involved "because he was known to us all as an inveterate sceptic, and […] if once he were convinced, the learned world in general would have no excuse for incredulity" (ch. 1 17).

② *"discovered in his mind an inflammation swollen and deformed, his memory"*

I have been unable to identify it this allusion: it may be Lewis's own invention.

Though Jane had felt horror, even to the point of nausea, at the sight (in her dream) of Mark's real surroundings and associates, it had been horror that carried a certain grandeur and mystery with it. The sudden equation between his predicament and that of a common convict whipped the blood to her cheeks. She said nothing.

"One other thing," continued the Director. "You will not misunderstand it if I exclude you from our council to-night.[a]"[b]

"Of course not, sir,"[c] said Jane, in fact[d] misunderstanding it very much.

"You see," he said, "MacPhee takes the line that if you hear things talked of you will carry ideas of them into your sleep and that will destroy the evidential value of your dreams. And it's not very easy to refute him. He is our sceptic; a very important office." ①

"I quite understand," said Jane.

"That applies, of course," said the Director, "only to things we don't know yet. You mustn't hear our guesses, you mustn't be there when we're puzzling over the evidence. But we have no secrets from you about the earlier history of our family. In fact,[e] MacPhee himself will insist on being the one who tells you all that. He'd be afraid Grace's account, or mine, wouldn't be objective enough."

"I see."

"I want you to like him if you can. He's one of my oldest friends. And he'll be about our best man if we're going to be defeated. You couldn't have a better man at your side in a losing battle. What he'll do if we win, I can't imagine."

II

Mark woke next morning to the consciousness that his head ached all over, but specially at the back. He remembered that he had fallen—that was how he had hurt his head—fallen in that other room, with Filostrato and Straik . . . and then, as one of the poets says, he "discovered in his mind an inflammation swollen and deformed, his memory." Oh, but impossible, not to be accepted for a moment: it ②

---

[a] to-night.] *B*; tonight. *M*

[b] night."] *M* night. *B*

☛ B's missing closing quotation mark is either a compositing error or a printing error resulting from worn type. A blank space where the mark should be would prove the latter, but the remainder of the line is blank so we cannot tell.

[c] sir,"] *B*; Sir," *M*

[d] fact] *M*; fact, *B*

☛ The phrase "in fact" here functions as an adverb, emphasising the difference between Jane's misunderstanding and her words. There is no reason to separate it by a comma from the "misunderstanding" that it modifies.

[e] fact,] *B*; fact *M*

① *perhaps behead him*

Mark is remembering what Filostrato told him (ch. 8 III) about the power the N.I.C.E. envisaged having, by which they could grant life like that of Alcasan's head to whom they chose, and to make it pleasant or unpleasant.

had been a nightmare, it must be shoved away, it would vanish away now that he was fully awake. It was an absurdity. Once in delirium he had seen the front part of a horse, by itself, with no body or hind legs, running across a lawn, had felt it ridiculous at the very moment of seeing it, but not the less horrible for that. This was an absurdity of the same sort. A head[a] without any body underneath. A head[a] that could speak when they turned on the air and the artificial saliva with taps in the next room. His own head began to throb so hard that he had to stop thinking.

But he knew it was true. And he could not, as they say, "take it." He was very ashamed of this, for he wished to be considered one of the tough ones. But the truth is that his toughness was only of the will, not of the nerves, and the virtues he had almost succeeded in banishing from his mind still lived, if only negatively and as weaknesses, in his body. He approved of vivisection, but had never worked in a dissecting room. He recommended that certain classes of people should be gradually eliminated: but he had never been there when a small shopkeeper went to the workhouse or a starved old woman of the governess type came to the very last day and hour and minute in the cold attic. He knew nothing about the last half-cup[b] of cocoa drunk slowly ten days before.

Meantime he must get up. He must do something about Jane. Apparently he would *have* to bring her to Belbury. His mind had made this decision for him at some moment he did not remember. He must get her, to save his life. All his anxieties about being in the inner ring or getting a job had shrunk into insignificance. It was a question of life or death. They would kill him if he annoyed them; perhaps behead him . . .[c] oh God, if only they would really kill that ① monstrous little lump of torture, that lump with a face, which they kept there talking on its steel bracket. All the minor fears at Belbury—for he knew now that all except the leaders were always afraid—were only emanations from that central fear. He must get Jane; he wasn't fighting against that now.

It must be remembered that in Mark's mind hardly one rag of noble thought, either Christian or Pagan, had a secure lodging. His education had been neither scientific nor classical—merely "Modern." The severities both of abstraction and of high human tradition had passed him by: and he had neither peasant shrewdness nor aristocratic honour to help him. He was a man of straw, a glib examinee in subjects that require no exact knowledge (he had always done well on Essays and General Papers),[d] and the first hint of a real threat to his bodily life knocked him sprawling.

---

[a] head] *BA*; Head *M*
[b] half-cup] *B*; half cup *M*
[c] him . . .] *BM*; him. . . . *A*
[d] Papers),] *A*; Papers) *BM*

And his head ached so terribly and he felt so sick. Luckily he now kept a bottle of whisky in his room. A stiff one enabled him to shave and dress.

He was late for breakfast,[a] but that made little difference,[b] for he could not eat. He drank several cups of black coffee and then went into the writing-room.[c] Here he sat for a long time drawing things on the blotting-paper.[d] This letter to Jane proved almost impossible now that it came to the point. And why did they want Jane? Formless fears stirred in his mind. And Jane of all people! Would they take *her* to the Head? For almost the first time in his life a gleam of something like disinterested love came into his mind; he wished he had never married her, never dragged her into this whole outfit of horrors which was, apparently, to be his life.

"Hullo, Studdock!" said a voice.[e] "Writing to little wifie, eh?"

"Damn!" said Mark. "You've made me drop my pen."

"Then pick it up, sonny,"[f] said Miss Hardcastle, seating herself on the table. Mark did so, and then sat still, without looking up at her. Not since he had been bullied at school had he known what it was to hate and dread anyone with every nerve of his body as he now hated and dreaded this woman.

"I've got bad news[g] for you, sonny,"[h] she said presently. His heart gave a jump.

"Take it like a man, Studdock," said the Fairy.

"What is it?"

She did not answer quite at once and he knew she was studying him, watching how the instrument responded to her playing.

"I'm worried about little wifie, and that's a fact," she said at last.

"What do you mean?" said Mark sharply, this time looking up. The cheroot between her teeth was still unlit,[i] but she had got as far as taking out her matches.

"I looked her up," said Miss Hardcastle, "all on your account, too. I thought Edgestow wasn't too healthy a place for her to be at present."

"What's wrong with her?" shouted Mark.

"Ssh!" said Miss Hardcastle. "You don't want everyone to hear."

"Can't you tell me what's wrong?"

She waited for a few seconds before replying. "How much do you know

---

[a] breakfast,] *MA*; breakfast *B*
[b] difference,] *A*; difference *BM*
[c] writing-room.] *BA*; writing room. *M*
[d] blotting-paper.] *BA*; blotting paper. *M*
[e] a voice.] *BM*; the voice of Miss Hardcastle. *A*
[f] sonny,"] *B*; Sonny," *M*
[g] news] *MA*; knews *B*
☛ An obvious compositing error in B.
[h] sonny,"] *BA*; Sonny," *M*
[i] unlit,] *B*; unlit *M*

① *You're in a damn dangerous position already.*

The *OED* quotes the B-text of *That Hideous Strength* six times (see also: 203 n. 2; 273 n. 2 & 3; 328 n. 1; 329 n. 2). This sentence—"You're in a dam dangerous position already" in B— is used to illustrate "damn" *a.* and *adv.* and its variant spellings ("damn' ", "dam' " and "dam").

about her family, Studdock?"

"Lots. What's that got to do with it?"

"Nothing . . . queer . . . on either side?"

"What the devil do you mean?"

"Don't be rude,[a] honey. I'm doing all I can for you. It's only—well, I thought she was behaving pretty oddly when I saw her."

Mark well remembered his conversation with his wife on the morning he left for Belbury. A new stab of fear pierced him. Might not this detestable woman be speaking the truth?

"What did she say?" he asked.

"If there is anything wrong with her in that way," said the Fairy, "take my advice, Studdock, and have her over here at once. She'll be properly looked after here."

"You haven't yet told me what she said or did."

Humane Remedial Treatment

"I wouldn't like to have anyone belonging to me popped into Edgestow Asylum. Specially now that we're getting our emergency powers. They'll be using the ordinary patients experimentally, you know. Whereas if[b] you'll just sign this form I'll run over after lunch and have her here this evening."

Mark threw his pen on the desk.[c]

"I shall do nothing of the sort. Specially as[d] you haven't given me the slightest notion what's wrong with her."

"I've been trying to tell you but you don't let me. She kept on talking about someone who'd broken into your flat—or else met her at the station (one couldn't make out which) and burned her with cigars. Then, most unfortunately, she noticed my cheroot, and, if you please, she identified *me* with this imaginary persecutor. Of course, after that I could do no good."

"I must go home at once," said Mark, getting up.

"Here—whoa! You can't do that," said the Fairy, also rising.

"Can't go home? I've bloody well got to, if all this is true."

"Don't be a fool, lovey," said Miss Hardcastle. "Honest! I know what I'm talking about. You're in a damn[e] dangerous position already. You'll about do ① yourself in if you're absent without leave now. Send me. Sign the form. That's the

---

[a] be rude,] *BM*; shout, *A*

☛ A's change restores the "shout" lost in the excision of "shouted Mark" a few lines above.

[b] if] *BM*; If *A*

[c] Mark threw his pen on the desk. ¶] *M only*.

☛ See Introduction 2 xl.

[d] Specially as] *BM*; But *A*

[e] damn] *MA*; dam *B*

☛ There seems no reason for B's inconsistent spelling. See n. 1 facing this page.

sensible way to do it."

"But a moment ago you said she couldn't stand you at any price."

"Oh, that wouldn't make any odds. Of course[a] it would be easier if she hadn't taken a dislike to me. I say, Studdock, you don't think little wifie[b] could be jealous, do you?"

"Jealous? Of you?" said Mark with uncontrollable disgust.

"Where are you off to?" said the Fairy sharply.

"To see the D.D. and then home."

"Stop. You won't do that unless you mean to make me your enemy for life—and, let me tell you, you can't afford many more enemies."

"Oh, go to the Devil,"[c] said Mark.

"Come back, Studdock," shouted the Fairy. "Wait! Don't be a bloody fool." But Mark was already in the hall. For the moment everything seemed to have become clear. He would look in on Wither, not to ask for leave but simply to announce that he had to go home at once because his wife was dangerously ill:[d] he would be out of the room before Wither could reply—and then off. The further future was vague, but that did not seem to matter. He put on his hat and coat, ran upstairs and knocked at the door of the Deputy Director's office.

There was no answer.[e] Then Mark noticed that[f] the door was not quite shut. He ventured to push it open a little farther, and saw the Deputy Director sitting inside with his back to the door. "Excuse me, sir,"[g] said Mark. "Might I speak to you for a few minutes." There was no answer. "Excuse me, sir,"[g] said Mark in a louder voice, but the figure neither spoke nor moved. With some hesitation, Mark went into the room and walked round to the other side of the desk; but when he turned to look at Wither he caught his breath, for he thought he was looking into the face of a corpse. A moment later he recognised his mistake. In the stillness of the room he could hear the man breathing. He was not even asleep, for his eyes were open. He was not unconscious, for his eyes rested momentarily on Mark and then looked away. "I beg your pardon, sir,"[g] began Mark,[h] and then stopped. The Deputy Director was not listening. He was so far from listening that Mark felt an

---

[a] course] *B*; course, *M*
[b] wifie] *MA*; Wifie *B*
[c] Devil,"] *B*; devil," *M*
☛ All the witnesses use "devil" everywhere else, but all other uses of the word are in phrases such as "what the devil" or allusions to "devils" or "a devil": this is the only direct allusion to Satan himself, with the definite article, so B's apparent inconsistency should be taken as intentional.
[d] ill:] *B*; ill; *M*
[e] answer.] *BM*; answer, *A*
[f] that] *BM*; but *A*
[g] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*
[h] Mark,] *BA*; Mark *M*

① *There was a figure […] the Deputy Director himself.*

Lewis discusses the mystery of the Deputy Director's ubiquity at the beginning of ch. 10 II.

insane doubt whether he was there at all, whether the soul of the Deputy Director were not floating far away, spreading and dissipating itself like a gas through formless and lightless worlds, waste lands and lumber rooms of the universe. What looked out of those pale watery eyes was, in a sense, infinity—the shapeless and the interminable. The room was still and cold: there was no clock and the fire had gone out. It was impossible to speak to a face like that. Yet it seemed impossible also to get out of the room, for the man had seen him. Mark was afraid; it was so unlike any experience he had ever had before.

When at last Mr. Wither spoke, his eyes were not fixed on Mark but on some remote point beyond him, beyond the window, perhaps in the sky.

"I know who it is," said Wither. "Your name is Studdock. What do you mean by coming here? You had better have stayed outside. Go away."

It was then that Mark's nerve suddenly broke. All the slowly mounting fears of the last few days ran together into one fixed determination,[a] and a few seconds later he was going downstairs three steps at a time. Then he was crossing the hall. Then he was out, and walking down the drive. Once again, his immediate course seemed, quite plain to him. Opposite the entrance was a thick belt of trees pierced by a field path. That path would bring him in half an hour to Courthampton and there he could get a country 'bus[b] to Edgestow. About the future he did not think at all. Only two things mattered: firstly, to get out of that house, and secondly[c] to get back to Jane. He was devoured with a longing for Jane,[d] which was physical without being at all sensual: as if comfort and fortitude would flow from her body, as if her very skin would clean away all the filth that seemed to hang about him. The idea that she might be really mad had somehow dropped out of his mind. And he was still young enough to be incredulous of misery. He could not quite rid himself of the belief that if only he made a dash for it the net must somehow break, the sky must somehow[e] clear, and it would all end up with Jane and Mark having tea together as if none of all this had happened.

He was out of the grounds now:[f] he was crossing the road: he had entered the belt of trees. He stopped suddenly. Something impossible was happening. There was ① a figure before him on the path; a[g] tall, very tall, slightly stooping figure, sauntering

---

[a] determination,] *A*; determination *BM*
[b] 'bus] *B*; bus *M*
[c] and secondly] *B*; and, secondly, *M*
[d] Jane,] *B*; Jane *M*
[e] must somehow] *B*; must *M*
☛ Either a compositor's error in M, because of the repetition of "somehow" in the sentence, or a stylistic decision by M's editor, again because of the repetition.
[f] now:] *BA*; now; *M*
[g] ; a] *BA*; : a *M*

① *He said he'd been to the planet Mars.*

This is the story told in *Out of the Silent Planet*.

and humming a little dreary tune;[a] the Deputy Director himself. And in one moment all that brittle hardihood was gone from Mark's mood. He turned back. He stood in the road; this seemed to him the worst pain that he had ever felt. Then, tired, so tired that he felt his legs would hardly carry him, the weak tears filling his eyes,[b] he walked very slowly back into Belbury.

III

Mr. MacPhee had a little room on the ground floor at the Manor which he called his office, and to which no woman was ever admitted except under his own conduct; and in this tidy but dusty apartment he sat with Jane Studdock shortly before dinner that evening, having invited her there to give her what he called "a brief, objective outline of the situation."

"I should premise at the outset, Mrs. Studdock," he said, "that I have known the Director for a great many years and that for most of his life he was a philologist. I'm not just satisfied myself that philology can be regarded as an exact science, but I mention the fact as a testimony to his general intellectual capacity. And, not to forejudge any issue, I will not say, as I would in ordinary conversation, that he has always been a man of what you might call an imaginative turn. His original name was Ransom."

"Not Ransom's *Dialect and Semantics*?" said Jane.

"Aye. That's the man," said MacPhee. "Well, about six years ago—I have all the dates in a wee book there, but it doesn't concern us at the moment—came his first disappearance. He was clean gone—not a trace of him—for about nine months. I thought he'd most likely been drowned bathing or something of the kind. And then one day what does he do but turn up again in his rooms at Cambridge and go down sick and into hospital for three months more. And he wouldn't say where he'd been except privately to a few friends."

"Well?" said Jane eagerly.

"He said," answered MacPhee, producing his snuff-box and laying great emphasis on the word *said*, "He said he'd been to the planet Mars." ①

---

[a] tune;] *BA*; tune: *M*

[b] his legs would hardly carry him, the weak tears filling his eyes,] *ed.* his legs would hardly carry him, *BA* the weak tears filling his eyes, *M*

☛ B's "his legs would hardly carry him" agrees better with the subsequent "he walked very slowly" than M's "the weak tears filling his eyes". If we posit that B's version is a revision, it is hard to see how M's version could have preceded it; and it is also hard to imagine that M's version could be an editorial improvement of B's. I think it makes fewer assumptions to suggest that both clauses originally existed, and somehow a different one was lost on each side of the Atlantic. My editorial change also avoids the clumsy "he felt the weak tears filling his eyes": if the tiredness is manifested only in tears, "the weak tears filled his eyes" seems a better formulation.

"You mean he said this . . . while he was ill?"

"No, no. He says so still. Make what you can of it,[a] that's his story."

"I believe it," said Jane.

MacPhee selected a pinch of snuff with as much care as if those particular grains had differed from all the others in his box and spoke before applying them to his nostrils.

"I'm giving you the facts," he said. "He told us he'd been to Mars, kidnapped, by Professor Weston and Mr. Devine—Lord Feverstone as he now is. And by his own account he'd escaped from them—on Mars, you'll understand—and been wandering about there alone for a bit. Alone."

"It's uninhabited, I suppose?"

"We have no evidence on that point except his own story. You are doubtless aware, Mrs. Studdock, that a man in complete solitude even on this earth—an explorer, for example—gets into very remarkable states of consciousness. I'm told a man might forget his own identity."

"You mean he might have imagined things on Mars that weren't there?"

"I'm making no comments," said MacPhee. "I'm merely recording. By his own accounts there are all kinds of creatures walking about there; that's maybe[b] why he has turned this[c] house into a sort of menagerie, but no matter for that. But he also says he met one kind of creature there which specially concerns us at this moment. He called them eldils."[d]

"A kind of animal, do you mean?"

"Did ever you try to define the word animal,[e] Mrs. Studdock?"

"Not that I remember. I meant, were[f] these things . . . well, intelligent? Could they talk?"

"Aye. They could talk. They were intelligent, forbye,[g] which is not always the same thing."

"In fact these were the Martians?"

"That's just what they weren't, according to his[h] account. They were on

---

[a] it,] *BA*; it; *M*
[b] maybe] *BA*; may be *M*
☛ If M is right the preceding "that's" is wrong: "that's may be" is impossible.
[c] this] *BA*; his *M*
☛ Either reading is possible, so we follow the copy-text.
[d] eldils."] *BA*; *eldils*." *M*
[e] animal,] *B*; Animal, *M*
[f] were] *BM*; Were *A*
[g] forbye,] *A*; for-/bye, *B* for-bye, *M*
☛ All three witnesses have "forbye" on p. 239.
[h] his] *BM*; him *A*

① *perfectly* huge

See ch. 7 II 156, where the imminent arrival of Ransom's masters causes Jane to think how huge humans must seem to mice.

② *continual visits from these creatures*

In the opening of *Perelandra*, another of Ransom's friends, Lewis as character, speaks of his "growing conviction that, since his [Ransom's] return [from Mars], the eldila were not leaving him alone" (ch. 1 8).

③ *that time he said he'd been in the planet Venus—taken there by these eldils*

This is the story told in *Perelandra*.

④ *"They are, I gather, more or less friendly?"*

In ch. 12 IV Frost and Mark discuss the dark-eldils and Mark asks the same question as Jane does here (273), and Frost turns the discussion to the question of "objectivity" (273–74).

Mars,[a] but they didn't rightly belong there. He says they are creatures that live in empty space."

"But there's no air."

"I'm telling you his story. He says they don't breathe. He said also that they don't reproduce their species and don't die. But you'll observe that even if we assume the rest of his story to be correct this last statement could not rest on observation."

"What on earth are they like?"

"I'm telling you how he described them."

"I mean, what do they look like?"

"I'm not just exactly prepared to answer that question," said MacPhee.

"Are they perfectly *huge*?" said Jane almost involuntarily.[b] ①

MacPhee[c] blew his nose and continued.[d] "The point, Mrs. Studdock," he said, "is this.[e] Dr. Ransom claims that he has received continual visits from these ② creatures since he returned to Earth. So much for his first disappearance. Then came the second. He was away for more than a year and that[f] time he said he'd ③ been in the planet Venus—taken there by these eldils."[g]

"Venus is inhabited by them, too?"

"You'll forgive me observing that this remark shows you have not grasped what I'm telling you. These creatures are not planetary creatures at all. Supposing them to exist, you are to conceive them floating about the depth of space, though they may alight on a planet here and there;[h] like a bird alighting on a tree, you understand. There's some of them, he says, are more or less permanently attached to particular planets, but they're not native there. They're just a clean different kind of thing."

There were a few seconds of silence, and then Jane asked,[i] "They are, I gather, ④ more or less friendly?"

"That is certainly the Director's idea about them, with one important exception."[j]

"What's that?"

"The eldils that have for many centuries concentrated on our own planet. We

---

[a] Mars,] *BA*; Mars *M*
[b] involuntarily.] *MA*; involuntarily *B*
[c] ¶ MacPhee] *B*; MacPhee *M*
[d] continued.] *B*; continued. ¶ *M*
[e] this.] *BA*; this: *M*
[f] that] *BM*; That *A*
[g] eldils."] *BA*; *eldils*." *M*
[h] there;] *BA*; there, *M*
[i] asked,] *B*; asked, ¶ *M*
[j] exception."] *MA*; exception. *B*

① *I doubt it would be*
to red the place up
were letting on to be

MacPhee is an Ulsterman (p. 174), like Lewis's private tutor Kirkpatrick (*C&G* 685). Lewis, himself an Ulsterman, can be expected to be familiar with Ulster English generally, and specifically with how Kirkpatrick—the model for MacPhee (see 175 n. 1)—spoke, since he lived in Kirkpatrick's household for two and a half years while being tutored by him. Some expressions of the Ulster dialect— "in the main a variant of w[est]m[id]Scots" (Introduction, *Scottish National Dictionary* I xli)—are reproduced in MacPhee's speech here.

When MacPhee says, "I doubt it would be," he is expressing "probability as opposed to […] improbability" (*Scottish National Dictionary*, "Doot" I. *v*., see sense 2). When he speaks of the "respectable" eldils coming "to red the place up" he means "to sort the place out" (*Scottish National Dictionary*, "Redd" I. *v.* 6. (4) *fig.*). When he speaks of things that "weren't what they were letting on to be," he means that they were not what they were pretending to be (*Scottish National Dictionary*, "Lat" *v.* 3. *let on*); see 203[e].

② *"That's a very good question," said MacPhee*

The *OED* quotes the B-text of *That Hideous Strength* six times (see also: 197 n. 1; 273 n. 2 & 3; 328 n. 1; 329 n. 2). This sentence is one of three quotations used to illustrate the special sense of "a good question" in the entry for "good" *a., adv.,* and *n*. IV 14. c.

seem to have had no luck at all in choosing our particular complement of parasites. And that, Mrs. Studdock, brings me to the point."

Jane waited. It was extraordinary how MacPhee's manner almost neutralised the strangeness of what he was telling her.

"The long and the short of it is," said he, "that this house is dominated either by the creatures I'm talking about, or by a sheer delusion. It is by advices he thinks he has received from eldils that the Director has discovered the conspiracy against the human race; and what's more, it's on instructions from eldils that he's conducting the campaign—if you can call it conducting! It may have occurred to you to wonder, Mrs. Studdock, how any man in his senses thinks we're going to defeat a powerful conspiracy by sitting here growing winter vegetables and training performing bears. It is a question I have propounded on more than one occasion. The answer is always the same:[a] we're waiting for orders."

"From the eldils? It was them he meant when he spoke of his Masters?"

"I doubt it[b] would be;[c] though he doesn't use that word in speaking to me." ①

"But, Mr. MacPhee, I don't understand. I thought you said the ones on our planet were hostile."

"That's a very good question," said MacPhee, "but it's not our own ones that ② the Director claims to be in communication with. It's his friends from outer space. Our own crew, the terrestrial eldils, are at the back of the whole conspiracy. You are to imagine us, Mrs. Studdock, living on a world where the criminal classes of the eldils have established their headquarters. And what's happening now, if the Director's views are correct, is that their own respectable kith and kin are visiting this planet to red the place up." ①

"You mean that the other eldils, out of space,[d] actually come here—to this house?"

"That is what the Director thinks."

"But you must know whether it's true or not."

"How?"

"Have you seen them?"

"That's not a question to be answered Aye or No. I've seen a good many things in my time that weren't there or weren't what they were letting on[e] to be;[f] ①

---

[a] same:] *BA*; same; *M*
[b] it] *BM*; It *A*
[c] be;] *B*; be, *M*
[d] eldils, out of space,] *BA*; eldils out of space *M*
[e] were letting on] *M*; pretended *BA*
☛ See note 1 facing this page. Although Lewis's London editors retained MacPhee's other Scotticisms, they changed this one (A following B) while M's editors retained it.
[f] be;] *BA*; be: *M*

① *Moderator of the General Assembly over the water, in Scotland*

In the Presbyterian Church, the General Assembly is the governing body with the highest authority. The Moderator of the General Assembly is appointed to constitute and guide the Assembly as first among equals, and serves as the representative of the Presbyterian Church. MacPhee is speaking as an Ulsterman (p. 174) when he refers to Scotland as "over the water".

rainbows and reflections and sunsets, not to mention dreams. And there's hetero-suggestion too. I will not deny that I have observed a class of phenomena in this house that I have not yet fully accounted for. But they never occurred at a moment when I had a note-book handy or any facilities for verification."

"Isn't seeing believing?"

"It may be—for children or beasts," said MacPhee.

"But not for sensible people, you mean?"

"My uncle, Dr. Duncanson," said MacPhee, "whose name may be familiar to you—he was Moderator of the General Assembly over the water, in Scotland—used ① to say, 'Show it me in the word of God.' And then he'd slap down[a] the big Bible on the table. It was a way he had of shutting up people that came to him blathering about religious experiences. And granting his premises, he was quite right. I don't hold his views, Mrs. Studdock, you understand, but I work on the same principles. If anything wants Andrew MacPhee to believe in its existence, I'll be obliged if it will present itself in full daylight, with a sufficient number of witnesses present, and not get shy if you hold up a camera or a thermometer."

MacPhee regarded his snuff-box meditatively.[b]

"You have seen something, then?"

"Aye. But we must keep an open mind. It might be an[c] hallucination. It might be a conjuring trick . . ."

"By the Director?" asked Jane angrily. Mr. MacPhee once more had recourse to his snuff-box. "Do you really expect me," said Jane, "to believe that the Director is that sort of man? A[d] charlatan?"

"I wish, ma'am,"[e] said MacPhee, "you could see your way to consider the matter without constantly using such terms as *believe*. Obviously, conjuring is one of the hypotheses that any impartial investigator must take into account. The fact that it is a hypothesis specially uncongenial to the emotions of this investigator or that, is neither here nor there. Unless, maybe, it is an extra ground for emphasising the hypothesis in question, just because there is a strong psychological danger of neglecting it."

---

[a] slap down] *B*; slap *M*

☛ M's "slap […] on the table" suggests merely slapping against the table: B's reading denotes the emphatic way in which MacPhee's uncle used to put the Bible down.

[b] MacPhee regarded his snuff-box meditatively. ¶] *M only*.

☛ Here is a one-sentence paragraph missing from B that clearly should not be missing, since five lines later we are told that MacPhee "had recourse to his snuff-box" in order to avoid answering Jane "once more", which obviously requires a previous example of such a recourse. See Introduction 2 xl.

[c] an] *A*; a *BM*

[d] A] *BM*; a *A*

[e] ma'am,"] *BA*; Ma'am," *M*

① *Covenanters*

Participants in various Covenants sworn by bodies of Presbyterians during times when their Church was being persecuted in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. One would expect a Covenanter to adhere to principle in the face of all opposition and at whatever personal cost.

② *Fool, / All lies in a passion of patience, my lord's rule.*

Taliessin through Logres is Charles Williams' Arthurian poem cycle: the quotation is from "Mount Badon", and the words are spoken of Taliessen, bard and cavalry commander, as he waits for the revelation of exactly the right moment to command a charge. By this "passion of patience", "the heart of our Lord Taliessin determined the war" ("Taliessin through Logres" 34–36). See "The Inklings" (Introduction 3 lxxxix–xciii).

"There's such a thing as loyalty," said Jane.[a]

MacPhee, who had been carefully shutting up the snuff-box, suddenly looked up with a hundred Covenanters[b] in his eyes. ①

"There is, ma'am,"[c] he said. "As you get older you will learn that it is a virtue too important to be lavished on individual personalities."

At that moment there was a knock at the door. "Come in," said MacPhee, and Camilla entered.

"Have you finished with Jane, Mr. MacPhee?" she said. "She promised to come out for a breath of air with me before dinner."

"Och, breath of air your grandmother!" said MacPhee with a gesture of despair. "Very well, ladies, very well. Away out to the garden. I doubt they're doing something more to the purpose on the enemy's side. They'll have all this country under their hands before we move, at this rate."

"I wish you'd read the poem I'm reading," said Camilla. "For it says in one line just what I feel about this waiting:

Fool,
All lies in a passion of patience, my lord's rule." ②

"What's that from?" asked Jane.

"*Taliessin through*[d] *Logres.*"[e]

"Mr. MacPhee probably approves of no poets except Burns."

"Burns!" said MacPhee with profound contempt, opening the drawer of his table with great energy and producing a formidable sheaf of papers. "If you're going to the garden, don't let me delay you, ladies."

"He's been telling you?" said Camilla, as the two girls went together down the passage.[f]

Moved by a kind of impulse which was rare to her experience, Jane seized her friend's hand as she answered[g] "Yes!" Both were filled with some passion, but what passion they did not know. They came to the front door, and as they opened it a sight met their eyes which, though natural, seemed at the moment apocalyptic.

---

[a] Jane. ¶] *BA*; Jane. *M*
[b] Covenanters] *BA*; covenanters *M*
[c] ma'am,"] *BA*; Ma'am," *M*
[d] *through*] *B*; *thought M*
☛ An obvious compositor's error in M.
[e] *Logres.*"] M; *Logres* " *B*
☛ Careful measurement of an enlarged image shows that the space between the "s" in the closing quotation mark in B is the same as the space that contains the full stop between the "e" and the quotation mark in "rule." two lines above. This, then, is another example of a printing error resulting from worn type in B.
[f] passage. ¶] *A*; passage. *BM*
[g] answered] *BA*; answered, *M*

① *the huntress, the untameable virgin, the spear-head of madness*

Artemis, the virgin huntress who favours wild places, is also a moon-goddess; Lewis combines this with an allusion to one aspect of the moon's influence on humans—wandering wits, or lunacy (see *Discarded Image* 109; also "Planetary Powers" in Introduction 4).

② *He will be taken away, […] about six, since the world began.*

In 17 IV 393 Grace Ironwood mentions four examples of this, including King Arthur.

All day the wind had been rising and they found themselves looking out on a sky swept almost clean. The air was intensely cold;[a] the stars severe and bright. High above the last rags of scurrying cloud hung the Moon in all her[b] wildness—not the voluptuous moon of a thousand southern love-songs, but the huntress, the untameable virgin, the spear-head of madness. If that cold satellite had just then joined our planet for the first time, it could hardly have looked more like an omen. The wildness crept into Jane's blood. ①

"That Mr. MacPhee . . ." said Jane, as they walked steeply uphill to the very summit of the garden.[c]

"I know," said Camilla: and then, "*You* believed it?"

"Of course."

"How does Mr. MacPhee[d] explain the Director's age?"

"You mean his looking—or being—so young—if you call it young?"

"Yes. That is what people are like who come back from the stars. Or at least from Perelandra. Paradise is still going on there; make him tell you about it some time. He will never grow a year or a month older again."

"Will he die?"

"He will be taken away, I believe. Back into Deep Heaven. It has happened to one or two people, perhaps about six, since the world began." ②

"Camilla!"

"Yes."

"What—what *is* he?"

"He's a man, my dear. And he is the Pendragon of Logres. This house, all of us here, and Mr. Bultitude and Pinch, are all that's left of Logres: all the rest has become merely Britain. Go on. Let's go right to the top. How it's blowing.[e] They might come to him to-night."[f] *Logres*

---

[a] cold;] *BA*; cold, *M*

[b] her] *BM*; the *A*

☛ A's change does nothing to facilitate the abridgement, and appears to be a mistake.

[c] garden. ¶] *BM*; garden, *A*

[d] How does Mr. MacPhee] *MB*; how does he *A*

☛ This excision gives a question to Jane that is Camilla's in B & M: this helps shorten the conversation without losing anything that needs to be said.

[e] blowing.] *BA*; blowing! *M*

[f] to-night."] *BA*; tonight." *M*

① *Baron Corvo*

Like Mr Bultitude the bear, the jackdaw has a literary name—one of the pseudonyms of F.W. Rolfe (1860–1913), whose novel *Hadrian the Seventh* (1904) Lewis and his brother read and found risible (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 143–44). The name is apt because the scientific name of the jackdaw is *corvus monedula* (Smilde).

② *an old experiment […] failed*

Lewis told a correspondent in July 1946 (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 717):

> About your not swallowing the Head, it's much nearer fact than you know. It is commonly done with cats' heads in Oxford laboratories and was really tried (unsuccessfully) on a human head in Germany. One can hardly satirise these people—the reality is always more incredible than what one invents.

IV

That evening Jane washed up under the attentive eye of Baron Corvo, the jackdaw, while the others[a] held council in the Blue Room. ①

"Well," said Ransom, as Grace Ironwood concluded reading from her notes. "That is the dream, and everything in it seems to be objective."

"Objective?" said Dimble. "I don't understand, sir.[b] You don't mean they could really have a thing like that?"

"What do you think, MacPhee?" asked Ransom.

"Oh aye, it's possible," said MacPhee. "You see it's an old experiment with animals' heads. They do it often in laboratories. You cut off a cat's head, maybe, and throw the body away. You can keep the head going for a bit if you supply it with blood at the right pressure." ②

"Fancy!" said Ivy Maggs.

"Do you mean, keep it *alive*?"[c] said Dimble.

"*Alive* is an ambiguous word. You can keep all the functions. It's what would be popularly called alive. But a human head—and consciousness—I don't know what would happen if you tried that."

"It has been tried," said Miss Ironwood. "A German tried it before the first war. With the head of a criminal."

"Is that a fact?" said MacPhee with great interest. "And do you know what result he got?"

"It failed. The head simply decayed in the ordinary way."

"I've had enough of this, I have," said Ivy Maggs, rising and abruptly leaving the room.

"Then this filthy abomination," said Dr. Dimble, "is real—not only a dream." His face was white and his expression strained. His wife's face, on the other hand, showed nothing more than that controlled distaste with which a lady of the old school listens to any disgusting detail when its mention becomes unavoidable.

"We have no evidence of that," said MacPhee. "I'm only stating the facts. What the girl has dreamed is possible."

"And what about this turban business," said Denniston, "this sort of swelling on top of the head?"

"You see what it *might* be," said the Director.

"I'm not sure that I do, sir,"[a] said Dimble.

---

[a] others] *BM*; Director *A*
[b] sir.] *BA*; Sir. *M*
[c] *alive*?"] *BA*; *alive*," *M*

"Supposing the dream to be veridical," said MacPhee. "You can guess what it would be. Once they'd got it kept alive, the first thing that would occur to boys like them would be to increase its brain. They'd try all sorts of stimulants. And then, maybe, they'd ease open the skullcap[b] and just—well, just let it boil over, as you might say. That's the idea, I don't doubt. A cerebral hypertrophy artificially induced to support a superhuman[c] power of ideation."

"Is it at all probable," said the Director, "that a hypertrophy like that would increase thinking power?"

"That seems to me the weak point," said Miss Ironwood. "I should have thought it was just as likely to produce lunacy—or nothing at all. But it *might* have the opposite effect."

There was a thoughtful silence.[d]

"Then what we are up against," said Dimble, "is a criminal's brain swollen to superhuman[e] proportions and experiencing a mode of consciousness which we can't imagine, but which is presumably a consciousness of agony and hatred."

"It's not certain," said Miss Ironwood, "that there would be very much actual pain. Some from the neck, perhaps, at first."

"What concerns us much more immediately," said MacPhee, "is to determine what conclusions we can draw from these carryings-on[f] with Alcasan's head and what practical steps should be taken on our part—always,[g] and simply as a working hypothesis, assuming the dream to be veridical."

"It tells us one thing straightaway,"[h] said Denniston.

"What's that?" asked MacPhee.

"That the enemy movement is international. To get that head they must have been hand-in-glove[i] with at least one foreign police force."

MacPhee rubbed his hands. "Man," he said, "you have the makings of a logical thinker. But the deduction's not all that certain. Bribery might account for it without actual consolidation."

"It tells us something in the long run even more important," said the Director.[j] "It means that if this technique is really successful, the Belbury people

---

[a] sir,"] *B*; Sir," *M*
[b] skullcap] *A*; skull-/cap *B* skull-cap *M*
[c] superhuman] *B*; super-human *M*
[d] There was a thoughtful silence.¶] *M only.*
☛ See Introduction 2 xl.
[e] superhuman] *BA*; super-human *M*
[f] carryings-on] *B*; carryings on *M*
[g] always,] *B*; always *M*
[h] straightaway,"] *BA*; straight away," *M*
[i] hand-in-glove] *BA*; hand in glove *M*
[j] Director.] *BM*; Director, *A*

① *"It is the beginning […] perhaps its food."*

See Filostrato's predictions in ch. 8 III. See also Preliminary Note A: "Men Without Chests".

have for all practical purposes discovered a way of making themselves immortal." There was a moment's silence, and then he continued: "It is the beginning of what is really a new species—the Chosen Heads who never die. They will call it the next step in evolution. And henceforward[a] all the creatures that you and I call human are mere candidates for admission to the new species or else its slaves—perhaps its food." ①

Men Without Chests

"The emergence of the Bodiless Men!" said Dimble.

"Very likely, very likely," said MacPhee, extending his snuff-box to the last speaker. It was refused, and he took a very deliberate pinch before proceeding. "But there's no good at all applying the forces of rhetoric to make ourselves skeery or daffing our own heads off our shoulders because some other fellows have had the shoulders taken from under their heads. I'll back the Director's head,[b] and yours[c] Dr. Dimble, and my own, against this lad's whether the brains is boiling out of it or no. Provided we use them. I should be glad to hear what practical measures on our side are suggested."

With these words he tapped his knuckles gently on his knee and stared hard at the Director.

"It is," said MacPhee, "a question I have ventured to propound before."

A sudden transformation, like the leaping up of a flame in embers, passed over Grace Ironwood's face. "Can the Director not be trusted to produce his own plan in his own time, Mr. MacPhee?" she said fiercely.

"By the same token, Doctor," said he, "can the Director's council not be trusted to hear his plan?"

"What do you mean, MacPhee?" asked Dimble.

"Mr. Director," said MacPhee. "You'll excuse me for speaking frankly. Your enemies have provided themselves with this Head. They have taken possession of Edgestow,[d] and they're in a fair way to suspend the laws of England. And still you tell us it is not time to move. If you had taken my advice six months ago we would have had an organisation all over this island by now and maybe a party in the House of Commons. I know well what you'll say—that those are not the right methods. And maybe no. But if you can neither take our advice nor give us anything to do, what are we all sitting here for? Have you seriously considered sending us away and getting some other colleagues that you *can* work with?"

"Dissolve the Company, do you mean?" said Dimble.

---

[a] henceforward] *BA*; henceforward, *M*
[b] head,] *B*; Head, *M*
[c] yours] *B*; yours, *M*
[d] Edgestow,] *BA*; Edgestow *M*

① *Do you think […] sucked us into itself, if you like.*

Ransom's words, "You never chose me. I never chose you," initially echo Christ's words to the disciples: "Ye have not chosen me". Christ continues, however, "but I have chosen you, and ordained you, that ye should go and bring forth fruit" (John 15: 16). The implication that Ransom and all the others at St. Anne's are equally chosen and ordained by God is clear. That apparently accidental events are also providential is assumed throughout the trilogy. Ransom's meeting with Malacandra-Oyarsa is brought about by evil men, but is also "not without the wisdom of Maleldil" (*Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 21 233), and also as natural "as when two men meet in a road" (13 v 308).

"Aye, I do," said MacPhee.

The Director looked up with a smile. "But," he said, "I have no power to dissolve it."

"In that case," said MacPhee, "I must ask what authority you had to bring it together?"

"I never brought it together," said the Director. Then, after glancing round the company, he added: "There is some strange misunderstanding here! Were you all under the impression I had *selected* you? Were[a] you?" he repeated, when no one answered.

"Well," said Dimble, "as regards myself I fully realise that the thing has come about more or less unconsciously—even[b] accidentally. There was no moment at which you asked me to join a definite movement, or anything of that kind. That is why I have always regarded myself as a sort of camp follower. I had assumed that the others were in a more regular position."

"You know why Camilla and I are here, sir,"[c] said Denniston. "We certainly didn't intend or foresee how we were going to be employed."

Grace Ironwood looked up with a set expression on her face,[d] which had grown rather pale. "Do you wish . . . ?" she began.[e]

The Director laid his hand on her arm. "No," he said, "no.[f] There is no need for all these stories to be told."

MacPhee's stern features relaxed into a broad grin. "I see what you're driving at," he said. "We've all been playing blind-man's[g] buff, I doubt. But I'll take leave to observe, Dr. Ransom, that you carry things a wee bit high. I don't just remember how you came to be called Director: but from that title and from one or two other indications a man would have thought you behaved more like the leader of an organisation than the host at a house-party."

"I am the Director," said Ransom, smiling. "Do you think I would claim the ① authority I do if the relation between us depended either on your choice or mine?

---

[a] you? Were] *A*; you?" ¶"Were *BM*

☛ A's reading tidies up a rather strange paragraph break between two speeches by the Director. In B & M this must be a hangover from some version of the text where something intervened between the two speeches. L includes this section, but, tantalisingly, at the bottom of a page (see Appendix A). We can see that even L's early draft had, "Have you been under the impression that I *selected* you?" This is followed by a cancelled paragraph beginning "There was no reply" and then the page ends. The speech ending "[…] I selected you?" thus endured from L through whatever revisions and re-writings happened, and the publication of B & M, until in A it was finally joined to what followed in an uninterrupted speech.

[b] —even] *B*; . . . even *M*

[c] sir,"] *B*; Sir," *M*

[d] face,] *B*; face *M*

[e] began.¶] *B*; began. *M*

[f] no.] *B*; No. *M*

[g] blind-man's] *BA*; blind man's *M*

You never chose me. I never chose you. Even the great Oyéresu whom I serve never chose me. I came into their worlds by what seemed, at first, a chance; as you came to me—as the very animals in this house first came to it. You and I have not started or devised this: it has descended on us—sucked us into itself, if you like. It is, no doubt, an organisation: but we are not the organisers. And that is why I have no authority to give any one of you permission to leave my household."

For a time there was complete silence in the Blue Room except for the crackling of the fire.

"If there's nothing more to discuss," said Grace Ironwood presently, "perhaps we had better leave the Director to rest."

MacPhee rose and dusted some snuff off the baggy knees of his trousers—thus preparing a wholly novel adventure for the mice when they next came out in obedience to the Director's whistle.

"I have no notion," he said, "of leaving this house if anyone wishes me to stay. But as regards the general hypothesis on which the Director appears to be acting and the very peculiar authority he claims, I absolutely reserve my judgement.[a] You know well, Mr. Director, in what sense I have, and in what sense I have not, complete confidence in yourself."

The Director laughed. "Heaven forbid," he said, "that I should claim to know what goes on in the two halves of your head, MacPhee, much less how you connect them. But I know—what matters much more—[b]the kind of confidence I have in you. But won't you sit down? There is much more to be said."

MacPhee resumed his chair,[c] Grace Ironwood, who had been sitting bolt upright in hers, relaxed,[d] and the Director continued.[e]

"We have learned to-night,"[f] he said, "if not what the real power behind our enemies is doing, at least the form in which it is embodied at Belbury. We therefore know something about one of the two attacks which are about to be made on our race. But I'm thinking of the other."

"Yes," said Camilla earnestly, "the[g] other."

"Meaning by that?" asked MacPhee.

"Meaning," said Ransom, "whatever is under Bragdon Wood. And I think what is under it is that old man in a mantle whom Jane found in a dark hole in her

---

[a] judgement.] *B*; judgment. *M*
[b] —what […] more—] *B*; (what […] more) *M*
[c] chair,] *BA*; chair; *M*
[d] relaxed,] *B*; relaxed *M*
[e] continued.] *A*; spoke. *BM*
[f] to-night,"] *BA*; tonight," *M*
[g] earnestly, "the] *B*; earnestly. "The *M*

dream."[a]

"You're still thinking about *that*?" said the Ulsterman.

A moment of silence ensued.[b]

"I am thinking of almost nothing else," said the Director. "We knew already that the enemy wanted the Wood. Some of us guessed why. Now Jane has seen—or, rather felt—in a vision what it is they are looking for in Bragdon. It may be the greater danger of the two. But what is certain is that the greatest danger of all is the junction of the enemies' forces. He is staking everything on that. When the new power from Belbury joins up with the old power under Bragdon Wood, Logres—indeed Man—will be almost surrounded. For us everything turns on preventing that junction. That is the point at which we must be ready both to kill and die. But we cannot strike yet. We cannot get into Bragdon and start excavating for ourselves. There must be a moment when they find him—it. I have no doubt we shall be told in one way or another. Till then we must wait."

"I don't believe a word of all that other story," said MacPhee.

"I thought," said Miss Ironwood, "we weren't to use words like *believe*. I thought we were only to state facts and exhibit implications."

"If you two quarrel much more," said the Director, "I think I'll make you marry one another."

V

At the beginning the grand mystery for the Company had been why the enemy wanted Bragdon Wood. The land was unsuitable and could be made fit to bear a building on the scale they proposed only by the costliest preliminary work; and Edgestow itself was not an obviously convenient place. By intense study in collaboration with Dr. Dimble[c] and despite the continued scepticism of MacPhee[d] the Director had at last come to a certain conclusion. Dimble and he and the Dennistons shared between them a knowledge of Arthurian Britain which orthodox scholarship will probably not reach for some centuries. They knew that Edgestow lay in what had been the very heart of ancient Logres, that the village of Cure Hardy preserved the name of Ozana le Cœur Hardi, and that an[e] historical Merlin had once

---

[a] And I think […] in her dream.] *A only.*
☛ One of the instances in which A introduces a new sentence, not to enable an exision, but because Lewis must have considered that B lacked clarity. See also 156[c] & 402[b].
[b] A moment of silence ensued.¶] *M only.*
☛ See Introduction 2 xl.
[c] Dimble] *BA*; Dimble, *M*
[d] MacPhee] *B*; MacPhee, *M*
[e] an] *A*; a *BM*

① *"What common measure […] by being Merlin?"*

For an extensive discussion of Renaissance attitudes to magic, see the opening pages of Lewis's *English Literature in the Sixteenth Century* (1–14). Like Dimble, Lewis discusses the differences between Medieval and Renaissance literature on the subject (8–9): "Faustus and Prospero and Archimago" are of course magicians in three famous Renaissance works—Marlowe's *Dr Faustus*, Shakespeare's *The Tempest*, and Spenser's *The Faerie Queene* I–II. Lewis makes it clear that the object of Renaissance magic (and science and politics) was power (*English Literature* 13–14), and that the danger of the high magic (*magia*) was its potential to descend to *goetia*, which puts the practitioner in the power of demons—as we see with Faustus (*English Literature* 7). The N.I.C.E., with its greed for power by any means and at any cost, displays the same ruthlessness as Bacon and Machiavelli (*English Literature* 13–14). See also Preliminary Note D: "Logres".

② *Paracelsus and Agrippa and the rest*

Lewis writes, "This high magic can be studied in Pico [della Mirandola (1463–94)], Ficino (1433–99), Paracelsus (1493–1541), Agrippa (1486–1535), or our own Dr. Dee [(1527–1608)]" (*English Literature* 8). All argued the utility and power of magic, but none achieved anything great or lasting thereby. John Dee the astrologer and crystallomancer died a pauper despite having enjoyed Elizabeth I's patronage (*Brewer's Dictionary*, "Dee"; *Oxford Companion to English Literature*, "Dee, Dr John"). Paracelsus advocated the application of alchemy to medicine, gained many enemies through his mysticism, and died just after being offered a permanent position in Salzburg (*Brewer's Dictionary*, "Paracelsus"; *Oxford Companion*, "Paracelsus"). Pico sought to syncretise Christianity, Platonism, Aristotelianism and Jewish Cabbalism, but some of his views were considered heretical (*Oxford Companion*, "Pico della Mirandola"); Ficino's fate was similar (*Oxford Companion*, "Ficino, Marsilio"). Agrippa wrote on occult topics and argued against the prosecution of witches, which laid him open to suspicion (*Oxford Companion*, "Agrippa, Henricus Cornelius").

③ *Bacon himself […] magicians "attained not to greatness and certainty of works."*

A paraphrase of an aphorism from Francis Bacon's *Novum Organon* (1620), to the effect that Magicians—together with Alchemists, Mathematicians and others who attempt "to interfere with Nature [*immiſcere Naturæ*)]"—do so with "slight endeavours and small success [*conatu levi, ſucceſſu tenui*" (I 5). Bacon also says that anything that magicians have managed to achieve is fit only "for admiration and novelty, not for fruit and utility [*ad admirationem et novitatem, non ad fructem et utilitatem*]" (I 85).

④ *Atlantean magic*

This is the art "brought to Western Europe after the fall of Númenor" (ch. 9 V 213). Tolkien's myth of Númenor, the island sunk beneath the sea through the pride of its inhabitants, was invented as part of the story of Middle Earth, which he created as the background for his invented languages, was his "personal alteration of the Atlantis myth and/or tradition, and accommodation of it to my general mythology" (Tolkien, *Letters of J.R.R. Tolkien* 361, see also 151, 186, 347).

worked in what was now Bragdon Wood.

What exactly he had done there they did not know; but they had all, by various routes, come too far either to consider his art mere legend and imposture, or to equate it exactly with what the Renaissance called Magic. Dimble even maintained that a good critic, by his sensibility alone, could detect the difference between the traces which the two things had left on literature. "What common measure is there," he would ask, "between ceremonial occultists like Faustus and Prospero and Archimago with their midnight studies, their forbidden books, their attendant fiends or elementals, and a figure like Merlin who seems to produce his results simply by being Merlin?" And Ransom agreed. He[a] thought that Merlin's art was the last survival of something older and different—something brought to Western Europe after the fall of Númenor[b] and going back to an era in which the general relations of mind and matter on this planet had been other than those we know. It had probably differed from Renaissance Magic profoundly. It had possibly (though this was doubtful) been less guilty: it had certainly been more effective. For Paracelsus and Agrippa and the rest had achieved little or nothing: Bacon himself—no enemy to magic except on this account—reported that the magicians "attained not to greatness and certainty of works." The whole Renaissance outburst of forbidden arts had, it seemed, been a method of losing one's soul on singularly unfavourable terms. But the older Art had been a different proposition.

Logres ① ② ③

But if the only possible attraction of Bragdon lay in its association with the last vestiges of Atlantean magic, this told the Company something else. It told them that the N.I.C.E., at its core, was not concerned solely with modern or materialistic forms of power. It told the Director, in fact, that there was Eldilic[c] energy and Eldilic[c] knowledge behind it. It was, of course, another question whether its human members knew of the dark powers who were their real organisers. And in the long run this question was not perhaps important. As Ransom himself had said more than once, "Whether they know it or whether they don't, much the same sort of things are going to happen. It's not a question of how the Belbury people are going to act—the Dark-Eldils will see to that—[d]but of how they will think about their actions. They'll go to Bragdon: it remains to be seen whether any of them will know the real reason why they're going there, or

④

[a] He] *BM*; They *A*

[b] Númenor] *ed.*; Numinor *BM* Atlantis *A*

☛ See 6[a] on the editorial use of "Númenor" and n. 4 facing this page on the connection between Númenor and Atlantis.

[c] Eldilic] *BA*; eldilic *M*

[d] —the Dark-Eldils will see to that—] *B*; (the dark-eldils will see to that) *M*

According to Lewis, Tolkien's "private mythology 'clicked' with this world at the moment when the participle *atlan* (fallen or shattered) which had been produced by sound laws with no anticipation of what it wd. lead to, when applied to the vanished land of Numenor, turned out to be so obviously connected with *our* vanished land of *Atlantis*" (*Collected Letters* vol. 3 140, see also 855). Tolkien adds a footnote to his discussion of "the *Akallabêth* or *Atalantie* (Downfall in Númenórean and Quenya)" in a letter: "It is a curious chance that the stem √*talat* used in Q[uenya] for "slipping, sliding, falling down", of which *atalantie* is a normal (in Q) noun-formation, should so much resemble Atlantis."

Lewis also equates Númenor and Atlantis in a poem called "The Last of the Wine" (*Poems* 54–55), published in *Punch* in December 1947. In the second quatrain he invites us to suppose

> A man to have come from Atlantis eastward sailing—
> Lemuria has fallen in the fury of a tidal wave,
> The cities are drowned, the pitiless all-prevailing
> Inhuman sea is Numinor's salt grave.

---

① *From their station […] elected invention.*

This is reminiscent of the great prose hymn that the Oyéresu of Malacandra and Perelandra sing at the end of *Perelandra*, in which they celebrate the variety and wonder and paradoxical arbitrariness of Maleldil in Creation. Two cantos run:

> He has immeasurable use for each thing that is made, that His love and splendour may flow forth like a strong river which has need of a great watercourse and fills alike the deep pools and the little crannies, that are filled equally and remain unequal; and when it has filled them brim full it flows over and makes new channels. We also have need beyond measure of all that He has made. Love me, my brothers, for I am infinitely necessary to you and for your delight I was made. Blessed be He!
>
> He has no need at all of anything that is made. An eldil is not more needful to Him than a grain of the Dust: a peopled world no more needful than a world that is empty: but needless alike, and what all add to Him is nothing. We also have no need of anything that is made. Love me, my brothers, for I am infinitely superfluous, and your love shall be like His, born neither of your need nor of my deserving, but a plain bounty. Blessed be He! (ch. 17 250)

whether they'll all fudge up some theory of soils, or air, or etheric tensions, to explain it."

Up to a certain point the Director had supposed that the powers for which the enemy hankered were resident in the mere site at Bragdon—for there is an old and wide-spread belief that locality itself is of importance in such matters. But from Jane's dream of the cold sleeper he had learned better. It[a] was something much more definite, something located under the soil of Bragdon Wood, something to be discovered by digging. It was, in fact, the body of Merlin. What the eldils had told him about the possibility of such discovery he had received, while they were with him, almost without wonder. It was no wonder to them. In their eyes the normal Tellurian modes of being—engendering and birth and death and decay—which are to us the framework of thought, were no less wonderful than the countless other patterns of being which were continually present to their unsleeping minds. To those high creatures whose activity builds what we call Nature, nothing is "natural." From their station the essential arbitrariness (so to call it) of every actual creation is ceaselessly visible; for them there are no basic assumptions: all springs with the wilful beauty of a jest or a tune from that miraculous moment of self-limitation wherein the Infinite, rejecting a myriad possibilities, throws out of Himself the positive and elected invention. That a body should lie uncorrupted for fifteen hundred years[b] did not seem strange to them; they knew worlds where there was no corruption at all. That its individual life should remain latent in it all that time[c] was to them no more strange: they had seen innumerable different modes in which soul and matter could be combined and separated, separated without loss of reciprocal influence, combined without true incarnation, fused so utterly as to be a third thing, or periodically brought together in a union as short, and as momentous, as the nuptial embrace. It was not as a marvel in natural philosophy, but as an information in time of war that they brought the Director their tidings. Merlin had not died. His life had been hidden, side-tracked, moved out of our one-dimensioned time, for fifteen centuries. But under certain conditions it would return to his body.

① *Philosophies of Time*

They had not told him this till recently because they had not known it. One of Ransom's greatest difficulties in disputing with MacPhee, who consistently professed to disbelieve the very existence of the eldils,[d] was that MacPhee made the common, but curious assumption that if there are creatures wiser and stronger than man they

[a] It] *BM*; There *A*
[b] years] *A*; years, *BM*
[c] time] *A*; time, *BM*
[d] MacPhee, who […] eldils,] *B*; MacPhee (who […] eldils) *M*

① *Despair of objective truth […] the* Anima Mundi *of the magicians.*

In the thought of Henri Bergson (1859–1941), the *élan vital* is the life force driving evolution. Such a belief will tend to encourage the hypostatizing of the abstraction "life", and Lewis quotes Bergson twice in *Studies in Words* (300 & 302) to illustrate just this. Weston similarly reifies (or deifies) "Life" in his speech to Oyarsa on Mars (*Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 20 220–28): see Introduction 3 lxxvi–lxxix.

Lewis argues here that the magicians of the Renaissance combined a thirst for power with belief in pan-psychism (considering Nature is a kind of super-organism, alive and even conscious) or the *anima mundi* (an animate universe with a world soul), hoping that that the skilled magician could control sentient Nature directly, not via machines and engines, "as when one man commandeth another who is in his power" (Campanella, *De Rereum Sensu et Magia* IV ii, cited by Lewis, *English Literature* 6).

The scientists of the N.I.C.E. also seek power, not truth, so Ransom has good reason to fear: the remainder of the chapter elucidates his fears.

② *Dreams of […] Man as God.*

See ch. 8 III 188–89.

③ *nineteenth-century scientists […] that tradition.*

Ransom's thoughts recall Lewis's description of Kirkpatrick, the real-life model for MacPhee, as an atheist, "a 'Rationalist' of the old, high and dry nineteenth-century type. For Atheism has come down in the world since those days, and mixed itself with politics and learned to dabble in dirt" (*Surprised by Joy* 113).

must be forthwith omniscient and omnipotent. In vain did Ransom endeavour[a] to explain the truth. Doubtless[b] the great beings who now so often came to him had power sufficient to sweep Belbury from the face of England and England from the face of the globe; perhaps[c] to blot the globe itself out of existence. But no power of that kind would be used. Nor had they any direct vision into the minds of men. It was in a different place, and approaching their knowledge from the other side, that they had discovered the state of Merlin: not from inspection of the thing that slept under Bragdon Wood, but from observing a certain unique configuration in that place where those things remain that are taken off time's mainroad, behind the invisible hedges, into the unimaginable fields. Not all the times that are outside the present are therefore past or future.

Philosophies of Time

It was this that kept the Director wakeful, with knitted brow, in the small cold hours of that morning when the others had left him. There was no doubt in his mind now that the enemy had bought Bragdon to find Merlin: and if they found him they would re-awake him. The old Druid would inevitably cast in his lot with the new planners—[d]what could prevent his doing so? A junction would be effected between two kinds of power which between them would determine the fate of our planet. Doubtless that had been the will of the Dark-Eldils[e] for centuries. The physical sciences, good and innocent in themselves, had already, even in Ransom's own time, begun to be warped, had been subtly manœuvred in a certain direction. Despair of objective truth had been increasingly insinuated into the scientists; ① indifference to it, and a concentration upon mere power, had been the result. Babble about the *élan vital* and flirtations with pan-psychism[f] were bidding fair to restore the *Anima Mundi* of the magicians. Dreams of the far future destiny of man were ② dragging up from its shallow and unquiet grave the old dream of Man as God. The very experiences of the dissecting-room[g] and the pathological laboratory were breeding a conviction that the stifling of all deep-set repugnances was the first essential for progress. And now[h] all this had reached the stage at which its dark contrivers thought they could safely begin to bend it back so that it would meet that other and earlier kind of power. Indeed,[i] they were choosing the first moment at which this could have been done. You could not have done it with nineteenth- ③

---

[a] endeavour] *B*; endeavor *M*
☛ Inadvertent use of American spelling by M's compositor (see *Webster's*).
[b] Doubtless] *B*; Doubtless, *M*
[c] perhaps] *B*; perhaps, *M*
[d] planners—] *BM*; planners. *A*
[e] Dark-Eldils] *BA*; dark-eldils *M*
[f] pan-psychism] *BA*; panpsychism *M*
[g] dissecting-room] *B*; dissection room *M*
[h] now] *BA*; now, *M*
[i] Indeed,] *BA*; Indeed *M*

① *diuturnity*

Long-enduring or long-continuing nature.

century scientists. Their firm objective materialism would have excluded it from their minds; and even if they could have been made to believe, their inherited morality would have kept them from touching dirt. MacPhee was a survivor from that tradition. It was different now. Perhaps few or none of the people at Belbury knew what was happening:[a] but once it happened, they would be like straw in fire. What should they find incredible, since they believed no longer in a rational universe? What should they regard as too obscene, since they held that all morality was a mere subjective by-product[b] of the physical and economic situations of men? The time was ripe. From the point of view which is accepted in hell,[c] the whole history of our Earth had led up to this moment. There was now at last a real chance for fallen Man to shake off that limitation of his powers which mercy had imposed upon him as a protection from the full results of his fall. If this succeeded, hell[d] would be at last incarnate. Bad men, while still in the body, still crawling on this little globe, would enter that state which, heretofore, they had entered only after death, would have the diuturnity and power of evil spirits. Nature, all over the globe of Tellus, would become their slave:[e] and of that dominion no end, before the end of time itself, could be certainly foreseen.

Men Without Chests

[a] happening:] *BA*; happening; *M*
[b] by-product] *BA*; bye-product *M*
[c] hell,] *BA*; Hell, *M*
[d] hell] *BA*; Hell *M*
[e] slave:] *B*; slave; *M*

① *He was, of course, a materialist […] it is better not to disbelieve in them.*

Lewis, remembering his unregenerate mind-set, told a correspondent in 1940,

> I embraced the excitement of polytheism or demonology when I happened to want it, but became a materialist if some old nursery fears, in darkness and solitude, threatened to make that sort of stuff a little more exciting than I wanted. I was nearly religious when that mood offered comfort, and sternly sceptical if it threatened to impose any obligation. (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 449)

As the materialist he wants to be, or as the devil-worshipper into which the N.I.C.E. will try to turn him, Mark is equally defenceless against his own fears and against the powers of darkness. Lewis writes in the preface to *The Screwtape Letters* (10):

> There are two equal and opposite errors into which our race can fall about the devils. One is to disbelieve in their existence. The other is to believe, and to feel an excessive and unhealthy interest in them. They themselves are equally pleased by both errors and hail a materialist or a magician with the same delight.

TEN

The Conquered City

I

UP till now, whatever his days had been like, Mark had usually slept well:[a] this night,[b] sleep failed him. He had not written to Jane; he had spent the day keeping out of sight and doing nothing in particular. The wakeful night moved all his fears on to a new level. He was, of course, a materialist in theory:[c] and, also in theory,[d] he was past ① the age at which one can have night fears. But now, as the wind rattled his window hour after hour, he felt the nursery[e] terrors again: the old exquisite thrill, as of cold fingers delicately travelling down his back. Materialism is in fact no protection. Those who seek it in that hope (they are not a negligible class) will be disappointed. The thing you fear is impossible. Well and good. Can you therefore cease to fear it? Not here and now. And what then? If you must see ghosts[f] it is better not to disbelieve in them.

He[g] was called earlier than usual, and with his tea came a note. The Deputy Director sent his compliments and must ask Mr. Studdock to call on him *instantly* about a most urgent and distressing matter. Mark dressed and obeyed.

In Wither's room he found Wither and Miss Hardcastle. To Mark's surprise and, momentarily,[h] to his relief Wither showed no recollection of their last meeting. Indeed, his manner was genial, even deferential, though extremely grave.

"Good morning, good morning, Mr. Studdock," he said. "It is with the greatest regret that I—er—in short, I would not have kept you from your breakfast unless I had felt that in your own interest[i] you should be placed in full possession of the facts at the earliest possible moment. You will of course[j] regard all that I am about to say as strictly confidential. The matter is a distressing or at least an

---

[a] well:] *B*; well; *M*
[b] night,] *B*; night *M*
[c] theory:] *B*; theory; *M*
[d] , also in theory,] *B*; (also in theory) *M*
[e] the nursery] *B*; those old *M*
☛ Possibly M's editor considered "nursery terrors" a redundant repetition of "night fears", or that the term was not well known in America. Neither the *NED* nor *Webster's* has the phrase.
[f] ghosts] *B*; ghosts, *M*
[g] He] *BM*; Mark *A*
[h] , momentarily,] *B*; (momentarily) *M*
[i] interest] *A*; interests *BM*
☛Either is possible here (*NED*, "Interest" *sb.* 2. c), so I follow the copy-text.
[j] will of course] *B*; will, of course, *M*

embarrassing one. I feel sure that as the conversation proceeds (pray be seated, Mr. Studdock) you will realise in your present situation how very wise we have been in securing from the outset a police force—to give it that rather unfortunate name—of our own."

Mark licked his lips and sat down.

"My reluctance to raise the question," continued Wither, "would, however,[a] be very much more serious if I did not feel able to assure you—in *advance*[b] you understand—of the complete confidence which we all feel in you and which I very much hoped" (here for the first time he looked Mark in the eyes) "you were beginning to reciprocate. We regard ourselves here as being so many brothers and—er—sisters: so that whatever passes between us in this room can be regarded as confidential in the fullest possible sense of the word, and I take it we shall all feel entitled to discuss the subject I am about to mention in the most human and informal manner possible."

Miss Hardcastle's voice, suddenly breaking[c] in, had an effect not wholly unlike that of a pistol shot.

"You have lost your wallet, Studdock," she said.

"My—my wallet?" said Mark.

"Yes. Wallet. Pocket-book.[d] Thing you keep notes and letters in."

"Yes. I have. Have you found it?"

"Does it contain three pounds ten, counterfoil of postal order for five shillings, letters from a woman signing herself Myrtle, from the Bursar of Bracton, from G. Hernshaw, F. A. Browne, M. Belcher, and a bill for a dress-suit[e] from Simonds and Son, 32A[f] Market Street, Edgestow?"

"Well, more or less so."

"There it is," said Miss Hardcastle pointing to the table. "No you don't!" she added as Mark made a step towards it.[g]

"What on earth is all this about?" said Mark. His tone was that which I think almost any man would have used in the circumstances but which policemen are apt to describe as "blustering."

"None of that![h]" said Miss Hardcastle. "This wallet was found in the grass beside the road about five yards away from Hingest's body."

---

[a] would, however,] *BA*; would however *M*
[b] *advance*] *BA*; *advance*, *M*
[c] breaking] *BM*; broke *A*
[d] Pocket-book.] *B*; Pocket book. *M*
[e] dress-suit] *BA*; dress suit *M*
[f] 32A] *BA*; 32a *M*
[g] it. ¶] *BM*; it. *A*
[h] that!] *A*; that, *BM*

① *ultra vires*

Beyond [its] powers.

"My God!" said Studdock. "You don't mean . . . the thing's absurd."

"There's no use appealing to *me*," said Miss Hardcastle. "I'm not a solicitor, nor a jury, nor a judge. I'm only a policewoman. I'm telling you the facts."

"Do I understand that I'm suspected of murdering Hingest?"

"I don't really think," said the Deputy Director, "that you need have the slightest apprehension that there is, at this stage, any radical difference between your colleagues and yourself as to the light in which this very painful matter should be regarded. The question is really a constitutional one——"[a]

"Constitutional?" said Mark angrily. "If I understand her, Miss Hardcastle is accusing me of murder."

Wither's eyes looked at him as if from an infinite distance. "Oh," said he, "I don't really think that does justice to Miss Hardcastle's position. That element in the Institute which she represents would be strictly *ultra vires* in doing anything of the kind within the N.I.C.E.—supposing, but purely of course for purposes of[b] argument, that they wished, or should wish at a later stage, to do so—while in relation to the outside authorities their function,[c] however we define it, would be quite inconsistent with any action of the sort; at least[d] in the sense in which I understand you to be using the words."

"But it's the outside authorities with whom I'm concerned, I suppose," said Mark. His mouth had become dry and he had difficulty in making himself audible. "As far as I can understand, Miss Hardcastle means I'm going to be arrested."

"On the contrary," said Wither. "This is precisely one of those cases in which you see the enormous value of possessing our own executive. Here is a matter which might, I fear, cause you very considerable inconvenience if the ordinary police had discovered the wallet or if we were in the position of an ordinary citizen who felt it his duty—as we should ourselves feel it our duty if we ever came to be in that very different situation—to hand over the wallet to them. I do not know if Miss Hardcastle has made it perfectly clear to you that it was her officers, and they only, who have made this—er—embarrassing discovery."

"What on earth do you mean?" said Mark. "If Miss Hardcastle does not think there's a prima facie[e] case against me, why am I being arraigned in this way at all? And if she does, how can she avoid informing the authorities?"

"My dear friend," said Wither in an antediluvian tone, "there is not the

---

[a] one——"] *BA*; one—" *M*
[b] of] *MA*; or *B*
☛ Obvious error in B, corrected in A's revision.
[c] their function,] *BM*; her function— *A*
[d] least] *B*; least, *M*
[e] prima facie] *BA*; *prima facie M*

slightest desire on the part of the Committee to insist on defining, in cases of this sort, the powers of action of our own police, much less, what is here in question,[a] their powers of inaction. I do not think anyone had suggested that Miss Hardcastle should be *obliged*—in any sense that limited her own initiative—to communicate to outside authorities, who by their very organisation must be supposed to be less adapted for dealing with such imponderable and quasi-technical inquiries as will often arise, any facts acquired by her and her staff in the course of their internal functioning within the N.I.C.E."

"Do I understand," said Mark, "that Miss Hardcastle thinks she has facts justifying my arrest for the murder of Mr. Hingest, but is kindly offering to suppress them?"

"You got it now, Studdock," said the Fairy. A moment later,[b] for the first time in Mark's experience, she actually lit[c] her cheroot, blew a cloud of smoke, and smiled, or at least drew back her lips so that the teeth became visible.

"But that's not what I want," said Mark. This was not quite true. The idea of having the thing hushed up in any way and on almost any terms when it first presented itself a few seconds ago had come like air to one suffocating. But something like citizenship was still alive in him and he proceeded, almost without noticing this emotion, to follow a different line. "I don't want that," he said, speaking rather too loud,[d] "I'm an innocent man. I think I'd better go to the police—the *real* police, I mean—at once."

"If you *want* to be tried for your life," said the Fairy, "that's another matter."

"I want to be vindicated," said Mark. "The charge would fall to pieces at once. There was no conceivable motive. And I have an alibi.[e] Everyone knows I slept here that night."

"Really?" said the Fairy.

"What do you mean?" said Mark.

"There's always a *motive*, you know," said she, "for[f] anyone murdering anyone. The police are only human. When the machinery's started they naturally want a conviction."

Mark assured himself he was not frightened. If only Wither didn't keep all his windows shut and then have a roaring fire!

---

[a] , what […] question,] *BA*; (what […] question) *M*
[b] later,] *B*; later *M*
[c] lit] *B*; bit *M*
☛ M's reading is clearly an error: there is nothing new about Hardcastle's biting her cheroot: habitually "she rolled or chewed a long black cheroot, unlit, between her teeth" (59).
[d] loud,] *BA*; loud. *M*
[e] alibi.] *BA*; *alibi. M*
[f] she, "for] *BA*; she. "For *M*

① *sine qua non*

[Cause] without which not—an indispensable condition.

"There's a letter you wrote," said the Fairy.

"What letter?"

"A letter, to a Mr. Pelham, of your own College, dated six weeks ago, in which you say, 'I wish Bill the Blizzard could be moved to a better world.' "

Like a sharp physical pain the memory of that scribbled note came back to Mark. It was the sort of silly jocularity one used in the Progressive Element—the kind of thing that might be said a dozen times a day in Bracton about an opponent or even about a bore.

"How does that letter come to be in your hands?" said Mark.

"I think, Mr. Studdock," said the Deputy Director, "it would be very improper to suggest that Miss Hardcastle should give any kind of exposition—in detail, I mean—of the actual working of the Institutional Police. In saying this[a] I do not mean for one moment to deny that the fullest possible confidence between all the members of the N.I.C.E. is one of the most valuable characteristics it can have, and, indeed, a *sine qua non* of that really concrete and organic life which we ① expect it to develop. But there are necessarily certain spheres—not sharply defined, of course, but inevitably revealing themselves in response to the environment and obedience to the indwelling *ethos* or dialectic of the whole—in which a confidence that involved the verbal interchange of *facts*[b] would defeat its own end."

"You don't suppose," said Mark, "that anyone could take that letter to be meant seriously?"

"Ever tried to make a policeman understand anything?" said the Fairy. "I mean what you call a *real* policeman."

Mark said nothing.

"And I don't think the alibi[c] is specially good," said the Fairy. You were seen talking to Bill at dinner. You were seen going out of the front door with him when he left. You were not seen coming back. Nothing is known of your movements till breakfast-time[d] next morning. If you had gone with him by car to the scene of the murder you would have had ample time to walk back and go to bed by about two-fifteen.[e] Frosty night, you know. No reason why your shoes should have been specially muddy or anything of that sort."

"If I might pick up a point made by Miss Hardcastle," said Wither, "this is a very good illustration of the immense importance of the Institutional Police. There are so many fine shades involved which it would be unreasonable to expect the

---

[a] this] *B*; this, *M*
[b] *facts*] *B*; facts *M*
[c] alibi] *BA*; *alibi M*
[d] breakfast-time] *BA*; breakfast time *M*
[e] two-fifteen.] *A*; two fifteen. *M* 2.15. *B*

① *the King*

King George VI (1936–52).

② *The moment of Mark's decision had passed by him without his noticing it.*

This is the second occasion that Mark has made an important moral choice almost in near-absence of mind. The first instance is in ch. 6 III, where Mark does not wish to destroy the intimacy that he feels he is beginning to enjoy at Belbury (see Preliminary Note C: "The Inner Ring"); now he does so in fear of his life: he realises two pages after this that "the threat of dismissal was now a threat of hanging" (ch. 10 I 224).

ordinary authorities to understand but which, so long as they remain, so to speak, in our own family circle (I look upon the N.I.C.E., Mr. Studdock, as one great family),[a] need develop no tendency to lead to any miscarriage of justice."

Owing to some mental confusion[b] which had before now assailed him in dentists' operating-rooms[c] and in the studies of headmasters,[d] Mark began almost to identify the situation which seemed to be imprisoning him with his literal imprisonment by the four walls of that hot room. If only he could once get out of it, on any terms, out into the free air and sunlight, away over the countryside, away from the recurrent creak of the Deputy Director's collar and the red stains on the end of Miss Hardcastle's cheroot and the picture of the King which hung above the ① fireplace!

"You really advise me, sir,"[e] he said, "not to go to the police?"

"To the police?" said Wither as if this idea were completely new. "I don't think, Mr. Studdock, that anyone had quite contemplated your taking any irrevocable action of that sort. It might even be argued that by such an action you would be guilty—unintentionally guilty, I hasten to add—of some degree of disloyalty to your colleagues and specially to Miss Hardcastle. You would, of course, be placing yourself outside our protection.[f] . . ."

"That's the point, Studdock," said the Fairy. "Once you are in the hands of the police you are in the hands of the police."

The moment of Mark's decision had passed by him without his noticing it. ②

"Well," he said,[g] "what do you propose to do?"

"Me?" said the Fairy. "Sit tight. It's lucky for you that it was we and not some outsider who found the wallet."

"Not only fortunate for—er—Mr. Studdock," added Wither gently, "but for the whole N.I.C.E. We could not have been indifferent . . ."

"There's only one snag," said the Fairy, "and that is that we haven't got your letter to Pelham. Only a copy. But with any luck, nothing will come of that."

"Then there's nothing to be done at present?" said Mark.

"No," said Wither. "No. No immediate action of any official character. It is, of course, very advisable that you should act, as I am sure you will, with the greatest

---

[a] family),] *A*; family) *BM*
[b] confusion] *B*; confusion, *M*
[c] operating-rooms] *B*; operating rooms *M*
[d] headmasters,] *B*; Headmasters, *M*
[e] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*
[f] protection. *BA*; protection *M*
[g] said,] *M*; said. *B*
☛ The sentence quoted continues (with a lower-case letter) after "said", so M's comma is more appropriate.

prudence and—er—er—caution for the next few months. As long as you are with us, Scotland Yard would, I feel, see the inconvenience of trying to act unless they had a very clear case indeed. It is no doubt probable that some—er—some trial of strength between the ordinary executive and our own organisation will take place within the next six months:[a] but I think it very unlikely they would choose to make this a test case."

Wither's attitude was paternal.[b]

"But do you mean they suspect me already?" said Mark.

"We'll hope not," said the Fairy. "Of course they want a prisoner—that's only natural. But they'd a damn sight rather have one who doesn't involve them in searching the premises of the N.I.C.E."

"But, look here, damn it!" said Mark. "Aren't you hoping to catch the thief in a day or two? Aren't you going to do *anything*?"

"The thief?" said Wither. "There has been no suggestion so far that the body was rifled."

"I mean the thief who stole my wallet."

"Oh—ah—your wallet," said the other,[c] very gently stroking his refined, handsome face. "I see. I understand, do I, that you are advancing a charge of theft against some person or persons unknown——"[d]

"But,[e] good God!" shouted Mark, "were[f] you not assuming that someone stole it? Do you think I was there myself? Do *you* both think I am a murderer?"

"Please!" said the Deputy Director, "please, Mr. Studdock, you really must not shout. Quite apart from the indiscretion of it, I must remind you that you are in the presence of a lady. As far as I can remember, nothing has been said on our side about murder, and no charge of any sort has[g] been made. My only anxiety is to make perfectly clear what we are all doing. There are, of course, certain lines of conduct and a certain mode of procedure which it would be theoretically possible for you to adopt and which would make it very difficult for us to continue the discussion. I am sure Miss Hardcastle agrees with me."

"It's all one to me," said the Fairy. "Why Studdock should start bellowing at us because we are trying to keep him out of the dock, I don't know. But that's for

---

[a] months:] *B*; months; *M*
[b] Wither's attitude was paternal. ¶] *M only.*
☛ See Introduction 2 xl.
[c] other,] *BA*; other *M*
[d] unknown——"] *BA*; unknown—" *M*
[e] "But,] *BA*; "But *M*
[f] Mark, "were] *BA*; Mark. "Were *M*
[g] has] *MA*; had *B*
☛ A compositor's error in B but not in M, corrected in A.

him to decide. I've got a busy day and don't want to hang about here all morning."

"Really," said, Mark, "I should have thought it was excusable to——"[a]

"Pray compose yourself, Mr. Studdock," said Wither. "As I said before, we look upon ourselves as one family and nothing like a formal apology is required. We all understand one another and all dislike—er—scenes. I might perhaps be allowed to mention, in the friendliest possible manner, that any instability of temperament would be viewed by the Committee as—well, as not very favourable to the confirmation of your appointment. We are all speaking, of course, in the strictest confidence."

Mark was far past bothering about the job for its own sake:[b] but he realised that the threat of dismissal was now a threat of hanging.

"I'm sorry if I was rude," he said at last.[c] "What do you advise me to do?"

"Don't put your nose outside Belbury, Studdock," said the Fairy.

"I do not think Miss Hardcastle could have given you better advice," said Wither. "And now that Mrs. Studdock is going to join you here,[d] this temporary captivity—I am using that word, you will understand, in a metaphorical sense—will not be a serious hardship. You must look upon this as your *home*, Mr. Studdock."

"Oh . . . that reminds me, sir,"[e] said Mark. "I'm not really quite sure about having my wife here. As a matter of fact she's not in very good health——"[f]

"But surely, in that case, you must be all the more anxious to have her here?"

"I don't believe it would suit her, sir."[g]

The D.D.'s eyes wandered and his voice became lower.

"I had almost forgotten, Mr. Studdock," he said, "to congratulate you on your introduction to our Head. It marks an important transition in your career. We all now feel that you are really one of us in a deeper sense. I am sure nothing is further from your intention than to repel[h] the friendly—the almost fatherly—concern he feels about you. He is very anxious to welcome Mrs. Studdock among us at the earliest opportunity."

"Why?" said Mark suddenly.

Wither looked at Mark with an indescribable smile.

---

[a] to——"] *BA*; to . . ." *M*
[b] sake:] *B*; sake; *M*
[c] said at last.] *BM*; said Mark. *A*
[d] here,] *A*; here *BM*
[e] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*
[f] health——"] *BA*; health—" *M*
[g] sir."] *BA*; Sir." *M*
[h] repel] *M*; repell *B*
☛A mis-spelling in B.

① *Those who know best […] whatever it was, vanished.*

In this chapter the hints that Wither is more than just an absent-minded old gentleman become stronger. On the previous page his face is described as looking suddenly like that of an animal, unhuman (p. 225) and here Lewis states clearly that either his "strong personality [is] in its last decay" or that his soul has "lost the intellectual good": something about Wither is terribly wrong, but we are not yet shown or told exactly what. However, in Dante, "Those who have lost the good of the intellect (*Ch'hanno perduto 'l ben dello intelletto*)" are those that are in Hell (*Inferno* III 6).

This passage enables the reader to hope that the N.I.C.E. will not prevail, and that Mark will be redeemed, because the authorial intrusion of "Those who know best […]" suggests a leisurely speculation about Mark's experience after everything is all over and Mark has a chance to wonder about and discuss his experiences with others.

"My dear boy," he said. "Unity, you know. The family circle. She'd—she'd be company for Miss Hardcastle!" Before Mark had recovered from this staggeringly new conception, Wither rose and shuffled towards the door. He paused with one hand on the handle and laid the other on Mark's shoulder.

"You[a] must be hungry for your breakfast," he said. "Don't let me delay you. Behave with the greatest caution. And—and—" here[b] his face suddenly changed. The widely opened mouth looked all at once like the mouth of some enraged animal: what had been the senile vagueness of the eyes became an absence of all specifically human expression. "And bring the girl. Do you understand? Get your wife," he added. "The Head . . . he's not patient."

II

As Mark closed the door behind him he immediately thought "Now! They're both in there together. Safe for a minute at least." Without even waiting to get his hat[c] he walked briskly to the front door and down the drive. Nothing but physical impossibility would stop him from going to Edgestow and warning Jane. After that he had no plans. Even the vague idea of escaping to America which, in a simpler age, comforted so many a fugitive, was denied him. He had already read in the papers the warm approval of the N.I.C.E. and all its works which came from the United States and from Russia. Some poor tool just like himself had written them. Its claws were embedded in every country: on the liner, if he should ever succeed in sailing,[d] on the tender, if he should ever make some foreign port,[e] its ministers would be waiting for him.

Now he was past the road; he was in the belt of trees. Scarcely a minute had passed since he had left the D.D.'s office and no one had overtaken him. But yesterday's adventure was happening over again. A tall, stooped, shuffling, creaking figure, humming a tune, barred his way. Mark had never fought. Ancestral impulses lodged in his body—that body which was in so many ways wiser than his mind—directed the blow which he aimed at the head of this senile obstructor. But there was no impact. The shape had suddenly vanished.

Those who know best were never fully agreed as to the explanation of this ①

[a] ¶"You] *BM*; "You *A*
[b] and—" here] *M*; and"—here *BA*
☛The trailing-away is part of Wither's speech, so the dash should be enclosed in the quotation marks.
[c] hat] *BA*; hat, *M*
[d] sailing,] *B*; sailing; *M*
[e] port,] *B*; port; *M*

episode. It may have been that Mark, both then and on the previous day, being overwrought, saw an[a] hallucination of Wither where Wither was not. It may be that the continual appearance of Wither which at almost all hours haunted so many rooms and corridors of Belbury was, in one well-verified sense of the word,[b] a ghost—one of those sensory impressions which a strong personality in its last decay can imprint, most commonly after death but sometimes before it, on the very structure of a building, and which are removed not by exorcism but by architectural alterations. Or it may, after all, be that souls who have lost the intellectual good do indeed receive in return, and for a short period, the vain privilege of thus reproducing themselves in many places as wraiths. At any rate the thing, whatever it was, vanished.

The path ran diagonally across a field in grass, now powdered with frost, and the sky was hazy blue. Then came a stile:[c] after that the path ran for three fields along the edge of a spinney. Then a little to the left, past the back parts of a farm, then along a ride through a wood. After that the spire of Courthampton was in sight; Mark's feet had now got warm and he was beginning to feel hungry. Then he went across a road, through a herd of cattle that put down their heads and snorted at him, across a stream by a foot-bridge,[d] and so into the frozen ruts of the lane that led him into Courthampton.

The first thing he saw as he came into the village street was a farm-cart.[e] A woman and three children sat beside the man who was driving it, and[f] in the cart were piled chests of drawers, bedsteads, mattresses, boxes, and a canary in a cage. Immediately after it came a man and woman and child on foot wheeling a perambulator:[g] it also was piled with small household property. After that came a family pushing a hand-cart, and then a heavily loaded trap, and then an old car, blowing its horn incessantly but unable to get out of its place in the procession. A steady stream of such traffic was passing through the village. Mark had never seen war: if he had he would have recognised at once the signs of flight.[h] In all those plodding horses and men and in all those loaded vehicles he would have read clearly the message[i] "Enemy behind."

---

[a] an] *A*; a *BM*
[b] , in […] word,] *BA*; (in […] word) *M*
[c] stile:] *B*; stile; *M*
[d] foot-bridge] *BA*; foot bridge *M*
[e] farm-cart.] *BA*; farm cart *M*
[f] , and] *BA*; and *M*
[g] perambulator:] *BA*; perambulator; *M*
[h] flight.] *BM*; flight, *A*
[i] message] *BA*; message, *M*

① *a terror*

A situation "in which the general community live in dread of death or outrage", a usage dating from the French Revolution (*NED*, "Terror" *sb.* 4)

The traffic was so continuous that it[a] took him a long time to get to the cross-roads[b] by the pub,[c] where he could find a glazed and framed table of buses.[d] There would not be one to Edgestow till twelve-fifteen.[e] He hung about, understanding nothing of what he saw, but wondering; Courthampton was normally a very quiet village. By a happy, and not uncommon,[f] illusion he felt less endangered now that Belbury was out of sight, and thought surprisingly little about his future. He thought sometimes about Jane, and sometimes about bacon and eggs, and fried fish, and dark, fragrant streams of coffee pouring into large cups. At eleven-thirty[g] the pub opened. He went in and ordered a pint and some bread and cheese.

The bar was at first empty. During the next half-hour[h] men dropped in one by one till about four were present. They did not at first talk about the unhappy procession which continued all this time to pass the windows. For some time indeed they did not talk at all. Then a very little man with a face like an old potato observed to no one in particular, "I seen old Rumbold the other night." No one replied for five minutes and then a very young man in leggings said, "I reckon he's sorry he ever tried it." In this way conversation about Rumbold trickled on for some time. It was only when the subject of Rumbold was thoroughly exhausted that the talk, very indirectly and by gradual stages, began to throw some light on the stream of refugees.

"Still coming out," said one man.

"Ah," said another.

"Can't be many left there by now."

"Don't know where they'll all get in, I'm sure."

Little by little the whole thing came out. These were the refugees from Edgestow. Some had been turned out of their houses, some scared by the riots,[i] and still more by the restoration of order. Something of[j] a terror appeared to have been established in the town. ①

---

[a] it] *BM*; It *A*

[b] cross-roads] *A*; crossroads *M* cross-road *B*

☛ See note to 71[d].

[c] pub,] *A*; pub *BM*

[d] buses.] *BA*; busses *M*

[e] twelve-fifteen.] *A*; twelve fifteen *M* 12.15. *B*

[f] uncommon,] *B*; uncommon *M*

[g] eleven-thirty] *A*; eleven thirty *M* 11.30 *B*

[h] half-hour] *BA*; half hour *M*

[i] riots,] *A*; riots *BM*

[j] of] *A*; like *BM*

☛A's reading is stronger: "something like" merely indicates that the situation in Edgestow can be compared to "a terror" (see note 1 facing this page), while "something of a terror" asserts that Edgestow is, to some degree, living through a terror (*NED*, "Something" A. *sb.* 2. c).

① *They never ought to have brought those Welsh and Irish.*

Mrs Dimble, in her more cultured idiom, also complains about the alien workmen brought in by the N.I.C.E. (ch. 4 I), and we learn that this is a deliberate policy (ch. 6 II–III), in order to foment problems and bring Edgestow under the direct control of the N.I.C.E. that is depicted in this chapter on "The Conquered City".

"They[a] tell me there were two hundred arrests yesterday," said the landlord.

"Ah,"[b] said the young man. "They're hard cases[c] those N.I.C.E. police, every one of them. They put the wind up my old Dad proper, I tell 'ee." He ended with a laugh.

" 'Taint[d] the police so much as the workmen by what I hear," said another. "They never ought to have brought those Welsh and Irish."

But[e] that was about as far as criticism went. What struck Mark deeply was the almost complete absence of indignation among the speakers, or even of any distinct sympathy with the refugees. Everyone present knew of at least one outrage in Edgestow:[f] but all agreed that these refugees must be greatly exaggerating.

"It[g] says in this morning's paper that things are pretty well settling down," said the landlord.

"That's[h] right," agreed the others.

"There'll[i] always be some who get awkward," said the potato-faced man.

"What's[j] the good of getting awkward?" asked another, "it's got to go on. You can't stop it."

"That's[k] what I say," said the landlord.[l]

Fragments[m] of articles which Mark himself had written drifted to and fro. Apparently he and his kind had done their work well; Miss Hardcastle had rated too high the resistance of the working classes to propaganda.

When the time came he had no difficulty in getting onto[n] the bus: it was

---

[a] ¶"They] *A*; "They *BM*
☛ Noted by Lake (57).
[b] ¶"Ah,"] *A*; "Ah," *BM*
☛ Noted by Lake (57).
[c] cases] *BA*; cases, *M*
[d] ¶" 'Taint] *A*; "'Taint *BM*
☛ Noted by Lake (57).
[e] ¶But] *ed.*; But *BM*
☛ Editorial change following A's example where A's witness is lacking (see previous notes).
[f] Edgestow:] *B*; Edgestow; *M*
[g] ¶"It] *ed.*; "It *BM*
☛ See note 228[e].
[h] ¶"That's] *ed.*; "That's *BM*
☛ See note 228[e].
[i] ¶"There'll] *ed.*; "There'll *BM*
☛ See note 228[e].
[j] ¶"What's] *ed.*; "What's *BM*
☛ See note 228[e].
[k] ¶"That's] *ed.*; "That's *BM*
☛ See note 228[e].
[l] landlord.] *B*; Landlord. *M*
[m] ¶Fragments] *ed.*; Fragments *BM*
☛ See note 228[e].
[n] onto] *M*; on to *BA*
☛In this case Fowler would recommend "getting on" or "getting onto" but not "getting on to" ("Onto, on to, on").

indeed empty, for[a] all the traffic was going in the opposite direction. It put him down at the top of Market Street and he set out at once to walk up to the flat. The whole town wore a new expression. One house out of three was empty. About half the shops had their windows boarded up. As he gained height and came into the region of large villas with gardens[b] he noticed that many of these had been requisitioned and bore white[c] placards with the N.I.C.E. symbol—a muscular male nude grasping a thunderbolt. At every corner, and often in between, lounged or sauntered the N.I.C.E. police, helmeted, swinging their clubs, with revolvers in holsters on their black shiny[d] belts. Their round[e] white faces with open mouths slowly revolving as they chewed gum remained long in his memory. There were also notices everywhere which he did not stop to read: they were headed *Emergency Regulations* and bore the signature[f] "Feverstone."[g]

Would Jane be in? He felt he could not bear it if Jane should not be in. He was fingering his latchkey in his pocket long before he reached the house. The front door was locked. This meant that the Hutchinsons who occupied the ground floor were away. He opened it and went in. It seemed cold and damp on the staircase: cold and damp and dark on the landing. "Ja-ane," he shouted as he unlocked the door of the flat:[h] but he had already lost hope. As soon as he was inside the door he knew the place was uninhabited. A pile of unopened letters lay on the inside door-mat.[i] There was no sound, not a tick of a clock. Everything was in order: Jane must have left some morning immediately after "doing" all the rooms. The tea-cloths[j] hanging in the kitchen were bone dry: they clearly had not been used for at least twenty-four[k] hours. The bread in the cupboard was stale. There was a jug half full of milk, but the milk had thickened and would not pour. He continued stumping from room to room long after he was quite certain of the truth: staring at the staleness and pathos which pervades deserted homes. But obviously it was no good hanging about here. A splutter of unreasonable anger arose. Why the hell hadn't Jane told him she was going away? Or had someone taken her away? Perhaps there was a note

---

[a] , for] *BA*; for *M*
[b] gardens] *BA*; gardens, *M*
[c] white] *MA*; whit *B*
☛ A printing error in B, presumably the result of worn type.
[d] shiny] *BA*; shiney *M*
[e] round] *B*; round, *M*
[f] signature] *B*; signature, *M*
[g] "Feverstone."] *B*; Feverstone. *M*
[h] flat:] *BA*; flat; *M*
[i] door-mat.] *BA*; door mat *M*
[j] tea-cloths] *B*; tea cloths *M*
[k] twenty-four] *B*; twenty four *M*

① *démarche*

In diplomatic parlance, a step or initiative.

② *Indeed he was a different man. […] he would begin to be a person.*

From now on Mark makes a new step in self-knowledge nearly every chapter, from a realisation in ch. 11 III that he has always sacrificed everything that he wanted for the sake of belonging, to appreciations in ch. 17 (I & VII) of how he is unworthy of Jane in various ways, combined with a sacrificial determination to set her free.

for him. He took a pile of letters off the mantelpiece,[a] but they were only letters he had put there himself to be answered. Then on the table he noticed an envelope addressed to Mrs. Dimble at her own house over beyond the Wynd. So that damned woman had been here! Those Dimbles had always, he felt, disliked him. They'd probably asked Jane to stay with them. Been interfering somehow, no doubt. He must go down to Northumberland and see Dimble.

The idea of being annoyed with the Dimbles occurred to Mark almost as an inspiration. To bluster a little as an injured husband in search of his wife would be a pleasant change from[b] the attitudes he had recently been compelled to adopt. On the way down town he stopped to have a drink. As he came to the Bristol and saw the N.I.C.E. placard on it, he had almost said[c] "Oh damn," and turned away, before he suddenly remembered that he was himself a high official in the N.I.C.E. and by no means a member of that general Public whom the Bristol now excluded. They asked him who he was at the door and became obsequious when he told them. There was a pleasant fire burning. After the gruelling day he had had he felt justified in ordering a large whisky, and after it he had a second. It completed the change in his mental weather which had begun at the moment when he first conceived the idea of having a grievance against the Dimbles. The whole state of Edgestow had something to do with it. There was an element in him to which all these exhibitions of power suggested chiefly how much nicer and how much more appropriate it was, all said and done, to be part of the N.I.C.E. than to be an outsider. Even now . . . had he been taking all this *démarche* about a murder trial too seriously? Of course[d] ① that was the way Wither managed things: he liked to have something hanging over everyone. It was only a way to keep him at Belbury and to make him send for Jane. And when one came to think of it, why not? She couldn't go on indefinitely living alone. And the wife of a man who meant to have a career and live at the centre of things would have to learn to be a woman of the world. Anyway, the first thing was to see that fellow Dimble.

He left the Bristol feeling, as he would have said, a different man. Indeed he ② was a different man. From now onwards till the moment of final decision should meet him, the different men in him appeared with startling rapidity and each seemed very complete while it lasted. Thus, skidding violently from one side to the other, his youth approached the moment at which he would begin to be a person.

---

[a] mantelpiece,] *BA*; mantlepiece *M*
[b] from] *BA*; for *M*
[c] said] *B*; said, *M*
[d] course] *B*; course, *M*

① *Studdock's face […] a new vulgarity in the expression.*

Compare Lewis's comment at ch. 10 II 229: "Their round white faces with open mouths slowly revolving as they chewed gum remained long in his memory." Mark has the same look, to Dimble, as the N.I.C.E. enforcers have to his eyes.

III

"Come in," said Dimble in his rooms at Northumberland. He had just finished with his last pupil for the day and was intending to start out for St. Anne's in a few minutes. "Oh, it's you, Studdock," he added as the door opened. "Come in." He tried to speak naturally but he was surprised at the visit and shocked by what he saw. Studdock's face appeared to him to have changed since they last met; it had ① grown fatter and paler and there was a new vulgarity in the expression.

"I've come to ask about Jane," said Mark. "Do you know where she is?"

"I can't give you her address, I'm afraid," said Dimble.

"Do you mean you don't know it?"

"I can't give it," said Dimble.

According to Mark's programme this was the point at which he should have begun to take a strong line. But he did not feel the same now that he was in the room. Dimble had always treated him with scrupulous politeness and Mark had always felt that Dimble disliked him. This had not made him dislike Dimble. It had only made him uneasily talkative in Dimble's presence and anxious to please. Vindictiveness was by no means one of Mark's vices. For Mark liked to be liked. A snub sent him away dreaming not of revenge but of brilliant jokes or achievements which would one day conquer the good will of the man who had snubbed him. If he were ever cruel it would be downwards, to inferiors and outsiders who solicited his regard, not upwards to those who rejected it. There was a good deal of the spaniel in him.

"What do you mean?" he asked. "I don't understand."

"If you have any regard for your wife's safety you will not ask me to tell you where she has gone," said Dimble.

"Safety?"

"Safety," repeated Dimble with great sternness.

"Safety from what?"

"Don't you know what has happened?"

"What's happened?"

"On the night of the big riot the Institutional Police attempted to arrest her. She escaped, but not before they had tortured her."

"'Tortured[a] her? What do you mean?"

"Burned her with cigars."

"That's what I've come about," said Mark. "Jane—I'm afraid she is on the

[a] "Tortured] *BM*; 'Tortured *A*
☛ Compositor's error in A.

verge of a nervous breakdown. That didn't really happen, you know."

"The doctor who dressed the burns thinks otherwise."

"Great Scott!"[a] said Mark. "So they really did? But, look here . . ."

Under the quiet stare of Dimble he found it difficult to speak.

"Why have I not been told about[b] this outrage?" he shouted.

"By your colleagues?" asked Dimble drily. "It is an odd question to ask me. You ought to understand the workings of the N.I.C.E. better than[c] I do."

"Why didn't *you* tell me? Why has nothing been done about it? Have you been to the police?"

"The Institutional Police?"

"No, the ordinary police."

"Do you really not know that there are no ordinary police left in Edgestow?"

"I suppose there are some magistrates."

"There is the Emergency Commissioner, Lord Feverstone. You seem to misunderstand. This is a conquered and occupied city."

"Then why, in Heaven's name, didn't you get on to me?"

"*You*?" said Dimble.

For one moment, the first for many years, Mark saw himself exactly as a man like Dimble saw him. It almost took his breath away.

"Look here," he said. "You don't . . . it's too fantastic! You don't imagine I knew about it! You don't really believe I send policemen about to man-handle my own wife!" He had begun on the note of indignation, but ended by trying to insinuate a little jocularity. If only Dimble would give even the ghost of a smile: anything to move the conversation on to[d] a different level.

But Dimble said nothing and his face did not relax. He had not, in fact, been perfectly sure that Mark might not have sunk even to this, but out of charity he did not wish to say so.

"I know you've always disliked me," said Mark. "But I didn't know it was quite as bad as that." And again Dimble was silent, but for a reason Mark could not guess. The truth was that his shaft had gone home. Dimble's conscience had for years accused him of a lack of charity towards Studdock and he had struggled to amend it: he was struggling now.

---

[a] Scott!"] *A*; Scot!" *BM*
☛ See *NED*, "Great" III. 12. c.
[b] about] *BA*; of *M*
☛ Either reading is acceptable (see *NED* "Tell" *v.* B. I. 8. [a]).
[c] than] *MA*; then *B*
☛ Compositing error in B, corrected in A's revision.
[d] on to] *B*; onto *M*

"Well," said Studdock in a dry voice, after the silence had lasted for several seconds, "there doesn't seem to be much more to say. I insist on being told where Jane is."

"Do you *want* her to be taken to Belbury?"

Mark winced. It was as if the other had read the very thought he had had in the Bristol half an hour ago.

"I don't see, Dimble," he said, "why I should be cross-questioned in this way. Where is my wife?"

"I have no permission to tell you. She is not in my house nor under my care.[a] She is well and happy and safe. If you still have the slightest regard for her happiness you will make no attempt to get into touch with her."

"Am I some sort of leper or criminal that I can't even be trusted to know her address?"

"Excuse me. You are a member of the N.I.C.E. who have already insulted, tortured, and arrested her. Since her escape she has been left alone only because your colleagues do not know where she is."

"And if it really was the N.I.C.E. police, do you suppose I'm not going to have a very full explanation out of them? Damn it, what do you take me for?"

"I can only hope that you have no power in the N.I.C.E. at all. If you have no power, then you cannot protect her. If you have, then you are identified with its policy. In neither case will I help you to discover where Jane is."

"This is fantastic," said Mark. "Even if I do happen to hold a job in the N.I.C.E. for the moment, you know *me*."

"I do *not* know you," said Dimble. "I have no conception of your aims or motives."

He seemed to Mark to be looking at him not with anger or contempt[b] but with that degree of loathing which produces in those who feel it a kind of embarrassment—as if he were an obscenity which decent people are forced, for very shame, to pretend that they have not noticed. In this Mark was quite mistaken. In reality his presence was acting on Dimble as a summons to rigid self-control. Dimble was simply trying very hard not to hate, not to despise, above all not to enjoy hating and despising, and he had no idea of the fixed severity which this effort gave to his face. The whole of the rest of the conversation went on under this misunderstanding.

---

[a] care.] *BA*; protection. *M*

☛ Probably a second thought in B (followed by A), either on the part of Lewis or a copy-editor, as the "protection" of a woman by a man is also a euphemism for the keeping of a mistress (*NED*, "Protection" 1. b), which would hardly be an appropriate implication here.

[b] not […] contempt] *BA*; , not […] contempt, *M*

"There has been some ridiculous mistake," said Mark. "I tell you I'll look into it thoroughly. I'll make a row. I suppose some newly enrolled policeman got drunk or something. Well, he'll be broken. I——"[a]

"It was the chief of your police, Miss Hardcastle herself, who did it."

"Very well. I'll break *her* then. Did you suppose I was going to take it lying down? But there must be some mistake. It can't . . ."

"Do you know Miss Hardcastle well?" asked Dimble.

Mark[b] was silenced. And he thought (quite wrongly) that Dimble was reading his mind to the bottom and seeing there his certainty that Miss Hardcastle had done this very thing and that he had no more power of calling her[c] to account than of stopping the revolution of the Earth.

Suddenly the immobility of Dimble's face changed, and he spoke in a new voice. "Have *you* the means to bring her to book?" he said. "Are you already as near the centre of Belbury as that? If so, then you have consented to the murder of Hingest, the murder of Compton. If so, it was by your orders that Mary Prescott was raped and battered to death in the sheds behind the station. It is with your approval, that criminals—honest criminals whose hands you are unfit to touch—are being taken from the jails to which British judges sent them on the conviction of British juries and packed off to Belbury to undergo for an indefinite period, out of reach of the law, whatever tortures and assaults on personal identity you call Remedial Treatment. It is you who have driven two thousand families from their homes to die of exposure in every ditch from here to Birmingham or Worcester. It is you who can tell us why Place and Rowley and Cummingham (at eighty years of age) have been arrested, and where they are. And if you are as deeply in it as that, not only will I not deliver Jane into your hands, but I would not deliver my dog."

Humane Remedial Treatment

"Really—really," said Mark. "This is absurd. I know one or two high-handed things have been done. You always get some of the wrong sort in a police force—specially at first. But—I mean to say—what[d] have I ever done that you should make me responsible for every action that any N.I.C.E. official has taken—or is said to have taken in the gutter Press?"[e]

"Gutter Press![f]" thundered Dimble, who seemed to Mark to be even physically larger than he was a few minutes before. "What nonsense is this? Do you suppose I don't know that you have control of every paper in the country except

---

[a] I——"] *BA*; I—" *M*
[b] ¶Mark] *A*; Mark *BM*
[c] her] *BM*; Miss Hardcastle *A*
[d] what] *BM;* What *A*
[e] Press?"] *A*; press?" *BM*
[f] Press!] *A*; press! *BM*

① *charity hopes all things*

I Corinthians 13: 7. This marks Dimble as a Christian attempting to practise charity.

one? And that one has not appeared this morning. Its printers have gone on strike. The poor dupes say they will not print articles attacking the people's Institute. Where the lies in all the other papers come from you know better than I."

It may seem strange to say that Mark, having long lived in a world without charity, had nevertheless very seldom met real anger. Malice in plenty he had encountered, but it all operated by snubs and sneers and stabbing in the back. The forehead and eyes and voice of this elderly man had an effect on him which was stifling and unnerving. (At Belbury one used the words[a] "whining" and "yapping"[b] to describe any opposition which the actions of Belbury aroused in the outer world.)[c] And Mark had never had enough imagination to realise what the "whining" would really be like if you met it face to face.

"I tell you I knew nothing about it," he shouted. "Damn it, I'm the injured party. The way you talk, anyone would think it was *your* wife who'd been ill treated."[d]

"So it might have been. So it may be. It may be any man or woman in England. It was a woman and a citizen. What does it matter whose wife it was?"

"But I tell you I'll raise hell about it. I'll break the infernal bitch who did it, if it means breaking the whole N.I.C.E."

Dimble said nothing. Mark[e] knew that Dimble knew that he was now[f] talking nonsense. Yet Mark could not stop. If he did not bluster, he would not know what to say.

"Sooner than put up with this," he shouted, "I'll leave the N.I.C.E."

"Do you mean that?" asked Dimble with a sharp glance. And to[g] Mark, whose ideas were now all one fluid confusion of wounded vanity and jostling fears and shames, this glance once more appeared accusing and intolerable. In reality[h] it had been a glance of awakened hope: for charity hopes all things. But there was caution in it:[i] and between hope and caution Dimble found himself once more reduced to silence. ①

"I see you don't trust me," said Mark, instinctively summoning to his face the manly and injured expression which had often served him well in headmasters' studies.

---

[a] words] *BA*; words, *M*
[b] "yapping"] *BA*; "yapping", *M*
[c] (At […] world.)] *A*; At […] world. *BM*
[d] ill treated."] *B*; ill-treated." *M*
[e] Mark] *BM*; He *A*
[f] was now] *BA*; was *M*
☛ Presumably a compositing error in M.
[g] to] *BM*; To *A*
[h] reality] *BA*; reality, *M*
[i] it:] *B*; it; *M*

Dimble was a truthful man. "No," he said after a longish pause. "I don't quite."

Mark shrugged his shoulders and turned away.

"Studdock," said Dimble, "this[a] is not a time for foolery, or compliments. It may be that both of us are within a few minutes of death. You have probably been shadowed into the college.[b] And I, at any rate, don't propose to die with polite insincerities in my mouth. I don't trust you. Why should I? You are (at least in some degree) the accomplice of the worst men in the world. Your very coming to me this afternoon may be only a trap."

"Don't you know me better than *that*?" said Mark.

"Stop talking nonsense!" said Dimble. "Stop posturing and acting, if only for a minute. Who are you to talk like that? They have corrupted better men than you or me before now. Straik was a good man once. Filostrato was at least a great genius. Even Alcasan—yes, yes, I know who your Head is—was at least a plain murderer: something better than they have now made of him. Who are you to be exempt?"

Mark gaped.[c] The discovery of how much Dimble knew had suddenly inverted his whole picture of the situation. No logic was left in him.[d]

"Nevertheless," continued Dimble, "knowing all this—knowing that you may be only the bait in the trap—[e]I will take a risk. I will risk things compared with which both our lives are a triviality. If you seriously wish to leave the N.I.C.E., I will help you."

One moment it was like the gates of Paradise opening—then, at once, caution and the incurable wish to temporise rushed back. The chink had closed again.

"I—I'd need to think that over," he mumbled.

"There is no time," said Dimble. "And there is really nothing to think about. I am offering you a way back into the human family. But you must come at once."

"It's[f] a question affecting my whole future career."

"Your career!" said Dimble. "It's a question of damnation or—a last chance. But you must come at once."

---

[a] Dimble, "this] *BA*; Dimble. "This *M*
[b] college.] *BA*; College *M*
[c] gaped.] *BA*; gasped. *M*
☛ For Mark to gape suggests a stronger shock than gasping, although neither word is obviously inappropriate. Variant noted by Lake (54).
[d] No logic was left in him.] *M only.*
☛ See Introduction 2 xl.
[e] trap—] *BA*; trap, *M*
[f] ¶"It's] *BM*; "It's *A*

① *"I can offer you no security. […] I don't know which will win."*

Lewis finds the notion of fighting heroically on the right but losing side poetically attractive in the story of Odin—Norse myth is his favourite of all mythologies ("Is Theology Poetry?" 42, 43). Dimble is appealing to Mark's heroism here, but Mark is not yet capable of responding to such an appeal (but see 359 n. 1).

Fighting against evil with little or no hope of victory is also part of Tolkien's mythology. After Aragorn's coronation Gandalf says of the events of *The Hobbit*, "I did not suppose when [the Quest of Erebor] started Thorin had any hope of destroying Smaug. There was no hope" (Tolkien, "The Quest of Erebor" 326, alluded to in *Lord of the Rings*, appendix A 71.) Regarding the attempt to destroy the One Ring, Gandalf says, "There never was much hope […] Just a fool's hope […]" (Tolkien, *Lord of the Rings* V ch. 4 94). Later, in the last debate of the Captains of the West, they choose the strong probability of their personal destruction in order to give good a small chance to survive, but with "small hope" and no certainty, except that if they do nothing evil will triumph (Tolkien, *Lord of the Rings* V ch. 9 180).

"I don't think I understand," said Mark. "You keep on suggesting some kind of danger. What is it? And what powers have you to protect me—or Jane—if I do bolt?"

"You must risk that," said Dimble. "I can offer you no security. Don't you understand? There is no security for anyone now. The battle has started. I'm offering you a place on the right side. I don't know which will win." ①

"As a matter of fact," said Mark, "I *had* been thinking of leaving. But I must think it over. You put things in rather an odd way."

"There is no time," said Dimble.

"Supposing I look you up again to-morrow?"[a]

"Do you know that you'll be able?"

"Or in an hour? Come, that's only sensible. Will you be here in an hour's time?"

"What can an hour do for you? You are only waiting in the hope that your mind will be less clear."

"But will you be here?"

"If you insist. But no good can come of it."

"I want to think. I want to think," said Mark, and left the room without waiting for a reply.

Mark had said he wanted to think: in reality he wanted alcohol and tobacco. He had thoughts in plenty—more than he desired. One thought prompted him to cling to Dimble as a lost child clings to a grown-up. Another whispered to him "Madness. Don't *break* with the N.I.C.E. They'll be after you. How can Dimble save you?[b] You'll be killed." A third implored him not, even now, to write off as a total loss his hard-won[c] position in the Inner Ring at Belbury: there must, must be some middle course. A fourth recoiled from the idea of ever seeing Dimble again: the memory of every tone Dimble had used caused horrible discomfort. And he wanted Jane, and he wanted to punish Jane for being a friend of Dimble's,[d] and he wanted never to see Wither again, and he wanted to creep back and patch things up with Wither somehow. He wanted to be perfectly safe and yet also very nonchalant and daring—to be admired for manly honesty among the Dimbles and yet also for realism and knowingness at Belbury—to have two more large whiskies and also to think everything out very clearly and collectedly. And it was beginning to rain and

[a] to-morrow?"] *BA*; tomorrow?" *M*
[b] you?] *B*; you! *M*
[c] hard-won] *B*; hard won *M*
[d] Dimble's,] *M*; Dimble, *BA*
☛ Fowler would consider "a friend of Dimble's" an English idiom and "a friend of Dimble" not ("OUT OF THE FRYING PAN").

① *from Brother Lawrence, "Thus I shall always do, whenever You leave me to myself."*

Dimble quotes from the Second Conversation of *Practice of the Presence of God*: "when he had failed in his duty, he only confessed his fault, saying to GOD, I shall never do otherwise, if You leave me to myself". Such a quotation, from such a source, emphasises Dimble's Christianity and sincere efforts to live his faith.

his head had begun to ache again. Damn the whole thing! Damn, damn! Why had he such a rotten heredity? Why had his education been so ineffective? Why was the system of society so irrational? Why was his luck so bad?

He began walking rapidly.[a]

It was raining quite hard as he reached the College lodge. Some sort of van seemed to be standing in the street outside, and there were three or four uniformed men in capes. He remembered afterwards how the wet oilskin shone in the lamplight. A torch was flashed in his face.

"Excuse me, sir,"[b] said one of the men. "I must ask for your name."

"Studdock," said Mark.

"Mark Gainsby Studdock," said the man, "it is my duty to arrest you for the murder of William Hingest."

IV

Dr. Dimble drove out to St. Anne's dissatisfied with himself, haunted with the suspicion that if he had been wiser, or more perfectly in charity with this very miserable young man, he might have done something for him. "Did I give way to my temper? Was I self-righteous? Did I tell him as much as I dared?" he thought. Then came the deeper self-distrust that was habitual with him. "Did you fail to make things clear because you really wanted not to? Just wanted to hurt and humiliate? To enjoy your own self-righteousness? Is there a whole Belbury inside you,[c] too?" The sadness that came over him had no novelty[d] in it. "And thus," he quoted from Brother Lawrence, "Thus[e] I shall always do, whenever You leave me to myself." ①

Once clear of the town, he drove slowly—almost sauntering on wheels. The sky was red to westward and the first stars were out. Far down below him in a valley he saw the lights already lit in Cure Hardy. "Thank Heaven it at any rate is far enough from Edgestow to be safe," he thought. The sudden whiteness of a white owl flying low fluttered across the woody twilight on his left. It gave him a delicious feeling of approaching night. He was very pleasantly tired; he looked forward to an agreeable evening and an early bed.

---

[a] He began walking rapidly. ¶] *M only.*
☛ Noted by Lake (54). See Introduction 2 xl.
[b] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*
[c] you,] *B*; you *M*
[d] no novelty] *B*; novelty *M*
☛ Obvious omission of "no" in M.
[e] "Thus] *B*; "thus *M*

"Here he is! Here's Dr. Dimble," shouted Ivy Maggs as he drove up to the front door of the Manor.

"Don't put the car away, Dimble," said Denniston.

"Oh Cecil!" said his wife; and he saw fear in her face. The whole household seemed to have been waiting for him.

A few moments later, blinking in the lighted kitchen, he saw that this was not to be a normal evening. The Director himself was there, seated by the fire, with the jackdaw on his shoulder and Mr. Bultitude at his feet. There were signs that everyone else had had an early supper and Dimble found himself almost at once seated at the end of the table and being rather excitedly urged to eat and drink by his wife and Mrs. Maggs.

"Don't stop to ask questions, dear," said Mrs. Dimble. "Go on eating while they tell you. Make a good meal."

"You have to go out again," said Ivy Maggs.

"Yes," said the Director. "We're going into action at last. I'm sorry to send you out the moment you come in:[a] but the battle has started."

"I have already repeatedly urged," said MacPhee, "the absurdity of sending out an older man like yourself, that's done a day's work forbye, when here am I, a great strapping fellow sitting doing nothing."

"It's no good," MacPhee," said the Director, "you can't go. For one thing you don't know the language. And for another—it's a time for frankness—you have never put yourself under the protection of Maleldil."

"I am perfectly ready," said MacPhee, "in and for this emergency, to allow the existence of these eldils of yours and of a being called Maleldil whom they regard as their king. And I——"[b]

"You can't go," said the Director. "I will not send you. It would be like sending a three-year-old child to fight a tank. Put the other map on the table where Dimble can see it while he goes on with his meal. And now, silence. This is the situation, Dimble. What was under Bragdon was a living Merlin. Yes, asleep, if you like to call it sleep. And nothing has yet happened to show that the enemy have found him. Got that? No, don't talk, go on eating. Last night Jane Studdock had the most important dream she's had yet. You remember that in an earlier dream she saw (or so I thought) the very place where he lay under Bragdon. But—and this is the important thing—it's not reached by a shaft and a stair. She dreamed of going

[a] in:] *BA*; in; *M*
[b] I——"] *B*; I—" *M*

through a long tunnel with a very gradual descent.[a] Ah, you begin to see the point. You're right. Jane thinks she can recognise the entrance to that tunnel: under a heap of stones at the end of a copse with—what was it, Jane?"

"A white gate, sir.[b] An ordinary five-barred gate with a cross-piece. But the cross-piece was broken off about a foot from the top. I'd know it again."

"You see, Dimble? There's a very good chance that this tunnel comes up *outside* the area held by the N.I.C.E."

"You mean," said Dimble, "that we can now get *under* Bragdon without going into[c] Bragdon."

"Exactly. But that's not all."

Dimble, steadily munching, looked at him.

"Apparently," said the Director, "we are almost too late. He has waked already."

Dimble stopped eating.

"Jane found the place empty," said Ransom.

"You mean the enemy have already found him?"

"No. Not quite as bad as that. The place had not been broken into. He seems to have waked of his own accord."

"My God!" said Dimble.

"Try to eat, darling," said his wife.

"But what does it mean?" he asked, covering her hand with his.

"I think it means that the whole thing has[d] been planned and timed long, long ago," said the Director. "That he went out of Time, into the parachronic state, for the very purpose of returning at this moment."

"A sort of human time-bomb," observed MacPhee, "which is why——"[e]

"You can't go, MacPhee," said the Director.

"Is he *out*?"[f] asked Dimble.

---

[a] descent.] *A*; ascent. *BM*

☛ The underground chamber where Jane first sees Merlin is naturally lower than the entrance to the tunnel that leads to it. Jane's description tells how she follows the tunnel *up* from the chamber. But here the Director is thinking of access from outside Bragdon, so the tunnel will lead *down*—descend—to the chamber.

[b] sir.] *BA*; Sir. *M*

[c] into] *BA*; *into M*

[d] has] *BM*; had *A*

☛ The present perfect is the appropriate tense for past actions with present implications, which is very much the point here.

[e] why——"] *B*; why—" *M*

[f] *out*?"] *BA*; out?" *M*

① *souterrain*

Underground chamber.

"He probably is by now," said the Director. "Tell him what it was like, Jane."

"It was the same place," said Jane. "A dark place, all stone, like a cellar. I recognised it at once. And the[a] slab of stone was there, but no one lying on it; and this time it wasn't quite cold. Then I dreamed about this tunnel . . . gradually sloping up from the *souterrain*.[b] And there was a man in the tunnel. Of course I ① couldn't see him: it was pitch dark. But a[c] great big man. Breathing heavily. At first I thought it was an animal. It got colder as we went up the tunnel. There was air—a little air—from outside. It seemed to end in a pile of loose stones. He was pulling them about just before the dream changed. Then I was outside, in the rain.[d] That was when I saw the[e] white gate."

"It looks, you see," said Ransom, "as if they had not yet—or not then—established contact with him. That is our[f] only chance now. To[g] meet this creature before they do."

"You will all have observed that Bragdon is very nearly water-logged," put in MacPhee. "Where exactly you'll find a dry cavity in which a body could be preserved all these centuries is a question worth asking. That is, if any of you are still concerned with evidence."

"That's the point," said the Director. "The chamber must be under the high ground—the gravelly ridge on the south of the wood, where[h] it slopes up to the Eaton Road. Near where Storey used to live. That's where you'll have to look first for Jane's white gate. I suspect it opens on the Eaton Road. Or else that other road—look at the map—the yellow one that runs up into the Y of Cure Hardy."

"We can be there in half an hour," said Dimble, his hand still on his wife's hand. To everyone in that room[i] the sickening excitement of the last minutes before battle had come nearer.

"I suppose it must be to-night?"[j] said Mrs. Dimble, rather shamefacedly.

"I am afraid it must, Margaret," said the Director. "Every minute counts. We have practically lost the war if the enemy once make contact with him. Their whole plan probably turns on it."

"Of course. I see. I'm sorry," said Mrs. Dimble.

---

[a] the] *BM*; The *A*
[b] *souterrain*.] *BA*; souterrain. *M*
[c] a] *BM*; A *A*
[d] rain.] *BM*; rain, *A*
[e] the] *BM*; at the *A*
[f] our] *BM*; Our *A*
[g] To] *BM*; is to *A*
[h] , where] *A*; where *BM*
[i] room] *B*; room, *M*
[j] to-night?"] *BA*; tonight?" *M*

"And what is our procedure, sir?"[a] said Dimble, pushing his plate away from him and beginning to fill his pipe.

"The first question is whether he's *out*," said the Director. "It doesn't seem likely that the entrance to the tunnel has been hidden all these centuries by nothing but a heap of loose stones. And if it has, they wouldn't be very loose by now. He may take hours getting out."

"You'll need at least two strong men with picks——"[b] began MacPhee.

"It's no good, MacPhee," said the Director. "I'm not sending you.[c] If the mouth of the tunnel is still sealed, you must just wait there. But he may have powers we don't know. If he's out, you must look for tracks. Thank God it's a muddy night. You must just hunt him."

"If Jane is going, sir,"[d] said Camilla, "couldn't I go too? I've had more experience of this sort of thing than——[e]"

"Jane has to go because she is the guide," said Ransom. "I am afraid you[f] must stay at home. We in this house are all that is left of Logres. You carry its future in your body. As I was saying, Dimble, you must hunt. I do not think he can get far. The country will, of course, be quite unrecognisable to him, even by daylight." *Logres*

"And . . . if we do find him, sir?"[g]

"That is why it must be you, Dimble. Only you know the Great Tongue. If there was eldilic power behind the tradition he represented he may understand it. Even if he does not understand it he will, I think, recognise it. That will teach him he is dealing with Masters. There is a chance that he will think you are the Belbury people—his friends. In that case you will bring him here at once."

"And if not?"

The Director spoke sternly.[h]

"Then you must show your hand. That is the moment when the danger comes. We do not know what the powers of the old Atlantean circle were: some

---

[a] sir?"] *BA*; Sir?" *M*
[b] picks——"] *BA*; picks—" *M*
[c] sending you.] *A*; letting you go. *BM*
☛ A's emendation is more dignified for both Ransom and MacPhee, and reinforces the fact that all the members of the company are sent or kept at home by their obedience to the will of the Director. For the Director to "let" MacPhee "go" is more like granting a favour to an importunate child.
[d] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*
[e] than——] *B*; than— *M*
[f] you] *BM*; You *A*
[g] sir?"] *BA*; Sir?" *M*
[h] The Director spoke sternly. ¶] *M only*.
☛ See Introduction 2 xl.

① *great syllables of words […] inherent in the little waterdrop.*

Jane hears the language Ransom learned on Mars and which he found was spoken in the whole Solar System beyond the orbit of our Moon. See Preliminary Note H: "The Language of Creation".

② *the molten quick-silver of the star called Mercury on Earth, but Viritrilbia in Deep Heaven*

Another name for the metal mercury is "quick-silver". See "The Planetary Powers" (Introduction 4) and n.1 facing p. 342.

kind of hypnotism probably covered most of it. Don't be afraid:[a] but don't let him try any tricks. Keep your hand on your revolver. You too,[b] Denniston."

"I'm a good hand with a revolver myself," said MacPhee. "And why, in the name of all common sense[c]——?"[d]

"You can't go, MacPhee," said the Director. "He'd put you to sleep in ten seconds. The others are heavily protected and[e] you are not. You understand, Dimble? Your revolver in your hand, a prayer on your lips, your mind fixed on Maleldil. Then, if he stands, conjure him."

"What shall I say in the Great Tongue?"

"Say that you come in the name of God and all angels and in the power of the planets from one who sits to-day[f] in the seat of the Pendragon,[g] and command him to come with you. Say it now."

And Dimble, who had been sitting with his face drawn[h] and rather white, between the white faces of the two women, and his eyes on the table, raised his head, and great syllables of words that sounded like castles came out of his mouth. ① Jane felt her heart leap and quiver at them. Everything else in the room seemed to have become intensely quiet:[i] even the bird, and the bear, and the cat, were still, staring at the speaker. The voice did not sound like Dimble's own; it[j] was as if the words spoke themselves through him from some strong place at a distance—or as if they were not words at all but present operations of God, the planets, and the Pendragon. For this was the language spoken before the Fall and beyond the Moon, and the meanings were not given to the syllables by chance, or skill, or long tradition, but truly inherent in them as the shape of the great Sun is inherent in the little waterdrop. This was Language herself, as she first sprang at Maleldil's bidding out of the molten quick-silver[k] of the star called Mercury on Earth, but ② Viritrilbia in Deep Heaven.

"Thank you," said the Director in English; and once again the warm domesticity of the kitchen flowed back upon them. "And if he comes with you, all

---

[a] afraid:] *BA*; afraid; *M*
[b] too,] *BA*; too *M*
[c] common sense] *B*; commonsense *M*
[d] ——?"] *A*; ——" *B* —" *M*
[e] and] *A*; as *BM*
☛ A's emendation is more emphatic than the earlier reading, which seems to me a slightly strange inversion of "You are not heavily protected as the others are." A's version simply presents the two facts about the protection of the various members of the company, linked by a simple conjunction, independently of any comparisons.
[f] to-day] *BA*; today *M*
[g] Pendragon,] *BA*; Pendragon *M*
[h] drawn] *B*; drawn, *M*
[i] quiet:] *B*; quiet; *M*
[j] ; it] *A*; : it *BM*
[k] quick-silver] *A*; quicksilver *BM*

① *You can't lose your soul, whatever happens; at least, not by any action of his.*

Ransom here agrees with Romans 8: 38–39, which states that no created being or thing can wrest a person away from God: "neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord". Merlin may be a powerful magician re-awoken from an unusual state, but he is still a "creature".

② *"Do you place yourself in the obedience," said the Director, "in obedience to Maleldil?"*

Expressions such as "the Protection", "the Mercy" and "the Unity", standing alone with no following modification or predicate (such as "of God", "in which we hope", or "protested by the Prophet"), abound in Charles Williams' writing and speech (see for example: *Many Dimensions* 258, 259; *Descent into Hell* 178; Carpenter 102). For Jane, "the obedience", with a definite article, is appropriate, since she has always resisted the need to obey (see ch. 7 II).

③ *He is very jealous. He will have you for no one but Himself in the end.*

The Decalogue begins, "Thou shalt have no other gods before me. Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness […] Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the LORD thy God am a jealous God" (Ex. 21: 3–5). Lewis's experience, as he approached Theism and then Christianity, was that God did jealously demand exclusive allegiance. The chapter in *Surprised by Joy* that describes his conversion to Theism (170–83) is called "Checkmate" and is filled with imagery from a chess end game and from hunting, alluding to God as "my Adversary". Lewis concludes the penultimate paragraph, "The demand was not even 'All or nothing.' […] Now, the demand was simply 'All.' " (182). In the final paragraph he records his dejected conversion to Theism, but ends by celebrating the divine humility that accepts the reluctant convert and the compulsion that "is our liberation" (183). This is what Jane, here taking her first step towards God, is still to learn.

In ch. 8 III the devil or devils that demand worship through the Head at the N.I.C.E. are, in a Hellish imitation of Heaven, equally demanding: Mark is warned, "The Head […] will have all of you, and all that is yours—or else nothing" (184).

④ *the craziest business that ever I heard of*

The word "ever" here would normally go before the main verb: this is not explicitly stated in the *NED*, *OED*, Fowler, or Quirk *et al*, but it does appear in handbooks for teachers and users of English as a foreign language (Swan 14.2), which usually document the first-language instincts that we ordinarily give no thought to. MacPhee uses the same syntax again on p. 344, and I initially assumed that this reflects Ulster usage. However, such usage does not appear to be documented (Robinson). My guess is that this reflects an idiosyncrasy of Kirkpatrick's speech, but not one that Lewis mentions or quotes in his letters or *Surprised by Joy*.

is well. If he does not—why then, Dimble, you must rely on your Christianity. Do not try any tricks. Say[a] your prayers and keep your will fixed in the will of Maleldil. I don't know what he will do. But stand firm. You can't lose your soul, whatever happens; at least, not by any action of his." ①

"Yes," said Dimble. "I understand."

There was a longish pause. Then the Director spoke again.

"Don't be cast down, Margaret," he said. "If they kill Cecil we shall none of us be let live many hours after him. It will be a shorter separation than you could have hoped for in the course of Nature. And now, gentlemen," he said, "you would like a little time to say your prayers, and to say good-bye[b] to your wives. It is eight now, as near as makes no matter. Suppose you all reassemble[c] here at ten past eight, ready to start?"

"Very good," answered several voices. Jane found herself left alone in the kitchen with Mrs. Maggs and the animals and MacPhee and the Director.

"*You* are all right, child?"[d] said Ransom.

"I think so, sir,"[e] said Jane. Her actual state of mind was one she could not analyse. Her expectation was strung up to the height; something that would have been terror but for the joy, and joy but for the terror, possessed her—an all-absorbing tension of excitement and obedience. Everything else in her life seemed small and commonplace compared with this moment.

"Do you place yourself in the obedience," said the Director, "in obedience to Maleldil?" ②

"Sir," said Jane, "I know nothing of Maleldil. But I place myself in obedience to you."

"It is enough for the present," said the Director. "This is the courtesy of Deep Heaven: that when you mean well, He always takes you to have meant better than you knew. It will not be enough for always. He is very jealous. He will have you for no one but Himself in the end. But for to-night,[f] it is enough." ③

"This is the craziest business that ever[g] I heard of," said MacPhee. ④

---

[a] Say] *BM*; say *A*
[b] good-bye] *B*; goodbye *M*
[c] reassemble] *B*; re-assemble *M*
[d] child?"] *BM*; Jane?" *A*
[e] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*
[f] to-night,] *BA;* tonight, *M*
[g] that ever] *B*; ever *MA*

ELEVEN

Battle Begun

I

"I CAN'T see a thing," said Jane.

"This rain is spoiling the whole plan," said Dimble from the back seat. "Is this still Eaton Road, Arthur?"

"I think . . . yes, there's the toll-house," said Denniston,[a] who was driving.

"But what's the use?" said Jane. "I can't see, even with the window down. We might have passed it any number of times. The only thing is to get out and walk."

"I think she's right, sir,"[b] said Denniston.

"I say!" said Jane suddenly. "Look! Look! What's that? Stop."

"I can't see a white gate," said Denniston.

"Oh, it's not that," said Jane. "Look over there."

"I can't see anything," said Dimble.

"Do you mean that light?" said Denniston.

"Yes, of course,[c] that's the fire."

"What fire?"

"It's the light," she said, "the fire in the hollow in the little wood. I'd forgotten all about it. Yes, I know: I never told Grace, or the Director. I'd forgotten that part of the dream till this moment. That was how it ended. It was the most important part really. That was where I found *him*—Merlin, you know. Sitting by a fire in a little wood. After I came out of the place underground. Oh, come quickly!"

"What do you think, Arthur?" said Dimble.

"I think we must go wherever Jane leads," answered Denniston.

"Oh, do hurry," said Jane. "There's a gate here. Quick! It's only one field away."

All three of them crossed the road and opened the gate and went into the field. Dimble said nothing. He was inwardly reeling under the shock and shame of the immense and sickening fear which had surged up inside him. He had, perhaps, a clearer idea than the others of what sort of things might happen when they reached the place.

---

[a] Denniston,] *A*; Denniston *BM*
[b] sir,"] *B*; Sir," *M*
[c] course,] *BA*; course; *M*

① *dim horns […] of the later tradition.*

Tolkien's speaks of "Woses" in similar terms: "You hear the [drums of] the Woses, the Wild Men of the Woods: thus they talk together from afar. They still haunt Drúadan Forest, it is said. Remnants of an older time they be, living few and secretly, wild and wary as beasts" (*Lord of the Rings* V ch. 5 115).

Jane, as guide, went first, and Denniston beside her, giving her his arm and showing an occasional gleam of his torch on the rough ground. Dimble brought up the rear. No one was inclined to speak.

The change from the road to the field was as if one had passed from a waking into a phantasmal world. Everything became darker, wetter, more incalculable. Each small descent felt as if you might be coming to the edge of a precipice. They were following a track beside a hedge; wet and prickly tentacles seemed to snatch at them as they went. Whenever Denniston used his torch, the things that appeared within the circle of its light—tufts of grass, ruts filled with water, draggled yellow leaves clinging to the wet blackness of many-angled twigs, and once the two greenish-yellow fires in the eyes of some small animal—had the air of being more commonplace than they ought to have been; as if, for that moment's exposure, they had assumed a disguise which they would shuffle off again the moment they were left alone. They looked curiously small, too; when the light vanished, the cold, noisy darkness seemed a huge thing.

The fear which Dimble had felt from the first began to trickle into the minds of the others as they proceeded—like water coming into a ship from a slow leak. They realised that they had not really believed in Merlin till now. They had thought they were believing the Director in the kitchen; but they had been mistaken. The shock was still to take. Out here,[a] with only the changing red light ahead and the black all round, one really began to accept as fact this tryst with something dead and yet not dead, something dug up, exhumed, from that dark pit of history which lies between the ancient Romans and the beginning of the English. "The Dark Ages," thought Dimble; how lightly one had read and written those words. But now they were going to step right into that Darkness. It was an age, not a man, that awaited them in the horrible little dingle.

And suddenly all that Britain which had been so long familiar to him as a scholar rose up like a solid thing. He could see it all. Little dwindling cities where the light of Rome still rested—little Christian sites, Camalodunum, Kaerleon, Glastonbury—a church, a villa or two, a huddle of houses, an earthwork. And then, beginning scarcely a stone's-throw[b] beyond the gates, the wet, tangled, endless woods, silted with the accumulated decay of autumns that had been dropping leaves since before Britain was an island; wolves slinking, beavers building, wide shallow marshes, dim horns and drummings, eyes in the thickets, eyes of men not only Pre-Roman but Pre-British, ancient creatures, unhappy and dispossessed, who became the elves and ogres and wood-wooses of the later tradition. But worse than the

[a] here,] *BA*; here *M*
[b] stone's-throw] *BA*; stone's throw *M*

① *They had tried to do that to Merlin.*

See Preliminary Note D: "Logres" cxxiv.

forests, the clearings. Little strongholds with unheard-of kings. Little colleges and covines of Druids. Houses whose mortar had been ritually mixed with babies' blood. They had tried to do that to Merlin. And now all that age, horribly dislocated, wrenched out of its place in the time series and forced to come back and go through all its motions yet again with doubled monstrosity, was flowing towards them and would, in a few minutes, receive them into itself. ①

Then came a check. They had walked right into a hedge. They wasted a minute, with the aid of the torch, disentangling Jane's hair. They had come to the end of a field. The light of the fire, which kept on growing stronger and weaker in fitful alternations, was hardly visible from here. There was nothing for it but to set to work and find a gap or a gate. They went a long way out of their course before they found one. It was a gate that[a] would not open,[b] and as they came down on the far side, after climbing it, they went ankle-deep[c] into water. For a few minutes, plodding slightly uphill,[d] they were out of sight of the fire, and when it reappeared[e] it was well away on their left and much farther off than anyone had supposed.

Hitherto Jane had scarcely attempted to think of what might lie before them. As they went on, the real meaning of that scene in the kitchen began to dawn on her. He had sent[f] the men to bid good-bye[g] to their wives. He had blessed them all. It was likely, then, that this—this stumbling walk on a wet night across a ploughed field—meant death. Death—the thing one had always heard of (like love), the thing the poets had written about. So this was how it was going to be. But that was not the main point. Jane was trying to see death in the new light of all she had heard since she left Edgestow. She had long ceased to feel any resentment at the Director's tendency, as it were, to dispose of her—to give her, at one time or in one sense, to Mark, and in another to Maleldil;[h] never, in any sense, to keep her for himself. She accepted that. And of Mark she did not think much, because to think of him increasingly aroused feelings of pity and guilt. But Maleldil. Up till now she had not thought of Maleldil either. She did not doubt that the eldils existed; nor did she doubt the existence of this stronger and more obscure being whom they obeyed . . . whom the Director obeyed, and through him the whole household, even MacPhee. If it had ever occurred to her to question whether all these things

---

[a] gate that] *BM*; gate. It *A*
[b] open,] *A*; open: *BM*
[c] ankle-deep] *BA*; ankle deep *M*
[d] uphill,] *B*; up-hill, *M*
[e] reappeared] *B*; re-appeared *M*
[f] sent] *BM*; told *A*
☛ The change in A needed for the abridgement, because the scene where Ransom sends the men is excised.
[g] good-bye] *BA*; goodbye *M*
[h] Maleldil;] *BA*; Maleldil— *M*

① *Maleldil might be, quite simply and crudely, God.*

This is the first time that any character in the trilogy has formulated Maleldil's identity so explicitly, although it is implicit throughout the novels. See "God" in Introduction 4.

might be the reality behind what she had been taught at school as "religion," she had put the thought aside. The distance between these alarming and operative realities and the memory, say, of fat Mrs. Dimble saying her prayers, was too wide. The things belonged, for her, to different worlds. On the one hand, terror of dreams, rapture of obedience, the tingling light and sound from under the Director's door, and the great struggle against an imminent danger; on the other, the smell of pews, horrible lithographs of the Saviour (apparently seven feet high, with the face of a consumptive girl), the embarrassment of confirmation classes, the nervous affability of clergymen. But this time, if it was really to be death, the thought would not be put aside. Because, really, it now appeared that almost anything might be true. The world had already turned out to be so very unlike what she had expected. The old ring-fence had been smashed completely. One might be in for anything. Maleldil might be, quite simply and crudely, God. There might be a life after death: a Heaven: a Hell. The thought glowed in her mind for a second like a spark that has fallen on shavings, and then a second later, like those shavings, her whole mind was in a blaze—or with just enough left outside the blaze to utter some kind of protest. "But . . . but this[a] is unbearable. I[b] ought to have been told." It did not, at that moment, occur to her even to doubt that if such things existed they would be totally and unchangeably adverse to her.

"Look out, Jane," said Denniston. "That's a tree."

"I—I think it's a cow," said Jane.

"No. It's a tree. Look. There's another."

"Hush," said Dimble. "This is Jane's little wood. We are very close now."

The ground rose in front of them for about twenty yards and there made an edge against the firelight. They could see the wood quite clearly now, and also each other's faces, white and blinking.

"I will go first," said Dimble.

"I envy you your nerve," said Jane.

"Hush," said Dimble again.

They walked slowly and quietly up to the edge and stopped. Below them a big fire of wood was burning at the bottom of a little dingle. There were bushes all about, whose changing shadows, as the flames rose and fell, made it difficult to see clearly. Beyond the fire there seemed to be some rude kind of tent made out of sacking, and Denniston thought he saw an upturned cart. In the foreground,

[a] but this] *M*; this *BA*
☛ Noted by Lake (54). The accidental deletion of the second "but" by B's compositor is more likely than repetition by M's.
[b] unbearable. I] *BM*; unbearable," she thought, " I *A*

between them and the fire, there was certainly a kettle.

"Is there anyone here?" whispered Dimble to Denniston.

"I don't know. Wait a few seconds."

"Look!" said Jane suddenly. "There! When the flame blew aside."

"What?" said Dimble.

"Didn't you see him?"

"I saw nothing."

"I thought I saw a man," said Denniston.

"I saw an ordinary tramp," said Dimble. "I mean a[a] man in modern clothes."

"What did he look like?"

"I don't know."

"We must go down," said Dimble.

"*Can* one get down?" said Denniston.

"Not this side," said Dimble. "It looks as if a sort of path came into it over there to the right. We must go along the edge till we find the way down."

They had all been talking in low voices and the crackling of the fire was now the loudest sound, for the rain seemed to be stopping. Cautiously, like troops who fear the eye of the enemy, they began to skirt the lip of the hollow, stealing from tree to tree.

"Stop!" whispered Jane suddenly.

"What is it?"

"There's something moving."

"Where?"

"In there. Quite close."

"I heard nothing."

"There's nothing now."

"Let's go on."

"Do you still think there's something, Jane?"

"It's quiet now. There *was* something."

They made a few paces more.

" 'St!"[b] said Denniston. "Jane's right. There is something."

"Shall I speak?" said Dimble.

"Wait a moment," said Denniston. "It's just there. Look!—damn it, it's only an old donkey!"

"That's what I said," said Dimble. "The man's a gypsy;[c] a tinker or

---

[a] a] *BM*; A *A*
[b] " 'St!"] *B*; "St!" *M*
[c] gypsy;] *BA*; gypsy: *M*

① *a British warm*

A kind of "warm short overcoat" associated with the army (*NED*, "Warm" *a.* (and *sb.*[2]) B. 2).

something. This is his donkey. Still, we must go down."

They proceeded. In a few moments they found themselves descending a rutted grassy path, which wound about till the whole hollow opened before them; and now the fire was no longer between them and the tent. "There he is," said Jane.

"Can you see him?" said Dimble. "I haven't got your eyes."

"I can see him all right," said Denniston. "It *is* a tramp. Can't you see him,[a] Dimble? An old man with a ragged beard in what looks like the remains of a British warm[b] and a pair of black trousers. Don't you see his left foot, stuck out, and the toe a bit up in the air?" ①

"That?" said Dimble. "I thought that was a log. But you've better eyes than I have. Did you really see a man, Arthur?"

"Well, I thought I did, sir.[c] But I'm not certain now. I think my eyes are getting tired. He's sitting very still. If it *is* a man, he's asleep."

"Or dead," said Jane with a sudden shudder.

"Well," said Dimble, "we must go down."

And in less than a minute all three walked down into the dingle and past the fire. And there was the tent, and a few miserable attempts at bedding inside it, and a tin plate, and some matches on the ground, and the dottle of a pipe, but they could see no man.

II

"What I can't understand, Wither," said Fairy Hardcastle, "is why you don't let me try my hand on the young pup. All these ideas of yours are so half-hearted—keeping him on his toes about the murder, arresting him, leaving him all night in the cells to think it over. Why do you keep messing about with things that may work or may not?—when twenty[d] minutes of my treatment would turn his mind inside out. I know the type."

Miss Hardcastle was talking, at about ten o'clock that same wet night, to the Deputy Director in his study. There was a third person present—[e] Professor Frost.

"I assure you, Miss Hardcastle," said Wither, fixing his eyes not on her but on Frost's forehead, "you need not doubt that your views on this, or any other matter, will always receive the fullest consideration. But if I may say so, this is one of those

[a] him,] *M*; him *B*
[b] warm] *B*; Warm *M*
[c] sir.] *B*; Sir. *M*
[d] twenty] *BM*; Twenty *A*
[e] present—] *BA*; present: *M*

① *Except that he's a Christian, there isn't really much against him.*

The worldly, political wisdom of the N.I.C.E. begins to be confounded here, as Miss Hardcastle has men who are both Christian and important political and administrative figures followed, but ignores Dimble who, by her standards, is a nonentity. The inversion of first and last, folly and wisdom is a central trope in Christian thought, from Christ's, "So the last shall be first, but the first last" (Matt. 20: 16, see also Mark 10: 43 & Luke 22: 26) to St. Paul's:

> For the preaching of the cross is to them that perish foolishness; but unto us which are saved it is the power of God. For it is written,
>
> I will destroy the wisdom of the wise,
> And will bring to nothing the understanding of the prudent.
>
> Where is the wise? where is the scribe? where is the disputer of this world? hath not God made foolish the wisdom of this world? (I Col. 1: 18–20, citing Isa. 29: 14)

In addition, in I Peter 2: 6 Christ is described as "The stone which the builders disallowed, /The same is made the head of the corner" (citing Isa. 28: 16): Dimble, like any Christian, here has the opportunity to be dismissed like his Master, only to be victorious later.

cases where—ah—any grave degree of coercive examination might defeat its own end."

"Why?" said the Fairy sulkily.

"You[a] must excuse me," said Wither, "for reminding you—not, of course, that I assume you are neglecting the point, but simply on methodological grounds—it is so important to make everything *clear*—that we need the woman—I mean, that it would be of the greatest value to welcome Mrs. Studdock among us—chiefly on account of the remarkable psychical faculty she is said to possess. In using the word *psychical*,[b] I am not, you understand, committing myself to any particular theory."

"You mean these dreams?"

"It is very doubtful," said Wither, "what effect it might have on her if she were brought here under compulsion and then found her husband—ah—in the markedly, though no doubt temporarily, abnormal condition which we should have to anticipate as a result of your scientific methods of examination. One would run the risk of a profound emotional disturbance on her part. The faculty itself might disappear; at least for a long time."

"We have not yet had Major Hardcastle's report," said Professor Frost quietly.

"No good," said the Fairy. "He was shadowed into Northumberland. Only three possible people left the College after him—Lancaster, Lyly, and Dimble. I put them in that order of probability. Lancaster is a Christian, and a very influential man. He's in the Lower House of Convocation. He had a lot to do with the Repton Conference. He's mixed up with several big clerical families. And he's written a lot of books. He has a real stake in their side. Lyly is rather the same type, but less of an organiser. As you will remember, he did a great deal of harm on that reactionary commission about Education last year. Both these are dangerous men. They are the sort of people who get things done—natural leaders of the other party. Dimble is quite a different type. Except that he's a Christian, there isn't really much against him. He's purely academic. I shouldn't think his name is much known, except to other scholars in his own subject. Not the kind that would make a public man. Impractical . . . he'd be too full of scruples to be much use to them. The others know a thing or two. Lancaster particularly. In fact, he's a man we could find room for on our own side if he held the right views."

"You should tell Major Hardcastle that we have access to most of these facts already," said Professor Frost.

---

[a] You] *BM*; you *A*

[b] *psychical*,] *A*; *Psychical*, *BM*

"Perhaps," said Wither, "in view of the late hour—we don't wish to overtax your energies, Miss Hardcastle—we might go on to the more strictly narrative parts of your report."

"Well," said the Fairy, "I had to follow all three. With the resources I had at the moment. You'll realise young Studdock was seen setting off for Edgestow only by good luck. It was a bomb-shell. Half my people were already busy on the hospital affair. I just had to lay my hands on anyone I could get. I posted a sentry and had six others out of sight of the College,[a] in plain clothes[b] of course. As soon as Lancaster came out I told off the three best to keep him in sight. I've had a wire from them half an hour ago from London where Lancaster went off by train. We may be onto[c] something there. Lyly gave the devil of a lot of trouble. He appeared to be calling on about fifteen different people in Edgestow. We've got them all noted—I sent the next two of my lads to deal with him.[d] Dimble came out last. I would have sent my last man off to follow him, but a call came through at that moment from Captain O'Hara, who wanted another car. So I decided to let Dimble go for to-night[e] and sent my man up with the one he had. Dimble can be got any time. He comes into college[f] pretty regularly every day; and he's really a nonentity."

"I do not quite understand," said Frost, "why you had no one inside the College[g] to see what staircase Studdock went to."

"Because of your damned Emergency Commissioner," said the Fairy. "We're not *allowed* into colleges now, if you please. I said at the time that Feverstone was the wrong man. He's trying to play on both sides. He's for us against the town, but when it comes to us against the University he's unreliable. Mark my words, Wither, you'll have trouble with him yet."

Frost looked at the Deputy Director.

"I am far from denying," said Wither, "though without at all closing my mind to other possible explanations, that some of Lord Feverstone's measures may have been injudicious. It would be inexpressibly painful to me to suppose that——"[h]

"Need we keep Major Hardcastle?" said Frost.

"Bless my soul!" said Wither. "How very right of you! I had almost forgotten,

---

[a] College,] *BA*; College; *M*
[b] clothes] *B*; clothes, *M*
[c] onto] *M*; on to *BA*
☛ In this case Fowler would recommend "be on" or "be onto" but not "be on to" ("Onto, on to, on").
[d] him.] *BM*; Lyly *A*
[e] to-night] *B*; tonight *M*
[f] college] *BA*; College *M*
[g] College] *BA*; college *M*
[h] that——"] *BA*; that—" *M*

① *such occultations. They occur […] some hostile organism.*

Frost's pompous explanation means that Jane has exercised her free will by submitting to Ransom—when she first meets him (ch. 7 I), after her dream of Merlin in his sepulchre (ch 6 V). Before she meets Ransom she has recurrent dreams that Frost is watching her, but not afterwards, and this is the explanation.

my dear lady, how tired you must be, and how very valuable your time is. We must try to save you for that particular kind of work in which you have shown yourself indispensable. You must not allow us to impose on your good nature. There is a lot of duller and more routine work which it is only reasonable that you should be spared." He got up and held the door open for her.

"You don't think," said she, "that I ought to let the boys have just a *little* go at Studdock? I mean, it seems so absurd—to have all this trouble about getting an address."

And suddenly, as Wither stood with his hand on the door-handle, courtly, patient, and smiling, the whole expression faded out of his face. The pale lips, open wide enough to show his gums, the white curly head, the pouchy eyes, ceased to make up any single expression. Miss Hardcastle had the feeling that a mere mask of skin and flesh was staring at her. A moment later and she was gone.

"I wonder," said Wither as he came back to his chair, "whether we are attaching too much importance to this Studdock woman."

"We are acting on an order dated the 14th[a] of October," said Frost.

"Oh . . . I wasn't questioning it," said Wither with a gesture of deprecation.

"Allow me to remind you of the facts," said Frost. "The authorities had access to the woman's mind for only a very short time. They inspected only one important dream—a dream[b] which revealed, though with some irrelevancies, an essential element in our programme. That warned us that if the woman fell into the hands of any ill-affected persons who knew how to exploit her faculty, she would constitute a grave danger."

"Oh, to be sure, to be sure. I never intended to deny——"[c]

"That was the first point," said Frost, interrupting him. "The second is that her mind became opaque to our authorities almost immediately afterwards. In the present state of our science we[d] know only one cause for such occultations. They ① occur when the mind in question has placed itself, by some voluntary choice of its own, however vague, under the control of some hostile organism. The occultation,

---

[a] 14th] *B*; 1st *M*

☛ If M's date is accepted, Frost and the others wait nearly two weeks to implement the order (see the section on dates in Appendix D: "The Chronology of the Novel"), which seems unlikely. Variant discussed by Lake (56–57).

[b] only one important dream—a dream] *BA*; one dream only—a most important dream, *M*

☛ In ch. 1 I Jane remembers her dream of a head and buried man; in ch. 4 II she dreams of Hingest's murder and learns in ch. 4 V that it was a vision of something real. In ch. 5 III she agrees to keep the company the Denniston's tell her of a secret and to keep them informed of her dreams. If this is the "voluntary" and "vague" submission that closes her mind to Frost's authorities (see note 1 facing this page), B & A's reading allows us to interpret the first dream as important but not the only dream, which is consistent with the rest of the text.

[c] deny——"] *BA*; deny—" *M*

[d] we] *BM*; We *A*

therefore, while cutting off our access to the dreams, also tells us that she has, in some mode or other, come under enemy influence. This is in itself a grave danger. But it[a] also means that to find her would probably mean discovering the enemy's headquarters. Miss Hardcastle is probably right in maintaining that torture would soon induce Studdock to give up his wife's address. But as you pointed out, a round-up[b] at their headquarters, an arrest, and the discovery of her husband here in the condition in which the torture would leave him, would produce psychological conditions in the woman which might destroy her faculty. We should thus frustrate one of the purposes for which we want to get her. That is the first objection. The second is,[c] that an attack on enemy headquarters is very risky. They almost certainly have protection of a kind we are not prepared to cope with. And, finally, the man may not *know* his wife's address. In that case . . ."

"Oh," said Wither, "there is nothing I should more deeply deplore. Scientific examination (I cannot allow the word *Torture* in this context) in cases where the patient doesn't *know* the answer is always a fatal mistake. As men of humanity we should neither of us . . . and then, if you go on, the patient naturally does not recover . . . and if you stop, even an experienced operator is haunted by the fear that perhaps he *did* know after all. It is in every way unsatisfactory."

"There is, in fact, no way of implementing our instructions except by inducing Studdock to bring his wife here himself."

"Or else," said Wither, a little more dreamily than usual, "if it were possible, by inducing in him a much more radical allegiance to our side than he has yet shown. I am speaking, my dear friend, of a real change of heart."

Frost slightly opened and extended his mouth, which was a very long one, so as to show his white teeth.

"That," he said, "is a subdivision of the plan I was mentioning. I was saying that he must be induced to send for the woman himself. That, of course, can be done in two ways. Either by supplying him with some motive on the instinctive level, such as fear of us or desire for her; or else by conditioning him to identify himself so completely with the Cause that he will understand the real motive for securing her person and act on it."

"Exactly . . . exactly," said Wither. "Your expressions, as always, are a little different from those I would choose myself, but . . ."

"Where is Studdock at present?" said Frost.

"In one of the cells here—on the other side."

---

[a] it] *BM*; It *A*
[b] round-up] *BA*; round up *M*
[c] is,] *BA*; is *M*

"Under the impression he has been arrested by the ordinary police?"

"That I cannot answer for. I presume he would be. It does not, perhaps, make much difference."

"And how are you proposing to act?"

"We had proposed to leave him to himself for several hours—to allow the psychological results of the arrest to mature. I have ventured . . . of course, with every regard for humanity . . . to reckon on the value of some slight physical discomforts—he will not have dined, you understand. They have instructions to empty his pockets. One would not wish the young man to relieve any nervous tension that may have arisen by smoking. One wishes the mind to be thrown entirely on its own resources."

"Of course. And what next?"

"Well, I suppose some sort of examination. That is a point on which I should welcome your advice. I mean, as to whether I, personally, should appear in the first instance. I am inclined to think that the appearance of examination by the ordinary police should be maintained a little longer. Then at a later stage will come the discovery that he is still in our hands. He will probably misunderstand this discovery at first—for several minutes. It would be well to let him realise only gradually that this by no means frees him from the—er—embarrassments arising out of Hingest's death. I take it that some fuller realisation of his inevitable solidarity with the Institute would then follow. . . ."[a]

"And then you mean to ask him again for his wife?"

"I shouldn't do it at all like that," said Wither. "If I might venture to say so, it is one of the disadvantages of that extreme simplicity and accuracy with which you habitually speak (much as we all admire it) that it leaves no room for fine shades. One had rather hoped for a spontaneous outburst of confidence on the part of the young man himself. Anything like a direct demand——"[b]

"The weakness of the plan," said Frost, "is that you are relying wholly on fear."

"Fear," repeated Wither as if he had not heard the word before. "I do not quite follow the connection of thought. I can hardly suppose you are following the opposite suggestion, once made, if I remember rightly, by Miss Hardcastle."

"What was that?"

"Why," said Wither, "if I understand her aright she thought of taking scientific measures to render the society of his wife more desirable in the young man's eyes. Some of the chemical resources . . ."

---

[a] follow. . . ."] *BA*; follow . . . *M*

[b] demand——"] *B*; demand—" *M*

"You mean an aphrodisiac?"

Wither sighed gently and said nothing.

"That is nonsense," said Frost. "It isn't to his wife that a man turns under the influence of aphrodisiacs. But as I was saying, I think it is a mistake to rely wholly on fear. I have observed, over a number of years, that its results are incalculable: especially when the fear is complicated. The patient may get too frightened to move, even in the desired direction. If we have to despair of getting the woman here with her husband's goodwill, we must use torture and take the consequences. But there are other alternatives. There is desire."

"I am not sure that I am following you. You have rejected the idea of any medical or chemical approach."

"I was thinking of stronger desires."

Neither at this stage of the conversation nor at any other did the Deputy Director look much at the face of Frost; his eyes, as usual, wandered over the whole room or fixed themselves on distant objects. Sometimes they were shut. But either Frost or Wither—it was difficult to say which—had been gradually moving his chair, so that by this time the two men sat with their knees almost touching.

"I had my conversations[a] with Filostrato," said Frost in his low, clear voice. "I used expressions which must have made my meaning clear if he had any notion of the truth. His senior assistant, Wilkins, was present too. The truth[b] is[c] that neither is really interested. What interests them is the fact that they have succeeded—as they think—in keeping the Head alive and getting it to talk. What it[d] says does not really interest them. As to any question about what[e] is really speaking, they have no curiosity. I went very far. I raised questions about its mode of consciousness—its sources of information. There was no response."

"You are suggesting, if I understand you," said Wither, "a movement towards this Mr. Studdock along *those* lines. If I remember rightly, you rejected fear on the ground that its effects could not really be predicted with the accuracy one might wish. But—ah—would the method now envisaged be any *more* reliable? I need hardly say that I fully realise a certain disappointment which serious-minded people

---

[a] conversations] *A*; conversation *BM*

☛ Frost's later approach to Mark involves several conversations: presumably the same is true with Filostrato and Wilkins.

[b] truth] *BA*; fact *M*

☛ Possibly an authorial second thought or an editorial correction in B (followed by A) to avoid the repetition of "fact" in this sentence and the one that follows it.

[c] is] *BM* is, *A*

[d] it] *BM*; is *A*

☛ An obvious compositing error in A.

[e] what] *BA*; *what M*

① *The couple are eugenically interesting.*

More is revealed about this by Merlin in ch. 13 III.

② *I desire […] to assimilate this young man.*

The demonism implicit in Wither's words here is made clear by comparison with a passage from Screwtape's final letter to Wormwood, after his "patient" has died and is safe from him:

> My dear, my very dear, Wormwood, my poppet, my pigsnie,
>
> […] Rest assured, my love for you and your love for me are as like as two peas. I have always desired you, as you (pitiful fool) desired me. The difference is that I am the stronger. I think they will give you to me now; or a bit of you. Love you? Why, yes. As dainty a morsel as ever I grew fat on.
>
> (*Screwtape Letters* 130)

This demonic assimilative conflict is also evident in Wither and Frost's bizarre wrestling in the paragraph that follows Wither's statement here (ch. 11 II 257–58).

must feel with such colleagues as Filostrato and his subordinate,[a] Mr. Wilkins."

"That is the point," said Frost. "One must guard against the error of supposing that the political and economic dominance of England by the N.I.C.E. is more than a subordinate object: it is individuals that we are really concerned with. A hard unchangeable core of individuals really devoted to the same cause as ourselves—that is what we need and what, indeed, we are under orders to supply. We have not succeeded so far in bringing many people in—really *in*."

"There is still no news from Bragdon Wood?"

"No."

"And you believe that Studdock might really be a suitable person?"[b]

"You must not forget," said Frost, "that his value does not rest solely on his wife's clairvoyance. The couple are eugenically interesting. And secondly, I think he ① can offer no resistance. The hours of fear in the cell, and then an appeal to desires that undercut[c] the fear, will have an almost certain effect on a character of that sort."

"Of course," said Wither, "nothing is so much to be desired as the greatest possible unity. You will not suspect me of underrating[d] that aspect of our orders. Any fresh individual brought into that unity would be a source of the most intense satisfaction—to—ah—all concerned. I desire the closest possible bond. I would ② welcome an interpenetration of personalities so close, so irrevocable, that it almost transcends individuality. You need not doubt that I would open my arms to receive—to absorb—to assimilate this young man."

They were now sitting so close together that their faces almost touched, as if they had been lovers about to kiss. Frost's pince-nez caught the light so that they made his eyes invisible: only his mouth, smiling but not relaxed in the smile, revealed his expression. Wither's mouth was open, the lower lip hanging down, his eyes wet, his whole body hunched and collapsed in his chair as if the strength had gone out of it. A stranger would have thought he had been drinking. Then his shoulders twitched and gradually he began to laugh. And Frost did not laugh, but his smile grew moment by moment brighter and also colder, and he stretched out his hand and patted his colleague on the shoulder. Suddenly in that silent room there was a crash. *Who's Who* had fallen off the table, swept onto the floor as, with sudden, swift convulsive movement, the two old men lurched forward towards each other and sat swaying to and fro, locked in an embrace from which each

[a] subordinate,] *B*; subordinate *M*
[b] person?" *BA*; person? . . ." *M*
[c] undercut] *BA*; under-cut *M*
[d] underrating] *B*; under-/rating *M*

① *rather an animal than a senile parody*

As they give themselves to evil, Wither and Frost neither become super-human nor remain merely human (and capable of senility): rather they become sub-human—animal. See "Human Being" in Introduction 4.

seemed to be struggling to escape. And as they swayed and scrabbled with hand and nail, there arose, shrill and faint at first, but then louder and louder, a cackling noise that seemed in the end rather an animal than a senile parody of laughter. ①

III

When Mark was bundled out of the police waggon[a] into the dark and rain and hurried indoors between two constables and left at length alone in a little lighted room, he had no idea that he was at Belbury. Nor would he have cared greatly if he had known, for the moment he was arrested he had despaired of his life. He was going to be hanged.

He had never till now been at close quarters with death. Now, glancing down at his hand (because his hands were cold and he had been automatically rubbing them)[b] it came to him as a totally new idea that this very hand, with its five nails and the yellow tobacco-stain on the inside of the second finger, would soon[c] be the hand of a corpse, and later the hand of a skeleton. He did not exactly feel horror, though on the physical level he was aware of a choking sensation; what made his brain reel was the preposterousness of the idea. This was something incredible, yet at the same time quite certain.

There came a sudden uprush of grisly details about execution, supplied long since by Miss Hardcastle. But that was a dose too strong for the consciousness to accept. It hovered before his imagination for a fraction of a second, agonising him to a kind of mental scream, and then sank away in a blur. Mere death returned as the object of attention. The question of immortality came before him. He was not in the least interested. What had an after-life[d] to do with it? Happiness in some other and disembodied world (he never thought of unhappiness) was totally irrelevant to a man who was going to be killed. The killing was the important thing. On any view, this body—this limp, shaking, desperately vivid thing, so intimately his own—was going to be turned into a *dead* body. If there were such things as souls, this cared nothing about them. The choking, smothering sensation gave the body's view of the matter with an intensity which excluded all else.

Because he felt that he was choking, he looked round the cell for any sign of ventilation. There was, in fact, some sort of grating above the door. That ventilator and the door itself were the only objects to detain the eye. All else was white floor,

---

[a] waggon] *BA*; wagon *M*
☛ Fowler prefers B & A' s version as "British" but "very rare" in the United States ("Wag(g)gon"), and *Webster's* describes "wagon" as "almost universally employed" in the U.S. M's reading is thus an example of an American spelling in M.
[b] them)] *B*; them), *M*
[c] soon] *B*; one day *M*
☛ B's "soon" is much more urgent than M's "one day", and so may be an authorial emendation.
[d] after-life] *B*; afterlife *M*

white ceiling, white wall, without a chair or table or book or peg, and with one hard white light in the centre of the ceiling.

Something in the look of the place now suggested to him for the first time the idea that he might be at Belbury and not in an ordinary police station. But the flash of hope aroused by this idea was so brief as to be instantaneous. What difference did it make whether Wither and Miss Hardcastle and the rest had decided to get rid of him by handing him over to the ordinary police or by making away with him in private—as they had doubtless done with Hingest? The meaning of all the ups and downs he had experienced at Belbury now appeared to him perfectly plain. They were all his enemies, playing upon his hopes and fears to reduce him to complete servility, certain to kill him if he broke away, and certain to kill him in the long run when he had served the purpose for which they wanted him. It appeared to him astonishing that he could ever have thought otherwise. How could he have supposed that any real conciliation of these people could be achieved by anything he did?

What a fool—a blasted, babyish, gullible fool—he had been! He sat down on the floor, for his legs felt weak, as if he had walked twenty-five miles. Why had he come to Belbury in the first instance? Ought not his very first interview with the Deputy Director to have warned him,[a] as clearly as if the truth were shouted through a megaphone or printed on a poster in letters six foot[b] high, that here was the world of plot within plot, crossing and double crossing,[c] of lies and graft and stabbing in the back, of murder and a contemptuous guffaw for the fool who lost the game? Feverstone's guffaw, that day he had called him an "incurable romantic," came back to his mind. Feverstone . . . that was how he had come to believe in Wither: on Feverstone's recommendation. Apparently his folly went further back. How on earth had he come to trust Feverstone—a man with a mouth like a shark, with his flash manners, a man who never looked you in the face? Jane, or Dimble, would have seen through him at once. He had "crook" written all over him. He was fit only to deceive puppets like Curry and Busby. But then, at the time when he first met Feverstone, he had not thought Curry and Busby puppets. With extraordinary clarity, but with renewed astonishment, he remembered how he had felt about the Progressive Element at Bracton when he was first admitted to its confidence;[d] he

The Inner Ring

[a] him,] *BM*; him. *A*
☛ A's full-stop should really be a question mark.
[b] foot] *B*; feet *M*
☛ The singular unit is common after numerals (*NED*, "Foot" III. 7. a) but perhaps less so in American usage (*Webster's* says nothing about usage here).
[c] double crossing,] *B*; double-crossing *M*
[d] confidence:] *B*; confidence; *M*

remembered, even more incredulously, how he had felt as a very junior fellow[a] while he was outside it—how he had looked almost with awe at the heads of Curry and Busby bent close together in Common Room, hearing occasional fragments of their whispered conversation, pretending himself the while to be absorbed in a periodical but longing—oh, so intensely longing—for one of them to cross the room and speak to him. And then, after months and months, it had happened. He had a picture of himself, the odious little outsider who wanted to be an insider, the infantile gull, drinking in the husky and unimportant confidences, as if he were being admitted to the government of the planet. Was there *no* beginning to his folly? Had he been an utter fool all through from the very day of his birth? Even as a schoolboy, when he had ruined his work and half broken his heart trying to get into the society called Grip, and lost his only real friend in doing so? Even as a child, fighting Myrtle because she *would* go and talk secrets with Pamela next door?

He himself did not understand why all this, which was now so clear, had never previously crossed his mind. He was unaware that such thoughts had often knocked for entrance, but had always been excluded for the very good reason that if they were once entertained it involved ripping up the whole web of his life, cancelling almost every decision his will had ever made, and really beginning over again as though he were an infant. The indistinct mass of problems which would have to be faced if he admitted such thoughts, the innumerable "somethings" about which "something" would have to be done, had deterred him from ever raising these questions. What had now taken the blinkers off was the fact that nothing *could* be done. They were going to hang him. His story was at an end. There was no harm in ripping up the web now for he was not going to use it any more; there was no bill to be paid (in the shape of arduous decision and reconstruction) for truth. It was a result of the approach of death which the Deputy Director and Professor Frost had possibly not foreseen.

There were no moral considerations at this moment in Mark's mind. He looked back on his life,[b] not with shame[c] but with a kind of disgust at its dreariness. He saw himself as a little boy in short trousers, hidden in the shrubbery beside the paling[d] to overhear Myrtle's conversation with Pamela, and trying to ignore the fact that it was not at all interesting when overheard. He saw himself making believe that he enjoyed those Sunday afternoons with the athletic heroes of Grip,[e] while all the time (as he now saw) he was almost homesick for one of the old walks with

[a] fellow] *B*; Fellow *M*
[b] life,] *BA*; life *M*
[c] shame] *BA*; shame, *M*
[d] paling] *BA*; paling, *M*
[e] Grip,] *BA*; Grip *M*

Pearson—Pearson whom he had taken such pains to leave behind. He saw himself in his teens laboriously reading rubbishy grown-up novels and drinking beer when he really enjoyed John Buchan and stone ginger. The hours that he had spent learning the very slang of each new circle that attracted him, the perpetual assumption of interest in things he found dull and of knowledge he did not possess, the almost heroic sacrifice of nearly every person and thing he actually enjoyed, the miserable attempt to pretend that one *could* enjoy Grip, or the Progressive Element, or the N.I.C.E.—all this came over him with a kind of heartbreak.[a] When had he ever done what he wanted? Mixed with the people whom he liked? Or even eaten and drunk what took his fancy? The concentrated insipidity of it all filled him with self-pity.

In his normal condition, explanations that laid on impersonal forces outside himself the responsibility for all this life of dust and broken bottles would have occurred at once to his mind and been at once accepted. It would have been "the system" or "an inferiority complex" due to his parents, or the peculiarities of the age. None of these things occurred to him now. His "scientific" outlook had never been a real philosophy believed with blood and heart. It had lived only in his brain, and was a part of that public self which was now falling off him. He was aware, without even having to think of it, that it was he himself—nothing else in the whole universe—that[b] had chosen the dust and broken bottles, the heap of old tin cans, the dry and choking places.

An unexpected idea came into his head. This—this death of his—would be lucky for Jane. Myrtle long ago, Pearson at school, Denniston while they were undergraduates, and lastly Jane had been the four biggest invasions of his life by something from beyond the dry and choking places. Myrtle he had conquered by becoming the clever brother who won scholarships and mixed with important people. They were really twins, but after a short period in childhood during which she had appeared as an elder sister, she had become more like a younger sister and had remained so ever since. He had wholly drawn her into his orbit: it was her large wondering eyes and naïf answers to his accounts of the circle he was now moving in which had provided at each stage most of the real pleasure of his career. But for the same reason she had ceased to mediate life from beyond the dry places. The flower, once safely planted among the tin cans, had turned into a tin can itself. Pearson and

---

[a] heartbreak.] *BA*; heart-break. *M*

[b] that] *BM*; who *A*

☛ In B & M "that" agrees with "nothing else in the whole universe", but in A, because of the excision of that phrase, "who" agrees with "himself".

① *only six hours ago […] not disagreeable.*

Mark initially wonders at Frost's presence in the unofficial but important circle that meets in the library at night (ch. 6 III 131–32), but eventually feels "pleased that he had (as he would have put it) 'got to know' Frost" (ch. 8 III 179), taking it as a sign of his progress towards the inner ring that he recognises his unofficial importance, and welcoming "as a sign of maturity" his ability to enjoy Frost's company and conversation despite his natural revulsion against him. Now we see him beginning truly to mature as he acknowledges his true reactions rather than those he has schooled himself to make.

Denniston he had thrown away. And he[a] now knew, for the first time, what he had secretly meant to do with Jane. If all had succeeded, if he had become the sort of man he hoped to be, she was to have been the great hostess—the secret hostess in the sense that only the very esoteric few would know who that striking-looking woman was and why it mattered so enormously to secure her good will. Well . . . it was lucky for Jane. She seemed to him, as he now thought of her, to have in herself deep wells and knee-deep meadows of happiness, rivers of freshness, enchanted gardens of leisure, which he could not enter but could have spoiled. She was one of those other people—like Pearson, like Denniston, like the Dimbles—who could enjoy things for their own sake. She was not like him. It was well that she should be rid of him. Of course she would get over it. She had tried to do her best, but she didn't really care for him. Nobody ever had, much.[b]

At that moment came the sound of a key turning in the lock of the cell-door. Instantly all these thoughts vanished; mere physical terror of death, drying the throat, rushed back upon him. He scrambled to his feet and stood with his back against the farthest wall, staring as hard as if he could escape hanging by keeping whoever entered steadily in sight.

It was not a policeman who came in. It was a man in a grey suit whose pince-nez,[c] as he glanced towards Mark and towards the light, became opaque windows concealing his eyes. Mark knew him at once and knew that he was at Belbury. It was not this that made him open his own eyes even wider and almost forget his terror in his astonishment. It was the change in the man's appearance—or rather the change in the eyes with which Mark saw him. In one sense everything about Professor Frost was as it had always been—the pointed beard, the extreme whiteness of forehead, the regularity of features, and the bright Arctic smile. But what Mark could not understand was how he had ever managed to overlook something about the man so obvious that any child would have shrunk away from him and any dog would have backed into the corner with raised hackles and bared teeth. Death itself did not seem more frightening than the fact that only six hours ago he would in some measure ① have trusted this man, welcomed his confidence, and even made believe that his society was not disagreeable.

---

[a] he] *BM*; He *A*

[b] Of course she […] ever had, much.] *BA*; *not in M*

☛ This excision from M enables the chapter to finish on the last line of page M289, rather than running on to the next page and forcing a mostly blank page.

[c] pince-nez,] *BA*; *pince-nez M*

☛ See note to 9[a].

TWELVE

Wet and Windy Night

I

"WELL," said Dimble, "there's no one here."

"He was here a moment ago," said Denniston.

"You're sure you *did* see someone?" said Dimble.

"I thought I saw someone," said Denniston. "I'm not positive."

"If there was anyone he must still be quite close," said Dimble.

"What about giving him a call?" suggested Denniston.

"Hush! Listen!" said Jane. They were all silent for a few moments.

"That's only the old donkey," said Dimble presently, "moving about at the top."

There was another silence.

"He seems to have been pretty extravagant with his matches," said Denniston[a] presently, glancing at the trodden earth in the firelight. "One would expect a tramp——"[b]

"On the other hand," said Dimble, "one would not expect Merlin to have brought a box of matches with him from the fifth century."[c]

"But what are we to *do*?" said Jane.

"One hardly likes to think what MacPhee will say if we return with no more success than this. He will at once point out a plan we ought to have followed," said Denniston with a smile.

"Now that the rain's over," said Dimble, "we'd better get back to the car and start hunting for your white gate. What are you looking at, Denniston?"

"I'm looking at this mud," said Denniston, who had moved a few paces away from the fire and in the direction of the path by which they had descended into the dingle. He had been stooping and using his torch. Now he suddenly straightened himself. "Look," he said, "there have been several people here. No, don't walk onto[d] it and mess up all the tracks. Look. Can't you see, sir?"[e]

"Aren't they our own footprints?" said Dimble.

---

[a] Denniston] *BA*; Denniston, *M*
[b] tramp——" *BA*; tramp—" *M*
[c] fifth century."] *ed.*; Fifth Century." *BMA*
☛ See note 282[a].
[d] onto] *B*; on *M*
☛ Either reading would be acceptable (see Fowler, "Onto, on to, on").
[e] sir?"] *BA*; Sir? *M*

"Some of them are pointing the wrong way. Look at that—and that."

"Might they be the tramp himself?" said Dimble. "If it was a tramp."

"He couldn't have walked up that path without our seeing him," said Jane.

"Unless he did it before we arrived," said Denniston.

"But we all saw him," said Jane.

"Come," said Dimble. "Let's follow them up to the top. I don't suppose we shall be able to follow them far. If not, we must get back to the road and go on looking for the gate."

As they reached the lip of the hollow, mud changed into grass under foot and the footprints disappeared. They walked twice round the dingle and found nothing:[a] then they set out to return to the road. It had turned into a fine night: Orion dominated the whole sky.

II

The Deputy Director hardly ever slept. When it became absolutely necessary for him to do so, he took a drug, but the necessity was rare, for the mode of consciousness he experienced at most hours of day or night had long ceased to be exactly like what other men call waking. He had learned to withdraw most of his consciousness from the task of living, to conduct business, even, with only a quarter of his mind. Colours, tastes, smells, and tactual sensations no doubt bombarded his physical senses in the normal manner: they did not now reach his ego. The manner and outward attitude to men which he had adopted half a century ago were now an organisation which functioned almost independently,[b] like a gramophone,[c] and to which he could hand over his whole routine of interviews and committees. While the brain and lips carried on this work, and built up day by day for those around him the vague and formidable personality which they knew so well, his inmost self was free to pursue its own life. That[d] detachment of the spirit[e] not only from the senses[f] but even from the reason[g] which has been the goal of some mystics[h] was now his.

Hence he was still, in a sense, awake—that is, he was certainly not sleeping—an hour after Frost had left him to visit Mark in his cell. Anyone who had looked

[a] nothing:] *B*; nothing; *M*
[b] independently,] *BA*; independently *M*
[c] gramophone,] *B*; gramophone *M*
[d] That] *MB*; A *A*
[e] spirit] *BA*; spirit, *M*
[f] senses] *BA*; senses, *M*
[g] reason] *BA*; reason, *M*
[h] mystics] *B*; mystics, *M*

① *But his eyes […] without a start.*

Wither is the literary ancestor of a character in an unexpected *oeuvre*—that of Peter O'Donnell, author of the Modesty Blaise cartoon strip and novels. In *Dead Man's Handle* (1985), the sinister Dr Thaddeus Pilgrim displays marked similarities to Wither: see Appendix C for an extensive defence of this assertion, and p. 433 in particular for a description of Pilgrim that parallels this description of Wither.

into the study during that hour would have seen him sitting motionless at his table, with bowed head and folded hands. But his[a] eyes were not shut. The face had no ① expression; the real man was far away, suffering, enjoying, or inflicting whatever such souls do suffer, enjoy,[b] or inflict when the cord that binds them to the natural order is stretched out to its utmost but not yet snapped. When the telephone rang at his elbow he took up the receiver without a start.

"Speaking," he said.

"This is Stone, sir,"[c] came a voice. "We have found the chamber."

"Yes."

"It was empty, sir."[d]

"Empty?"

"Yes, sir."[d]

"Are you sure, my dear Mr. Stone, that you have found the right place? It is possible . . ."

"Oh yes, sir.[e] It is a little kind of crypt. Stonework and some Roman brick. And a kind of slab in the middle, like an altar or a bed."

"And am I to understand there was no one there? No sign of occupation?"

"Well, sir, it seemed to us to have been recently disturbed."

"Pray be as explicit as possible, Mr. Stone."

"Well, sir,[f] there was an exit—I mean a tunnel, leading out of it to the south.[g] We went up this tunnel at once. It comes out about eight hundred yards away, outside the area of the wood."

"Comes out? Do you mean there is an arch—a gate—a tunnel mouth?"[h]

"Well, that's just the point. We got out to the open air all right. But obviously something had been smashed-up there quite recently. It looked as if it had been done by explosives. As if the end of the tunnel had been walled up and had some depth of earth on top of it, and as if someone had recently blasted his way out. There was no end of a mess."

"Continue, Mr. Stone. What did you do next?"

"I used the order you had given me, sir,[f] to collect all the police available and have sent off search-parties[i] for the man you described."

---

[a] his] *MB*; His *A*
[b] enjoy,] *BA*; enjoy *M*
[c] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*
[d] sir."] *B*; Sir." *M*
[e] sir.] *BA*; Sir. *M*
[f] sir,] *BA*; Sir, *M*
[g] south.] *BA*; South. *M*
[h] tunnel mouth?"] *B*; tunnel-mouth *M*
[i] search-parties] *BA*; search parties *M*

"I see. And how did *you* describe him to them?"

"Just as you did, sir:[a] an old man with either a very long beard or a beard very roughly trimmed, probably in a mantle, but certainly in some kind of unusual clothes. It occurred to me at the last moment to add that he might have no clothes at all."

"Why did you add that, Mr. Stone?"

"Well, sir,[b] I didn't know how long he'd been there, and it isn't my business. I'd heard things about clothes preserved in a place like that and all falling to pieces as soon as the air was admitted. I hope you won't imagine for a moment that I'm trying to find out anything you don't choose to tell me. But I just thought it would be as well to——"[c]

"You were quite right, Mr. Stone," said Wither, "in thinking that anything remotely resembling inquisitiveness on your part might have the most disastrous consequences. I mean, for yourself;[d] for, of course, it is your interests I have chiefly had in view in my choice of methods. I assure you that you can rely on my support in the very—er—delicate position you have—no doubt unintentionally—chosen to occupy."

"Thank you very much, sir.[e] I am so glad you think I was right in saying he might be naked."

"Oh, as to *that*," said the Director, "there are a great many considerations which cannot be raised at the moment. And what did you instruct your search-parties[f] to do on finding any such—er—person?"

"Well, that was another difficulty, sir[g]. I[h] sent my own assistant, Father Doyle, with one party, because he knows Latin. And I gave Inspector Wrench the ring you gave me and put him in charge of the second. The best I could do for the third party was to see that it contained someone who knew Welsh."

"You did not think of accompanying a party yourself?"

"No, sir.[e] You'd told me to ring up without fail the moment we found anything. And I didn't want to delay the search-parties[i] until I'd got you."

"I see. Well, no doubt your, action (speaking quite without prejudice) could be interpreted along those lines. You made it quite clear that this—ah—

---

[a] sir:] *BA*; Sir: *M*
[b] sir,] *BA*; Sir, *M*
[c] ——"] *A*; . . ." *BM*
[d] yourself;] *B*; yourself, *M*
[e] sir.] *B*; Sir. *M*
[f] search-parties] *BA*; search parties *M*
[g] sir] *BA*; Sir *M*
[h] . I] *BM*; , I *A*
[i] search-parties] *B*; search parties *M*

Personage—when found, was to be treated with the greatest deference and—if you won't misunderstand me—caution?"

"Oh yes, sir."[a]

"Well, Mr. Stone, I am, on the whole, and with certain inevitable reservations, moderately satisfied with your conduct of this affair. I believe that I may be able to present it in a favourable light to those of my colleagues whose good will you have, unfortunately, not been able to retain. If you can bring it to a successful conclusion you would very much strengthen your position. If not . . . it is inexpressibly painful to me that there should be these tensions and mutual recriminations among us. But you quite understand me, my dear boy. If only I could persuade—say Miss Hardcastle and Mr. Studdock—to share my appreciation of your very real qualities, you would need to have no apprehensions about your career or—ah—your security."

"But what do you want me to *do*, sir?"[b]

"My dear young friend, the golden rule is very simple. There[c] are only two errors which would be fatal to one placed in the peculiar situation which certain parts of your previous conduct have unfortunately created for you. On the one hand, anything like a lack of initiative or enterprise would be disastrous. On the other, the slightest approach to unauthorised action—anything which suggested that you were assuming a liberty of decision which, in all the circumstances, is not really yours—might have consequences from which even I could not protect you. But as long as you keep quite clear of these two extremes, there is no reason (speaking unofficially) why you should not be perfectly safe."

Then, without[d] waiting for Mr. Stone to reply,[e] he hung up the receiver and rang his bell.

III

"Oughtn't we to be nearly at the gate we climbed over?" said Dimble.

It was a good deal lighter now that the rain had stopped, but the wind had risen and was roaring about them so that only shouted remarks could be heard. The branches of the hedge beside which they were tramping swayed and dipped and rose again so that they looked as if they were lashing the bright stars.

"It's a good deal longer than I remembered," said Denniston.

---

[a] sir."] *B*; Sir." *M*
[b] sir?"] *BA*; Sir?" *M*
[c] There] *BM*; there *A*
[d] without] *BM*; Without *A*
[e] reply,] *BM*; a reply, *A*

"But not so muddy," said Jane.

"You're right," said Denniston, suddenly stopping, "It's all stony. It wasn't like this at all on the way up. We're in the wrong field."

"I *think*," said Dimble mildly, "we must be right. We turned half left along this hedge as soon as we came out of the trees, and I'm sure I remember——"[a]

"But did we come out of the copse on the right side?" said Denniston.

"If we once start changing course," said Dimble, "we shall go round and round in circles all night. Let's keep straight on. We're bound to come to the road in the end."

"Hullo!" said Jane sharply. "What's this?"

All listened. Because of the wind, the unidentified rhythmic noise which they were straining to hear seemed quite distant at one moment, and then, next moment, with shouts of "Look out!"—"Go away[b] you great brute!"—"Get back!"[c]—and the like, all were shrinking back into the hedge as the *plosh-plosh* of a horse cantering on soft ground passed close beside them. A cold gobbet of mud flung up from its hoofs struck Denniston in the face.

"Oh, look! Look!" cried Jane. "Stop him. Quick!"[d]

"Stop him?" said Denniston who was trying to clean his face. "What on earth for? The less I see of that great clod-hopping quadruped, the better——"[e]

"Oh, shout out to him, Dr. Dimble," said Jane, in an agony of impatience. "Come on. Run! Didn't you see?"

"See what?" panted Dimble, as the whole party, under the influence of Jane's urgency, began running in the direction of the retreating horse.

"There's a man on his back," gasped Jane. She was tired and out of breath and had lost a shoe.

"A man?" said Denniston:[f] and then, "By God, sir,[g] Jane's right. Look, look there! Against the sky . . . to your left."

"We can't overtake him," said Dimble.

"Hi! Stop! Come back!—Friends—*amis*—*amici*," bawled Denniston.

Dimble was not able to shout for the moment. He was an old man, who had

---

[a] remember——"] *B*; remember—" *M*
[b] away] *BA*; away, *M*
[c] back!"] *M*; back" *B*
☛ In B the punctuation was either omitted by the compositor or was never there: this is not an instance of a printing error in B as there is no obvious gap.
[d] Quick!"] *MA*; Quick! *B*
☛ The closing quotation mark is missing in B. Again, this is a compositor's error, not a printing error: the exclamation mark is at the right edge of the text and there is clearly no gap.
[e] better——"] *B*; better—" *M*
[f] Denniston:] *BA*; Denniston; *M*
[g] sir,] *BA*; Sir, *M*

① *all the others*

This should be "both the others", as Dimble has only two companions—Jane and Denniston.

Possibly an earlier draft of the story had a larger group go out in search of the awakened Merlin.

been tired before they set out, and now his heart and lungs were doing things to him of which his doctor had told him the meaning some years ago. He was not frightened, but he could not shout with a great voice (least of all in the Old Solar language) until he had breathed. And while he stood trying to fill his lungs[a] all the others suddenly cried "Look" yet again:[b] for high among the stars, looking unnaturally large and many legged, the shape of the horse appeared as it leaped a hedge some twenty yards away, and on its back, with some streaming garment blown far out behind him in the wind, the great figure of a man. It seemed to Jane that he was looking back over his shoulder as though he mocked. Then came a splash and thud as the horse alighted on the far side; and then nothing but wind and starlight again. ①

IV

"You are in danger," said Frost, when he had finished locking the door of Mark's cell, "but you are also within reach of a great opportunity."

"I gather," said Mark, "I am at the Institute after all and not in a police station."

"Yes. That makes no difference to the danger. The Institute will soon have official powers of liquidation. It has anticipated them. Hingest and Carstairs have both been liquidated. Such actions are demanded of us."

"If you are going to kill me," said Mark, "why all this farce of a murder charge?"

"Before going on," said Frost, "I must ask you to be strictly objective. Resentment and fear are both chemical phenomena. Our reactions to one another are chemical phenomena. Social relations are chemical relations. You must observe these feelings in yourself in an objective manner. Do not let them distract your attention from the facts." *Men Without Chests*

"I see," said Mark. He was acting while he said it—trying to sound at once faintly hopeful and slightly sullen, ready to be worked upon. But within, his new insight into Belbury kept him resolved not to believe one word the other said, not to accept (though he might feign acceptance) any offer he made. He felt that he must at all costs hold on to the knowledge that these men were unalterable enemies:[c] for already he felt the old tug towards yielding, towards semi-credulity, inside him.

[a] fill his lungs] *BM*; get his breath *A*
☛ A's change restores the necessary reference to breathing that has, in the abridgement, been lost by the excision of the previous sentences.
[b] again:] *BA*; again; *M*
[c] enemies:] *B*; enemies; *M*

"The murder charge against you and the alternations[a] in your treatment have been part of a planned programme with a well-defined[b] end in view," said Frost. "It is a discipline through which everyone is passed before admission to the Circle."

Again Mark felt a spasm of retrospective terror. Only a few days ago he[c] would have swallowed any hook with that bait on it; and nothing but the imminence of death could have made the hook so obvious and the bait so insipid as it now was. At least, so comparatively insipid. For even now . . . *The Inner Ring*

"I don't quite see the purpose of it," he said aloud.

"It is, again, to promote objectivity. A circle bound together by subjective feelings of mutual confidence and liking would be useless. Those, as I have said, are chemical phenomena. They could all, in principle,[d] be produced by injections. You have been made to pass though a number of conflicting feelings about the Deputy Director and others in order that your future association with us may not be based on feelings at all. In so far as there must be social relations between members of the circle it is, perhaps, better that they should be feelings of dislike. There is less risk of their being confused with the real *nexus*."

"My future association?"[e] said Studdock, acting a tremulous eagerness. But it was perilously easy for him to act it. The reality might reawake[f] at any moment.

"Yes," said Frost. "You have been selected as a possible candidate for admission. If you do not gain admission, or if you reject it, it will be necessary to destroy you. I am not, of course, attempting to work on your fears. They only confuse the issue. The process would be quite painless, and your present reactions to it are inevitable physical events."

Mark considered this thoughtfully.[g]

"It—it seems rather a formidable decision," said Mark.

"That is merely a proposition about the state of your own body at the moment. If you please, I will go on to give you the necessary information. I must begin by telling you that neither the Deputy Director nor I[h] are responsible for shaping the policy of the Institute."

"The Head?" said Mark.

---

[a] alternations] *BA*; alterations *M*
☛ M's reading is not impossible, but "alternations" makes the deliberate, repetitive swing between only two kinds of treatment—apparent acceptance and apparent rejection—clearer.
[b] well-defined] *BA*; well defined *M*
[c] he] *BM*; Mark *A*
[d] all, in principle,] *BA*; all in principle *M*
[e] "My future association?"] *BM*; "The circle?" *A*
[f] reawake] *B*; re-awake *M*
[g] Mark considered this thoughtfully. ¶] *M only.*
☛ See Introduction 2 xl.
[h] Director nor I] *A*; Director, nor I, *BM*

"No. Filostrato and Wilkins are quite deceived about the Head. They have, indeed, carried out a remarkable experiment by preserving it from decay. But Alcasan's mind is not the mind we are in contact with when the Head speaks."

"Do you mean Alcasan is really . . . *dead*?" asked Mark. His surprise at Frost's last statement needed no acting.

"In the present state of our knowledge," said Frost, "there is no answer to that question. Probably it has no meaning. But the cortex and vocal organs in Alcasan's head are used by a different mind. And now, please, attend very carefully. You have probably not heard of macrobes."

"Microbes?" said Mark in bewilderment. "But of course——"[a]

"I did not say *microbes*, I said *macrobes.* The formation of the word explains itself. Below the level of animal life we have long known that there are microscopic organisms. Their actual results on human life, in respect of health and disease, have, of course,[b] made up a large part of history: the secret cause was not known till we invented the microscope."

"Go on," said Mark. Ravenous curiosity was moving like a sort of ground-swell[c] beneath his conscious determination to stand on guard.

"I have now to inform you that there are similar organisms *above* the level of animal life. When I say 'above'[d] I am not speaking biologically. The structure of the macrobe, so far as we know it, is of extreme simplicity. When I say that it is above the animal level, I mean that it is[e] more permanent, disposes of more energy, and has[f] greater intelligence."

"More intelligent than the highest anthropoids?" said Mark. "It[g] must be pretty nearly human, then."

"You have misunderstood me. When I said it[h] transcended the animals, I was, of course, including the most efficient animal, Man. The *macrobe* is more intelligent than Man."

Frowningly, Mark studied this theory.[i]

"But how is it in that case that we have had no communication with them?"

"It is not certain that we have not. But in primitive times it was spasmodic,

---

[a] course——"] *BA*; course—" *M*
[b] have, of course,] *BA*; have of course *M*
[c] ground-swell] *B*; groundswell *M*
[d] say 'above'] *A*; say, 'above,' *M* say "above" *B*
☛ B's double quotation marks are an obvious error here.
[e] it is] *BM*; they are *A*
[f] has] *BM*; have *A*
[g] "It] *BM*; "They *A*
[h] it] *BM*; they *A*
[i] Frowningly, Mark studied this theory. ¶] *M only.*
☛ Noted by Lake (55). See Introduction 2 xl.

① *The vocal organs […] theirs, not ours.*

The macrobes—the dark eldils, demons—demand a good deal of commitment, proved by elaborate reversals and perversions of normal human attitudes, before they reward the humans in league with them with even a small amount of (ultimately illusory) power. The leaders of the N.I.C.E. are scientists and magicians. As Lewis wrote to Douglas Bush in 1941, "the magician and the scientist [… who, …], in contrast to the Christian, the Stoic, or the Humanist, […] both make Power their aim, believe Power to be obtainable by a technique, and in the practice of that technique are ready to defy ordinary morality" (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 475, see also *Abolition of Man* 46–47). Lewis's description of Renaissance magicians and scientists is equally applicable to those of the N.I.C.E. And, as Ransom reflects, "The whole Renaissance outburst of forbidden arts had, it seemed, been a method of losing one's soul on singularly unfavourable terms" (ch. 12 V 213).

The elaborate approaches that the dark eldils demand of their dupes can be contrasted with the simplicity of Ransom's interaction with the translunary eldils: he tells Merlin that (as a result of the events of *Out of the Silent Planet*), "there was one man in the world—even myself—who was known to the Oyéresu and spoke their tongue, neither by God's miracle, nor by magic from Númenor, but naturally, as when two men meet in a road" (ch. 13 V 308). The two kinds of creature, though occupying very different places in the hierarchy of creation, can nevertheless share a relationship.

The initial approach to God—Maleldil—Himself is even simpler than the meeting between two kinds of well-intentioned creatures, and much simpler than that between demons and magicians. Jane is permitted initially to place her trust in God by placing her trust in Ransom, for "the courtesy of Deep Heaven" is "that when you mean well, He always takes you to have meant better than you knew" (ch. 10 IV 244). When Mark utters a desperate and inchoate plea to be protected from demonic temptation, his prayer, vague as it is, is honoured (ch. 12 VII 286).

and was opposed by numerous prejudices. Moreover the intellectual development of man had not reached the level at which intercourse with our species could offer any attractions to a *macrobe*. But though there has been little intercourse, there has been profound influence. Their effect on human history has been far greater than that of the microbes, though, of course, equally unrecognised.[a] In the light of what we now know[b] all history will have to be rewritten. The real causes of all the principal events are quite unknown to the historians; that, indeed, is why history has not yet succeeded in becoming a science."

"I think I'll sit down, if you don't mind," said Mark, resuming his seat on the floor. Frost remained, throughout the whole conversation, standing perfectly still with his arms hanging down straight at his sides. But for the periodic upward tilt of his head and flash of his teeth at the end of a sentence, he used no gestures.

"The vocal organs and brain taken from Alcasan," he[c] continued, "have become the conductors of a regular intercourse between the macrobes and our own species.[d] I do not say that we have discovered this technique; the discovery was theirs, not ours. The circle to which you may be admitted is the organ of that co-operation between the two species which has already created a new situation for humanity. The change, you will see, is far greater than that which turned the sub-man into the man. It is more comparable to the first appearance of organic life." ①

"These organisms, then," said Mark, "are friendly to humanity?"

"If you reflect for a moment," said Frost, "you will see that your question has no meaning except on the level of the crudest popular thought. Friendship is a chemical phenomenon; so is hatred. Both of them presupposes[e] organisms of our own type. The first step towards intercourse with the macrobes is the realisation that one must go outside the whole world of our subjective emotions. It is only as you begin to do so[f] that you discover how much of what you mistook for your thought was merely a by-product of your blood and nervous tissues."

"Oh, of course. I didn't quite mean 'friendly'[g] in that sense. I really meant, were their aims compatible with our own?"

"What do you mean by our own aims?"

---

[a] unrecognised.] *BA*; unrecognized. *M*
☛ Inadvertent American spelling in M (see *Webster's*, "Recognize").
[b] know] *B*; know, *M*
[c] he] *BM*; Frost *A*
[d] species.] *MA*; sepcies. *B*
☛ An obvious compositor's error in B.
[e] presupposes] *BA*; presuppose *M*
☛ Understanding "Both of them" as kind of shorthand for the singular concept, "The *simultaneous presence* of both of them" justifies B & A's "presupposes".
[f] so] *B*; so, *M*
[g] mean 'friendly'] *BA*; mean, 'friendly,' *M*

① *reserved*

Exempted from military service because of the importance of their civilian occupation (*OED*, "reserve" *v.* 6. e: the *OED*'s first citation for this sense is from 1915 and it is not in the *NED*).

② *It was not the great technocrats of Koenigsberg or Moscow […] in the siege of Stalingrad*

The *OED* quotes the B-text of *That Hideous Strength* six times (see also: 197 n. 1; 203 n. 2; n. 3 on this page; 328 n. 1; 329 n. 2). This sentence is used to illustrate "technocrat".

Koenigsberg was the headquarters of the most easterly of the Nazi military districts until the very end of World War II when it was taken by Russia; Moscow was (and still is) the capital of Russia. The siege of Stalingrad was a major battle of World War II (August 1942 to February 1943), in which the Soviet army achieved a decisive victory over the Axis powers—at the cost of nearly two million casualties altogether.

③ *The effect of modern war […] sparing the technocracy and increasing its hold upon public affairs.*

This sentence (in the B-text) is the first quotation from a British source used by the *OED* to illustrate "technocracy", a word marked "orig. *U.S.*" with the first quotation dated 1919.

"Well—I suppose—the scientific reconstruction of the human race in the direction of increased efficiency—the elimination of war and poverty and other forms of waste—a fuller exploitation of nature[a]—the preservation and extension of our species, in fact."

"I do not think this pseudo-scientific language really modifies the essentially subjective and instinctive basis of the ethics you are describing. I will return to the matter at a later stage. For the moment, I would merely remark that your view of war and your reference to the preservation of the species suggest a profound misconception. They are mere generalisations from affectional feelings."

"Surely," said Mark, "one requires a pretty large population for the full exploitation of nature,[b] if for nothing else? And surely war is disgenic and reduces efficiency? Even if population needs thinning, is not war the worst possible method of thinning it?"

"That idea is a survival from conditions which are rapidly being altered. A few centuries ago, war did[c] operate in the way you describe. A[d] large agricultural population was essential; and war destroyed types which were then still useful. But every advance in industry and agriculture reduces the number of work-people who are required. A large, unintelligent population is now becoming a dead-weight.[e] The real importance of scientific war is that scientists have to be reserved. It was not the ① great technocrats of Koenigsberg or Moscow who supplied the casualties in the ② siege of Stalingrad: it was superstitious Bavarian peasants and low-grade Russian agricultural workers. The effect of modern war is to eliminate retrogressive types, ③ while sparing the technocracy and increasing its hold upon public affairs. In the new age, what has hitherto been merely the intellectual nucleus of the race is to become, by gradual stages, the race itself. You are to conceive the species as an animal which has discovered how to simplify nutrition and locomotion to such a point that the old complex organs and the large body which contained them are no longer necessary. That large body is[f] therefore to disappear. Only a tenth part of it will now be needed to support the brain. The individual[g] is to become all head. The human race is to become all Technocracy."

"I see," said Mark. "I had thought—rather vaguely—that the intelligent nucleus would be extended by education."

---

[a] nature] *BA*; Nature *M*
[b] nature,] *BA*; Nature, *M*
[c] did] *B*; did not *M*
☛ Noted by Lake (55). M's "not" is clearly incorrect.
[d] A] *BM*; a *A*
[e] dead-weight.] *BA*; deadweight. *M*
[f] That large body is] *BM*; The masses are *A*
[g] individual] *BM*; body *A*

"That is a pure chimera. The great majority of the human race can[a] be educated only in the sense of being given knowledge: they cannot be trained into the total objectivity of mind which is now necessary. They will always remain animals, looking at the world through the haze of their subjective reactions. Even if they could, the day for a large population has passed. It has served its function by acting as a kind of cocoon for Technocratic and Objective Man. Now, the macrobes, and the selected humans who can co-operate with them, have no further use for it."

"The last two wars, then, were not disasters in your view?"

"On the contrary, they were simply the beginning of the programme—the first two of the sixteen major wars which are scheduled to take place in this century. I am aware of the emotional (that is, the chemical) reactions which a statement like this produces in you, and you are wasting your time in trying to conceal them from me. I do not expect you to control them. That is not the path to objectivity. I deliberately raise them in order that you may become accustomed to regard them in a purely scientific light and distinguish them as sharply as possible from the *facts*."

Mark sat with his eyes fixed on the floor. He had felt, in fact, very little emotion at Frost's programme for the human race; indeed[b] he almost discovered at that moment how little he had ever really cared for those remote futures and universal benefits whereon his co-operation with the Institute had at first been theoretically based. Certainly[c] at the present moment there was no room in his mind for such considerations. He was fully occupied with the conflict between his resolution not to trust these men, never again to be lured by any bait into real co-operation, and the terrible strength—like a tide sucking at the shingle as it goes out—of an opposite emotion. For here, here surely at last (so his desire whispered him) was the true inner circle of all, the circle whose centre was outside the human race—the ultimate secret, the supreme power, the last initiation. The fact that it was almost completely horrible did not in the least diminish its attraction. Nothing that lacked the tang of horror would have been quite strong enough to satisfy the delirious excitement which now set his temples hammering. It came into his mind that Frost knew all about this excitement, and also about the opposite determination, and reckoned securely on the excitement as something which was certain to carry the day in his victim's mind.

A rattling and knocking which had been obscurely audible for some time now became so loud that Frost turned to the door. "Go away," he said, raising his voice.

---

[a] can] *BM*; cannot *A*
[b] indeed] *B*; indeed, *M*
[c] Certainly] *B*; Certainly, *M*

① *What friends those two are!*

While Frost repudiates all possibility of "friendship" between humans and macrobes, and asserts that dislike is the more desirable attitude amongst the adepts of the N.I.C.E. (ch. 12 IV 270), even the animals of the company at St. Anne's express affection for one another.

"What is the meaning of this impertinence?" The[a] indistinct noise of someone shouting on the other side of the door was heard, and the knocking went on. Frost's smile widened as he turned and opened it.[b] Instantly a piece of paper was put into his hand. As he read it, he started violently. Without glancing at Mark, he left the cell. Mark heard the door locked again behind him.

V

"What friends those two are!" said Ivy Maggs. She was referring to Pinch the cat and ① Mr. Bultitude the bear. The latter was sitting up with his back against the warm wall by the kitchen fire. His cheeks were so fat and his eyes so small that he looked as if he were smiling. The cat, after walking to and fro with erected tail and rubbing herself against his belly,[c] had finally curled up and gone to sleep between his legs. The jackdaw, still on the Director's shoulder, had long since put its head beneath its wing.

Mrs. Dimble, who sat farther back in the kitchen, darning as if for dear life, pursed her lips a little as Ivy Maggs spoke. She could not go to bed. She wished they would all keep quiet. Her anxiety had reached that pitch at which almost every event, however small, threatens to become an irritation. But then, if anyone had been watching her expression, they would have seen the little grimace rapidly smoothed out again. Her will had many years of practice behind it.

"When we use the word Friends[d] of those two creatures," said MacPhee, "I doubt we are being merely anthropomorphic. It is difficult to avoid the illusion that they have personalities in the human sense. But there's[e] no evidence for it."

"What's she go making up to him for, then?" asked Ivy.

"Well," said MacPhee, "maybe there'd be a desire for warmth—she's away in out of the draught there. And there'd be a sense of security from being near something familiar. And likely enough some obscure transferred sexual impulses."

"Really, Mr. MacPhee," said Ivy with great indignation,[f] "it's a shame for you to[g] say those things about two dumb animals. I'm sure I never did see Pinch—or Mr. Bultitude either, the poor thing——"[h]

---

[a] The] *BM*; the *A*
☛ An obvious error in A.
[b] it.] *BM*; the door. *A*
[c] cat, after […] belly,] *A*; cat after […] belly *BM*
[d] word Friends] *BA*; word, Friends, *M*
[e] there's] *BM*; There's *A*
[f] indignation,] *BM*; indignation. *A*
[g] to] *BM*; To *A*
[h] ——"] *BA*; —" *M*

① *You've got to […] distinguishable from charity.*

Frost speaks of "the most efficient animal, Man", and reduces all specifically human characteristics and interactions to nothing but chemical reactions (ch. 12 IV 272). Ransom's view, presented here, is that humans are not only more than chemical reactions, but more than animals, in being able to differentiate between affections and appetites, and endowed with the potential to be spiritual and capable of differentiation between charity and the natural affections.

Lewis explores and explains the distinction between the natural loves (affection or στόργη, erotic love or Eros, and friendship) and charity or ἀγάπη in *The Four Loves* (1960). *The Four Loves* is a crystallization of the thoughts of some decades: Lewis addresses the differences between need-loves and gift-loves in a letter dated 8 January 1935 (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 153–54 & 154 n. 3); he discusses the dangers of deifying the natural loves in a letter dated 6 March 1942 (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 510–13), and provides fictional illustrations of the excesses into which the unregenerate natural loves can fall in the prose dream vision *The Great Divorce* (1946) and the novel *Till We Have Faces* (1956); Ransom's comment here (1945) and a letter by Lewis dated February 18 1954 (*Collected Letters* vol. 3 428–29) distinguish between the natural loves and charity (ἀγάπη).

② *one of Barfield's 'ancient unities'*

Owen Barfield (Lewis's friend and an Inkling), discusses metaphor in ch. 3 of *Poetic Diction* (1st ed. 1926, 2nd ed. 1952). In the course of his discussion he notes that some unified or undivided concepts (such as that represented by πνεῦμα) split into different but related concepts (such as those represented by "wind" and "spirit" (80–82). One who experiences such an "original unity" is not "conscious of *relation*. But we, in the development of consciousness, have lost the power to see this one as one" (86–87). Ransom suggests that MacPhee's thinking here is inappropriately sophisticated.

"I said *transferred*," interrupted MacPhee drily. "And anyway, they like the mutual friction of their fur as a means of rectifying irritations set up by parasites. Now, you'll observe——"[a]

"If you mean they have fleas," said Ivy, "you know as well as anyone that they have no such thing." She had reason on her side, for it was MacPhee himself who put on overalls once a month and solemnly lathered Mr. Bultitude from rump to snout in the wash-house and poured buckets of tepid water over him, and finally dried him—a day's work in which he allowed no one to assist him.

"What do you think, sir?"[b] said[c] Ivy, looking at the Director.

"Me?" said Ransom. "I think MacPhee is introducing into animal life a distinction that doesn't exist there, and then trying to determine on which side of that distinction the feelings of Pinch and Bultitude fall. You've got to become ① human before the physical cravings are distinguishable from affections—just as you have to become spiritual before affections are distinguishable from charity. What is going on in the cat and the bear[d] isn't one or other of these two things: it is a single undifferentiated thing in which you can find the germ of what we call friendship and of what we call physical need. But it isn't either at that level. It is ② one of Barfield's 'ancient unities'."[e]

"I never denied they liked being together," said MacPhee.

"Well, that's what I said," retorted[f] Mrs. Maggs.

"The question is worth raising, Mr. Director," said MacPhee, "because I submit that it points to an essential falsity in the whole system of this place."

Grace Ironwood who had been sitting with her eyes half closed[g] suddenly opened them wide and fixed them on the Ulsterman, and Mrs. Dimble leaned her head towards Camilla and said in a whisper, "I do wish Mr. MacPhee could be persuaded to go to bed. It's perfectly unbearable at a time like this."

"How do you mean, MacPhee?" asked the Director.

"I mean that there is a half-hearted attempt to adopt an attitude towards irrational creatures which cannot be consistently maintained. And I'll do the justice

---

[a] ——"] *BA*; —" *M*

[b] sir?"] *BA*; Sir?" *M*

[c] said] *BM*; added *A*

☛ A's change is because, in the abdridgement, this speech follows immediately on Ivy's previous speech; it avoids the meaningless repetition of "said".

[d] the cat and the bear] *BM*; them *A*

[e] unities'."] *A*; unities.' " *BM*

[f] retorted] *M*; shouted *B*

☛ Shouting in a semi-jocular argument between two members of the Company seems unlikely. If B's compositor was working from a manuscript, Lewis's illegible handwriting may have been to blame: it was bad enough that one of his regular correspondents once misread "bathe" as "battle" (*Collected Letters* vol. 3 626).

[g] half closed] *B*; half-closed *M*

① *It's all in St. Paul.*

Possibly Lewis refers to Paul's warning, "Let no man beguile you of your reward in […] worshipping of angels" (Col. 2: 18). Concerning interactions between angels and humans, Lewis observes in a letter, "Notice that angels […] seem in Scripture to be nearly always terrifying & have to begin by saying 'Fear not' " (*Collected Letters* vol. 3 264).

to say that you've never tried. The bear is kept in the house and given apples and golden syrup till it's near bursting——"[a]

"Well, I like that!" said Mrs. Maggs. "Who is it that's always giving him apples? That's what I'd like to know."

"The bear, as I was observing," said MacPhee, "is kept in the house and pampered. The pigs are kept in a sty[b] and killed for bacon. I would be interested to know the philosophical *rationale* of the distinction."

Ivy Maggs looked in bewilderment from the smiling face of the Director to the unsmiling face of MacPhee.

"I think it's just silly," she said. "Who ever heard of trying to make bacon out of a bear?"

MacPhee made a little stamp of impatience and said something which was drowned first by Ransom's laughter[c] and then by a great clap of wind which shook the window as if it would blow it in.

"What a dreadful night for them!" said Mrs. Dimble.

"I love it," said Camilla. "I'd love to be out in it. Out on a high hill. Oh, I do wish you'd let me go with them, sir."[d]

"You *like* it!" said Ivy. "Oh, I don't! Listen to it round the corner of the house. It'd make me feel kind of creepy if I were alone. Or even if you was upstairs, sir.[e] I always think it's on nights like this that they—you know—come to you."

"They don't take any notice of weather one way or the other, Ivy," said Ransom.

"Do you know," said Ivy in a low voice, "that's a thing I don't quite understand. They're so eerie, these ones that come to visit you. I wouldn't go near that part of the house if I thought there was anything there, not if you paid me a hundred pounds. But I don't feel like that about God. But He ought to be worse, if you see what I mean."

"He was, once," said the Director. "You are quite right about the Powers. Angels in general are not good company for men in general—even when they are good angels and good men. It's all in St. Paul. But as for Maleldil Himself,[f] all that ①

---

[a] bursting——"] *B*; bursting—" *M*

[b] sty] *ed.*; stye *BM*

☛ Fowler maintains that "stye" is only possible (although unnecessary) in the sense of a pimple on the eyelid ("sty"). Unfortunately we lack A's witness here.

[c] laughter] *B*; laughter, *M*

[d] sir."] *B* Sir." *M*

[e] sir.] *B*; Sir. *M*

[f] Himself,] *M*; himself *B*

☛ M's capital letter is consistent with "He" (referring to God) in the previous paragraph.

① *what happened at Bethlehem. […] ever so near Christmas now*

Ivy's banal comment, which follows the discussion of the relations between men and angels and men and God, and the difference wrought by the Incarnation, appears bathetic, but shows the thorough, healthy integration of the supernatural and the everyday in the lives and conversation of Ransom's circle. It was this combination of "realistic" and supernatural in *That Hideous Strength*, with its terrestrial setting, that the reviewers condemned. Lewis wrote to Dorothy L. Sayers regarding the reception of *That Hideous Strength*, "Apparently reviewers *will not* tolerate a mixture of the realistic and supernatural. Which is a pity, because (a) It's just the mixture I like, and (b) We have to put up with it in real life" (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 682).

has changed: it was changed by what happened at Bethlehem." ①

"It's getting ever so near Christmas now," said Ivy,[a] addressing the company in general.

"We shall have Mr. Maggs with us before then," said Ransom.

"In a day or two, sir,"[b] said Ivy.

"Was that only the wind?" said Grace Ironwood.

"It sounded to me like a horse," said Mrs. Dimble.

"Here," said MacPhee jumping up. "Get out of the way, Mr. Bultitude, till I get my gum boots. It'll be those two horses of Broad's again, tramping all over my celery trenches. If only you'd let me go to the police in the first instance. Why the man can't keep them shut up . . ."—he[c] was bundling himself into his mackintosh as he spoke and the rest of the speech was inaudible.

"My crutch,[d] please, Camilla," said Ransom. "Come back, MacPhee. We will go to the door together, you and I. Ladies, stay where you are."

There was a look on his face which some of those present had not seen before. The four women sat as if they had been turned to stone, with their eyes wide and staring. A moment later Ransom and MacPhee stood alone in the scullery. The back door was so shaking on its hinges with the wind that they did not know whether someone were knocking at it or not.

"Now," said Ransom, "open it. And stand back behind it yourself."

For a second MacPhee worked with the bolts. Then, whether he meant to disobey or not (a point which must remain doubtful)[e] the storm flung the door against the wall and he was momentarily pinned behind it. Ransom, standing motionless, leaning forward on his crutch, saw in the light from the scullery, outlined against the blackness, a huge horse, all in a lather of sweat and foam, its yellow teeth laid bare, its nostrils wide and red, its ears flattened against its skull, and its eyes flaming. It had been ridden so close up to the door that its front hoofs rested on the doorstep. It had neither saddle, stirrup nor bridle; but at that very moment a man leapt off its back. He seemed both very tall and very fat, almost a giant. His reddish-grey hair and beard were blown all about his face so that it was hardly visible; and it was only after he had taken a step forward that Ransom noticed his clothes—the ragged, ill-fitting khaki coat, baggy trousers, and boots that had lost the toes.

---

[a] Ivy,] *B*; Ivy *M*
[b] sir,"] *B*; Sir," *M*
[c] up . . ."—he *BA*; up—" He *M*
[d] crutch,] *BA*; crutch *M*
[e] doubtful)] *B*; doubtful), *M*

VI

In a great room at Belbury, where the fire blazed and wine and silver sparkled on side-tables,[a] and a great bed occupied the centre of the floor, the Deputy Director watched in profound silence while four young men with reverential or medical heedfulness carried in a burden on a stretcher. As they removed the blankets and transferred the occupant of the stretcher to the bed, Wither's mouth opened wider. His interest became so intense that for the moment the chaos of his face appeared ordered and he looked like an ordinary man. What he saw was a naked human body, alive, but apparently unconscious. He ordered the attendants to place hot-water[b] bottles at its feet and raise the head with pillows;[c] when they had done so and withdrawn[d] he drew a chair to the foot of the bed and sat down to study the face of the sleeper. The head was very large, though perhaps it looked larger than it was because of the unkempt grey beard and the long and tangled grey hair. The face was weather-beaten in the extreme and the neck, where visible, already lean and scraggy with age. The eyes were shut and the lips wore a very slight smile. The total effect was ambiguous. Wither gazed at it for a long time and sometimes moved his head to see how it looked from a different angle—almost as if he searched for some trait he could not find and were disappointed. For nearly a quarter of an hour he sat thus:[e] then the door opened and Professor Frost came softly into the room.

He walked to the bedside, bent down and looked closely into the stranger's face. Then he walked round to the far side of the bed and did the same.

"Is he asleep?" whispered Wither.

"I think not. It is more like some kind of trance. What kind[f] I don't know."

"You have no doubts, I trust?"

"Where did they find him?"

"In a dingle about quarter[g] of a mile from the entrance to the *souterrain*.[h] They had the track of bare feet almost all the way."

"The *souterrain*[i] itself was empty?"

---

[a] side-tables,] *BA*; side-tables *M*
[b] hot-water] *BA*; hot water *M*
[c] pillows;] *BA*; pillows: *M*
[d] withdrawn] *BA*; withdrawn, *M*
[e] thus:] *BA*; thus; *M*
[f] kind] *B*; kind, *M*
[g] quarter] *BM*; Quarter *A*
[h] *souterrain*.] *BA*; souterrain. *M*
[i] *souterrain*] *B*; souterrain *M*

① *Something that comes down […] back to Númenor*

The sinking and destruction of Númenor-Atlantis (see p. 213 n. 4). The story of Atlantis is an Egyptian myth brought to Greece by Solon and recorded by Plato (*Brewer's Dictionary*, "Atlantis"); the fall of Númenor is summarised in Appendix A I of Tolkien's *Lord of the Rings* (VII 11) and told in "Akallabêth" (*Silmarillion* 257–82).

"Yes. I had a report on that from Stone shortly after you left me."

"You will make provision[a] about Stone?"

"Yes. But what do you think?"—he pointed with his eyes to the bed.

"I think it is he," said Frost. "The place is right. The nudity is hard to account for on any other hypothesis. The skull is the kind I expected."

"But the face?"

"Yes. There are certain traits which are a little disquieting."

"I could have sworn," said Wither, "that I knew the look of a Master—even the look of one who could be made into a Master. You understand me . . . one sees at once that Straik or Studdock might do; that Miss Hardcastle, with all her excellent qualities, would not."

"Yes. Perhaps we must be prepared for great crudities in . . . *him*. Who knows what the technique of the Atlantean Circle was really like?"

"Certainly, one must not be—ah—narrow-minded. One can suppose that the Masters of that age were not quite so sharply divided from the common people as we are. All sorts of emotional,[b] and even instinctive, elements were perhaps still tolerated in the Great Atlantean which we have had to discard."

"One not only *may* suppose it, one *must*. We should not forget that the whole plan consists in the reunion of different kinds of the art."

"Exactly. Perhaps one's association with the Powers—their different time scale and all that—tends to make one forget how enormous the gap in time is by our human standards."

"What we have here," said Frost, pointing to the sleeper, "is not, you see, something from the fifth century[c]. It is the last vestige, surviving into the fifth century[c], of something much more remote. Something that comes down from long ① before the Great Disaster, even from before primitive Druidism; something that takes us back to Númenor[d], to pre-glacial periods."

"The whole experiment is perhaps more hazardous[e] than we realised."

---

[a] provision] *BA*; provisions *M*

☛ Noted by Lake (55). M's plural form is not impossible, but B's singular suggests a more chilling efficiency: it is hard to imagine Frost needing to make multiple arrangements to ensure Stone's silence.

[b] emotional,] *A*; emotional *BM*

[c] fifth century] *ed.*; fifth Century *B* Fifth Century *M*

☛ See note 282[a].

[d] Númenor,] *ed.*; Numinor, *BM*

☛ See note 6[a].

[e] hazardous] *B*; hasardous *M*

☛ A mis-spelling in M.

① *"Magister […] ut ita dicam . . ."*

Vail discusses Wither's Latin here, and dismisses it as "a mimesis of schoolboy prose" (88). But she seems to suggest that his pauses and hesitations are because his Latin is bad, whereas he is simply displaying the same mannerisms in Latin as he does in English (see also Introduction 2 xlvii).

"I have had occasion before," said Frost, "to express the wish that you would not keep on introducing these emotional pseudo-statements into our scientific discussions."

"My dear friend," said Wither,[a] without looking at him, "I am quite aware that the subject you mention has been discussed between you and the Powers themselves. Quite aware. And I don't doubt that you are equally well aware of certain discussions they have held with me about aspects of your own methods which are open to criticism. Nothing would be more futile—I might say more dangerous—than any attempt to introduce between ourselves those modes of oblique discipline which we properly apply to our inferiors. It is in your own interest that I venture to touch on this point."

Instead of replying, Frost signalled to his companion. Both men became silent, their gaze fixed on the bed: for the[b] Sleeper had opened his eyes.

The opening of the eyes flooded the whole face with meaning, but it was a meaning they could not interpret. The Sleeper seemed to be looking at them, but they were not quite sure that he saw them. As the seconds passed[c] Wither's main impression of the face was its caution. But there was nothing intense or uneasy about it. It was a habitual, unemphatic defensiveness which seemed to have behind it years of hard experience, quietly—perhaps even humorously[d]—endured.

Wither rose to his feet, and cleared his throat.

"*Magister Merline*," he said, "*Sapientissime*[e] *Britonum, secreti secretorum possessor, incredibili quodam gaudio afficimur quod te domum*[f] *nostram accipere nobis—ah—contingit. Scito nos etiam haud imperitos esse magnae artis—et—ut ita dicam . . .*"[1] ①

But his voice died away. It was too obvious that the Sleeper was taking no

[1] "Master[g] Merlin, wisest of the Britons, possessor of the secret of secrets;[h] it is with inexpressible pleasure that we embrace the opportunity of—ah—welcoming you in our house. You will understand that we also are not unskilled in the Great Art, and, if I may say so . . ."[i]

---

[a] Wither,] *B*; Wither *M*
[b] the] *BM*; The *A*
[c] passed] *BA*; passed, *M*
[d] humorously] *B*; humourously *M*
☛ Possibly a mistaken overcorrection in order to avoid a perceived American spelling in M.
[e] *Merline*," he said, "*Sapientissime*] *BA*; *Merline*, he said, *Sapientissime M*
[f] *domum*] *BA*; *in domum M*
☛ The noun "*domus*" is an exception to the general rule that nouns of place require a preposition (Marchant & Watson § 123 b).
[g] "Master] *BA*; Master *M*
[h] secrets;] *BA*; secrets, *M*
[i] so . . ."] *BA*; so . . . *M*

notice of what he said. It was impossible that a learned man of the fifth century[a] should not know Latin. Was there, then, some error in his own pronunciation? But he felt by no means sure that this man could not understand him. The total lack of curiosity, or even interest, in his face, suggested rather that he was not listening.

Frost took a decanter from the table and poured out a glass of red wine. He then returned to the bedside, bowed deeply, and handed it to the stranger. The latter looked at it with an expression that might (or might not) be interpreted as one of cunning; then he suddenly sat up in bed, revealing a huge hairy chest and lean, muscular arms. His eyes turned to the table and he pointed. Frost went back to it and touched a different decanter. The stranger shook his head and pointed again.

"I think," said Wither, "that our very distinguished guest is trying to indicate the jug. I don't quite know what was provided. Perhaps——"[b]

"It contains beer," said Frost.

"Well, it is hardly appropriate—still, perhaps,[c] we know so little of the customs of that age . . ."

While he was still speaking Frost had filled a pewter mug with beer and offered it to their guest. For the first time a gleam of interest came into that cryptic face. The man snatched the mug eagerly, pushed back his disorderly moustache from his lips, and began to drink[d]. Back and back went the grey head:[e] up and up went the bottom of the tankard:[f] the moving muscles of the lean throat made the act of drinking visible. At last the man, having completely inverted the tankard, set it down, wiped his wet lips with the back of his hand, and heaved a long sigh—the first sound he had uttered since his arrival. Then he turned his attention once more to the table.

For about twenty minutes the two old men fed him—Wither with tremulous and courtly deference, Frost with the deft, noiseless movements of a trained servant. All sorts of delicacies had been provided, but the stranger devoted his attention entirely to cold beef, chicken, pickles, bread, cheese,[g] and butter. The butter he ate

---

[a] fifth century] *ed.*; sixth century *B* Fifth Century *M*

☛ In the novel, the age of Merlin and Arthur is variously spoken of as having taken place in the fifth century and the sixth century. If we accept Dimble's allusion to "the eve of the [Saxon] invasion" (26), then the earlier date is preferable, and in fact references to the fifth century are slightly more frequent: all witnesses have it on 263 and twice on 280, while all witnesses have the sixth century only once (394); this is the only place where witnesses disagree.
Capitalisation is inconsistent in all witnesses, while mentions of other centuries throughout the novel normally do not have capital letters. Accordingly, I use "fifth century" throughout.

[b] Perhaps——"] *B*; Perhaps—" *M*

[c] perhaps,] *BA*; perhaps— *M*

[d] drink] *BM*; drank *A*

[e] head:] *B*; head; *M*

[f] tankard:] *B*; tankard; *M*

[g] cheese,] *BA*; cheese *M*

neat, off the end of a knife. He was apparently unacquainted with forks, and took the chicken bones in both hands to gnaw them, placing them under the pillow when he had done. His eating was noisy and animal. When he had eaten, he signalled for a second pint of beer, drank it at two long draughts, wiped his mouth on the sheet and his nose on his hand, and seemed to be composing himself for further slumber.

"*Ah—er—domine*," said Wither with deprecating urgency, "*nihil* [a] *magis mihi displiceret quam tibi ullo modo—ah—molestum esse.*[b] *Attamen, venia tua . . .*"[1 c]

But the man was taking no notice at all. They could not tell whether his eyes were shut or whether he was still looking at them under half-closed lids; but clearly he was not intending to converse. Frost and Wither exchanged enquiring glances.

"There is no approach to this room, is there," said Frost, " except through the next one?"

"No," said Wither.

"Let us go out there and discuss the situation. We can leave the door ajar. We shall be able to hear if he stirs."

VII

When Mark found himself left suddenly alone by Frost, his first sensation was an unexpected lightness of heart. It was not that he had any release from fears about the future. Rather, in[d] the very midst of those[e] fears, a strange sense of liberation had sprung up. The relief of no longer trying to win these men's confidence, the shuffling off of miserable hopes, was almost exhilarating. The straight fight, after the long series of diplomatic failures, was tonic. He might lose the straight fight. But at least it was now his side against theirs.[f] And he could talk of "his side" now.

1 c "Ah[g]—er—sir[h]—nothing would be further from my wish than to be in any way troublesome to you. At the same time, with your pardon . . ."[i]

---

[a] *nihil*] *BA*; *nilhil M*
☛ A compositor's error in M.
[b] *tibi […]molestum esse.*] *BA*; *ut tibi* […] *molestior essem M*
☛ Noted by Lake (55). M's construction does not appear to follow the regular construction following "*quam ut* " to express a measure of excess (Marchant & Watson §125, §158).
[c] 1] *MA*; 2 *B*
☛ A agrees with M in restarting the numbering of Lewis's footnotes on each page, while B restarts every chapter.
[d] in] *BM*; In *A*
[e] those] *BM*; his *A*
[f] theirs.] *BM*; their. *A*
☛ An obvious error in A.
[g] "Ah] *BA*; Ah *M*
[h] sir] *BA*; Sir *M*
[i] pardon . . ."] *BA*; pardon . . . *M*

① *desire (salt, black, ravenous, unanswerable desire) […] like lust, it disenchants the whole universe.*

A decade later Lewis wrote in *Surprised by Joy* of a temptation he knew well, and referring to this passage:

> the desire for the preternatural, simply as such, the passion for the Occult. […] I once tried to describe it in a novel. It is a spiritual lust, and like the lust of the body it has the fatal power of making everything else in the world seem uninteresting while it lasts. It is probably this passion, more even than the desire for power, that makes magicians. (ch. 4 53)

② *white marriages and white masses*

A "white marriage" is a marriage without sexual relations; a "white mass" is the "first mass of a young priest" (*NED* "White" *a.* 11. e). Unless Lewis ascribed some private meaning to "white mass" it seems rather hard on young priests that their first masses should be examples of insipidity.

Already he was with Jane and with all she symbolised. Indeed, it was he who was in the front line: Jane was almost a non-combatant. . . .

The approval of one's own conscience is a very heady draught; and specially for those who are not accustomed to it. Within two minutes Mark had passed from that first involuntary sense of liberation to a conscious attitude of courage, and thence into unrestrained heroics. The picture of himself as hero and martyr, as Jack the Giant-Killer still coolly playing his hand even in the giant's kitchen, rose up before him, promising that it could blot out forever those other, and unendurable pictures of himself which had haunted him for the last few hours. It wasn't everyone, after all, who could have resisted an invitation like Frost's. An invitation that beckoned you right across the frontiers of human life . . . into the something[a] that people had been trying to find since the beginning of the world . . . a touch on that infinitely secret cord which was the real nerve of all history. How it would have attracted him once!

Would have attracted him once.[b] . . . Suddenly, like a thing that leaped to him across infinite distances with the speed of light, desire (salt, black, ravenous, unanswerable desire) took him by the throat. The merest hint will convey to those who have felt it the quality of the emotion which now shook him, like a dog shaking a rat:[c] for others, no description perhaps will avail. Many writers speak of it in terms of lust: a description admirably illuminating from within, totally misleading from without. It has nothing to do with the body. But it is in two respects like lust as lust shows itself to be in the deepest and darkest vault of its labyrinthine house. For like lust, it disenchants the whole universe. Everything else that Mark had ever felt—love, ambition, hunger, lust itself—appeared to have been mere milk and water, toys for children, not worth one throb of the nerves. The infinite attraction of this dark thing sucked all other passions into itself: the rest of the world appeared blanched,[d] etiolated, insipid, a world of white marriages and white masses, dishes without salt, gambling for counters. He could not now think of Jane except in terms of appetite: and appetite here made no appeal. That serpent, faced with the true dragon, became a fangless worm. But it was like lust in another respect also. It is idle to

① ②

[a] the something] *B*; something *M*

☛ B's "the something" is both specific (because of the definite article) and vague (because of the polyvalence of "something")—a wonderful reflection of Mark's continual striving after secrets that seem so certain but which always prove negligible when achieved.

[b] *once.*] *BA*; *once M*

[c] rat:] *BA*; rat; *M*

[d] blanched] *B*; blenched *M*

☛ The *NED* gives "Blench" *v.*[2] as "A variant of BLANCH *v.*[1]", but describes this as "confusion".

① *Though he was […] the freedom of his own will.*

Lewis uses the terms "materialism" and "naturalism" interchangeably in the third chapter of *Miracles* (1947) and to mean "the doctrine that only Nature—the whole interlocked system [of causal relations]—exists" (16). One inescapable corollary of this doctrine is "every event in Nature must be connected with previous events in the Cause and Effect relation" (20), and in such a system no apparent choice can be anything but another effect deriving from a prior cause: free will is not possible.

point out to the perverted man the horror of his perversion: while[a] the fierce fit is on, that horror is the very spice of his craving. It is ugliness itself that becomes, in the end, the goal of his lechery; beauty has long since grown too weak a stimulant. And so it was here. These creatures of which Frost had spoken—and he did not doubt now that they were locally present with him in the cell—breathed death on the human race and on all joy. Not despite this but because of this, the terrible gravitation sucked and tugged and fascinated him towards them. Never before had he known the frightful strength of the movement opposite to nature[b] which now had him in its grip; the impulse to reverse all reluctances and to draw every circle anti-clockwise. The meaning of certain pictures, of Frost's talk about "objectivity," of the things done by witches in old times, became clear to him. The image of Wither's face rose to his memory; and this time he did not merely loathe it. He noted, with shuddering satisfaction, the signs it bore of a shared experience between them. Wither also knew. Wither understood . . .

At the same moment[c] it came back to him that he would probably be killed. As soon as he thought of that, he became once more aware of the cell—the little hard white empty place with the glaring light, in which he found himself sitting on the floor. He blinked his eyes. He could not remember that it had been visible for the last few minutes. Where had he been? His mind was clear now at any rate. This idea of something in common between him and Wither was all nonsense. Of course they meant to kill him in the end unless he could rescue himself by his own wits. What had he been thinking and feeling while he forgot that?[d]

Gradually he realised that he had sustained some sort of attack, and that he had put up no resistance at all; and with that realisation a quite new kind of dread entered his mind. Though he was theoretically a materialist, he had all his life ① believed quite inconsistently and even carelessly[e] in the freedom of his own will. He had seldom made a moral resolution:[f] and when[g] he had resolved some hours ago to trust the Belbury crew no further, he had taken it for granted that he would be able to do what he resolved. He knew, to be sure, that he might "change his mind":[h] but till he did so, of course he would carry out his plan. It had never occurred to him that his mind could thus be changed for him, all in an instant of time, changed

[a] while] *BM*; While *A*
☛ A's capital letter after a colon is obviously a mistake.
[b] nature] *B*; Nature *M*
[c] moment] *BA*; moment, *M*
[d] that?] *BM*; death? *A*
[e] and even carelessly] *A*; , and even carelessly, *BM*
[f] resolution:] *B*; resolution, *M*
[g] when] *BM*; When *A*
[h] mind":] *B*; mind"; *M*

① *All that could […] a sort of peace.*

In ch. 11 III (see especially 260) Mark takes the first steps towards penitence, in the form of self-examination and repentance but not yet changing his way of life or making restitution (see *Collected Letters* vol. 3 1540). He now takes the first step towards submission to God, in the form of a desperate implicit acknowledgement that he cannot endure the demonic assault on his will alone, and an explicit plea for help.

beyond recognition. If that sort of thing could happen . . . It was unfair. Here was a man trying (for the first time in his life) to do what was obviously the right thing—the thing that Jane and the Dimbles and Aunt Gilly would have approved of. You might have expected that when a man behaved in that way the universe would back him up. For the relics of such semi-savage versions of Theism as Mark had picked up in the course of his life were stronger in him than he knew, and he felt, though he would not have put it into words, that it was "up to" the universe to reward his good resolutions. Yet the very first moment you tried to be good, the universe let you down. It revealed gaps you had never dreamed of. It invented new laws for the express purpose of letting you down. That was what you got for your pains.

The cynics, then, were right. But at this thought, he stopped sharply. Some flavour[a] that came with it had given him pause. Was this the other mood beginning again? Oh,[b] not that, at any price![c] He clenched his hands. No, no, no![d] He could not stand this much longer. He wanted Jane:[e] he wanted Mrs. Dimble:[f] he wanted Denniston. He wanted somebody or something. "Oh,[g] don't, don't let me go back into it!"[h] he said; and then louder, "Don't,[i] don't!"[j] All that could in any sense be called himself went into that cry; and the dreadful consciousness of having played his last card began to turn slowly into a sort of peace. There was nothing more to be done. Unconsciously he allowed his muscles to relax. His young body was very tired by this time,[k] and even the hard floor was grateful to it. The cell also seemed to be somehow emptied and purged, as if it, too,[l] were tired after the conflicts it had witnessed—emptied like a sky after rain, tired like a child after weeping. A dim consciousness that the night must be nearly ended stole over him, and he[m] fell asleep.

[a] flavour] *BA*; flavor *M*
☛ Inadvertent American spelling in M (see *Webster's*).
[b] Oh,] *BA*; Oh *M*
[c] price!] *BA*; price. *M*
[d] no!] *BA*; no. *M*
[e] Jane:] *B*; Jane; *M*
[f] Dimble:] *B*; Dimble; *M*
[g] Oh,] *BA*; Oh *M*
[h] it!" *BA*; it," *M*
[i] "Don't,] *BA*; "don't, *M*
[j] don't!"] *BA*; don't." *M*
[k] time,] *A*; time *BM*
[l] it, too,] *BA*; it too *M*
[m] he] *BM*; He *A*

① *They have pulled down Deep Heaven on their Heads*

Possibly a verbal echo of Milton's *Samson Agonistes*, in which the messenger reports Samson's final victory over the Philistines, when "The Edifice where all were met to see him / Upon thir heads and on his own he pull'd" (1588–89). But in this chapter we learn that God's enemies initiate a far greater destruction—of their own souls as well as their bodies and all their work—upon themselves, through their belief that "the old *magia* of Merlin […] could be combined with the new *goeteia*" (ch. 13 iv 301).

See p. 337 n. 1 for a definite quotation from *Samson Agonistes* applied to the N.I.C.E.'s part in their own destruction.

THIRTEEN

They have pulled down Deep Heaven on their Heads ①

I

"STAND! Stand where you are and tell me your name and business," said Ransom.

The ragged figure on the threshold tilted its head a little sideways like one who cannot quite hear. At the same moment the wind from the opened door had its way with the house. The inner door, between the scullery and the kitchen, clapped to with a loud bang, isolating the three men from the women, and a large tin basin fell clattering into the sink. The stranger took a pace farther[a] into the room.

"*Sta*," said Ransom in a great[b] voice. "*In nomine Patris et Filii et Spiritus Sancti, dic mihi qui sis et quam ob causam venias.*[c]"[1] The Stranger raised his hand and flung back the dripping hair from his forehead. The light fell full on his face, from which Ransom had the impression of an immense quietness. Every muscle of this man's body seemed as relaxed as if he were asleep, and he stood absolutely still. Each drop of rain from the khaki coat struck the tiled floor exactly where the drop before it had fallen.

His eyes rested on Ransom for a second or two with no particular interest. Then he turned his head to his left, to where the door was flung back almost against the wall. MacPhee was concealed behind it.

"Come out," said the Stranger,[d] in Latin. The words were spoken almost in a whisper, but so deep that even in that wind-shaken room they made a kind of vibration. But what[e] surprised Ransom much more was the fact that MacPhee immediately obeyed. He did not look at Ransom but at the Stranger. Then,

[1] "Stand. In the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Ghost, tell me who you are and why you come." [f]

---

[a] farther] *BA*; further *M*

[b] great] *BA*; loud *M*

☛ Noted by Lake (55). B & A's "great voice" is more imposing than a voice that is merely "loud".

[c] *venias.*] *A*; *veneris M venenis. B*

☛ Noted by Lake (55). B's reading is clearly a compositor's error for M's grammatically correct perfect "*veneris*". A's change to the equally correct present tense appears to be Lewis's revision, bringing the Latin in line with the translation he provides (Marchant & Watson § 141).

[d] Stranger,] *BA*; Stranger *M*

[e] what] *BM*; What *A*

[f] "Stand. In […] come."] *BA*; Stand. In […] come. *M*

① *Not even in Númenor was it heard in the streets.*

In the Second Age of Tolkien's Middle Earth Númenor was an island inhabited by Men privileged to dwell in the Westernmost lands inhabited by Men, in sight (from the island's highest point) of Valinor, the Earthly dwelling permitted to the Valar (angelic beings who ruled and managed Arda at this time, as the Oyéresu do Malacandra and Perelandra). See Tolkien: *Lord of the Rings* VII 8; "Alkallabêth" (*Silmarillion* 261–63). Ransom's point is that even in this privileged place, where humanity still had regular intercourse with angelic beings, the language of creation was not commonly spoken (see Preliminary Note H: "The Language of Creation").

This is first mention of Númenor in A: up to here A has "Atlantis" (213[b]) or the reference is excised (280[d]).

unexpectedly, he gave an enormous yawn. The Stranger looked him up and down and then turned to the Director.

"Fellow," he said in Latin, "tell the Lord of this House that I am come." As he spoke, the wind from behind him was whipping the coat about his legs and blowing his hair over his forehead:[a] but his great mass stood as if it had been planted like a tree, and he seemed in no hurry. And the voice, too, was such as one might imagine to be the voice of a tree, large and slow and patient, drawn up through roots and clay and gravel from the depths of the Earth.

"I am the Master here," said Ransom, in the same language.

"To be sure!" answered the Stranger. "And yonder whipper-snapper (*mastigia*) is without doubt your Bishop." He did not exactly smile, but a look of disquieting amusement came into his keen eyes. Suddenly he poked his head forward so as to bring his face much nearer to the Director's.

"Tell your master that I am come," he repeated in the same voice as before.

Ransom looked at him without the flicker of an eyelid.

"Do you really wish," he said at last, "that I call upon my Masters?"

"A daw that lives in a hermit's cell has learned before now to chatter book-Latin," said the other. "Let us hear your calling, mannikin (*homuncio*)."

"I must use another language for it," said Ransom.

"A daw could have Greek also in its bill."

"It is not Greek."

"Let us hear your Hebrew, then."

"It is not Hebrew."

"Nay," answered the other with something like a chuckle, a chuckle deep hidden in his enormous chest and betrayed only by a slight movement of his shoulders, "if you come to the gabble of barbarians, it will go hard,[b] but I shall out-chatter you. Here is excellent sport."

"It may happen to seem to you the speech of barbarians," said Ransom, "for it is long since it has been heard. Not even in Númenor[c] was it heard in the streets." ①

The Stranger gave no start,[d] and his face remained as quiet as before, if it did not become quieter; but[e] he spoke with a new interest.

"Your Masters let you play with dangerous toys," he said. "Tell me; slave,

---

[a] forehead:] *B*; forehead; *M*
[b] hard,] *A*; hard *BM*
[c] Númenor] *ed.*; Numinor *BMA*
☛ See note 6[a].
[d] start,] *A*; start *BM*
[e] quieter; but] *BA*; quieter. But *M*

① *Númenor […] The true West*

After the cataclysmic sinking of Númenor (also called Atalantë—see 213 n. 4 on the association of Númenor with Atlantis) following a forbidden attempt to raid Valinor, the Blessed Realm of Valinor was removed from the Circles of the World, and the air and sea were bent into a sphere. Nevertheless the Elves were still privileged, when they tired of Middle Earth, to sail a straight course, rather than bent, to the Blessed Realm. See Tolkien: *Lord of the Rings* VII 8–11; "Alkallabêth" (*Silmarillion* 279–82); "Of the Rings of Power and the Third Age" (*Silmarillion* 286 & 304).

Strictly, then, Valinor is the "true West", although it was the destruction of Númenor, once the Westernmost realm of Men, that initiated this state of affairs.

As Smilde notes, and Lewis acknowledges, Lewis knew Tolkien's mythology only through hearing his readings to the Inklings, so the details are not always accurate.

② *"My Masters are the Oyéresu."*

See 307 n. 1.

what is Númenor?"[a] ①

"The true West," said Ransom.

"Well . . ."[b] said the other. Then, after a pause, he added, "You have little courtesy to guests in this house. It is a cold wind on my back, and I have been long in bed. You see, I have already crossed the threshold."

"I value that at a straw," said Ransom. "Shut the door, MacPhee," he added in English. But there was no response; and looking round for the first time, he saw that MacPhee had sat down in the one chair which the scullery contained and was fast asleep.

"What is the meaning of this foolery?" said Ransom, looking sharply at the Stranger.

"If you are indeed the Master of this house, you have no need to be told. If not, why should I give account of myself to such as you? Do not fear; your horse-boy will be none the worse."

"This shall be seen to shortly," said Ransom. "In the meantime, I do not fear your entering the house. I have more cause to fear your escaping. Shut the door if you will, for you see my foot is hurt."

The Stranger,[c] without ever taking his eyes off Ransom,[d] swept back his left hand behind him, found the door handle, and slammed the door to. MacPhee never stirred. "Now," he said, "what of these Masters of yours?"

"My Masters are the Oyéresu." ②

"Where did you hear that name?" asked the Stranger. "Or, if you are truly of the College; why do they dress you like a slave?"

"Your own garments," said Ransom, "are not those of a druid."

"That stroke was well put by," answered the other. "Since you have knowledge, answer me three questions, if you dare."

"I will answer them[e] if I can. But as for daring, we shall see."

The Stranger mused for a few seconds; then, speaking in a slightly sing-song voice, as though he repeated an old lesson, he asked, in two Latin hexameters, the following question:

"Who is called Sulva? What road does she walk? Why is the womb barren on one

---

[a] Númenor?"] *ed.*; Numinor *BMA*
☛ See note 6[a].
[b] Well . . ."] *BA*; Well," *M*
[c] Stranger,] *B*; Stranger *M*
[d] Ransom,] *ed.*; Ransom; *B* Ransom *M*
☛ The participial clause "without taking his eyes off Ransom" could stand without commas, as in M, but a comma both before and after seems stylistically preferable. B gives the first comma, after "Stranger", but a semi-colon afterwards, which may be a mistake, and which I have changed to a comma.
[e] them] *BA*; them, *M*

① *"Sulva is she […] in a secret place."*

The notion that the orbit of the Moon is an important boundary between air and æther, between the mutability and contingency to which the Earth is so obviously subject and the unchanging perfection of the heavens is part of the syncretic model (see Introduction 4). Here we learn that the damage done to the Moon is limited to the half facing Earth. This splitting of the Moon into Earthly and Heavenly halves by the centre of its own orbit is pleasingly shown in the eighteenth-century map of the universe according to Brahe's hypothesis shown to the right.

The Sphere of the Moon

We have already learnt something of this, from the N.I.C.E.'s point of view, in Filostrato's discourse to Mark in ch. 8 III. The sexual practices that Filostrato represents as a triumph over Nature and the organic are described by Ransom as sinful ("pride and lust" are two of the seven deadly sins) and "vile" (ch. 13 I 290).

② *Abhalljin, […] Melchisedec the King.*

Abhalljin is a doublet for Avalon, the place of Arthur's disappearance from this world or this life: here it is placed in Perelandra, beyond a distant sea named Lur by the King after his reunion with the Lady (*Perelandra* ch. 17 241). In ch. 17 IV 393 Dimble refers to "Aphallin, the distant island" in Perelandra where Arthur is. Lewis seems to have planned to situate Avalon in Perelandra, but "the cup-shaped land of Abhalljin" and "Aphallin, the distant island" seem to be two different implementations of his plan that he forgot or in some way failed to choose between. Smilde considers both names are invented "ancient forms" of "Avalon" (he does not say in what language) and Ward glosses "Abhal" as Gaelic for "apple" (n. 43 to ch. 8, 73%). But the language is presumably intended to be that of Perelandra (that is, the language of the translunary Solar System) and the inconsistent descriptions suggest that Lewis did not finish implementing his plan.

The breaking of the Moon (Sulva) is a reference to the Apocalypse: at the blowing of the fourth trumpet after the breaking of the seventh seal, "the third part of the moon" shall be "smitten" (Rev. 8: 12).

Enoch "was translated, that he should not see death" (Heb. 11: 5, see also Gen. 5: 24); Elias (Elijah) "went up by a whirlwind into heaven" (II Kings 2: 11); Moses may be presumed to be of this company, since "no man knoweth of his sepulchre unto this day" (Deut. 34: 6). Melchisedec is a mysterious and romantic figure, a king of Salem and priest of God who appears unexpectedly to bless Abram, who gives him tithes (Gen. 14: 18–20): he reappears in Psalm and Epistle as a Type of Christ, an Eternal Kingly High Priest with neither antecedent nor end (Ps. 110: 4; Heb. 5–7). Camilla tells Jane that Ransom will join these few when his work is done (ch. 9 III 206) and he bids the company farewell in preparation for this departure at the end of this novel (ch. 17 VI 403–06).

side? Where are the cold marriages?"[a]

Ransom replied, "Sulva is she whom mortals call the Moon. She walks in the ① lowest sphere. The rim of the world that was wasted goes through her. Half of her orb is turned towards us and shares our curse. Her other half looks to Deep Heaven; happy would he be who could cross that frontier and see the fields on her farther[b] side. On this side[c] the womb is barren and the marriages cold. There dwell an accursed people, full of pride and lust. There when a young man takes a maiden in marriage[d] they do not lie together, but each lies with a cunningly fashioned image of the other, made to move and to be warm by devilish arts, for real flesh will not please them, they are so dainty (*delicati*) in their dreams of lust. Their real children they fabricate by vile arts in a secret place."

"You have answered well," said the Stranger. "I thought there were but three men in the world that knew this question. But my second may be harder. Where is the ring of Arthur the King? What Lord has such a treasure in his house?"

"The ring of the King," said Ransom, "is on Arthur's finger where he sits in the House of Kings in the cup-shaped land of Abhalljin, beyond the seas of Lur in ② Perelandra. For Arthur did not die; but Our Lord took him[e] to be in the body till the end of time and the shattering of Sulva, with Enoch and Elias and Moses and Melchisedec the King. Melchisedec is he in whose hall the steep-stoned ring sparkles on the forefinger of the Pendragon."

"Well answered," said the Stranger. "In my college it was thought that only two men in the world knew this. But as for my third question, no man knew the answer but myself. Who shall be Pendragon in the time when Saturn descends from his sphere? In what world did he learn war?"

"In the sphere of Venus I learned war," said Ransom. "In this age Lurga shall descend. I am the Pendragon."

When he had said this[f] he took a step backwards, for the big man had begun to move and there was a new look in his eyes. Any who had seen them as they stood thus face to face would have thought that it might come to fighting at any moment. But the Stranger had not moved with hostile purpose. Slowly, ponderously, yet not awkwardly, as though a mountain sank like a wave, he sank on one knee; and still his face was almost on a level with the Director's.

---

[a] marriages?"] *MA*; marriages? *B*

☛ It is impossible to tell if the missing quotation mark in B is a compositing error or a printing error, as the rest of the line is blank, obscuring any gap that may have been left by depressed type.

[b] farther] *B*; further *M*

[c] side] *BA*; side, *M*

[d] marriage] *BA*; marriage, *M*

[e] him] *BA*; him, *M*

[f] this] *BA*; this, *M*

II

"This throws a quite unexpected burden on our resources," said Wither to Frost, where they both sat in the outer room with the door ajar. "I must confess I had not anticipated any serious difficulty about language."

"We must get a Celtic scholar at once," said Frost. "We are regrettably weak on the philological side. I do not at the moment know who has discovered most about ancient British. Ransom would be the man to advise us if he were available. I suppose nothing has been heard of him by your department?"

"I need hardly point out," said Wither, "that Dr. Ransom's philological attainments are by no means the only ground on which we are anxious to find him. If the least trace had been discovered, you may rest assured that you would have long since had the—ah—gratification of seeing him here in person."

"Of course. He may not be in the Earth at all."

"I met him once," said Wither, half closing[a] his eyes. "He was a most brilliant man in his way. A man whose penetrations and intuitions might have been of infinite value, if he had not embraced the cause of reaction. It is a saddening reflection——"[b]

"Of course," said Frost, interrupting him. "Straik knows modern Welsh. His mother was a Welsh woman."

"It would certainly be much more satisfactory," said Wither, if we could, so to speak, keep the whole matter in the family. There would be something very disagreeable to me—and I am sure you would feel the same way yourself—about introducing a Celtic expert from outside."

"The expert would, of course, be provided for as soon as we could dispense with his services," replied Frost. "It is the waste of time that is the trouble. What progress have you made with Straik?"

"Oh, really excellent," said the Deputy Director. "Indeed I am almost a little disappointed. I mean, my pupil is advancing so rapidly that it may be necessary to abandon an idea which, I confess, rather attracts me. I had been thinking while you were out of the room that it would be specially fitting and—ah—proper and gratifying if your pupil and mine could be initiated together. We should both, I am sure, have felt . . . But, of course, if Straik is ready some time before Studdock, I should not feel myself entitled to stand in his way. You will understand, my dear fellow, that I am not trying to make this anything like a test case as to the

[a] half closing] *BA*; half-closing *M*
[b] reflection——" *BA*; reflection . . ." *M*

comparative efficiency[a] of our very different methods."

"It would be impossible for you to do so," said Frost, "since I have interviewed Studdock only once, and that one interview has had all the success that could be expected. I mentioned Straik only to find out whether he were already so far committed that he might properly be introduced to our guest."

"Oh . . . as to being *committed*," said Wither, "in some sense . . . ignoring certain fine shades for the moment, while fully recognising[b] their ultimate importance . . . I should not hesitate . . . we should be perfectly justified."

"I was thinking," said Frost, "that there must be someone on duty here. He may wake at any moment. Our pupils—Straik and Studdock—could take it in turns. There is no reason why they should not be useful even before their full initiation. They would, of course, be under orders to ring us up the moment anything happened."

"You think Mr.—ah—Studdock is far enough on?"

"It doesn't matter," said Frost. "What harm can he do? He can't get *out*. And in the meantime[c] we[d] only want someone to watch. It would be a useful test."

III

MacPhee, who had just been refuting both Ransom and Alcasan's head by a two-edged argument which seemed unanswerable in the dream but which he never afterwards remembered, found himself violently waked by someone shaking his shoulder. He suddenly perceived that he was cold and his left foot was numb. Then he saw Denniston's face looking into his own. The scullery seemed full of people—Denniston and Dimble and Jane. They appeared extremely bedraggled, torn and muddy and wet.

"Are you all right?" Denniston was saying. "I've been trying to wake you for several minutes."

"All right?" said MacPhee, swallowing once or twice and licking his lips. "Aye, I'm all right." Then he sat upright. "There's been a—a man here," he said.

"What sort of a man?" asked Dimble.

"Well," said MacPhee, "as to that . . . it's not just so easy . . . I fell asleep

---

[a] efficiency] *B*; efficacy *M*

☛ Given Frost's continual emphasis on efficiency, B's reading is prefereable. Moreover, Wither is in no doubt about their methods' being efficacious: he is wondering how long each will take before it succeeds.

[b] recognising] *B*; recognizing *M*

☛ Inadvertent American spelling in M (see *Webster's*, "Recognize").

[c] And in the meantime] *B*; And, in the meantime, *M*

[d] we] *BM*; We *A*

talking to him, to tell you the truth. I can't just bring to mind what we were saying."

The others exchanged glances. Though MacPhee was fond of a little hot toddy on winter nights, he was a sober man: they had never seen him like this before. Next moment he[a] jumped to his feet.

"Lord save us!" he exclaimed. "He had the Director here. Quick! We must search the house and the garden. It was some kind of impostor or spy. I know now what's wrong with me. I've been hypnotised. There was a horse,[b] too. I mind the horse."

This last detail had an immediate effect on his hearers. Denniston flung open the kitchen door and the whole party surged in after him. For a second they saw indistinct forms in the deep, red light of a large fire which had not been attended to for some hours:[c] then, as Denniston found the switch and turned on the light, all drew a deep breath. The four women sat fast asleep. The jackdaw slept, perched on the back of an empty chair. Mr. Bultitude, stretched out on his side across the hearth, slept also:[d] his tiny, child-like snore, so disproportionate to his bulk, was audible in the momentary silence. Mrs. Dimble, bunched in what seemed a comfortless[e] position, was sleeping with her head on the table, a half-darned sock still clasped on her knees. Dimble looked at her with that uncurable pity which men feel for any sleeper, but specially for a wife. Camilla, who had been in the rocking-chair,[f] was curled up in an attitude which was full of grace, like that of an animal accustomed to sleep anywhere. Mrs. Maggs slept with her kind, commonplace mouth wide open; and Grace Ironwood, bolt upright as if she were awake, but with the[g] head sagging a little to one side, seemed to submit with austere patience to the humiliation of unconsciousness.

"They're all right," said MacPhee from behind. "It's just the same as he did to me. We've no time to wake them. Get on."

They passed from the kitchen into the flagged passage. To all of them except MacPhee the silence of the house seemed intense after their buffeting in the wind and rain. The lights as they switched them on successively revealed empty rooms and empty passages which wore the abandoned look of indoor midnight—fires

---

[a] he] *BM*; MacPhee *A*
[b] horse,] *BA*; horse *M*
[c] hours:] *B*; hours; *M*
[d] also:] *B*; also; *M*
[e] a comfortless] *B*; an uncomfortable *M*
☛ B's reading is perhaps less usual, hence the *lectio difficilior*.
[f] rocking-chair,] *B*; rocking chair *M*
[g] the] *B*; her *M*
☛ *Lectio difficilior*.

① *sweepy*

"Chiefly *poet[ic]*" is the description the *NED* gives of this adjective. Lewis does use it poetically, in "Dymer" II 27 3 (*Narrative Poems* 23), but he also uses it twice in prose passages: here, and in describing a figure clothed "from crown to toe in sweepy black" in *Till We Have Faces* (300).

dead in the grates, an evening paper on a sofa, a clock that had stopped. But no one had really expected to find much else on the ground floor.

"Now[a] for upstairs," said Dimble.

"The lights are on upstairs," said Jane,[b] as they all came to the foot of the staircase.

"We turned them on ourselves from the passage," said Dimble.

"I don't think we did," said Denniston.

"Excuse me," said Dimble to MacPhee, "I think perhaps I'd better go first."

Up to the first landing they were in darkness; on the second and last the light from the first floor fell. At each landing the stair made a right-angled turn, so that till you reached the second you could not see the lobby on the floor above. Jane and Denniston, who were last, saw MacPhee and Dimble stopped dead on the second landing: their faces in profile lit up, the backs of their heads in darkness. The Ulsterman's mouth was shut like a trap, his expression hostile and afraid. Dimble was open-mouthed. Then, forcing her tired limbs to run, Jane got up beside them and saw what they saw.

Looking[c] down on them from the balustrade were two men, one clothed in sweepy garments of red and the other in blue. It was the Director who wore blue, ① and for one instant a thought that was pure nightmare crossed Jane's mind. The two robed figures looked to be two of the same sort . . . and what, after all, did she know of this Director who had conjured her into his house and made her dream dreams and taught her the fear of Hell that very night? And there they were, the pair of them, talking their secrets and doing whatever such people would do, when they had emptied the house or laid its inhabitants to sleep. The[d] man who had been dug up out of the earth and the man who had been in outer space . . . and the one had told them that the other was an enemy, and now, the moment they met, here were the two of them, run together like two drops of quicksilver. All this time she had hardly looked at the Stranger. The Director seemed to have laid aside his crutch, and Jane had hardly seen him standing so straight and still before. The light so fell on his beard that it became a kind of halo; and on top of his head also she caught the glint of gold. Suddenly, while she thought of these things, she found that her eyes were looking straight into the eyes of the Stranger. Next moment she had noticed his size. The man was monstrous. And the two men were allies. And the Stranger was speaking and pointing at her as he spoke.

---

[a] ¶"Now] *BA*; "Now *M*
[b] Jane,] *BA*; Jane *M*
[c] ¶Looking] *BM*; Looking *A*
[d] . The] *BM*; , the *A*

① *the stroke that Balinus struck*

This is the "Dolorous Stroke" of Arthurian legend, prophesied by Merlin, which Sir Balin struck King Pellam with the spear that had been used to stab Christ upon the cross (Malory, *Morte* II ch. 15–16). The act seemed small at the time, with Balin snatching up a spear in self-defence when his sword broke as he fought King Pellam, but the consequences were very great: "the most part of the castle […] was fallen down" (Malory, *Morte* II ch. 15), and there followed "great dole, trey and tene" and "three countries […] destroyed" (Malory, *Morte* II ch. 16).

② *the purpose of God […] for a thousand years.*

In Tolkien's fiction a similar prophecy was made concerning Aragorn's parents, Arathorn and Gilraen. They, however, did not fail their people, and married when Gilraen was unusually young because of the foretelling, "If these two wed now, hope may be born for our people; but if they delay, it will not come while this age lasts" (*Lord of the Rings* VII 40). Their son Aragorn, who was only two when his father died, went on to be instrumental in the destruction of the One Ring and to restore the throne of his ancestors.

Lewis may not have known this part of Tolkien's character's story, since it does not appear in *Lord of the Rings* itself. However, the trope of the predicted birth of a child destined to be a champion of his people is a common one in heroic fiction and indeed in Christian belief (see for example Isa. 9: 6–7), and it is therefore not surprising that it is found in the fiction of both Lewis and Tolkien.

③ *Of their own will […] the usages of Sulva*

We are told right at the beginning of the novel that Jane and Mark "were to have no children, at any rate for a long time yet" (ch. 1 I 8). In *The Abolition of Man* Lewis takes "the contraceptive" as one of three "typical" contemporary examples of humanity's "increasing power over Nature" (34). He expands (35):

> And as regards contraceptives, there is a paradoxical, negative sense in which all possible future generations are the patients or subjects of a power wielded by those already alive. By contraception simply, they are denied existence; by contraception used as a means of selective breeding, they are, without their concurring voice, made to be what one generation, for its own reasons, may choose to prefer.

Although Jane and Mark have (presumably) practised "contraception simply", the latter part of Lewis's passage shows how contraceptives can be used to further the ends of such organisations as the N.I.C.E. (see Feverstone in ch. 2 I and Filostrato in ch. 8 III): this makes contraception an unacceptable activity within the novel. Outside the world of *That Hideous Strength*, Lewis wrote, "I've never propounded a general position about contraception. As a bachelor I think I shd. be imprudent in attacking it: on the other hand I shd. not like the job of defending it against almost unbroken Xtian disapproval. But it isn't my business" (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 798).

④ *the Latin […] the* Hisperica Famina.

This list is supposed to convey that Merlin's Latin is convoluted and periphrastic, but must now be opaque to nearly all of Lewis's readers. Apuleius's style is characterised by "dislocations of idiomatic word-order" (*Discarded Image* 194) and this style influences that of

She did not understand the words:[a] but Dimble did, and heard Merlin saying in what seemed to him a rather strange kind of Latin:

"Sir, you have in your house the falsest lady of any at this time alive."

And Dimble heard the Director answer[b] in the same language.[c]

"Sir,[d] you are mistaken. She is doubtless like all of us a sinner:[e] but the woman is chaste."

"Sir," said Merlin, "know well that she has done in Logres a thing of which no less sorrow shall come than came of the stroke that Balinus struck. For, sir,[f] it was ① the purpose of God that she and her lord should between them have begotten a ② child by whom the enemies should have been put out of Logres for a thousand years."

"She is but lately married," said Ransom. "The child may yet be born."

"Sir," said Merlin, "be assured that the child will never be born, for the hour of its begetting is passed. Of their own will they are barren: I did not know till now ③ that the usages of Sulva were so common among you. For a hundred generations in two lines the begetting of this child was prepared; and unless God should rip up the work of time, such seed, and such an hour, in such a land, shall never be again."

"Enough said," answered Ransom. "The woman perceives that we are speaking of her."

"It would be great charity," said Merlin, "if you gave order that her head should be cut from her shoulders; for it is weariness to look at her."

Jane, though she had a smattering of Latin, had not understood their conversation. The accent was unfamiliar, and the old Druid used a vocabulary that was far beyond her reading—the Latin of a man to whom Apuleius and Martianus ④ Capella were the primary classics and whose elegances resembled those of the *Hisperica Famina*. But Dimble had followed it. He thrust Jane behind him and called out:[g] "Ransom![h] What in heaven's[i] name is the meaning of this?"

Merlin spoke again in Latin, and Ransom was just turning to answer him when Dimble interrupted:[j]

---

[a] words:] *BA*; words; *M*
[b] answer] *BA*; answer him *M*
☛ M's "him" is potentially apparently ambiguous—it is not immediately clear whether it refers to Merlin or Dimble—so B's reading may be a correction or second thought.
[c] language.] *B*; language: *M* , A
[d] ¶"Sir,] *BM*; Sir, *A*
[e] sinner:] *BA*; sinner; *M*
[f] sir,] *BA*; Sir, *M*
[g] out:] *BA*; out, *M*
[h] "Ransom!] *A*; ¶"Ransom! *BM*
[i] heaven's] *BA*; Heaven's *M*
[j] interrupted:] *B*; interrupted, *M*

Martianus Capellus (*Oxford Classical Dictionary*, "Martianus Capellus"); the Latin of the *Hisperica Famina* is notoriously obscure, full of periphrases, portmanteau words, borrowings, and neologisms (Wikipedia contributors, "Hiberno-Latin").

---

① *Merlinus Ambrosius*

Geoffrey of Monmouth writes of "Merlin, that was also called Ambrosius" (VI ch. 19 115). Ambrosius (meaning "undying") is here an apt surname for Merlin, who has lain asleep and undying for centuries.

"Answer *us*," he said. "What has happened? Why are you dressed up like that? What are you doing with that blood-thirsty[a] old man?"

MacPhee, who had followed the Latin even less than Jane, but who had been staring at Merlin as an angry terrier stares at a Newfoundland dog which has invaded its own garden, broke into the conversation.[b]

"Dr. Ransom," he said. "I don't know who the big man is and I'm no Latinist. But I know well that you've kept me under your eye all this night against my own expressed will, and allowed me to be drugged and hypnotised. It gives me little pleasure, I assure you, to see yourself dressed up like something out of a pantomime and standing there hand-in-glove[c] with that yogi, or shaman, or priest, or whatever he is. And you can tell him he[d] need not look at me the way he's doing. I'm not afraid of him. And as for my own life and limb—if you, Dr. Ransom, have changed sides after all that's come and gone, I don't know that I've much more use for either. But though I may be killed, I'm not going to be made a fool of. We're waiting for an explanation."

The Director looked down on them in silence for a few seconds.

"Has it really come to this?" he said. "Does not one of you trust me?"

"I do, sir,"[e] said Jane suddenly.

"These appeals to the passions and emotions," said MacPhee, "are nothing to the purpose. I could cry as well as anyone this moment if I gave my mind to it."

"Well," said the Director, after a pause, "there is some excuse for you all,[f] for we have all been mistaken. So has the enemy. This man is Merlinus Ambrosius. ① They thought that if he came back he would be on their side. I find he is on ours. You, Dimble, ought to realise that this was always a possibility."

"That is true," said Dimble. "I suppose it was—well, the look of the thing—you and he standing there together: like *that*. And his appalling blood-thirstiness."[g]

"I have been startled by it myself," said Ransom. "But after all we had no right to expect that his penal code would be that of the nineteenth century.[h] I find it difficult, too, to make him understand that I am not an absolute monarch."

"Is—is he a Christian?" asked Dimble

"Yes," said Ransom. "As for my clothes, I have for once put on the dress of

---

[a] blood-thirsty] *ed.*; bloodthirsty *BM*

☛ A's witness is missing here, but on the next page it has a hyhen in "blood-thirstiness": see note 296[g].

[b] conversation.] *BA*; conversation: *M*

[c] hand-in-glove] *BA*; hand in glove *M*

[d] he] *BM*; He *A*

[e] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*

[f] all,] *B*; all *M*

[g] blood-thirstiness."] *A*; bloodthirstiness *BM*

[h] nineteenth century.] *BA*; Nineteenth Century. *M*

① *In his days, […] not a favourite colour.*

Lewis shares this view of the darkness, dreariness and dullness of contemporary dress with Chesterton, who alludes to it more than once (*Heretics* 210; "A Defence of Heraldry", *The Defendant* 25%; *What's Wrong with the World* IV ch. 7 98%).

my office to do him honour, and because I was ashamed. He mistook MacPhee and me for scullions or stable-boys. In his days, you see, men did not, except for necessity, go about in shapeless sacks of cloth, and drab was not a favourite colour." ①

At this point Merlin spoke again. Dimble and the Director,[a] who alone could follow his speech,[b] heard him say, "Who are these people? If they are your slaves, why do they do you no reverence? If they are enemies, why do we not destroy them?"

"They are my friends," began Ransom in Latin, but MacPhee interrupted.[c]

"Do I understand, Dr. Ransom," he said,[d] "that you are asking us to accept this person as a member of our organisation?"

"I am afraid," said the Director, "I cannot put it that way. He *is* a member of the organisation. And must command you all to accept him."

"And secondly," continued MacPhee, "I must ask what[e] enquiries have been made into his credentials."[f]

"I am fully satisfied," answered the Director. "I am as sure of his good faith as of yours."

"But the grounds of your confidence?" persisted MacPhee. "Are we not to hear them?"

"It would be hard," said the Director, "to explain to you my reasons for trusting Merlinus Ambrosius: but[g] no harder than to explain to him why, despite many appearances which might be misunderstood, I trust you." There was just the ghost of a smile about his mouth as he said this. Then Merlin spoke to him again in Latin and he replied. After that Merlin addressed Dimble.

"The Pendragon tells me," he said in his unmoved voice, "that you accuse me for a fierce and cruel man. It is a charge I never heard before. A third part of my substance I gave to widows and poor men. I never sought the death of any but felons and heathen Saxons. As for the woman, she may live,[h] for me. I am not master[i] in this house. But would it be such a great matter if her head were struck off? Do not queens and ladies who would disdain her as their tire-woman go to the fire for less? Even that gallows bird (*cruciarius*) beside you—I mean you, fellow, though you speak nothing but your own barbarous tongue; you with the face like

---

[a] Director,] *B*; Director *M*
[b] speech,] *B*; speech *M*
[c] interrupted.] *B*; interrupted, *M*
[d] he said,] *BM*; said MacPhee, *A*
[e] what] *BM*; What *A*
[f] credentials."] *BM*; credentials?" *A*
[g] : but] *BA*; ; but *M*
[h] live,] *A*; live *MB*
[i] master] *BA*; Master *M*

① *he wouldn't know about forks. […] how* elegant *he was without them.*

This incident provides Ransom with a telling comparison in an important conversation with Jane in ch. 14 V 334.

sour milk and the voice like a saw in a hard log and the legs like a crane's—even that cutpurse (*sector zonarius*), though I would have him to the gatehouse, yet the rope should be used on his back, not his throat."

MacPhee who realised, though without understanding the words, that he was the subject of some unfavourable comment, stood listening with that expression of entirely suspended judgement[a] which is commoner in Northern Ireland and the Scotch lowlands than in England.

"Mr. Director," he said,[b] when Merlin had finished, "I would be very greatly obliged if——"[c]

"Come," said the Director suddenly, "we have none of us slept to-night.[d] Arthur, will you come and light a fire for our guest in the big room at the north[e] end of this passage? And would someone wake the women? Ask them to bring him up refreshments. A bottle of Burgundy and whatever you have cold. And then, all to bed. We need not stir early in the morning. All is going to be very well."

IV

"We're going to have difficulties with that new colleague of ours," said Dimble. He was alone with his wife in their room at St. Anne's late on the following day.

"Yes," he repeated after a pause. "What you'd call a strong colleague."

"You look very tired, Cecil," said Mrs. Dimble.

"Well, it's been rather a gruelling conference," said he. "He's—he's a tiring man. Oh, I know we've all been fools. I mean, we've all been imagining that because he came back in the twentieth century[f] he'd be a twentieth-century[g] man. Time is more important than we thought, that's all."

"I felt that at lunch, you know," said his wife. "It[h] was so silly not to have realised that he wouldn't know about forks. But what surprised me even more (after the first shock) was how—well, how *elegant* he was without them. I mean you could see it wasn't a case of having no manners but of having different ones."

"Oh, the old boy's a gentleman in his own way—anyone can see that. But . . . well, I don't know. I suppose it's all right."

"What happened at the meeting?"

---

[a] judgement] *B*; judgment *M*
[b] he said,] *BM*; said MacPhee, *A*
[c] if——"] *BA*; if—" *M*
[d] to-night.] *BA*; tonight. *M*
[e] north] *BA*; North *M*
[f] twentieth century] *B*; Twentieth Century *M*
[g] twentieth-century] *B*; Twentieth Century *M*
[h] wife. "It] *MA*; wife, "it *B*

① *the best deed that any bear had done in Britain except some other bear that none of us had ever heard of.*

This prophecy is fulfilled in ch. 16 IV.

"Well, you see, everything had to be explained on both sides. We'd the dickens of a job to make him understand that Ransom isn't the king of this country or trying to become king. And then we had to break it to him that we weren't the British at all, but the English—what he'd call Saxons. It took him some time to get over that."

"I see."

"And then MacPhee had to choose that moment for embarking on an interminable explanation of the relations between Scotland and Ireland and England. All of which, of course, had to be translated. It was all nonsense, too. Like a good many people[a] MacPhee imagines he's a Celt when, apart from his name, there's nothing Celtic about him any more than about Mr. Bultitude. By the way Merlinus Ambrosius made a prophecy[b] about Mr. Bultitude."

"Oh! What was that?"

"He said that before Christmas this bear would do the best deed that any bear had done in Britain except some other bear that none of us had ever heard of. He keeps on saying things like that. They just pop out when we're talking about something else, and in a rather different voice. As if he couldn't help it. He doesn't seem to know any *more* than the bit he tells you at the moment, if you see what I mean. As if something like a camera shutter opened at the back of his mind and closed again immediately and just one little item came through. It has rather a disagreeable effect." ①

"He and MacPhee didn't quarrel again,[c] I hope."

"Not exactly. I'm afraid Merlinus Ambrosius wasn't taking MacPhee very seriously. From the fact that MacPhee is always being obstructive and rather rude and yet never gets sat on, I think Merlinus has concluded that he is the Director's fool. He seems to have got over his dislike for him. But I don't think MacPhee is going to like Merlinus."

"Did you get down to actual business?" asked Mrs. Dimble.

"Well, in a way," said Dimble, wrinkling his forehead. "We were all at cross purposes[d], you see. The business about Ivy's husband being in prison came up, and Merlinus wanted to know why we hadn't rescued him. He[e] seemed to imagine us

---

[a] people] *B*; people, *M*
[b] prophecy] *BA*; prophesy *M*
☛ A mis-spelling in M, *not* an example of American spelling (see *Webster's*, "Prophecy, *n.*", "Prophesy, *v.t.*" & "Prophesy, *v.i.*").
[c] again,] *BM*; again? *A*
[d] cross purposes] *BA*; cross-purposes *M*
[e] He] *BM*; he *A*

① *the poem about Heaven and Hell eating into merry Middle Earth from opposite sides*

This seems to be Lewis's invention.

just riding off and taking the County Jail by storm. That's the sort of thing one was up against all the time."

"Cecil," said Mrs. Dimble suddenly. "Is he going to be any use?"

"He's going to be able to *do* things, if that's what you mean. In that sense there's more danger of his being too much use than too little."

"What sort of things?" asked his wife.

"The universe is so very complicated," said Dr. Dimble.

"So you have said rather often before, dear," replied Mrs. Dimble.

"Have I?" he said with a smile. "How often, I wonder? As often as you've told the story of the pony and trap at Dawlish?"

"Cecil! I haven't told it for years."

"My dear, I heard you telling it to Camilla the night before last."

"Oh, *Camilla!*[a] That was quite different. She'd never heard it before."

"I don't know that we can be certain even about that . . . the universe being so complicated and all."[b]

For a few minutes there was silence between them.

"But about Merlin?" asked Mrs. Dimble presently.

"Have you ever noticed," said Dimble, "that the universe, and every little bit of the universe, is always hardening and narrowing and coming to a point?"

His wife waited as those wait who know by long experience the mental processes of the person who is talking to them.

"I mean this," said Dimble,[c] in answer to the question she had not asked. "If[d] you dip into any college, or school, or parish, or family—anything you like—at a given point in its history, you always find that there was a time before that point when there was more elbow-room[e] and contrasts weren't quite so sharp; and that there's going to be a time after that point when there is even less room for indecision and choices are even more momentous. Good is always getting better and bad is always getting worse: the possibilities of even apparent neutrality are always diminishing. The whole thing is sorting itself out all the time, coming to a point, getting sharper and harder. Like in the poem about Heaven and Hell eating ① into merry Middle Earth from opposite sides . . . how does it go? Something about

---

[a] *Camilla!*] *B*; *Camilla. M*
[b] all." ¶] *B*; all." *M*
[c] Dimble,] *BA*; Dimble *M*
[d] asked. "If] *BM*; asked, "if *A*
☛ The excision of "this" in A's abridgement means that Dimble's utterance continues as part of the same sentence, not a new one, hence A's changes here.
[e] elbow-room] *BA*; elbow room *M*

① *the bit in the Bible about the winnowing fan. Separating the wheat and the chaff.*

Mrs Dimble is thinking of John the Baptist's prediction of the coming Christ: "Whose fan is in his hand, and he will thoroughly purge his floor, and gather his wheat into the garner: but he will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire" (Matt. 3: 12; see also Luke 3: 17). Not, as Smilde suggests, Isaiah 30: 24, which refers to animals eating "clean provender" that has been winnowed.

② *Browning's line: 'Life's business being just the terrible choice.'*

Browning: *The Ring and the Book* X 1235–37:

> White shall not neutralize the black, nor good
> Compensate bad in man, absolve him so:
> Life's business being just the terrible choice.

This comes at the end of a passage describing those who attempt to avoid judgement or responsibility by evading choices.

'eat[a] every day . . . till[b] all is *somethinged* away.'[c] It can't be *eaten*, that wouldn't scan. My memory has failed dreadfully these last few years. Do you know the bit, Margery?"

"What you were saying reminded me more of the bit in the Bible about the winnowing fan. Separating the wheat and the chaff. Or like[d] Browning's line: 'Life's business being just the terrible choice.' " ① ②

Philosophies of Time

"Exactly! Perhaps the whole time-process means just that and nothing else. But it's not only in questions of moral choice. Everything is getting more itself and more different from everything else all the time. Evolution means species getting less and less like one another. Minds get more and more spiritual, matter more and more material. Even in literature, poetry[e] and prose draw further and further apart."

Mrs. Dimble with the ease born of long practice averted the danger, ever present in her house, of a merely literary turn being given to the conversation.

"Yes,"[f] she said. "Spirit and matter, certainly. That explains why people like the Studdocks find it so difficult to be happily married."

"The Studdocks?" said Dimble, looking at her rather vaguely. The domestic problems of that young couple had occupied his mind a good deal less than they had occupied his wife's. "Oh, I see! Yes. I dare say that has something to do with it. But[g] about Merlin: what[h] it comes to, as far as I can make out, is this. Were there[i] still possibilities for a man of that age which there aren't for a man of ours?[j] The earth[k] itself was more like an animal in those days. And mental[l] processes were much more like physical actions. And there were—well, Neutrals, knocking about."

"Neutrals?"

---

[a] 'eat] *M*; "eat *B*
☛ M's single quotation mark is more appropriate for a quotation within reported speech already enclosed in double quotation marks.
[b] day . . . till] *B*; day' . . . 'till *M*
[c] away.'] *M*; away." *B*
☛ See note 301[a].
[d] like] *BM*; Like *A*
[e] poetry] *BM*; Poetry *A*
[f] Yes,"] *BM*; Yes?" *A*
[g] But] *BM*; Well, *A*
☛ In the unabridged versions, Dimble uses the adversative "But" to introduce a return to discussing Merlin after a digression. In A's abridgement, the digression has been excised, and the weaker "Well" introduces the continuation of what he was saying before his wife's very short interruption.
[h] : what] *B*; . What *M*
[i] Were there] *A*; There were *BM*
[j] ours?] *A*; ours. *BM*
☛ Changing this sentence to a question does not seem to enable any abridgement: this is a revision to make it clear that Dimble is speculative and uncertain here.
[k] earth] *BA*; Earth *M*
[l] mental] *BM*; Mental *A*

① *the Oyéresu […] are Intelligences*

See “Planetary Powers” in Introduction 4.

"I don't mean, of course, that anything can be a *real* neutral. A conscious being is either obeying God or disobeying Him. But there[a] might be things neutral in relation to us."

"You mean eldils—angels?"

"Well, the word *angel* rather begs the question. Even the Oyéresu aren't exactly angels in the same sense as our guardian angels are. Technically,[b] they are Intelligences. The point is that while it may be true at the end of the world to describe every eldil either as an angel or a devil, and may even be true now, it was much less true in Merlin's time. There used to be things on this earth[c] pursuing their own business, so to speak. They weren't ministering spirits sent to help fallen humanity,[d] but neither were they enemies preying upon us. Even in St. Paul one gets glimpses of a population that won't exactly fit into our two columns of angels and devils. And if you go back further . . . all the gods, elves, dwarfs, water-people, *fate*, *longaevi*. You and I know too much to think they are just illusions."

"You think there are things like that?"

"I think there were. I think there was room for them then, but the universe has come more to a point. Not all rational things perhaps. Some would be mere wills inherent in matter, hardly conscious. More like animals. Others—but I don't really know. At any rate, that is the sort of situation in which one got a man like Merlin."

"It all sounds rather horrible to me."

"It was *rather* horrible. I mean even in Merlin's time (he came at the extreme tail end of it), though[e] you could still use that sort of life in the universe innocently, you couldn't do it safely. The things weren't bad in themselves, but they were already bad for us. They sort of withered the man who dealt with them. Not on purpose. They couldn't help doing it. Merlinus is withered. He's quite pious and humble and all that, but something has been taken out of him. That quietness of his is just a little deadly, like the quiet of a gutted building. It's the result of having laid his mind open to something that broadens the environment just a bit too much. Like polygamy. It wasn't wrong for Abraham, but one can't help feeling that even he lost something by it."

"Cecil," said Mrs. Dimble,[f] "do[g] you feel quite comfortable about the

[a] there] *BM*; There *A*
[b] Technically,] *B*; Technically *M*
[c] earth] *BA*; Earth *M*
[d] humanity,] *BA*; humanity; *M*
[e] , though] *BA*; though *M*
[f] Dimble,] *B*; Dimble. *M*
[g] do] *BA*; Do *M*

① *They thought […] the brutal surgery from without.*

See 213 n. 1–3; see also Preliminary Note D: "Logres". In *Miracles* Lewis describes "the evil dream of Magic as the finite spirit's longing to get that power [over Nature] without paying that price" of "obedience to the Father of Spirits" (ch. 16 154).

Director's using a man like this? I mean, doesn't[a] it look a *little*[b] bit like fighting Belbury with its own weapons?"

"No. I *had* thought of that. Merlin is the reverse of Belbury. He's at the opposite extreme. He is the last vestige of an old order in which matter and spirit were, from our modern point of view, confused. For him every operation on Nature is a kind of personal contact, like coaxing a child or stroking one's horse. After him came the modern man to whom Nature is something dead—a machine to be worked, and taken to bits if it won't work the way[c] he pleases. Finally[d] come the Belbury people, who take over that view from the modern man unaltered and simply want to increase their power by tacking on to[e] it the aid of spirits—extra-natural, anti-natural spirits. Of course they hoped to have it both ways. They ① thought the old *magia* of Merlin, which worked in with the spiritual qualities of Nature, loving and reverencing them and knowing them from within, could be combined with the new *goeteia*—the brutal surgery from without. No. In a sense, Merlin represents what we've got to get back to in some different way. Do you know that he is forbidden by the rules of his order ever to[f] use any edged tool on any growing thing?"

"Good gracious!" said Mrs. Dimble, "there's[g] six o'clock. I'd promised Ivy to be in the kitchen at quarter to. There's no need for *you* to move, Cecil."

"Do you know," said Dimble, "I think you are a wonderful woman."

"Why?"

"How many women who had had their own house for thirty years would be able to fit into this menagerie as you do?"

"That's nothing," said Mrs. Dimble. "Ivy had her own house too, you know. And it's much worse for her. After all, I haven't got my husband in jail."

"You jolly soon will have," said Dimble, "if half the plans of Merlinus Ambrosius are put into action."

---

[a] doesn't] *BM*; Doesn't *A*
[b] *little*] *BA*; little *M*
[c] the way] *BM*; as *A*
[d] Finally] *BA*; Finally, *M*
[e] on to] *BA*; onto *M*
[f] ever to] *B*; to *M*
[g] Dimble, "there's] *BA*; Dimble. "There's *M*

① *the seven bears of Logres*

Lewis told Charles Moorman, "The VII Bears and the Atlantean Circle […] are pure inventions of my own, filling the same place in the narrative as 'noises off' wd in a stage play" (*Collected Letters* vol. 3 232).

V

Merlin and the Director were meanwhile talking in the Blue Room. The Director had put aside his robe and circlet and lay on his sofa. The Druid[a] sat in a chair facing him, his legs uncrossed, his pale large hands motionless on his knees, looking to modern eyes like an old conventional carving of a king. He was still robed and beneath the robe, as Ransom knew, had surprisingly little clothing, for the warmth of the house was to him excessive and he found trousers uncomfortable. His loud demands for oil after his bath had involved some hurried shopping in the village,[b] which had finally produced, by Denniston's exertions, a tin of brilliantine.[c] Merlinus had used it freely so that his hair and beard glistened and the sweet,[d] sticky smell filled the room. That was why Mr. Bultitude had pawed so insistently at the door that he was finally admitted and now sat as near the magician as he could possibly get, his nostrils twitching. He had never smelled such an interesting man before.

"Sir," said Merlin, in answer to the question which the Director had just asked him, "I give you great thanks. I cannot, indeed,[e] understand the way you live,[f] and your house is strange to me. You give me a bath such as the Emperor himself might envy, but no one attends me to it:[g] a bed softer than sleep itself, but when I rise from it I find I must put on my own clothes with my own hands as if I were a peasant. I lie in a room with windows of pure crystal so that you can see the sky as clearly when they are shut as when they are open, and there is not wind enough within the room to blow out an unguarded taper; but I lie in it alone, with no more honour than a prisoner in a dungeon. Your people eat dry and tasteless flesh,[h] but it is off plates as smooth as ivory and as round as the sun. In all the house there is warmth and softness and silence that might put a man in mind of paradise terrestrial; but no hangings, no beautified pavements, no musicians, no perfumes, no high seats, not a gleam of gold, not a hawk, not a hound. You seem to me to live neither like a rich man nor a poor one: neither like a lord nor a hermit. Sir, I tell you these things because you have asked me. They are of no importance. Now that none hears us save the last of the seven bears of Logres, it is time that we should open counsels to each other."

① ☛

[a] Druid] *BA*; druid *M*
[b] village,] *A*; village *BM*
[c] brilliantine.] *A*; Brilliantine. *BM*
☛ The only quotation (1884) cited by the *NED* supports A's use of the lower case here.
[d] sweet,] *A*; sweet *BM*
[e] cannot, indeed,] *BA*; cannot indeed *M*
[f] live,] *BA*; live *M*
[g] it:] *BA*; it; *M*
[h] flesh,] *B*; flesh *M*

He glanced at the Director's face as he spoke and then, as if startled by what he saw there, leaned sharply forward.

"Does your wound pain you?" he asked.

Ransom shook his head. "No," he said, "it is not the wound. We have terrible things to talk of."

The big man stirred uneasily.[a]

"Sir," said Merlinus in a deeper and softer voice, "I could take all the anguish from your heel as though I were wiping it out with a sponge. Give me but seven days to go in and out and up and down and to and fro, to renew old acquaintance. These fields and I, this wood and I, have much to say to one another."

As he said this he[b] was leaning forward so that his face and the bear's were almost side by side, and it almost looked as if those two might have been engaged in some kind of furry and grunted conversation. The druid's face had a strangely animal appearance: not sensual nor fierce, but full of the patient, unarguing sagacity of a beast. Ransom's, meanwhile, was full of torment.

"You might find the country much changed," he said[c], forcing a smile.

"No," said Merlin. "I do not[d] reckon to find it much changed." The distance between the two men was increasing every moment. Merlin was like something that ought not to be indoors. Bathed and anointed though he was, a sense of mould, gravel, wet leaves, weedy water[e] hung about him.[f]

"Not *changed*," he repeated in an almost inaudible voice. And in that deepening inner silence of which his face bore witness, one[g] might have believed that he listened continually to a murmur of evasive sounds;[h] rustling of mice and stoats, thumping progression of frogs, the small shock of falling hazel nuts, creaking of branches, runnels trickling, the very growing of grass. The bear had closed its eyes. The whole room was growing heavy with a sort of floating anaesthesia.[i]

"Through[j] me," said Merlin, "you can suck up from the Earth oblivion of all pains."

"Silence," said the Director sharply. He had been sinking down into the

---

[a] The big man stirred uneasily.¶] *M only.*
☛ See Introduction 2 xl.
[b] he] *BM*; He *A*
[c] he said] *BM*; said Ransom *A*
[d] not] *BM*; Not *A*
[e] water] *A*; water, *BM*
[f] him. ¶] *BM*; him. *A*
[g] one] *BM*; One *A*
[h] sounds;] *BA*; sounds: *M*
[i] anaesthesia.] *BA*; anæsthesia. *M*
[j] ¶"Through] *BM*; "Through *A*

① *the Hideous Strength confronts us, and it is as in the days when Nimrod built a tower to reach heaven.*
In the epigraph to the novel, Lewis glosses "that hyddeous strength" as "the Tower of Babel". Here he alludes directly to the novel's title, making clear the comparison between the N.I.C.E. and the proud blasphemy of the Tower of Babel, in which men strove to reach heaven through the work of their hands (Gen 11: 3–4). The attempt of Babel failed because the Lord decided to "confound their language, that they may not understand one another's speech" (Gen. 11: 7); see ch. 16 I for the shattering of the N.I.C.E's plans. Nimrod is traditionally rather than Biblically associated with the tower of Babel, although "the beginning of his kingdom" is described in the preceding chapter of Genesis as having included "Babel […] in the land of Shinar" (Gen. 10: 10). Sir David Lyndsay notes that the Bible's account "overlooks" the story:

> Moyses, in his first Buke,
> That storye lychtlye did ouer luke:
> Of him no more he doith declare,
> Except his was ane strang huntare.
> Bot utheris Clerkis curious,
> As Orose doith, and Josephus,
> Discryvis Nemrod at more lenth […]
>
> ("Ane Dialog betuix Experience and ane Courteour" II 1648–54)

cushions of his sofa with his head drooping a little towards his chest. Now he suddenly sat bolt upright. The magician started and straightened himself likewise. The air of the room was cleared. Even the bear opened its eyes again.

"No," said the Director. "God's glory, do you think you were dug out of the earth to give me a plaster for my heel? We have drugs that could cheat the pain as well as your earth-magic or better, if it were not my business to bear it to the end. I will hear no more of that. Do you understand?

"I hear and obey," said the magician. "But I meant no harm. If not to heal your own wound, yet for the healing of Logres, you will need my commerce with field and water. It must be that I should go in and out, and to and fro, renewing old acquaintance. It will not be changed, you know—not[a] what you would call *changed*."

Again that sweet heaviness, like the smell of hawthorn, seemed to be flowing back over the Blue Room.

"No," said the Director in a still louder voice, "that cannot be done any longer. The soul has gone out of the wood and water. Oh, I dare say you could awake them—[b]a little. But it would not be enough. A storm, or even a river-flood, would be of little avail against our present enemy. Your weapon would break in your hands. For the Hideous Strength confronts us, and it is as in the days when ① Nimrod built a tower to reach heaven."

"Hidden it may be," said Merlinus, "but not *changed*. Leave me to work, Lord. I will wake it. I will set a sword in every blade of grass to wound them and the very clods of earth shall be venom to their feet. I will——"[c]

"No," said the Director, "I forbid you to speak of it. If it were possible, it would be unlawful. Whatever of spirit may still linger in the earth has withdrawn fifteen hundred years further away from us since your time. You shall not speak a word to it. You shall not lift your little finger to call it up. I command you. It is in this age utterly unlawful." Hitherto[d] he had been speaking sternly and coldly. Now he[e] leaned forward and said in a different voice, "It never was *very* lawful, even in your day. Remember, when we first knew that you would be awaked, we thought you would be on the side of the enemy. And because Our Lord does all things for each, one of the purposes of your reawakening was that your own soul should be saved."

Merlin sank back into his chair like a man unstrung. The bear licked his hand where it hung, pale and relaxed, over the arm of the chair.

---

[a] know—not] *B*; know. Not *M*
[b] them—] *BA*; them; *M*
[c] will——"] *B*; will—" *M*
[d] Hitherto] *B*; Hitherto, *M*
[e] he] *BM*; He *A*

① *if you knew not […] because it was true.*

Compare Ransom's natural relations with his masters and fellow-creatures with the ceremonies and passwords that form part of the ambiguous activities of Merlin and his "College", and with the ugly ceremonial and anti-human training that the approach to the macrobes requires (see: ch. 9 I & V; 14 I & IV).

"Sir," said Merlin[a] presently, "if I am not to work for you in that fashion, then you have taken into your house a silly bulk of flesh, for[b] I am no longer much of a man of war. If it comes to point and edge, I avail little."

"Not that way either," said Ransom, hesitating like a man who is reluctant to come to the point. "No power that is merely earthly," he continued at last, "will serve against the Hideous Strength."

"Then let us all to prayers," said Merlinus. "But there also . . . I was not reckoned of much account . . . they called me a devil's son, some of them. It was a lie. But I do not know why I have been brought back." *Logres*

"Certainly, let us stick to our prayers," said Ransom, "now and always. But that was not what I meant. There are celestial powers: created powers, not in this Earth, but in the Heavens."

Merlinus looked at him in silence.

"You know well what I am speaking of," said Ransom. "Did not I tell you when we first met that the Oyéresu were my masters?"[c]

"Of course," said Merlin. "And that was how I knew you were of the college.[d] Is it not our password[e] all over the Earth?"

"A password[e]?" exclaimed Ransom,[f] with a look of surprise. "I did not know that."

"But . . . but," said Merlinus, "if you knew not the password[e], how did you come to say it?" ①

"I said it because it was true."

The magician licked his lips which had become very pale.

"True as the plainest things are true," repeated Ransom; "true[g] as it is true that you sit here with my bear beside you."

Merlin spread out his hands. "You are my father and mother," he said. His eyes, steadily fixed on Ransom, were large as those of an awe-struck child, but for the rest he looked a smaller man than Ransom had first taken him to be.

"Suffer me to speak," he said at last, "or slay me if you will, for I am in the hollow of your hand. I had heard of it in my own days—that some had spoken with the gods. Blaise, my Master, knew a few words of that speech. Yet these were, after all, powers of Earth. For—I need not teach you, you know more than I—it is not the

---

[a] said Merlin] *BM*; he said *A*
[b] flesh, for] *BA*; flesh. For *M*
[c] masters?"] *BA*; Masters?" *M*
[d] college.] *BA*; College. *M*
[e] password] *BA*; pass-word *M*
[f] Ransom,] *BA*; Ransom *M*
[g] Ransom; "true] *BA*; Ransom. "True *M*

① *the wicked man had brought about, even as Judas brought about, the thing he least intended*

St. John records, "Therefore, when [Judas] was gone out [to tell the chief priests where to find Jesus, in exchange for money], Jesus said, Now is the Son of Man glorified, and God is glorified in him" (John 13: 31).

very Oyéresu, the true powers of heaven, whom the greatest of our craft meet, but only their earthly wraiths, their shadows. Only the earth-Venus, the earth-Mercurius:[a] not Perelandra herself, not Viritrilbia himself. It is only——"[b]

"I am not speaking of the wraiths," said Ransom. "I have stood before Mars himself in the sphere of Mars and before Venus herself in the sphere of Venus. It is their strength, and the strength of some greater than they, which will destroy our enemies."

"But, Lord," said Merlin, "how can this be? Is it not against the Seventh Law?"

"What law is that?" asked Ransom.

"Has not Our[c] Fair Lord made it a law for Himself that He will not send down the Powers to mend or mar in this earth[d] until the end of all things? Or is this the end that is even now coming to pass?"

"It may be the beginning of the end," said Ransom,[e] "but[f] I know nothing of that. Maleldil may have made it a law not to send down the Powers. But if men by enginery[g] and natural philosophy learn to fly into the Heavens, and come, in the flesh, among the heavenly powers and trouble them, He has not forbidden the Powers to react. For all this is within the natural order. A wicked man did learn so to do. He came flying, by a subtle engine, to where Mars dwells in Heaven and to where Venus dwells, and took me with him as a captive. And there I spoke with the true Oyéresu face to face. You understand me?"

Merlin inclined his head.

"And so the wicked man had brought about, even as Judas brought about, the thing he least intended. For now there was one man in the world—even myself—who was known to the Oyéresu and spoke their tongue, neither by God's miracle nor by magic from Númenor,[h] but naturally, as when two men meet in a road. Our enemies had taken away from themselves the protection of the Seventh Law. They had broken by natural philosophy the barrier which God of His own power would not break. Even so, they sought you as a friend and raised up for themselves a scourge. And that[i] is why Powers of Heaven have come down to this house, and in

①

[a] earth-Mercurius:] *BA*; earth-Mercurius; *M*
[b] ——"] *BA*; . . ." *M*
[c] Our] *ed.*; our *BMA*
☛ Not capitalising the pronoun in "our Fair Lord" here is inconsistent with "Our Fair Lord" on the next page and "Our Lord" more than once later in the chapter.
[d] earth] *BA*; Earth *M*
[e] Ransom,] *BA*; Ransom. *M*
[f] but] *B*; But *M*
[g] enginery] *A*; enginry *BM*
☛ The *NED* gives only "Enginery" (although it includes "enginry" amongst earlier "Forms").
[h] Númenor,] *ed.*; Numinor *BMA*
☛ See note 6[a].
[i] that] *BM*; That *A*

this chamber where we are now discoursing[a] Malacandra and Perelandra have spoken to me."

Merlin's face became a little paler. The bear nosed at his hand, unnoticed.

"I have become a bridge," said Ransom.

"Sir," said Merlin,[b] "what will come of this? If[c] they put forth their power, they will unmake all middle earth."[d]

"Their naked power, yes," said Ransom. "That is why they will work only through a man."

The magician drew one large hand across his forehead.

"Through a man whose mind is opened to be so invaded," said Ransom;[e] "one who by his own will once opened it. I take Our Fair Lord to witness that if it were my task[f] I would not refuse it. But he will not suffer a mind that still has its virginity to be so violated. And through a black magician's mind their purity neither can nor will operate. One who has dabbled . . . in the days when dabbling had not begun to be evil, or was only just beginning . . . and also a Christian man and a penitent. A tool (I must speak plainly) good enough to be so used and not too good. In all these western[g] parts of the world there was only one man who had lived in those days and could still be recalled. You . . ."[h]

He stopped, shocked at what was happening. The huge man had risen from his chair, and stood towering over him. From his horribly opened mouth there came a yell that seemed to Ransom utterly bestial, though it was in fact only the yell of primitive Celtic lamentation. It was horrifying to see that withered and bearded face all blubbered with undisguised tears like a child's. All the Roman surface in Merlinus had been scraped off. He had become a shameless, archaic monstrosity,[i] babbling out entreaties in a mixture of what sounded like Welsh and what sounded like Spanish.

"Silence!"[j] shouted Ransom. "Sit down. You put us both to shame."

As suddenly as it had begun the frenzy ended. Merlin resumed his chair. To a modern it seemed strange that, having recovered his self-control, he did not show the slightest embarrassment at his temporary loss of it. The whole character of the two-sided society in which this man must have lived became clearer to Ransom than pages of history could have made it.

---

[a] discoursing] *MA*; discoursing, *B*
[b] Merlin,] *MA*; Merlin *B*
[c] If] *BM*; if *A*
[d] middle earth."] *BA*; Middle Earth." *M*
[e] Ransom;] *BA*; Ransom, *M*
[f] task] *BA*; task, *M*
[g] western] *BA*; Western *M*
[h] You . . ."] *BA*; You—" *M*
[i] monstrosity,] *B*; monstrosity *M*
[j] "Silence!"] *BA*; "Silence," *M*

① *Mehercule!*

Latin: "By Hercules!" Vail notes that Plautus's characters often use this oath (Vail 86).

② *Saxon king*

King George VI (1936–52). Presumably all monarchs after Queen Anne, the last Stuart monarch, died in 1714, count as Saxon rather than British.

③ *I saw the time when Logres was only myself and one man and two boys, and one of those was a churl.*

The boys are Arthur and Kay (the churl—see Denniston's comment in ch. 1 V 27) and the man is Sir Ector, Kay's father and Arthur's foster-father.

④ *They have an engine called the Press whereby the people are deceived.*

This picture of the press at its worst, as an instrument of propaganda and disinformation, is true of England under the N.I.C.E., as is shown by Mark's activities (ch. 6 IV & 8 III) and recognised by Dimble (ch. 10 III). But Lewis had a low opinion of the press, quite apart from its dangerous potential for deception. He noted that whenever newspapers dealt with someone or something that he knew, he found, "they're always a mass of lies & misunderstandings: so I conclude they're no better in the places where I *don't* know" (*Collected Letters* vol. 3 114) and complained the journalistic "verbiage and 'write up' " obscured meaning for him (*Collected Letters* vol. 3 663). He described newspapers as "nothing but lies, libels, poppycock, propaganda, and pornography" (*Collected Letters* vol. 3 1178). After an inaccurate review of *Surprised by Joy*, he argued that the journalists who write such things are so intellectually muddled that "To call them liars wd. be as undeserved a compliment as to say that a dog was bad at arithmetic" (*Collected Letters* vol. 3 702). Carpenter, in an account of an imaginary or ideal Inklings meeting (compiled and adapted from various sources not specifically cited), has Lewis say (113):

> I deplore *journalism*—I can't abide the journalist's air of being a specialist in everything, and of taking in all points of view and of always being on the side of the angels. And I hate the *triviality* of journalism, you know, the sort of fluttering mentality that fills up the page with one little bit about how an actress has been divorced in California, and another little bit about how a train was derailed in France, and another about the birth of quadruplets in New Zealand. […] It might be [irresponsible not to read war news], if the news was in any way *accurate*, or if I was qualified to interpret it. But instead here am I, without any military knowledge, being asked to read an account of the fighting that was distorted before it reached the Divisional general, and was further distorted before it left him, and then was "written up" out of all recognition by a journalist, and which will be contradicted next day anyway […]

"Do not think," said Ransom, "that for me either it is child's play to meet those who will come down for your[a] empowering."

"Sir," faltered Merlin, "you have been in Heaven. I am but a man. I am not the son of one of the Airish Men. That was a lying story. How can I? . . . You are not as I. You have looked upon their faces before." *Logres*

"Not on all of them," said Ransom. "Greater spirits than Malacandra and Perelandra will descend this time. We are in God's hands. It may unmake us both. There is no promise that either you or I will save our lives or our reason. I do not know how we can dare to look upon their faces; but I know we cannot dare to look upon God's if we refuse this enterprise."

Suddenly the magician smote his hand upon his knee.

"*Mehercule!*"[b] he cried. "Are we not going too[c] fast? If you are the Pendragon, I am ① the High Council of Logres, and I will counsel[d] you. If the Powers must tear me in pieces to break our enemies, God's will be done. But is it yet come to that? This Saxon king of ② yours who sits at Windsor, now—is[e] there no help in him?"

"He has no power in this matter."

"Then is he not weak enough to be overthrown?"

"I have no wish to overthrow him. He is the king. He was crowned and anointed by the Archbishop. In the order of Logres I may be Pendragon, but in the order of Britain I am the King's man."

"Is it, then,[f] his great men—the counts and legates and bishops—who do the evil and he does not know of it?"

"It is—though they are not exactly the sort of great men you have in mind."

"And are we not big enough to meet them in plain battle?"

"We are four men, some women, and a bear."

"I saw the time when Logres was only myself and one man and two boys, and one ③ of those was a churl. Yet we conquered."

"It could not be done now. They have an engine called the Press whereby the ④ people are deceived. We should die without even being heard of."

"But what of the true clerks? Is there no help in them? It cannot be that *all* your priests and bishops are corrupted."

---

[a] your] *A*; you *BM*
☛ A corrects an error in B, strangely shared by M. Correction noted by Lake (57).
[b] "*Mehercule!*"] *MA*; *'Mehercule!*" *B*
☛ B mistakenly has a single opening quotation.
[c] too] *BA*; to *M*
☛ An obvious compositor's error in M.
[d] counsel] *M*; council *B*
☛ The *NED* does not have "council" as a verb.
[e] now—is] *BA*; now. Is *M*
[f] it, then,] *BA*; it then *M*

① *Neustria or Ireland or Benwick*

During the sixth to eighth centuries, Neustria was the western kingdom of the Franks, an area bounded roughly by the Loire and Meuse rivers and the English Channel. Benwick is the realm of King Ban (father of Sir Lancelot) "beyond the sea" (Malory, *Morte* I ch. 10)—possibly part of Britanny. Merlin is asking Ransom if help can be found in nearby, although overseas, Christian countries.

② *him whose office […] the Emperor*

This elevated view seems to owe more to Charles Williams' *Taliessin Through Logres* than to the historical, warring Emperors of the fifth century: see "The Inklings" (Introduction 3 xcii).

"The Faith itself is torn in pieces since your day and speaks with a divided voice. Even if it were made whole, the Christians are but a tenth part of the people. There is no help there."

"Then let us seek help from over sea. Is there no Christian prince in Neustria or Ireland or Benwick who would come in and cleanse Britain if he were called?" ①

"There is no Christian prince left. These other countries are even as Britain, or else sunk deeper still in the disease."

"Then we must go higher. We must go to him whose office it is to put down tyrants and give life to dying kingdoms. We must call on the Emperor." ②

"There is no Emperor."

"No Emperor . . ." began Merlin, and then his voice died away. He sat still for some minutes wrestling with a world which he had never envisaged. Presently he said, "A thought comes into my mind and I do not know whether it is good or evil. But because I am the High Council of Logres I will not hide it from you. This is a cold age in which I have awaked. If all this west[a] part of the world is apostate, might it not be lawful, in our great need, to look further . . . beyond Christendom? Should we not find some even among the heathen who are not wholly corrupt? There were tales in my day of some such: men who knew not the articles of our most holy Faith but who worshipped God as they could and acknowledged the Law of Nature. Sir, I believe it would be lawful to seek help even there—beyond[b] Byzantium. It was rumoured also that there was knowledge in those lands—an Eastern circle and wisdom that came east[c] from Númenor.[d] I know not where—Babylon, Arabia, or Cathay. You said your ships had sailed all round the earth, above and beneath."

Ransom shook his head. "You do not understand," he said. "The poison was brewed in these West lands but it has spat itself everywhere by now. However far you went you would find the machines, the crowded cities, the empty thrones, the false writings, the barren beds: men maddened with false promises and soured with true miseries, worshipping the iron works of their own hands, cut off from Earth their mother and from the Father in Heaven. You might go East so far that East became West and you returned to Britain across the great Ocean, but even so you would not have come out anywhere into the light. The shadow of one dark wing is over all Tellus."

---

[a] west] *BA*; West *M*
[b] there—beyond] *BA*; there. Beyond *M*
[c] east] *ed.*; West *BM*
☛ It is impossible to move west from the "true West": presumably the strong association of Númenor with the West accounts for this error. I use the lower case following B & A's usual practice (see note 311[a]).
[d] Númenor.] *ed.*; Numinor *BM*
☛ See note 6[a].

"Is it, then,[a] the end?" asked Merlin.

"And this," said Ransom, ignoring the question, "is why we have no way left at all save the one I have told you.[b] The Hideous Strength holds all this Earth in its fist to squeeze as it wishes. But for their one mistake, there would be no hope left. If of their own evil will they had not broken the frontier and let in the celestial Powers, this would be their moment of victory. Their own strength has betrayed them. They have gone to the gods who would not have come to them, and pulled down Deep Heaven on their heads. Therefore[c] they will die. For though you search every cranny to escape, now that you see all crannies closed, you will not disobey me."

And then, very slowly[d], there crept back into Merlin's white face, first closing his dismayed mouth and finally gleaming in his eyes, that almost animal expression, earthy and healthy and with a glint of half-humorous cunning.

"Well," he said, "if the earths[e] are stopped[f] the fox faces the hounds. But had I known who you were at our first meeting[g] I think I would have put the sleep on you as I did on your Fool."

"I am a very light sleeper since I have travelled in the Heavens," said Ransom.

---

[a] it, then,] *BA*; it then *M*
[b] you.] *BA*; you, *M*
☛ Obvious punctuation error in M.
[c] Therefore] *BA*; Therefore, *M*
[d] slowly] *BM*; Slowly *A*
[e] earths] *BA*; Earths *M*
☛ M usually capitalises "Earth" as the name of our planet, and here M's compositor has applied the convention inappropriately.
[f] stopped] *BA*; stopped, *M*
[g] meeting] *BA*; meeting, *M*

① *"Real Life Is Meeting"*

The title of this chapter, marked by quotation marks, is also the title of a book by J.H. Oldham and others: see Preliminary Note A: "Men Without Chests", especially p. cxiii–cxiv.

The second paper in the collection ("All Real Life Is Meeting") makes the point that reality exists only in the right interaction between persons. This is the lesson that Jane, who has always avoided and feared getting involved (see Preliminary Note C: "The Inner Ring"), who has even held back in her commitment to her husband, begins to learn through an inescapable encounter in this chapter (II, V, VI). This leads to her conversion to Christianity, and her acceptance that her relationship with Mark needs to be put right.

② *Waddington […] a general characteristic of biological entities.*

C.H. Waddington asserts in "The Relations between Science and Ethics" (1942): "existence is its own justification" (14) and "Do we need some external criterion to decide what is the 'good' direction of evolution, or is that implicit in the society? […N]o criterion external to the natural world is required. An existence which is essentially evolutionary is itself the justification for an evolution towards a more comprehensive existence" (17). The starting point of Waddington's discussion is that ethical systems are merely extensions of psychological or social systems: he asks, "Granted that the propositions of ethics are derived from experience, does that experience teach us more than techniques which lead to pleasurable results, and do we still need to invoke some non-experimental criterion to judge, not what gives us pleasure, but what *is* pleasurable or good and what bad?" (13–14). This is a view that Lewis refutes in *Abolition of Man* and *That Hideous Strength* (see Preliminary Note A: "Men Without Chests") and parodies in "Evolutionary Hymn" (*Collected Poems* 69–70).

③ *Huxley himself […] the emotion disappears.*

T.H. Huxley's Romanes lecture of 1893 was entitled "Evolution and Ethics"(Huxley & Huxley 60–102); his grandson Julian delivered the Romanes lecture of 1943, entitled "Evolutionary Ethics" (Huxley & Huxley 103–52). The reference here is to T.H. Huxley's lecture (182), and the reference is adopted from Waddington (18–19), who dismisses as "Victorian" Huxley's argument that "goodness or virtue […] involves a course of conduct […] opposed to that which leads to success in the cosmic struggle for existence" (82). Waddington writes, "To us, that method [of the cosmic process] is one which, among animals, turns on the actuarial expectation of female offspring from different female individuals, a concept as unemotional as a definite integral; and we can recognize that quite other, though equally natural, methods of evolution may occur when it is societies and not individuals which are in question" (18). This being the case, he argues, "we must accept the direction of evolution as good simply because it *is* good according to any realist definition of that concept" (19). (See Preliminary Note A: "Men Without Chests".)

In the last month of his life, when he was not well enough to accept, Lewis was invited to deliver the Romanes Lecture: his brother, who was acting as his secretary, recalls: "An expression of sadness passed over his face and for a moment there was silence—then, 'Send them a very polite refusal,' he said" (cited in Green & Hooper 431 & *Collected Letters* vol. 3 1484).

FOURTEEN

"Real Life Is Meeting" ①

I

SINCE the day and night of the outer world made no difference in Mark's cell, he did not know whether it was minutes or hours later that he found himself once more awake, once more confronting Frost, and still fasting. The Professor came to ask if he had thought over their recent conversation. Mark, who judged that some decent show of reluctance would make his final surrender more convincing, replied that only one thing was still troubling him. He[a] did not quite understand what he[b] in particular or humanity in general stood to gain by co-operation with the Macrobes. He saw clearly that the motives on which most men act, and which they dignify by the names of patriotism or duty to humanity, were mere products of the animal organism, varying according to the behaviour pattern of different communities. But he did not yet see what was to be substituted for these irrational motives. On what ground henceforward were actions to be justified or condemned?

"If one insists on putting the question in those terms," said Frost," I think Waddington has given the best answer. Existence is its own justification. The ② tendency to developmental change which we call Evolution is justified by the fact that it is a general characteristic of biological entities. The present establishment of contact between the highest biological entities and the Macrobes is justified by the fact that it is occurring, and it ought to be increased because an increase is taking place."

"You think, then," said Mark, "that there would be no sense in asking whether the general tendency of the universe might be in the direction we should call Bad?"

"There could be no sense at all," said Frost. "The judgement you are trying to make turns out on inspection to be simply an expression of emotion. Huxley ③ himself[c] could only express it by using nakedly emotive terms such as 'gladiatorial' or 'ruthless.'[d] I am referring to the famous Romanes[e] lecture. When the so-called

---

[a] He] *BM*; he *A*
[b] he] *BM*; one *A*
[c] himself] *B*; himself, *M*
[d] 'gladiatorial' or 'ruthless.'] *B*; "gladiatorial" or "ruthless." *M*
[e] Romanes] *M*; *Romanes B*
☛ There seems no reason why a lecture series named after a person should be italicised.

① *a means-and-end pattern […] but its by-products.*

Like Waddington dismissing Huxley's ethical stance as "Victorian" above, Frost is engaging in the "chronological snobbery"—"the uncritical acceptance of the intellectual climate common to our own age and the assumption that whatever has gone out of date is on that count discredited" (*Surprised by Joy* 167)—that Lewis deplored. Certainly Aristotle was the great exponent of the different kinds of causes, and Frost is maintaining that action is self-justifying and needs no causes. But Aristotle is neither proved nor disproved by the fact that he lived in "an iron-age, agricultural community", and Frost presents this as a complete reason for dismissing him.

② *your action will become much more efficient*

Waddington's assumption that there are "no ulterior criteria of value" (14) causes him to use purportedly neutral adjectives and adjectival phrases such as "comprehensive" (17), "pleasurable" (14), "more powerfully energized" (14) and "effective" (18) instead of "good", and "at variance with the cosmic process" (18) instead of "bad". Frost thus uses "efficient" as a term of approbation.

struggle for existence is seen simply as an actuarial theorem we have, in Waddington's words, 'a concept as unemotional as a definite integral'[a] and the emotion disappears. With it disappears that preposterous idea of an external standard of value which the emotion produced."

"And the actual tendency of events," said Mark, "would still be self-justified and in that sense 'good' when it was working for the extinction of all organic life, as it presently will?"

"Of course," replied Frost. "If[b] you insist on formulating the problem in those terms. In reality the[c] question is[d] meaningless. It presupposes[e] a means-and- ①
end pattern of thought which descends from Aristotle,[f] who in his turn was merely hypostatising elements in the experience of an iron-age,[g] agricultural community. Motives are not the causes of action but its by-products. You are merely wasting your time by considering them. When you have attained real objectivity you will recognise[h] not *some* motives[i] but *all* motives as merely animal, subjective epiphenomena. You will then have no motives and you will find that you do not need them. Their place will be supplied by something else which you will presently understand better than you do now. So far from being impoverished your action will ②
become much more efficient."

"I see," said Mark. The philosophy which Frost was expounding was by no means unfamiliar to him. He recognised it at once as the logical conclusion of thoughts which he had always hitherto accepted and which at this moment he found himself irrevocably rejecting. The knowledge that his own assumptions led to Frost's position combined with what he saw in Frost's face and what he had experienced in this very cell, effected a complete conversion. All the philosophers and evangelists in the world might not have done the job so neatly.

"And that," continued Frost, "is why a systematic training in objectivity must be given to you. Its purpose is to eliminate from your mind one by one the things you have hitherto regarded as grounds for action. It is like killing a nerve. That whole system of instinctive preferences, whatever ethical, aesthetic,[j] or logical

---

[a] ' a concept […] integral'] *B*; "a concept […] integral" *M*
[b] Frost. "If] *B*; Frost, "if *M*
[c] the] *BM*; The *A*
[d] question is] *BM*; question," said Frost," is *A*
[e] presupposes] *BM*; pre-supposes *A*
☛ Elsewhere A does not have a hyphen (see note 272[e]).
[f] Aristotle,] *MA*; Aristotle *B*
[g] iron-age,] *BA*; iron-age *M*
[h] recognise] *BA*; recognize, *M*
☛ Inadvertent American spelling in M (see *Webster's*).
[i] motives] *B*; motives, *M*
[j] aesthetic,] *BA*; æsthetic *M*

disguise they wear, is to be simply destroyed."

"I get the idea," said Mark, though with an inward reservation that his present instinctive desire to batter the Professor's face into a jelly would take a good deal of destroying.

After that Frost took Mark from the cell and gave him a meal in some neighbouring room. It also was lit by artificial light and had no window. The Professor stood perfectly still and watched him while he ate. Mark did not know what the food was and did not much like it, but he was far too hungry by now to refuse it if refusal had been possible. When the meal was over Frost led him to the ante-room of the Head and once more he was stripped and re-clothed in surgeon's overalls and a mask. Then he was brought in, into the presence of the gaping and dribbling Head. To his surprise[a] Frost took not the slightest notice of it. He led him across the room to a narrower[b] little door with a pointed arch, in the far wall.[c]

Here he paused and said, "Go in. You will speak to no one of what you find here. I will return presently." Then he opened the door and Mark went in.

The room, at first sight, was an anti-climax.[d] It appeared to be an empty committee room with a long table, eight or nine chairs, some pictures, and (oddly enough) a large step-ladder[e] in one corner. Here also there[f] were no windows; it was lit by an electric light which produced, better than Mark had ever seen it produced before, the illusion of daylight—of a cold, grey place out of doors. This, combined with the absence of a fireplace, made it seem chilly though the temperature was not in fact very low.

A man of trained sensibility would have seen at once that the room was ill proportioned,[g] not grotesquely so[h] but sufficiently to produce dislike. It was too high and too narrow. Mark felt the effect without analysing the cause,[i] and the effect grew on him as time passed. Sitting staring about him,[j] he next noticed the door—and thought at first that he was the victim of some optical illusion. It took him quite a long time to prove to himself that he was not. The point of the arch was not in the centre;[k] the whole thing was lopsided.[l] Once again, the error was not

---

[a] surprise] *B*; surprise, *M*
[b] a narrower] *BM*; an arched *A*
[c] wall. ¶] *A*; wall. *BM*
[d] anti-climax.] *A*; anticlimax. *BM*
[e] step-ladder] *BA*; step-/ladder *M*
[f] there] *BM*; There *A*
[g] ill proportioned,] *BA*; ill-proportioned *M*
[h] so] *B*; so, *M*
[i] cause,] *A*; cause *BM*
[j] him,] *A*; him *BM*
[k] centre;] *BA*; centre: *M*
[l] lopsided.] *A*; lop-sided *BM*

gross. The thing was near enough to the true to deceive you for a moment and to go on teasing the mind even after the deception had been unmasked. Involuntarily one kept on shifting the head to find positions from which it would look right after all. He turned round and sat with his back to it . . . one mustn't let it become an obsession.

Then he noticed the spots on the ceiling.[a] They were not mere specks of dirt or discoloration. They were deliberately painted on: little round black spots placed at irregular intervals on the pale mustard-coloured surface. There were not a great many of them: perhaps thirty . . . or was it a hundred? He determined that he would not fall into the trap of trying to count them. They would be hard to count, they were so irregularly placed. Or weren't they? Now that his eyes were growing used to them (and one couldn't help noticing that there were five in that little group to the right), their arrangement seemed to hover on the verge of regularity. They suggested some kind of pattern. Their peculiar ugliness consisted in the very fact that they kept on suggesting it and then frustrating the expectation thus aroused. Suddenly he[b] realised that this was another trap. He fixed his eyes on the table.[c]

There were spots on the table, too—white ones: shiny white spots, not quite round, and arranged, apparently, to correspond to the spots on the ceiling. Or were they? No, of course not . . . ah, now he had it! The pattern (if you could call it a pattern) on the table was an exact reversal of that on the ceiling. But with certain exceptions. He found he was glancing rapidly from the one to the other, trying to puzzle it out. For the third time he checked himself. He got up and began to walk about. He had a look at the pictures.

Some of them belonged to a school of art with which he was already familiar. There was a portrait of a young woman who held her mouth wide open to reveal the fact that the inside of it was thickly overgrown with hair. It was very skilfully painted in the photographic manner so that you could almost feel that hair; indeed you could not avoid feeling it however hard you tried. There was a giant mantis playing a fiddle while being eaten by another mantis, and a man with corkscrews instead of arms bathing in a flat, sadly coloured sea beneath a summer sunset. But most of the pictures were not of this kind. At first sight[d] most of them seemed rather ordinary, though Mark was a little surprised at the predominance of scriptural themes. It was only at the second or third glance that one discovered certain unaccountable

[a] ceiling.] *BM*; ceiling; *A*
[b] he] *BM*; He *A*
[c] table. ¶] *BM*; table. *A*
[d] sight] *B*; sight, *M*

① *"things of that extreme evil which seems innocent to the uninitiate"*

In *The Everlasting Man* (1925), Chesterton writes that interaction with demons "produces things of which it is better not to speak. Some of them indeed might almost be named without being known; for they are of that extreme evil which seems innocent to the innocent. They are too inhuman even to be indecent" (141). One wonders where Mark, the "modern" sociologist and materialist might have read *The Everlasting Man*, but I think we can take the transmutation of "innocent" to "uninitiate" as indicative of Mark's characteristic preoccupation with belonging and admission to groups of insiders.

② *the asceticism of anti-nature*

The embracing of nature that occurs at St. Anne's—the refuge it has offered to animals as well as humans—enables the humans to become as they "ought to be—between the angels who are [their] elder brothers and the beasts who are [their] jesters, servants and playfellows" (ch. 17 VI 405; see also "Human Being" in Introduction 4). At the N.I.C.E., the repudiation of nature that is inculcated will lead to the humans becoming less than human, not transcending nature but becoming sub-natural.

details—something odd about the positions of the figures' feet or the arrangement of their fingers or the grouping. And who[a] was the person standing between the Christ and the Lazarus? And why were there so many beetles under the table in the Last Supper? What was the curious trick of lighting that made each picture look like something seen in delirium? When once these questions had been raised the apparent ordinariness of the pictures became their supreme menace—like the ominous surface innocence at the beginning of certain dreams. Every fold of drapery, every piece of architecture, had a meaning one could not grasp but which withered the mind. Compared with these the other, surrealistic, pictures were mere foolery. Long ago Mark had read somewhere of "things of that extreme evil which ① seems[b] innocent to the uninitiate," and had wondered what sort of things they might be. Now he felt he knew.

He turned his back on the pictures and sat down. He understood the whole business now. Frost was not trying to make him insane; at least not in the sense Mark had hitherto given to the word "insanity." Frost had meant what he said. To sit in the room was the first step towards what Frost called objectivity—the process whereby all specifically human reactions were killed in a man so that he might become fit for the fastidious society of the Macrobes. Higher degrees in the ② asceticism of anti-nature[c] would doubtless follow: the eating of abominable food, the dabbling in dirt and blood, the ritual performances of calculated obscenities. They were, in a sense, playing quite fair with him—offering him the very same initiation through which they themselves had passed and which had divided them from humanity, distending and dissipating Wither into a shapeless ruin while it condensed and sharpened Frost into the hard, bright, little needle that he now was.

But after[d] an hour or so this long, high coffin of a room began to produce on Mark an effect which his instructor had probably not anticipated. There was no return of the attack which he had suffered last night in the cell. Whether because he had already survived that attack, or because the imminence of death had drawn the tooth of his lifelong desire for the esoteric, or because he had (in a fashion) called very urgently for help, the built and painted perversity of this room had the effect of making him aware, as he had never been aware before, of this room's opposite. As the desert first teaches men to love water, or as absence first reveals affection, there rose up against this background of the sour and the crooked some kind of vision of

---

[a] who] *BM*; Who *A*

[b] seems] *B*; seem *M*

☛ M's "seem" agrees in number with "things", and B's "seems" with "evil". B's reading provides a more accurate rendition of the half-remembered quotation (see note 1 on the facing page).

[c] anti-nature] *BA*; anti-Nature *M*

[d] after] *BM*; After *A*

① *the "Normal" […] or fall in love with.*

See n. 1 facing p. 329 below.

② *He was not thinking […] his first deeply moral experience.*

Screwtape recommends that encouraging a human to think about his virtues is the best way of deflecting him from exercising virtues to profitless self-absorption (*Screwtape Letters* 31, 62–63). Mark's unselfconsciousness here is thus spiritually healthy.

the sweet and the straight. Something else—something he vaguely called the "Normal"—apparently existed. He had never thought about it before. But there it was—solid, massive, with a shape of its own, almost like something you could touch, or eat, or fall in love with. It was all mixed up with Jane and fried eggs and soap and sunlight and the rooks cawing at Cure Hardy and the thought that, somewhere outside, daylight was going on at that moment. He was not thinking in moral terms at all; or else (what is much the same thing) he was having his first deeply moral experience. He was choosing a side: the Normal. "All that," as he called it, was what he chose. If the scientific point of view led away from "all that," then be damned to the scientific point of view! The vehemence of his choice almost took his breath away; he had not had such a sensation before. For the moment he hardly cared if Frost and Wither killed him. ① ②

I do not know how long this mood would have lasted: but while[a] it was still at its height Frost returned. He led Mark to a bedroom where a fire blazed and an old man lay in bed. The light gleaming[b] on glasses and silver[c] and the soft luxury of the room so raised Mark's spirits that he found it difficult to listen while Frost told him that he must remain here on duty till relieved and must ring up the Deputy Director if the patient spoke or stirred. He himself was to say nothing; indeed it would be useless if he did, for[d] the patient did not understand English.

Frost retired. Mark glanced round the room. He was reckless now. He saw no possibility of leaving Belbury alive unless he allowed himself to be made into a dehumanised servant of the Macrobes. Meanwhile, do[e] or die for it, he was going to have a meal. There were all sorts of delights on that table. Perhaps a smoke first, with his feet on the fender.

"Damn!" he said as he put his hand into his pocket and found it empty. At the same moment he noticed that the man in the bed had opened his eyes and was looking at him. "I'm sorry," said Mark, "I didn't mean——"[f] and then stopped.

The man sat up in bed and jerked his head towards the door.

"Ah?" he said enquiringly.

"I beg your pardon," said Mark.

"Ah?" said the man again. And then, "Foreigners, eh?"

"You *do* speak English, then?" said Mark.

"Ah!" said the man. After a pause of several seconds he said, "Guv'ner!" Mark

---

[a] while] *BM*; While *A*
[b] gleaming] *BM*; gleamed *A*
[c] silver] *BM*; silver, *A*
[d] , for] *BA*; for *M*
[e] do] *BM*; Do *A*
[f] mean——"] *BA*; mean—" *M*

① *sixteenth-century epithalamions*

Perhaps the best-known of sixteenth-century marriage poems is Spenser's "Epithalamion" of 1595 (*Poetical Works* 579–84). It contains everything Jane thinks of: superstitions, omens and fairies (l. 334–71); merriment and wine (74–91, 110–47, 242–60); the groom's impatience (278–333) and the bride's blushing (147–66, 223–41); sex and procreation (372–426).

② *the permitted salacities of Fescennine song*

Part of a Roman wedding celebration was the singing of indecent songs known as "Fescennine". Catullus tells us in an epithalamion:

ne diu taceat procax	Let not be silent long
Fescinnina iocatio […]	the merry Fescennine jesting
	(*Poems* 61 126–27)

looked at him. "Guv'ner," repeated the patient with great energy, "you ha'nt got such a thing as a bit of baccy about you? Ah?"

II

"I think that's all we can do for the present," said Mother Dimble. "We'll do the flowers this afternoon." She was speaking to Jane,[a] and both were in what was called the Lodge—a little stone house beside the garden door at which Jane had been first admitted to the Manor. Mrs. Dimble and Jane had been preparing it for the Maggs family. For Mr. Maggs's[b] sentence expired to-day and Ivy had gone off by train on the previous afternoon to spend the night with an aunt in the town where he was imprisoned and to meet him at the prison gates.

When Mrs. Dimble had told her husband how she would be engaged that morning,[c] he had said, "Well, it can't take you very long just lighting a fire and making a bed." I share Dr. Dimble's sex and his limitation. I have no idea what the two women found to do in the Lodge for all the hours they spent there. Even Jane had hardly anticipated it. In Mrs. Dimble's hands the task of airing the little house and making the bed for Ivy Maggs and her jail-bird husband became something between a game and a ritual. It woke in Jane vague memories of helping at Christmas or Easter decorations in church when she had been a small child. But it also suggested to her literary memory all sorts of things out of sixteenth-century[d] ① epithalamions[e]—age-old superstitions, jokes, and sentimentalities about bridal beds and marriage bowers, with omens at the threshold and fairies upon the hearth. It was an atmosphere extraordinarily alien to that in which she had grown up. A few weeks ago she would have disliked it. Was there not something absurd about that stiff, twinkling archaic world—the mixture of prudery and sensuality, the stylised ardours of the groom and the conventional bashfulness of the bride, the religious sanction, the permitted salacities of Fescennine[f] song, and the suggestion that ② everyone except the principals might be expected to be rather tipsy? How had the

Lewis as Character

[a] Jane,] *A*; Jane *BM*
[b] Maggs's] *BA*; Magg's *M*
☛ The possessive of "Maggs" can be B & A's "Maggs's" or "Maggs' ", but M's "Magg's" is the possessive of "Magg".
[c] morning,] *B*; morning *M*
[d] sixteenth-century] *B*; sixteenth century *A*; Sixteenth-Century *M*
☛ On the next page, A agrees with B and M in hyphenating "nineteenth-century" to form compound adjective.
[e] epithalamions] *BA*; epithalamiums *M*
☛ The *NED* has "Epithalamium" as the headword but also gives B & A's spelling—which is the spelling used in the first quotation it gives, from Lewis's admired Spenser.
[f] Fescennine] *M*; fescennine *B*
☛ Although the *NED* has B's usage in quotations, it uses the phrase "*Fescennine verses*" with a capital.

human race ever come to imprison in such a ceremony the most unceremonious thing in the world? But she was no longer sure of her reaction. What she was sure of was the dividing line that included Mother Dimble in that world and left her outside. Mother Dimble, for all her nineteenth-century[a] propriety, or perhaps because of it, struck her this afternoon as being herself an archaic person. At every moment she seemed to join hands with some solemn yet roguish company of busy old women who had been tucking young lovers into beds since the world began with an incongruous mixture of nods and winks and blessings and tears—quite impossible old women in ruffs or wimples who would be making Shakespearean jokes about codpieces and cuckoldry at one moment and kneeling devoutly at altars the next. It was very odd:[b] for, of course, as far as their conversation was concerned the difference between them was reversed. Jane, in a literary argument, could have talked about codpieces with great *sang-froid*,[c] while Mother Dimble was an Edwardian lady who would simply have ignored such a subject out of existence if any modernised[d] booby had been so unfortunate as to raise it in her presence. Perhaps the weather had some bearing on Jane's curious sensations. The frost had ended and it was one of those days of almost piercingly sweet mildness which sometimes occur in the very beginning[e] of winter.

Ivy had discussed her own story with Jane only the day before. Mr. Maggs had stolen some money from the laundry that he worked for. He had done this before he met Ivy and at a time when he had got into bad company. Since he and Ivy had started going out together he had gone "as straight as straight"; but the little crime had been unearthed and come out of the past to catch him, and he had been arrested about six weeks after their marriage. Jane had said very little during the telling of this story. Ivy had not seemed conscious of the purely social stigma attaching to petty theft and a term of imprisonment, so that Jane would have had no opportunity to practise,[f] even if she had wished, that almost technical "kindness" which some people reserve for the sorrows of the poor. On the other hand,[g] she was given no chance to be revolutionary or speculative—to suggest that

---

[a] nineteenth-century] *BA*; Nineteenth-Century *M*

[b] odd:] *B*; odd; *M*

[c] *sang-froid*,] *ed.* sang-froid, *B*; *sang froid*, *M*

☛ Fowler lists this as a French word, thus M's italics font is correct, but spells it with B's hyphen ("FRENCH WORDS", "ITALICS").

[d] modernised] *B*; modernized *M*

☛ Inadvertent American spelling in M (see *Webster's*, "Modernize").

[e] very beginning] *M*; beginning *B*

☛ It seems more likely that "very" should be accidentally deleted than that M should add it.

[f] practise,] *BA*; practice *M*

☛ Inadvertent American spelling in M (*Webster's* argues under "Practise, *v.t.* & *i.*" that the noun and the verb are pronounced the same and therefore should both be spelled with a *-c-*).

[g] hand,] *MA*; hand *B*

① *Jane*

Ivy Maggs calls Jane "Mrs. Studdock" up to this point, and this happens to be the last time she addresses Jane directly by name in the novel. Perhaps this shows that Ivy now feels that Jane is becoming integrated into the Company, or possibly this part of her speech was originally assigned to Mother Dimble.

theft was no more criminal than all wealth was criminal. Ivy seemed to take traditional morality for granted. She had been "ever so upset" about it. It seemed to matter a great deal in one way, and not to matter at all in another. It had never occurred to her that it should alter her relations with her husband—as though theft, like ill health, were one of the normal risks one took in getting married.

"I always say, you can't expect to know everything about a boy till you're married, not really," she had said.

"I suppose not," said Jane.

"Of course it's the same for them," added Ivy. "My old dad[a] used often to say he'd never have married mum[b], not[c] if he'd known how she snored. And she said herself, 'No, dad,[d] that you wouldn't.' "[e]

"That's rather different, I suppose," said Jane.

"Well, what I say is, if it wasn't that[f] it'd be something else. That's how I look at it. And it isn't as if they hadn't a lot to put up with, too. Because they've sort of got to get married if they're the right sort, poor things, but, whatever we say, Jane, a woman takes a lot of living with. I don't mean what you'd call a bad ① woman. I remember one day—it was before you came—Mother Dimble was saying something to the Doctor; and there he was sitting reading something—you know the way he does—[g]with his fingers under some of the pages and a pencil in his hand—not the way you or I'd read—and he just said, 'Yes,[h] dear,' and we both of us knew he hadn't been listening. And I said, 'There you are, Mother Dimble,' said I, 'That's[i] how they treat us once they're married. They don't even listen to what we say,' I said. And do you know what she said? 'Ivy Maggs,' said she, 'Did[j] it ever come into your mind to ask whether anyone *could* listen to all we say?' Those were her very words. Of course I wasn't going to give in to it, not before him, so I said, 'Yes, they could.' But it was a fair knock-out. You know often I've been talking to my husband for a long time and he's looked up and asked me what I've

---

[a] dad] *B*; Dad *M*
[b] mum] *B*; Mum, *M*
[c] , not] *M*; not *B*
☛ M's comma makes Ivy's paratactic construction much easier to follow. The comma would come at the end of the line in B, and perhaps was thus easy to lose by accident.
[d] dad,] *B*; Dad, *M*
[e] wouldn't.' "] *B*; wouldn't!' " *M*
[f] that] *B*; one thing *M*
☛B's "that" is very unclear: does Ivy mean snoring or theft? But there is no reason why Ivy's speech should be perfectly balanced and clear: in fact it is more in character for it not to be. I suspect M's reading is an attempt by M's editor to tidy things up.
[g] —you […] does—] *B*; , you […] does, *M*
[h] Yes,] *B*; Yes *M*
[i] That's] *B*; that's *M*
[j] Did] *B*; did *M*

① *like going back […] the exercise book*

This simile is drawn from Lewis's first experiences as a schoolboy: he describes the teaching at the first school he attended as "lessons" like islands in "a shoreless ocean of arithmetic": the boys spent their mornings doing sums and occasionally being called up to repeat lessons (*Surprised by Joy* 28–29).

been saying and, do you know,[a] I haven't been able to remember myself!"

"Oh, that's different," said Jane. "It's when people drift apart—take up quite different opinions—join different sides.[b] . . ."

"You must be ever so anxious about Mr. Studdock," replied Ivy. "I'd never be able to sleep a wink if I were in your shoes. But the Director'll bring it all right in the end. You see if he don't."

Mrs. Dimble went back to the house presently to fetch some little nicety which would put the finishing touch[c] to the bedroom in the Lodge. Jane, feeling a little tired, knelt on the window-seat[d] and put her elbows on the sill and her chin in her hands. The sun was almost hot. The thought of going back to Mark if Mark were ever rescued from Belbury was one which her mind had long accepted; it was not horrifying to her, but flat and insipid. It was not the less so because at this moment she fully forgave him for his conjugal crime of sometimes apparently preferring her person to her conversation and sometimes his own thoughts to both. Why should anyone be particularly interested in what she said? This new humility would even have been pleasant to her if it had been directed to anyone more exciting than Mark. She must, of course, be very different with him when they met again. But it was that "again" which so took the savour out of the good resolution—like going back to a sum one had already got wrong and working it out afresh on the same scrawled page of the exercise book. "If they met again . . ." she felt guilty at her lack of anxiety. Almost at the same moment she found that she was a little anxious. For hitherto she had always somehow assumed that Mark would come back. The possibility of his death now presented itself. She had no direct emotions about herself living afterwards; she just saw the image of Mark dead, that face dead, in the middle of a pillow, that whole body rigid, those hands and arms (for good and ill so different from all other hands and arms) stretched out straight and useless like a doll's. She felt very cold. Yet the sun was hotter than ever,[e] almost impossibly hot for the time of year. It was very still, too, so still that she could hear the movements of a small bird which was hopping along the path outside the window. This path led to the door in the garden wall by which she had first entered. The bird hopped on to the threshold of that door, and on to[f] someone's foot. For now Jane saw that someone was sitting on a little seat just inside the door. This person was only a few yards away, and she must have been

[a] know,] *B*; know? *M*
[b] sides.] *B*; sides *M*
[c] finishing touch] *BA*; finishing-touch *M*
[d] window-seat] *BA*; window seat *M*
[e] ever,] *A*; ever— *BM*
[f] on to] *BA*; onto *M*

① *Some such dress Jane had seen worn by a Minoan priestess on a vase from old Cnossus.*

Cnossus (or Knossos), the site of a bronze-age (Minoan) palace on Crete, was excavated by Sir Arthur Evans for some decades from 1900, and many of the finds are held by the Ashmolean Museum in Oxford.

Jane (and Lewis) would not have seen a priestess painted on a vase: Minoan pottery features geometrical, floral or marine designs, with human and animal figures used in frescos, seals and sculpture (Myres & Forsdyke 20–21). A priestess in a dress with an open-fronted bodice could have been seen in a seal impression or a fragment of fresco, or a figurine of a priestess or goddess, such as those shown here.

Minoan Priestesses

sitting very quiet for Jane not to have noticed her.

A flame-coloured[a] robe, in which her hands were hidden, covered this person from the feet to where it rose behind her neck in a kind of high ruff-like collar, but in front it was so low or open that it exposed her large breasts. Her skin was darkish and Southern and glowing, almost the colour of honey. Some such dress Jane had seen worn by a Minoan priestess on a vase from old Cnossus. The head, poised motionless on the muscular pillar of her neck, stared straight at Jane. It was a red-cheeked, wet-lipped face, with black eyes—almost the eyes of a cow—and an enigmatic expression. It was not by ordinary standards at all like the face of Mother Dimble; but Jane recognised it at once. It was, to speak like the musicians, the full statement of that theme which had elusively haunted Mother Dimble's face for the last few hours. It was Mother Dimble's face with something left out, and the omission shocked Jane. "It is brutal," she thought, for its energy crushed her; but then she half changed her mind and thought, "It is I who am weak, trumpery." "It is mocking me," she thought, but then once more changed her mind and thought, "It is ignoring me. It doesn't see me[b]"; for though there was an almost ogreish[c] glee in the face, Jane did not seem to be invited to share the joke. She tried to look aside from the face—succeeded—and saw for the first time that there were other creatures present—four or five of them—no, more—a whole crowd of ridiculous little men: fat dwarfs in red caps with tassels on them, chubby, gnome-like little men, quite insufferably familiar, frivolous, and irrepressible. For there[d] was no doubt that they, at any rate, were mocking her.[e] They were pointing at her, nodding, mimicking, standing on their heads, turning somersaults. Jane was not yet frightened;[f] partly because the extreme warmth of the air at this open window made her feel drowsy. It was really quite ridiculous for the time of year. Her main feeling was one of indignation. A suspicion which had crossed her mind once or twice before[g] now returned to her with irresistible force;[h] the suspicion that the real universe might be simply silly. It was closely mixed up with the memories of that grown-up laughter—loud, careless, masculine laughter on the lips of bachelor uncles—which had often infuriated her in childhood, and from which the intense

① ☛ Jane's reaction to the face is unusually complex, and the narrator's description of it is correspondingly complex. Jane's thoughts are not simply reported, but rather presented in a way that suggests the process of her thinking.

[a] flame-coloured] *BA*; flame coloured *M*
[b] me] *BM*; me. *A*
[c] ogreish] *B*; ogre-ish *M*
[d] there] *BM*; There *A*
[e] her.] *BM*; her; *A*
[f] frightened;] *BA*; frightened, *M*
[g] before] *A*; before, *BM*
☛ A's comma clarifies an ambiguity: without it, it is not clear whether the suspicion "crossed her mind […] before now" or "now returned", but the comma makes it clear that "now" qualifies "returned".
[h] force;] *BA*; force— *M*

seriousness of her school debating society had offered such a grateful escape.

But a moment later she was very frightened indeed. The giantess rose. They were all coming at her. With a great glow and a noise like fire the flame-robed woman and the malapert dwarfs had all come into the house. They were in the room with her. The strange woman had a torch in her hand. It burned with terrible, blinding brightness, crackling, and sent up a cloud of dense black smoke, and filled the bedroom with a sticky, resinous smell. "If they're not careful," thought Jane, "they'll set the house on fire." But she had hardly time to think of that for her whole attention was fixed by the[a] outrageous behaviour of the little men. They began making hay of the room. In a few seconds the bed was a mere chaos, the sheets on the floor, the blankets snatched up and used by the dwarfs for tossing the fattest of their company, the pillows hurtling through the air, feathers flying everywhere. "Look out! Look out, can't you?" shouted Jane, for the giantess was beginning to touch various parts of the room with her torch. She touched a vase on the mantelpiece. Instantly there rose from it a streak of colour which Jane took for fire. She was just moving to try to put it out when she saw that the same thing had happened to a picture on the wall. And then it[b] happened faster and faster all round her. The very top-knots of the dwarfs were now on fire. But just as the terror of this became unbearable, Jane noticed that what was curling up from everything the torch had touched was not flame after all, but vegetation. Ivy and honeysuckle were growing up the legs of the bed, red roses were sprouting from the caps of the little men, and from every direction huge lilies rose to her knees and waist, shooting out their yellow tongues at her. The smells, the heat, the crowding, and the strangeness made her feel faint. It never occurred to her to think she was dreaming. People mistake dreams for visions: no-one ever mistook a vision for a dream.[c] . . .

"Jane! Jane!" said the voice of Mrs. Dimble suddenly. "What on earth is the matter?"

Jane sat up. The room was empty, but the bed had all been pulled to pieces. She had apparently been lying on the floor. She felt cold and very tired.

"What *has* happened?" repeated Mrs. Dimble.

"I don't know," said Jane.

"Are you ill, child?" asked Mother Dimble.

"I must see the Director at once," said Jane. "It's all right. Don't bother. I can get up by myself . . . really. But I'd like to see the Director at once."

---

[a] the] *BM*; The *A*
[b] it] *BM*; It *A*
[c] dream.] *B*; dream *M*

III

Mr. Bultitude's mind was as furry and as unhuman in shape as his body. He did not remember, as a man in his situation would have remembered, the provincial zoo from which he had escaped during a fire, nor[a] his first snarling and terrified arrival at the Manor, nor[a] the slow stages whereby he had learned to love and trust its inhabitants. He did not know that he loved and trusted them now. He did not know that they were people, nor that he was a bear. Indeed[b] he did not know that he existed at all: everything[c] that is represented by the words *I* and *Me* and *Thou* was absent from his mind. When Mrs. Maggs gave him a tin of golden syrup, as she did every Sunday morning, he did not recognise either a giver or a recipient. Goodness occurred and he tasted it. And that was all. Hence his[d] loves might, if you wished, be all described as cupboard loves: food and warmth, hands that caressed, voices that reassured, were their objects. But if by a cupboard love you meant something cold or calculating you would be quite misunderstanding the real quality of the beast's sensations. He was no more like a human egoist than he was like a human altruist. There was no prose in his life. The appetencies which a human mind might disdain as cupboard loves were for him quivering and ecstatic aspirations which absorbed his whole being, infinite yearnings, stabbed with the threat of tragedy and shot through with the colours of Paradise. One of our race, if plunged back for a moment in the warm, trembling, iridescent pool of that pre-Adamite consciousness, would have emerged believing that he had grasped the absolute: for the states below reason and the states above it have, by their common contrast to the life we know, a certain superficial resemblance. Sometimes there returns to us from infancy the memory of a nameless delight or terror, unattached to any delightful or dreadful thing, a potent adjective floating in a nounless void, a pure quality. At such moments we have experience of the shallows of that pool. But fathoms deeper than any memory can take us, right down in the central warmth and dimness, the bear lived all its life.

To-day[e] an unusual thing had happened to him—he had got out into the garden without being muzzled. He was always muzzled out of doors, not because

[a] nor] *BA*; not *M*
☛ Noted by Lake (55). "He did not remember […], nor […], nor […]" is preferable to "not" repeated twice more.
[b] Indeed] *BA*; Indeed, *M*
[c] everything] *BM*; Everything *A*
[d] his] *BM*; His *A*
[e] To-day] *BA*; Today *M*

there was any fear of his becoming dangerous but because of his partiality for fruit and for the sweeter kinds of vegetables. " 'Tisn't that he's not tame," as Ivy Maggs had explained to Jane Studdock, "but that he isn't honest. He wouldn't leave us a thing if we let him have the run of his teeth." But to-day[a] the precaution had been forgotten and the bear had passed a very agreeable morning investigating the turnips. Now—in the early afternoon—he had approached the garden wall. There was a chestnut tree within the wall which the bear could easily climb, and from its branches he could drop down on the far side. He was standing looking up at this tree. Mrs. Maggs would have described his state of mind by saying, "He knows perfectly well he's not allowed out of the garden." That was not how it appeared to Mr. Bultitude. He had no morals:[b] but the Director had given him certain inhibitions. A mysterious reluctance arose, a clouding of the emotional weather, when the wall was too close; but mixed with this there was an opposite impulse to get beyond that wall. He did not, of course, know why, and was incapable even of raising the question. If the pressure behind this impulse could be translated into human terms at all, it would appear as something more like a mythology than a thought. One met bees in the garden, but never found a bee-hive. The bees all went away, over the wall. And to follow bees was the obvious thing to do. I think there[c] was a sense in the bear's mind—one could hardly call it a picture—of endless green lands beyond the wall, and hives innumerable, and bees the size of sparrows, and waiting there, or else walking, trickling, oozing to meet one, something or someone stickier, sweeter, more golden than honey itself.

To-day,[d] this unrest was upon him in an unusual degree. He was missing Ivy Maggs. He did not know that there was any such person and he did not remember her as we know remembering, but there was an unspecified lack in his experience. She and the Director were, in their different ways, the two main factors in his existence. He felt, in his own fashion, the supremacy of the Director. Meetings with him were to the bear what mystical experiences are to men, for the Director had brought back with him from Venus some shadow of man's lost prerogative to ennoble beasts. In his presence Mr. Bultitude trembled on the very borders of personality, thought the unthinkable and did the impossible, was troubled and enraptured with gleams from beyond his own woolly world, and came away tired. But with Ivy he was perfectly at home—as a savage who believes in some remote High God is more at home with the little deities of wood and water. It was Ivy who

[a] to-day] *BA*; today *M*
[b] morals:] *BA*; morals; *M*
[c] there] *BM*; There *A*
[d] To-day,] *B*; Today, *M*

fed him, chased him out of forbidden places, cuffed him, and talked to him all day long. It was her firm conviction that the creature "understood every word she said." If you took this literally it was untrue; but in another sense it was not so wide of the mark. For much of Ivy's conversation was the expression not of thought but of feeling, and of feelings Mr. Bultitude almost shared—feelings of alacrity, snugness, and physical affection. In their own way they understood one another pretty well.

Three times Mr. Bultitude turned away from the tree and the wall, but each time he came back. Then, very cautiously and quietly, he began to climb the tree. When he got up into the fork he sat there for a long time. He saw beneath him a steep grassy bank descending to a road. The desire and the inhibition were now both very strong. He sat there for nearly half an hour. Sometimes his mind wandered from the point and once he nearly went to sleep. In the end he got down on the outside of the wall. When he found that the thing had really happened he became so frightened that he sat still at the bottom of the grassy bank on the very edge of the road. Then he heard a noise.

A motor van came into sight. It was driven by a man in the livery of the N.I.C.E.,[a] and another man in the same livery sat beside him.

"Hullo . . . I say!" said the second man. "Pull up, Sid. What about *that* ?"

"What?" said the driver.

"Haven't you got eyes in your head?" said the other.

"Gor," said Sid, pulling up. "A bloody great bear. I say—it couldn't be our own bear, could it?"

"Get on," said his mate. "She was in her cage all right this morning."

"You don't think she could have done a bunk? There'd be hell to pay for you and me. . . ."[b]

"She couldn't have got here if she *had* done a bunk. Bears don't go forty miles an hour. That ain't the point. But hadn't we better pinch this one?"

"We haven't got no orders," said Sid.

"No. And we haven't failed to get that blasted wolf either, have we?"

"Wasn't our fault. The old woman what said she'd sell wouldn't sell, as you're there to witness, young Len. We did our best. Told her that experiments at Belbury weren't what she thought. Told her the brute would have the time of its life and be made no end of a pet. Never told so many lies in one morning in my life. She'd been got at by someone."

"Course it wasn't our fault. But the boss won't take no notice of that. It's get on or get out at Belbury."

---

[a] N.I.C.E.,] *A*; N.I.C.E. *BM*
[b] me. . . ."] *BA*; me . . ." *M*

① *Then he started his engine up and they drove away.*

The *OED* quotes the B-text of *That Hideous Strength* six times (see also: 197 n. 1; 203 n. 2; 273 n. 2 & 3; 329 n. 2). This sentence is used to illustrate "start" *v.* II 23. c.

"Get out?" said Sid. "I wish to hell I knew how to."

Len spat over the side and there was a moment's silence.

"Anyway," said Sid presently, "what's the good of taking a bear back?"

"Well, isn't it better than coming back with nothing?" said Len. "And bears cost money. I know they want another one. And here it is free."

"All right," said Sid ironically, "if you're so keen on it, just hop out and ask him to step in."

"Dope," said Len.

"Not on my bit of dinner, you don't," said Sid.

Blasphemy and Swearing

"You're a bucking good mate to have," said Len, groping in a greasy parcel. "It's a good thing for you I'm not the sort of chap who'd split on you."

"You done it already," said the driver. "I know all your little games."

Len had by this time produced a thick sandwich and was dabbing[a] it with some strong-smelling[b] liquid from bottle. When it was thoroughly saturated, he opened the door and went a pace forward, still holding the door in one hand. He was now about six yards from the bear, which had remained perfectly still ever since it saw them. He threw the sandwich to it.

Quarter of an hour later Mr. Bultitude lay on his side, unconscious and breathing heavily. They had no difficulty in tying up his mouth and all four paws, but they had great difficulty in lifting him into the van.

"That's done something to my ticker," said Sid, pressing his hand to his left side.

"Curse your ticker," said Len, rubbing the sweat out of his eyes. "Come on."

Sid climbed back into the driving seat, sat still for a few seconds, panting and muttering "Christ" at intervals. Then he started his engine up and they drove away. ①

IV

For some time now Mark's waking life was[c] divided between periods by the Sleeper's bedside and periods in the room with the spotted ceiling. The training in objectivity which took place in the latter cannot be described[d] fully. The reversal of natural inclination which Frost inculcated was not spectacular or dramatic, but the details would be unprintable and had, indeed, a kind of nursery fatuity about them which is best ignored. Often Mark felt that one good roar of coarse laughter would

[a] dabbing] *BM*; dabbed *A*
[b] strong-smelling] *BA*; strong smelling *M*
[c] was] *BM*; was now *A*
[d] described] *BM*; described; *A*

① *that idea of the Straight […] surfaces he could cling to.*

Lewis's argument in *Abolition of Man* is that values are not relative and subjective. Mark's unusual situation gives him the opportunity to find for the first time that there are values that are absolute and objective.

A belief in independently existing and eternal Ideas goes back to Plato, and Lewis often does import Platonic notions into his fiction. In *Out of the Silent Planet*, Ransom is reassured as to the rationality of the *Hross* he meets when he sees that its boat "was really very like an earthly boat; only later did he set himself the question, 'What else could a boat be like?' "(ch. 9 88). In Platonic terms, boats on any planet would participate in the same Idea of a boat. In the final Narnia chronicle, *The Last Battle*, after the universe of Narnia has ended, the various characters who love Narnia find they are in a land which is like Narnia, but "More like the real thing" (ch. 15 158), and Digory explains (in the language of Plato and the Epistle to the Hebrews) that this is the reality of which the Narnia they knew was "a shadow or a copy" (ch. 15 159). He ends by muttering characteristically, "It's all in Plato" (ch. 15 160).

The language of this passage is also reminiscent of the Psalms, where God is frequently compared to a rock (18: 31, 46; 28: 1; 78: 35; 89: 26; 92:15; 95: 1)—often as a defensive fortress and a strong refuge (31: 2-3; 62: 7; 94: 22). Two Psalms also provide the picture of God providing a rock of safety "in time of trouble" (27: 5), a refuge "that is higher than" the sufferer (61: 2). The rock Mark has been given is high like a mountain, a secure and stable refuge as Frost attempts to undermine his personality.

② *Mark's less sophisticated modes of communication were almost useless.*

The *OED* quotes the B-text of *That Hideous Strength* six times (see also: 197 n. 1; 203 n. 2; 273 n. 2 & 3; 328 n. 1). This sentence is the earliest illustration provided for "sophisticated" *ppl. a.* 2. c: "Of equipment, techniques, theories, etc.: employing advanced or refined methods or concepts; highly developed or complicated".

have blown away the whole atmosphere of the thing:[a] but laughter was unhappily out of the question. There indeed lay the horror—to perform petty obscenities which a very silly child might have thought funny all under the unchangingly serious inspection of Frost, with a stop watch and a note-book[b] and all the ritual of scientific experiment. Some of the things he had to do were merely meaningless. In one exercise he had to mount the step-ladder[c] and touch some one spot on the ceiling, selected by Frost: just touch it with his forefinger and then come down again. But either by association with the other exercises or because it really concealed some significance, this proceeding always appeared to Mark to be the most indecent and even inhuman of all his tasks. And day by day, as the process went on, that idea of the Straight or the Normal which had occurred to him during ① his first visit to this room, grew stronger and more solid in his mind till it became a kind of mountain. He had never before known what an Idea meant: he had always thought till now that they were things inside one's own head. But now, when his head was continually attacked and often completely filled with the clinging corruption of the training, this Idea towered up above him—something which obviously existed quite independently of himself and had hard rock surfaces which would not give, surfaces he could cling to.

The other thing that helped to save him was the Man in the Bed. Mark's discovery that he really could speak English had led to a curious acquaintance with him. It can hardly be said that they conversed. Both spoke, but the result was hardly conversation as Mark had hitherto understood the term. The man was so very allusive and used gesture so extensively that Mark's less sophisticated modes of ② communication were almost useless. Thus when Mark explained that he had no tobacco, the man had slapped an imaginary tobacco pouch on his knee at least six times and struck an imaginary match about as often, each time jerking his head sideways with a look of such relish as Mark had seldom seen on a human face. Then Mark went on to explain that though "they" were not foreigners, they were extremely dangerous people and that probably the Stranger's best plan would be to preserve his silence.

"Ah," said the Stranger jerking his head again. "Ah. Eh?" And then, without exactly laying his finger on his lips he went through an elaborate pantomime which clearly meant the same thing. And it was impossible for a long time to get him off this subject. He went back and back to the theme of secrecy. "Ah," he said, "don't get nothing out of me. I tell 'ee. Don't get nothing out of me. Eh? I tell 'ee. You

[a] thing:] *B*; thing; *M*
[b] note-book] *BA*; note book *M*
[c] step-ladder] *B*; stepladder *M*

and me knows. Ah?" and[a] his look embraced Mark in such an apparently gleeful conspiracy that it warmed the heart.[b]

Believing this matter to be now sufficiently clear, Mark began, "But, as regards the future——"[c] only to be met by another pantomime of secrecy, followed by the word "Eh?" in a tone which demanded an answer.

"Yes, of course," said Mark. "We are both in considerable danger. And——"[d]

"Ah," said the man. "Foreigners. Eh?"

"No, no," said Mark. "I told you they weren't. They seem to think *you* are, though. And that's why——"[e]

"That's right," interrupted the man. "I know. Foreigners, I call them. I know. They get nothing out of me. You and me's all right. Ah."

"I've been trying to think out some sort of plan," said Mark.

"Ah," said the man approvingly.[f]

"And I was wondering," began Mark when the man suddenly leaned forwards and said with extraordinary energy,[g] "I tell 'ee."

"What?" said Mark.

"I got a plan."

"What is it?"

"Ah," said the man winking at Mark with infinite knowingness and rubbing his belly.

"Go on. What is it?" said Mark.

"How'd it be," said the man,[h] sitting up and applying his left thumb to his right forefinger[i] as if about to propound the first step in a philosophical argument, "How'd[j] it be now if you and I made ourselves a nice bit of toasted cheese?"

"I meant a plan for escape," said Mark.

"Ah," replied the man. "My old Dad,[k] now. He never had a day's illness in his life. Eh? How's that for a bit of all right? Eh?"

---

[a] and] *BA*; And *M*
[b] heart. ¶] *A*; heart. *BM*
[c] future——"] *A*; future—" *BM*
[d] And——"] *B*; And—" *M*
[e] why——"] *BA*; why—" *M*
[f] approvingly. ¶] *BM*; approvingly, *A*
[g] energy,] *M*; energy *B*
☛ Careful measurement suggests that this missing comma is a compositor's error in B.
[h] man,] *BM*; man. *A*
☛ A mistake on A's part: as the speech that follows in the abridgement is a continuation of the speech before.
[i] forefinger] *B*; fore-finger *M*
☛ M agrees with B's "forefinger" on p. 362.
[j] How'd] *BA*; how'd *M*
[k] Dad,] *BA*; Dad *M*

① *Mark, who […] a very authoritative article on Vagrancy*

Mark has been guilty of using reality for his own ends, of treating it as a "subject" and learning nothing from or of the reality he treats thus.

This sin is extensively depicted in *The Place of the Lion* (1931), by Lewis's friend Charles Williams: see "The Inklings" (Introduction 3).

"It's a remarkable record," said Mark.

"Ah. You may say so," replied the other. "On the road all his life. Never had a stomach-ache.[a] Eh?" and here, as if Mark might not know that malady, he went through a long and extraordinarily vivid dumb show.

"Open-air life suited him, I suppose," said Mark.

"And what did he attribute his health to?" asked the man. He pronounced the word *attribute* with great relish, laying the accent on the first syllable. "I ask everyone, what did he attribute his health to?"

Mark was about to reply when the man indicated by a gesture that the question was purely rhetorical and that he did not wish to be interrupted.

"He attributed his health," continued the speaker with great solemnity, "to eating toasted cheese. Keeps the water out of the stomach, that's what it does,[b] eh? Makes a lining. Stands to reason. Ah!"

In several later interviews Mark endeavoured to discover something of the Stranger's own history[c] and particularly how he had been brought to Belbury. This was not easy to do, for though the tramp's conversation was very autobiographical, it was filled almost entirely with accounts of conversations in which he had made stunning repartees whose points remained wholly obscure. Even where it was less intellectual in character, the allusions were too difficult for Mark, who was quite ignorant of the life of the roads though he had once written a very authoritative article on Vagrancy. But by repeated and (as he got to know his man) more cautious[d] questioning, he couldn't help getting the idea that the tramp[e] had been made to give up his clothes to a total stranger and then put to sleep. He never got the story in so many words. The tramp[f] insisted on talking as if Mark knew it already, and any pressure for a more accurate account produced only a series of nods, winks, and highly confidential gestures. As for the identity or appearance of the person who had taken his clothes, nothing whatever could be made out. The nearest Mark ever got to it, after hours of talk and deep potations, was some such statement as "Ah. He was a one!" or "He was a kind of—eh? *You* know?" or "That was a customer, that was." These statements were made with enormous gusto as though the theft of the tramp's clothes had excited his deepest admiration.

①

---

[a] stomach-ache.] *BA*; stomachache. *M*
[b] does,] *MB*; does. *A*
[c] history] *BA*; history, *M*
[d] cautious] *BA*; cautious, *M*
[e] tramp] *A*; Tramp *BM*
☛ B & M occasionally have "Tramp" but A never does.
[f] tramp] *ed.*; Tramp *BM*
☛ See previous note.

① *Mark never noticed […] that he had dreamed of.*

We are given a hint here that Mark does survive, and are also shown that Mark's enslavement to the desire to belong, to be an initiate, is lessening. See also Preliminary Note C: "The Inner Ring".

Indeed, throughout[a] the man's conversation,[b] this gusto was the most striking characteristic. He never passed any kind of moral judgement[c] on the various things that had been done to him in the course of his career,[d] nor did he ever[e] try to explain them. Much that was unjust and still more that was simply unintelligible seemed to be accepted not only without resentment[f] but with a certain satisfaction provided only that it was striking. Even about his present situation he showed very much less curiosity than Mark would have thought possible. It did not make sense, but then the man did not expect things to make sense. He deplored the absence of tobacco and regarded the "Foreigners" as very dangerous people:[g] but the main thing, obviously, was to eat and drink as much as possible while the present conditions lasted. And gradually Mark fell into line. The man's breath, and indeed his body, were malodorous, and his methods of eating were gross. But the sort of continual picnic which the two shared carried Mark back into that realm of childhood which we have all enjoyed before nicety began. Each understood perhaps an eighth part of what the other said, but a kind of intimacy grew between them. Mark never noticed until years later that here, where there was no room for vanity and no more power or security than that of "children playing in a giant's kitchen," he had unawares become a member of a "circle," as secret and as strongly fenced against outsiders as any that he had dreamed of. ①

Every now and then their *tête-à-tête*[h] was interrupted. Frost or Wither or both would come in introducing some stranger who addressed the tramp in an unknown language, failed completely to get any response, and was ushered out again. The tramp's habit of submission to the unintelligible, mixed with a kind of animal cunning, stood him in good stead during these interviews. Even without Mark's advice, it[i] would never have occurred to him to undeceive his captors by replying in English. Undeceiving was an activity wholly foreign to his mind. For the rest, his expression of tranquil indifference, varied occasionally by extremely sharp looks but never by the least sign of anxiety or bewilderment, left his interrogators mystified. Wither could never find in his face the evil he was looking

---

[a] throughout] *BM*; Throughout *A*
[b] conversation,] *A*; conversation *BM*
[c] judgement] *BA*; judgment *M*
[d] career,] *BA*; career *M*
[e] ever] *BA*; even *M*
☛ M's "even" is not impossible, but B & A's "He never […], nor did he ever" seems a much more likely construction.
[f] not only without resentment] *BA*; , not only without resentment, *M*
[g] people:] *BA*; people; *M*
[h] *tête-à-tête*] *MA*; *téte-à-téte B*
[i] it] *BM*; It *A*

① *a mythological picture by Titian*

Titian's *The Rape of Europa*, shown here, has the sense of chaotic movement and the golden-red glow that seem to be typical of much of Titian's work.

A Mythological Picture by Titian

② *I suppose […] the way one did.*

Like Mark (331 n. 1) Jane, has been treating the thinkers and artists of an earlier age merely as subjects for thought and discussion. Through her encounter with the Huge Woman, Jane is forced to acknowledge that the supernatural is not merely an attractive adornment for the paintings and writings of the Renaissance, but that that the supernatural impinges on her life and God is a reality demanding a decision from her. See my discussion of Williams' character Damaris in "The Inklings (Introduction 3 xcii–xciii).

for:[a] but neither could he find any of that virtue which would, for him, have been the danger signal. The tramp was a type of man he had never met. The dupe, the terrified victim, the toady, the would-be accomplice, the rival, the honest man with loathing and hatred in his eyes, were all familiar to him. But not this.

And then, one day, there came an interview that was different.

V

"It sounds rather like a mythological picture by Titian come to life," said the ① Director with a smile, when[b] Jane had described her experience in the lodge.

"Yes, but . . ." said Jane,[c] and then stopped. "I see," she began again, "it was very like that. Not only the woman and the . . . the dwarfs . . . but the glow. As if the air were on fire. But I always thought I liked Titian. I suppose I wasn't really ② taking the pictures seriously enough. Just chattering about 'the Renaissance' the way one did."

"You didn't like it when it came out into real life?"[d]

Jane shook her head.

"Was it real, sir?"[e] she asked presently. "Are there such things?"

"Yes," said the Director, "it was real enough. Oh, there are thousands of things within this square mile that I don't know about yet. And I dare say[f] that the presence of Merlinus brings out certain things. We are not living *exactly* in the twentieth century[g] as long as he's here. We overlap a bit; the focus is blurred. And you yourself . . . you are a seer. You were perhaps bound to meet her. She's what you'll get if you won't have the other."

"How do you mean, sir?"[e] said Jane.

"You said she was a little like Mother Dimble. So she is. But Mother Dimble with something left out. Mother Dimble is friends with all that world as Merlinus is friends with the woods and rivers. But he isn't a wood or a river himself. She has not rejected it, but she has baptized[h] it. She is a Christian wife; and you[i], you know,

---

[a] for:] *B*; for; *M*
[b] , when] *BA*; when *M*
[c] Jane,] *BA*; Jane; *M*
[d] life?"¶] *MA*; life?" *B*
[e] sir?" *BA*; Sir?" *M*
[f] dare say] *BA*; daresay *M*
[g] twentieth century] *B*; Twentieth Century *M*
[h] baptized] *BA*; baptised *M*
☛ Possibly a mistaken attempt by M's compositor to avoid a perceived American spelling: but the *NED* ("Baptize") does not have "baptise" as a contemporary spelling option.
[i] you] *BM*; You *A*

① *I'm afraid […] and yet wouldn't use forks!*

Merlin does not use forks, yet he has table manners that permit him to eat elegantly with his fingers (ch. 13 IV 298). Jane has been attempting to avoid any acceptance of the supernatural, and has now been forced to acknowledge it and to decide how to deal with it.

In ch. 9 II 195 Lewis says, "in Mark's mind hardly one rag of noble thought, either Christian or Pagan, had a secure lodging." Here again he presents Paganism and Christianity as paired alternatives, this time to the dreary ignobility of modern life and thought. This is Lewis in a Romantic mood—in the mood expressed by Wordsworth's "The World Is Too Much with Us" and in his own poem "A Cliché Came out of Its Cage".

are not. Neither[a] are you a virgin. You have put yourself where you must meet that Old Woman and you have rejected all that has happened to her since Maleldil came to Earth. So you get her raw—not stronger than Mother Dimble would find her, but untransformed, demoniac. And you don't like it. Hasn't that been the history of your life?"

"You mean," said Jane slowly, "I've been repressing something."

The Director laughed; just that loud, assured, bachelor laughter which had often infuriated her on other lips.

"Yes," he said. "But don't think I'm talking of Freudian repressions. He knew only half the facts. It isn't a question of inhibitions—inculcated shame—against natural desire. I'm afraid there's no niche in the world for people that won't ① be either Pagan or Christian. Just imagine a man who was too dainty to eat with his fingers and yet wouldn't use forks!"

His laughter rather than his words had reddened Jane's cheeks, and she was staring at him open-mouthed. Assuredly[b] the Director was not in the least like Mother Dimble:[c] but an odious realisation that he was, in this matter, on Mother Dimble's side—that he also, though he did not belong to that hot-coloured, archaic world, stood somehow in good diplomatic relations with it, from which she was excluded—had struck her like a blow. Some[d] old female dream of finding a man who "really understood" was being insulted. She took it for granted, half unconsciously,[e] that the Director was the most virginal of his sex:[f] but she had not realised that this would leave his masculinity still on the other side of the stream from herself and even steeper, more emphatic, than that of common men. Some knowledge of a world beyond nature[g] she had already gained from living in his house, and more from fear of death that night in the dingle. But[h] she had been conceiving this world as "spiritual" in the negative sense—as some neutral, or democratic, vacuum where differences disappeared, where sex and sense were not transcended but simply taken away. Now the suspicion dawned upon her that there might be differences and contrasts all the way up, richer, sharper, even fiercer, at every rung of the ascent. How if this invasion of her own being in marriage from which she had recoiled, often in the very teeth of instinct, were not, as she had supposed, merely a relic of animal life or patriarchal barbarism, but

---

[a] not. Neither] *BM*; not a Christian wife; neither *A*
[b] Assuredly] *B*; Assuredly, *M*
[c] Dimble:] *B*; Dimble; *M*
[d] Some] *BM*; Her *A*
[e] half unconsciously,] *B*; half-unconsciously, *M*
[f] sex:] *B*; sex; *M*
[g] nature] *BA*; Nature *M*
[h] But] *BM*; but *A*

① *What is above […] agree with your adversary quickly.*

In *The Four Loves*, published fifteen years after *That Hideous Strength*, Lewis again describes God in this way: he suggests that in sex the participants enact, as a kind of Pagan sacrament, the roles of Sky-Father and Earth-Mother and warns, "The Sky-Father himself is only a Pagan dream of One far greater than Zeus and far more masculine than the male" (96).

Jane's conversion has some characteristics in common with the conversion of her creator Lewis. Like Jane, Lewis before his conversion "had always wanted, above all things, "not to be 'interfered with.' " (*Surprised by Joy* 182). Like Jane, when he came to the point of conversion, he considered God his "Adversary" (*Surprised by Joy* 173, 181).

The injunction "agree with your adversary quickly" is probably ultimately a quotation from Matthew 5: 25, but the allusion, to Christ's warning to make peace with those whom one has wronged before sacrificing to God, does not seem to be more than a verbal echo.

② *Old Testament imagery of eyes and wheels*

This alludes to Ezekiel 1 and 10, in which the prophet sees heavenly creatures accompanied by wheels "full of eyes" (1: 18 & 10: 12). Lewis found this imagery interesting: when the Oyéresu Malacandra and Perelandra ask Ransom to help them choose forms in which to honour the King and Lady of Perelandra, in one of their attempts "there came rolling wheels. There was nothing but that—concentric wheels moving with a rather sickening slowness one inside the other. There was nothing terrible about them if you could get used to their appalling size, but there was also nothing significant" (*Perelandra* ch. 16 227). In a letter about his angelic creatures, Lewis acknowledged a "heavy debt to Ezekiel" (*Collected Letters* vol. 3 302): Ezekiel saw "wheels […] and their appearance and their work was as it were a wheel in the middle of a wheel" (1: 16, see also 10: 10) and "so high that they were dreadful" (1: 18). While Ransom finds nothing significant in the appearance and bids the Oyéresu try something else, Lewis found Ezekiel's imagery suggestive: he notes that God's "appearance to Ezekiel is attended with imagery that does not borrow from nature, but […] from those machines which men were to make centuries after Ezekiel's death. The prophet saw something suspiciously like a *dynamo*" (*Miracles* 119).

rather the lowest, the first, and the easiest form of some shocking contact with reality which would have to be repeated—but in ever larger and more disturbing modes—on the highest levels of all?

"Yes,"[a] said the Director, "there[b] is no escape. If it were a virginal rejection of the male, He would allow it. Such souls can by-pass[c] the male and go on to meet something far more masculine, higher up, to which they must make a yet deeper surrender. But your trouble has been what old poets called *Daungier*. We call it Pride. You are offended by the masculine itself: the loud, irruptive, possessive thing—the gold lion, the bearded bull—which breaks through hedges and scatters the little kingdom of your primness as the dwarfs scattered the carefully made bed. The male you could have escaped, for it exists only on the biological level. But the masculine none of us can escape. What is above and beyond all things is so ① masculine that we are all feminine in relation to it. You had better agree with your adversary quickly."

"You mean I shall have to become a Christian?" said Jane.

"It looks like it," said the Director.

"But—I still don't see what that had[d] to do with . . . with Mark," said Jane. This was perhaps not perfectly true. The vision of the universe which she had begun to see in the last few minutes had a curiously stormy quality about it. It was bright, darting, and overpowering. Old Testament imagery of eyes and wheels for ② the first time in her life took on some possibility of meaning. And mixed with this was the sense that she had been manœuvred[e] into a false position. It ought to have been she who was saying these things to the Christians. Hers ought to have been the vivid, perilous world brought against their grey formalised one:[f] hers the quick, vital movements and theirs the stained-glass[g] attitudes. That was the antithesis she was used to. This time, in a sudden flash of purple and crimson, she remembered what stained glass was really like. And where Mark stood in all this new world she did not know. Certainly not quite in his old place. Something which she liked to think of as the opposite of Mark had been taken away. Something civilised, or

---

[a] "Yes,"] *BM*; "No," *A*
☛ Noted by Lake (57). In the unabridged texts, Ransom's "Yes" confirms Jane's speculation that the spiritual world does encompass and enhance difference, while A's "No" denies her preceding speculation in the abridgement—that the spiritual world merely negates ordinary experience.
[b] Director, "there] *BA*; Director. "There *M*
[c] by-pass] *BA*; bypass *M*
[d] had] *B*; has *M*
☛ *Lectio difficilior*. Jane is reverting back to the question of her vision of the Terrestrial Venus ("that").
[e] manœuvred] *B*; manoeuvred *M*
[f] one:] *B*; one; *M*
[g] stained-glass] *B*; stained glass *M*

① *That is why […] they had seen the gods.*

In *Paradise Lost*, Milton equates the deities of Paganism with demons (see I 376–521). Lewis's syncretism is subtler, so that he is able to appropriate all that is good in Pagan mythology as heavenly, and to discount the brutalities and atrocities as demonic (see Introduction 4). Lewis elsewhere contrasts Saturn as "the dispossessed king of Italian legend" with Saturn as "grim old Cronos" (*Surprised by Joy* ch. 9 120). The Cretans shocked the other Greeks, for whom Zeus was the eternal lord of the Olympians, by treating him as an agricultural deity who died and was born yearly (Graves §7g):

"Κρῆτες ἀεὶ ψεῦσται·" καὶ γὰρ τὰφον, ὦ ἄνα, σεῖο	"Cretans are ever liars." Yea, a tomb, O Lord, for thee
Κρῆτες ἐτεκτήναντο· σὺ δ᾽ οὐ θάνες, ἐσσὶ γὰρ αἰεί.	the Cretans builded; but thou didst not die, for thou art for ever

(Callimachus, "Hymn to Zeus" 8–9)

② *There is even copper in the soil.*

Copper is the metal traditionally associated with Venus—because "copper is *cyprium*, the Cyprian metal; and […] Venus […]was Κύπρις, the Lady of Cyprus" (*Discarded Image* 107)—and formed in the earth by her influence (see "Planetary Powers" in Introduction 4).

modern, or scholarly, or (of late) "spiritual"[a] which did not want to possess her, which valued her for the odd collection of qualities she called "herself," something without hands that gripped and without demands upon her. But if there were no such thing? Playing for time, she asked,[b] "Who[c] was that Huge Woman?"

"I'm not sure," said the Director. "But I think I can make a guess. Did you know that all the planets are represented in each? "

"No, sir.[d] I didn't."

"Apparently they are. There is no Oyarsa in Heaven who has not got his representative on Earth. And there is no world where you could not meet a little unfallen partner of our own black Archon, a kind of other self. That is why there was an Italian Saturn as well as a heavenly one, and a Cretan Jove as well as an ① Olympian. It was these earthly wraiths of the high intelligences that men met in old times when they reported that they had seen the gods. It was with those that a man like Merlin was (at times) conversant. Nothing from beyond the Moon ever really descended. What concerns you more, there is a terrestrial as well as a celestial Venus—Perelandra's wraith as well as Perelandra."

"And you think . . . ?"

"I do: I have long known that this house is deeply under her influence. There is even copper in the soil. Also—the earth-Venus[e] will be specially active ② here at present. For it is to-night that her heavenly archtype[f] will really descend."

"I had forgotten," said Jane.

"You will not forget it once it has happened. All of you had better stay together—in the kitchen, perhaps. Do not come upstairs. To-night[g] I will bring Merlin before my masters,[h] all five of them—Viritrilbia, Perelandra, Malacandra, Glund, and Lurga. He will be opened. Powers will pass into him."

"What will he *do*, sir?"[i]

The Director laughed. "The first step is easy. The enemies at Belbury are

---

[a] "spiritual"] *M*; spiritual *B*
☛ On p. 334 Jane is described as considering her new experiences as " 'spiritual' ": the quotation marks there and here indicate how confused her understanding of Christian spirituality is at this point.
[b] asked,] *BM*; asked. *A*
☛ A's full-stop before Jane's question is clearly a mistake.
[c] "Who] *A*; ¶"Who *BM*
[d] sir.] *BA*; Sir. *M*
[e] earth-Venus] *BA*; earth Venus *M*
[f] archtype] *B*; archetype *MA*
☛ The *NED* has "Also […] arch-" under "Archetype", but Lewis uses "archtype" elsewhere (*Surprised by Joy* ch. 9 115; *Collected Letters* vol. 3 794). B's is the *lectio difficilior*, and M & A offer a very likely compositorial "correction".
[g] To-night] *BA*; Tonight *M*
[h] masters,] *BA*; Masters, *M*
[i] sir?"] *BA*; Sir?" *M*

① *'Upon them He a spirit of frenzy sent To call in haste, for their destroyer.'*

This is taken from lines at the end of Milton's *Samson Agonistes*, where the Chorus comments on God's destruction of the Philistines through Samson, whom they, in their drunken celebrations, had caused to be brought to make sport for them:

> Among them [God] a spirit of phrenzie sent,
> Who hurt their minds,
> And urg'd them on with mad desire
> To call in haste for their destroyer.
> (1675–78)

Merlin, like Samson, is God's agent and tool, expressing his repentance through obedience at the cost of his own physical destruction.

② *He's been sent on to Belbury for remedial treatment.*

This is a specific instance of the outrage that Dimble speaks of to Mark, that criminals "are being taken from the jails […] and packed off to Belbury to undergo for an indefinite period, out of reach of the law, whatever tortures and assaults on personal identity you call Remedial Treatment" (ch. 10 III 234). See also Preliminary Note F: "Humane Remedial Treatment".

already looking for experts in archaic western[a] dialects, preferably Celtic. We shall send them an interpreter! Yes, by the splendour of Christ, we will send them one. 'Upon them He a spirit of frenzy sent To[b] call in haste, for their destroyer.' They have advertised in the papers for one! And after the first step . . . well, you know, it will be easy. In fighting those who serve devils one always has this on one's side; their masters hate them as much as they hate us. The moment we disable the human pawns enough to make them useless to Hell, their own masters[c] finish the work for us. They break their tools." ①

There was a sudden knock on the door and Grace Ironwood entered.

"Ivy is back, sir,"[d] she said. "I think you'd better see her. No; she's alone. She never saw her husband. The sentence is over,[e] but they haven't released him. He's been sent on to Belbury for remedial treatment. Under some new regulation. Apparently it does not require a sentence from a court . . . but she's not very coherent. She is in great distress." ②

VI

Jane had gone into the garden to think. She accepted what the Director had said, yet it seemed to her nonsensical. His comparison between Mark's love and God's (since apparently there was a God) struck her nascent spirituality as indecent and irreverent. "Religion" ought to mean a realm in which her haunting female fear of being treated as a thing, an object of barter and desire and possession, would be set permanently at rest, and what she called her "true self" would soar upwards and expand in some freer and purer world. For still she thought that "Religion" was a kind of exhalation or a cloud of incense, something steaming up from specially gifted souls towards a receptive heaven.[f] Then, quite sharply, it occurred to her that the Director never talked about Religion, nor did the Dimbles nor Camilla. They talked about God. They had no picture in their minds of some mist steaming upward: rather of strong, skilful hands thrust down to make[g] and mend, perhaps even to destroy. Supposing one were a *thing* after all—a thing designed and invented by Someone Else and valued for qualities quite different from what one had decided to regard as one's true self? Supposing all those people who, from the

---

[a] western] *BA*; Western *M*
[b] To] *M*; to *B*
☛ *Lectio difficilior*. M's capital is justified because it introduces a new line of poetry in the quotation.
[c] masters] *B*; Masters *M*
[d] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*
[e] over,] *A*; over *BM*
[f] heaven.] *BA*; Heaven. *M*
[g] make] *BA*; make, *M*

bachelor uncles down to Mark and Mother Dimble, had infuriatingly found her sweet and fresh when she wanted them to find her also interesting and important, had all along been simply right and perceived the sort of thing she was? Supposing Maleldil on this subject agreed with them and not with her? For one moment she had a ridiculous and scorching vision of a world in which God Himself would never understand, never take her with full seriousness. Then, at one particular corner of the gooseberry patch, the change came.

What awaited her there was serious to the degree of sorrow and beyond. There was no form nor sound. The mould under the bushes, the moss on the path, and the little brick border, were not visibly changed. But they were changed. A boundary had been crossed. She had come into a world, or into a Person, or into the presence of a Person. Something expectant, patient, inexorable, met her with no veil or protection between. In the closeness of that contact she perceived at once that the Director's words had been entirely misleading. This demand which now pressed upon her was not, even by analogy, like any other demand. It was the origin of all right demands and contained them. In its light you could understand them:[a] but from them you could know nothing of it. There was nothing, and never had been anything, like this. And now there was nothing except this. Yet also, everything had been like this:[b] only by being like this had anything existed. In this heighth[c] and depth and breadth the little idea of herself which she had hitherto called *me* dropped down and vanished, unfluttering, into bottomless distance, like a bird in a space[d] without air. The name *me* was the name of a being whose existence she had never suspected, a being that did not yet fully exist but which was demanded. It was a person (not the person she had thought)[e] yet also a thing—[f]a made thing, made to please Another and in Him to please all others—[g]a thing being made at this very moment, without its choice, in a shape it had never dreamed of. And the making went on amidst a kind of splendour or sorrow or both, whereof she could not tell whether it was in the moulding hands or in the kneaded lump.

Words take too long. To be aware of all this and to know that it had already

---

[a] them:] *BA*; them; *M*
[b] this:] *BA*; this; *M*
[c] heighth] *M*; height *BA*
☛ *Lectio difficilior.*
[d] a space] *M*; space *BA*
☛ *Lectio difficilior.* Accepting M's reading also conforms with the fact that, in the trilogy, Lewis generally resists imagining space as a vacuum, rather equating it imaginatively with the ætherial realms of earlier models (see Introduction 4).
[e] thought)] *BA*; thought), *M*
[f] thing—] *BA*; thing, *M*
[g] others—] *BA*; others, *M*

gone made one single experience. It was revealed only in its departure. The largest thing that had ever happened to her had, apparently, found room for itself in a moment of time too short to be called time at all. Her hand closed on nothing but a memory, and[a] as it closed, without an instant's pause, the voices of those who have not joy rose howling and chattering from every corner of her being.

"Take care. Draw back. Keep your head. Don't commit yourself," they said. And then more subtly, from another quarter, "You have had a religious experience. This is very interesting. Not everyone does. How much better you will now understand the seventeenth-century[b] poets!" Or from a third direction, more sweetly, "Go on. Try to get it again. It will please the Director."

But her defences had been captured,[c] and these counter-attacks were unsuccessful.

[a] memory, and] *BA*; memory. And *M*
[b] seventeenth-century] *A*; Seventeenth-Century *M*; Seventeenth Century *B*
[c] captured,] *A*; captured *BM*

① *Gods*

The planetary intelligences who descend to Earth in this chapter will be seen to have been known to humanity, in distorted and incomplete ways, as the gods of various mythologies. Lewis also uses "gods" to refer to angelic beings, as opposed to mortal humans, at the end of *Screwtape Letters* (132) and *Discarded Image* (40–42, 224).

② *tingling sounds that were clearly not voices though they had articulation*

In other descriptions of human apprehension of eldila the word "tingling" is applied to their effect on human nerves (*Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 18 193, *Perelandra* ch. 16 223), and Ward shows that for Lewis the word "tingling" was associated with stars (ch. 2 6%). But "tingling" is also applicable to the sounds eldils make that are apprehensible by humans: eldil speech strikes humans as "unhuman", inorganic, high-pitched, and thrilling (*Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 13 126; ch. 18 190 & 193–94; *Perelandra* ch. 1 17 & 20). It is also described in terms suggesting it is bell-like: "continual agitation of silvery sound", "sweet", and "ringing" (*Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 17 174; ch. 18 194; ch. 19 208).

③ *Bay of Biscay gale. […] intricately structured medium.*

The Bay of Biscay, defined by the west coast of France and the north coast of Spain, is notorious for violent gales and rough seas.

The first part of Lewis's description here is based on contemporary physical knowledge about the solar system. The figures vary with date, latitude and longitude, but, relative to the sun, the earth is a "ball spinning" so that a point on its surface moves approximately 298.96 metres in a second or 1 076.24 kilometres in an hour. It is "rolling onwards" around the sun so that a point on its surface moves approximately 29 785.19 metres in a second or 107 226.68 kilometres per hour. In addition, the sun is itself in motion around the centre of the galaxy as 220 metres per second, while all bodies in the universe are speeding apart (Hay; Fredman & Kaufmann 39). Lewis was intellectually aware that these speeds must be great, and imaginatively appreciative of how they might affect a viewer privileged to apprehend them. No Biblical, Dantean or Miltonic conversation with an angel shows this awareness of physical reality, although Chesterton alludes to it in a characteristically jocular manner: "Can we think of a solemn scene of mountain stillness in which some prophet is standing in a trance, and then realize that the whole scene is whizzing round like a zoetrope at the rate of nineteen miles a second?" ("A Defence of Planets", *The Defendant* 25%). In Lewis's discussion of the Ascension a few years later, Lewis was show this same appreciation of the physical realities of our solar system, enriching his argument for the truth of spiritual realities:

> […] the spectators say they saw first a short vertical movement and then a vague luminosity (that is what "cloud" presumably means here as it certainly does in the account of the Transfiguration) and then nothing […]
>
> Movement (in any direction but one) away from the position momentarily occupied by our moving Earth will certainly be to us movement "upwards." (*Miracles* 160)

The second part of Lewis's description—"not through emptiness but through some densely inhabited and intricately structured medium"—is from the syncretic model's notion of the

FIFTEEN

The Descent of the Gods

I

ALL the[a] house at St. Anne's was empty, but for two rooms. In the kitchen, drawn a little closer than usual about the fire and with the shutters closed, sat Dimble and MacPhee and Denniston and the women. Removed from them by many a long vacancy of stair and passage, the Pendragon and Merlin were together in the Blue Room.

If anyone had gone up the stairs and onto[b] the lobby outside the Blue Room, he would have found something other than fear that barred his way—an almost physical resistance. If he had succeeded in forcing his way forward against it, he would have come into a region of tingling sounds that were clearly not voices though they had articulation:[c] and if the passage were quite dark he would probably have seen a faint light, not like fire or moon, under the Director's door. I do not think he could have reached the door itself unbidden. Already the whole house would have seemed to him to be tilting and plunging like a ship in a Bay of Biscay gale. He would have been horribly compelled to feel this earth[d] not as the base[e] of the universe but as a ball spinning[f] and rolling onwards, both at delirious speed, and not through emptiness but through some densely inhabited and intricately structured medium. He would have known sensuously, until his outraged senses forsook him, that the visitants in that room were in it[g] not because they were at rest but because they glanced and wheeled through the packed reality of heaven[h] (which men call empty space) to keep their beams upon this spot of the moving earth's[i] hide.

The Druid[j] and Ransom had begun to wait for these visitors soon after sundown. Ransom was on his sofa. Merlin sat beside him, his hands clasped, his body a little bent

① ② ③

[a] ALL the] *BA*; The whole *M*
☛ Noted by Lake (55). B & A's "ALL the house" works better with "but for two rooms" than the less formal "The whole house", which perhaps needs "except for".
[b] onto] *B*; on to *M*
[c] articulation:] *BA*; articulation; *M*
[d] earth] *BA*; Earth *M*
[e] base] *BA*; bottom; *M*
☛ Noted by Lake (55). B & A's "base" suggests "lowest or supporting part" (*NED*, "Base" *sb.*[1] I), while "bottom" primarily suggests merely "lowest surface or part" (*NED*, "Bottom" I): "base" thus reflects better our natural feeling that the planet on which we stand is the foundation and support of the universe we experience.
[f] spinning] *BA*; spinning, *M*
[g] it] *BA*; it, *M*
[h] heaven] *BA*; Heaven *M*
[i] earth's] *BA*; Earth's *M*
[j] Druid] *BA*; druid *M*

translunary realm of æther, inhabited by the lower ranks of angels as heaven is by the highest ranks, and depicted as such in illustrations (see "Plenitude of Creation" in Introduction 4).

---

① *He had at first […] our fellow-servants?*

Ransom rebukes Merlin's attempt to kneel to an eldil in the same words and for the same reason that an angel uses to rebuke St. John for attempting to worship at his feet: "See thou do it not: for I am thy fellowservant" (Rev. 22: 9).

② *A rod of coloured light, whose colour no man can name or picture*

Lewis as character in *Perelandra* apprehends an eldil as "a very faint rod or pillar of light […] I must obviously have seen it either white or coloured; but no efforts of my memory can conjure up what that colour was" (*Perelandra* ch. 1 18).

forward. Sometimes a drop of sweat trickled coldly down his grey cheek. He had at first ① addressed himself to kneel but Ransom forbade him. "See thou do it not!" he had said. "Have you forgotten that they are our fellow-servants?"[a] The windows were uncurtained, and all the light that there was in the room came thence: frosty red when they began their waiting, but later[b] star-lit.[c]

Long before anything happened in the Blue Room the party in the kitchen had made their ten-o'clock[d] tea. It was while they sat drinking it that the change occurred. Up till now they had instinctively been talking in subdued voices, as children talk in a room where their elders are busied about some august incomprehensible matter, a funeral, or the reading of a will. Now of a sudden they all began talking loudly at once, each, not contentiously but delightedly, interrupting the others. A stranger coming into the kitchen would have thought they were drunk, not soddenly but gaily drunk: would have seen heads bent close together, eyes dancing, an excited wealth of gesture. What they said, none of the party could ever afterwards remember. Dimble maintained that they had been chiefly engaged in making puns. MacPhee denied that he had ever, even that night, made a pun, but all agreed that they had been extraordinarily witty. If not plays upon words, yet certainly plays upon thoughts, paradoxes, fancies, anecdotes, theories laughingly advanced, yet, on consideration,[e] well worth taking seriously, had flowed from them and over them with dazzling prodigality. Even Ivy forgot her great sorrow. Mother Dimble always remembered Denniston and her husband as they had stood, one on each side of the fireplace, in a gay intellectual duel, each capping the other, each rising above the other, up and up, like birds or aeroplanes in combat. If only one could have remembered what they said! For never[f] in her life had she heard such talk—such eloquence, such melody (song could have added nothing to it), such toppling structures of double meaning, such sky-rockets of metaphor and allusion.

A moment after that and they were all silent. Calm fell, as suddenly as when one goes out of the wind behind a wall. They sat staring upon one another, tired and a little self-conscious.

Upstairs this first change had had a different operation. There came an instant at which both men braced themselves. Ransom gripped the side of his sofa:[g] Merlin grasped his own knees and set his teeth. A rod of coloured light, whose colour no man can name ② or picture, darted between them: no more to see than that, but seeing was the least part

---

[a] fellow-servants?"] *BA*; fellow servants?" *M*
[b] later] *MA*; later, *B*
[c] star-lit.] *BA*; lit with stars. *M*
☛ Both these descriptions are very beautiful, and it is impossible to guess why B & M differ.
[d] ten-o'clock] *A*; ten o'clock *BM*
[e] , on consideration,] *BA*; (on consideration) *M*
[f] never] *BM*; Never *A*
[g] sofa:] *BA*; sofa; *M*

① *within the very heart of language, […] Mercury and Thoth.*

Mercury (the Roman equivalent of the Greek Hermes) is, among other things, the messenger and herald of the gods. The monster Argus was slain by Hermes at the behest of Zeus. Thoth is the Egyptian god of writing and learning generally. See "Planetary Powers" (Introduction 4).

In January 1946 *Punch* published a poem by Lewis titled "The Birth of Language" (*Collected Poems* 24–25, but I quote from a more accurate rendition on the Internet: "The Birth of Language"): the poem shows clear linguistic affinities with this passage, describing interactions between "fact" and "meaning". Lewis mythically describes the influence of the sun on Mercury: it "throws […] / Intelligible virtues down" (7–8) which are transformed on Mercury to make "each a god of speech with rod / Enwreathed and sandals fledged with wings" (11–12). When ready, they leave Mercury, and, in the cold of space, are reduced,

> their meaning more,
> Their being less. Fact shrinks to truth.
>
> They reach this Earth. There each has birth
> Miraculous, a word made breath,
> Lucid and small for use in all
> Man's daily needs; but dry like death.
>
> So dim below these symbols show,
> Bony and abstract every one.
> Yet if true verse but lift the curse,
> They feel in dreams their native Sun.
> (30–40)

② *nard and cassia's balmy smells and all Arabia breathing from a box*

Lewis draws "nard and cassia's balmy smells" from Milton's description of the garden of the Hesperides, where "West winds, with musky wing / About the cerdar'n alleys fling / Nard and Cassia's balmy smels" (*Masque Presented at Ludlow Castle* 988–91). When Ransom awakes on his first morning on Perelandra, he equates Venus with the garden of the Hesperides:

> He opened his eyes and saw a strange heraldically coloured tree loaded with yellow fruits and silver leaves. Round the base of the indigo stem was coiled a small dragon covered with scales of red gold. He recognised the garden of the Hesperides at once. […] Were all the things which appeared as mythology on Earth scattered through other worlds as realities? (*Perelandra* ch. 4 49)

The reference to "all Arabia breathing from a box" is drawn from Pope's *Rape of the Lock*: "This casket India's glowing gems unlocks, / And all Arabia breathes from yonder box" (canto 1 133–34).

③ *something more subtly sweet, perhaps maddening—why not forbidden?—but she knew it was commanded*

The confusion depicted here is that of a fallen being experiencing the "enormous bliss" (Milton, *Paradise Lost* V 297) of an unfallen world. Ransom experiences this often on Perelandra:

> he was haunted, not by a feeling of guilt, but by surprise that he had no such feeling. There was an exuberance or prodigality about the mere fact of living that our race finds it difficult not to associate with forbidden and extravagant actions. (*Perelandra* ch. 3 40)

Later he experiences the feeling that something is both forbidden and commanded: "a sense of perfect duty to enter […] combined with an equal sense of trespass. […] He looked to see an angel with a flaming sword: He knew that Maleldil bade him go on" (ch. 15 222).

of their experience. Quick agitation seized them: a kind of boiling and bubbling in mind and heart which shook their bodies also. It went to a rhythm of such fierce speed that they feared their sanity must be shaken into a thousand fragments. And then it seemed that this had actually happened. But it did not matter: for all the fragments—needle-pointed desires, brisk merriments, lynx-eyed thoughts—went rolling to and fro like glittering drops and reunited themselves. It was well that both men had some knowledge of poetry. The doubling, splitting, and recombining of thoughts which now went on in them would have been unendurable for one whom that art had not already instructed in the counterpoint of the mind, the mastery of doubled and trebled vision. For Ransom, whose study had been for many years in the realm of words, it was heavenly pleasure. He found himself sitting within the very heart of language, in the white-hot furnace of ① essential speech. All fact was broken, splashed into cataracts, caught, turned inside out, kneaded, slain, and reborn as meaning. For the lord of Meaning himself, the herald, the messenger, the slayer of Argus, was with them: the angel that spins nearest the sun, Viritrilbia, whom men call Mercury and Thoth.

Down in the kitchen drowsiness stole over them after the orgy of speaking had come to an end. Jane, having nearly fallen asleep, was startled by her book falling from her hand, and looked about her. How warm it was . . . how comfortable and familiar. She had always liked wood fires,[a] but to-night[b] the smell of the logs seemed more than ordinarily sweet. She began to think it was sweeter than it could possibly be, that a smell of burning cedar or of incense pervaded the room. It thickened. Fragrant names hovered in her mind—nard and cassia's balmy smells and all Arabia breathing from a box:[c] even ② something more subtly sweet, perhaps maddening—why not forbidden?—but she knew ③ it was commanded. She was too drowsy to think deeply how this could be. The Dimbles were talking together, but in so low a voice that the rest could not hear. Their faces appeared to her transfigured. She could no longer see that they were old—only mature, like ripe fields in August, serene and golden with the tranquillity of fulfilled desire. On her other side, Arthur said something in Camilla's ear. There too . . . but as the warmth and sweetness of that rich air now fully mastered her brain, she could hardly bear to look on them: not through envy (that thought was far away)[d] but because a sort of brightness flowed from them that dazzled her, as if the god and goddess in them burned through their bodies and through their clothes and shone before her in a young double-natured nakedness of rose-red spirit that overcame her. And all about them danced (as she half

[a] fires,] *BA*; fires *M*
[b] to-night] *BA*; tonight *M*
[c] box:] *BA*; box; *M*
[d] away)] *BA*; away), *M*

① *They were afloat. A soft tingling and shivering as of foam and breaking bubbles ran over their flesh.*

When Ransom arrives on Perelandra he finds himself in the sea and swimming: it is warm; the colours are beautiful and gentle; drinking the water gives him "astonishing pleasure"; the bathing is "glorious"; it is a "delicately gorgeous world"; his first experience of swimming in the seas of Perelandra is "altogether pleasurable" (*Perelandra* ch. 3 37-38).

② *Charity, […] direct from the Third Heaven*

The charity of the Oyéresu, unsoftened by any affections, is depicted in *Perelandra* (ch. 16 229).

saw)[a] not the gross and ridiculous dwarfs which she had seen that afternoon[b] but grave and ardent spirits, bright winged, their boyish shapes smooth and slender like ivory rods.

In the Blue Room also Ransom and Merlin felt about this time that the temperature had risen. The windows, they did not see how or when, had swung open; at their opening the[c] temperature did not drop, for it was from without that the warmth came. Through the bare branches, across the ground which was once more stiffening with frost, a summer breeze was blowing into the room, but the breeze of such a summer as England never has. Laden like heavy barges that glide nearly gunwale under, laden so heavily you would have though it could not move, laden with ponderous fragrance of night-scented flowers, sticky gums, groves that drop odours, and with cool savour of midnight fruit, it stirred the curtains, it lifted a letter that lay on the table, it lifted the hair which had a moment before been plastered on Merlin's forehead. The room was rocking. They were afloat. A soft tingling and shivering as of foam and breaking ① bubbles ran over their flesh. Tears ran down Ransom's cheeks. He alone knew from what seas and what islands that breeze blew. Merlin did not:[d] but in him also the inconsolable wound with which man is born waked and ached at this touching. Low syllables of prehistoric Celtic self-pity murmured from his lips. These yearnings and fondlings were, however,[e] only the forerunners[f] of the goddess. As the whole of her virtue seized, focused,[g] and held that spot of the rolling earth[h] in her long beam, something harder, shriller, more perilously ecstatic, came out of the centre of all the softness. Both the humans trembled—Merlin because he did not know what was coming, Ransom because he knew. And now it came. It was fiery, sharp, bright,[i] and ruthless, ready to kill, ready to die, outspeeding light: it was Charity, not as mortals imagine it, not even as it has been humanised for them ② since the Incarnation of the Word, but the translunary[j] virtue, fallen upon them direct from the Third Heaven, unmitigated. They were blinded, scorched, deafened. They thought it would burn their bones. They could not bear that it should continue. They could not bear that it should cease. So Perelandra,

---

[a] saw)] *BA*; saw), *M*
[b] afternoon] *BA*; afternoon, *M*
[c] the] *BM*; but the *A*
[d] not:] *BA*; not; *M*
[e] were, however,] *BA*; were however *M*
[f] forerunners] *BA*; fore-runners *M*
[g] focused,] *BA*; focussed *M*
[h] earth] *BA*; Earth *M*
[i] bright,] *BA*; bright *M*
[j] trans-/lunary] *B*; trans-lunary *A* translunary *M*
☛ A's hyphen is probably copied from B, but in B the hyphen is there only to break the word across two lines.

① *Monchy*

On the Western Front, the Battle of Arras (9 April to 5 May 1917) included the Allies' taking of the hilltop village of Monchy-le-Preux by infantry assisted in the end by tanks on 11 April 1917 (*Encyclopædia Britannica*, "Arras, Battle of").

Lewis saw action in the Arras region in 1918, before he received the injury that kept him in hospital until the end of the war (*C&G* 122, *Collected Letters* vol. 1 363–65).

② *did ever you hear*

See 244 n. 4.

triumphant among planets, whom men call Venus, came and was with them in the room.

Down in the kitchen MacPhee sharply drew back his chair so that it grated on the tiled floor like a pencil squeaking on a slate. "Man!" he exclaimed, "it's a shame for us to be sitting here looking at the fire. If the Director hadn't got a game leg himself, I'll bet you he'd have found some other way for us to go to work."[a]

Camilla's eyes flashed towards him. "Go on!" she said, "go on!"[b]

"What do you mean, MacPhee?" said Dimble.[c]

"He means fighting," said Camilla.[d]

"They'd be too many for us, I'm afraid," said Arthur Denniston.[e]

"Maybe that!"[f] said MacPhee. "But maybe they'll be too many for us this way, too. But it would be grand to have one go at them before the end. To tell you the truth, I sometimes feel I don't greatly care what happens. But I wouldn't be easy in my grave if I knew they'd won and I'd never had my hands on them. I'd like to be able to say as an old sergeant said to me in the first war, about a bit of a raid we did near Monchy. Our fellows did it all with the butt end, you know. 'Sir,' ① says he, 'did ever you hear anything like the way their heads cracked?' "[g] ②

"I[h] think that's disgusting," said Mother Dimble.[i]

"That[j] part is, I suppose," said Camilla.[k] "But . . . oh, if one could have a charge in the old style. I don't mind anything once I'm on a horse."[l]

---

[a] work."¶] *BA*; work." *M*
☛ Difference in paragraphing noted by Lake (55).
[b] on!"¶] *BA*; on!" *M*
☛ See note 344[a].
[c] Dimble.¶] *BA*; Dimble. *M*
☛ See note 344[a].
[d] Camilla.¶] *BA*; Camilla. *M*
☛ See note 344[a].
[e] Denniston.¶] *BA*; Denniston. *M*
☛ See note 344[a].
[f] that!"] *M*; so!" *BA*
☛ Noted by Lake (55). *Lectio difficilior.*
[g] 'Sir,' says he, 'did […] cracked?' "] *B*; "Sir," says he, "did […] cracked." *M*
☛ M's double quotation marks for a nested quotation are not appropriate, and the sergeant's question requires a question mark.
[h] ¶"I] *BA*; "I *M*
☛ See note 344[a].
[i] Dimble.¶] *BA*; Dimble. *M*
☛ See note 344[a].
[j] "That] *BM*; "Oh *A*
[k] Camilla.] *BM*; Camilla, *A*
[l] horse."¶] *BA*; horse." *M*
☛ See note 344[a].

① *King William said, Be not dismayed, for the loss of one commander.*

MacPhee is an Ulsterman and, though an atheist, the descendent of Protestants, and so sings a heroic line from an Ulster Protestant song commemorating William III of Orange's decisive victory over the dethroned James II at the River Boyne near Drogheda in 1690 (Smilde; "The Boyne Water"; *Encyclopædia Britannica*, "English History" 523).

② *Badon Hill*

The battle of Badon Hill (wherever it may be) was probably an historical event, in which Romanised British forces defeated an Anglo-Saxon force around 500 AD, thus checking and slowing the Anglo-Saxon invasion. Later traditions attached the event to Arthur: the poem quoted by Camilla to MacPhee (ch. 9 III 205) is called "Mount Badon". See "The Inklings" (Introduction 3 xci–xcii).

③ *cataphracts*

Soldiers "in full armour" (*NED*, "Cataphract" 2).

④ *his long struggle in the caves of Perelandra*

Ransom, in his fight with a demon-inhabited corpse on Perelandra, is dragged by it under the sea and into a system of caves, where he eventually destroys it (*Perelandra* ch. 14–15).

⑤ *taking their places […] the obeying Seraphim.*

In *Discarded Image* Lewis argues that in the universe of the Medieval model we do not see, like "Meredith's Lucifer, 'the army of unalterable law', but rather the revelry of insatiable love" (119, quoting Meredith's "Lucifer in Starlight"). But a syncretistic universe can accommodate many moods and many visions, and here, influenced by Mars, Lewis's characters share with Meredith's stars the martial joys of order, pattern and obedience:

> He reached a middle height, and at the stars,
> Which are the brain of heaven, he looked, and sank.
> Along the ancient track marched, rank on rank
> The army of unalterable law.
> ("Lucifer in Starlight" 11–14)

⑥ *caryatides*

Caryatides

In architecture, figures of women serving as columns, supporting weight.

"I can't[a] understand it," said Dimble. "I'm not like you, MacPhee. I'm not brave. But I was just thinking as you spoke that I don't feel afraid of being killed and hurt as I used to do. Not to-night."[b]

"We may be, I suppose," said Jane.[c]

"As long as we're all together," said Mother Dimble. " It might be . . . no, I don't mean anything heroic . . . it might be a *nice* way to die." And suddenly all their faces and voices were changed. They were laughing again, but it was a different kind of laughter. Their love for one another became intense. Each, looking on all the rest, thought, "I'm lucky to be here. I could die with these." But MacPhee was humming to himself:

"King[d] William said, Be not dismayed, for the loss of one commander."[e] ①

Upstairs it was, at first, much the same. Merlin saw in memory the wintry grass on Badon Hill, the long banner of the Virgin fluttering above the heavy ② British-Roman cataphracts, the yellow-haired barbarians. He heard the snap of the ③ bows, the *click-clack*[f] of steel points in wooden shields, the cheers, the howling, the ringing[g] of struck mail. He remembered also the evening, fires twinkling along the hill, frost making the gashes smart, starlight on a pool fouled with blood, eagles crowding together in the pale sky. And Ransom, it may be, remembered his long ④ struggle in the caves of Perelandra. But all this passed. Something tonic and lusty *Appendix C* and cheerily cold, like a sea-breeze,[h] was coming over them. There was no fear anywhere: the blood inside them flowed as if to a marching-song. They felt themselves taking their places in the ordered rhythm of the universe, side by side ⑤ with punctual seasons and patterned atoms and the obeying Seraphim. Under the immense weight of their obedience their wills stood up straight and untiring like caryatides.[i] Eased of all fickleness and all protestings they stood; gay, light, nimble, ⑥

---

[a] can't] *BA*; don't *M*
☛ Noted by Lake (55). B & A's "can't" includes M's "don't", since it denotes the Dimble is not able to understand the way he feels and therefore does not understand it.
[b] to-night."¶] *BA*; tonight." *M*
☛ See note 344[a].
[c] Jane.¶] *BA*; Jane. *M*
☛ See note 344[a].
[d] "King] *BA*; King *M*
[e] commander."] *BA*; commander. *M*
[f] *click-clack*] *A*; *click-click BM*
[g] ringing] *BA*; ring *M*
☛ Probably haplography by M's compositor.
[h] sea-breeze,] *BA*; sea breeze, *M*
[i] caryatides.] *BA*; caryatids. *M*

① *iron, the clear, taut splendour*

Iron is the metal associated with Mars (*Discarded Image* 106); see also Appendix C.

② *Malacandra, […] Tyr who put his hand in the wolf-mouth*

"Mars" is the Roman name of Ares, Greek god of war, and "Mavors" is a poetic variant. Tyr is the Norse god of war: his sacrificial courage in placing his hand in the mouth of the Wolf Fenrir, who bit it off, allowed the other gods to bind the Wolf until the time of Ragnarok.

③ *those two of the Seven Genders which bear a certain analogy to the biological sexes*

Lewis is not here contributing to any debate about angelic sexuality: he is simply saying that we should not expect to understand the genders of the immortals. There is no carefully thought-out framework behind the "Seven Genders".

In a recorded and transcribed conversation with Kingsley Amis and Brian Aldiss in 1962, Lewis asks the others, "has any science fiction writer yet succeeded in inventing a third sex?" ("Unreal Estates" 189). Amis replies that "Clifford Simak invented a set-up where there were seven sexes" (190), but Lewis does not mention his "Seven Genders". Strangely, no-one remarks that Lindsay has a character of a sex other than male or female in *Voyage to Arcturus* (ch. 16), although the book is mentioned earlier in the conversation (183).

④ *the sun's dying, […] from which Nature knows no return.*

Lewis considered what he called the Myth of Evolutionism (not evolution) "one of the most moving and satisfying world dramas which have ever been imagined" ("Funeral of a Great Myth" 115), a myth "of almost perfect grandeur" (117). It begins (115):

> the infinite void and matter, endless, aimlessly moving to bring forth it knows not what. Then by some millionth, millionth chance—what tragic irony!—the conditions at one point of space and time bubble up into that tiny fermentation that we call organic life. […] life somehow wins through.

The theme is repeated as Man emerges, first as Cave Man, then True Man, finally overmastering Nature to be Man as God (115–16). Then, in the grandest versions of the myth,

> All this time Nature, the old enemy who only seemed to be defeated, has been gnawing away, silently, unceasingly, out of the reach of human power. The Sun will cool—all suns will cool—the universe will run down. Life (every form of life) will be banished without hope of return from every cubic inch of infinite space. All ends in nothingness. […] It brings us to the end not of a story, but of all possible stories […] ("Funeral" 117)

Here Lewis introduces the end of the myth as part of Saturn's effect on the mind of humans, engendering a hopeless despair that overcomes all faith. But Lewis does not affirm the myth, because he has the planetary Intelligences descend out of order, so that the magnanimity and glory of Jupiter comes last, and absorbs and overcomes even the leaden depression of Saturn.

Lewis also gives full play to the poetic qualities of the death of the universe in the last of the Narnia stories, *The Last Battle*, where "Night Falls on Narnia" (chapter title, *Last Battle* ch. 14) at Aslan's command, and the events are witnessed by some of the children together with Him: the Giant Time is called to his task and the stars go out, the seas overcome the land, the

and alert. They had outlived all anxieties; care was a word without meaning. To live was[a] to share without effort this processional pomp. Ransom knew, as a man knows when he touches iron, the clear, taut splendour of that celestial spirit who[b] ① now flashed between them: vigilant Malacandra, captain of a cold orb, whom men ② call Mars and Mavors, and Tyr who put his hand in the wolf-mouth. Ransom greeted his guests in the tongue of heaven.[c] But he warned Merlin that now the time was coming when he must play the man. The three gods who had already met in the Blue Room were less unlike humanity than the two whom they still awaited. In Viritrilbia and Venus and Malacandra were represented those two of the Seven ③ Genders[d] which bear a certain analogy to the biological sexes, and can therefore be in some measure understood by men. It would not be so with those who were now preparing to descend. These also doubtless had their genders, but we have no clue to them. These would be mightier energies: ancient eldils, steersmen of giant worlds which have never from the beginning been subdued to the sweet humiliations of organic life.

"Stir the fire, Denniston, for any sake. That's a cold night," said MacPhee in the kitchen.[e]

"It must be cold outside," said Dimble.[f]

All thought of that;[g] of stiff grass, hen-roosts, dark places in the middle of woods, graves. Then of the sun's dying, the earth gripped, suffocated, in airless ④ cold, the black sky lit only with stars. And then, not even stars: the heat-death of the universe, utter and final blackness of nonentity from which Nature knows no return. Another life? "Possibly," thought MacPhee. "I believe," thought Denniston. But the old life gone, all its times, all its hours and days, gone. Can even Omnipotence *bring back*? Where do years go, and why? Man never would understand it. The misgiving deepened. Perhaps there was nothing to be understood.

---

[a] was] *BA*; meant *M*

☛ B & A's "was" suggests very strongly that they are actually experiencing the effortless participation in the dance of the universe: "meant" merely denotes that this should be the case.

[b] who] *BA*; which *M*

☛ Malacandra, like God, Ransom, and Merlin, is a personal being, and "who" asserts this.

[c] heaven.] *BA*; Heaven. *M*

[d] Seven Genders] *M*; Seven genders *BA*

☛ Since "Seven" has a capital letter (and all three witnesses agree on this), it seems better to give "Genders" a capital too.

[e] kitchen.¶] *BA*; kitchen. *M*

[f] Dimble.¶] *BA*; Dimble. *M*

[g] that;] *BA*; that: *M*

sun and moon die, ending in total darkness and utter cold (*Last Battle* ch. 14 141–49; see Ward ch. 9).

---

① *the lead-like burden of his antiquity*

Saturn's "influence produces lead […] Our traditional picture of Father Time with the scythe is derived from earlier pictures of Saturn" (*Discarded Image* 105). See "Planetary Powers" (Introduction 4).

Saturn, whose name in the heavens is Lurga, stood in the Blue Room. His spirit lay upon the house, or even on the whole earth,[a] with a cold pressure such as might flatten the very orb of Tellus to a wafer. Matched against the lead-like burden ① of his antiquity, the other gods themselves perhaps felt young and ephemeral. It was a mountain of centuries sloping up from the highest antiquity we can conceive: up and up like a mountain whose summit never comes into sight, not to eternity where the thought can rest, but into more and still more time, into freezing wastes and silence of unnameable numbers. It was also strong like a mountain:[b] its age was no mere morass of time where imagination can sink in reverie, but a living, self-remembering duration which repelled lighter intelligences from its structure as granite flings back waves, itself unwithered and undecayed,[c] but able to wither any who approached it unadvised. Ransom and Merlin suffered a sensation of unendurable cold:[d] and all that was strength in Lurga became sorrow as it entered them. Yet Lurga in that room was overmatched. Suddenly a greater spirit came—one whose influence tempered and almost transformed to his own quality the skill of leaping Mercury, the clearness of Mars, the subtler vibration of Venus, and even the numbing weight of Saturn.

In the kitchen his coming was felt. No one afterwards knew how it happened, but somehow the kettle was put on, the hot toddy was brewed. Arthur—the only musician among them—was bidden to get out his fiddle. The chairs were pushed back, the floor cleared. They danced. What they danced no one could remember. It was some round dance, no modern shuffling: it involved beating the floor, clapping of hands, leaping high. And no one, while it lasted,[e] thought himself or his fellows ridiculous. It may, in fact, have been some village measure, not ill-suited to the tiled kitchen: the spirit in which they danced it was not so. It seemed to each that the room was filled with kings and queens, that the wildness of their dance expressed heroic energy,[f] and its quieter movements had seized the very spirit behind all noble ceremonies.

Upstairs his mighty beam turned the Blue Room into a blaze of lights. Before the other angels a man might sink: before this he might die, but if he lived at all[g] he would laugh. If you had caught one breath of the air that came from him, you would have felt yourself taller than before. Though you were a cripple, your

---

[a] earth,] *BA*; Earth, *M*
[b] mountain:] *BA*; mountain; *M*
[c] undecayed,] *BA*; undecayed *M*
[d] cold:] *BA*; cold; *M*
[e] one, while it lasted,] *BA*; one while it lasted *M*
[f] energy,] *BA*; energy *M*
[g] all] *BA*; all, *M*

① *great Glund-Oyarsa, […] rises above him.*

Although astrologically the Sun is associated with kingship, mythically Jupiter is king of the planets (Lewis, *Discarded Image* 105), and the "Jovial character is cheerful, festive yet temperate, tranquil, magnanimous" (*Discarded Image* 106; also "Planetary Powers" in Introduction 4). We now find this character hard to understand: "Changes of outlook […] have almost annihilated Jupiter" (*Discarded Image* 109). See Introduction 1 (xxvi–xxviii) for a discussion of critical misunderstandings of this passage.

walk would have become stately: though a beggar, you would have worn your rags magnanimously. Kingship and power and festal pomp and courtesy shot from him as sparks fly from an anvil. The ringing of bells, the blowing of trumpets, the spreading out of banners, are means used on earth to make a faint symbol of his quality. It was like a long sunlit wave, creamy-crested and arched with emerald, that comes on nine feet tall, with roaring and with terror and unquenchable laughter. It was like the first beginning of music in the halls of some king[a] so high and at some festival so solemn that a tremor akin to fear runs through young hearts when they hear it. For this was great Glund-Oyarsa, King of Kings, through ① whom the joy of creation principally blows across these fields of Arbol, known to men in old times as Jove and under that name, by fatal but not inexplicable misprision, confused with his Maker—so little did they dream by how many degrees the stair even of created being rises above him.

At his coming there was holiday in the Blue Room. The two mortals, momentarily caught up into the *Gloria* which those five excellent Natures perpetually sing, forgot for a time the lower and more immediate purpose of their meeting. Then they proceeded to operation. Merlin received the powers into him.

He looked different next day. Partly because his beard had been shaved:[b] but also, because he was no longer his own man. No one doubted that his final severance from the body was near. Later in the day MacPhee drove him off and dropped him in the neighbourhood[c] of Belbury.

II

Mark had fallen into a doze in the tramp's bedroom that day, when he was startled, and driven suddenly to collect himself, by the arrival of visitors. Frost came in first and held the door open. Two others followed. One was the Deputy Director:[d] the other was a man whom Mark had not seen before.

This person was dressed in a rusty cassock and carried in his hand a wide-brimmed black hat such as priests wear in many parts of the Continent. He was a very big man, and the cassock perhaps made him look bigger. He was clean shaven, revealing a large face with heavy and complicated folds in it, and he walked with his head a little bowed. Mark decided that he was a simple soul, probably an obscure member of some religious order who happened to be an authority on some

[a] king] *A*; King *BM*
[b] shaved:] *BA*; shaved; *M*
[c] neighbourhood] *BA*; neighborhood *M*
☛ Inadvertent American spelling in M (see *Webster's*).
[d] Director:] *BA*; Director; *M*

even more obscure language. And it[a] was to Mark rather odious to see him standing between those two birds of prey—Wither[b] effusive and flattering on his right and Frost, on his left, stiff as a ramrod, waiting with scientific attention but also, as Mark could now see, with a certain cold dislike, for the result of the new experiment.

Wither talked to the stranger for some moments in a language which Mark could not follow but which he recognised as Latin. "A priest, obviously," thought Mark. "But I wonder where from? Wither knows most of the ordinary languages. Would the old chap be a Greek? Doesn't look like a Levantine. More probably a Russian." But at this point Mark's attention was diverted. The tramp, who had closed his eyes when he heard the door-handle[c] turning, had suddenly opened them, seen the stranger, and then shut them tighter than before. After this his behaviour was peculiar. He began emitting a series of very exaggerated snores and turned his back to the company. The stranger took a step nearer to the bed and spoke two syllables in a low voice. For a second or two the tramp lay as he was but seemed to be afflicted with a shivering fit;[d] then, slowly,[e] but with continuous movement, as when the bows of a ship come round in obedience to the rudder, he rolled round and lay staring up into the other's face. His mouth and his eyes were both opened very wide. From certain jerkings of his head and hands and from certain ghastly attempts to smile, Mark concluded that he was trying to say something, probably of a deprecatory and insinuating kind. What next followed took his breath away. The stranger spoke again:[f] and then, with much facial contortion, mixed with coughs and stammers and spluttering and expectoration, there came out of the tramp's mouth, in a high unnatural voice, syllables, words, a whole sentence, in some language that was neither Latin nor English. All this time the stranger kept his eyes fixed on those of the tramp.

The stranger spoke again. This time the tramp replied at much greater length and seemed to manage the unknown language a little more easily, though his voice remained quite unlike that in which Mark had heard him talking for the last few days. At the end of his speech he sat up in bed and pointed to where Wither and Frost were standing. Then the[g] stranger appeared to ask him a question. The tramp spoke for the third time.

---

[a] it] *BM*; It *A*
[b] Wither] *B*; Wither, *M*; Withers *A*
☛ An obvious mistake in A.
[c] door-handle] *B*; door handle; *M*
[d] fit;] *MA*; fit: *B*
[e] slowly,] *BA*; slowly *M*
[f] again:] *BA*; again; *M*
[g] the] *BM*; The *A*

At this reply the stranger started back, crossed himself several times, and exhibited every sign of terror. He turned and spoke rapidly in Latin to the other two. Something happened to their faces when he spoke. They looked like dogs who have just picked up a scent. Then, with a loud exclamation the stranger caught up his skirts[a] and made a bolt for the door. But the scientists were too quick for him. For a few minutes all three were wrangling there, Frost's teeth bared like an animal's, and the loose mask of Wither's' face wearing, for once, a quite unambiguous expression. The old priest was being threatened. Mark found that he himself had taken a step forward. But before he could make up his mind how to act, the stranger, shaking[b] his head and holding out his hands, had come[c] timidly back to the bedside. It was an odd thing that the[d] tramp, who had relaxed during the struggle at the door,[e] should suddenly stiffen[f] again and fix[g] his eyes on this frightened old man as if he were awaiting orders.

More words in the unknown language followed. The tramp once more pointed at Wither and Frost. The stranger turned and spoke to them in Latin, apparently translating. Wither and Frost looked at one another as if each waited for his fellow to act. What followed was pure lunacy. With infinite caution, wheezing,[h] and creaking, down went the whole shaky senility of the Deputy Director, down onto[i] its knees:[j] and half a second later with a jerky, metallic movement Frost got down beside him. When he was down[k] he suddenly looked over his shoulder to where Mark was standing. The flash of pure hatred in his face, but hatred, as it were, crystallised so that it was no longer a passion and had no heat in it, was like touching metal in the Arctic where metal burns. "Kneel," he cried,[l] and instantly turned his head. Mark never could remember afterwards whether he simply forgot to obey this order or whether his real rebellion dated from that moment.

The tramp spoke again, always with his eyes fixed on those of the man in the cassock. And again the latter translated, and then stood aside. Wither and Frost

---

[a] skirts] *BM*; skirts, *A*
[b] shaking] *BM*; Shaking *A*
[c] had come] *BM*; he came *A*
[d] the] *BM*; The *A*
[e] tramp, who […] door,] *A*; tramp who […] door *BM*
[f] stiffen] *BM*; stiffened *A*
[g] fix] *BM*; fixed *A*
[h] wheezing,] *A*; wheezing *BM*
[i] onto] *BM*; on to *A*
☛ The verb is not "went down on", so "onto" is a preposition and one word (Fowler, "Onto, on, on to").
[j] knees:] *BA*; knees; *M*
[k] down] *BA*; down, *M*
[l] cried,] *A*; bleated, *BM*
☛ Noted by Lake (57). I take A's amendment as an authorial amendment, possibly indicating second thoughts about the likelihood of Frost's "bleating".

① *venia tua […] venia vestra*

Wither corrects his use of the familiar second-person pronoun “tua” to the polite “vestra”.

began going forward on their knees till they reached the bedside. The tramp's hairy, dirty hand with its bitten nails was thrust out to them. They kissed it. Then it seemed that some further order was given them. They rose and Mark perceived that Wither was gently expostulating in Latin against this order. He kept on indicating Frost. The words *venia tua*[1] (each time emended to *venia vestra*) recurred so often that Mark could pick them out. But apparently the expostulation was unsuccessful: a few moments later Frost and Wither had both left the room. ①

As the door shut, the tramp collapsed like a deflated balloon. He rolled himself to and fro on the bed muttering, "Gor'[a] blimey. Couldn't have believed it. It's a knock-out. A fair knock-out." But Mark had little leisure to attend to this. He found that the stranger was addressing him,[b] and though he could not understand the words, he looked up. Instantly[c] he wished to look away again and found that he could not. He might have claimed with some reason that he was by now an expert in the endurance of alarming faces. But that did not alter the fact that when he looked on this he felt himself afraid. Almost before he had time to realise this he felt himself drowsy. A moment later he fell into his chair and slept.

III

"Well?" said Frost,[d] as soon as they found themselves outside the door.

"It is . . . er . . . profoundly perplexing," said the Deputy Director.[e]

They walked down the passage conversing in low tones as they went.

"It certainly looked—I say *looked*," continued Frost, "as if the man in the bed were being hypnotised and the Basque priest were in charge of the situation."

"Oh, surely, my dear friend, that would be a most disquieting hypothesis."

"Excuse me. I have made no hypothesis. I am describing how it looked."

"And how[f] on your hypothesis—forgive me, but that is what it is—would a Basque priest come to invent the story that our guest was Merlinus Ambrosius?"

1 "With your kind permission"; or, "If[g] you will pardon me."

---

[a] Gor'] *M*; Gor', *BA*
☛Although the *NED* gives various spellings, and choices between two words, one word, or a hyphenated word (Supplement, "Gorblimy"), it should clearly be thought of as a single expression, not to be interrupted by a comma.
[b] him,] *BA*; him *M*
[c] Instantly] *BA*; Instantly, *M*
[d] Frost,] *B*; Frost *M*
[e] Director.] *BM*; Director, as soon as they found themselves outside the door. *A*
[f] how] *A*; how, *BM*
[g] permission"; or, "If] *BA*; permission," or "if *M*

① *"Do I understand […] a Dictator rather than a colleague?"*

At St. Anne's where the hierarchy of the syncretic model is accepted—and especially after ch. 9 IV 209–11—there is no jostling for place, while the demon-inspired Belbury is nothing but striving for position at the expense of others. The appearance of Merlin or one thought to be Merlin highlights this in both places—in Frost's suspicious question here, and the obedience to Ransom, despite doubts, of both Merlin and the others at St. Anne's (ch. 13 III 294–98).

"That is the point. If the man in the bed is *not* Merlinus, then someone else, and someone quite outside our calculations, namely the priest, knows our whole plan of campaign."

"And that, my dear friend, is why the retention of both these persons and a certain extreme delicacy in our attitude to both is required—at least until we have some further light."

"They must, of course, be detained."

"I would hardly say *detained*. It has implications . . . I do not venture to express any doubts at present as to the identity of our distinguished guest. There is no question of detention. On the contrary, the most cordial welcome, the most meticulous courtesy . . ."

"Do I understand that you had always pictured Merlinus entering the Institute as a Dictator rather than a colleague?" ①

"As to that," said Wither, "my conception of the personal, or even official, relations between us had always been elastic and ready for all necessary adaptations. It would be a very real grief to me if I thought you were allowing any misplaced sense of your own dignity . . . ah, in short, provided he *is* Merlinus . . . you understand me?"

"Where are you taking us at the moment?"

"To my own apartments.[a] If you remember, the[b] request was that we should provide our guest with some clothes."

"There was no request. We were ordered."

To this the[b] Deputy Director made no reply. When both men were in his bedroom and the door was shut, Frost said,[c] "I am not satisfied. You do not seem to realise the dangers of the situation. We must take into account the possibility that the man is not Merlinus. And if he is not Merlinus, then the priest knows things he ought not to know. To allow an impostor and a spy to remain at large in the Institute is out of the question. We must find out at once where that priest gets his knowledge from. And where did you get the priest from?"

"I think that is the kind of shirt which would be most suitable," said Wither, laying it on the bed. "The suits are in here. The . . . ah . . . clerical personage said he had come in answer to our advertisement. I wish to do full justice to the point of view you have expressed, my dear Frost. On the other hand, to reject the real Merlinus . . . to alienate a power which is an integral factor in our plan . . . would

---

[a] own apartments.] *BA*; apartments. *M*
☛ Noted by Lake (55). Presumably a compositing error in M.
[b] the] *BM*; The *A*
[c] said,] *BA*; said:¶ *M*

be at least equally dangerous. It is not even certain that the priest would in any event be an enemy. He may have made independent contact with the macrobes.[a] He may be a potential ally."

"Did you think he looked like it? His priesthood is against him."

"All that we now want," said Wither, "is a collar and tie. Forgive me for saying that I have never been able to share your root and branch attitude to religion. I am not speaking of dogmatic Christianity in its primitive form. But within religious circles—ecclesiastical circles—types of spirituality of very real value do from time to time arise. When they do[b] they sometimes reveal great energy. Father Doyle, though not very talented, is one of our soundest colleagues:[c] and Mr. Straik has in him the germs of that total allegiance (*objectivity* is, I believe, the term you prefer) which is so rare. It doesn't do to be in any way narrow."

"What do you actually propose to do?"

"We will, of course, consult the Head at once. I use that term, you understand, purely for convenience."

"But how can you? Have you forgotten that this is the night of the inaugural banquet, and that Jules is coming down? He may be here in an hour. You will be dancing attendance on him till midnight."

For a moment Wither's face remained still, the mouth wide open. He had indeed forgotten that the puppet Director, the dupe of the Institute by whom it duped the public, was coming that night. But the realisation[d] that he had forgotten troubled him more than it would have troubled another. It was like the first cold breath of winter—the first little hint of a crack in that great secondary self or mental machine which he had built up to carry on the business of living while he, the real Wither, floated far away on the indeterminate frontiers of ghosthood.

"God bless my soul!" he said.

"You have therefore to consider at once," said Frost, "what to do with these two men this very evening. It is out of the question that they should attend the banquet. It would be madness to leave them to their own devices."

"Which reminds me that we have already left them alone—and with Studdock,[e] too—for over ten minutes. We must go back with the clothes at once."

"And without a plan?" enquired Frost, though following Wither out of the room as he said it.

---

[a] macrobes.] *ed.;* Macrobes. *BM*
☛ A's witness is lacking here, but A's practice is not to capitalise "macrobes".
[b] do] *B*; do, *M*
[c] colleagues:] *BA*; colleagues; *M*
[d] realisation] *BM*; realisation of this *A*
[e] Studdock,] *BA*; Studdock *M*

"We must be guided by circumstances," said Wither.

They were greeted on their return by a babble of imploring Latin from the man in the cassock. "Let me go," he said;[a] "I entreat[b] you do not, for your mothers' sakes, do violence to a poor harmless old man. I will tell nothing—God forgive me—but I cannot stay here. This man who says he is Merlinus come back from the dead—he is a diabolist, a worker of infernal miracles. Look! Look what he did to the poor young man the moment you had left the room." He pointed to where Mark lay unconscious in his chair. "He did it with his eye, only by looking at him. The evil eye, the evil eye."

"Silence!" said Frost in the same language, "and listen. If you do what you are told, no harm will come to you. If you do not, you will be destroyed. I think that if you are troublesome you may lose your soul as well as your life;[c] for you do not sound likely to be a martyr."

The man whimpered, covering his face with his hands.

Suddenly,[d] not as if he wished to but as if he were a machine that had been worked, Frost kicked him. "Get on," he said. "Tell him we have brought such clothes as men wear now." The man did not stagger when he was kicked.

The end of it was that the tramp was washed and dressed. When this had been done, the man in the cassock said, "He is saying that he must now be taken for a journey through all your house and shown the secrets."

"Tell[e] him," said Wither, "that it will be a very great pleasure and privilege——"[f]

But[g] here the tramp spoke again. "He says," translated the big man, "first that he must see the Head and the beasts and the criminals who are being tormented. Secondly, that he will go with one of you alone. With you, sir,"[h] and here he turned to Wither.

"I will allow no such arrangement," said Frost in English.

"My dear Frost," said Wither, "this is hardly the moment . . . and *one* of us must be free to meet Jules."

The tramp had spoken again. "Forgive me," said the man in the cassock, "I

---

[a] said;] *BA*; said, *M*
[b] entreat] *BA*; intreat *M*
[c] life;] *B*; life, *M*
[d] ¶Suddenly,] *A*; Suddenly, *BM*
[e] ¶"Tell] *BA*; "Tell *M*
☛ Lake (55) alludes to one paragraph break on page B412 that is not on page M395: either this one or the one at 354[g].
[f] privilege——"] *BA*; privilege—" *M*
[g] ¶But] *BA*; But *M*
☛ See note 354[e].
[h] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*

must follow what he says. The words are not mine. He forbids you to talk in his presence in a tongue which he cannot, even through me, understand. And he says it is an old habit of his to be obeyed. He is asking now whether you wish to have him for a friend or an enemy."

Frost took a pace nearer to the pseudo-Merlin so that his shoulder touched the rusty cassock of the real one. Wither thought that Frost had intended to say something but had grown afraid. In reality, Frost found it impossible to remember any words. Perhaps it was due to the rapid shifts from Latin to English which had been going on. He could not speak. Nothing but nonsense syllables would occur to his mind. He had long known that his continued intercourse with the beings he called macrobes[a] might have effects on his psychology which he could not predict. In a dim sort of way[b] the possibility of complete destruction was never out of his thoughts. He had schooled himself not to attend to it. Now, it seemed to be descending on him. He reminded himself that fear was only a chemical phenomenon. For the moment, clearly, he must step out of the struggle, come to himself, and make a new start later in the evening. For, of course, this could not be final. At the very worst it could only be the first hint of the end. Probably he had years of work before him. He would outlast Wither. He would kill the priest. Even Merlin, if it was Merlin, might not stand better with the macrobes[c] than himself. He stood aside, and the tramp, accompanied by the real Merlin and the Deputy Director, left the room.

Frost had been right in thinking that the aphasia would be only temporary. As soon as they were alone he found no difficulty in saying, as he shook Mark by the shoulder, "Get up. What do you mean by sleeping here? Come with me to the Objective Room."

IV

Before proceeding to their tour of inspection Merlin demanded robes for the tramp, and Wither finally dressed him as a Doctor of Philosophy of the University of Edgestow. Thus arrayed, walking with his eyes half shut, and as delicately as if he were treading on eggs, the bewildered tinker was led upstairs and downstairs and through the zoo and into the cells. Every now and then his face underwent a kind of spasm as if he were trying to say something; but he never succeeded in

[a] macrobes] *A*; Macrobes *BM*
[b] way] *BA*; way, *M*
[c] macrobes] *ed.*; Macrobes *BM*
☛ See 353[a].

producing any words except when the real Merlin asked him a question and fixed him with his eye. Of course, all this was not to the tramp what it would have been to anyone who made an educated and wealthy man's demands upon the universe. It was, no doubt, a "rum do"—the rummest do that had ever befallen him. The mere sensation of being clean all over would have made it that,[a] even apart from the crimson robe and the fact that his own mouth kept on uttering sounds he did not understand and without his own consent. But it was not by any means the first inexplicable thing that had been done to him.

Meanwhile, in the Objective Room, something like a crisis had developed between Mark and Professor Frost. As soon as they arrived there Mark saw that the table had been drawn back. On the floor lay a large crucifix, almost life-size,[b] a work of art in the Spanish tradition, ghastly and realistic. "We have half an hour to pursue our exercises," said Frost, looking at his watch. Then he instructed Mark to trample on it and insult it in other ways.

Now, whereas Jane had abandoned Christianity in early childhood, along with her belief in fairies and Santa Claus, Mark had never believed in it at all. At this moment, therefore, it crossed his mind for the very first time that there might conceivably be something in it. Frost,[c] who was watching him carefully,[d] knew perfectly well that this might be the result of the present experiment. He knew it for the very good reason that his own training by the macrobes[e] had, at one point, suggested the same odd idea to himself. But he had no choice. Whether he wished it or not,[f] this sort of thing was part of the initiation.

"But, look here," said Mark.

"What is it?" said Frost. "Pray be quick. We have only a limited time at our disposal."

"This," said Mark, pointing with an undefined reluctance to the horrible white figure on the cross, "this[g] is all surely a pure superstition."

"Well?"

"Well, if so, what is there objective about stamping on the face? Isn't it just as subjective to spit on a thing like this as to worship it? I mean—damn it all—if it's only a bit of wood, why do anything about it?"

"That is superficial. If you had been brought up in a non-Christian society,

---

[a] that,] *B*; that *M*
[b] life-size,] *BA*; life size, *M*
[c] Frost,] *BA*; Frost *M*
[d] carefully,] *BA*; carefully *M*
[e] macrobes] *ed.*; Macrobes *BM*
☛ See 353[a].
[f] not,] *BA*; not *M*
[g] , "this] *BA*; . "This *M*

you would not be asked to do this. Of course it is a superstition:[a] but it is that particular superstition which has pressed upon our society for a great many centuries. It can be experimentally shown that it still forms a dominant system in the subconscious of many individuals whose conscious thought appears to be wholly liberated. An explicit action in the reverse direction is therefore a necessary step towards complete objectivity. It is not a question for *a priori* discussion. We find in[b] practice that it cannot be dispensed with."

Mark himself was surprised at the emotions he was undergoing. He did not regard the image with anything at all like a religious feeling. Most emphatically it did not belong to that idea of the Straight or Normal or Wholesome which had, for the last few days, been his support against what he now knew of the innermost circle at Belbury. The horrible vigour of its realism was, indeed, in its own way as remote from that Idea as anything else in the room. That was one source of his reluctance. To insult even a carved image of such agony seemed an abominable act. But it was not the only source. With the introduction of this Christian symbol the whole situation had somehow altered.[c] The thing was becoming[d] incalculable. His simple antithesis of the Normal and the Diseased had obviously failed to take something into account. Why was the crucifix there? Why were more than half the poison-pictures religious? He had the sense of new parties to the conflict—potential allies and enemies which he had not suspected before. "If I take a step in any direction," he thought, "I may step over a precipice." A donkey-like determination to plant hoofs and stay still at all costs arose in his mind.

"Pray make haste," said Frost.

The quiet urgency of the voice[e] and the fact that he had so often obeyed it before, almost conquered him. He was on the verge of obeying[f] and getting the whole silly business over, when the defencelessness of the figure deterred him. The feeling was a very illogical one. Not because its hands were nailed and helpless, but because they were only made of wood and therefore even more helpless, because the thing, for all its realism, was inanimate and could not in any way hit back, he paused. The unretaliating face of a doll—one of Myrtle's dolls—which he had pulled to pieces in boyhood had affected him in the same way, and the memory, even now, was tender to the touch.

---

[a] superstition:] *BA*; superstition; *M*
[b] in] *BA*; it in *M*
☛ Noted by Lake (55). An obvious error in M.
[c] altered.] *BM*; altered, and *A*
[d] becoming] *BM*; become *A*
[e] voice] *B*; voice, *M*
[f] obeying] *BA*; obeying, *M*

"What are you waiting for, Mr. Studdock?" said Frost.

Mark was well aware of the rising danger. Obviously, if he disobeyed, his last chance of getting out of Belbury alive might be gone. Even of getting out of this room. The smothering sensation once again attacked him. He was himself, he felt, as helpless as the wooden Christ. As he thought this, he found himself looking at the crucifix in a new way—neither as a piece of wood nor a monument of superstition but as a bit of history. Christianity was nonsense, but one did not doubt that the man had lived and had been executed thus by the Belbury of those days. And that, as he suddenly saw, explained why this image, though not itself an image of the Straight or Normal, was yet in opposition to crooked Belbury. It was a picture of what happened when the Straight[a] met the Crooked, a picture of what the Crooked did to the Straight—what it would do[b] to him if he remained straight. It was, in a more emphatic sense than he had yet understood, a *cross*.

"Do you intend to go on with the training or not?" said Frost. His eye was on the time. He knew that those others were conducting their tour of inspection and that Jules must have very nearly reached Belbury.[c] He knew that he might be interrupted at any moment. He had chosen this time for this stage in Mark's initiation partly in obedience to an unexplained impulse (such impulses grew more frequent with him every day), but partly because he wished, in the uncertain situation which had now arisen, to secure Mark at once. He and Wither[d] and possibly (by now) Straik were the only full initiates in the N.I.C.E. On them lay the danger of making any false step in dealing with the man who claimed to be Merlin and with his mysterious interpreter. For him who took the right steps there was a chance of ousting all the others, of becoming to them what they were to the rest of the Institute and what the Institute was to the rest of England. He knew that Wither was waiting eagerly for any slip on his own part. Hence it seemed to him of the utmost importance to bring Mark as soon as possible beyond that point after which there is no return,[e] and the disciple's allegiance both to the macrobes[f] and to the teacher who has initiated him becomes a matter of psychological, or even physical, necessity.

Appendix C

"Do you not hear what I am saying?" he asked Mark again.

Mark made no reply. He was thinking, and thinking hard because he knew[g]

[a] Straight] *BM*; Crooked *A*
[b] do] *BM*; happen *A*
[c] Belbury.] *BM*; Belbury, and *A*
[d] Wither] *BA*; Wither, *M*
[e] return,] *BA*; return *M*
[f] macrobes] *A*; Macrobes *BM*
[g] knew] *B*; knew, *M*

① *Supposing the Straight […] Why not go down with the ship?*

Of all mythologies, Lewis found Norse myth, in which Good does not triumph in the end, the most aesthetically pleasing ("Is Theology Poetry?" 42). He gives valiant expression to the mood (shared here by Mark) of embracing defeat on the side of what is right, and repudiating the worship of mere success, in a satirical poem published in 1950 (*Collected Poems* 17–18 offers a faulty text: see rather "A Cliché Came out of its Cage"):

> Think, then, that under heaven-roof the little disc of the earth,
> Fortified Midgard, lies encircled by the ravening Worm.
> Over its icy bastions faces of giant and troll
> Look in, ready to invade it. The Wolf, admittedly, is bound;
> But the bond will break, the Beast run free. The weary gods,
> Scarred with old wounds, the one-eyed Odin, Tyr who has lost a hand,
> Will limp to their stations for the last defence. Make it your hope
> To be counted worthy on that day to stand beside them;
> For the end of man is to partake of their defeat and die
> His second, final death in good company. The stupid, strong
> Unteachable monsters are certain to be victorious at last,
> And every man of decent blood is on the losing side.
>
> Are these the Pagans you spoke of? Know your betters and crouch, dogs;
> You that have Vichy-water in your veins and worship the event,
> Your goddess History (whom your fathers called the strumpet Fortune).
> (25–36, 41–43)

② *He began to be frightened by the very fact that his fears seemed to have momentarily vanished.*

Mark's sudden loss of fear is probably the influence of Mars-Malacandra, whose arrival at St. Anne's relieved the company of anxiety, care, and "all fickleness and all protestings" (15 1 345; see also Ward ch. 4 20%). Although Myers states that only Mercury acts through Merlin (87), there are suggestions (here and in chapter 16) of the action of some of the other planetary powers (see 376 n. 1). Mark, here influenced by Mars, is later seen to be influenced by Saturn (ch. 16 1).

③ *I'm damned if I do any such thing*

Most references to God, devils, heaven, hell, salvation and damnation by characters in this novel are simply instances of realistic dialogue (see Preliminary Note E). But here Mark's courageous refusal to obey Frost has an ironic meaning beyond what he (probably) means as he speaks: he will literally be damned if he insults the cross of Christ.

that if he stopped even for a moment[a] mere terror of death would take the decision out of his hands. Christianity was a fable. It would be ridiculous to die for a religion one did not believe. This Man himself, on that very cross, had discovered it to be a fable, and had died complaining that the God in whom he trusted had forsaken him—had, in fact, found the universe a cheat. But this raised a question that Mark had never thought of before. Was *that* the moment at which to turn against the Man? If the universe was a cheat, was that a good reason for joining its side? Supposing the Straight was utterly powerless, always and everywhere certain to be ① mocked, tortured, and finally killed by the Crooked, what then? Why not go down with the ship? He began to be frightened by the very fact that his fears seemed to ② have momentarily vanished. They had been a safeguard . . . they had prevented him, all his life, from making mad decisions like that which he was now making as he turned to Frost and said,[b] "It's all bloody nonsense, and I'm damned if I do any ③ such thing."

When he said this he had no idea what might happen next. He did not know whether Frost would ring a bell or produce a revolver or renew his demands. In fact, Frost simply went on staring at him and he stared back. Then he saw that Frost was listening, and he began to listen himself. A moment later the door opened. The room seemed suddenly to be full of people—a man in a red gown (Mark did not instantly recognise the tramp) and the huge man in the black gown[c] and Wither.

V

In the great drawing-room[d] at Belbury a singularly uncomfortable party was by now assembled. Horace Jules, Director of the N.I.C.E., had arrived about half an hour before. They had shown him to the Deputy Director's study, but the Deputy Director was not there. Then they had shown him to his own rooms and hoped he would take a long time settling in. He took a very short time. In five minutes he was downstairs again and on their hands, and it was still much too early for anyone to go and dress. He was now standing with his back to the fire drinking a glass of sherry[e] and the principal members of the Institute were standing round him. Conversation was hanging fire.

Conversation with Mr. Jules was always difficult, because he insisted on

[a] moment] *B*; moment, *M*
[b] said,] *BA*; said,¶ *M*
[c] gown] *BA*; gown, *M*
[d] drawing-room] *BA*; drawing room *M*
[e] drinking […] sherry] *B*; , drinking […] sherry, *M*

① *Haeckel and Joseph McCabe and Winwood Reade*

Ernst Haeckel (1834–1919) was a German biologist who popularised Darwin's theories about evolution and posited that the non-human ancestry of humans is recapitulated in the embryo. The 1939 edition of the *Encyclopædia Britannica* judges that he "occupies no serious position in the history of philosophy" ("Haeckel, Ernst Heinrich"): it does not have entries on McCabe (1867–1955) and Reade (1838–75).

Joseph McCabe (1867–1955) originally trained as a Catholic priest, but lost his faith, and became a prolific speaker and writer on free thought: the titles of his books suggest a strong opposition to Christianity and particularly the Catholic Church (Wikipedia contributors, "Joseph McCabe").

Winwood Reade (1838–75) was an explorer of Africa, atheist, and exponent of "secular humanism", which he expressed in *Martyrdom of Man* (1972); he was admired by Cecil John Rhodes (Wikipedia contributors, "William Winwood Reade").

② *"God!" said Feverstone to himself*

This blasphemous interjection is characteristic of Feverstone: see Preliminary Note E.

③ *the Pellotoff method*

The name, the method, and the person all seem to be Lewis's inventions.

regarding himself not as a figure-head[a] but as the real Director[b] of the Institute, and even as the source of most of its ideas. And since, in fact, any science he knew was that taught him at the University of London over fifty years ago, and anything else he knew had been acquired from writers like Haeckel[c] and Joseph McCabe and Winwood Reade, it was not, in fact, possible to talk to him about most of the things the Institute was really doing. One was always engaged in inventing answers to questions which were actually meaningless and expressing enthusiasm for ideas which were out of date and had been crude even in their prime. That was why the absence of the Deputy Director in such interviews was so disastrous,[d] for Wither alone was master of a conversational style that exactly suited Jules. ①

Jules was a cockney.[e] He was a very little man, whose legs were so short that he had unkindly been compared to a duck. He had a turned-up[f] nose and a face in which some original *bonhomie* had been much interfered with by years of good living and conceit. His novels had first raised him to fame and affluence; later, as editor of the weekly called *We Want to Know*,[g] he had become such a power in the country that his name was really necessary to the N.I.C.E.

"And as I said to the Archbishop," observed Jules, "you[h] may not know, my lord, said I, that[i] modern research shows the temple at Jerusalem to have been about the size of an English village church."[j]

"God!" said Feverstone to himself, where he stood silent on the fringes of the group. ②

"Have a little more sherry, Director," said Miss Hardcastle.

"Well, I don't mind if I do," said Jules. "It's not at all bad sherry, though I think I could tell you of a place where we could get something better. And how are you getting on, Miss Hardcastle, with your reforms of our penal system?"

"Making real headway," she replied. "I think some modification of the Pellotoff method——"[k] ③

"What I always say," remarked Jules, interrupting her, "is, why not treat

---

[a] figure-head] *BA*; figurehead *M*
[b] Director] *A*; director *BM*
☛ A corrects an error: "Director" is Jules' title, not a description, and is used as such, with a capital, by all witnesses on p. 363 and 364.
[c] Haeckel] *B*; Hæckel *M*
[d] disastrous,] *BM*; disastrous; *A*
[e] cockney.] *BM*; cockney, *A*
[f] turned-up] *BA*; turned up *M*
[g] *Know*,] *MA*; *Know B*
[h] "you] *BA*; " 'you *M*
[i] lord, said I, that] *BA*; lord,' said I, 'that *M*
[j] church."] *BA*; church.' " *M*
[k] ——"] *BA*; —" *M*

crime like any other disease? I've no use for punishment.[a] What you want to do is to put the man on the right lines—give him a fresh start—give him an interest in life. It's all perfectly simple if you look at it from that point of view. I dare say you've been reading a little address on the subject I gave at Northampton."

"I agreed with you," said Miss Hardcastle."

"That's right," said Jules. "I tell you who didn't, though. Old Hingest—and by the by,[b] that was a queer business. You never caught the murderer, did you? But though I'm sorry for the old chap, I never did quite see eye to eye with him. Very last time I met him[c] one or two of us were talking about juvenile offenders, and do you know what he said? He said, 'The trouble with these courts for young criminals nowadays is that they're always binding them over when they ought to be bending them over.' Not bad, was it? Still, as Wither said—and, by the way, where *is* Wither?"

"I think he should be here any moment now," said Miss Hardcastle;[d] "I can't imagine why he's not."

"I think," said Filostrato, "he have a breakdown with his car. He will be very desolated, Mr. Director, not to have given you the welcome."

"Oh, he needn't bother about that," said Jules, "I never was one for any formality, though I did think he'd be here when I arrived. You're looking very well[e] Filostrato. I'm following your work with great interest. I look upon you as one of the makers of mankind."

"Yes, yes,"[f] said Filostrato, "that is the real business. Already we begin——"[g]

"I try to help you all I can on the non-technical side," said Jules. "It's a battle I've been fighting for years. The whole question of our sex-life. What I always say is[h] that once you get the whole thing out into the open, you don't have any more trouble. It's all this Victorian secrecy which does the harm. Making a mystery of it. I want every boy and girl in the country——"[g]

"God!" said Feverstone to himself.

"Forgive me," said Filostrato, who, being a foreigner, had not yet despaired of trying to enlighten Jules. "But that is not precisely the point."

---

[a] punishment.] *BA*; Punishment. *M*
[b] by the by,] *BA*; by the bye, *M*
☛ See *NED*.
[c] him] *BA*; him, *M*
[d] Hardcastle;] *B*; Hardcastle, *M* Hardcastle. *A*
[e] well] *A*; well, *BM*
[f] "Yes, yes,"] *BA*; "*Yes, yes*," *M*
[g] ——"] *BA*; —" *M*
[h] is] *BA*; is, *M*

"Now, I know what you're going to say," interrupted Jules, laying a fat forefinger on the Professor's sleeve. "And I dare say[a] you don't read my little paper. But,[b] believe me, if you looked up the first number of last month you'd find a modest little editorial which a chap like you might overlook because it doesn't use any technical terms. But I ask you just to read it and see if it doesn't put the whole thing in a nutshell and[c] in a way that the man in the street can understand."

At this moment the clock struck a quarter.

"I say," asked Jules, "what time is this dinner at?" He liked banquets, and specially banquets at which he had to speak. He also disliked to be kept waiting.[d]

"At quarter to eight," said Miss Hardcastle.

"You know," said Jules, "this fellow Wither really ought to be here. I mean to say. I'm not particular, but I don't mind telling you, between you and me,[e] that I'm a bit hurt. It[f] isn't the kind of thing a chap expects, is it?"

"I hope nothing's gone wrong with him," said Miss Hardcastle.

"You'd hardly have thought he'd have gone out anywhere, not on a day like this," said Jules.

"*Ecco*," said Filostrato. "Someone come."

It was indeed Wither who entered the room,[g] followed by a company whom[h] Jules had not expected to see, and Wither's face had certainly good reason to look even more chaotic than usual. He had been bustled round his own institute as if he were a kind of footman. He had not even been allowed to have the supply of air[i] turned on for the Head when they made him take them into the Head's room. And "Merlin" (if it was Merlin) had ignored it. Worst of all, it had gradually become clear to him that this intolerable incubus and his interpreter fully intended to be present at dinner. No one could be more keenly aware than Wither of the absurdity of introducing to Jules a shabby old priest who couldn't speak English, in charge of what looked like a somnambulist chimpanzee dressed up as a Doctor of

---

[a] I dare say] *B*; I daresay *M*
[b] But,] *B*; But *M*
[c] nutshell and] *B*; nutshell. And *M*
[d] He also disliked to be kept waiting.] *M only*.
☛ Noted by Lake (55). See Introduction 2 xl. Unusually, this sentence found only in M is not a paragraph on its own: it does, however, occupy a line of its own, and maybe the compositor accidentally omitted a paragraph indentation.
[e] , between you and me,] *B*; between you and me *M*
[f] It] *BM*; it *A*
[g] room,] *BA*; room *M*
[h] company whom] *BM*; in company which *A*
[i] the supply of air] *BA*; supplies of blood and air *M*
☛ There is no other mention of turning on the Head's blood supply: elsewhere (195 & 377) air and saliva are turned on. B and A's reading is thus more consistent with other parts of the novel.

① *the word "medieval" […] memories of* The Golden Bough.

Screwtape celebrates, from a demonic point of view, the results of Jules' kind of dismissal of the work and thought of a past age (*Screwtape Letters* 117):

> To regard the ancient writer as a possible source of knowledge—to anticipate that what he said could possibly modify your thoughts or your behaviour—this would be rejected as unutterably simple-minded. Since we cannot deceive the human race the whole time, it is most important thus to cut every generation off from all others; for where learning makes free commerce between the ages, there is the danger that the characteristic errors of one will be corrected by the characteristic truths of another.

Sir James Frazer's *The Golden Bough: A Study in Magic and Religion* (1890–1915) treats magic and religion as anthropological data. Magic is seen as the precursor to religion as a way of dealing with the natural world, and religion as outmoded by science in a simplistic manner that ignores the historical complexities (see Thomas 222–23, 662). Wedded to his simplistically materialist notions of science, Jules would not be able to envisage that the science of Belbury could benefit from the reinforcements of magic.

Philosophy. To tell Jules the real explanation—even if he knew which was the real explanation—was out of the question. For Jules was a simple man to whom the word "medieval" meant only "savage" and in whom the word "magic" roused memories of *The Golden Bough*. It was a minor nuisance that ever since their visit to the Objective Room he had been compelled to have both Frost and Studdock in attendance. Nor did it mend matters that as they approached Jules,[a] and all eyes were fixed upon them, the pseudo-Merlin collapsed into a chair, muttering, and closed his eyes.

"My dear Director," began Wither, a little out of breath, "this[b] is one of the happiest moments of my life. I hope your comfort has been in every way attended to. It has been most unfortunate that I was called away at the very moment when I was expecting your arrival. A remarkable coincidence . . . another very distinguished person has joined us at the very same moment. A foreigner . . ."

"Oh," interrupted Jules in a slightly rasping voice, "who's he?"

"Allow me," said Wither, stepping a little to one side.

"Do you mean *that*?" said Jules. The supposed Merlin sat with his arms hanging down on each side of the chair, his eyes closed, his head on one side, and a weak smile on his face. "Is he drunk? Or ill? And who is he, anyway?"

"He is, as I was observing, a foreigner," began Wither.

"Well, that doesn't make him go to sleep the moment he is introduced to me, does it?"

"Hush!" said Wither, drawing Jules a little out of the group and lowering his voice. "There are circumstances—it would be very difficult to go into it here—I have been taken by surprise and would, if you had not been here already, have consulted you at the first possible moment. Our distinguished guest has just undertaken a very long journey and has, I admit, certain eccentricities, and . . ."

" But who is he?" persisted Jules.

"His name is . . . er . . . Ambrosius. Dr. Ambrosius, you know."

"Never 'eard of him," snapped Jules. At another time he might not have made this admission, but the whole evening was turning out differently from his expectations and he was losing his temper.

"Very few of us have heard of him *yet*," said Wither. "But everyone will have heard of him soon. That is why, without in the least . . ."

"And who's that?" asked Jules, indicating the real Merlin. "He looks as if he were enjoying himself."

"Oh, that is merely Dr. Ambrosius's interpreter."

---

[a] Jules,] *BA*; Jules *M*
[b] breath, "this] *BA*; breath. "This *M*

"Interpreter? Can't he talk English?"

"Unfortunately not. He lives rather in a world of his own."

"And can't you get anyone except a priest to act for him? I don't like the look of that fellow. We don't want that sort of thing here at all. Hullo! And who are *you*?"

The last question was addressed to Straik, who had at this moment[a] thrust his way up to the Director. "Mr. Jules," he said, fixing the latter with a prophetic eye, "I am the bearer of a message to you which you must hear. I——"[b]

"Shut up," said Frost to Straik.

"Really, Mr. Straik, really," said Wither. Between them they[c] shouldered him aside.

"Now look 'ere, Mr. Wither," said Jules, "I tell you straight I'm very far from satisfied. Here's *another* parson. I don't remember the name of any such person coming before me,[d] and it wouldn't have got past me if it had done, see? You and I'll have to have a very serious conversation. It seems to me you've been making appointments behind my back and turning the place into a kind of seminary. And that's a thing I won't stand. Nor will the British people."

"I know. I know," said Wither. "I understand your feelings exactly. You can rely on complete sympathy. I am eager and waiting to explain the situation to you. In the meantime, perhaps, as Dr. Ambrosius seems slightly overcome and the dressing-bell[e] has just sounded . . . oh, I beg your pardon. This *is* Dr. Ambrosius."

The tramp, to whom the real magician had recently turned, was now risen from his chair, and approaching. Jules[f] held out his hand sulkily. Dr. Ambrosius,[g] looking over Jules's shoulder and grinning in an inexplicable fashion, seized it and shook it, as if absent-mindedly, some ten or fifteen times. His breath, Jules noticed, was strong and his grip horny. He was not liking Dr. Ambrosius. And he disliked even more the massive form of the interpreter towering over them both.

---

[a] moment] *BA*; moment, *M*
[b] I——"] *BA*; I—" *M*
[c] they] *BM*; They *A*
[d] me,] *BA*; me *M*
[e] dressing-bell] *BA*; dressing bell *M*
[f] approaching. Jules] *BM*; approaching Jules, *A*
☛ A's punctuation here is confused and confusing: it makes the tramp (who is grinning in the next sentence) sulk instead of Jules.
[g] Dr. Ambrosius,] *A*; The other, *BM*
☛ A makes this change for clarification, not because of the abridgement.

① *bons viveurs*

The Supplement to the *NED* stigmatises "Bon viveur" as "[a] pseudo-French substitute for BON VIVANT"—defined in volume I as "One fond of good living; a gourmand."

SIXTEEN

Banquet at Belbury

I

IT was with great pleasure that Mark found himself once more dressing for dinner and what seemed likely to be an excellent dinner. He got a seat with Filostrato on his right and a[a] rather inconspicuous newcomer on his left. Even Filostrato seemed human and friendly compared with the two initiates, and to the newcomer his heart positively warmed. He noticed with surprise that the tramp sat[b] at the high table between Jules and Wither, but did not often look in that direction, for the tramp, catching his eye, had imprudently raised his glass and winked at him. The strange priest stood patiently behind the tramp's chair. For the rest, nothing[c] of importance happened until the King's health had been drunk and Jules rose to make his speech.

For the first few minutes[d] anyone glancing down the long tables would have seen what we always see on such occasions.[e] There were the placid faces of elderly *bons viveurs* whom food and wine had placed in a contentment which no amount of ① speeches could violate.[f] There were the patient faces of responsible but serious diners[g] who had long since learned how to pursue their own thoughts[h] while attending to the speech just enough to respond wherever a laugh or a low rumble of serious assent was obligatory.[i] There was the usual fidgety expression on the faces of young men unappreciative of port and hungry for tobacco.[j] There was bright over-elaborate attention on the powdered faces of women who knew their duty to society. But if you had[k] gone on looking down the tables you would presently have seen a change. You would have seen face after face look up and turn in the direction of the speaker. You would have seen first curiosity, then fixed

---

[a] a] *BM*; an *A*
[b] sat] *BM*; sitting *A*
[c] nothing] *BM*; Nothing *A*
[d] minutes] *BA*; minutes, *M*
[e] occasions.] *BM*; occasions: *A*
[f] violate.] *BM*; violate, *A*
[g] diners] *BA*; diners, *M*
[h] thoughts] *BA*; thoughts, *M*
[i] obligatory.] *BM*; obligatory, *A*
[j] tobacco.] *BM*; tobacco, the *A*
[k] had] *A*; have *BM*
☛ B & M's sequence "if you have […] you would have" would be incorrect: a hypothetical conditional requires a past perfect verb in the protasis: A's reading is a correction.

① *The blunder irritated him extremely.*

This apparently irrational anger is presumably because of the influence of Mars, acting through Merlin (see 359 n. 2 & 368 n. 1).

attention, then incredulity. Finally,[a] you would have noticed that the room was utterly silent, without a cough or a creak, that every eye was fixed on Jules, and soon every mouth opened in something between fascination and horror.

To different members of the audience the change came differently. To Frost it began at the moment when he heard Jules end a sentence with the words[b] "as gross an anachronism as to trust to calvary[c] for salvation in modern war." *Cavalry*,[d] thought Frost almost aloud. Why couldn't the fool mind what he was saying. The blunder irritated him extremely. Perhaps—but hullo! what was this? Had his hearing gone wrong? For Jules seemed to be saying that the future density of mankind depended on the implosion of the horses of Nature. "He's drunk," thought Frost. Then, crystal clear in articulation, beyond all possibility of mistake, came[e] "The madrigore of verjuice must be talthibianised."

Wither was slower to notice what was happening. He had never expected the speech to have any meaning as a whole,[f] and for a long time the familiar catchwords[g] rolled on in a manner which did not disturb the expectation of his ear. He thought, indeed, that Jules was sailing very near the wind, that a very small false step would deprive both the speaker and the audience of even the power[h] to pretend that he was saying anything in particular. But as long as that border was not crossed, he rather admired the speech; it was in his own line. Then he thought:[i] "Come! That's going too far. Even they must see that you can't talk about accepting the challenge of the past by throwing down the gauntlet of the future." He looked cautiously down the room. All was well. But it wouldn't be if Jules didn't sit down pretty soon. In that last sentence there were surely words he didn't know. What the deuce did he mean by *aholibate*? He looked down the room again. They were attending too much, always a bad sign. Then came the sentence, "The surrogates esemplanted in a continual of porous variations."

Mark did not at first attend to the speech at all. He had plenty of other things to think of. The appearance of this spouting popinjay at the very crisis of his own history was a mere interruption. He was too endangered and yet also, in some

---

[a] Finally,] *BA*; Finally *M*
[b] words] *BA*; words, *M*
[c] calvary] *BA*; Calvary *M*
☛ The word would normally have a capital, since it is a proper name (*NED*), but here it is a metathesis for "cavalry", which does not require a capital (see Lake 54).
[d] *Cavalry*,] *MA*; *Cavalry B*
[e] came] *BA;* came, *M*
[f] whole,] *A*; whole *BM*
[g] catchwords] *BA*; catch-words *M*
[h] even the power] *B*; the power even *M*
☛ Either reading would be correct (Quirk *et al* 8.116 & 119).
[i] thought:] *BA*; thought, *M*

precarious way, too happy to bother about Jules. Once or twice some phrase caught his ear and made him want to smile. What first awoke him to the real situation was the behaviour of those who sat near him. He was aware of their increasing stillness. He noticed that everyone except himself had begun to attend. He looked up and saw their faces. And then first he really listened. "We shall not," Jules was saying, "we shall not till we can secure the erebation of all prostundiary initems." Little as he cared for Jules, a sudden shock of alarm pierced him. He looked round again. Obviously it was not he who was mad—they had all heard the gibberish. Except possibly the tramp,[a] who looked as solemn as a judge. He had never heard a speech from one of these real toffs before and would have been disappointed if he could understand it. Nor had he ever before drunk vintage port, and though he did not much like the taste,[b] he had been working away like a man.

Wither had not forgotten for a moment that there were reporters present. That in itself did not matter much. If anything unsuitable appeared in to-morrow's[c] paper, it would be child's play for him to say that the reporters were drunk or mad and break them. On the other hand,[d] he might let the story pass. Jules was in many respects a nuisance, and this might be as good an opportunity as any other for ending his career. But this was not the immediate question. Wither was wondering whether he should wait till Jules sat down or whether he should rise and interrupt him with a few judicious words. He did not want a scene. It would be better if Jules sat down of his own accord. At the same time[e] there was by now an atmosphere in that crowded room which warned Wither not to delay too long. Glancing down at the second hand[f] of his watch, he decided to wait two minutes more. Almost as he did so he knew that he had misjudged it. An intolerable falsetto laugh rang out from the bottom of the table and would not stop. Some[g] fool of a woman had got hysterics. Immediately Wither touched Jules on the arm, signed to him with a nod, and rose.

"Eh? Blotcher bulldoo?" muttered Jules. But Wither, laying his hand on the little man's shoulder, quietly but with all his weight, forced him down into a sitting position. Then Wither cleared his throat. He knew how to do that so that every eye in the room turned immediately to look at him. The woman stopped screaming. People who had been sitting dead still in strained positions moved and relaxed.

---

[a] tramp,] *A*; Tramp, *BM*
[b] taste,] *BA*; taste *M*
[c] to-morrow's] *BA*; tomorrow's *M*
[d] hand,] *BA*; hand *M*
[e] time] *B*; time, *M*
[f] second hand] *B*; second-hand *M*
[g] . Some] *BM*; ; some *A*

① *Both for some reason infuriated him.*

This apparently irrational anger is presumably because of the influence of Mars, acting through Merlin (see 359 n. 2 & 366 n. 1).

Wither looked down the room for a second or two in silence, feeling his grip on the audience. He saw that he already had them in hand. There would be no more hysterics. Then he began to speak.

They ought to have all looked more and more comfortable as he proceeded; and there ought soon to have been murmurs of grave regret for the tragedy which they had just witnessed. That was what Wither expected. What he actually saw bewildered him. The same too attentive silence which had prevailed during Jules's speech had returned. Bright unblinking eyes and open mouths greeted him in every direction. The woman began to laugh again—or no, this time it was two women. Cosser, after one frightened glance, jumped up, overturning his chair, and bolted from the room.

The Deputy Director could not understand this, for to him his own voice seemed to be uttering the speech he had resolved to make. But the audience heard him saying, "Tidies and fugleman—I sheel foor that we all—er—most steeply rebut the defensible, though, I trust, lavatory, aspasia[a] which gleams to have selected our redeemed inspector this deceiving. It would—ah—be shark, very shark, from anyone's debenture . . ."

The woman who had laughed rose hastily from her chair. The man seated next to her heard her murmur in his ear, "Vood wooloo." He took in the meaningless syllables and her unnatural expression at one moment. Both for some ① reason infuriated him. He rose to help her to move back her chair with one of those gestures of savage politeness which often, in modern society, serve instead of blows. He wrenched the chair, in fact, out of her hand. She screamed, tripped on a ruck in the carpet, and[b] fell. The man on the other side of her saw her fall and saw the first man's expression of fury. "Bot are you blammit?" he roared, leaning towards him with a threatening movement. Four or five people in that part of the room were now up. They were shouting. At the same time there[c] was movement elsewhere. Several of the younger men were making for the door. "Bundlemen, bundlemen," said Wither sternly,[d] in a much louder voice. He had often before, merely by raising his voice and speaking one authoritative word,[e] reduced troublesome meetings to order.

But this time he[f] was not even heard. At least twenty people present were at that very moment attempting to do the same thing. To each of them it seemed

---

[a] aspasia] *A*; Aspasia *BM*
[b] , and] *A*; and *BM*
[c] there] *BM*; There *A*
[d] sternly,] *BA*; sternly *M*
[e] word,] *B*; word *M*
[f] he] *BM*; He *A*

① *a London terminus on a bank holiday*

Between the World Wars the pressure on trains to and from London on bank holidays appears to have been notoriously great. This was taken for granted by writers of the time: for example, Lewis's friend Dorothy L. Sayers uses the fact in a short story, in order to bring a group of people unexpectedly into conversation when "[t]he rush of travellers after the Bank Holiday had caused an overflow of third-class passengers into the firsts" ("Unsolved Puzzle" 225). Later on, one of the eight passengers in the compartment remarks, "We're just running in. Only twenty minutes late. I call that very good for holiday-time" (233).

plain that things were just at that stage when a word or so of plain sense, spoken in a new voice, would restore the whole room to sanity. One thought of a sharp word, one of a joke, one of something very quiet and telling. As a result fresh gibberish in a great variety of tones rang out from several places at once. Frost was the only one of the leaders who attempted to say nothing. Instead he[a] pencilled a few words on a slip of paper, beckoned to a servant, and made him understand by signs that it was to be given to Miss Hardcastle.

By the time the message was put into her hands the clamour was universal. To Mark it sounded like the noise of a crowded restaurant in a foreign country. Miss Hardcastle smoothed out the paper and stooped her head to read. The message ran:[b] *Blunt frippers intantly to pointed bdeluroid. Purgent. Cost.* She crumpled it up in her hand.

Miss Hardcastle had known before she got the message that she was three parts drunk. She had expected and intended to be so: she knew that later on in the evening she would go down to the cells and do things. There was a new prisoner there—a little fluffy girl of the kind the Fairy enjoyed—with whom she could pass an agreeable hour. The tumult of gibberish did not alarm her: she found it exciting. Apparently[c] Frost wanted her to take some action. She decided that she would. She rose and walked the whole length of the room to the door, locked it, put the key in her pocket, and then turned to survey the company. She noticed for the first time that neither the supposed Merlin nor the Basque priest were anywhere to be seen. Wither and Jules, both on their feet, were struggling with each other. She set out towards them.

So many people had now risen that it took her a long time to reach them. All semblance of a dinner-party[d] had disappeared: it was more like the scene at a ① London terminus on a bank holiday. Everyone was trying to restore order, but everyone was unintelligible, and everyone, in the effort to be understood, was talking louder and louder. She shouted several times herself. She even fought a good deal before she reached her goal.

There came an ear-splitting noise and after that, at last, a few seconds of dead

---

[a] Instead he] *A*; Instead, he had *BM*

☛ There is no reason for the past perfect here. "Instead" introduces the action Frost took as opposed to the one he did not attempt. It is preferable for these two possible actions to be expressed in the same tense: "pencilled" parallels "attempted" but "had pencilled" does not. "Instead" introduces the action Frost took as opposed to the one he did not attempt. It is preferable for these two possible actions to be expressed in the same tense: "pencilled" parallels "attempted" as "had pencilled" would not.

[b] ran:] *BA*; ran, *M*

[c] Apparently] *BA*; Apparently, *M*

[d] dinner-party] *BA*; dinner party *M*

① *It was the smell more than anything else which recalled the scene to Mark in later life*

Although it is puzzling to imagine how Mark is likely to come across the smell of shooting mixed with blood, port and Madeira ever again, the reader is reassured here that he survives the banquet and its aftermath.

② *port and Madeira*

Fortified dessert wines.

silence. Mark noticed first that Jules had been killed: only secondly[a] that Miss Hardcastle had shot him. After that it was difficult to be sure what happened. The stampede and the shouting may have concealed a dozen reasonable plans for disarming the murderess, but it was impossible to concert them. Nothing came of them but kicking, struggling, leaping on tables and under tables, pressing on and pulling back, screams, breaking of glass. She fired again and again. It was the smell ① more than anything else which recalled the scene to Mark in later life: the smell of the shooting mixed with the sticky compound smell of blood and port and ② Madeira.[b]

Suddenly the confusion of cries ran all together into one thin,[c] long-drawn noise of terror. Everyone had become *more* frightened. Something had darted very quickly across the floor between the two long tables and disappeared under one of them. Perhaps half the people present had not seen what it was—had only caught a gleam of black and tawny. Those who had seen it clearly could not tell the others: they could only point and scream meaningless syllables. But Mark had recognised it. It was a tiger.

For the first time that evening everybody realised how many hiding-places[d] the room contained. The tiger might be under any of the tables. It might be in any of the deep bay windows, behind the curtains. There was a screen across one corner of the room,[e] too.

It is not to be supposed that even now none of the company kept their heads. With loud appeals to the whole room or with urgent whispers to their immediate neighbours they tried to stem the panic, to arrange an orderly retreat from the room, to indicate how the brute could be lured or scared into the open and shot. But the[f] doom of gibberish frustrated all their efforts. They could not arrest the two movements which were going on. The majority had not seen Miss Hardcastle lock the door: they were pressing towards it, to get out at all costs: they would fight, they would kill if they could, rather than not reach the door. A large minority,[g] on the other hand, knew that the door was locked. There must be another door, the one used by the servants, the one whereby the tiger had got in.

---

[a] secondly] *BA*; secondly, *M*
[b] Madeira.] *BA*; madeira. *M*
[c] thin,] *A*; thin *BM*
[d] hiding-places] *BA*; hiding places *M*
[e] room,] *BA*; room *M*
[f] the] *BM*; The *A*
[g] minority,] *MA*; majority, *B*
☛ A clear error in B, corrected in A. Three lines earlier we read, "The majority had not seen Miss Hardcastle lock the door". By contrast, a second group "knew that the door was locked". This second group cannot also be a majority, let alone a large majority.

They[a] were pressing to the opposite end of the room to find it. The whole centre of the room was occupied by the meeting of these two waves—a huge football scrum, at first noisy with frantic efforts at explanation, but soon, as the struggle thickened, almost silent except for the sound of labouring breath, kicking or trampling feet, and meaningless muttering.

Four or five of these combatants lurched heavily against a table, pulling off the cloth in their fall and with it all the fruit-dishes,[b] decanters, glasses, plates. Out of that confusion with a howl of terror[c] broke the tiger. It happened so quickly that Mark hardly took it in. He saw the hideous head, the cat's snarl of the mouth, the flaming eyes. He heard a shot—the last. Then the tiger had disappeared again. Something fat and white and bloodied was down among the feet of the scrummers. Mark could not recognise it at first,[d] for the face, from where he stood, was upside down,[e] and the grimaces disguised it until it was quite dead. Then he recognised Miss Hardcastle.

Wither and Frost were no longer to be seen. There was a growling close at hand. Mark turned, thinking he had located the tiger. Then he caught out of the corner of his eye a glimpse of something smaller and greyer. He thought it was an Alsatian. If so, the dog was mad. It ran along the table, its tail between its legs, slavering. A woman, standing with her back to the table, turned, saw it, tried to scream, next moment went down as the creature leaped at her throat. It was a wolf. "Ai—ai!!" squealed Filostrato,[f] and jumped on the table. Something else had darted between his feet. Mark saw it streak across the floor and enter the scrum and wake that mass of interlocked terror into new and frantic convulsions. It was some kind of snake.

Above the chaos of sounds which now awoke—there seemed to be a new animal in the room every minute—there came at last one sound in which those still capable of understanding could take comfort. *Thud—thud—thud*; the door was being battered from the outside. It was a huge folding door, a door by which a small locomotive could almost enter, for the room was made in imitation of Versailles. Already one or two of the panels were splintering. The noise maddened those who had made that door their goal. It seemed also to madden the animals. They did not stop to eat what they killed, or not more than to take one lick of the blood. There were dead and dying bodies everywhere by now, for the scrum was

[a] . They] *BM*; ; they *A*
[b] fruit-dishes,] *BA*; fruit dishes, *M*
[c] with a howl of terror] *BA*; , with a howl of terror, *M*
[d] first,] *BA*; first *M*
[e] down,] *BA*; down *M*
[f] Filostrato,] *BA*; Filostrato *M*

① *The pride and insolent glory […] the King of the world . . .*

When the Company at St. Anne's falls under the influence of Saturn they feel crushed, then fall under the influence of Jupiter, king of the planets (ch. 15 I 347–48). The influence of these planets, working through Merlin, is now felt by Mark at Belbury as he associates the elephant first with crushing weight and then with kingship.

by this time killing as many as the beasts. And always from all sides went up the voices trying to shout to those beyond the door, "Quick! Quick! Hurry!"[a] but shouting only nonsense. Louder and louder grew the noise at the door. As if in imitation a great gorilla leaped on the table where Jules had sat and began drumming on its chest. Then, with a roar, it jumped down into the crowd.

At last the door gave. Both wings gave. The passage, framed in the doorway, was dark. Out of the darkness there came a grey snaky something. It swayed in the air:[b] then began methodically to break off the splintered wood on each side and make the doorway clear. Then Mark saw distinctly how it swooped down, curled itself round a man—Steele, he thought, but everyone looked different now—and lifted him bodily high off the floor. After that, monstrous, improbable, the huge shape of the elephant thrust its way into the room: its eyes enigmatic, its ears standing stiffly out like devil's wings on each side of its head. It stood for a second with Steele writhing in the curl of its trunk and then dashed him to the floor. It trampled him. After that it raised head and trunk again and brayed horribly,[c] then plunged straight forward into the room, trumpeting and trampling—continuously trampling like a girl treading grapes, heavily and soon wetly trampling in a pash of blood and bones, of flesh, wine, fruit, and sodden table-cloth. Something more than danger darted from the sight into Mark's brain. ① The pride and insolent glory of the beast, the carelessness of its killings, seemed to crush his spirit even as its flat feet were crushing women and men. Here, surely,[d] came the King of the world . . . then[e] everything went black and he[f] knew no more.

II

When Mr. Bultitude had come[g] to his senses he had found himself in a dark place full of unfamiliar smells. This did not very greatly surprise or trouble him. He was inured to mystery. To poke his head into any spare bedroom at St. Anne's, as he sometimes managed to do, was an adventure no less remarkable than that which had now befallen him. And the[h] smells here were, on the whole, promising. He perceived that food was in the neighbourhood and—more exciting still—a female of his own species. There were a great many other animals about too, apparently,

[a] door, "Quick! Quick! Hurry!"] *B*; door. "Quick. Quick. Hurry," *M*
[b] air:] *BA*; air; *M*
[c] horribly,] *BA*; horribly; *M*
[d] Here, surely,] *B*; Here surely *M*
[e] then] *BM*; Then *A*
[f] he] *BM*; Mark *A*
[g] come] *BM*; came *A*
[h] the] *BM*; The *A*

① *fags*

A slang term for cheap cigarettes (*NED* Supplement, "Fag" *sb.*[4]).

② *curse of Babel*

See 306 n. 1.

③ *Qui Verbum Dei contempserunt, eis auferetur etiam verbum hominis.*

This is resonant of various Old Testament warnings that destruction will follow if the word of the Lord is despised (see for example Proverbs 13: 13 and Numbers 15: 31), but the particularly apt taking away of human language is a punishment specifically found in this novel.

④ *as the mild shafts of Artemis*

Artemis is Luna or the Moon, traditionally (with the Sun) considered one of the planets (*Discarded Image* 108–09). Since Lewis is syncretising contemporary knowledge of the Solar System with the syncretic model (see "Planetary Powers" in Introduction 4), he deals with the natures only of the true planets and Luna is not explicitly mentioned among the powers that invest Merlin. Here, however, Lewis acknowledges the tradition by placing Artemis within a simile: Merlin releases the animals injured beyond cure using the planetary powers within him, which are (in this context) *like* the powers of Artemis, who is also the goddess of the hunt and slayer of beasts.

but that was rather irrelevant than alarming. He decided to go and find both the female bear and the food. It[a] was then he discovered that walls met him in three directions and bars in the fourth: he[b] could not get out. This, combined with an inarticulate want for the human companionship to which he was accustomed, gradually plunged him into depression. Sorrow such as only animals know—huge seas of disconsolate emotion with not one little raft of reason to float on—drowned him fathoms deep. In his own fashion he lifted up his voice and wept.

And yet, not very far away from him, another, and human, captive was almost equally engulfed. Mr. Maggs, seated in a little white cell, chewed steadily on his great sorrow as only a simple man can chew. An educated man in his circumstances would have found misery streaked with reflection; would have been thinking how this new idea of cure instead of punishment, so humane in seeming, had in fact deprived the criminal of all rights and by taking away the *name* punishment[c] made the *thing* infinite. But Mr. Maggs thought all the time simply of one thing: that this was the day he had counted on all through his sentence, that he had expected by this time to be having his tea at home with Ivy (she'd have got something tasty for him the first night) and that it hadn't happened. He sat quite still. About once in every two minutes a single large tear trickled down his cheek. He wouldn't have minded so much if they'd let him have a packet of fags. ①

Humane Remedial Treatment

It was Merlin who brought release to both. He had left the dining-room as soon as the curse of Babel was well fixed upon the enemies. No one had seen him ② go. Wither had once heard his voice calling loud and intolerably glad above the riot of nonsense, "*Qui Verbum Dei contempserunt, eis auferetur etiam verbum*[d] *hominis.*"[1e] After that ③ he did not see him again, nor the tramp either. Merlin had gone and spoiled his house. He had liberated beasts and men. The animals that were already maimed he killed with an instantaneous motion of the powers that were in him, swift and painless as the mild shafts of Artemis. To Mr. Maggs he had handed a written ④ message. It ran as follows: "Dearest Tom,[f] I do hope your well and the Director

[1] "They that have despised the Word of God, from them shall the word of man also be taken away."[g]

---

[a] food. It] *BA*; food; it *M*
[b] fourth: he] *BA*; fourth. He *M*
[c] punishment] *BA*; Punishment *M*
[d] *verbum*] *MA*; *Verbum B*
[e] *hominis.*"[1]] *MA*; *hominis*" ("They that […] taken away.) *B*
[f] It ran as follows: "Dearest Tom,] *M*; ¶ It ran as follows: ¶ DEAREST TOM,— *BA*
☛ See note to 108[e]. Different paragraphing noted by Lake (55).
[g] [1] "They […]away."] *A*; They […] away. *M* *Not here in B.*
☛ This translation is parenthetically incorporated into the text in B (see 373[e] above).

① *"made him all the cheer that a beast can make a man."*

In Malory, Sir Percival saves a lion from a serpent, and it "made no resemblant to fight with him, but made him all the cheer that a beast might make a man" (*Morte* XIV ch. 6). In a time of solitude and distress, described in this and the following chapter, the lion is of great comfort to Percival, who thanks God "of the fellowship of that beast" (XIV ch. 6). The contexts of Lewis's literary allusions are not always relevant, but this seems to be so, as Merlin, like Percival, is in the service of God and in need of comfort as he performs a hard task.

here is one of the right sort and he says to come as quick as you can to the Manor of[a] St. Anne's. And dont go through Edgestow Tom whatever you do but come any way you can I should think someone had give you a Lift. Everything is all-right no[b] more now. Lots of love ever your own Ivy."[c] The other prisoners he let go where they pleased. The tramp, finding Merlin's back turned on him for a second, and having noticed that the house seemed to be empty, made his escape, first into the kitchen and thence, reinforced[d] with all the edibles his pockets would hold, into the wide world. I have not been able to trace him further.

Lewis as Character

The beasts, except for one donkey who disappeared about the same time as the tramp, Merlin sent to the dining-room,[e] maddened with his voice and touch. But he retained Mr. Bultitude. The latter had recognised him at once as the same man whom he had sat beside in the Blue Room: less sweet and sticky than on that occasion, but recognisably the same. Even without the brilliantine there was that in Merlin which exactly suited the bear and at their meeting it "made him all the cheer that a beast can make a man." He laid his hand on its head and whispered in its ear, and its dark mind was filled with excitement[f] as though some long forbidden and forgotten pleasures[g] were suddenly held out to it. Down the long, empty passages of Belbury it padded behind him.[h] Saliva dripped from its mouth and it was beginning to growl. It was thinking of warm, salt tastes, of the pleasant resistances of bone, of things to crunch and lick and worry. ①

---

[a] of] *A*; at *BM*

☛ The quotations provided by the *NED* ("Manor" 1. [a]) include both "manor at" and "manor of" a place; all other instances in this novel have "the Manor at St. Anne's". I follow A as copy-text, but also because all the other instance in the novel are spoken or written by educated people, and Ivy's use of "of" here may be intended to show an old-fashioned usage preserved in less educated discourse.

[b] no] *BM*; No *A*

[c] Ivy."] *M*; IVY." ¶ *BA*

☛ See note to 108[e].

[d] reinforced] *BA*; re-inforced *M*

[e] dining-room,] *BA*; dining room, *M*

[f] excitement] *BM*; excitement; *A*

[g] pleasures] *A*; pleasure *BM*

☛ The bear is now given the pronoun "it" instead of "him" to highlight that here he needs to function as a wild, untamed animal: presumably this makes available to him more than one "pleasure" that was not permissible to him as a pet.

[h] him.] *M*; them. *BA*

☛ Noted by Lake (55) as a an error in B & A. Maybe this is a hangover from an earlier form of the plot, where Merlin has company. At this point in the plot as we have it, Merlin is alone with the bear—the tramp has absconded and the other animals have been sent to the dining-room—so the pronoun needs to be singular.

III

Mark felt himself shaken; then the cold shock of water dashed in his face. With difficulty he sat up. The room was empty except for the bodies of the distorted dead. The unmoved electric light glared down on hideous confusion—food and filth, spoiled luxury and mangled men, each more hideous by reason of the other. It was the supposed Basque priest who had roused him. "*Surge, miselle*,"[1a] he said, helping Mark to his feet. Mark rose; he had some cuts and bruises and his head ached,[b] but he was substantially uninjured. The man held out to him wine in one of the great silver cups, but Mark turned away from it with a shudder. He looked with bewilderment on the face of the stranger and found that a letter was being put into his hand. "Your wife awaits you," it ran, "at the Manor at St. Anne's on the Hill. Come quickly by road as best you can. Do not go near Edgestow—A. Denniston."[c] He looked again at Merlin and thought his face terrible. But Merlin met his glance with a look of unsmiling authority, laid a hand on his shoulder, and impelled him over all the tinkling and slippery havoc to the door. His fingers sent a prickly sensation through Mark's skin. He was led down to the cloakroom, made to fling on a coat and hat (neither were his own) and thence out under the stars, bitter cold and two o'clock in the morning, Sirius bitter green, a few flakes of dry snow beginning to fall. He hesitated. The stranger stood back from him for a second, then, with his open hand, struck him on the back; Mark's bones ached at the memory as long as he lived. Next moment he found himself running as he had never run since boyhood; not in fear, but because his legs would not stop. When he became master of them again he was half a mile from Belbury,[d] and looking back,[e] he saw a light in the sky.

Appendix B

[1] "Get up, wretched boy."[f]

---

[a] "*Surge, miselle*,"[1]] *A*; "*Surge, miselle* (Get up, wretched boy)," *M*, *Surge, miselle* ("Get up, wretched boy"), *B*

[b] ached,] *B*; ached *M*

[c] Edgestow—A. Denniston."] *M*; Edgestow.—A. DENNISTON." *BA*

☛ See note to 108[e].

[d] Belbury,] *BA*; Belbury *M*

[e] back,] *A*; back *BM*

[f] [1] "Get up, wretched boy."] *A*; *not here in M&B*

☛ This translation is parenthetically incorporated into the text in M & B (see note 375[a] above).

① *only one in the saddle of whose soul rode Mercury himself could thus have unmade language.*

Lewis has already implied the influence of Mars, Saturn and Jupiter at Belbury (see: 359 n. 2; 366 n. 1; 368 n. 1; 372 n. 1). Now he explicitly states that Mercury, god of meaning (see ch. 15 I 341–42 & 342 n. 1) working through Merlin, has acted to bring about a second Babel at Belbury.

② *the belief that Tellus was blockaded*

Ransom and Merlin discuss this assumption, and how Ransom's interplanetary travels (brought about by evil men) inadvertently changed things, in ch. 13 V.

③ *a fixed refusal of everything […] mind could entertain.*

Wither has moved from Hegel's belief (complicated and questionable though it was) that reality, rationality and self-consciousness are linked, to Hume's denial that the mind is anything other than its perceptions. Pragmatism would have encouraged Wither to consider "truth" as merely a synonym for effectiveness in action, and Logical Positivism to deny meaning to any statement not verifiable (see *Encyclopædia Britannica*: "Hegelian Philosophy"; "Knowledge"; "Pragmatism"; *Collected Letters* vol. 3 462 & n. 197.). Thence it was a small step to "the complete void" in which Wither cannot acknowledge that it is possible to predicate any fact of any subject, which is the function of verbs in the indicative mood.

Tolkien's character Gollum is so obsessed with the Ring and a narrow range of selfish concerns that he displays the same emptiness: when Sam hopes to see "oliphaunts" Gollum retorts, with progressively more emphatic repudiation, "Sméagol has not heard of them. He does not want to see them. He does not want them to be" (*Lord of the Rings* IV ch. 3 63–64).

④ *The last scene of* Dr. Faustus*, where the man raves and implores on the edge of Hell*

At the end of Marlowe's play, Faustus is left alone: the clock strikes eleven and he shows clear awareness of what is happening to him:

> Ah, Faustus.
> Now thou hast but one bare hour to live,
> And then thou must be damn'd perpetually.
> (1449–51)

The clock strikes the half-hour, and still he raves, then midnight, and Devils enter and take him away.

IV

Wither was not among those killed in the dining-room.[a] He naturally knew all the possible ways out of the room, and even before the coming of the tiger he had slipped away. He understood what was happening, if not perfectly, yet better than anyone else. He saw that the Basque interpreter had done the whole thing. And, by that, he knew also that powers more than human had come down to destroy Belbury; only one in the saddle of whose soul rode Mercury himself could thus ① have unmade language. And this again told him something worse. It meant that his own dark Masters had been completely out in their calculations. They had talked of a barrier which made it impossible that powers from Deep Heaven should reach the surface of the Earth: had[b] assured him that nothing from outside could pass the Moon's orbit. All their polity was based on the belief that Tellus was ② blockaded, beyond the reach of such assistance and left (as far as that went) to their mercy and his. Therefore he knew that everything was lost.

It is incredible how little this knowledge moved him. It could not, because he had long ceased to believe in knowledge itself. What had been in his far-off youth a merely aesthetic repugnance to realities that were crude or vulgar, had deepened and darkened, year after year, into a fixed refusal of everything that was ③ in any degree other than himself. He had passed from Hegel into Hume, thence through Pragmatism, and thence through Logical Positivism, and out at last into the complete void. The indicative mood now corresponded to no thought that his mind could entertain. He had willed with his whole heart that there should be no reality and no truth, and now[c] even the imminence of his own ruin could not wake him. The last scene of *Dr. Faustus* where the man raves and implores on the edge ④ of Hell is, perhaps, stage fire. The last moments before damnation are not often[d] so dramatic. Often the man knows with perfect clarity that some still possible action of his own will could yet save him. But he cannot make this knowledge real to himself. Some tiny habitual sensuality, some resentment too trivial to waste on a blue-bottle, the indulgence of some fatal lethargy, seems to him at that moment more important than the choice between total joy and total destruction. With eyes wide open, seeing that the endless terror is just about to begin and yet (for the moment) unable to feel terrified, he watches passively, not moving a finger for his

[a] dining-room.] *BA*; dining room. *M*
[b] : had] *B*; ; had *M* , had *A*
[c] now] *BM*; Now, *A*
[d] often] *BM*; always *A*

① *joy and reason*

Lewis came to "admit[…] that God was God" (*Surpirsed by Joy* ch. 14 182) through his search for joy and the use of reason, so to reject joy and reason is to damn oneself, as Wither is seen to do here. The centrality of joy and reason in Lewis's theology can be seen in the titles of his two spiritual autobiographies: *Surprised by Joy* (1955) and *The Pilgrim's Regress: An Allegorical Apology for Christianity, Reason and Romanticism* (1933).

② *So full of sleep are they at the time when they leave the right way.*

A reference to the opening of Dante's *Inferno* (Smilde), when he describes how he finds himself astray "in a dark wood, / Where the right road was wholly lost and gone" (Dante trans. Sayers I 2–3) ("*per una selva oscura; / Chè la diritta via era smaritta*" (I canto 1). Dante admits:

How I got into it I cannot say	*I'non so ben ridir com'io v'entrai*
Because I was so heavy and full of sleep	*Tant'era pien di sonno in su quell punto*
When first I stumbled from the narrow way.	*Che la verace via abbandonai.*
(I 11-12)	(I canto 4)

③ *Sterk*

Ransom's interplanetary adventures began, in *Out of the Silent Planet*, on the road to Sterk, a village where he hoped to find a place to stay when an hotel at the previous village had refused to accommodate him: he never reached Sterk, as he was diverted to the place where Weston and Devine (Feverstone) were plotting and was kidnapped by them (*Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 1–2).

own rescue, while the last links with joy and reason are severed, and drowsily sees ①
the trap close upon his soul. So full of sleep are they at the time when they leave ②
the right way.

Straik and Filostrato were also still alive. They met in one of the cold, lighted passages, so far away from the dining-room[a] that the noise of the carnage was but a faint murmur. Filostrato was hurt, his right arm badly mauled. They did not speak—both knew that the attempt would be useless—but walked on side by side. Filostrato was intending to get round to the garage by a back way: he thought that he might still be able to drive, in a fashion, at least as far as Sterk. ③

As they rounded a corner they both saw what they had often seen before but had expected never to see again—the Deputy Director, stooped, creaking, pacing, humming his tune. Filostrato did not want to go with him, but Wither, as if noticing his wounded condition, offered him an arm. Filostrato tried to decline it: nonsense syllables came from his mouth. Wither took his left arm firmly; Straik seized the other, the mauled arm. Squealing and shivering with pain, Filostrato accompanied them perforce. But worse awaited him. He was not an initiate, he knew nothing of the Dark Eldils.[b] He believed that his skill had really kept Alcasan's brain alive. Hence, even in his pain, he cried out with horror when he found the other two drawing him through the ante-room of the Head and into the Head's presence without pausing for any of those antiseptic preparations which he had always imposed on his colleagues. He tried vainly to tell them that one moment of such carelessness might undo all his work. But this time it was in the room itself that his conductors began undressing. And this time they took off all their clothes.

They plucked off his,[c] too. When the right sleeve, stiff with blood, would not move, Wither got a knife from the ante-room and ripped it. In the end, the three men stood naked before the Head—gaunt, big-boned Straik, Filostrato[d] a wobbling mountain of fat, Wither[e] an obscene senility. Then the high ridge of terror from which Filostrato was never again to descend, was reached; for what he thought impossible began to happen. No one had read the dials, adjusted the pressures, or turned on the air and the artificial saliva. Yet words came out of the dry gaping mouth of the dead man's head. "Adore!" it said.

Filostrato felt his companions forcing his body forwards, then up again, then forwards and downwards a second time. He was compelled to bob up and

---

[a] dining-room] *BA*; dining room *M*
[b] Dark Eldils.] *BA*; dark eldils. *M*
[c] his,] *BA*; his *M*
[d] Straik, Filostrato] *B*; Straik; Filostrato, *M*
[e] fat, Wither] *B*; fat; Wither, *M*

down in rhythmic obeisance, the others meanwhile doing the same. Almost the last thing he saw on earth was the skinny folds on Wither's neck shaking like the wattles of a turkey-cock. Almost the last thing he heard was Wither beginning to chant. Then Straik joined in. Then, horribly, he found he was singing himself—[a]

"Ouroborinda!
Ouroborinda!
Ouroborinda ba-ba-hee!"[b]

But not for long. "Another," said the voice, "give me another head." Filostrato knew at once why they were forcing him to a certain place in the wall. He had devised it all himself. In the wall that separated the Head's room from the ante-chamber there was a little shutter. When drawn back it revealed a window in the wall, and a sash to that window which could fall quickly and heavily. But the sash was a knife. The little guillotine had not been meant to be used like this![c] They were going to murder him uselessly, unscientifically![d] If he were doing it to one of them, all would have been different; everything would have been prepared weeks beforehand—the temperature of both rooms exactly right, the blade sterilised, the attachments all ready to be made almost before the head was severed. He had even calculated what changes the terror of the victim would probably make in his blood-pressure:[e] the artificial blood-stream would be arranged accordingly, so as to take over its work with the least possible breach of continuity. His last thought was that he had underestimated the terror.

The two initiates, red from top to toe, gazed at each other, breathing heavily. Almost before the fat dead legs and buttocks of the Italian had ceased quivering, they were driven to begin the ritual again—[f]

"Ouroborinda!
Ouroborinda!
Ouroborinda ba-ba-hee!"[g]

The same thought struck both of them at one moment—[h]"It will ask for another." And Straik remembered that Wither had that knife. He wrenched himself free from the rhythm with a frightful effort: claws seemed to be tearing his chest from inside. Wither saw what he meant to do. As Straik bolted, Wither was already after him. Straik reached the ante-room, slipped in Filostrato's blood.

---

[a] himself—] *BA*; himself: *M*
[b] "Ouroborinda! […] ba-ba-hee!"] *BA*; Ouroborinda! […] ba-ba-hee! *M*
[c] this!] *BA*; this. *M*
[d] unscientifically!] *BA*; unscientifically. *M*
[e] blood-pressure:] *BA*; blood pressure; *M*
[f] again—] *BA*; again: *M*
[g] "Ouroborinda! […] ba-ba-hee!"] *BA*; Ouroborinda! […] ba-ba-hee! *M*
[h] moment—] *BA*; moment: *M*

① *A great bear […] an embrace.*

This act, by which Wither is brought face-to-face with unavoidable fact and reality, and killed, fulfils Merlin's prophecy about the bear (ch. 13 IV 299). See also 379[b].

Wither slashed repeatedly with his knife. He had not strength to cut through the neck, but he had killed the man. He stood up, pains gnawing at his old man's heart. Then he saw the Italian's head lying on the floor. It seemed to him good to pick it up and carry it into the inner room: show it to the original Head. He did so. Then he realised that something was moving in the ante-room. Could it be that they had not shut the outer door? He could not remember. They had come in, forcing Filostrato along between them:[a] it was possible . . . everything had been so abnormal. He put down his burden—carefully, almost courteously, even now—and stepped towards the door between the two rooms. Next moment he drew back. A great[b] bear, rising to its hind legs as he came in sight of it, had met him in ① the doorway—its mouth open, its eyes flaming, its forepaws[c] spread out as if for an embrace. Was this what Straik had become? He knew (though even now he could not attend to it) that he was on the very frontier of a world where such things could happen.

V

No one at Belbury that night had been cooler than Feverstone. He was neither an initiate like Wither nor a dupe like Filostrato. He knew about the macrobes,[d] but it wasn't the sort of thing he was interested in. He knew that the Belbury scheme might not work, but he knew that if it didn't he would get out in time. He had a dozen lines of retreat kept open. He had also a perfectly clear conscience and had played no tricks with his mind. He had never slandered another man except to get his job, never cheated except because he wanted money, never really disliked people unless they bored him. He saw at a very early stage that something was going wrong. One had to guess how far wrong. Was this the end of Belbury? If so, he must get back to Edgestow and work up the position he had already prepared for himself as the protector of the University against the N.I.C.E. On the other hand, if there were any chance of figuring as the man who had saved Belbury at a moment of crisis, that would be definitely the better line. He would wait as long as it was safe. And he waited a long time. He found a hatch through

---

[a] them:] *B*; them; *M*

[b] great] *BA*; huge *M*

☛ Noted by Lake (55). Great suggests more than just size. In the phrase "huge bear" the adjective is merely descriptive of size: in "great bear" the adjective is richer, indicating both size and a kind of majesty. Moreover the phrase as a whole has astronomical resonances, since "great bear" is the English name for the constellation Ursa Major, which for a fleeting moment suggests that the Fixed Stars too have come to earth to fight the N.I.C.E.

[c] forepaws] *BA*; fore-paws *M*

[d] macrobes,] *A*; Macrobes *BM*

① *Danger—in moderation—acted on him like a tonic.*

This trait is seen at the end of *Out of the Silent Planet*, when it looks as though Weston's space-craft will never make it safely back to Earth, and Weston collapses. Devine (later Feverstone) takes over the controls: to Ransom, "never had he seemed so admirable. He face was as pale as Weston's, but his eyes were clear and preternaturally bright; he sat crouched over the controls like an animal about to spring and he was whistling very softly between his teeth" (*Out of the Silent Planet* ch. 21 246).

② *driven by one who regarded this track as an excellent road and the obvious route to Edgestow.*

Merlin, who had last been in the area at the end of the Roman occupation, would naturally regard the Roman road between Belbury and Edgestow as the obvious route.

which hot dishes were passed from the kitchen passage into the dining-room.[a] He got through it and watched the scene. His nerves were excellent,[b] and he[c] thought he could pull and bolt the shutter in time if any dangerous animal made for the hatch. He stood there during the whole massacre, his eyes bright, something like a smile on his face, smoking endless cigarettes and drumming with his hard fingers on the sill of the hatch. When it was all over he said to himself, "Well, I'm damned!" It had certainly been a most extraordinary show.

Blasphemy and Swearing

The beasts had all streaked away somewhere. He knew there was a chance of meeting one or two of them in the passages, but he'd have to risk that. Danger—in moderation—acted on him like a tonic. He worked his way to the back of the house and into the garage; it looked as if he must go to Edgestow at once. He could not find his car in the garage—indeed, there were far fewer cars than he had expected. Apparently several other people had had the idea of getting away while the going was good, and his own car had been stolen. He felt no resentment, and set about finding another of the same make. It took him a longish time, and when he had found one he had considerable difficulty in starting her up. The night was cold—going to snow, he thought. He scowled, for the first time that night:[d] he hated snow. It was after two o'clock when he got going. ①

Just before he started he had the odd impression that someone had got into the back of the car behind him. "Who's that?" he asked sharply. He decided to get out and see. But to his surprise his body did not obey this decision:[e] instead it drove the car out of the garage and round to the front and out into the road. The snow[f] was definitely falling by now. He found he could not turn his head and could not stop driving. He was going ridiculously fast, too, in this damned snow. He had no choice. He'd often heard of cars being driven from the back seat, but now it seemed to be really happening. Then to his dismay he found he had left the road. The car, still at a reckless speed, was bumping and leaping along what was called Gipsy Lane or (by the educated) Wayland Street—the old Roman Road from Belbury to Edgestow, all grass and ruts. "Here! What the devil am I doing?" thought Feverstone. "Am I tight? I'll break my neck at this game if I don't look out!" But on the car went as if driven by one who regarded this track as an excellent road and the obvious route to Edgestow. ②

---

[a] dining-room.] *BA*; dining room. *M*
[b] excellent,] *B*; excellent *M*
[c] he] *BM*; He *A*
[d] night:] *B*; night; *M*
[e] decision:] *BA*; decision; *M*
[f] snow] *BM*; Snow *A*

① *all which appears in the mind as motive or intention is merely a by-product of what the body is doing*

Such a materialist view of thought is part of a philosophy that denies the validity and even the existence of rationality, of emotional responses, and ethical values. Frost's death is the logical outcome of his beliefs, and makes his illusion very difficult to maintain. See also Appendix C.

VI

Frost had left the dining-room[a] a few minutes after Wither. He did not know where he was going or what he was about to do. For many years he had theoretically believed that all which appears in the mind as motive or intention is merely a by-product of what the body is doing. But for the last year or so—since he had been initiated—he had begun to taste as fact what he had long held as theory. Increasingly, his actions had been without motive. He did this and that, he said thus and thus, and did not know why. His mind was a mere spectator. He could not understand why that spectator should exist at all. He resented its existence, even while assuring himself that resentment also was merely a chemical phenomenon. The nearest thing to a human passion which still existed in him was a sort of cold fury against all who believed in the mind. There was no tolerating such an illusion![b] There were not, and must not be, such things as men. But never, until this evening, had he been quite so vividly aware that the body and its movements were the only reality, that the self which seemed to watch the body leaving the dining-room[c] and setting out for the chamber of the Head, was a nonentity. How infuriating that the body should have power thus to project a phantom self!

Thus the Frost whose existence Frost denied watched his body go into the ante-room, watched it pull up sharply at the sight of a naked and bloodied corpse. The chemical reaction called shock[d] occurred. Frost stooped,[e] turned the body over, and recognised Straik. A moment later his flashing pince-nez and pointed beard looked into the room of the Head itself. He hardly noticed that Wither and Filostrato lay there dead. His attention was fixed by something more serious. The bracket where the Head ought to have been was empty: the metal ring twisted, the rubber tubes tangled and broken. Then he noticed a head on the floor:[f] stooped and examined it. It was Filostrato's. Of Alcasan's head he found no trace, unless some mess of broken bones beside Filostrato's were it.

Still not asking what he would do,[g] or why, Frost went to the garage. The whole place was silent and empty; the snow was thick on the ground by this time.[h]

---

[a] dining-room] *BA*; dining room *M*
[b] illusion!] *B*; illusion. *M*
[c] dining-room] *B*; dining room *M*
[d] shock] *MA*; shock, *B*
[e] stooped,] *BA*; stopped *M*
☛ B & A's "stooped" is necessary if Frost is to handle the body, and he has already "pull[ed] up".
[f] floor:] *BA*; floor; *M*
[g] do,] *BA*; do *M*
[h] this time.] *ed.*; this. *BM*

① *Whatever it was that dictated his actions*

Presumably some demonic power (macrobe), given authority to do so by Frost's abdication from his own rational authority over his own actions.

② *sunrise in old tales overtakes trolls and turns them into unchangeable stone*

This happens to three trolls in Tolkien's *The Hobbit*, and he explains, "trolls […] must be underground before dawn, or they go back to the stuff of the mountains they are made of, and never move again" (ch. 2 51). The "old tales" that Lewis refers to, and the "old barbarous mythmaking" that Tolkien mentions as a source for his trolls (*Letters* 191), are not from well-known collections of stories such as the Grimms' collection or Andrew Lang's many anthologies, nor even from the *Prose* or *Poetic Edda* (see Anderson 51 n. 6; Kvideland & Sehmsdorf 312–13): knowing them is an indication of Tolkien and Lewis's deep interest in all things Norse. I suspect it is thanks to Tolkien that this fact about trolls is now well-enough known to be taken for granted and to become the subject of parodic exploration by authors such as Terry Pratchett (for example, in *The Light Fantastic* 112–17and *Men at Arms* 186–88, 198–204).

He came up with as many petrol tins as he could carry. He piled all the inflammables he could think of together in the Objective Room. Then he locked himself in by locking the outer door of the ante-room. Whatever[a] it was that ① dictated his actions then compelled him to push the key into the speaking-tube[b] which communicated with the passage. When he had pushed it as far in as his fingers could reach, he took a pencil from his pocket and pushed with that. Presently he[c] heard the clink of the key falling on the passage floor outside. That tiresome illusion, his consciousness, was screaming in protest:[d] his body, even had he wished, had no power to attend to those screams. Like the clockwork figure he had chosen to be, his stiff body, now terribly cold, walked back into the Objective Room, poured out the petrol and threw a lighted match into the pile. Not till then did his controllers allow him to suspect that death itself might not after all cure the illusion of being a soul—nay, might prove the entry into a world where that illusion raged infinite and unchecked. Escape for the soul, if not for the body, was offered him. He became able to know (and simultaneously refused the knowledge) that he had been wrong from the beginning, that souls and personal responsibility existed. He half saw: he wholly hated. The physical torture of the burning was hardly[e] fiercer[f] than his hatred of that. With one supreme effort he flung himself back into his illusion. In that attitude eternity overtook him as sunrise in old tales ② overtakes trolls and turns them into unchangeable stone.

☛ The sentence was apparently unfinished by the author in whatever document preceded those from which B & M were set, with the error retained in those documents, and not corrected by either compositor.

[a] Whatever] *BM*; Something *A*

[b] speaking-tube] *BA*; speaking tube *M*

[c] he] *BM*; He *A*

[d] protest:] *BA*; protest; *M*

[e] hardly] *BA*; not *M*

☛ M's "not fiercer" is stronger than B & A's "hardly", asserting that Frost's hatred of the fact "that souls and personal responsibility existed" *is* fiercer than the pain of burning alive, while in B & A the pain of the burning is stronger, although only slightly. As usual, we have no way of knowing why B & M differ.

[f] fiercer] *MA*; fiecer *B*

☛ Compositing error in B.

① *The Strand*

A family magazine that, between 1891 and 1950, published a mixture of fact and fiction by excellent authors (both short stories and serials), with illustrations (Willis).

In the extension to H.G. Wells' *First Men in the Moon*, which purports to give the real background to what is initially presented as fiction, that first-person narrator tells the reader that he had sold the story contained in chapters 1 to 21 and "had seen the greater portion of it appear in the *Strand Magazine*" (ch. 22 271)—an allusion that gives greater verisimilitude to the purportedly historical narrative of the second part of the novel. This double structure—purported fiction followed by purported history—of *First Men in the Moon* is of interest to the reader of the Ransom trilogy, as Lewis emulates it in *Out of the Silent Planet*, which was deliberately modelled on Wells' novel in order to refute the attitudes to other planets presented in it (see Introduction 1 xxiv).

SEVENTEEN

Venus at St. Anne's

I

DAYLIGHT came with no visible sunrise as Mark was climbing to the highest ground in his journey. The white road, still virgin of human traffic, showed the footprints of here and there a bird and here and there a rabbit, for the snow-shower[a] was just then coming to its end in a flurry of larger and slower flakes. A big lorry, looking black and warm in that landscape, overtook him. The man put out his head. "Going Birmingham way, mate?" he asked.

"Roughly,"[b] said Mark. "At least I'm going to St. Anne's."

"Where's[c] that,[d] then?" said the driver.

"Up[e] on the hill behind Pennington," said Mark.

"Ah,"[f] said the man, "I could take you to the corner. Save you a bit."

Mark[g] got in beside him.

It was mid-morning when the man dropped him at a corner beside a little country hotel. The snow had all lain,[h] and there was more in the sky,[i] and the day was extremely silent. Mark went into the little hotel and found a kind elderly landlady. He had a hot bath and a capital breakfast, and then went to sleep in a chair before a roaring fire. He did not wake till about four. He reckoned he was only a few miles from St. Anne's, and decided to have tea before he set out. He had tea. At the landlady's suggestion he had a boiled egg with his tea. Two shelves in the little sitting-room[j] were filled with bound volumes of *The Strand*. In one of ①

---

[a] snow-shower] *M*; snow-/shower *B* snowshower *A*
☛ It looks as though A's compositor interpreted the hyphen, which falls at the line-break in B, as being only because of the line-break, and so set "snowshower".
[b] ¶ "Roughly,"] *BA*; "Roughly," *M*
☛ Noted by Lake (55). Here we find another instance of a set of paragraph breaks found in B but not in M.
[c] ¶"Where's] *BA*; "Where's *M*
☛ See note 383[b].
[d] that,] *BA*; that *M*
[e] ¶"Up] *BA*; "Up *M*
☛ See note 383[b].
[f] ¶"Ah,"] *BA*; "Ah," *M*
☛ See note 383[b].
[g] ¶Mark] *BA*; Mark *M*
☛ See note 383[b].
[h] lain,] *A*; lain *BM*
[i] sky,] *A*; sky *BM*
[j] sitting-room] *B*; sitting room *M*

① *Sherlock Holmes*

Fifty-six of Arthur Conan Doyle's short stories, and serialisations of some of the novels, were published in *The Strand*: nearly every issue from 1891 to 1930 contained something by him, and his popularity did much for the magazine's circulation (Willis).

② *They were Hearts: he was only a Spade. […] Jane was a Heart.*

In 1933, describing characters in George Macdonald's *Lilith* to his friend Arthur Greeves, Lewis writes that the Soul recognises " 'Lovers' (= 'Hearts' in our old classification) and 'Bags' or 'Giants' (= Spades)" (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 119). The Lovers in *Lilith* are generous and loving, lively and full of laughter, while the Giants are selfish and self-centred, dull and greedy (see *Lilith* ch. 11–12).

③ *Love, Plato says, is the son of Want.*

Lewis simplifies slightly: in Plato's *Symposium* Love (Ἔρως) is "Πόρου καὶ Πενίας υἱὸς"—"the son of πόρος and πενία" (201 c). Liddell and Scott define these as "a […] means of achieving" ("πόρος" II) and "need".

these he found a serial children's story which he had begun to read as a child, but abandoned because his tenth birthday came when he was half-way[a] through it and he was ashamed to read it after that. Now, he chased it from volume to volume till he had finished it. It was good. The grown-up stories to which, after his tenth birthday, he had turned instead of it, now seemed to him, except for *Sherlock Holmes*, ① to be rubbish. "I suppose I must get on soon," he said to himself.

His slight reluctance to do so did not proceed from weariness—he felt, indeed, perfectly rested and better than he had felt for several weeks—but from a sort of shyness. He was going to see Jane: and Denniston: and (probably) the Dimbles as well. In fact, he was going to see Jane in what he now felt to be her proper world. But not his. For he now thought that with all his lifelong[b] eagerness to reach an inner circle he had chosen the *wrong* circle. Jane was where she belonged. He was going to be admitted only out of kindness, because Jane had been fool enough to marry him. He did not resent it, but he felt shy. He saw himself as this new circle must see him—as one more little vulgarian, just like the Steeles and the Cossers, dull, inconspicuous, frightened, calculating, cold. He wondered vaguely why he was like that. How did other people—people like Denniston or Dimble—find it so easy to saunter through the world with all their muscles relaxed and a careless eye roving the horizon, bubbling over with fancy and humour, sensitive to beauty, not continually on their guard and not needing to be? What was the secret of that fine, easy laughter which he could not by any efforts imitate? Everything about them was different. They could not even fling themselves into chairs without suggesting by the very posture of their limbs a certain lordliness, a leonine indolence. There was elbow-room in their lives, as there had never been in his. They were Hearts: he was only a Spade. Still, he must ② be getting on. . . .[c] Of course, Jane was a Heart. He must give her her freedom. It would be quite unjust to think that his love for her had been basely sensual. Love, ③ Plato says, is the son of Want. Mark's body knew better than his mind had known till recently, and even his sensual desires were the true index of something which he lacked and Jane had to give. When she had first crossed the dry and dusty world which his mind inhabited she had been like a spring shower; in opening himself to it he had not been mistaken. He had gone wrong only in assuming that marriage, by itself, gave him either power or title to appropriate that freshness. As he now saw,

The Inner Ring

[a] half-way] *B*; half way *M*
[b] lifelong] *B*; life-long *M*
[c] on. . . .] *BA*; on . . . *M*

① *Merling*

This represents an uneducated pronunciation of a word ending with the syllable /ən/. Richmal Crompton (1890–1969), an English author of Lewis's generation, uses it to depict a nouveau riche character of humble origins, who says "garding" and "curting" for "garden" and "curtain", while her husband drops his aitches (*William—The Conqueror* ch. 9 142 & 144).

one might as well have thought one could buy a sunset by buying the field from which one had seen it.

He rang the bell and asked for his bill.

II

That same afternoon Mother Dimble and the three girls were upstairs in the big room which occupied nearly the whole top floor of one wing at the Manor, and which the Director called the Wardrobe. If you had glanced in[a] you would have thought for one moment that they were not in a room at all but in some kind of forest—a tropical forest glowing with bright colours. A second glance and you might have thought they were in one of those delightful upper rooms at a big shop where carpets standing on end and rich stuffs hanging from the roof make a kind of woven forest of their own. In fact, they were standing amidst a collection of robes of state—dozens of robes which hung, each separate, from its little pillar of wood.

"That would do beautifully for you, Ivy," said Mother Dimble, lifting with one hand the fold of a vividly green mantle over which thin twists and spirals of gold played in a festive pattern. "Come, Ivy," she continued, "don't you like it? You're not still fretting about Tom, are you? Hasn't the Director told you he'll be here to-night[b] or to-morrow[c] midday[d] at the latest?"

Ivy looked at her with troubled eyes.

" 'Tisn't that," she said. "Where'll the Director himself be?"

"But you can't want him to stay, Ivy," said Camilla, "not in continual pain. And his work will be done—if all goes well at Edgestow."

"He has longed to go back to Perelandra," said Mother Dimble. "He's—sort of home-sick. Always, always . . . I could see it in his eyes."

"Will that Merling man come back here?" asked Ivy. ①

"I don't think so," said Jane. "I don't think either he or the Director expected him to. And then my dream last night. It looked as if he was on fire . . . I don't mean burning, you know, but light—all sorts of lights in the most curious colours shooting out of him and running up and down him. That was the last thing I saw: Merlin standing there like a kind of pillar and all those dreadful things happening all

[a] in] *BA*; in, *M*
[b] to-night] *BA*; tonight *M*
[c] to-morrow] *BA*; tomorrow *M*
[d] midday] *BA*; mid-day, *M*

① *soft as foam*

Lewis means sea foam, not foam rubber, which was a new substance (and hence term) at the time of the novel's writing, and for a long time referred to as "foam/ed rubber" or "rubber foam", not merely as "foam" (not in the *NED*; *OED*, "foam" *n.* 1. e gives a quotation from 1937 as the earliest).

round him. And you could see in his face that he was a man used up to the last drop, if you know what I mean—that he'd fall to pieces the moment the powers let him go."

"We're not getting on with choosing our dresses for to-night."[a]

"What is it made of?" said Camilla, fingering and then smelling the green mantle. It was a question worth asking. It was not in the least transparent,[b] yet all sorts of lights and shades dwelled in its rippling folds,[c] and it flowed through Camilla's hands like a waterfall. Ivy became interested.

"Gor!" she said, "however[d] much a yard would it be?"

"There," said Mother Dimble as she draped it skilfully round Ivy. Then she said "Oh!" in genuine amazement. All three stood back from Ivy, staring at her with delight. The commonplace had not exactly gone from her form and face:[e] the robes[f] had taken it up, as a great composer takes up a folk-tune[g] and tosses it like a ball through his symphony and makes of it a marvel, yet leaves it still itself. A "pert fairy" or "dapper elf," a small though perfect sprightliness, stood before them: but still recognisably Ivy Maggs.

"Isn't that like a man!" exclaimed Mrs. Dimble. "There's not a mirror in the room."

"I don't believe we were meant to see ourselves," said Jane. "He said something about being mirrors enough to one another."

"I would just like to see what I'm like at the back," said Ivy.

"Now,[h] Camilla," said Mother Dimble, "there's no puzzle about you. This is obviously your one."

"Oh, do you think *that* one?" said Camilla.

"Yes, of course," said Jane.

"You'll look ever so nice in that," said Ivy.

It[i] was a long slender thing which looked like steel in colour,[j] though it was soft as foam to the touch. It wrapped itself close about her loins and flowed out in ①

---

[a] to-night."] *BA*; tonight." *M*
[b] transparent,] *BA*; transparent *M*
[c] folds,] *BA*; folds *M*
[d] said, "however] *BA*; said. "However *M*
[e] face:] *BA*; face, *M*
[f] robes] *A*; robe *BM*
☛ The plural form "robes" denotes garments signifying "a particular […] condition, or office", while "robe" can mean that or merely some kind of a long garment (*NED*, "Robe" 2. b; compare 1. [a] & 2. a). Since Ivy is being arrayed as one of the courtiers of Logres, A's unambigious form is preferable.
[g] folk-tune] *BA*; folk tune *M*
[h] Now,] *BA*; Now *M*
[i] ¶It] *BA*; It *M*
[j] colour,] *BA*; colour *M*

① *Valkyrie*

One of the divine horsewomen who serve Odin in battle. For Lewis, the formative image would almost certainly be Rackham's illustration, shown here (see *Surprised by Joy* 64). Here we see a garment with some characteristics in common with Camilla's: the lower part is "steel in colour", it is "close around her loins and flow[s] out into a […] train", and it is worn with a coronet (386–87).

A Valkyrie by Rackham

② *"like starlight, in the spoils of provinces."*

Here Lewis contracts a longer quotation from Jonson's *Volpone*. The description appears to have no important resonances that make it apt beyond the beauty of the description. Volpone, in his corrupt wooing of Celia, gives her jewels, describing a diamond as capable of having bought

> LOLLIA PAVLINA,
> When she came in, like star-light, hid with jewels,
> That were the spoiles of prouinces
> (III vii 195–97)

Volpone alludes to an episode where Pliny describes having seen Lollia Paulina, consort of the Emperor Gaius in 38 AD, covered, even on ordinary occasions, in jewellery come to her from her grandfather Marcus Lollius, paid for by his spoiling and bribery in the Easter provinces: she literally wears the spoil of provinces, *provinciarum scilicet spoliis partae* (*Natural History* IX 117–18). Jonson adds the star-light, and Lewis finally divorces the image from its corrupt origins.

a glancing train at her heels. "Like a mermaid," thought Jane:[a] and then[b] "Like a Valkyrie." ①

"I'm afraid," said Mother Dimble, "you must wear a coronet with that one."

"Wouldn't that be rather . . . ?"

But Mother Dimble was already setting it on her head. That reverence (it need have nothing to do with money value) which nearly all women feel for jewellery[c] hushed three of them for a moment. There were, perhaps,[d] no such diamonds in England. The splendour was fabulous, preposterous.

"What are you all staring at?" asked Camilla, who had seen but one flash as the crown was raised in Mrs. Dimble's hands and did not know that she stood "like starlight, in the spoils of provinces." ②

"Are they real?" said Ivy.

"Where did they come from, Mother Dimble?" asked Jane.

"Treasure of Logres, dears, treasure[e] of Logres," said Mrs. Dimble. "Perhaps from beyond the Moon or before the flood. Now,[f] Jane."

Jane could see nothing specially appropriate in the robe which the others agreed in putting on her. Blue was, indeed, her colour, but she thought of something a little more austere and dignified. Left to her own judgement,[g] she would have called this a little "fussy." But when she saw the others all clap their hands, she submitted. Indeed, it did not now occur to her to do otherwise,[h] and the whole matter was forgotten a moment later in the excitement of choosing a robe for Mother Dimble.

"Something quiet," she said. "I'm[i] an old woman and I don't want to be[j] ridiculous."

"This wouldn't do at all," said Camilla, walking down the long row of hanging splendours, herself like a meteor as she passed against that background of purple and gold and scarlet and soft snow and elusive opal, of fur, silk, velvet,

---

[a] Jane:] *BA*; Jane; *M*
[b] then] *BA*; then, *M*
[c] jewellery] *BA*; jewelry *M*
☛ Either spelling is acceptable (*NED*, "Jewellery, jewelry"), but M's choice is the American preference (see *Webster's*).
[d] , perhaps,] *BA*; perhaps *M*
[e] treasure] *BA*; treasures *M*
☛ It is more likely that Mrs. Dimble will repeat the phrase "treasure of Logres" unchanged than that she would change "treasure" to "treasures" the second time.
[f] Now,] *BA*; Now *M*
[g] judgement,] *B*; judgment, *M*
[h] otherwise,] *BA*; otherwise *M*
[i] "I'm] *BA*; "I'm *M*
[j] be] *BA*; be made *M*
☛ Either reading is defensible, so I follow the copy-text.

① *matriarch, mother of mothers*

Very early in the novel we learnt of Mrs. Dimble that "one tended to call her 'Mother Dimble' " (ch. 1 V 24), and in ch. 8 II 173 Jane finds that all at St. Anne's call her so. Here the other characters' appreciation of Mrs. Dimble's maternal characteristics is shown to be a true understanding, and those characteristics are seen to be worthy of respect as well as love.

② aweful*, in the old sense*

The *NED* gives the etymology of "Awful" as "f. AWE *sb.*[1] + -FUL" and sense I is "Awe-inspiring."

taffeta,[a] and brocade. "That's lovely," she said, "but[b] not for you. And oh!—look at that. But it wouldn't do. I don't see anything . . ."

"Here! Oh, do come and look! Come here," cried Ivy,[c] as if she were afraid her discovery would run away unless the others attended to it quickly.

"Oh! Yes, yes,[d] indeed," said Jane."

"Certainly," said Camilla.

"Put it on, Mother Dimble," said Ivy. "You know you got to." It was of that almost tyrannous flame colour which Jane had seen in her vision down in the lodge, but differently cut, with fur about the great copper brooch that clasped the throat, with long sleeves and hangings from them. And there went with it a many-cornered cap. And they had no sooner clasped the robe than all were astonished, none more than Jane, though indeed she had had best reason to foresee the result. For now this provincial wife of a rather obscure scholar, this respectable and barren woman with grey hair and double chin, stood before her,[e] not to be mistaken, as a kind of priestess or sybil, the servant of some prehistoric[f] goddess of fertility—an old tribal matriarch, mother of mothers, grave, formidable, and ① august. A long staff, curiously carved as if a snake twined up it, was apparently part of the costume: they put it in her hand.

"Am I awful?" said Mother Dimble,[g] looking in turn at the three silent faces.

"You look lovely," said Ivy.

"It is exactly right," said Camilla.

Jane took up the old lady's hand and kissed it. "Darling," she said, "*awful*, in ② the old sense, is just what you *do* look."

"What are the men going to wear?" asked Camilla suddenly.

"*They*[h] can't very well go in fancy dress, can they?" said Ivy. "Not if they're cooking and bringing things in and out all the time. And I must say[i] if this is to be the last night and all[j] I do think we ought to have done the dinner,[k] anyway. Let them do as they like about the wine. And what they'll do with that goose is more than I like to think, because I don't believe that Mr. MacPhee ever roasted a bird in his life, whatever he says."

---

[a] taffeta,] *B*; taffeta *M*
[b] said, "but] *BA*; said. "But *M*
[c] Ivy,] *B*; Ivy *M*
[d] yes,] *BA*; yes *M*
[e] her,] *BM*; them, *A*
[f] prehistoric] *BA*; pre-historic *M*
[g] Dimble,] *BA*; Dimble *M*
[h] "*They*] *BA*; "They *M*
[i] say] *BA*; say, *M*
[j] all] *BA*; all, *M*
[k] dinner,] *BA*; dinner *M*

"They can't spoil the oysters, anyway," said Camilla.

"That's right," said Ivy. "Nor the plum pudding, not really. Still, I'd like just to go down and take a look."

"You'd better not," said Jane with a laugh. "You know what he's like when he's in charge in the kitchen."

"I'm not afraid of *him*," said Ivy, almost, but not quite, putting out her tongue. And in her present dress the gesture was not uncomely.

"You needn't be in the least worried about the dinner, girls," said Mother Dimble. "He will do it very well. Always provided he and my husband don't get into a philosophical argument just when they ought to be dishing up. Let's go and enjoy ourselves. How very warm it is in here."

" 's lovely," said Ivy.

At that moment the whole room shook from end to end.

"What on earth's that?" said Jane.

"If the war was still on I'd have said it was a bomb," said Ivy.

"Come and look," said Camilla,[a] who had regained her composure sooner than any of the others and was now at the window which looked west[b] towards the valley of the Wynd. "Oh, look!" she said again. "No. It's not fire. And it's not searchlights. And, it's not forked lightning. Ugh! . . . there's another shock. And there . . . Look at that. It's as bright as day there beyond the church.[c] What am I talking about, it's only three o'clock. It's brighter than day. And the heat!"

"It has begun," said Mother Dimble.

III

At about the same time that morning when Mark had climbed into the lorry, Feverstone, not much hurt but a good deal shaken, climbed out of the stolen car. That car had ended its course upside down in a deep ditch, and Feverstone, always ready to look on the bright side, reflected as he extricated himself that things might have been worse—it might have been his own car. The snow was deep in the ditch,[d] and he was very wet. As he stood up and looked about him he saw that he was not alone. A tall and massive figure in a black cassock was before him, about five yards distant. Its back was towards him, and it was already walking steadily away. "Hi!" shouted Feverstone. The other turned and looked at him in silence for

[a] Camilla,] *BA*; Camilla *M*
[b] west] *BA*; West *M*
[c] church.] *BA*; Church. *M*
[d] ditch,] *A*; ditch *BM*

a second or two; then it resumed its walk. Feverstone felt at once that this was not the sort of man he would get on with—in fact[a] he had never liked the look of anyone less. Nor could he, in his broken and soaking pumps, follow the four-mile-an-hour stride of those booted feet. He did not attempt it. The black figure came to a gate, there stopped and made a whinnying noise. He was apparently talking to a horse across the gate. Next moment (Feverstone did not quite see how it happened) the man was over the gate and on the horse's back and off at a canter across a wide field that rose milk-white[b] to the sky-line.

Feverstone had no idea where he was, but clearly the first thing to do was to reach a road. It took him much longer than he expected. It was not freezing now and deep puddles lay hidden beneath the snow in many places. At the bottom of the first hill he came to such a morass that he was driven to abandon the track of the Roman road and try striking across the fields. The decision was fatal. It kept him for two hours looking for gaps in hedges[c] and trying to reach things that looked like roads from a distance but turned out to be nothing of the sort when one reached them. He had always hated the country and always hated weather,[d] and he was not at any time fond of walking.

Near twelve o'clock he found a road with no signposts that led him an hour later into a main road. Here, thank heavens, there was a fair amount of traffic, both cars and pedestrians, all going one way. The first three cars took no notice of his signals. The fourth stopped. "Quick. In you get," said the driver.

"Going[e] to Edgestow?" asked Feverstone, his hand on the door.

"Good[f] Lord, no!" said the other. "*There's* Edgestow!"—and he pointed behind him—[g]"if you want to go *there*." The man seemed surprised and considerably excited.

In the end there[h] was nothing for it but walking. Every vehicle was going away from Edgestow, none going towards it. Feverstone was a little surprised. He knew all about the exodus (indeed, it had been part of his plan to clear the city as far as possible),[i] but he had supposed it would be over by now. But all that

---

[a] fact] *B*; fact, *M*
[b] milk-white] *BA*; milk white *M*
[c] hedges] *BA*; hedges, *M*
[d] weather,] *BA*; weather *M*
[e] ¶"Going] *BA*; "Going *M*
☛ Noted by Lake (55).
[f] ¶"Good] *BA*; "Good *M*
☛ See previous note.
[g] —and he pointed behind him—] *A*; (and he pointed behind him)— *BM*
[h] there] *BM*; There *A*
[i] possible),] *B*; possible) *M*

afternoon as he splashed and slipped through the churned snow,[a] the fugitives were still passing him. We have, naturally,[b] hardly any first-hand evidence for what happened in Edgestow that afternoon and evening. But we have plenty of stories as to how so many people came to leave it at the last moment. They filled the papers for weeks and lingered in private talks for months, and in the end became a joke. "No, I *don't* want to hear how you got out of Edgestow"[c] came to be a catch phrase.[d] But behind[e] all the exaggerations there remains the undoubted truth that a quite astonishing number of citizens left[f] the town just in time. One had had a message from a dying father; another had decided quite suddenly, and he couldn't just say why, to go and take a little holiday; another went because the pipes in his house had been burst by the frost and he thought he might as well go away till they were put right. Not a few had gone because of some trivial event which seemed to them an omen—a dream, a broken looking-glass, tea-leaves in a cup. Omens of a more ancient kind had also revived during this crisis. One had heard his donkey, another her cat, say "as clear as clear,"[g] "*Go away*." And hundreds were still leaving for the old reason—because their houses had been taken from them, their livelihood destroyed, and their liberties threatened by the Institutional Police.

It was at about four o'clock that Feverstone found himself flung on his face. That was the first shock. They continued, increasing in frequency, during the hours that followed—horrible shudderings, and soon heavings, of the earth, and a growing murmur of widespread[h] subterranean noise. The temperature began to rise. Snow was disappearing in every direction and at times he was knee-deep[i] in water. Haze from the melting snow filled the air. When he reached the brow of the last steep descent into Edgestow he could see nothing of the city: only fog through which extraordinary coruscations of light came up to him. Another shock sent him sprawling. He now decided not to go down: he would turn and follow the traffic—work over to the railway line and try to get to London. The picture of a steaming bath at his club, of himself on[j] the fender of the smoking-room[a] telling this whole

---

[a] snow,] *B*; snow *M*
[b] , naturally,] *BA*; (naturally) *M*
[c] Edgestow"] *B*; Edgestow," *M*
[d] catch phrase] *B*; catch-phrase *M*
[e] behind] *BM*; Behind *A*
[f] left] *BM*; did *A*
[g] clear,"] *BA*; clear": *M*
[h] widespread] *BA*; wide-spread *M*
[i] knee-deep] *B*; knee deep *M*, kneedeep *A*
☛ This is not one of those cases where A is apparently confused by a hyphen falling at a lline-break in B, but "kneedeep" is a mistake (see *NED*).
[j] on] *B*; at *M*
☛ One would expect Feverstone's *feet* to be on the fender (see *NED*, "Fender" 3. a, 1861 quotation). But sitting or leaning on a high fender is quite possible (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 57).

① *the whole wave of earth rose, arched, trembled, and with all its weight and noise poured down on him.*
In *Out of the Silent Planet* Malacandra-Oyarsa says of Devine (later Lord Feverstone), "the lord of the silent world [Satan, the rebellious Oyarsa of Earth] […] he has broken, for he has left him nothing but greed" (ch. 20 226–27). And indeed Devine is utterly materialistic in his desires: travelling to Mars-Malacandra, "For the most part his conversation ran on the things he would do when he got back to Earth: oceangoing yachts, the most expensive women and a big place on the Riviera figured largely in his plans" (ch. 5 41). In *That Hideous Strength*, he desires power, but through conventional, not supernatural, means: the macrobes are not "the sort of thing he was interested in" (ch. 16 V 379).

Feverstone, then, is consumed by greed for power and possessions—he is avaricious, covetous. And in Dante's Purgatory, the covetous are purged of their sin by lying face-down in earth, wallowing in the material element to which they have given their hearts (*Purgatoria* XIX). So it is appropriate that Feverstone's destruction should be wrought by his being swallowed by earth.

② *festal garments […] all diversely splendid*
Chesterton's *The Man Who Was Thursday: A Nightmare* (1908), also concludes with a fancy-dress celebration and the answering of questions (135–43). In Chesterton's story, the men known by the names of the days of the week find their costumes laid out ready for them. Like these men, the members of the Company at St. Anne's have no choice about what they will wear, but show the grace of submission to the will of their comrades rather than blind obedience, and the "disguises did not disguise, but reveal[ed]" (136, see Introduction 3 lxxx–lxxxi). For the other members of the Company too, their disguises reveal their essential natures: Mother Dimble's matriarchal qualities, Ivy's sprightliness, Ransom's status as king and Pendragon, MacPhee's potential for devoted spirituality.

The last stage of Chesterton's novel includes a fantastic masquerade (138–39, see Introduction 3 lxxxi).). In *That Hideous Strength* the pairs of animals, influenced by the presence of Perelandra-Venus, also provide a kind of masquerade or pageant.

story, rose in his mind. It would be something to have survived both Belbury and Bracton. He had survived a good many things in his day and believed in his luck.

He was already a few paces down the hill when he made this decision, and he turned at once. But instead of going up he found he was still descending. As if he were in shale on a mountain slope, instead of on a metalled road, the ground slipped away backwards where he trod on it. When he arrested his descent he was thirty yards lower. He began again. This time he was flung off his feet, rolled head over heels, stones, earth, grass, and water pouring over him and round him in riotous confusion. It was as when a great wave overtakes you while you are bathing, but this time it was an earth wave. He got to his feet once again; set his face to the hill. Behind him[b] the valley seemed to have turned into Hell. The pit of fog had been ignited and burned with blinding violet flame, water was roaring somewhere, buildings crashing, mobs shouting. The hill in front of him was in ruins—no trace of road, hedge, or field, only a cataract of loose raw earth. It was also far steeper than it had been. His mouth and hair and nostrils were full of earth. The slope was growing steeper as he looked at it. The ridge heaved up and up. Then the whole wave of earth rose, arched, trembled, and with all its weight ① and noise poured down on him.

IV

"Why Logres, sir?"[c] said Camilla.

Dinner was over at St. Anne's and they sat at their wine in a circle about the dining-room fire. As Mrs. Dimble had prophesied, the men had cooked it very well:[d] only after their serving was over and the board cleared had they put on their festal garments. Now all sat at their ease and all diversely splendid: Ransom ② crowned, at the right of the hearth,[e] Grace Ironwood[f] in black and silver[g] opposite him. It was so warm that they had let the fire burn low, and in the candlelight the court dresses seemed to glow of themselves.

"Tell them, Dimble," said Ransom. "I will not talk much from now on."

"Are you tired, sir?"[c] said Grace. "Is the pain bad?"

"No, Grace," he replied, "it isn't that. But now that it's so very nearly time

---

[a] smoking-room] *B*; smoking room *M*
[b] Behind him] *BA*; Behind, *M*
☛ Both readings convey the same information.
[c] sir?"] *BA*; Sir?" *M*
[d] well:] *B*; well; *M*
[e] hearth,] *BA*; hearth; *M*
[f] Ironwood] *BA*; Ironwood, *M*
[g] silver] *BA*; silver, *M*

① *Were you a friend of Arthur's or Barbarossa's? Did you know Enoch or Elijah?"*

In Malory, Arthur takes leave of Sir Bevedere saying, "I will into the vale of Avilion to heal me of my grievous wound" (*Morte* XXI ch. 5): the author (although he neither asserts nor denies it) records that "some men say in many parts of England the King Arthur is not dead, but had by the will of our Lord Jesu into another place; and men say that he shall come again" (XXI ch. 7). Within this novel, Avilion is in Perelandra (see following note), and the notion that Arthur did not die is asserted as fact.

Barbarossa is the Holy Roman Emperor Frederick I (1122–90), who historically restored a measure of order and power to the chaotic German states and was drowned during the Third Crusade: in legend, however, he sleeps under a mountain (Kyffhäuser or Untersberg) and will return when the ravens stop flying outside and restore Germany (Wikipedia contributors, "Frederick I, Holy Roman Emperor"). Enoch "walked with God: and he was not; for God took him" (Gen. 5: 24, see also Heb. 11: 5). The prophet Elijah "went up by a whirlwind into heaven" (II Kings 2: 11).

② *Aphallin*

Aphallin is clearly intended to suggest "Avalion" or "Avalon". But see n. 2 facing p. 290.

for me to go, all this begins to feel like a dream. A happy dream, you understand: all of it, even the pain. I want to taste every drop. I feel as though it would be dissolved if I talked much."

"I suppose you *got* to go, sir?"[a] said Ivy.

"My dear," said he, "what else is there to do? I have not grown a day or an hour older since I came back from Perelandra. There is no natural death to look forward to. The wound will only be healed in the world where it was got."

"All this has the disadvantage of being clean contrary to the observed laws of Nature," observed MacPhee. The Director smiled without speaking, as a man who refuses to be drawn.

"It is not contrary to the laws of Nature," said a voice from the corner where Grace Ironwood sat, almost invisible in the shadows. "You are quite right. The laws of the universe are never broken. Your mistake is to think that the little regularities we have observed on one planet for a few hundred years are the real unbreakable laws; whereas they are only the remote results which the true laws bring about more often than not; as a kind of accident."

"Shakespeare never breaks the real laws of poetry," put in Dimble. "But by following them he breaks every now and then the little regularities which critics mistake for the real laws. Then the little critics call it a 'licence.' But there's nothing licentious about it to Shakespeare."

"And that," said Denniston, "is why nothing in Nature is *quite* regular. There are always exceptions. A good average uniformity, but not complete."

"Not many exceptions to the law of death have come my way," observed MacPhee.

"And *how*," said Grace with much emphasis, "how should *you* expect to be there on more than one such occasion? Were you a friend of Arthur's or Barbarossa's? Did you know Enoch or Elijah?" ①

"Do you mean," said Jane, "that the Director . . . the Pendragon . . . is going where they went?"

"He will be with Arthur, certainly," said Dimble. "I can't answer for the rest. There are people who have never died. We do not yet know why. We know a little more than we did about the How. There are many places in the universe—I mean, this same physical universe in which our planet moves—where an organism can last practically for ever. Where Arthur is, we know."

"Where?" said Camilla.

"In the Third Heaven, in Perelandra. In Aphallin, the distant island which ②

[a] sir?"] *BA*; Sir?" *M*

① *After every Arthur, a Mordred […] home of Sidney—and of Cecil Rhodes.*

Arthur is obviously a hero, leader and saviour of Logres, while Mordred is a traitor to his king and country (*Brewer's Dictionary*, "Modred").

Milton is the poet who attempted to "assert Eternal Providence / And justify the ways of God to men" (*Paradise Lost* 25–26), while Cromwell is a politician—successful but an iconoclast and (according to Arnold) a Philistine (*Oxford Dictionary of Quotations*, "Cromwell").

Poets are presumably the repositories of learning and talent that bring glory to a country, while shopkeepers will be concerned with profit and practicality. A character in Charles Williams asserts the poetical nature of the English:

> People tell you we aren't logical, but it isn't true. Only our logic is a logic of poetry. We are the Tom o' Bedlam of the nations, the sceptics of the world, and we have no hope at all, or none to speak of—that is why we are always so good at adopting new ideas. (*Many Dimensions* 112)

By contrast, Napoleon is supposed to have said, "L'Angleterre est une nation de boutiquiers"—"England is a nation of shopkeepers" (*Oxford Dictionary of Quotations*, "Shopkeepers").

Sidney's reputation is that of a noble warrior like Arthur, a poet like Milton, a scholar and a courtier; Rhodes's reputation is that of a successful conqueror, imperialist and businessman. Clearly Lewis feels that Rhodes was as much a danger to the spiritual values of Logres as the treacherous Mordred (see *C&G* 235).

② *the Third Heaven*

Lewis also calls Perelandra-Venus "the Third Heaven" in ch. 15 I 343 (& n. 2).

③ *Uther and Cassibelaun*

Uther, father of Arthur, was also Pendragon in his time (see 144 n. 1). Cassibelaun is the historical Cassivellaunus who fought against Julius Caesar, and the earliest Briton whose name we know, and also one of Geoffrey of Monmouth's kings of Britain (Geoffrey IV ch. 2–11; *Brewer's Dictionary*, "Cassibelan"): here he serves as a known historical and legendary ruler from before the time of Uther, and one known to have fought against invasion, which pushes the tradition of the Pendragon even further back into the past.

④ *who is to be the eightieth*

When Jane leaves Ransom (ch. 17 VI 406), only Grace Ironwood and the Dennistons remain with him and his successor is not yet named: presumably Arthur Denniston will be the eightieth Pendragon, and "receive […] the office and the blessings".

the descendants of Tor and Tinidril will not find for a hundred centuries. Perhaps alone . . . ?"[a] He[b] hesitated and looked at Ransom,[c] who shook his head.

"And that is where Logres comes in, is it?" said Camilla. "Because he will be with Arthur?"

Dimble was silent for a few minutes, arranging and rearranging the fruit-knife and fruit-fork on his plate.

"It all began," he said,[d] "when we discovered that the Arthurian story is mostly true history. There was a moment in the fifth century[e] when something that is always trying to break through into this country nearly succeeded. Logres was our name for it—it will do as well as another. And then . . . gradually we began to see all English history in a new way. We discovered the haunting."

"What haunting?" asked Camilla.

"How something we may call Britain is always haunted by something we may call Logres. Haven't you noticed that we are two countries? After every ① Arthur, a Mordred; behind every Milton, a Cromwell: a nation of poets, a nation of shopkeepers; the home of Sidney—and of Cecil Rhodes. Is it any wonder they call us hypocrites? But what they mistake for hypocrisy is really the struggle between Logres and Britain."

He paused and took a sip of wine before proceeding.

"It was long afterwards," he said, "after the Director had returned from the ② Third Heaven, that we were told a little more. This haunting turned out to be not only from the other side of the invisible wall. Ransom was summoned to the bedside of an old man then dying in Cumberland. His name would mean nothing to you if I told it. That man was the Pendragon, the successor of Arthur and Uther ③ and Cassibelaun. Then we learned the truth. There has been a secret Logres in the very heart of Britain all these years; an unbroken succession of Pendragons. That old man was the seventy-eighth from Arthur: our Director received from him the office and the blessing;[f] to-morrow[g] we shall know, or to-night,[h] who is to be the ④ eightieth. Some of the Pendragons are well known to history, though not under that name. Others you have never heard of. But in every age they and the little Logres which gathered round them have been the fingers which gave the tiny

---

[a] alone . . . ?"] *A*; alone?" . . . *BM*
[b] He] *A*; he *BM*
[c] Ransom,] *BA*; Ransom *M*
[d] he said,] *BM*; said Dimble, *A*
[e] fifth century] *ed.*; sixth century *A* Sixth Century *BM*
☛ See 282[a].
[f] blessing;] *BA*; blessings; *M*
☛ M's "blessings" is not obviously wrong, but does suggest a rather diffuse ceremony.
[g] to-morrow] *BA*; tomorrow *M*
[h] to-night,] *BA*; tonight, *M*

① *As one of the modern authors […] may descend somewhere else.*

Charles Williams, *He Came Down From Heaven* (1938): "Usually the way must be made ready for heaven, and then it will come by some other; the sacrifice must be made ready, and the fire will strike on another altar" (25). Lewis greatly admired this book, and particularly this part of it (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 227–28; noted and discussed in some detail by Smilde).

② *If we've got an ass's head it is by walking in a fairy wood.*

In Shakespeare's *A Midsummer Night's Dream* the fairies in "A Wood" give Bottom an ass's head (III i).

③ *How right Sam Weller was when he called Mr. Pickwick an angel in gaiters!*

Sam Weller, learning of an act of charitable generosity on Pickwick's part, muses, "I never heerd, mind you, or read of in story-books, nor see in picters, any angel in tights and gaiters […] but mark my vords, […] he's a reg'lar thoroughbred angel for all that" (Dickens, *Posthumous Papers of the Pickwick Club* ch. 45 723).

shove or the almost imperceptible pull, to prod England out of the drunken sleep or to draw her back from the final outrage into which Britain tempted her."[a]

"This new history of yours," said MacPhee,[b] "is a wee bit lacking in documents."

"It has plenty," said Dimble with a smile. "But you do not know the language they're written in. When the history of these last few months comes to be written in *your* language, and printed, and taught in schools, there will be no mention in it of you and me, nor of Merlin and the Pendragon and the Planets. And yet in these months Britain rebelled most dangerously against Logres and was defeated only just in time."

"Aye," said MacPhee, "and it could be right good history without mentioning you and me or most of those present. I'd be greatly obliged if anyone would tell me what we *have* done—always apart from feeding the pigs and raising some very decent vegetables."

"You have done what was required of you," said the Director. "You have obeyed and waited. It will often happen like that. As one of the modern authors ① has told us, the altar must often be built in one place in order that the fire from heaven may descend somewhere else. But don't jump to conclusions. You may have plenty of work to do before a month is passed. Britain has lost a battle, but she will rise again."

"So that, meanwhile, is England," said Mother Dimble. "Just this swaying to and fro between Logres and Britain?"

"Yes," said her husband. "Don't you feel it? The very quality of England. If we've got an ass's head[c] it is by walking in a fairy wood. We've heard something ② better than we can do, but can't quite forget it . . . can't you see it in everything English—a kind of awkward grace, a humble, humorous incompleteness? How ③ right Sam Weller was when he called Mr. Pickwick an angel in gaiters! Everything here is either better or worse than——"[d]

"Dimble!" said Ransom. Dimble, whose tone had become a little impassioned, stopped and looked towards him. He hesitated and (as Jane thought) almost blushed before he began again.

"You're right, sir,"[e] he said with a smile. "I was forgetting what you have warned me always to remember. This haunting is no peculiarity of ours. Every

---

[a] her."] *BM*; her. *A*
☛ Closing quotation mark mistakenly omitted in A.
[b] MacPhee,] *MA*; MacPhee. *B*
[c] head] *BA*; head, *M*
[d] than——"] *BA*; than—" *M*
[e] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*

① *thinking simply of goodness in the abstract, one soon reaches the fatal idea of something standardised*

Lewis objected strongly to standardised formulae in moral matters. Here he denies that goodness will be the same for two nations, two angels, two people. Ten years later he told a correspondent (*Collected Letters* vol. 3 576):

> we must be careful not to expect that […] salvation shd. conform to some ready-made pattern of our own. Some Protestant sects have gone very wrong about this. They have a whole programme of "conviction", "conversion" etc marked out, the same for everyone, & will not believe that anyone can be saved who doesn't go through it "just so". But […] God has his own way with each soul.
>
> There is no evidence that St. John even underwent the same kind of "conversion" as St. Paul.

② *when the goddess Reason, […] in China*

Chesterton is a source for the goddess Reason in France: "[Some of the French at the time of the Revolution] adored the Goddess of Reason, who would appear, even when the fullest allowance has been made for their many virtues, to be the deity who had least smiled on them" ("A Defence of Heraldry", *The Defendant* 25%). In 1944 Lewis wrote addressing France, "It seems to me that your being is double. No doubt it's the same with all nations […] Is it too late to find that other France, that other England?" ("What France Means to You" 2; Hooper explains the context in *C&G* 235.)

The "order of Heaven" is more difficult and may be Lewis's invention: certainly the concept of Heaven is important in Confucius's *Analects* (see for example XVI 8)—the only work by Confucius with which Lewis was familiar (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 881)—in the translation of the *Analects* Lewis used, "*t'ien*" [heaven] is one of the terms the translator discusses in detail in his introduction (9%).

people has its own haunter. There's no special privilege for England—no nonsense about a chosen nation. We speak about Logres because it is *our* haunting, the one we know about."

"All[a] this," said MacPhee, "seems a very roundabout[b] way of saying that there's good and bad men everywhere."

"It's not a way of saying that at all," answered Dimble. "You see, MacPhee, if one is thinking simply of goodness in the abstract, one soon reaches the fatal ① idea of something standardised—some common kind of life to which all nations ought to progress. Of course[c] there are universal rules to which all goodness must conform. But that's only the grammar of virtue. It's not there that the sap is. He doesn't make two blades of grass the same: how much less two saints, two nations, two angels. The whole work of healing Tellus depends on nursing that little spark, on incarnating that ghost, which is still alive in every real people, and different in each. When Logres really dominates Britain, when the goddess Reason, the divine ② clearness, is really enthroned in France, when the order of Heaven is really followed in China—why, then it will be spring. But meantime, our concern is with Logres. We've got Britain down but who knows how long we can hold her down? Edgestow will not recover from what is happening to her to-night.[d] But there will be other Edgestows."

"I wanted to ask about Edgestow," said Mother Dimble. "Aren't Merlin and the eldils a trifle . . . well, *wholesale*. Did *all* Edgestow deserve to be wiped out?"

"Who are you lamenting?" said MacPhee. "The jobbing town council that'd have sold their own wives and daughters to bring the N.I.C.E. to Edgestow?"

"Well, I don't know much about them," said she. "But in the university.[e] Even Bracton itself. We all knew it was a horrible College, of course. But did they really mean any great harm with all their fussy little intrigues? Wasn't it more *silly* than anything else?"

"Och aye," said MacPhee. "They were only playing themselves. Kittens letting on to be tigers. But there was a real tiger about and their play ended by letting her in. They've no call to complain if, when the hunter's after her,[f] he lets

---

[a] All] *BA*; But *M*

☛ Apart from the authority of A & B, "all" is more reductive here than "but". This is more appropriate, as MacPhee is dismissing very reductively the important point that each nation has its own typical kinds of goodness and evil, as Dimble's answer shows.

[b] roundabout] *BA*; round-about *M*

[c] course] *BA*; course, *M*

[d] to-night.] *BA*; tonight. *M*

[e] university.] *BA*; University. *M*

[f] if, when […] after her,] *B*, if when […] after her *M*

① *a lead*

A bullet (*NED*, "lead" *sb.*[1] 4).

② *Trahison des clercs*

The title of a book by Julien Benda (1927), in which he argues that *les clercs*—the educated, the intelligentsia—have betrayed the world, committing treason [*trahison*] through embracing and arguing particular and nationalist loyalties and pragmatic, materialist values instead of universal and spiritual values (Benda 29–143).

I have found no positive evidence that Lewis read Benda's book, or whether he was aware only of the title. But the treason of Edgestow against Logres is the treason described by Benda.

③ *pore*

This represents Ivy Maggs' uneducated pronunciation of "poor": the *NED* characterises this pronunciation as "vulgar" ("poor" *a.* (*sb.*)).

them have a bit of a lead in their guts,[a] too. It'll learn them not to keep bad company." ①

"Well then, the fellows[b] of other colleges. What about Northumberland and Duke's?"

"I know," said Denniston. "One's sorry for a man like Churchwood. I knew him well; he was an old dear. All his lectures were devoted to proving the impossibility of ethics, though in private life he'd have walked[c] ten miles rather than leave a penny debt unpaid. But all the same . . . was there a single doctrine practised at Belbury which hadn't been preached by some lecturer at Edgestow? Oh, of course, they never thought anyone would *act* on their theories! No one was more astonished than they when what they'd been talking of for years suddenly took on reality. But it was their own child coming back to them: grown up and unrecognisable, but their own."

"I'm afraid it's all true, my dear," said Dimble. "*Trahison des clercs*. None of us are[d] quite innocent." ②

"That's nonsense, Cecil," said Mrs. Dimble.

"You are all forgetting," said Grace, "that nearly everyone except the very good (who were ripe for fair dismissal) and the very bad, had already left Edgestow. But I agree with Arthur. Those who have forgotten Logres sink into Britain. Those who call for Nonsense will find that it comes."

At that moment she was interrupted. A clawing and whining noise at the door had become audible.

"Open the door, Arthur," said Ransom. A moment later the whole party rose to its feet with cries of welcome, for the new arrival was Mr. Bultitude.

"Oh, I never *did*," said Ivy. "The pore thing! And all over snow,[e] too. I'll just take him down to the kitchen and get him something to eat. Wherever have you been, you bad thing? Eh? Just look at the state you're in." ③

---

[a] guts,] *B*; guts *M*

[b] fellows] *BA*; Fellows *M*

[c] he'd have walked] *BA*; he'd walked *M*

☛ An obvious error in M: B & A' s "he'd have walked" conveys Churchwood's behaviour under certain hypothetical conditions; "he walked" would assert that he had in fact done so, but "he'd walked" indicates neither hypothesis nor history.

[d] are] *BA*; is *M*

☛ Fowler asserts that "none" does not necessarily require a singular verb.

[e] snow,] *B*; snow *M*

V

For the third time in ten minutes the train gave a violent lurch and came to a standstill. This time the shock put all the lights out.

"This is really getting a bit too bad," said a voice in the darkness. The four other passengers in the first-class compartment recognised it as belonging to the well-bred, bulky man in the brown suit; the well-informed man who at earlier stages of the journey had told everyone else where they ought to change and why one now reached Sterk without going through Stratford and who it was that really controlled the line.

"It's serious for me," said the same voice. "I ought to be in Edgestow by now." He got up, opened the window, and stared out into the darkness. Presently[a] one of the other passengers complained of the cold. He shut the window and sat down.

"We've already been here for ten minutes," he said presently.

"Excuse me. Twelve," said another passenger.

Still the train did not move. The noise of two men quarrelling in a neighbouring compartment became audible.

Then silence followed again.[b]

Suddenly a shock flung them all together in the darkness. It was as if the train, going at full speed, had been unskilfully pulled up.

"What the devil's that?" said one.

"Open the doors."

"Has there been a collision?"

"It's all right," said the well-informed man in a loud, calm voice. "Putting on another engine. And doing it very badly. It's all these new engine-drivers[c] they've got in lately."

"Hullo!" said someone. "We're moving."

Slow and grunting, the train began to go.

"It takes its time getting up speed," said someone.

"Oh, you'll find it'll start making up for lost time in a minute," said the well-informed man.

"I wish they'd put the lights on again," said a woman's voice.

"We're *not* getting up speed," said another.

---

[a] Presently] *B*; Presently, *M*

[b] ¶Then silence followed again.] *M only*

☛ See Introduction 2 xl.

[c] engine-drivers] *B*; engine drivers *M*

"We're losing it. Damn it! Are we stopping again?"

"No. We're still moving—oh!!"—once[a] more a violent shock hit them. It was worse than the last one. For nearly a minute everything seemed to be rocking and rattling.

"This is outrageous!" exclaimed the well-informed man, once more opening the window. This time he was more fortunate. A dark figure waving a lantern was walking past beneath him.

"Hi! Porter! Guard!" he bellowed.

"It's all right, ladies and gentlemen, it's all right, keep your seats," shouted the dark figure, marching past and ignoring him.

"There's no good letting all that cold air in, sir,"[b] said the passenger next[c] the window.

"There's[d] some sort of light ahead," said the well-informed man.

"Signal against us?" asked another.

"No. Not a bit like that. The whole sky's lit up. Like a fire, or like searchlights."

"I don't care what it's like," said the chilly man. "If only—oh!"

Another shock. And then, far away in the darkness, vague disastrous noise. The train began to move again, still slowly, as if it were groping its way.

"I'll make a row about this," said the well-informed man. "It's a scandal."

About half an hour later the lighted platform of Sterk slowly loomed alongside.

"Station Announcer calling," said a voice. "Please keep your seats for an important announcement. Slight earthquake shock and floods have rendered the line to Edgestow impassable. No details available. Passengers for Edgestow are advised . . ."

The well-informed man, who was Curry, got out. Such a man always knows all the officials on a railway, and in a few minutes he was standing by the fire in the ticket collector's[e] office getting a further and private report of the disaster.

"Well, we don't exactly know yet, Mr. Curry," said the man. "There's been nothing coming through for about an hour. It's very bad, you know. They're putting the best face on it they can. There's never been an earthquake like it in

---

[a] once] *BM*; Once *A*
[b] sir,"] *B*; Sir," *M*
[c] next] *B*; next to *M*
☛ B's is the *lexio difficilior*, and the examples in the *NED* do not always have "to" ("Next" II. 9. a).
[d] ¶"There's] *BM*; "There's *A*
[e] ticket collector's] *MA*; ticket-collector's *B*

England from what I can hear. And there's the floods,[a] too. No, sir,[b] I'm afraid you'll find nothing of Bracton College. All that part of the town went almost at once. It began there, I understand. I don't know what the casualties'll be. I'm glad I got my old Dad out last week."

Curry always in later years regarded this as one of the turning-points[c] of his life. He had not up till then been a religious man. But the word that now instantly came into his mind was "Providential." You couldn't really look at it any other way. He'd been within an ace of taking the earlier train:[d] and if he had . . . why,[e] he'd have been a dead man by now. It made one think. The whole College wiped out! It would have to be rebuilt. There'd be a complete (or almost complete) new set of Fellows, a new Warden. It was Providential again that some responsible person should have been spared to deal with such a tremendous crisis. There couldn't be an ordinary election, of course. The College Visitor (who was the Lord Chancellor) would probably have to appoint a new Warden and then, in collaboration with him, a nucleus of new Fellows. The more he thought of it,[f] the more fully Curry realised that the whole shaping of the future college[g] rested with the sole survivor. It was almost like being a second founder. Providential—providential. He saw already in imagination the portrait of that second founder in the new-built hall,[h] his statue in the new-built quadrangle, the long, long chapter consecrated to him in the College History. All this time, and without[i] the least hypocrisy, habit and instinct had given his shoulders just such a droop, his eyes such a solemn sternness, his brow such a noble gravity, as a man of good feeling might be expected to exhibit on hearing such news. The ticket collector[j] was greatly edified. "You could see he felt it bad," as he said afterwards. "But he could take it. He's a fine old chap."

"When is the next train to London?" asked Curry. "I must be in town first thing to-morrow[k] morning."

---

[a] floods,] *BA*; floods *M*
[b] sir,] *BA*; Sir, *M*
[c] turning-points] *BA*; turning points *M*
[d] train:] *BA*; train; *M*
[e] why,] *B*; why *M*
[f] it,] *BA*; it *M*
[g] college] *BA*; College *M*
[h] hall,] *B*; Hall, *M*
[i] and without] *B*; without *M*
[j] ticket collector] *ed.* ticket-collector *BM*
☛ A's witness is lacking here, but at 399[e] it has "ticket collector". B has a hyphen in both places, but M has two words on p. 399 but a hyphen here.
[k] to-morrow] *B*; tomorrow *M*

① *junket*

A dessert made of sweetened milk curdled and allowed to set: it can be flavoured with brandy and cinnamon or nutmeg (Beeton 863, 1052).

② *the future Mrs. Bultitude*

Lewis asked Eddison, whose fantasy novel *The Worm Ourobouros* (1922) he greatly admired, if he could help. In the Elizabethan English in which they usually corresponded, he wrote: "yf you knowe aught of the nuptiall practises and amorous carriages of beares, fayle not to let me knowe, for I haue brought in a beare in the book I now write and it shal to bedde at the end with the other" (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 543–44). This was in a letter written in December 1942, which shows how long the novel was in the gestation, and also from how early on this episode was planned.

In April 1943 Lewis had *Perelandra* and *Out of the Silent Planet* to Eddison, and wrote to him, "The arcturogamie or bears-bridal was for the third book of the trilogy, but I have just read through what is already written (about 300 sheets) and come to the uncomfortable conclusion that it is all rubbish" (*Collected Letters* vol. 2 571).

VI

Ivy Maggs, it will be remembered, had left the dining-room[a] for the purpose of attending to Mr. Bultitude's comfort. It therefore surprised everyone when she returned in less than a minute with a wild expression on her face.

"Oh, come quick, someone. Come quick!" she gasped. "There's a bear in the kitchen."

"A bear, Ivy?" said the Director. "But of course—"

"Oh, I don't mean Mr. Bultitude, sir.[b] There's a strange bear; another one."

"Indeed!"

"And it's eaten up all what was left of the goose and half the ham and all the junket, and[c] now it's lying along the table eating everything as it goes along ① and wriggling from one dish to another and a-breaking[d] all the crockery. Oh, do come quick! There'll be nothing left."

"And what line is Mr. Bultitude taking[e] about all this, Ivy?" asked Ransom.

"Well, that's what I want someone to come and see. He's carrying on something dreadful[f] sir.[g] I never see anything like it. First of all he just stood lifting up his legs in a funny way as if he thought[h] he could dance, which we all know he can't. But now he's got up on the dresser on his hind legs and there he's kind of bobbing up and down, making the awfullest noise—squeaking like—and he's put one foot into the plum pudding already and he's got his head all mixed up in the string of onions,[i] and I can't do *nothing* with him, really I can't."

"This is very odd behaviour for[j] Mr. Bultitude. You don't think, my dear, that the stranger might be a *she* bear?"

"Oh, don't say that, sir!"[k] exclaimed Ivy with extreme dismay.

"I think that's the truth, Ivy. I strongly suspect that this is the future Mrs. ② Bultitude."

"It'll be the present Mrs. Bultitude if we sit here talking about it much longer," said MacPhee, rising to his feet.

---

[a] dining-room] *BA*; dining room *M*
[b] sir.] *BA*; Sir. *M*
[c] , and] *BA*; and *M*
[d] a-breaking] *BA*; a breaking *M*
[e] taking] *BM*; doing *A*
[f] dreadful] *A*; dreadful, *BM*
[g] sir.] *BA*; Sir. *M*
[h] thought] *BM*; though *A*
☛ A compositor's error in A.
[i] onions,] *A*; onions *BM*
[j] for,] *BM*; of *A*
[k] sir!"] *BA*; Sir!" *M*

① *Sine Cerere et Baccho*

Ransom quotes the first part of a Latin proverb to the effect that romantic ardour grows cold without food and drink: "*Sine Cerere et Baccho friget Venus*"—"Without Ceres and Bacchus Venus grows cold".

Smilde cites Terence's *Eunuchus* as the source for this, but Terence actually has a character remark that it is a true saying ("*verbum … verum*") that "*Sine Cerere et Libero friget Venus*" (310–11). Libero is Bacchus, but Terence cannot be the specific verbal source for Ransom's quotation.

Venus with Bacchus and Ceres

Venus without Bacchus and Ceres

There need not be a specific source, as the expression was proverbial and was also extremely popular in the seventeenth century as the title and subject of works of art—at least one musical piece (a canon for four voices by Jan Pieterszoon Sweelinck) and a number of mythological paintings and etchings. The paintings usually show Venus and Cupid in company with Ceres and Bacchus (as in that by Rubens above left), but Rubens (above right) also, rather more imaginatively, depicts a chilly Venus, *sine Cerere et Baccho*, attempting languidly to warm herself at a rather inadequate fire tended by Cupid.

② *decent, in the old sense,* decens*, fitting*

The form *decens* is Latin, from which "decent" is borrowed; its earliest (although "*Obs.* or *arch.*") meaning includes "seemly, fitting" (*NED*, "Decent" 1. a.).

③ *"She comes more near the Earth than she was wont […] to make men mad."*

Othello, interrupted in his killing of Desdemona with news of another death, says, "It is the very error of the moon; / She comes more near the earth than she was wont, / And makes men mad" (Shakespeare, *Othello* V ii 107–09). The context of the quotation does not seem to be relevant here.

"Oh dear, what *shall* we do?" said Ivy.

"I am sure Mr. Bultitude is quite equal to the situation," replied the Director. "At present the lady is refreshing herself. *Sine Cerere et Baccho*, Dimble. We can trust them to manage their own affairs." ①

"No doubt, no doubt," said MacPhee. "But not in our kitchen."

"Ivy, my dear," said Ransom, "you must be very firm. Go into the kitchen and tell the strange bear I want to see her. You wouldn't be afraid, would you?"

"Afraid? Not me. I'll show her who's the Director here. Not that it isn't only natural for her."

"What's the matter with that jackdaw?"[a] said Dr. Dimble. The bird had hitherto been asleep on Ransom's shoulder.[b]

"I think it's trying to get out," said Denniston. "Shall I open the window?"

"It's warm enough to have the window open, anyway," said the Director. And as the window was opened Baron Corvo[c] hopped out and there was a scuffle and a chattering just outside.

"Another love affair," said Mrs. Dimble. "It sounds as if Jack had found a Jill. . . .[d] What a delicious night!" she added. For as the curtain swelled and lifted over the open window,[e] all the freshness of a midsummer night seemed to be blowing into the room. At that moment, a little farther off, came a sound of whinnying.[f]

"Hullo!" said Denniston, "the old mare is excited,[g] too."

" 'Sh! Listen!" said Jane.

"That's a different horse," said Denniston.

"It's a stallion," said Camilla.

"This," said MacPhee with great emphasis, "is becoming indecent!"

"On the contrary," said Ransom, "decent, in the old sense, *decens*, fitting, is just what she[h] is. Venus herself is over St. Anne's." ②

"She comes more near the Earth than she was wont," quoted Dimble, "to make men mad." ③

---

[a] jackdaw] *MA*; Jackdaw *B*

[b] The bird had hitherto been asleep on Ransom's shoulder.] *A only.*

☛ Noted by Lake (58). One A's interpolations for clarity, not because of or to enable an excision. This sentence confirms that the jackdaw has been present all along. See also 156[c] and 212[a].

[c] Corvo] *B*; Korvo *M* the daw *A*

[d] Jill. . . .] *BA*; Jill . . . *M*

[e] window,] *BA*; window *M*

[f] whinnying.] *BA*; whinneying. *M*

[g] excited,] *BA*; excited *M*

[h] she] *BA*; it *M*

☛ The unexpected pronoun "she" emphasises that what is happening is the work of Perelandra, a living creature in conscious obedience to God: it is not merely an accidental result of there being liberated animals about.

"She is nearer than any astronomer knows," said Ransom. "The work at Edgestow is done, the other gods have withdrawn. She waits still, and[a] when she returns to her sphere I will ride with her."

Suddenly in the semi-darkness Mrs. Dimble's voice cried sharply, "Look out! Look out! Cecil! I'm sorry. I can't stand bats. They'll get in my hair!" *Cheep cheep* went the voices of the two bats as they flickered to and fro above the candles. Because of their shadows they seemed to be four bats instead of two.

"You'd better go, Margaret," said the Director. "You and Cecil had better both go. I shall be gone very soon now. There is no need of long good-byes."

"I really think I *must* go," said Mother Dimble. "I can't stand bats."

"Comfort Margaret, Cecil," said Ransom. "No. Do not stay. I'm not dying. Seeing people off is always folly. It's neither good mirth nor good sorrow."

"You mean us to go, sir?"[b] said Dimble.

"Go, my dear friends. *Urendi Maleldil*."

He laid his hands on their heads:[c] Cecil gave his arm to his wife and they went.

"Here she is, sir,"[d] said Ivy Maggs, re-entering the room a moment later, flushed and radiant. A bear waddled at her side, its muzzle white with junket and its cheeks sticky with gooseberry jam. "And—oh, sir?"[e] she added.

"What is it, Ivy?" said the Director.

"Please, sir,[f] it's poor Tom. It's my husband. And if you don't mind——"[g]

"You've given him something to eat and drink, I hope?"

"Well, yes, I have. There wouldn't have been nothing if those bears had been there much longer."

"What has Tom got, Ivy?"

"I give[h] him the cold pie and the pickles (he always was a great one for pickles) and the end of the cheese and a bottle of stout, and I've put the kettle on so as we can make ourselves—so as he can make himself a nice cup of tea. And he's enjoying it ever so, sir,[f] and he said would you mind him not coming up to say

---

[a] , and] *BA*; and *M*
[b] sir?"] *BA*; Sir?" *M*
[c] heads:] *BA*; heads; *M*
[d] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*
[e] sir?"] *A*; Sir!" *M*, sir!" *B*
☛ Although M & B's exclamation is possible, as Ivy remembers the next thing she wants to say, the question perhaps fits better with her tentative requests in the conversation that follows.
[f] sir,] *BA*; Sir, *M*
[g] mind——"] *BA*; mind—"
[h] give] *BM*; gave *A*
☛ *Lectio difficilior.* A's grammatically-correct past tense is, I think, an inappropriate correction of Ivy's uneducated usage.

how d'you do because he never was much of a one for company[a] if you take my meaning."

All this time the[b] strange bear had been standing perfectly still with its eyes fixed on the Director. Now he[c] laid his hand on its flat head. "*Urendi Maleldil*," he said. "You are a good bear. Go to your mate—but here he is," for at that moment the door,[d] which was already a little ajar,[e] was pushed further open to admit the enquiring and slightly anxious face of Mr. Bultitude. "Take her, Bultitude. But not in the house. Jane, open the other window, the French window. It is like a night in July." The window swung open and the two bears went blundering out into the warmth and the wetness. Everyone noticed how light it had become.

"Are those birds all daft that they're singing at quarter to twelve?" asked MacPhee.

"No," said Ransom. "They are sane. Now, Ivy, you want to go and talk to Tom. Mother Dimble has put you both in the little room half-way[f] up the stairs, not in the lodge[g] after all."

"Oh, sir,"[h] said Ivy, and stopped.[i]

The Director leaned forward and laid his hand on her head. "Of course[j] you want to go," he said. "Why, he's hardly had time to see you in your new dress yet. Have you no kisses to give him?" he said,[k] and kissed her. "Then give him mine, which are not mine but by derivation. Don't cry. You are a good woman. Go and heal this man. *Urendi Maleldil*—we shall meet again."

"What's all yon squealing and squeaking?" said MacPhee. "I hope it's not the pigs got loose. For I tell you there's[l] already as much carrying on about this house and garden as I can stand."

"I think it's hedgehogs," said Grace Ironwood.

"That last sound was somewhere in the house," said Jane.

"Listen!" said the Director, and for a short time all were still. Then his face

---

[a] company] *BA*; company, *M*
[b] the] *BM*; The *A*
[c] he] *BM*; He *A*
[d] door,] *BA*; door *M*
[e] ajar,] *BA*; ajar *M*
[f] half-way] *BA*; half way *M*
[g] lodge] *MA*; lodge, *B*
[h] sir,"] *BA*; Sir," *M*
[i] stopped.¶] *A*; stopped. *BM*
[j] course] *BA*; course, *M*
[k] said,] *B*; said *M*
[l] there's] *BM*; There's *A*

① *So geht es in Snützepützhaüsel / Da singen und tanzen die Maüsel !*

From an "[a]nonymous 18th-century German song, published in 1807 in the *Sammlung [D]eutscher Volkslieder* […] compiled by J.G. Büsching and F.H. von der Hagen" (Smilde): "So it happens in the itsy-bitsy-house: there the mice sing and dance!" (Munshi).

Lewis might have known the song from the collection, or from a work by Carl Maria von Weber, the Romantic composer, who scored the song for vocal duet accompanied by piano in 1817 (Briscoe)—there is nothing to say that Ransom does not sing the lines.

② *contrary to his own judgement, the others had seen fit to clothe him*

Like Jane (ch. 17 II 387), MacPhee is given the grace to submit to the judgement of others.

③ *as we ought to be […] and playfellows.*

See "Human Being" in Introduction 4.

④ *A great dome of light stands over the whole garden.*

This light shining through mist (see ch. 17 VII 407) is reminiscent of the overshadowing glory of God at important events in the Bible, such as when the Temple of Solomon was dedicated (I Chron. 5: 13–14) and at the Transfiguration of Christ (Mark 9: 7). Here too, God is acting in a special way through His servants the Eldils, and this is presumably a token of it.

relaxed into a smile. "It's my friends[a] behind the wainscot," he said. "There are revels there, too—

"*So*[b] *geht es in Snützepützhaüsel* ①
Da singen und tanzen die Maüsel!"[c]

"I suppose," said MacPhee drily, producing his snuff-box from under the ash-coloured and slightly monastic-looking robe in which, contrary to his own ② judgement,[d] the others had seen fit to clothe him, "I suppose we may think ourselves lucky that no giraffes, hippopotami, elephants, or the like have seen fit to—God almighty, what's that?" For as he spoke, a long grey flexible tube came in between the swaying curtains and, passing over MacPhee's shoulder, helped itself to a bunch of bananas.

"In the name of Hell,[e] where's all them beasts coming from?" he said.

"They are the liberated prisoners from Belbury," said the Director. "She comes more near the Earth than she was wont to—to make Earth sane. Perelandra is all about us,[f] and Man is no longer isolated. We are now as we ought to be— ③ between the angels who are our elder brothers and the beasts who are our jesters, servants, and playfellows."

Whatever MacPhee was attempting to say in reply was drowned by an ear-splitting[g] noise from beyond the window.

"Elephants! Two of them," said Jane weakly. "Oh, the celery! And the rose beds!"

"By your leave, Mr. Director," said MacPhee sternly,[h] "I'll just draw these curtains. You seem to forget there are ladies present."

"No," said Grace Ironwood in a voice as strong as his, "there[i] will be nothing unfit for anyone to see. Draw them wider. How light it is! Brighter than moonlight: almost brighter than day. A great dome of light stands over the whole ④ garden. Look! The elephants are dancing. How high they lift their feet. And they go round and round. And oh, look!—how they lift their trunks. And how[j] ceremonial they are. It is like a minuet of giants. They are not like the other animals. They are a sort of good daemons."

"They are moving away," said Camilla.

---

[a] my friends] *BM*; the mice *A*
[b] "*So*] *B*; *So M*
[c] *Maüsel!*"] *B*; *Maüsel! M* ." *A*
[d] own judgement,] *B*; judgment, *M*
[e] Hell,] *BA*; Hell *M*
[f] us,] *A*; us *BM*
[g] ear-splitting] *BA*; earsplitting *M*
[h] sternly,] *BA*; sternly. *M*
[i] his, "there] *BA*; his. "There *M*
[j] how] *BM*; How *A*

① *Have children*

Lewis seems to have believed that all women really wanted to marry and to have children and would find fulfilment in this way: at least, in 1955, he considered it "a little alarming to hear that [a woman of whom a correspondent wrote] doesn't want to marry anyone", but consoled himself and his correspondent with the suggestion, "But I daresay she'll feel differently when she's had a baby" (*Collected Letters* vol. 3 618).

For criticism dealing with Lewis and women/gender, see Fredrick & McBride and *C.S. Lewis and Gender*, and Woodruff Tait and Hilder for particularly interesting and nuanced discussions.

"They will be as private as human lovers," said the Director. "They are not common beasts."

"I think," said MacPhee, "I'll away down to my office and cast some accounts. I'd feel easier in my mind if I were inside and the door locked before any crocodiles or kangaroos start courting in the middle of all my files. There'd better be one man about the place keep his head this night,[a] for the rest of you are clean daft. Good night, ladies."

"Good-bye, MacPhee" said Ransom.

"No, no," said MacPhee, standing well back[b] but extending his hand." You'll speak none of your blessings over me. If ever I take to religion, it won't be your kind. My uncle was Moderator of the General Assembly. But there's my hand. What you and I have seen together . . . but no matter for that. And I'll say this, Dr. Ransom, that with all your faults (and there's no man alive knows them better than myself)[c] you are the best man, taking you by and large, that ever I knew or heard of. You are . . . you and I . . . but there are the ladies crying. I don't rightly know what I was going to say. I'm away this minute. Why would a man want to lengthen it? God bless you, Dr. Ransom. Ladies, I'll wish you a good night."

"Open all the windows," said Ransom. "The vessel in which I must ride is now almost within the air of this World."

"It is growing brighter every minute," said Denniston.

"Can we be with you to the very end?" said Jane.

"Child," said the Director, "you should not stay till then."

"Why, sir?"[d]

"You are waited for."

"Me, sir?"[d]

"Yes. Your husband is waiting for you in the lodge.[e] It was your own marriage chamber that you prepared. Should you not go to him?"

"Must I go *now*?"

"If you leave the decision with me, it is now that I would send you."

"Then I will go, sir.[f] But—but—am I a bear or a hedgehog?"

"More. But not less. Go in obedience and you will find love. You will have no more dreams. Have children instead. *Urendi Maleldil.*" ①

---

[a] night,] *B*; night *M*
[b] back] *BA*; back, *M*
[c] myself)] *B*; myself), *M*
[d] sir?"] *BA*; Sir?" *M*
[e] lodge.] *BA*; Lodge. *M*
[f] sir.] *BA*; Sir. *M*

① *Beauty for use too rich, for earth too dear*

A quotation from Romeo's admiring response upon first beholding Juliet (Shakespeare, *Romeo and Juliet* I v 51).

VII

Long before he reached St. Anne's, Mark had come to realise[a] that either he himself or else the world about him[b] was in a very strange condition. The journey took him longer than he expected, but that was perhaps fully accounted for by one or two mistakes that he made. Much harder to explain was the horror of light to the west[c], over Edgestow, and the throbbings and bouncings of the earth.[d] Then came the[e] sudden warmth and the torrents of melted snow rolling down the hillside. Everything became a mist:[f] and then, as the lights in the west[c] vanished, this mist grew softly luminous in a different place—above him, as though the light rested on St. Anne's. And all the time he[g] had the curious impression that things of very diverse shapes and sizes were slipping past him in the haze—animals, he thought. Perhaps it was all a dream; or perhaps it was the end of the world:[h] or perhaps he was dead. But in spite of all perplexities, he was conscious of extreme well-being. His mind was ill at ease, but as for his body—health and youth and pleasure and longing seemed to be blowing towards him from the cloudy light upon the hill. He never doubted that he must keep on.

His mind was not at ease. He knew that he was going to meet Jane, and something was beginning to happen to him which ought to have happened to him far earlier. That same laboratory outlook upon love which had forestalled in Jane the humility of a wife, had equally forestalled in him, during what passed for courtship, the humility of a lover. Or if there had ever arisen in him at some wiser moment the sense of "Beauty too rich for use,[i] for earth too dear," he had put it away from him. False theories, at once prosaic and fanciful, had made it seem to him a mood frowsty,[j] unrealistic, and outmoded. Now, belated, after all favours had been conceded, the unexpected misgiving was coming over him. He tried to shake it off. They were married, weren't they? And they were sensible, modern people? What could be more natural, more ordinary?

①

---

[a] realise] *BM*; realised *A*
[b] him] *BA*; him, *M*
[c] west] *BA*; West *M*
[d] earth.] *BA*; Earth. *M*
[e] the] *B*; a *M*
☛ B's "the sudden warmth and the torrents" is better than M's change from "a" to "the".
[f] mist:] *BA*; mist; *M*
[g] he] *BM*; He *A*
[h] world:] *B*; world; *M*
[i] use,] *BM*; us, *A*
☛ A's reading is clearly a compositing error: see note 1 facing this page.
[j] frowsty] *B*; frousty *M*
☛ The *NED* does not have "frousty", although it does have "froust" as an alternative for the verb.

① *a hedge about her […] hot, thumb-like, greedy fingers.*

The image of a lady's love (or virginity) as a rose within a fenced-off garden derives from *La Roman de La Rose* and its Middle English adaptation *The Romaunt of the Rose*, and is a commonplace of Medieval love allegory.

Mark's inappropriate haste is thrown into relief if his relations with Jane are compared with Lewis's summary of the Lover's initial approaches to the Rose in *The Allegory of Love* (128–35).

Lewis uses very similar language to warn against impetuosity in "The Queen of Drum" (unpublished in his life-time): "Almost crushed dead, I fear, on your own breast / With hot, rough, greedy hands what you love best" (III 98–99, *Narrative Poems* 149).

But then[a] certain moments of unforgettable failure in their short married life rose in his imagination. He had thought often enough of what he called Jane's "moods." This time at last he thought of his own clumsy importunity. And the thought would not go away. Inch by inch all the lout and clown and clod-hopper in him was revealed to his own reluctant inspection; the coarse[b] male boor with horny hands and hobnailed shoes and beefsteak jaw, not rushing in—for that can be carried off—but blundering, sauntering, stumping in where great lovers, knights, and poets[c] would have feared to tread. An image of Jane's skin, so smooth, so white (or so he now imagined it) that a child's kiss might make a mark on it, floated before him. How had he dared? Her driven snow, her music, her sacrosanctity, the very style of all her movements . . . how had he dared? And dared, too, with no sense of daring, nonchalantly, in careless stupidity! The very thoughts that crossed her face from moment to moment, all of them beyond his reach, made (had he but had the wit to see it) a hedge about her which such as he ① should never have had the temerity to pass. Yes, yes—of course it was she who had allowed him to pass it: perhaps in luckless, misunderstanding pity. And he had taken blackguardly advantage of that noble error in her judgement; had behaved as if he were native to that fenced garden and even its natural possessor.

All this, which should have been uneasy joy, was torment to him, for it came too late. He was discovering the hedge after he had plucked the rose, and not only plucked it but torn it all to pieces and crumpled it with hot, thumb-like, greedy fingers. How had he dared? And who that understood could forgive him? He knew now what he must look like in the eyes of her friends and equals. Seeing that picture, he grew hot to the forehead, alone there in the mist.

The word *Lady* had made no part of his vocabulary save as a pure form,[d] or else in mockery. He had laughed too soon.

Well, he would release her. She would be glad to be rid of him. Rightly glad. It would now almost have shocked him to believe otherwise. Ladies in some noble and spacious room, discoursing in cool ladyhood together, either with exquisite gravity or with silver laughter—how should they *not* be glad when the intruder had gone?—the loud-voiced or tongue-tied creature, all boots and hands, whose true place was in the stable. What should he do in such a room—where his very admiration could only be insult, his best attempts to be either grave or gay could only reveal unbridgeable misunderstanding? What he had called her coldness

[a] then] *BA*; then, *M*
[b] coarse] *A*; coarse, *BM*
[c] knights, and poets] *A*; knights and poets, *BM*
[d] form,] *B*; form *M*

① *Obviously it was high time she went in.*

This descent from the sublime to the domestic is not bathetic: Jane has finally accepted that she is Mark's wife in the eyes of Heaven, and she has finally come to care about his sufferings. Her wifely concern about his clothes must therefore be understood as a triumph for her young obedience. We have followed Mark and Jane's stories, told sequentially and more-or-less in step (see Purtill), starting with Jane alone and frustrated in their flat, and ending with Jane and Mark both transformed and repentant in another but equally domestic setting. This is appropriate for "A Modern Fairy-Tale for Grown-Ups": as Lewis notes in his Preface, fairy-tales arise in commonplace settings (5); see "The Inklings" (Introduction 3 xci).

seemed now to be her patience. Whereof the memory scalded. For he loved her now. But it was all spoiled: too late to mend matters.

Suddenly the diffused light brightened and flushed. He looked up and perceived a great lady standing by a doorway in a wall. It was not Jane, not like Jane. It was larger, almost gigantic. It was not human, though it was like a woman divinely tall, part naked, part wrapped in a flame-coloured robe. Light came from it. The face was enigmatic, ruthless,[a] he thought, inhumanly beautiful. It was opening the door for him. He did not dare disobey ("Surely," he thought, "I must have died")[b] and he went in: found himself in some place of sweet smells and bright fires, with food and wine and a rich bed.

VIII

And Jane went out of the big house with the Director's kiss upon her lips and his words in her ears, into the liquid light and supernatural warmth of the garden and across the wet lawn (birds were everywhere) and past the seesaw[c] and the greenhouse and the piggeries, going down all the time, down to the lodge, descending the ladder of humility. First she thought of the Director, then she thought of Maleldil. Then she thought of her obedience and the setting of each foot before the other became a kind of sacrificial ceremony. And she thought of children, and of pain and death. And now she was half-way[d] to the lodge, and thought of Mark and of all his sufferings. When she[e] came to the lodge she[f] was surprised to see it all dark and the door shut. As she stood at the door with one hand on the latch, a new thought came to her. How if Mark did not want her—not to-night,[g] nor in that way, nor any time, nor in any way? How if Mark were not there, after all? A great gap—of relief or of disappointment, no one could say—was made in her mind by this thought. Still she did not move the latch. Then she noticed that the window, the bedroom window, was open. Clothes were piled on a chair inside the room so carelessly that they lay over the sill: the sleeve of a shirt—Mark's shirt—even hung over down the outside wall. And in all this damp,[h] too. How exactly like Mark! Obviously it was high time she went in.

[a] ruthless,] *B*; ruthless *M*
[b] died")] *BA*; died"), *M*
[c] seesaw] *B*; see-saw *M*
[d] half-way] *B*; half way *M*
[e] she] *BM*; She *A*
[f] she] *BM*; and *A*
[g] to-night,] *BA*; tonight, *M*
[h] damp,] *BA*; damp *M*

APPENDICES

Appendix A Variorum Presentation of L, B, A, and M

Appendix B The Chronology of the Novel

Appendix C Borrowings in O'Donnell's Modesty Blaise Novels

Appendix A: Variorum Presentation of L, B, A, and M

Here I provide transcripts of the extant manuscript fragments (L) alongside the corresponding passages in the three first editions: (B, M & A). Since L is very far from being in a final form, a certain amount of guess-work was involved in deciding the boundaries of the corresponding passages in the published versions.

L1

'Matrimony was ordained, Thirdly,' said Jane Ruddock 'For mutual society, help, and comfort.' She had not heard language from the Prayer Book for many years before her wedding day, and now she quoted the words with some bitterness as she looked round her tidied kitchen and hesitated before going into the small sitting room of her flat. It also had been tidied ; and the bed next door had been made. Jane had lived mostly among men and timetables, in hostels and laboratories, and felt some contempt for the day-long dilatory fumbling which her mother's generation had described as 'keeping house.' It was barely ten o'clock. Her work was done till six that evening. The day was all hers : and the silence and solitude, unnoticed while she was at work, and now flowing back upon her, would fill the small, bright rooms for the next eight hours. 'Mutual society!' she repeated with contempt. Marriage had proved itself in fact the door out of society into solitary confinement. Never had she been so much alone as in this last fortnight since she and Peter returned from their honeymoon. Her unmarried life as a student in biochemistry now seemed to her to have been an endless succession of excitements - of chattering lunches and snug suppers, of plans and causes and indignation meetings

B (ch. 1 ı p. 9–10)

"MATRIMONY was ordained, thirdly," said Jane Studdock to herself, "for the mutual society, help, and comfort that the one ought to have of the other." She had not been to church since her schooldays until she went there six months ago to be married, and the words of the service had stuck in her mind.

Through the open door she could see the tiny kitchen of the flat and hear the loud, ungentle tick-tick of the clock. She had just left the kitchen and knew how tidy it was. The breakfast things were washed up, the tea towels were hanging above the stove, and the floor was mopped. The beds were made and the rooms "done." She had just returned from the only shopping she need do that day, and it was still a minute before eleven. Except for getting her own lunch and tea, there was nothing that had to be done till six o'clock, even supposing that Mark was really coming home for dinner. But there was a College meeting to-day. Almost certainly Mark would ring up about tea-time to say that the meeting was taking longer than he had expected and that he would have to dine in College. The hours before her were as empty as the flat. The sun shone and the clock ticked.

"Mutual society, help, and comfort," said Jane bitterly. In reality marriage had proved to be the door out of a world of work and comradeship and laughter and innumerable things to do, into something like solitary confinement. For some years before their marriage she had never seen so little of Mark as she had done in the last six months.

A (ch. 1 I p. 7)

"MATRIMONY was ordained, thirdly," said Jane Studdock to herself, "for the mutual society, help, and comfort that the one ought to have of the other." She had not been to church since her schooldays until she went there six months ago to be married, and the words of the service had stuck in her mind.

Through the open door she could see the tiny kitchen of the flat and knew how tidy it was. The beds were made and the rooms "done." There was nothing that had to be done till six o'clock, even supposing that Mark was really coming home for dinner. Almost certainly Mark would ring up about tea-time to say that the meeting was taking longer than he had expected and that he would have to dine in College.

"Mutual society, help, and comfort," said Jane bitterly. In reality marriage had proved to be the door out of a world of work and comradeship and laughter and innumerable things to do, into something like solitary confinement.

M (ch. 1 I p. 1–2)

"Matrimony was ordained, thirdly," said Jane Studdock to herself, "for the mutual society, help, and comfort that the one ought to have of the other." She had not been to church since her schooldays until she went there six months ago to be married, and the words of the service had stuck in her mind.

Through the open door she could see the tiny kitchen of the flat and hear the loud, ungentle tick-tick of the clock. She had just left the kitchen and knew how tidy it was. The breakfast things were washed up, the tea towels were hanging above the stove, and the floor was mopped. The beds were made and the rooms "done." She had just returned from the only shopping she need do that day, and it was still a minute before eleven. Except for getting her own lunch and tea, there was nothing that had to be done till six o'clock, even supposing that Mark was really coming home for dinner. But there was a College Meeting today. Almost certainly Mark would ring up about teatime to say that the meeting was taking longer than he had expected and that he would have to dine in College. The hours before her were as empty as the flat. The sun shone and the clock ticked.

"Mutual society, help, and comfort," said Jane bitterly. In reality marriage had proved to be the door out of a world of work and comradeship and laughter and innumerable things to do, into something like solitary confinement. For some years before their marriage she had never seen so little of Mark as she had done in the last six months.

L2

The fragment here continues directly with the fragment shown on the next opening. In the printed editions, the text corresponding to this first part of L2 comes later *than the text corresponding to the second part of L2.*

'The true reason, in your opinion, being?-' said MacPhee.
'The true reason being that Bragdon is the only centre, which has survived into comparatively modern times, of the original Western Magic brought to this island after the destruction of Numinor - of Atlantis, the fallen, the waste land.'

B (ch. 9 v p. 245–46)

At the beginning the grand mystery for the Company had been why the enemy wanted Bragdon Wood. The land was unsuitable and could be made fit to bear a building on the scale they proposed only by the costliest preliminary work; and Edgestow itself was not an obviously convenient place. By intense study in collaboration with Dr. Dimble and despite the continued scepticism of MacPhee the Director had at last come to a certain conclusion. Dimble and he and the Dennistons shared between them a knowledge of Arthurian Britain which orthodox scholarship will probably not reach for some centuries. They knew that Edgestow lay in what had been the very heart of ancient Logres, that the village of Cure Hardy preserved the name of Ozana le Cœur Hardi, and that a historical Merlin had once worked in what was now Bragdon Wood.

What exactly he had done there they did not know; but they had all, by various routes, come too far either to consider his art mere legend and imposture, or to equate it exactly with what the Renaissance called Magic. Dimble even maintained that a good critic, by his sensibility alone, could detect the difference between the traces which the two things had left on literature. "What common measure is there," he would ask, "between ceremonial occultists like Faustus and Prospero and Archimago with their midnight studies, their forbidden books, their attendant fiends or elementals, and a figure like Merlin who seems to produce his results simply by being Merlin?" And Ransom agreed. He thought that Merlin's art was the last survival of something older and different—something brought to Western Europe after the fall of Numinor and going back to an era in which the general relations of mind and matter on this planet had been other than those we know.

A (ch. 9 v p. 120)

At the beginning the grand mystery for the Company had been why the enemy wanted Bragdon Wood. The land was unsuitable and Edgestow itself was not an obviously convenient place. By intense study in collaboration with Dr. Dimble the Director had at last come to a certain conclusion. They knew that Edgestow lay in what had been the very heart of ancient Logres and that an historical Merlin had once worked in what was now Bragdon Wood.

What exactly he had done there they did not know; but they had all, by various routes, come too far either to consider his art mere legend and imposture, or to equate it exactly with what the Renaissance called Magic. They thought that Merlin's art was the last survival of something older and different—something brought to Western Europe after the fall of Atlantis and going back to an era in which the general relations of mind and matter on this planet had been other than those we know.

M (ch. 9 v p. 231–32)

At the beginning the grand mystery for the Company had been why the enemy wanted Bragdon Wood. The land was unsuitable and could be made fit to bear a building on the scale they proposed only by the costliest preliminary work; and Edgestow itself was not an obviously convenient place. By intense study in collaboration with Dr. Dimble, and despite the continued scepticism of MacPhee, the Director had at last come to a certain conclusion. Dimble and he and the Dennistons shared between them a knowledge of Arthurian Britain which orthodox scholarship will probably not reach for some centuries. They knew that Edgestow lay in what had been the very heart of ancient Logres, that the village of Cure Hardy preserved the name of Ozana le Cœur Hardi, and that a historical Merlin had once worked in what was now Bragdon Wood.

What exactly he had done there they did not know; but they had all, by various routes, come too far either to consider his art mere legend and imposture, or to equate it exactly with what the Renaissance called Magic. Dimble even maintained that a good critic, by his sensibility alone, could detect the difference between the traces which the two things had left on literature. "What common measure is there," he would ask, "between ceremonial occultists like Faustus and Prospero and Archimago with their midnight studies, their forbidden books, their attendant fiends or elementals, and a figure like Merlin who seems to produce his results simply by being Merlin?" And Ransom agreed. He thought that Merlin's art was the last survival of something older and different—something brought to Western Europe after the fall of Numinor and going back to an era in which the general relations of mind and matter on this planet had been other than those we know.

L2

The fragment here follows directly on from the fragment shown on the previous opening.

The Director paused for a few seconds, and then, turning to MacPhee, asked for his second question. The Scotchman produced his snuff-box, turned it over, two or three times in his hands, replaced it unused in his pocket, cleared his throat, and began.

'The original form of my ~~e~~second question,' he said 'Was no more than this: what are the Director's plans? But I have no doubt some of you will remember me asking that before. I think it will be better if I put it another way. You'll understand, Dr. Ransom, that there is no personal animus in anything I'm saying. But the long and the short of it is just this. Either you tell us no plan because you have none, or because you have no confidence in us. If you have none, a man would think you'd listen to advice; unless, again, you have no confidence in your council. And you may well have no confidence: and if you havenot, I'm not such a conceited fool as to feel any resentment. Its' not that I'm thinking of: its' the time slipping past and the enemy busy while you're doing nothing with us. I ask, therefore, whether you have seriously considered dissolving this present association and finding some other colleagues with whom you can do something'

'But,' said the Director, 'I have no power to ~~dismiss~~ dissolve this council'

'It's a strange thing,' said MacPhee 'If you had power to summon what you cannot dissolve.'

'I never summoned you,' said the Director

There was a pause. Jane, who who for some time had found it difficult to understand what was going on, now saw from their faces that the others were also a little bewildered.

'There is some strange misunderstanding here,' said the Director after he had looked from face to face. 'I think I had better clear it up at once. Have you been under the impression that I selected you?

~~There was no reply. After a second or two the Director smiled, and said, 'Not even the beasts! Ivy Maggs, you must make answer for the bear. How did he come to join us?'~~

B (ch. 9 IV p. 241–43)

I should be glad to hear what practical measures on our side are suggested."

With these words he tapped his knuckles gently on his knee and stared hard at the Director.

"It is," said MacPhee, "a question I have ventured to propound before."

A sudden transformation, like the leaping up of a flame in embers, passed over Grace Ironwood's face. "Can the Director not be trusted to produce his own plan in his own time, Mr. MacPhee?" she said fiercely.

"By the same token, Doctor," said he, "can the Director's council not be trusted to hear his plan?"

"What do you mean, MacPhee?" asked Dimble.

"Mr. Director," said MacPhee. "You'll excuse me for speaking frankly. Your enemies have provided themselves with this Head. They have taken possession of Edgestow, and they're in a fair way to suspend the laws of England. And still you tell us it is not time to move. If you had taken my advice six months ago we would have had an organisation all over this island by now and maybe a party in the House of Commons. I know well what you'll say—that those are not the right methods. And maybe no. But if you can neither take our advice nor give us anything to do, what are we all sitting here for? Have you seriously considered sending us away and getting some other colleagues that you *can* work with?"

"Dissolve the Company, do you mean?" said Dimble.

"Aye, I do," said MacPhee.

The Director looked up with a smile. "But," he said, "I have no power to dissolve it."

"In that case," said MacPhee, "I must ask what authority you had to bring it together?"

"I never brought it together," said the Director. Then, after glancing round the company, he added: "There is some strange misunderstanding here! Were you all under the impression I had *selected* you?"

"Were you?" he repeated, when no one answered.

"Well," said Dimble, "as regards myself I fully realise that the thing has come about more or less unconsciously—even accidentally. There was no moment at which you asked me to join a definite movement, or anything of that kind. That is why I have always regarded myself as a sort of camp follower. I had assumed that the others were in a more regular position."

"You know why Camilla and I are here, sir," said Denniston. "We certainly didn't intend or foresee how we were going to be employed."

Grace Ironwood looked up with a set expression on her face, which had grown rather pale. "Do you wish . . . ?" she began.

The Director laid his hand on her arm. "No," he said, "no. There is no need for all these stories to be told."

MacPhee's stern features relaxed into a broad grin. "I see what you're driving at," he said. "We've all been playing blind-man's buff, I doubt. But I'll take leave to observe, Dr. Ransom, that you carry things a wee bit high. I don't just remember how you came to be called Director: but from that title and from one or two other indications a man would have thought you behaved more like the leader of an organisation than the host at a house-party."

"I am the Director," said Ransom, smiling. "Do you think I would claim the authority I do if the relation between us depended either on your choice or mine? You never chose me. I never chose you. Even the great Oyéresu whom I serve never chose me. I came into their worlds by what seemed, at first, a chance; as you came to me—as the very animals in this house first came to it.

A (ch. 9 IV p. 118–19)

"Mr. Director," said MacPhee. "You'll excuse me for speaking frankly. Your enemies have provided themselves with this Head. They have taken possession of Edgestow, and they're in a fair way to suspend the laws of England. And still you tell us it is not time to move. If you had taken my advice six months ago we would have had an organisation all over this island by now and maybe a party in the House of Commons. I know well what you'll say—that those are not the right methods. And maybe no. But if you can neither take our advice nor give us anything to do, what are we all sitting here for? Have you seriously considered sending us away and getting some other colleagues that you *can* work with?"

"Dissolve the Company, do you mean?" said Dimble.

"Aye, I do," said MacPhee.

The Director looked up with a smile. "But," he said, "I have no power to dissolve it."

"In that case," said MacPhee, "I must ask what authority you had to bring it together?"

"I never brought it together," said the Director. Then, after glancing round the company, he added: "There is some strange misunderstanding here! Were you all under the impression I had *selected* you? Were you?" he repeated, when no one answered.

MacPhee's stern features relaxed into a broad grin. "I see what you're driving at," he said. "We've all been playing blind-man's buff, I doubt. But I'll take leave to observe, Dr. Ransom, that you carry things a wee bit high. I don't just remember how you came to be called Director."

"I am the Director," said Ransom, smiling. "Do you think I would claim the authority I do if the relation between us depended either on your choice or mine? You never chose me. I never chose you. Even the great Oyéresu whom I serve never chose me. I came into their worlds by what seemed, at first, a chance; as you came to me—as the very animals in this house first came to it.

M (ch. 9 IV p. 227–29)

I should be glad to hear what practical measures on our side are suggested."

With these words he tapped his knuckles gently on his knee and stared hard at the Director.

"It is," said MacPhee, "a question I have ventured to propound before."

A sudden transformation, like the leaping up of a flame in embers, passed over Grace Ironwood's face. "Can the Director not be trusted to produce his own plan in his own time, Mr. MacPhee?" she said fiercely.

"By the same token, Doctor," said he, "can the Director's council not be trusted to hear his plan?"

"What do you mean, MacPhee?" asked Dimble.

"Mr. Director," said MacPhee. "You'll excuse me for speaking frankly. Your enemies have provided themselves with this Head. They have taken possession of Edgestow and they're in a fair way to suspend the laws of England. And still you tell us it is not time to move. If you had taken my advice six months ago we would have had an organisation all over this island by now and maybe a party in the House of Commons. I know well what you'll say—that those are not the right methods. And maybe no. But if you can neither take our advice nor give us anything to do, what are we all sitting here for? Have you seriously considered sending us away and getting some other colleagues that you *can* work with?"

"Dissolve the Company, do you mean?" said Dimble.

"Aye, I do," said MacPhee.

The Director looked up with a smile. "But," he said, "I have no power to dissolve it."

"In that case," said MacPhee, "I must ask what authority you had to bring it together?"

"I never brought it together," said the Director. Then, after glancing round the company, he added: "There is some strange misunderstanding here! Were you all under the impression I had *selected* you?"

"Were you?" he repeated, when no one answered.

"Well," said Dimble, "as regards myself I fully realise that the thing has come about more or less unconsciously . . . even accidentally. There was no moment at which you asked me to join a definite movement, or anything of that kind. That is why I have always regarded myself as a sort of camp follower. I had assumed that the others were in a more regular position."

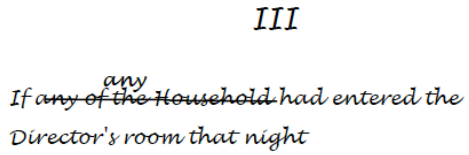
"You know why Camilla and I are here, Sir," said Denniston. "We certainly didn't intend or foresee how we were going to be employed."

Grace Ironwood looked up with a set expression on her face which had grown rather pale. "Do you wish . . . ?" she began. The Director laid his hand on her arm. "No," he said, "No. There is no need for all these stories to be told."

MacPhee's stern features relaxed into a broad grin. "I see what you're driving at," he said. "We've all been playing blind man's buff, I doubt. But I'll take leave to observe, Dr. Ransom, that you carry things a wee bit high. I don't just remember how you came to be called Director: but from that title and from one or two other indications a man would have thought you behaved more like the leader of an organisation than the host at a house-party."

"I am the Director," said Ransom, smiling. "Do you think I would claim the authority I do if the relation between us depended either on your choice or mine? You never chose me. I never chose you. Even the great Oyéresu whom I serve never chose me. I came into their worlds by what seemed, at first, a chance; as you came to me—as the very animals in this house first came to it.

L3



B (ch. 15 I p. 395–96)

I

ALL the house at St. Anne's was empty, but for two rooms. In the kitchen, drawn a little closer than usual about the fire and with the shutters closed, sat Dimble and MacPhee and Denniston and the women. Removed from them by many a long vacancy of stair and passage, the Pendragon and Merlin were together in the Blue Room.

If anyone had gone up the stairs and onto the lobby outside the Blue Room,

A (ch. 15 I p. 199)

I

ALL the house at St. Anne's was empty, but for two rooms. In the kitchen, drawn a little closer than usual about the fire and with the shutters closed, sat Dimble and MacPhee and Denniston and the women. Removed from them by many a long vacancy of stair and passage, the Pendragon and Merlin were together in the Blue Room.

If anyone had gone up to the lobby outside the Blue Room,

M (ch. 15 I p. 379)

[I]

The whole house at St. Anne's was empty, but for two rooms. In the kitchen, drawn a little closer than usual about the fire and with the shutters closed, sat Dimble and MacPhee and Denniston and the women. Removed from them by many a long vacancy of stair and passage, the Pendragon and Merlin were together in the Blue Room.

If anyone had gone up the stairs and on to the lobby outside the Blue Room,

Appendix B: The Chronology of the Novel

The action of *That Hideous Strength* appears to occupy about three weeks in autumn, according to the Preface "vaguely 'after the war' ": the novel provides the information tabulated here.

1 I – 2 II 1st day & night	**2 I** Feverstone suggests that Mark should go with him the following day and to spend a weekend at Belbury.
	2 II Mark is described as walking home late (probably in the small hours of the morning) in brilliant moonlight.
2 III – 4 II 2nd day & night	**2 III** When Feverstone collects Mark, it is a working day for Mrs Maggs, Jane's charwoman.
	3 IV The shoulder of Orion is visible above the trees.
4 III–V 3rd day **4 VI** 3rd–4th day **4 VII** 4th evening	**4 V** On the morning after Mark arrives at Belbury and Jane visits St Anne's Mrs Dimble does not appear to plan to attend church, and Jane does shopping in Edgestow.
5 I 5th day **5 II–III** 6th day	**5 II** Mark receives a letter dated 20 October and writes a letter dated 21 October.
6 I 7th day **6 II** 8th day – *at least* 10th day	**6 II** Describes a period of a "few days", including an event that happens on the "third day".
6 III–V eve & day of riot	**6 V** The N.I.C.E. expects the engineered riot to take place on the following day or, at the latest the day after that.
7 I–IV day & night of riot	**7 I** Grace Ironwood refers to a letter written by Jane on at least the second day of 6 II as "of the 10th".
8 I–IV 1st day & night after riot	**8 III– IV** The moon is full.
9 I–V 2nd day & night after riot	
10 I–III 3rd day after riot	**10 III** Apparently a working day for Dimble.
10 IV – 13 III 3rd night after riot	**11 II** Frost mentions to Wither "an order dated the 14th of October" (B), but M has "the 1st of October" (the date is part of a passage not in A).
	12 I Orion is described as dominating the whole sky (late at night or in the small hours of the morning).
	12 V Ivy Maggs comments, "It's getting ever so near Christmas now."
13 IV–V 4th day after riot	**13 IV** Ivy Maggs is involved in preparing dinner at St Anne's.
14 I 5th day after riot	**14 I** These events must be a day later than those of 13 IV, since in 14 II we learn that she has gone away the previous afternoon.
14 II–III, V–VI 6th day after riot	**14 II–III, V–VI** Mrs Maggs is away, having left the afternoon before (14 II).
14 IV 4th (?) day – 7th day after riot	**14 IV** The number of days covered in this section is unclear, but it concludes with the events of 15 II, and presumably begins on the day after Mark's arrest (10 III).
15 I evening of 6th day after riot	**15 I** These events are mentioned by Ransom in 14 V as being due to take place on the evening of the same day.
15 II – 16 VI 7th day & night after riot	**16 III** At 2 am, Sirius is visible, "bitter green".
17 I–VIII 8th day & night after riot	

It is not immediately evident from the tabulation, but no version of the novel presents an internal chronology that is entirely consistent.[1] The editor needs to find the minimum number of changes that would permit consistency if implemented.

Dates

Four dates are given in the course of the novel: 20 and 21 October (the dates of letters between Curry and Mark in 5 II); "the 10th" of an unspecified month (the date of a letter from Jane to the Dennistons at St. Anne's, referred to in 7 I); 1 (M) or 14 (B) October (the date of an order regarding Jane received by Frost and Wither, referred to in 11 II).

If 20 and 21 October are accepted as accurate, then the novel opens on 16 October. Either 1 or 14 October is then possible as the date when the N.I.C.E. was ordered to get Jane into their power, but 14 October, two days before the novel opens, seems more likely than Wither and the others waiting over two weeks before beginning to implement an order from the macrobes. Feverstone's initial approach to Mark (2 I) would come three days after an order on 14 October.[2]

Jane's letter to the Dennistons is written during the "few days" of 6 II. If the novel begins on 16 October, the first of the "few days" is 23 October. Jane's letter reports her dream of Frost sitting in her room taking notes, which recurs during this period, and "Jane did not write about this to the Dennistons the first time it occurred. Even after the second she delayed until it was too late to post the letter that day."[3] The earliest possible date for Jane's writing the letter (if the first instance of the dream is on the night of 23 October and the second the following night) is 25 October—not 10 October. The date can be 10 November only if a "few days" is interpreted as nineteen days—over two weeks, which seems unlikely. Since we are not definitely told that the dream recurs nightly, I would be inclined to date the letter 26 October.

The "few days" of 6 II needs to be at least three days, since Hingest's funeral is on the third day. Since the third day is not specified as the last, I suggest that the "few days" be taken as four or five: 23 to 26 or 27 October.

---

[1] The table incidentally shows how Lewis keeps the stories of Jane and Mark moving in parallel. This is documented with approbation by Richard L. Purtill, "*That Hideous Strength*: A Double Story," *The Longing for a Form: Essays on the Fiction of C.S. Lewis*, ed. Peter J. Schakel (n.p.: Kent State UP, 1977) 91-102; however, Sanford Schwartz considers this a "monotonous rhythm": *C.S. Lewis on the Final Frontier: Science and the Supernatural in the Space Trilogy* (Oxford: Oxford UP, 2009) 91.

[2] David Lake also concludes that 14 October is a date more consistent with the action of the novel: "The Variant Texts of *That Hideous Strength*," *The Ring Bearer: Journal of The Inner Ring: The Mythopoeic Literature Society of Australia* 7 (1989): 56–57.

[3] Ch. 6 II 128.

Days of the week

The only hint in the entire novel about the day of the week is in 2 I, when Feverstone suggests that Mark should go to Belbury with him the following day, "for the week-end".[4] This complicates things. If it is assumed that the following day is a Saturday, it follows that: Ivy Maggs works on a Saturday; the Dimbles make a number of business phone-calls on a Saturday; not only the N.I.C.E. but the Edgestow shops treat Sunday as an ordinary working day; Mrs. Dimble does not even consider attending a church service on Sunday morning; and Hingest's funeral is held on a Sunday (with workmen working outside). A charwoman may work on a Saturday, and offices might be open on a Saturday morning, otherwise, except for the N.I.C.E. not giving its workmen a week-end, these implications sound improbable. If it is assumed that Feverstone and Mark go to Belbury on a Friday, it follows that Saturday is an ordinary working day at the N.I.C.E. and Sunday appears to be a normal day in Cure Hardy. If it is assumed that the day Feverstone and Mark go to Belbury is a Thursday, "the week-end" for which Mark is invited is rather long, and he spends the Saturday night at home, but no improbable consequences arise.

If the "few days" of 6 II is taken as extending to 27 October, no further improbabilities arise.

Lewis clearly did not work through the chronology of his story very carefully, if at all, and no attribution of days of the week can be entirely satisfactory unless one removes the allusions to Mark's going to Belbury "for the week-end". My suggestions create the fewest difficulties and (to a certain extent) save appearances for "the week-end".

Phases of the moon

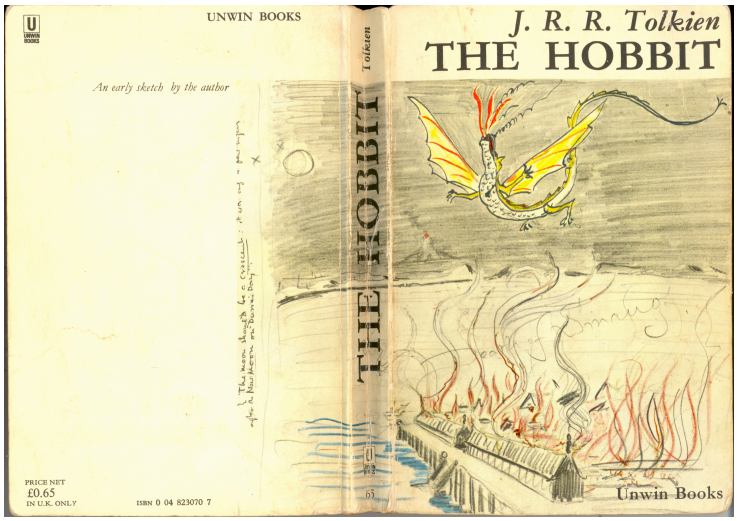
Unless the "few days" of 6 II are in fact around two weeks, Mark cannot look at the full moon in 8 IV and walk home in "brilliant moonlight" in 2 II, since the moon will be new or very close to new on that morning.

The date given for Jane's letter about Frost ("the 10th") could also make sense if "few days" is understood to mean over two weeks, but the events of the "few days"—fog, Bracton's unpopularity within the University and with Edgestow, the N.I.C.E's taking over of Edgestow, Jane's recurring dreams of Frost, Mark's work with O'Hara in rehabilitating Alcasan—do not seem to be events that require perhaps nineteen days to unfold. The description of Hingest's funeral, on the third day of the fog, ends the section, which does not suggest that another two weeks of fog follow the funeral.

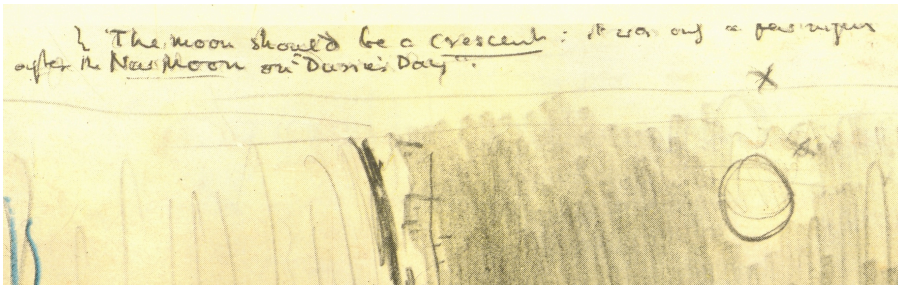
Although interpreting "few days" as "nineteen days" would solve two textual problems, I would rather trust Lewis's use of language than his chronology. Since the full moon of chapter 8 and the virginal moon that Jane and Camilla observe only a day later

[4] Ch. 2 I 40.

(9 III) are thematically significant, while Mark's "brilliant moonlight" is irrelevant to plot and theme, the simplest solution is to ignore "in brilliant moonlight" in the description of Mark's walk home in 2 II. It would be a different matter with Tolkien, who kept careful track of such things as the phases of the moon: the book cover shown here includes a sketch by Tolkien of the death of the dragon Smaug. The writing running vertically along the left side of the sketch notes, "The moon should be a crescent: it was only a few nights after the New Moon on ``Durin's Day``."



Death of Smaug



Note to Death of Smaug

The Stars

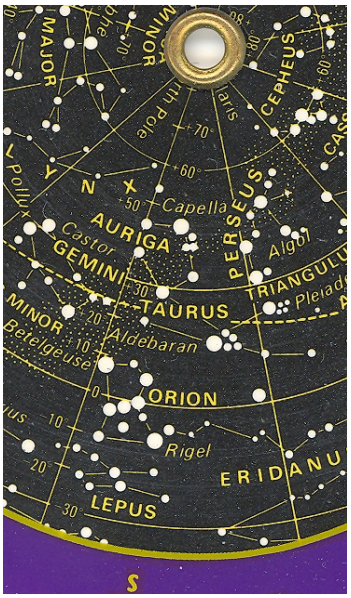
The constellation Orion appears twice in the novel (3 IV & 12 I) and Sirius once (16 III). On the whole, Lewis's passing astronomical observations fit the general setting of the novel in October and November in England and my specific suggestions about particular dates.

In 3 IV, which I suggest tells of the night of 17 October, we are told, "The shoulder of Orion, though Mark did not know even that earnest constellation, flamed at him above the treetops."[5] By

The Night Sky in Edgestow (17 October)

[5] Ch. 3 IV 72.

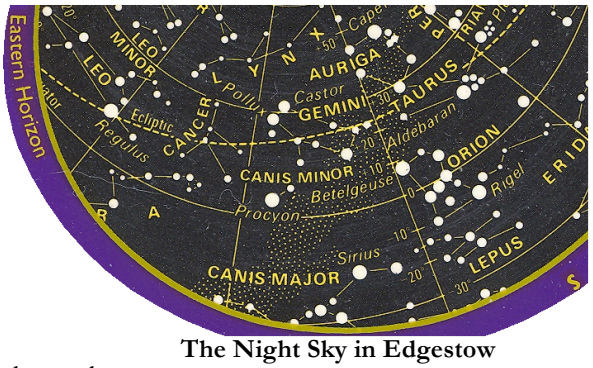
midnight on that date, at latitudes of Southern England and the Midlands, Orion has just cleared the east-south-eastern horizon, and his shoulder might be expected to be visible above trees obscuring the horizon. The segment of a planisphere shown on the previous page shows Orion's position in the south-east quadrant of the sky at midnight on 17 October at 51° 30' N.



The Night Sky in Edgestow (1-2 November)

In 12 I, which tells of some of the events of the night of 1 November and early hours of 2 November, we are told, "It had turned into a fine night: Orion dominated the whole sky" (ch. 12 I). Orion is fully visible between about 22h30 and 07h30 on this date, and highest above the horizon around 03h00: the segment of a planisphere here shows the southern sky from the horizon to the zenith, with Orion at his highest at 03h00 on 2 November. Although Orion does not approach the zenith, the constellation can be said to dominate the sky because it is easily the most impressive constellation in the sky at these latitudes at this time of year: indeed Taurus and Orion between them make the south-eastern quadrant of the Northern-hemisphere sky by far the most interesting quadrant during autumn. Tolkien seems to have felt this too:

> Away high in the East swung Remmirath, the Netted Stars [the Pleiades, an asterism within Taurus], and slowly above the mists red Borgil [probably Betelgeuse (Alpha Orionis) or Aldebaran (Alpha Tauri), both reddish stars] rose, glowing like a jewel of fire. Then by some shift of airs all the mist was drawn away like a veil, and there leaned up, as he climbed over the rim of the world, the Swordsman of the Sky, Menelvagor [Orion] with his shining belt. The Elves all burst into song.[6]



The Night Sky in Edgestow (6 November)

When Merlin sends Mark away from Belbury to St Anne's (ch. 16 III), it is 02h00 on 6 November, Mark sees Sirius (Alpha Canis Majoris). At this time and date Sirius, the brightest star in the sky, is visible about fifteen degrees above the south-south-east horizon. The segment of the planisphere shows the south-east quadrant of the sky at 02h00 on 6 November, with Sirius.

[6] J.R.R. Tolkien, *The Lord of the Rings* (1955–56; London: HarperCollins, 1999) vol. 1 ch. 3 108; see Robert Foster entry on "Borgil" in *The Complete Guide to Middle Earth: From* The Hobbit *to* The Silmarillion (London: Unwin, 1978).

Suggested chronology for *That Hideous Strength*

I suggest the following chronology for the novel as being internally consistent and requiring only two editorial changes: the removal of the reference to bright moonlight in ch. 2 II and a change in the date of Jane's letter as alluded to by Grace Ironwood in ch. 7 I. In all other respects it conforms to what is implicit or explicit in the novel, and would work (in terms of matching days and dates) for 1946.

OCTOBER	Mark	Jane	Others
Monday 14th			Head orders Wither & Frost to obtain Jane.
Wednesday 16th	Meeting & dinner at Bracton College.	Visits the Dimbles, worried by dreams.	
Thursday 17th *Orion in SE*	First day at Belbury.	First visit to St. Anne's, dreams of Hingest's death.	Dimbles evicted; Hingest murdered.
Friday 18th	Committee meeting, prepares report with Cosser.	Learns of Hingest's death.	
Saturday 19th	Visits Cure Hardy.		
	Spend the evening together.		Shots outside Bracton.
Sunday 20th	Tries & fails to clarify his position at Belbury.		Curry writes to Mark.
Monday 21st	Mocked by Feverstone.	Picnics with the Dennistons.	
Tuesday 22nd	Accepts Wither's terms.		
Wednesday 23rd	Works with O'Hara on rehabilitating Alcasan.	Dreams twice of Frost observing her.	The N.I.C.E.in Edgestow.
Thursday 24th			
Friday 25th			Hingest's funeral.
Saturday 26th		Writes to Dennistons.	The N.I.C.E.in Edgestow.
Sunday 27th		Posts letter; dreams continue.	
Monday 28th	Learns riots will be engineered; spends the night inventing the news reports.	Dreams of Merlin's sepulchre.	
Tuesday 29th	Feels satisfied by his part in fraud.	Flees to St. Anne's, Firstly after seeing Frost, again after being tortured by Harcastle during riot.	Riot in Edgestow.
Wednesday 30th *Full moon*	Declines to bring Jane to Belbury, taken to the Head.	Meets the Company, dreams of Mark & the Head.	Hardcastle disciplined.
Thursday 31st	Realises he must bring Jane, despairs.	Learns Ransom's story, dreams of Merlin.	The Company & Ransom contemplate the danger of the N.I.C.E.

NOVEMBER	Mark	Jane	Others
Friday 1st	Threatened, leaves Belbury. Talks to Dimble, arrested. Repents his past decisions. Is offered true insidership by Frost.	Tells of her dream, places herself in obedience to Ransom helps unavailingly in the search for Merlin. Returns to find Merlin at St. Anne's.	Dimble regrets he could not help Mark. The N.I.C.E. searches for Merlin & finds a naked man, who appears not to understand them. Ransom convinces Merlin he is the Pendragon.
Saturday 2nd	Training with Frost (which gives him his first idea of "the Normal"; guards the tramp, who speaks to him		St. Anne's adjusts to Merlin; Ransom tells him why he has been awoken.
Sunday 3rd *Orion high*			Ivy goes to meet her husband on his release from prison.
Monday 4th		Has vision of an "unbaptised Venus"; becomes a Christian. Feels the influence of the Oyéresu with the others.	Mr Bultitude captured by N.I.C.E. impounders. Ivy's husband is given to the N.I.C.E. for "remedial treatment". The Oyéresu enter into Merlin.
Tuesday 5th	Wonders why he should insult a crucifix. Survives banquet & is sent to St. Anne's by Merlin.		Merlin enters Belbury, brings the "doom of gibberish", releases the animals & prisoners: mayhem & death.
Wednesday 6th *Sirius in SE*	Thinks, plans to give Jane her freedom. Arrives at St. Anne's feeling humble & unworthy: has a vision of Venus. Enters the Lodge to wait for Jane.	Celebrates & hears explanations with the Company. Venus's influence; Ransom sends her to Mark. Enters the Lodge where Mark waits.	Edgestow, including Bracton, destroyed by an earthquake. Ransom is taken by Perelandra-Oyarsa to be with Arthur.

It must be noted that other interpretations of the hints the novel offers could be adduced—and that it is also quite possible for a reader to enjoy and understand the novel without any strictly worked-out chronology.

Appendix C: Borrowings in O'Donnell's Modesty Blaise Novels

Lewis's writings have influenced many people in many ways. An unexpected influence, however, is upon Peter O'Donnell's novels about his comic-strip heroine, Modesty Blaise. I present this as a curiosity, in no way intended as a definitive discussion of Lewis's influence (if any) on thriller fiction in general.

In the first of Peter O'Donnell's Modesty Blaise novels, Modesty and her friend Willie Garvin engage in desultory conversation when they suspect they are being monitored by the diamond thieves who have kidnapped them. One of the kidnappers lists their topics of conversation for his boss, beginning "Horses; a girl in Santiago; poems of C.S. Lewis; fixing a quartz-iodine headlamp on her car […]"[7] A collection of Lewis's poems, based on a collection he began making in the 1950s and completed posthumously by Walter Hooper, was published under the title *Poems* in 1964, so Modesty and Willie are fairly up-to-date to be talking about his poems in a 1965 novel. This establishes at least that O'Donnell was aware of one of Lewis's works (although not necessarily that he had read it).

Three of his later novels, however, suggest that O'Donnell had read, and absorbed some of the language of, *That Hideous Strength*. The least certain hint is that, in *The Night of Morningstar* (1982), O'Donnell uses the term "Q-List", which seems similar to Lewis's "Q Register": I have found no meaning for these terms outside these books, and suggest in an annotation that O'Donnell may borrow from Lewis here.[8]

In *The Silver Mistress* (1973), O'Donnell describes his heroine as she prepares to fight a stronger and more skilful adversary in order to save a helpless friend from him, from the point of view of that friend: "she seemed a myth made flesh, a daughter of Mars, supreme mistress of the warrior arts, carrying an aura taut, lusty, bracing."[9] The adjectives he uses—"lusty" and "taut"—seem to echo Lewis's description of the effect of Mars on Ransom and Merlin: "Something tonic and lusty and cheerily cold, like a sea-breeze, was coming over them. […] Ransom knew, as a man knows when he touches iron, the clear, taut splendour of that celestial spirit who now flashed between them: vigilant Malacandra",[10] and "bracing" is reminiscent of "cheerily cold, like a sea-breeze".

By far the strongest and most sustained indication that O'Donnell was influenced by *That Hideous Strength* comes in the 1985 novel *Dead Man's Handle*, in which one of

---

[7] Peter O'Donnell, *Modesty Blaise* (1965; London: Souvenir P, 2005) ch. 16 178.
[8] Peter O'Donnell, *The Night of Morningstar* (1982; London: Souvenir P, 2001) ch. 3 55; *That Hideous Strength* 129 n. 2.
[9] Peter O'Donnell, *The Silver Mistress* (1973; London: Pan, 1975) ch. 14 198.
[10] Ch. 15 1 345 & 346.

the characters, Thaddeus Pilgrim, seems undeniably to be based on Wither.[11] I was convinced of this when I first read it in 1985 or 1986, two or three years after first reading the Ransom trilogy, but I (foolishly) never thought to write to O'Donnell about it prior to his death in 2010.

The only way to justify this contention is through extensive illustrative quotation, but most of the linked quotations do, I think, speak for themselves with minimal additional comment.

The immediate impressions that Pilgrim and Wither give are the same—their appearance, mannerisms, courtesy, vagueness, watery eyes and wandering gaze are alike.

> Thaddeus Pilgrim was a big man with a round face and fluffy hair that stood up round his head like a halo. […] White eyebrows curled over large eyes whose watery gaze was courteous but kept wandering vaguely, as if the mind behind them was on other and higher matters.[12]

> Wither was a white-haired old man with a courtly manner. His face was clean-shaven and very large indeed, with watery blue eyes and something rather vague and chaotic about it. He did not appear to be giving them his whole attention, and this impression must, I think, have been due to the eyes, for his actual words and gestures were polite to the point of effusiveness.[13]

Pilgrim's speaking style, like Wither's, includes pauses, forgetting names, and long-winded parenthetical qualifications.

> "I suppose it would be true to say, or at least it would not be *un*true to say, that I am – through no merit of my own I hasten to add, that I am perhaps the *centre* of our little group, since it was I who had the privilege, the very substantial privilege, I assure you, of founding the Hostel of Righteousness here on Kalivari. I would not, of course, have you imagine, or cause the readers of your no doubt excellent newspaper to imagine, that one might call my position here is in any sense superior to that of my colleagues, Mr. ah . . ."[14]

> "But I assure you, Mr. . . . er . . . I assure you, sir, that there is not the smallest objection to your residing wherever you may find convenient. There was never, at any stage, the slightest suggestion——"[15]
>
> "I am always, of course," said Wither, "most ready and—er—interested to hear expressions of your own opinions and would not for a moment deny that they are, in certain respects, of course, if not in all, of a very real value. On the other hand, there are matters on which your—ah—necessarily specialised experience does not entirely qualify you. . . . An arrest was not contemplated at this stage. The Head will, I fear, take the view that you have exceeded your authority.[16]

[11] See 265 n. 1.
[12] Peter O'Donnell, *Dead Man's Handle* (1985; London: Souvenir P, 2005) ch. 3 46; also ch. 4 72 & ch. 12 182.
[13] Ch. 3 I 50.
[14] O'Donnell, *Dead Man's Handle* ch. 3 46–47; also ch. 3 47–58 & ch. 12 182.
[15] Ch. 3 I 52.
[16] Ch. 8 I 167.

Wither and Pilgrim are both so far gone in demonic service that the personalities they present to the world are not their true selves and occupy only a minor part of their psychic energies. This is shown in the following comparisons.

Dr. Thaddeus Pilgrim sat at his desk. Mrs. Ram and Dr. Tyl were to attend upon him shortly, but it would have been inaccurate to say he was waiting. The passage of time had to a great extent ceased to have meaning for him. On the desk was a plate with some cheese and dry biscuits, and a tray with a pot of tea. His eyes were open but he was not looking at anything, and it was unimportant to him that the tea was growing cold, for his senses had long been anaesthetised to the point of barely responding to most forms of stimulus.

If need be, he could, at his moment, have conversed, discussed, argued, and in general have maintained the benign and bumbling façade he presented to the world, while his inner being suffered not the least distraction from the dark ugliness in which it dwelt.

[…]

There came a tap on the study door. A slender far-stretched cord, connecting the essence of Thaddeus Pilgrim with the husk of flesh and blood and bone at the desk, drew his inner being back from the repellent limbo in which it had been wandering. His eyes focused, and he said, "Come in, come in, please."

He smiled upon Mrs. Ram and Dr. Tyl as they entered, waving them to chairs then picking up his cup of cold tea and beginning to sip.[17]

He appeared to be paying her close attention, but in fact the major part of his being was far away in a grey void, contemplating nightmare savageries and obscenities.[18]

[…] the entity that Thaddeus Pilgrim had become, the corrupt spirit of the man and what remained of his soul, was more wholly present than usual as he watched with fascination […][19]

The Deputy Director hardly ever slept. When it became absolutely necessary for him to do so, he took a drug, but the necessity was rare, for the mode of consciousness he experienced at most hours of day or night had long ceased to be exactly like what other men call waking. He had learned to withdraw most of his consciousness from the task of living, to conduct business, even, with only a quarter of his mind. Colours, tastes, smells, and tactual sensations no doubt bombarded his physical senses in the normal manner: they did not now reach his ego. The manner and outward attitude to men which he had adopted half a century ago were now an organisation which functioned almost independently, like a gramophone, and to which he could hand over his whole routine of interviews and committees. While the brain and lips carried on this work, and built up day by day for those around him the vague and formidable personality which they knew so well, his inmost self was free to pursue its own life. That detachment of the spirit not only from the senses but even from the reason which has been the goal of some mystics was now his.

Hence he was still, in a sense, awake—that is, he was certainly not sleeping—an hour after Frost had left him to visit Mark in his cell. Anyone who had looked into the study during that hour would have seen him sitting motionless at his table, with bowed head and folded hands. But his eyes were not shut. The face had no expression; the real man was far away, suffering, enjoying, or inflicting whatever such souls do suffer, enjoy, or inflict when the cord that binds them to the natural order is stretched out to its utmost but not yet snapped. When the telephone rang at his elbow he took up the receiver without a start.[20]

[17] O'Donnell, *Dead Man's Handle* ch. 4 67–69.
[18] O'Donnell, *Dead Man's Handle* ch. 7 107 (see also ch. 9 147–48).
[19] O'Donnell, *Dead Man's Handle* ch. 11 177.
[20] Ch. 12 II 264–65.

As seen in the next comparison, both Wither and Pilgrim occasionally appear to lose control of their public façades, and allow their faces to collapse into inhuman masks.

He looked up, and suddenly his eyes were completely and horribly empty, like holes in a skull as he said, "Tell them they would be well advised not to fail, Mrs. Ram."[21]	And suddenly, as Wither stood with his hand on the door-handle, courtly, patient, and smiling, the whole expression faded out of his face. The pale lips, open wide enough to show his gums, the white curly head, the pouchy eyes, ceased to make up any single expression. Miss Hardcastle had the feeling that a mere mask of skin and flesh was staring at her. A moment later and she was gone.[23]
He closed his eyes briefly and stretched his mouth in a smile that showed none of his teeth but was simply an elliptical gap in the flesh of his face, so that for a long moment he looked like a death's-head.[22]	[…] his face suddenly changed. The widely opened mouth looked all at once like the mouth of some enraged animal: what had been the senile vagueness of the eyes became an absence of all specifically human expression.[24]

Both Pilgrim and Wither are shown laughing mirthlessly and irrationally.

His body began to shake, the halo of fine white hair quivering about his head, and after a moment or two a curious sound began to come from his parted lips. It was the sound of Thaddeus Pilgrim's laughter, and Mrs. Ram had heard it only once before, years ago in Persia, after he had killed a child during a black magic ritual in a temple of Ahriman. The sound was unlike human laughter, and there was no accompanying mirth in the eyes and face beneath the crescent of white hair, only a kind of obscene delight which sent spurts of joyous terror darting through Mrs. Ram. The sound faded […][25]	Then his shoulders twitched and gradually he began to laugh. […] with sudden, swift convulsive movement, the two old men lurched forward towards each other and sat swaying to and fro, locked in an embrace from which each seemed to be struggling to escape. And as they swayed and scrabbled with hand and nail, there arose, shrill and faint at first, but then louder and louder, a cackling noise that seemed in the end rather an animal than a senile parody of laughter.[26]

And the novels show the same relationship between Satanist adept and disciple.

It was five years now since Thaddeus Pilgrim, as an Adept, had initiated her into a group of Satanists practising black magic. Both had since moved on to far more sophisticated and profitable forms of malevolence, but the psychological necessity of submission by Disciple to Adept remained unbreakable.[27]	[…] that point after which there is no return, and the disciple's allegiance both to the macrobes and to the teacher who has initiated him becomes a matter of psychological, or even physical, necessity.[28]

[21] O'Donnell, *Dead Man's Handle* ch. 3 59.
[22] O'Donnell, *Dead Man's Handle* ch. 5 90 (see also ch. 9 143).
[23] Ch. 11 II 253.
[24] Ch. 10 I 225.
[25] O'Donnell, *Dead Man's Handle* ch. 9 146–47.
[26] Ch. 11 II 257–58.
[27] O'Donnell, *Dead Man's Handle* ch. 7 110.
[28] Ch. 15 IV 358.

Like Lewis, O'Donnell describes briefly how his character comes to the emptiness ("vacuum" or "void") that consumes him, but O'Donnell's description is perfunctory compared with Lewis's description of intellectual damnation.

But in the end there was no satisfaction, for he found himself devoid of belief in either his God or his Devil, and so he passed on into a kind of vacuum, his spirit detached from his senses, his soul extinguished within him.[29]	[…] he had long ceased to believe in knowledge itself. What had been in his far-off youth a merely aesthetic repugnance to realities that were crude or vulgar, had deepened and darkened, year after year, into a fixed refusal of everything that was in any degree other than himself. He had passed from Hegel into Hume, thence through Pragmatism, and thence through Logical Positivism, and out at last into the complete void. The indicative mood now corresponded to no thought that his mind could entertain. He had willed with his whole heart that there should be no reality and no truth, and now even the imminence of his own ruin could not wake him.[30]

Although Pilgrim is obviously mostly influenced by Wither, there are other elements in *Dead Man's Handle* that suggest influence by *That Hideous Strength*. Like Straik, Pilgrim had once been a clergyman and one of the excuses for his apostasy was the death of his family.[31] Like Ransom (in this one particular only), Pilgrim (briefly) owns a jackdaw. Like Frost, Pilgrim denies his own rationality, the integration of mind, body and soul, and prefers to have no motive for his actions.

Thaddeus Pilgrim stirred a spoonful of ground glass into the tray holding the jackdaw's birdseed […]. He did not recall quite when and why he had decided to kill the bird in this fashion, and did not anticipate deriving any particular gratification from the event. It was simply a small scenario which had involuntarily presented itself to him, and he was now far beyond the point where he questioned such scenarios or pondered what motive might prompt them.[32]	Frost […] did not know where he was going or what he was about to do. For many years he had theoretically believed that all which appears in the mind as motive or intention is merely a by-product of what the body is doing. But for the last year or so—since he had been initiated—he had begun to taste as fact what he had long held as theory. Increasingly, his actions had been without motive. He did this and that, he said thus and thus, and did not know why. His mind was a mere spectator. He could not understand why that spectator should exist at all. He resented its existence, even while assuring himself that resentment also was merely a chemical phenomenon. The nearest thing to a human passion which still existed in him was a sort of cold fury against all who believed in the mind. There was no tolerating such an illusion! There were not, and must not be, such things as men.[33]

[29] O'Donnell, *Dead Man's Handle* ch. 4 68.
[30] Ch. 16 IV 376.
[31] O'Donnell, *Dead Man's Handle* ch. 4 68; *That Hideous Strength* ch. 4 III 79.
[32] O'Donnell, *Dead Man's Handle* ch. 8 128.
[33] Ch. 16 VI 381.

At the time of death, Pilgrim and Frost are both forced to acknowledge what they deny. Again, Lewis's discussion here is more nuanced than O'Donnell's, and Frost in the end manages to reject the knowledge forced upon him.

With great care she shattered each of Thaddeus Pilgrim's shoulders in turn with a bullet, the first making him rear out of his chair, the second flinging him back till he struck the wall. He slid down to lie slumped against it, bleeding, eyes bolting, screaming thinly in a high-pitched voice, his inward self finally and totally united with his body in the real world.[34]	Like the clockwork figure he had chosen to be, his stiff body, now terribly cold, walked back into the Objective Room, poured out the petrol and threw a lighted match into the pile. Not till then did his controllers allow him to suspect that death itself might not after all cure the illusion of being a soul—nay, might prove the entry into a world where that illusion raged infinite and unchecked. Escape for the soul, if not for the body, was offered him. He became able to know (and simultaneously refused the knowledge) that he had been wrong from the beginning, that souls and personal responsibility existed. He half saw: he wholly hated. The physical torture of the burning was hardly fiercer than his hatred of that. With one supreme effort he flung himself back into his illusion. In that attitude eternity overtook him as sunrise in old tales overtakes trolls and turns them into unchangeable stone.[35]

That Pilgrim should share so much of the history, mannerisms, appearance of Wither and the philosophy of Wither and Frost seems unlikely unless he was modelled on Lewis's characters. While Satanism and nihilism presumably mark their practitioners in similar ways, the similarity of Wither and Pilgrim's façades cannot be dismissed as being in each case the necessary manifestation of devil-worship. The cumulative effect of all these echoes is, to me, completely convincing.

[34] O'Donnell, *Dead Man's Handle* ch. 14 219.
[35] Ch 16. VI 382.

LIST OF WORKS CITED

Abbreviations used

See entries under "Works by others" for full information.

BCP: *Book of Common Prayer*
C&G: Walter Hooper, *C.S. Lewis: A Companion and Guide.*
NED: *A New English Dictionary*
OED: *Oxford English Dictionary*

Works by C.S. Lewis

For manuscripts and editions of That Hideous Strength *see "List of Witnesses" (p. ix).*

The Abolition of Man: Reflections on Education with Special Reference to the Teaching of English in the Upper Forms of Schools. 1943. London: Fount-Collins, 1978.
The Allegory of Love: A Study in Medieval Tradition. 1936. Oxford: Oxford UP, 1977.
"Before We Can Communicate." 1961. *First and Second Things: Essays on Theology and Ethics*. Ed. Walter Hooper. London: Fount Paperbacks-HarperCollins, 1985. 124–28.
"The Birth of Language." 1946. 2 Jan. 2013 <http://blog.lib.umn.edu/wagne342/sq/2009/mercuriality_1.php>.
"A Cliché Came out of Its Cage." 1950. 2 Jan. 2013 <http://www.poemhunter.com/poem/cliche-came-out-of-its-cage/>.
The Collected Letters of C.S. Lewis. Ed. Walter Hooper. 3 vol. New York: HarperSanFrancisco, 2004–07.
The Collected Poems of C.S. Lewis. Ed. Walter Hooper. London: Fount-HarperCollins, 1994.
"Cross-Examination." 1963. *Christian Reunion and Other Essays*. London: Fount-Collins, 1990. 81–94.
"Dante's Similes." 1940. *Studies in Medieval and Renaissance Literature*. Ed. Walter Hooper. Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1966. 64–77.
"Dante's Statius." 1957. *Studies in Medieval and Renaissance Literature*. Ed. Walter Hooper. Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1966. 94–102.
The Dark Tower. N.d. *The Dark Tower and Other Stories*. Ed. Walter Hooper. London: Collins, 1977. 17–91.
"*De Futilitate*." *Christian Reflections*. Ed. Walter Hooper. 1967. London: Fount-Collins, 1980. 80–97.
The Discarded Image: An Introduction to Medieval and Renaissance Literature. 1964. Canto. Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1994.
"Donne and Love Poetry in the Seventeenth Century." *Seventeenth Century Studies Presented to Sir Herbert Grierson*. Oxford: Clarendon, 1938. 64-84.
English Literature in the Sixteenth Century, Excluding Drama. 1954. Oxford History of English Literature. London: Oxford UP, 1973.
"Equality." *The Spectator* 27 Aug. 1943: 192.
An Experiment in Criticism. 1961. Canto. Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1992.
The Four Loves. 1960. London: Fount-HarperCollins, 1977.
"The Funeral of a Great Myth." *Christian Reflections*. Ed. Walter Hooper. 1967. London: Fount-Collins, 1980. 110–23.
"Genius and Genius." 1936. *Studies in Medieval and Renaissance Literature*. Ed. Walter Hooper. Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1966. 169–74.
The Great Divorce: A Dream. 1946. Lewis Signature Classics. London: HarperCollins, 2002.
The Horse and His Boy. Illus. Pauline Baynes. 1954. London: Lions-Collins, 1980.
"The Humanitarian Theory of Punishment." 1949. *First and Second Things: Essays on Theology and Ethics*. Ed. Walter Hooper. London: Fount Paperbacks-HarperCollins, 1985. 96–106.
"Imagination and Thought in the Middle Ages." 1956. *Studies in Medieval and Renaissance Literature*. Ed. Walter Hooper. Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1966. 41–63.
"The Inner Ring." 1944. *Screwtape Proposes a Toast and Other Pieces*. 1965. London. Fount-Collins, 1977. 28–40.
"Is Theology Poetry?" 1944. *Screwtape Proposes a Toast and Other Pieces*. 1965. London: Fount-Collins, 1977. 41–58.
"Kipling's World." 1948. *Selected Literary Essays*. Ed. Walter Hooper. Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1969. 232–50.

The Last Battle. Illus. Pauline Baynes. 1956. London: Lions-Collins, 1980.
The Lion, the Witch and the Wardrobe. Illus. Pauline Baynes. 1950. London: Lions-Collins, 1980.
The Magician's Nephew. Illus. Pauline Baynes. 1955. London: Lions-Collins, 1980.
Mere Christianity. 1952. London: Fount-Collins, 1977.
Miracles: A Preliminary Study. 1960. [Rev. ed.] London: Fount-Collins, 1974.
"The 'Morte Darthur'." 1947. *Studies in Medieval and Renaissance Literature*. Ed. Walter Hooper. 1966. Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1979.
"Myth Became Fact." 1944. *God in the Dock: Essays on Theology*. Ed. Walter Hooper. London: Fount Paperbacks-Collins, 1979. 39-45.
Narrative Poems. Ed. Walter Hooper. 1969. London: Fount-HarperCollins, 1994.
Note on intersecting times, ms. BOD 132 Dep. d. 808 (fol. 69v.). Bodleian Library, Oxford.
"A Note on Jane Austen." 1954. Ian Watt, ed. *Jane Austen: A Collection of Critical Essays*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1963. 25–40.
"The Novels of Charles Williams." *Of This and Other Worlds*. Ed. Walter Hooper. London: Collins, 1982. 46–54.
"On Science Fiction." 1955. *Of This and Other Worlds*. Ed. Walter Hooper. London: Collins, 1982. 80–96.
"On Stories." 1947. *Of This and Other Worlds*. Ed. Walter Hooper. London: Collins, 1982. 25–45.
"On the Reading of Old Books." Preface. *The Incarnation of the Word of God*. By St Athanasius. Trans. A Religious of CSMV. London: Geoffrey Bles, 1944. 25–33.
Out of the Silent Planet. London: Bodley Head-John Lane, 1938.
Perelandra: A Novel. London: Bodley Head-John Lane, 1943.
The Pilgrim's Regress: An Allegorical Apology for Christianity, Reason and Romanticism. 1933. Trans. of citations & notes John C. Traupman. Toronto: Bantam, 1981.
"The Poison of Subjectivism." 1943. *Christian Reflections*. Ed. Walter Hooper. 1967. London: Fount-Collins, 1980. 98–109.
Prayer: Letters to Malcolm. London: Fount-Collins, 1977. Rpt. of *Letters to Malcolm Chiefly on Prayer*. London: Geoffrey Bles, 1964.
Preface. *George MacDonald: An Anthology*. Ed. C.S. Lewis. 1946. London: Fount-Collins, 1983. 21–35.
A Preface to Paradise Lost. 1942. London: Oxford UP, 1960.
Prince Caspian. Illus. Pauline Baynes. 1951. London: Lions-Collins, 1980.
The Screwtape Letters. 1942. Illus. Papas. 1979. London: Fount-Collins, 1982.
"Screwtape Proposes a Toast." 1960. *Screwtape Proposes a Toast and Other Pieces*. 1965. London. Fount-Collins, 1977. 9–27.
The Silver Chair. Illus. Pauline Baynes. 1953. London: Lions-Collins, 1980.
Spenser's Images of Life. Ed. Alastair Fowler. Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1967.
Studies in Words. 2nd ed. Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1967.
Surprised by Joy: The Shape of My Early Life. 1955. London: Fount-Collins, 1977.
Till We Have Faces: A Myth Retold. 1956. London: Fount-Collins, 1978.
The Voyage of the Dawn Treader. Illus. Pauline Baynes. 1955. London: Lions-Collins, 1980.
They Stand Together: Letters of C.S. Lewis to Arthur Greeves (1914-1963). Ed. Walter Hooper. London: Collins, 1979.
"Vivisection." 1947. *First and Second Things: Essays on Theology and Ethics*. Ed. Walter Hooper. London: Fount Paperbacks-HarperCollins, 1985. 78–84.
"What France Means to You." *LaFrance Libre: Liberté, Égalité, Fraternité* 15 Apr. 1944: 1–4.
"Williams and the Arthuriad." *Arthurian Torso, containing the Posthumous Fragment of The Figure of Arthur by Charles Williams and a Commentary on the Arthurian Poems of Charles Williams by C.S. Lewis*. London: Oxford UP, 1948. 91–200.
"Willing Slaves of the Welfare State." 1958. *Timeless at Heart: Essays in Theology*. Ed. Walter Hooper. London: Fount-Collins, 1987.
With Amis, Kingsley & Brian Aldiss. "Unreal Estates." Recorded 1962. *Of This and Other Worlds*. Ed. Walter Hooper. London: Collins, 1982. 180–92.
With Tillyard, E.M.W. *The Personal Heresy: A Controversy*. London: Oxford UP, 1939.

Works by others

For sources of illustrations see "List of Illustrations" (p. xi–xii).

Adey, Lionel. *C.S. Lewis's "Great War" with Owen Barfield*. English Literary Studies Monograph Series XIV. Victoria, BC: U of Victoria P, 1978.

———. *C.S. Lewis: Writer, Dreamer, and Mentor*. Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans; Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1998.

Aeschliman, Michael D. *The Restitution of Man: C.S. Lewis and the Case against Scientism*. Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1983.

Alanus ab Insulis [Alan of Lille]. *Anticlaudianus: or, The Good and Perfect Man*. Trans. & commentary James J. Sheridan. Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies, 1973.

——— [Alain of Lille]. *The Complaint of Nature*. Trans. Douglas Moffatt. Yale Studies in English 36. N.p.: n.p., 1908. 5 Aug. 2004 <http://www.fordham.edu/halsall/basis/alain-deplanctu.html>.

——— [Alan of Lille]. *The Plaint of Nature*. Trans. & commentary James J. Sheridan. Mediaeval Sources in Translation XXVI. Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies, 1980.

Anderson, Douglas A. Notes. *The Annotated Hobbit*. London: Unwin Human, 1988.

Apuleius, Lucius. *The Transformations of Lucius, Otherwise Known as The Golden Ass*. Trans. Robert Graves. Harmondsworth: Penguin, 1950.

Aristotle. *Politics*. Ed. & trans. H. Rackham. Loeb Classical Library. London: Heinemann; Cambridge, MS: Harvard UP, 1932.

Atkinson, David. "Editing the Child Ballads: Agency, Intention, and the Problem of Version." *Variants* 6 (2007): 124–62.

Augustine. *St. Augustine's Confessions*. Trans. William Watts [1631]. Vol. 2. Loeb Classical Library. 1912. London: Heinemann; New York: Putnam, 1919.

Bacon, Francis. *The Novum Organon: or, A True Guide to the Interpretation of Nature*. Trans. G.W. Kitchin. Oxford: Oxford UP, 1855.

——— [Francisci de Verulamio]. *Novum Organon: sive, indicia vera de interpretatione naturæ*. Glasgow: Scrymgeour, 1803.

Bailey, K.V. "H.G. Wells and C.S. Lewis: Two Sides of a Visionary Coin." *H.G. Wells Under Revision: Proceedings of the International H.G. Wells Symposium London, July 1986*. Ed. Patrick Parrinder & Christopher Rolfe. Selinsgrove: Susquehanna UP; London: Associated UPs, 1990. 226–36.

Barkman, Adam. "Aristotelian Ethics in C.S. Lewis's Philosophy." *CSL: The Bulletin of the New York C.S. Lewis Society* 38.2 (2007): 1–9.

———. "It's NOT 'All in Plato': C.S. Lewis's Theory of Myth." *CSL: The Bulletin of the New York C.S. Lewis Society* 40.5 (2009): 1–8.

———. "Some Ancient Philosophical Sources in C.S. Lewis's Practical Ethics." *Surprised by Faith: Conversion and the Academy. A Collection of Papers Celebrating the 75th Anniversary of the Conversion of C.S. Lewis*. Ed. Daryl McCarthy *et al.* Newcastle: Cambridge Scholars, 2007. 161–80.

———. "The Uncreative Spell: St. Augustine and C.S. Lewis on Pride." *CSL: The Bulletin of the New York C.S. Lewis Society* 39.2 (2008): 1–10, 12–16.

Barfield, Owen. *Poetic Diction: A Study in Meaning*. 2nd ed. 1952. New York & Toronto: McGraw-Hill, 1964.

Beeton, Isabella. *Household Management: A Complete Cookery Book*. New ed. London: Ward, Lock, n.d.

Benda, Julien. *The Betrayal of the Intellectuals [La Trahison des Clercs]*. [1927.] Trans. Richard Aldington. 1928. Boston: Beacon, 1955.

Bennett, J.A.W. *The Humane Medievalist: An Inaugural Lecture*. London: Cambridge UP, 1965.

Bennett, Joan. "The Love Poetry of John Donne—A Reply to Mr C.S.Lewis." *Seventeenth Century Studies Presented to Sir Herbert Grierson*. Oxford: Clarendon, 1938. 85-104.

Bergonzi, Bernard. *Wartime and Aftermath: English Literature and Its Background 1939–60*. OPUS books. Oxford: Oxford UP, 1993.

Bernardus Silvestris. *The* Cosmographia *of Bernardus Silvestris [De Mundi Universitate]*. Trans., intro. & notes Winthrop Wetherbee. New York: Columbia UP, 1973.

Bible. Authorised Version. 1611.

Bible. New English Bible. 1970.

Blackstone Audio. "*That Hideous Strength*." 2013. 15 Mar. 2013. <http://www.downpour.com/that-hideous-strength-1>.

Book of Common Prayer. 1662. [*BCP*]

"The Boyne Water." *An Anthology of Irish Verse*. Ed. Padraic Colum. New York: Boni & Liveright, 1922. 95–97.

Brady, Charles A. "C.S. Lewis II." 1944. *CSL: The Bulletin of the New York C.S Lewis Society* 3.2 (1971): 6–8.
———. "Introduction to Lewis." 1944. *The Bulletin of the New York C.S Lewis Society* 3.1 (1971): 6–8.
Brewer's Dictionary of Phrase and Fable. Millennium ed. Rev. Adrian Room. London: Cassell, 2001.
Briscoe, Douglas. "Carl Maria von Weber: Works List." 1999. *ClassicalNet*™. 5 Sept. 2009 <http://www.classical.net/music/composer/works/weber/index.php>.
Browning, Robert. *The Ring and the Book*. Intro. Edward Dowden. Notes A.K. Cook. London: Geoffrey Cumberlege; London: Oxford UP, 1940.
Buchan, John. *Cromwell*. 1934. London: Sphere Books, 1970.
Burton, John David. "G.K. Chesterton and C.S. Lewis: The Men and Their Times." *G.K. Chesterton and C.S. Lewis: The Riddle of Joy*. Ed. Michael H. MacDonald & Andrew A. Tadie. London: Collins, 1989. 160–72.
Callimachus. "Hymn to Zeus." *Callimachus, Hymns and Epigrams; Lycophron; Aratus*. Trans. A.W. Mair & G.R. Mair. Loeb Classical Library. London: Heinemann; Cambridge, MA: Harvard UP, 1969. 36–47.
The Cambridge Italian Dictionary. Ed. Barbara Reynolds. Vol. 1. Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1962.
Carnell, Corbin Scott. *Bright Shadow of Reality: C.S. Lewis and the Feeling Intellect*. Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1974.
Carpenter, Humphrey. *The Inklings: C.S.Lewis, J.R.R.Tolkien, Charles Williams, and Their Friends*. 1978. London: Unwin Paperbacks, 1981.
Carr, A.D. "Tudor family, forebears of (*per. c.* 1215–1404)." *Oxford Dictionary of National Biography*. Ed. H.C.G. Matthew & Brian Harrison. Oxford: Oxford UP, 2004–2006. Online ed. Ed. Lawrence Goldman. May 2006. 26 Nov. 2006 <http://www.oxforddnb.com.oasis.unisa.ac.za:80>.
Carroll, Lewis. *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland, Through the Looking Glass, and The Hunting of the Snark*. 1963. London: Bodley Head, 1974.
Catholic Encyclopedia. Robert Appleton Company, 1907. 28 Aug. 2003 <http://www.newadvent.org/cathen/01244e.htm>.
Catullus. *The Poems of Gaius Valerius Catullus*. Trans. F.W. Cornish. *Catullus, Tibullus and Pervigilium Veneris*. Loeb Classical Library. London: Heinemann; New York: Putnam, 1918. 1–183.
Chaucer, Geoffrey. *The Complete Works of Geoffrey Chaucer*. Ed. Walter W. Skeat. 1912. London: Oxford UP, 1954.
Chambers, E.K. *Arthur of Britain*. London: Sidgwick & Jackson, 1927.
Chesterton, G.K. *All Things Considered*. 1908. *Works of Gilbert Keith Chesterton from MobileReference*. Version 12. 1. Electronic ed. N.p.: MobileReference-SoundTells, 2003–09. 2–6%.
———. *The Ball and the Cross*. 1909. *Works of Gilbert Keith Chesterton from MobileReference*. Electronic ed. Version 12. 1. N.p.: MobileReference-SoundTells, 2003–09. 10–14%.
———. *The Defendant*. 1901. *Works of Gilbert Keith Chesterton from MobileReference*. Version 12. 1. Electronic ed. N.p.: MobileReference-SoundTells, 2003–09. 24–25%.
———. *Eugenics and Other Evils*. 1922. London: Cassell, 1928.
———. *The Everlasting Man*. 1925. People's Library. London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1927.
———. *Heretics*. 1905. London: Bodley Head-John Lane, 1928.
———. *Manalive*. 1912. *Works of Gilbert Keith Chesterton from MobileReference*. Electronic ed. Version 12. 1. N.p.: MobileReference-SoundTells, 2003–09. 52–55%.
———. *The Man Who Was Thursday: A Nightmare*. 1908. Intro. Kingsley Amis. Harmondsworth: Penguin, 1986.
———. *The Napoleon of Notting Hill*. Lake's Indian & Colonial Library. London: Bodley Head-John Lane, 1904.
———. *Orthodoxy*. London: Bodley Head-John Lane, 1909.
———. *The Outline of Sanity*. 2nd ed. London: Methuen, 1928.
———. *A Short History of England*. 1917. *Works of Gilbert Keith Chesterton from MobileReference*. Electronic ed. Version 12. 1. N.p.: MobileReference-SoundTells, 2003–09. 79–83%.
———. *Tremendous Trifles*. 1909. *Works of Gilbert Keith Chesterton from MobileReference*. Electronic ed. Version 12. 1. N.p.: MobileReference-SoundTells, 2003–09. 86–89%.
———. *Utopia of Usurers and Other Essays*. 1917. *Works of Gilbert Keith Chesterton from MobileReference*. Electronic ed. Version 12. 1. N.p.: MobileReference-SoundTells, 2003–09. 90–92%.
———. *What's Wrong with the World*. 1910. *Works of Gilbert Keith Chesterton from MobileReference*. Electronic ed. Version 12. 1. N.p.: MobileReference-SoundTells, 2003–09. 95–98%.
Christopher, Joe R. & Joan K. Ostling. *C.S. Lewis: An Annotated Checklist of Writings About Him and His Works*. Kent, OH: Kent State UP, 1974.
Churchill, Rachel. "RE: FOLLOW UP: Request for permission: documents regarding CS Lewis (Archives of The Bodley Head)." E-mail (for Lewis Pte Ltd) to the author. 11 Nov. 2008.

Clausewitz, Karl von. *On War*. 1831. Trans. O.J. Matthijs Jolles. Foreword Joseph I. Greene. Preface Richard McKeon. New York: Random House, 1943.
Collingwood, R.G. & J.N.L. Myers. *Roman Britain and the English Settlements*. Oxford History of England I. Oxford: Clarendon, 1936.
Como, James T. Introduction. *C.S. Lewis at the Breakfast Table and Other Reminiscences*. Ed. James T. Como. 1979. London: Collins, 1980. xxi–xxxiv.
Confucius. *The Analects of Confucius*. Trans. & annot. Arthur Waley. 1938. Kindle ed. London: Routledge, 2005 & 2011.
Crompton, Richmal. *William—The Conquerer*. 1926. London: Collins, 1971.
C.S. Lewis and Gender. Christian Scholar's Review 36 (2007).
Cuneo, Andrew P. "One Heart Amidst a Thousand Like His Own: The Impact of John Milton on C.S Lewis." Diss. U of Oxford, 1997.
Danielson, Dennis Richard (ed.). *The Book of the Cosmos: Imagining the Universe from Heraclitus to Hawking*. Cambridge, MA: Perseus, 2000.
Dante Alighieri. *La Divina Commedia*. Ed. Nicolò Tommaseo. Intro. Umberto Cosimo. 3 vol. Turin: Unione Tipografico-Editrice Torinese, 1920–27.
Dante Alighieri. *The Divine Comedy*. Trans. Dorothy L. Sayers & Barbara Reynolds. 3 vol. London: Penguin, 1949–62.
Derrick, Christopher. "Some Personal Angles on Chesterton and Lewis." *G.K. Chesterton and C.S. Lewis: The Riddle of Joy*. Ed. Michael H. MacDonald & Andrew A. Tadie. London: Collins, 1989. 3–19.
Dickens, Charles. *The Posthumous Papers of the Pickwick Club*. 1837. Illus. Broom Lynne. London: Macdonald, 1948.
Dickerson, Matthew & David O'Hara. *Narnia and the Fields of Arbol: The Environmental Vision of C.S. Lewis*. Lexington: UP of Kentucky, 2009.
Dictionary of English Surnames. Ed. P.H. Reaney. Rev. 3rd ed. Corr. & add. R.M. Wilson. Oxford: Oxford UP, 1997.
Downing, David C. *Planets in Peril: A Critical Study of C.S. Lewis's Ransom Trilogy*. Amherst: U of Massachusetts P, 1992.
Dunne, J.W. *An Experiment with Time*. New [4th] ed. London: Faber & Faber, 1939.
———. *The Serial Universe*. London: Faber & Faber, 1934.
Durie, Catherine. "George MacDonald and C.S. Lewis." *The Gold Thread: Essays on George MacDonald*. Ed. William Raeper. Edinburgh: Edinburgh UP, 1990. 163-185.
Duriez, Colin. "The Romantic Writer: C.S. Lewis's Theology of Fantasy." *The Pilgrim's Guide: C.S. Lewis and the Art of Witness*. Ed. David Mills. Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1998. 98–110.
Eco, Umberto. *Mouse or Rat? Translation as Negotiation*. 2003. London: Phoenix-Orion, 2004.
———. *The Search for the Perfect Language*. Trans. James Fentress. London: Fontana-HarperCollins, 1997.
Edwards, Bruce L. (ed.). *C.S. Lewis: Life, Works, and Legacy*. 4 vol. Westport, CT: Praeger, 2007.
Eddington, Arthur S. *The Nature of the Physical World*. 1928. Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1929.
Eggert, Paul. "The Aims and Methods of the Anglo-American Tradition of Critical Editing." *Securing the Past, Rescuing the Present: A Workshop and Symposium on Cross-Disciplinary Theory and Practice*. North-West University, Potchefstroom. 24 Feb. 2011.
Elgin, Don D. *The Comedy of the Fantastic: Ecological Perspectives on the Fantasy Novel*. Contributions to the Study of Science Fiction and Fantasy XV. Westport, CT: Greenwood, 1985.
Eliot, Simon & Jonathan Rose. Introduction. *A Companion to the History of the Book*. Ed. Simon Eliot & Jonathan Rose. Chichester: Wiley-Blackwell, 2009. 1–6.
Encyclopædia Britannica: A New Survey of Universal Knowledge. 14th ed. 24 vol. London: Encyclopædia Britannica; Chicago: Encyclopædia Britannica; Toronto: Encyclopædia Britannica of Canada, 1939.
Evans, G.R. *Alan of Lille: The Frontiers of Theology in the Later Twelfth Century*. Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1983.
Feather, John. "The British Book Market 1600–1800." *A Companion to the History of the Book*. Ed. Simon Eliot & Jonathan Rose. Chichester: Wiley-Blackwell, 2009. 232–46.
Filmer, Kath. *The Fiction of C.S. Lewis: Mask and Mirror*. New York: St Martin's, 1993.
———. "That Hideous 1984: The Influence of C.S. Lewis' *That Hideous Strength* on Orwell's *1984*." *Extrapolation* 26.2 (1985): 160-69.
Fitzpatrick, John F. "From Fact to Fantasy: A Study of C.S. Lewis' Use of Myth." Diss. City College of the City U of New York, 1972.
Foster, Robert. *The Complete Guide to Middle Earth: From* The Hobbit *to* The Silmarillion. London: Unwin, 1978.

Fowler, H.W. *A Dictionary of Modern English Usage*. 1926. Oxford: Clarendon; London: Humphrey Milford, 1937.
Fredman, Roger A. & William J. Kaufmann III. *Universe*. 6th ed. New York: W.H. Freeman, 2002.
Fredrick, Candice & Sam McBride. *Women Among the Inklings: Gender, C.S. Lewis, J.R.R. Tolkien, and Charles Williams*. Contributions in Women's Studies 91. Westport, CT: Greenwood, 2001.
French and English Dictionary: Compiled from the Best Authorities in Both Languages. Ed. James Boïelle & de V. Payen-Payne. Rev. ed. London: Cassell, 1913.
Freud, Sigmund. "Symbolism in Dreams." *Introductory Lectures in Psycho-Analysis (Parts I & II)*. Lecture 10. *The Standard Edition of the Complete Psychological Works of Sigmund Freud*. Ed. & trans. James Strachey. Collab. Anna Freud. Assist. Alix Strachey & Alan Tyson. Vol. 15. 1915-1916. London: Hogarth P & Institute of Psycho-Analysis, 1963. 149-169.
Gaskell, Philip. *A New Introduction to Bibliography*. Oxford: Clarendon, 1972.
Gent, Thomas. *Poems*. 1828. *Poetic Sketches and Poems (1828)*. Facsimile ed. Intro. Donald H. Reiman. Significant Minor Poetry 1989–183. New York: Garland, 1978.
Geoffrey of Monmouth. *Histories of the Kings of Britain*. Trans. Sebastian Evans. Intro. Lucy Allen Paton. Everyman's Library. London: Dent; New York: Dutton, 1912.
Gibson, Evan K. *C.S. Lewis, Spinner of Tales: A Guide to His Fiction*. Washington, DC: Christian College Consortium; Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1980.
Glover, Donald E. *C.S. Lewis: The Art of Enchantment*. Athens: Ohio UP, 1981.
Glyer, Diana Pavlac. *The Company They Keep: C.S. Lewis and J.R.R. Tolkien as Writers in Community*. Kent, OH: Kent State UP, 2007.
Graves, Robert. *The Greek Myths*. Rev. ed. 2 vol. Harmondsworth: Penguin, 1960.
Gray, Thomas. *The Poems of Thomas Grey with a Selection of Letters and Essays*. Intro. John Drinkwater. London: Dent; New York: Dutton, [1912].
Gray, William. *Death and Fantasy: Essays on Philip Pullman, C.S. Lewis, George MacDonald and R.L. Stevenson*. 2008. Newcastle: Cambridge Scholars, 2009.
———. *Fantasy, Myth and the Measure of Truth: Tales of Pullman, Lewis, Tolkien, MacDonald and Hoffmann*. London: Palgrave Macmillan, 2009.
Green, Roger Lancelyn. *Myths of the Norsemen*. 1970. London: Puffin-Penguin, 1994. Rpt. of *The Saga of Asgard*. 1960.
——— & Walter Hooper. *C.S.Lewis: A Biography*. Rev. & expanded ed. Paperback ed. London: HarperCollins, 2003.
Greene, Thomas M. *The Light in Troy: Imitation and Discovery in Renaissance Poetry*. New Haven: Yale UP, 1982.
Greetham, David. "What is Textual Scholarship?" *A Companion to the History of the Book*. Ed. Simon Eliot & Jonathan Rose. Chichester: Wiley-Blackwell, 2009. 21–32.
———. *Textual Scholarship: An Introduction*. Corrected reprint. New York: Garland, 1994.
Griffiths, Bede. *The Golden String*. 1954. London: Fontana-Collins, 1964.
Gouws, John. "Why 'Text Happens' Won't Do for Fulke Greville (or Anyone Else)." *Textual Scholarship and the Material Book*. Ed. Wim Van Mierlo. *Variants* 6 (2007): 15–32.
Haldane, J.B.S. *Possible Worlds and Other Essays*. London: Chatto & Windus, 1927.
Hannay, Margaret Patterson. "Arthurian and Cosmic Myth in *That Hideous Strength*." *Mythlore* [2] (1970): 7, 9.
———. *C.S. Lewis*. New York: Frederick Ungar, 1981.
———. "A Preface to *Perelandra*." *The Longing for a Form: Essays on the Fiction of C.S. Lewis*. Ed. Peter J. Schakel. N.p.: Kent State UP, 1977. 73–90.
Hartt, Walter F. "Godly Influences: The Theology of J.R.R. Tolkien and C.S. Lewis." *Studies in the Literary Imagination* 14 (1981): 21–29.
Hay, A.D.S. Personal interview. 7 Mar. 2009.
Heck, Joel D. "C.S. Lewis' Most Prolific Year: 1945." *CSL: The Bulletin of the New York C.S Lewis Society* 41.2 (2010): 1-9.
———. "JBS: The Life and Work of J.B.S. Haldane: Interactions with C.S. Lewis." *CSL: The Bulletin of the New York C.S. Lewis Society* 38.6 (2007): 14–16.
Heiler, Friedrich. *The Gospel of Sadhu Sundar Singh*. Trans. Olive Wyon. 1927. Lucknow: Lucknow Publishing House, 1970. Abridged trans. of *Sadhu Sundar Singh: Ein Apostel des Ostens und Westens*. 1924. 4th ed. 1926.
Hein, Rolland. *Christian Mythmakers: C.S. Lewis, Madeleine L'Engle, J.R.R. Tolkien, George MacDonald, G.K. Chesterton, Charles Williams, Dante Alighieri, John Bunyan, Walter Wangerin, Robert Siegel, and Hannah Hurnard*. 2nd ed. Chicago: Cornerstone, 2002.
———. *George MacDonald: Victorian Mythmaker*. Nashville, TN: StarSong, 1993.

Hibbard, Caroline M. "Henrietta Maria (1609–1669)." *Oxford Dictionary of National Biography*. Ed. H.C.G. Matthew and Brian Harrison. Oxford: Oxford UP, 2004–06. Online ed. Ed. Lawrence Goldman. May 2006. 26 Jan. 2007 <http://www.oxforddnb.com.oasis.unisa.ac.za:80/view/article/12947>.

The High History of the Holy Graal. Trans. Sebastian Evans. 1898. London: Dent; New York: Dutton, 1903.

Hilder, Monika B. "The Foolish Weakness in C.S. Lewis's Cosmic Trilogy: A Feminine Heroic." *VII: An Anglo-American Literary Review* 19 (2002): 77-90.

Hillegas, Mark R. *The Future as Nightmare: H.G. Wells and the Anti-Utopians*. New York: Oxford UP, 1967.

Hobbes, Thomas. *Leviathan*. 1651. Intro. W.G. Pogson Smith. Oxford: Clarendon, 1909.

Holman, Valerie. *Print for Victory: Book Publishing in England 1939–1945*. London: British Library, 2008.

Hooper, Walter. *C.S.Lewis: A Companion and Guide*. London: Fount-HarperCollins, 1996. [*C&G*]

———. E-mail to the author. 16 Nov. 2008.

———. "A Note on *The Dark Tower*." *The Dark Tower and Other Stories*. Ed. Walter Hooper. London: Collins, 1977. 92–98.

———. Personal interview. 29 June 2004.

———. Personal interview. 4 Nov. 2008.

———. Preface. *Studies in Medieval and Renaissance Literature*. Ed. Walter Hooper. Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1966. vii–x.

———. Telephone interview. 30 Nov. 2011.

Horne, Brian. "A Peculiar Debt: The Influence of Charles Williams on C.S. Lewis." *A Christian for All Christians: Essays in Honour of C.S. Lewis*. Ed. Andrew Walker & James Patrick. London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1990. 83–97.

Howard, Thomas. *The Achievement of C.S. Lewis: A Reading of His Fiction*. Wheaton, IL: Harold Shaw, 1980.

Howard-Hill, T.H. "Why Bibliography Matters." *A Companion to the History of the Book*. Ed. Simon Eliot & Jonathan Rose. Chichester: Wiley-Blackwell, 2009. 9–20.

Hughes, Geoffrey. *An Encyclopedia of Swearing: The Social History of Oaths, Profanity, Foul Language, and Ethnic Slurs in the English-Speaking World*. Armonk, NY: Sharpe, 2006.

Hume, Kathryn. "C.S. Lewis' Trilogy: A Cosmic Romance." *Modern Fiction Studies* 20 (1974–75): 505–17.

Huxley, T.H. & Julian Huxley. *Evolution and Ethics 1893–1943*. London: Pilot P, 1947.

Ibsen, Henrik. "The Master Builder." 1892. *The Collected Works of Henrik Ibsen*. Vol. 10. Trans. Edmund Gosse & William Archer. London: Heinemann, 1907.

Johnson, Samuel. "Collins." *Lives of the English Poets*. Intro. Arthur Waugh. Vol. 1. London: Oxford UP, 1906. 398–402.

Jones, Horace Leonard. "Index of names, places, and subjects." *The Geography of Strabo*. Trans. Horace Leonard Jones. Vol. 8. London: Heinemann; Cambridge, MS: Harvard UP, 1959. 217–510.

Jonson, Ben. *Ben Jonson*. Ed. C.H. Herford & Percy & Evelyn Simpson. Rev. ed. Vol. 8. Oxford: Clarendon, 1954.

———. "Volpone, or The Fox." 1605. *Ben Jonson*. Ed. C.H. Herford & Percy Simpson. Vol. 5. Oxford: Clarendon, 1937. 1–137.

Kilby, Clyde S. *The Christian World of C.S. Lewis*. Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1964.

———. *Images of Salvation in the Fiction of C.S. Lewis*. Wheaton, IL: Harold Shaw, 1978.

Kirk, Tim. "The Country around Edgestow." Map. *Mythlore* [2] (1970): 8.

Knight, Gareth. *The Magical World of the Inklings: J.R.R.Tolkien, C.S.Lewis, Charles Williams, Owen Barfield*. Shaftesbury: Element Books, 1990.

Kranz, Gisbert. "Dante in the Work of C.S. Lewis." *CSL: The Bulletin of the New York C.S Lewis Society* 4:10 (1973): 1-8. Trans. Hope Kirkpatrick from *Deutches Dante-Jahrbuch* XLVII (N.d).

Kristeller, Paul Oskar. *Renaissance Thought and Its Sources*. Ed. Michael Mooney. New York: Columbia UP, 1979.

Kvidelind, Reimund & Jenning K. Sehmsdorf (ed.). *Scandinavian Folk Belief and Legend*. Minneapolis: U of Minnesota P, 1988.

Lake, David. "The Variant Texts of *That Hideous Strength*." *The Ring Bearer: Journal of The Inner Ring: The Mythopoeic Literature Society of Australia* 7 (1989): 52–58.

Laȝamon. *Selections from Laȝamon's* Brut. Ed. G.L. Brook. Intro. C.S. Lewis. Clarendon Medieval and Tudor Series. Oxford: Clarendon, 1963.

Lawrence [Nicholas Herman]. *The Practice of the Presence of God the Best Rule of a Holy Life: Being Conversations and Letters of Brother Lawrence.* [1670/1700]. Trans. London: Epworth P, [1932/1948]. 7 Sept. 2007 <http://www.ccel.org/ccel/lawrence/practice>.
Leigh, David. "The Psychology of Conversion in Chesterton's and Lewis's Autobiographies." *G.K. Chesterton and C.S. Lewis: The Riddle of Joy*. Ed. Michael H. MacDonald & Andrew A. Tadie. London: Collins, 1989. 290–304.
Lewis, W.H. *Brothers and Friends: The Diaries of Major Warren Hamilton Lewis.* Ed. Clyde S. Kilby & Marjorie Lamp Mead. San Francisco: Harper & Row, 1982.
———. *The Splendid Century: Some Aspects of French Life in the Reign of Louis XIV*. London: Eyre & Spottiswoode, 1953.
Liddell, Henry George & Robert Scott. *A Greek-English Lexicon*. 6th ed. Oxford: Clarendon, 1869.
Lindsay, David. *A Voyage to Arcturus.* 1920. London: Allison & Busby, 1963.
Lobdell, Jared C. "C.S. Lewis, Distributist: His Economics as Seen in *That Hideous Strength*." *Orcrist* 6 (1971–72): 20-21.
———. *The Scientifiction Novels of C.S. Lewis: Space and Time in the Ransom Stories*. Jefferson, NC: McFarland, 2004.
Lovejoy, Arthur O. *The Great Chain of Being: A Study in the History of an Idea.* 1936. Harper Torchbooks. New York: Harper & Row, 1960.
Lovelock, Julian. Introduction. *Donne:* Songs and Sonets*: A Casebook*. Ed. Julian Lovelock. Casebook Series. London: Macmillan, 1973. 11-29.
Lyndsay, David. "Ane Dialog betuix Experience and ane Courteour of the miserabyll Estait of the World." *Poetical Works of Sir David Lyndsay of the Mount, Lyon King of Arms.* 2 vol. Edinburgh, 1871. Vol. 1 227 – vol. 2 105.
Mackey, Aidan. "The Christian Influence of G.K. Chesterton on C.S. Lewis." *A Christian for All Christians: Essays in Honour of C.S. Lewis.* Ed. Andrew Walker & James Patrick. London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1990. 68–82.
Malory, Thomas. *Le Morte d'Arthur.* Ed. Ernest Rhys. 2 vol. Everyman's Library. London: Dent; New York: Dutton, 1906.
———. *The Works of Sir Thomas Malory*. Ed. Eugène Vinaver. 3 vol. Oxford: Clarendon, 1947.
Manlove, C.N. *C.S. Lewis: His Literary Achievement*. Basingstoke: Macmillan, 1987.
Marcus, Laura & Peter Nicholls (ed.). *The Cambridge History of Twentieth-Century Literature*. Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 2004.
Marchant, E.C. & G. Watson. *Latin Grammar*. 1931. London: Bell, 1969.
Marlowe, Christopher. "The Tragical History of Doctor Faustus." 1604. *The Plays of Christopher Marlowe.* The World's Classics. London: Oxford UP, 1939. 149–97.
Mays, J.C.C. "Coleridge and Yeats: The Romantic Voice." *Variants* 6 (2007): 65–84.
MacDonald, George. *At the Back of the North Wind.* 1871. Wordsworth Classics. Ware: Wordsworth, 1994.
———. *George MacDonald: An Anthology*. Ed. C.S. Lewis. 1946. London: Fount-Collins, 1983.
———. *The Princess and Curdie.* 1883. Philadelphia: Lippincott, 1883.
———. *The Princess and the Goblin.* 1872. Wordsworth Classics. Ware: Wordsworth, 1995.
———. *Lilith: A Romance.* 1895. Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 2000.
———. *Phantastes.* 1858. Everyman's Library. London: Dent, 1983.
McGann, Jerome C. *A Critique of Modern Textual Criticism*. Chicago: U of Chicago P, 1983.
McInnis, Jeff. *C.S. Lewis and George MacDonald on Suffering, Evil, and Goodness*. Studies in Christian History and Thought. Milton Keynes: Paternoster-Authentic Media, 2007.
McIntosh, Colin. *The Oxford Italian Grammar and Verbs*. Oxford: Oxford UP, 2002.
McKerrow, Ronald B. *An Introduction to Bibliography for Literature Students*. 1927. Corrected impression. Oxford: Clarendon, 1928.
MacSwain, Robert & Michael Ward (ed.). *The Cambridge Companion to C.S. Lewis*. Cambridge Companions to Religion. Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 2010.
Meredith, George. "Lucifer in Starlight." *The Poetical Works.* Ed. G.M. Trevelyan. London: Constable, 1912. 181–82.
Mills, David. "To See Truly through a Glass Darkly: C.S. Lewis, George Orwell, and the Corruption of Language." *The Pilgrim's Guide: C.S. Lewis and the Art of Witness*. Ed. David Mills. Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1998. 111–32.
Milton, John. *The Poetical Works*. Ed. H.C. Beeching. London: Henry Frowde; London: Oxford UP, 1912.
Moorman, Charles. *Arthurian Triptych: Mythic Materials in Charles Williams, C.S. Lewis, and T.S. Eliot.* Berkeley: U of California P, 1960.
———. *The Precincts of Felicity: The Augustinian City of the Oxford Christians*. Gainesville: U of Florida P, 1966.

Munshi, Yvonne. Personal interview. 2 Sept. 2009.
Myers, Doris T. *C.S. Lewis in Context*. Kent, OH: Kent State UP, 1994.
Myres, John & John Forsdyke. "A Survey of Minoan Civilization." *A Handbook to the Palace at Knossos*. Ed. J.D.S. Pendlebury. Rev. ed. London: Max Parrish, 1954. 13–23.
Nardo, A.K. "Decorum in the Fields of Arbol: Interplanetary Genres in C.S. Lewis's Space Trilogy." *Extrapolation* 20.2 (1979): 118-28.
Neuleib, Janice Witherspoon. "Technology and Theocracy: The Cosmic Voyages of Wells and Lewis." *Extrapolation* 16.2 (1975): 130–36.
A New English Dictionary on Historical Principles. 10 vol. & supplement. Oxford: Clarendon, 1888–1933. [*NED*]
Newman, Barbara. "Nature (I): Nature and Nature's God." *God and the Goddesses: Vision, Poetry, and Belief in the Middle Ages*. Philadelphia: U of Philadelphia P, 2003. 51–89.
Nutt-Kofoth, Rüdiger. "Editorial Scholarship and Literary Studies: Reflections on Their Relationship from a German Perspective." *Variants* 6 (2007): 33–48.
O'Donnell, Peter. *Dead Man's Handle*. 1985. London: Souvenir P, 2005.
———. *Modesty Blaise*. 1965. London: Souvenir P, 2005.
———. *The Night of Morningstar*. 1982. London: Souvenir P, 2001.
———. *The Silver Mistress*. 1973. London: Pan, 1975.
Oldham, J.H. *Real Life is Meeting*. 1942. 5 Feb. 2008 <http://www.chebucto.ns.ca/Philosophy/Sui-Generis/Berdyaev/essays/rlm.htm>.
Owen, Wilfred. "Anthem for Doomed Youth." 1920. *The Poems of Wilfred Owen*. Ed. Edmund Blunden. 1931. London: Chatto & Windus, 1933. 80.
The Oxford Dictionary of English Grammar. Ed. Sylvia Chalker & Edmund Weiner. Oxford: Clarendon, 1994.
The Oxford Classical Dictionary. 2nd ed. Ed. N.G.L. Hammond & H.H. Scullard. Oxford: Clarendon, 1970.
The Oxford Companion to English Literature. 5th ed. Ed. Margaret Drabble. Oxford: Oxford UP, 1985.
The Oxford Dictionary of National Biography: From the Earliest Times to the Year 2000. Ed. H.C.G. Matthew & Brian Harrison. 60 vol. Oxford: Oxford UP, 2004.
The Oxford Dictionary of Quotations. 2nd ed. 1953. London: Oxford UP, 1959.
The Oxford English Dictionary. 2nd ed. CD-ROM (v. 4.0.0.3). Oxford UP, 2009. [*OED*]
Ovid. *The Art of Love, and Other Poems*. Ed. & trans. J.H. Mozley. Loeb Classical Library. London: Heinemann; Cambridge, MS: Harvard UP, 1957.
Peters, John. *C.S. Lewis: The Man and His Achievement*. Exeter: Paternoster, 1985.
Peters, Thomas C. "The War of the Worldviews: H.G. Wells and Scientism versus C.S. Lewis and Christianity." *The Pilgrim's Guide: C.S. Lewis and the Art of Witness*. Ed. David Mills. Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1998. 203-220.
Phillips, Pearson. "The New Look." *Age of Austerity: 1945–1951*. Ed. Michael Sissons and Philip French. 1963. Oxford: Oxford UP, 1986. 115–36.
Philips-Rodriguez, Wendy J. "A Discussion about Textual Eugenics: Still Searching for the Perfect *Mahābhārata*?" *Variants* 6 (2007): 163–75.
Plato. *The Republic*. Trans. Paul Shorey. Vol. 1. Loeb Classical Library. London: Heinemann; Cambridge, MS: Harvard UP, 1956.
———. *Symposium. Plato*. Trans. W.R.M. Lamb. Vol. 5. Loeb Classical Library. London: Heinemann; New York: Putnam, 1925. 78–245.
Pliny. *Naturalis Historia*. Ed. & trans. Harris Rackham, W.H.S. Jones & D.E. Eichholz. 10 vol. Loeb Classical Library. London: Heinemann; Cambridge, MS: Harvard UP, 1938–63.
Plutarch. *Parallel Lives*. Ed. & trans. Bernadotte Perrin. 11 vol. Loeb Classical Library. London: Heinemann; Cambridge, MS: Harvard UP, 1949–59.
Pope, Alexander. *Poetry and Prose: With Essays by Johnson, Coleridge, Hazlitt, etc*. Ed. H.V.D. Dyson. Oxford: Clarendon P, 1933.
Pratchett, Terry. *The Light Fantastic*. 1986. London: Corgi, 1986.
———. *Men at Arms*. 1993. London: Corgi, 1994.
Purtill, Richard L. "*That Hideous Strength*: A Double Story." *The Longing for a Form: Essays on the Fiction of C.S. Lewis*. Ed. Peter J. Schakel. N.p.: Kent State UP, 1977. 91-102.
Quinn, William A. "Science Fiction's Harrowing of the Heavens." *The Transcendent Adventure: Studies of Religion in Science Fiction/Fantasy*. Ed. Robert Reilly. Contributions to the Study of Science Fiction and Fantasy XII. Westport, CT: Greenwood, 1985. 37-54.
Quirk, Randolph, Sidney Greenbaum, Geoffrey Leech & Jan Svartvik. *A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language*. Harlow: Longman, 1985.

Raleigh, Walter. *The Letters of Sir Walter Raleigh (1879–1922)*. Ed. [Lucie Gertrude] Raleigh. 2 vol. London: Methuen, 1926.
Rateliff, John D. *The History of the Hobbit*. Rev. & expanded 1-vol. ed. London: HarperCollins, 2011.
Reilly, R.J. *Romantic Religion: A Study of Barfield, Lewis, Williams, and Tolkien*. Athens: U of Georgia P, 1971.
Riga, Frank P. "Augustinian Pride and the Work of C.S. Lewis." *Augustinian Studies* 16 (1985): 129-36.
Robinson, Chris. "Re: Fwd: Query: 'ever' syntax." E-mail (for Scottish Language Dictionaries) to the author. 4 Feb. 2013.
Rogers, Katherin A. "Augustinian Evil in C.S. Lewis's *Perelandra*." *The Transcendent Adventure: Studies of Religion in Science Fiction/Fantasy*. Ed. Robert Reilly, Contributions to the Study of Science Fiction and Fantasy XII. Westport, CT: Greenwood, 1985. 83–91.
Rogers, Ted. *Evil, Eroticism and Englishness in the Works of the British Literary Club: The Inklings C.S. Lewis, J.R.R Tolkien, and Charles Williams*. Saarbrücken: VDM Verlag Dr Müller, [2008].
Sayer, George. *Jack: A Life of C.S.Lewis*. 1988. London: Hodder & Stoughton, 2005.
Sayers, Dorothy L. *1944–1950: A Noble Daring*. The Letters of Dorothy L. Sayers. Vol. 3. Ed. Barbara Reynolds. Cambridge: Dorothy L. Sayers Society, 1998.
———. *Murder Must Advertise*. 1933. London: Coronet-Hodder & Stoughton, 1989.
———. "The Unsolved Puzzle of the Man with No Face." *Lord Peter Views the Body*. 1928. London: Coronet-Hodder & Stoughton, 1989. 225–54.
Schakel, Peter J. *C.S. Lewis*. New York: Frederick Ungar, 1981.
———. Introduction. *The Longing for a Form: Essays on the Fiction of C.S. Lewis*. Ed. Peter J. Schakel. N.p.: Kent State UP, 1977. xi–xvii.
Schwartz, Sanford. *C.S. Lewis on the Final Frontier: Science and the Supernatural in the Space Trilogy*. Oxford: Oxford UP, 2009.
The Scottish National Dictionary: Designed Partly on Regional Lines and Partly on Historical Principles, and Containing All the Scottish Words in Use or Known to Have Been in Use Since c. *1700*. Ed. William Grant & David. D. Murison. 10 vol. Edinburgh: Scottish National Dictionary Association, 1931–76.
Seddon, Eric. "*Letters to Malcolm* and the Trouble with Narnia: C.S. Lewis, J.R.R. Tolkien, and their 1949 Crisis." *Mythlore* 26 (2007): 61–81.
Sellin, Bernard. "Journeys into Fantasy: The Fiction of David Lindsay and C.S. Lewis." *A Christian for All Christians: Essays in Honour of C.S. Lewis*. Ed. Andrew Walker & James Patrick. London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1990. 98–115.
Seznec, Jean. *The Survival of the Pagan Gods: The Mythological Tradition and Its Place in Renaissance Humanism and Art*. Trans. Barbara F. Sessions. Bollingen Series XXXVIII. New York: Pantheon, 1953.
Shakespeare, William. *The Complete Works of William Shakespeare*. 1905. Ed. W.J. Craig. London: Oxford UP, 1943.
Sheridan, James J. Introduction. *Anticlaudianus: or, The Good and Perfect Man*. By Alanus ab Insulis [Alan of Lille]. Trans. & commentary James J. Sheridan. Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies, 1973. 7–38.
———. Introduction. *The Plaint of Nature*. By Alanus ab Insulis [Alan of Lille]. Trans. & commentary James J. Sheridan. Mediaeval Sources in Translation XXVI. Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies, 1980. 1–64.
Shillingsburg, Peter L. *Scholarly Editing in the Computer Age: Theory and Practice*. 3rd ed. Ann Arbor: U of Michigan P, 1996.
Smilde, Arend. "*That Hideous Strength*: Quotations and Allusions." 12 Jan. 2006. 29 Aug. 2006 <http://www.solcon.nl/arendsmilde/cslewis/reflections/e-thsquotes.htm>.
Sobel, Dava. *Galileo's Daughter: A Drama of Science, Faith and Love*. 1999. Paperback ed. London: Fourth Estate, 2000.
Spenser, Edmund. *Poetical Works*. Ed. J.C. Smith & E. de Selincourt. 1912. Oxford: Oxford UP, 1970.
Spraycar, Rudy S. "C.S. Lewis's Mechanical Fiends in *That Hideous Strength*." *The Mechanical God: Machines in Science Fiction*. Ed. Thomas P. Dunn & Richard D. Erlich. Contributions to the Study of Science Fiction and Fantasy I. Westport, CT: Greenwood, 1982. 19-26.
Stapledon, Olaf. *Last and First Men: A Story of the Near and Far Future*. 1930. Harmondsworth: Penguin, 1963.
Strabo. *The Geography of Strabo*. Trans. Horace Leonard Jones. Loeb Classical Library. Vol. 2. Cambridge, MS: Harvard UP; London: Heinemann, 1949.
Sturch, Richard. *Four Christian Fantasists: A Study of the Fantastic Writings of George MacDonald, Charles Williams, C.S. Lewis and J.R.R. Tolkien*. Cormarë Series III. Zurich: Walking Tree, 2001.

Suetonius. *The Lives of the Caesars*. Ed. & trans. J.C. Rolfe. 2 vol. Loeb Classical Library. London: Heinemann; Cambridge, MS: Harvard UP, 1950–51.
Sutcliffe, Barry. Introduction and notes. *Plays by George Colman the Younger and Thomas Morton.* Cambridge: Cambridge UP, 1983.
Swan, Michael. *Oxford Pocket Basic English Usage.* Oxford: Oxford UP, 1992.
Tanselle, Thomas G. *A Rationale of Textual Criticism*. Philadelphia: U of Philadelphia P, 1989.
Teeuwen, Mariken. "The Impossible Task of Editing a Ninth-Century Commentary: The Case of Martianus Capella." *Variants* 6 (2007): 191–208.
Tennyson, Alfred. *Poems of Tennyson: 1829-1868*. Ed. Herbert Warren. London: Oxford UP & Humphrey Milford, 1929.
Terence. "The Eunuch." *Terence I*. Trans. John Sargeaunt. Loeb Classical Library. London: Heinemann; New York: Macmillan, 1912. 231–351.
Thomas, Keith. *Religion and the Decline of Magic: Studies in Popular Beliefs in Sixteenth and Seventeenth Century England.* London: Weidenfeld & Nicholson, 1971.
Thorson, Stephen. "The Letters of C.S. Lewis: A Bibliographic Update." *CSL: The Bulletin of the New York C.S. Lewis Society* 39.3 (2008): 1–6.
Todd, Mike. "Dollar Exchange Rate from 1940." 2007. *Dollar History*. 2006-2009. 4 Dec. 2012 <http://www.miketodd.net/encyc/dollhist-graph.htm>.
Tolkien, J.R.R. *The Hobbit: or There and Back Again.* 4th ed. 1978. *The Annotated Hobbit.* Intro. & annotated Douglas A. Anderson. London: Unwin Human, 1988.
———. *The Letters of J.R.R. Tolkien*. Sel. & ed. Humphrey Carpenter & Christopher Tolkien. 1981. London: HarperCollins, 2006.
———. *The Lord of the Rings.* 1955–56. 7 vol. London: HarperCollins, 1999.
———. "The Quest of Erebor." *Unfinished Tales of Númenor and Middle-earth*. Ed. Christopher Tolkien. 1980. London: Unwin Paperbacks, 1982. 321–36.
———. *The Silmarillion*. Ed. Christopher Tolkien. London: Allen & Unwin, 1977.
———. *Tree and Leaf*. Ed. Christopher Tolkien. 2nd ed. London: Unwin, 1988.
Trout, John M. *The Voyage of Prudence: The World View of Alan of Lille*. Washington, DC: UP of America, 1979.
Urang, Gunnar. *Shadows of Heaven: Religion and Fantasy in the Writing of C.S. Lewis, Charles Williams, and J.R.R. Tolkien*. Philadelphia: Pilgrim P, 1971.
Vail, Amy K. "That Hideous Latin in *That Hideous Strength*." *Seven: An Anglo-American Literary Review*. 26 (2009): 81–90.
van Hulle, Dirk. "The Preservation of Unfavoured Traces: the First Version of Darwin's Origin of Species." *Securing the Past, Rescuing the Present: A Workshop and Symposium on Cross-Disciplinary Theory and Practice.* North-West University, Potchefstroom. 26 Feb. 2011.
Vinaver, Eugène. *Malory*. Oxford: Clarendon, 1929.
Waddington, C.H. "The Relations between Science and Ethics." C.H. Waddington, E.W. Barnes *et al. Science and Ethics.* London: Allen & Unwin, 1942. 9–19.
Walsh, Chad. *The Literary Legacy of C.S. Lewis*. London: Sheldon, 1979.
———. "The Re-Education of the Fearful Pilgrim." *The Longing for a Form: Essays on the Fiction of C.S. Lewis*. Ed. Peter J. Schakel. N.p.: Kent State UP, 1977. 64-72.
Ward, Michael. *Planet Narnia: The Seven Heavens in the Imagination of C.S. Lewis*. Kindle ed. New York: Oxford UP, 2008.
Watson, John B. "Behavior and the Concept of Mental Disease." *Journal of Philosophy, Psychology, and Scientific Methods* 13 (1916): 589-97. *Classics in the History of Psychology.* Christopher D. Green. 1 Oct. 2006 <http://psychclassics.yorku.ca/Watson/mental.htm>.
———. *Behaviorism*. Rev. ed. New York: Norton, 1930.
———. "Is Thinking Merely the Action of Language Mechanisms?" *British Journal of Psychology* 11 (1920): 87-104. *Classics in the History of Psychology.* Ed. Christopher D. Green. 1 Oct. 2006 <http://psychclassics.yorku.ca/Watson/thinking.htm>.
——— & Rosalie Raynor. "Conditioned Emotional Responses." *Journal of Experimental Psychology* 3 (1920): 1-14. *Classics in the History of Psychology.* Ed. Christopher D. Green. 1 Oct. 2006 <http://psychclassics.yorku.ca/Watson/emotion.htm>.
Webster's Complete Dictionary of the English Language. Rev. ed. Rev. Chauncey A. Goodrich, Noah Porter *et al.* London: George Bell, 1884.
Wells, H.G. *The First Men in the Moon*. London: George Newnes, 1901.
White, William Luther. *The Image of Man in C.S. Lewis*. Diss. Northwestern U & Garrett Theological College, 1968. London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1970.
Wikipedia contributors. "Frederick I, Holy Roman Emperor." *Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia.* Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia, 18 Sept. 2009. Web. 19 Sept. 2009.

———. "Hiberno-Latin." *Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia*. Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia, 23 Jan. 2008. Web. 17 Feb. 2008.
———. "H.G. Wells." *Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia*. Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia, 15 Mar. 2013. Web. 15 Mar. 2013.
———. "Joseph McCabe." *Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia*. Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia, 27 Feb. 2009. Web. 10 Mar. 2008.
———. "William Winwood Reade." *Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia*. Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia, 19 Sept. 2008. Web. 6 Oct. 2008.
Williams, Charles. *All Hallows' Eve*. 1945. Vancouver: Regent College, 2003.
———. "The Figure of Arthur." *Arthurian Torso, containing the Posthumous Fragment of The Figure of Arthur by Charles Williams and a Commentary on the Arthurian Poems of Charles Williams by C.S. Lewis*. London: Oxford UP, 1948. 3–90.
———. *He Came Down From Heaven*. I Believe: A Series of Personal Statements V. London: Heinemann, 1938.
———. *Descent into Hell*. 1937. Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 2002.
———. *The Greater Trumps*. 1932. Vancouver: Regent College, 2003.
———. *Many Dimensions*. 1931. Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 2001.
———. *The Place of the Lion*. 1931. London: Faber & Faber, 1952.
———. Preface to *The Region of the Summer Stars*. 1944. *Taliessin through Logres and The Region of the Summer Stars by Charles Williams. And Arthurian Torso by Charles Williams and C.S. Lewis*. Intro. Mary McDermott Shideler. Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1974. 117–18.
———. *Shadows of Ecstasy*. 1933. Vancouver: Regent College, 2003.
———. *Taliessin Through Logres*. 1938. *Taliessin through Logres and The Region of the Summer Stars by Charles Williams. And Arthurian Torso by Charles Williams and C.S. Lewis*. Intro. Mary McDermott Shideler. Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1974. 15–112.
———. *War in Heaven*. 1930. Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1999.
Willis, Chris. "The Story of *The Strand*." 1998. 5 Aug. 2009 <http://www.strandmag.com/hist.htm>.
Woodruff Tait, Jennifer L. " 'You Will Have No More Dreams; Have Children Instead:' Or, What's a Nice Egalitarian Girl Like You Doing in a Book Like This?" *CSL: The Bulletin of the New York C.S Lewis Society* 40.6 (2009): 1–9.